DrayTek

Vigor2927 Series

Dual-WAN Security Router

USER'S GUIDE

V1.4

Vigor2927 Series
Dual-WAN Security Router

User's Guide

Version: 1.4

Firmware Version: V4.3.2

(For future update, please visit DrayTek web site)

Date: November 25, 2021

Copyrights

© All rights reserved. This publication contains information that is protected by copyright. No part may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language without written permission from the copyright holders.

Trademarks

The following trademarks are used in this document:

- Microsoft is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corp.
- Windows, Windows 7, 8, 10 and Explorer are trademarks of Microsoft Corp.
- Apple and Mac OS are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.
- Other products may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective manufacturers.

Safety Instructions

- Read the installation guide thoroughly before you set up the router.
- The router is a complicated electronic unit that may be repaired only be authorized and qualified personnel. Do not try to open or repair the router yourself.
- Do not place the router in a damp or humid place, e.g. a bathroom.
- The router should be used in a sheltered area, within a temperature range of +5 to +40 Celsius.
- Do not expose the router to direct sunlight or other heat sources. The housing and electronic components may be damaged by direct sunlight or heat sources.
- Do not deploy the cable for LAN connection outdoor to prevent electronic shock hazards.
- Keep the package out of reach of children.
- When you want to dispose of the router, please follow local regulations on conservation of the environment.

Warranty

- We warrant to the original end user (purchaser) that the router will be free from any defects in workmanship or materials for a period of two (2) years from the date of purchase from the dealer. Please keep your purchase receipt in a safe place as it serves as proof of date of purchase. During the warranty period, and upon proof of purchase, should the product have indications of failure due to faulty workmanship and/or materials, we will, at our discretion, repair or replace the defective products or components, without charge for either parts or labor, to whatever extent we deem necessary tore-store the product to proper operating condition. Any replacement will consist of a new or re-manufactured functionally equivalent product of equal value, and will be offered solely at our discretion. This warranty will not apply if the product is modified, misused, tampered with, damaged by an act of God, or subjected to abnormal working conditions. The warranty does not cover the bundled or licensed software of other vendors. Defects which do not significantly affect the usability of the product will not be covered by the warranty. We reserve the right to revise the manual and online documentation and to make changes from time to time in the contents hereof without obligation to notify any person of such revision or changes.

Be a Registered Owner

- Web registration is preferred. You can register your Vigor router via https://myvigor.draytek.com.

Firmware & Tools Updates

- Due to the continuous evolution of DrayTek technology, all routers will be regularly upgraded. Please consult the DrayTek web site for more information on newest firmware, tools and documents.

  https://www.draytek.com

Table of Contents

Part I Installation i

I-1 Introduction 1

I-1-1 Indicators and Connectors 2

I-1-1-1 Vigor2927 2
I-1-1-2 Vigor2927L 4
I-1-1-3 Vigor2927ac / Vigor2927ax / Vigor2927Lac 6
I-1-1-4 Vigor2927Vac 10

I-1-2 Notes for Antenna Installation (for "L" model) 12

I-2 Hardware Installation 14

I-2-1 Installing Vigor Router 14

I-2-2 Wall-Mounted Installation 15

I-2-3 Installing USB Printer to Vigor Router 16

I-3 Accessing Web Page 23

I-4 Changing Password 25

I-5 Dashboard 27

I-5-1 Virtual Panel 28

I-5-2 Name with a Link 29

I-5-3 Status for LTE 29

I-5-4 Quick Access for Common Used Menu 30

I-5-5 GUI Map 31

I-5-6 Web Console 32

I-5-7 Config Backup 33

I-5-8 Manual Download 33

I-5-9 Logout 33

I-5-10 Online Status 34

I-5-10-1 Physical Connection 34
I-5-10-2 Virtual WAN 36

I-6 Quick Start Wizard 37

I-6-1 For WAN1/WAN2 (Ethernet) 38

I-6-2 For WAN3/WAN4 (Wireless 2.4G/Wireless 5G) 47

I-6-3 For WAN5/WAN6 (USB) 53

I-7 Service Activation Wizard 55

I-8 Registering Vigor Router 57

Part II Connectivity 61

II-1 WAN 62

Web User Interface 64

II-1-1 General Setup 64

II-1-1-1 WAN1/ WAN2 (Ethernet) 67
II-1-1-2 WAN3/ WAN4 (Wireless 2.4G or 5G) 69
II-1-1-3 WAN5 / WAN6 (USB) or LTE 70

II-1-2 Internet Access 72

II-1-2-1 Details Page for PPPoE in WAN1/ WAN2 (Physical Mode: Ethernet) 75
II-1-2-2 Details Page for Static or Dynamic IP in WAN1/ WAN2 (Physical Mode: Ethernet) 78
II-1-2-3 Details Page for PPTP/ L2TP in WAN1/ WAN2 (Physical Mode: Ethernet) 82
II-1-2-4 Details Page for WAN3/ WAN4 (Physical Mode: Wireless 2.4G/ Wireless 5G) .. 85
II-1-2-5 Details Page for 3G/ 4G USB Modem (PPP mode) in WAN5 / WAN6 87
II-1-2-6 Details Page for 3G/ 4G USB Modem (DHCP mode) in WAN5 / WAN6 89
II-1-2-7 Details Page for 3G/ 4G USB Modem (DHCP mode) in LTE WAN 92
II-1-2-8 Details Page for IPv6 – Offline in WAN1/ WAN2/ WAN5/ WAN6 95
II-1-2-9 Details Page for IPv6 – PPP in WAN1/ WAN2 96
II-1-2-10 Details Page for IPv6 – TSPC in WAN1/ WAN2/ WAN5/ WAN6 97
II-1-2-11 Details Page for IPv6 – AICCU in WAN1/ WAN2/ WAN5/ WAN6 99
II-1-2-12 Details Page for IPv6 – DHCPv6 Client in WAN1/ WAN2 100
II-1-2-13 Details Page for IPv6 – Static IPv6 in WAN1/ WAN2 102
II-1-2-14 Details Page for IPv6 – 6in4 Static Tunnel in WAN1/ WAN2 103
II-1-2-15 Details Page for IPv6 – 6rd in WAN1/ WAN2 105
II-1-3 Multi-VLAN 107
II-1-4 WAN Budget 113
II-1-4-1 General Setup 113
II-1-4-2 Status 116
Application Notes 117
A-1 How to set up Multi-PVC for triple play deployment? 117
II-2 LAN 122
Web User Interface 124
II-2-1 General Setup 124
II-2-1-1 Details Page for LAN1 – Ethernet TCP/ IP and DHCP Setup 126
II-2-1-2 Details Page for LAN2 ~ LAN8 and DMZ 130
II-2-1-3 Details Page for IP Routed Subnet 132
II-2-1-4 Details Page for LAN IPv6 Setup 134
II-2-1-5 DHCP Server Options 137
II-2-2 VLAN 139
II-2-3 Bind IP to MAC 143
II-2-4 LAN Port Mirror 146
II-2-5 Wired 802.1x 147
II-3 Hardware Acceleration 148
II-4 NAT 150
Web User Interface 151
II-4-1 Port Redirection 151
II-4-2 DMZ Host 155
II-4-3 Open Ports 158
II-4-4 Port Triggering 160
II-4-5 ALG 162
II-5 Applications 163
Web User Interface 165
II-5-1 Dynamic DNS 165
II-5-2 LAN DNS / DNS Forwarding 171
II-5-3 DNS Security 174
II-5-3-1 General Setup 174

II-5-3-2 Domain Diagnose 175
II-5-4 Schedule 176
II-5-5 RADIUS/TACACS+ 179
II-5-5-1 External RADIUS 179
II-5-5-2 Internal RADIUS 181
II-5-5-3 External TACACS+ 184
II-5-6 Active Directory/LDAP 185
II-5-6-1 General Setup 185
II-5-6-2 Active Directory / LDAP Profiles 186
II-5-7 UPnP 187
II-5-8 IGMP 189
II-5-8-1 General Setting 189
II-5-8-2 Working Status 190
II-5-9 Wake on LAN 191
II-5-10 SMS / Mail Alert Service 192
II-5-10-1 SMS Alert 192
II-5-10-2 Mail Alert 193
II-5-11 Bonjour 194
II-5-12 High Availability 197
II-5-12-1 General Setup 198
II-5-12-2 Config Sync 200
II-5-13 Local 802.1X General Setup 202
Application Notes 204
A-1 How to use DrayDDNS? 204
A-2 How to Configure Customized DDNS? 209
II-6 Routing 213
Web User Interface 214
II-6-1 Static Route 214
II-6-2 Load-Balance /Route Policy 219
Diagnose for Route Policy 224
II-6-3 BGP 227
II-6-3-1 Basic Settings 227
II-6-3-2 Static Network 228
Application Notes 229
A-1 How to set up Address Mapping with Route Policy? 229
A-2 How to use destination domain name in a route policy? 231
A-3 Introduction to Load Balance/ Route Policy 233
II-7 LTE 235
Web User Interface 236
II-7-1 General Settings 236
II-7-1-1 SMS Quota 236
II-7-1-2 SMS Inbox/ Outbox 237
II-7-2 SMS Inbox 238
II-7-3 Send SMS 241
II-7-4 SMS Gateway 242
II-7-5 Router Commands 246

II-7-6 Status 248

Part III Wireless LAN 251

III-1 Wireless LAN (2.4GHz/5GHz) 252
Web User Interface 255
III-1-1 Wireless Wizard 255
III-1-2 General Setup 259
III-1-3 Security 261
III-1-4 Access Control 263
III-1-5 WPS 265
III-1-6 WDS (for 5GHz) 268
III-1-7 Advanced Setting 270
III-1-8 Station Control 274
III-1-9 Bandwidth Management 275
III-1-10 AP Discovery 276
III-1-11 Airtime Fairness 277
III-1-12 Band Steering (2.4 GHz) 279
III-1-13 Roaming 283
III-1-14 Station List 284
III-2 Mesh Network 286
III-2-1 Mesh Wizard 287
III-2-2 Mesh Setup 291
III-2-3 Mesh Status 293
III-2-4 Mesh Discovery 294
III-2-5 Basic Config Sync 295
III-2-6 Support List 297

Part IV VoIP 299

IV-1 VoIP 300
Web User Interface 302
IV-1-1 VoIP Wizard 302
IV-1-2 General Settings 304
IV-1-3 SIP Accounts 307
IV-1-3-1 Alias List 310
IV-1-4 DialPlan 313
IV-1-4-1 Phone Book 313
IV-1-4-2 Digit Map 314
IV-1-4-3 Call Barring 317
IV-1-4-4 Regional 319
IV-1-5 Phone Settings 321
IV-1-6 Status 325
IV-1-7 Diagnostics 327
IV-1-7-1 Caller ID 327

IV-1-7-2 Tone 327

Part V VPN 329

V-1 VPN and Remote Access 330

Web User Interface 331

V-1-1 VPN Client Wizard 331

V-1-2 VPN Server Wizard 338

V-1-3 Remote Access Control 348

V-1-4 PPP General Setup 349

V-1-5 SSL General Setup 351

V-1-6 IPsec General Setup 353

V-1-7 IPsec Peer Identity 355

V-1-8 VPN Matcher Setup 357

V-1-9 OpenVPN 359

V-1-9-1 OpenVPN Server Setup 359
V-1-9-2 Client Config. 361
V-1-9-3 Import Certificate 362

V-1-10 Remote Dial-in User 364

V-1-11 LAN to LAN 368

V-1-12 VPN Trunk Management 378

V-1-13 Connection Management 383

V-2 Certificate Management 385

Web User Interface 386

V-2-1 Local Certificate 386

V-2-2 Trusted CA Certificate 390

V-2-3 Certificate Backup 393

V-2-4 Self-Signed Certificate 394

Part VI Security 395

VI-1 Firewall 396

Web User Interface 398

VI-1-1 General Setup 398

VI-1-2 Filter Setup 403

VI-1-3 Defense Setup 413

VI-1-3-1 DoS Defense 413
VI-1-3-2 Spoofing Defense 416

VI-1-4 Diagnose 417

VI-2 Central Security Management (CSM) 420

Web User Interface 421

VI-2-1 APP Enforcement Profile 421

VI-2-2 APPE Signature Upgrade 423

VI-2-3 URL Content Filter Profile 425

VI-2-4 Web Content Filter Profile 429

VI-2-5 DNS Filter Profile 433
Application Notes 435
A-1 How to Create an Account for MyVigor 435
A-2 How to Block Facebook Service Accessed by the Users via Web Content Filter / URL Content Filter 440

Part VII Management 445

VII-1 System Maintenance 446
Web User Interface 447
VII-1-1 System Status 447
VII-1-2 TR-069 449
VII-1-2-1 ACS and CPE Settings 449
VII-1-2-2 Reporting Configuration 451
VII-1-2-3 Export Parameters 452
VII-1-3 Administrator Password 453
VII-1-4 User Password 457
VII-1-5 Login Page Greeting 460
VII-1-6 Configuration Backup 462
VII-1-7 Webhook 465
VII-1-8 Syslog/Mail Alert 466
VII-1-9 Time and Date 469
VII-1-10 SNMP 470
VII-1-11 Management 472
VII-1-12 Panel Control 476
VII-1-13 Self-Signed Certificate 481
VII-1-14 Reboot System 483
VII-1-15 Firmware Upgrade 484
VII-1-16 Firmware Backup 485
VII-1-17 Internal Service User List 486
VII-1-18 Dashboard Control 487
VII-2 Bandwidth Management 488
Web User Interface 489
VII-2-1 Sessions Limit 489
VII-2-2 Bandwidth Limit 491
VII-2-3 Quality of Service 493
VII-2-4 APP QoS 499
VII-3 User Management 500
Web User Interface 501
VII-3-1 General Setup 501
VII-3-2 User Profile 502
VII-3-3 User Group 506
VII-3-4 User Online Status 507
Application Notes 509

A-1 How to authenticate clients via User Management *509*
A-2 How to use Landing Page Feature *518*
VII-4 Hotspot Web Portal 522
Web User Interface 522
VII-4-1 Profile Setup 522
VII-4-1-1 Login Method *523*
VII-4-1-2 Steps for Configuring a Web Portal Profile *524*
VII-4-2 User Information 543
VII-4-2-1 User Info *543*
VII-4-2-2 Database Setup *544*
VII-4-3 Quota Management 546
VII-4-4 PIN Generator 549
VII-4-4-1 PIN Status *549*
VII-4-4-2 PIN Generator *550*
VII-4-4-3 JSON PIN Generator *551*
VII-4-4-4 PIN Voucher *552*
Application Notes 554
A-1 How to create Facebook APP for Web Portal Authentication? *554*
A-2 How to create Google APP for Web Portal Authentication? *560*
VII-5 Central Management (VPN) 562
Web User Interface 563
VII-5-1 General Setup 563
VII-5-1-1 General Settings *563*
VII-5-1-2 IPsec VPN Settings *564*
VII-5-2 CPE Management 565
VII-5-2-1 Managed Device List *565*
VII-5-2-2 CPE Maintenance *568*
VII-5-2-3 Google Map *570*
VII-5-3 VPN Management 572
VII-5-4 Log & Alert 573
Application Notes 574
A-1 CVM Application - How to manage the CPE (router) through Vigor2927 series? *574*
A-2 CVM Application - How to upgrade CPE firmware through Vigor2927 series? *578*
VII-6 Central Management (AP) 581
Web User Interface 582
VII-6-1 Dashboard 582
VII-6-2 Status 583
VII-6-3 WLAN Profile 584
VII-6-4 AP Maintenance 590
VII-6-5 Traffic Graph 591
VII-6-6 Event Log 592
VII-6-7 Total Traffic 593
VII-6-8 Station Number 593
VII-6-9 Load Balance 594
VII-7 Central Management (Switch) 596

Web User Interface 597
VII-7-1 Status 597
VII-7-1-1 Switch Status 597
VII-7-1-2 Switch Hierarchy 599
VII-7-2 Profile 600
VII-7-3 Group 603
VII-7-4 Maintenance 605
VII-7-5 Alert and Log 606
VII-7-5-1 Alert Setup 606
VII-7-5-2 Switch and Port Setup 607
VII-7-5-3 Alert Logs 608
VII-7-6 Database Setup 609
VII-7-7 Support List 610
VII-8 Central Management (External Devices) 611

Part VIII Others 613

VIII-1 Objects Settings 614
Web User Interface 615
VIII-1-1 IP Object 615
VIII-1-2 IP Group 618
VIII-1-3 IPv6 Object 620
VIII-1-4 IPv6 Group 622
VIII-1-5 Service Type Object 624
VIII-1-6 Service Type Group 626
VIII-1-7 Keyword Object 628
VIII-1-8 Keyword Group 630
VIII-1-9 File Extension Object 631
VIII-1-10 SMS/Mail Service Object 633
VIII-1-11 Notification Object 638
VIII-1-12 String Object 640
VIII-1-13 Country Object 641
VIII-1-14 Objects Backup/Restore 643
Application Notes 644
A-1 How to Send a Notification to Specified Phone Number via SMS Service in WAN Disconnection 644
VIII-2 USB Application 648
Web User Interface 649
VIII-2-1 USB General Settings 649
VIII-2-2 USB User Management 650
VIII-2-3 File Explorer 652
VIII-2-4 USB Device Status 653
VIII-2-5 Temperature Sensor 654
VIII-2-6 Modem Support List 657

VIII-2-7 SMB Client Support List 658
Application Notes 659
A-1 How can I get the files from USB storage device connecting to Vigor router?... 659

Part IX Troubleshooting 663

IX-1 Diagnostics 664
Web User Interface 665
IX-1-1 Dial-out Triggering 665
IX-1-2 Routing Table 666
IX-1-3 ARP Cache Table 667
IX-1-4 IPv6 Neighbour Table 668
IX-1-5 DHCP Table 669
IX-1-6 NAT Sessions Table 670
IX-1-7 DNS Cache Table 671
IX-1-8 Ping Diagnosis 672
IX-1-9 Data Flow Monitor 673
IX-1-10 Traffic Graph 676
IX-1-11 VPN Graph 677
IX-1-12 Trace Route 678
IX-1-13 Syslog Explorer 679
IX-1-14 IPv6 TSPC Status 680
IX-1-15 High Availability Status 680
IX-1-16 Authentication Information 682
IX-1-17 DoS Flood Table 684
IX-1-18 Route Policy Diagnosis 685
IX-2 Checking If the Hardware Status Is OK or Not 687
IX-3 Checking If the Network Connection Settings on Your Computer Is OK or Not 688
IX-4 Pinging the Router from Your Computer 691
IX-5 Checking If the ISP Settings are OK or Not 693
IX-6 Problems for 3G/4G Network Connection 694
IX-7 Backing to Factory Default Setting If Necessary 695
IX-8 Contacting DrayTek 696

Part X Telnet Commands 697

Accessing Telnet of Vigor2927 698

Part I Installation

This part will introduce Vigor router and guide to install the device in hardware and software.

I-1 Introduction

This is a generic International version of the user guide. Specification, compatibility and features vary by region. For specific user guides suitable for your region or product, please contact local distributor.

Vigor2927 series integrates IP layer QoS, NAT session/bandwidth management to help users control works well with large bandwidth.

By adopting hardware-based VPN platform and hardware encryption of AES/DES/3DES, the router increases the performance of VPN greatly, and offers several protocols (such as IPsec/PPTP/L2TP) with VPN tunnels.

The object-based design used in SPI (Stateful Packet Inspection) firewall allows users to set firewall policy with ease. CSM (Content Security Management) provides users control and management in IM (Instant Messenger) and P2P (Peer to Peer) more efficiency than before. By the way, DoS/DDoS prevention and URL/Web content filter strengthen the security outside and control inside. Object-based firewall is flexible and allows your network be safe.

User Management implemented on your router firmware can allow you to prevent any computer from accessing your Internet connection without a username or password. You can also allocate time budgets to your employees within office network.

With the 4-port Gigabit switch on the LAN side provides extremely high speed connectivity for the highest speed local data transfer of any server or local PCs. The tagged VLANs (IEEE802.1Q) can mark data with a VLAN identifier. This identifier can be carried through an onward Ethernet switch to specific ports. The specific VLAN clients can also pick up this identifier as it is just passed to the LAN. You can set the priorities for LAN-side QoS. You can assign each of VLANs to each of the different IP subnets that the router may also be operating, to provide even more isolation. The said functionality is tag-based Multi-subnet (Multiple-Private LAN Subnets).

On the Wireless-equipped models (e.g., Vigor2927lac) each of the wireless SSIDs can also be grouped within one of the VLANs.

In addition, Vigor2927 series supports USB interface for connecting USB printer to share printing function or 3G USB modem for network connection.

Vigor2927 series provides two-level management to simplify the configuration of network connection. The user mode allows user accessing into WEB interface via simple configuration. However, if users want to have advanced configurations, they can access into WEB interface through admin mode.

I-1-1 Indicators and Connectors

Before you use the Vigor router, please get acquainted with the LED indicators and connectors first.

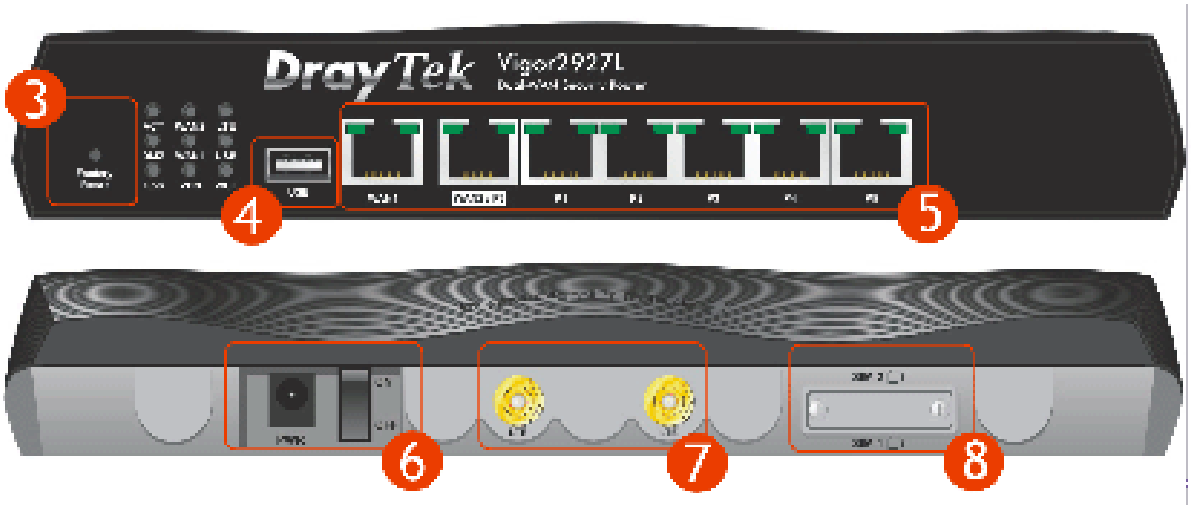
I-1-1-1 Vigor2927

No.	LED	Status	Explanation
(1)	ACT	Off	The router is powered off.
		Blinking	The router is powered on and running normally.
	WAN2/WAN1	On	Internet connection is ready.
		Off	Internet connection is not ready.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	USB1/USB2	On	USB device is connected and ready for use.
		Off	No USB device is connected.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	DMZ	On	The DMZ function is enabled.
		Off	The DMZ function is disabled.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	QoS	On	The QoS function is active.
		Off	The QoS function is inactive.
	VPN	On	The VPN tunnel is active.
		Off	VPN services are disabled
		Blinking	Traffic is passing through VPN tunnel.
	WCF	On	The Web Content Filter is active. (It is enabled from **Firewall >> General Setup**).
		Off	WCF is disabled.
(2)	WAN1,WAN2 / P6		
	Left LED	On	The port is connected.
		Off	The port is disconnected.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	Right LED	On	The port is connected with 1000Mbps.
		Off	The port is connected with 10/100Mbps.
	LAN P1-P5		
	Left LED	On	The port is connected.
		Off	The port is disconnected.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	Right LED	On	The port is connected with 1000Mbps.
		Off	The port is connected with 10/100Mbps

No.	Interface	Description
(3)	Factory Reset	Restore the default settings. Usage: Turn on the router (ACT LED is blinking). Press the hole and keep for more than 5 seconds. When you see the ACT LED begins to blink rapidly than usual, release the button. Then the router will restart with the factory default configuration.
(4)	USB	Connecter for a USB device (for 3G/4G USB Modem or printer or thermometer).
(5)	WAN1	Connecter for a modem for accessing Internet.
	WAN2 / P6	Connecter for local network devices or modem for accessing Internet. It is a switchable port. It can be used for LAN connection or WAN connection according to the settings configured in WUI.
	LAN P1-P5	Connecters for local network devices.
(6)	PWR	Connecter for a power adapter.
	ON/OFF	Power Switch.

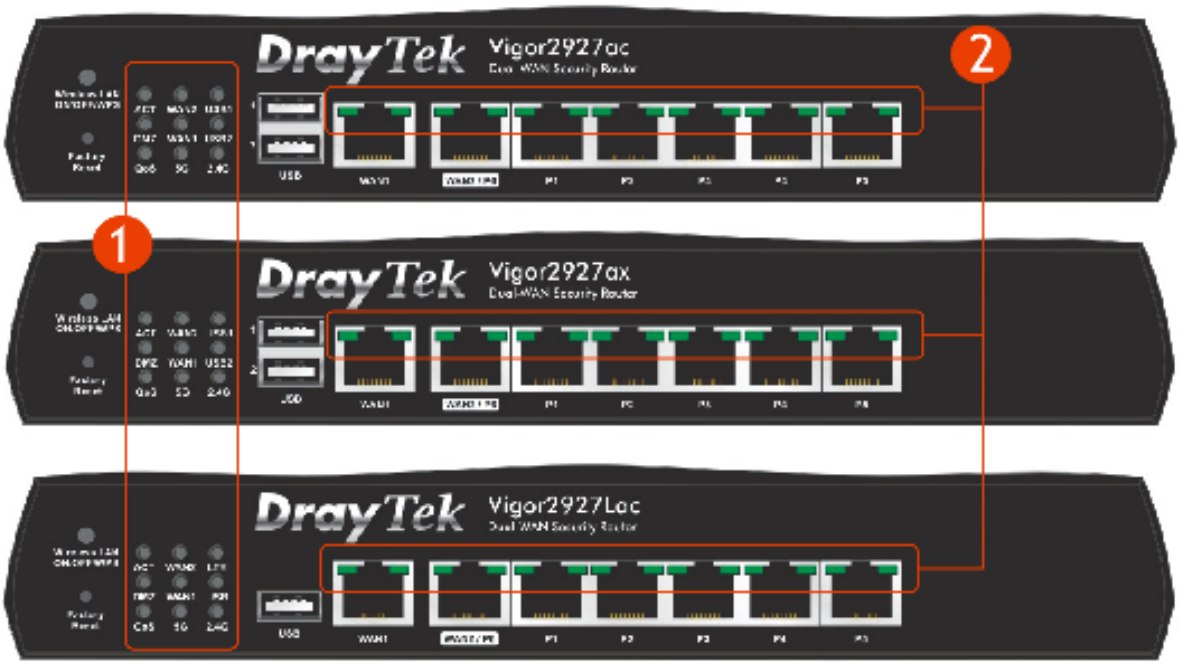
I-1-1-2 Vigor2927L

No.	LED	Status	Explanation
(1)	ACT	Off	The router is powered off.
		Blinking	The router is powered on and running normally.
	WAN2/WAN1	On	Internet connection is ready.
		Off	Internet connection is not ready.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	LTE	On	LTE device is connected and ready for use.
		Off	LTE device is not detected, or has serious problem (e.g., no SIM card, SIM pin error, SIM deactivated, and etc.).
		Blinking	Slowly: LTE device is in dialing up. Quickly: The data is transmitting.
	DMZ	On	The DMZ function is enabled.
		Off	The DMZ function is disabled.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	USB	On	USB device is connected and ready for use.
		Off	No USB device is connected.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	QoS	On	The QoS function is active.
		Off	The QoS function is inactive.
	VPN	On	The VPN tunnel is active.
		Off	VPN services are disabled
		Blinking	Traffic is passing through VPN tunnel.
	WCF	On	The Web Content Filter is active. (It is enabled from **Firewall >> General Setup**).
		Off	WCF is disabled.
(2)	WAN1,WAN2 / P6		
	Left LED	On	The port is connected.
		Off	The port is disconnected.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	Right LED	On	The port is connected with 1000Mbps.
		Off	The port is connected with 10/100Mbps.
	LAN P1-P5		
	Left LED	On	The port is connected.
		Off	The port is disconnected.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	Right LED	On	The port is connected with 1000Mbps.
		Off	The port is connected with 10/100Mbps



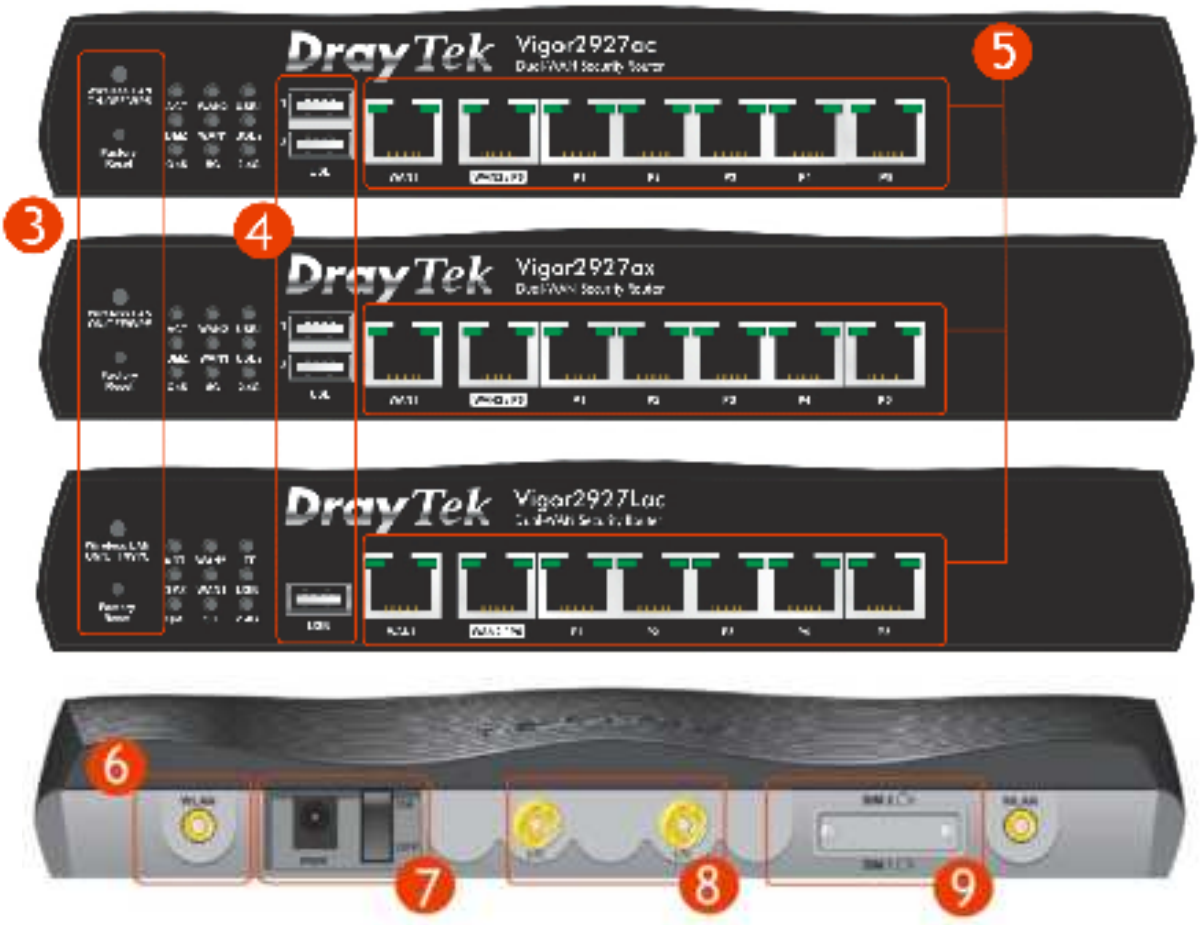
No.	Interface	Description
(3)	Factory Reset	Restore the default settings. Usage: Turn on the router (ACT LED is blinking). Press the hole and keep for more than 5 seconds. When you see the ACT LED begins to blink rapidly than usual, release the button. Then the router will restart with the factory default configuration.
(4)	USB	Connecter for a USB device (for 3G/4G USB Modem or printer or thermometer).
(5)	WAN1	Connecter for a modem for accessing Internet.
	WAN2 / P6	Connecter for local network devices or modem for accessing Internet. It is a switchable port. It can be used for LAN connection or WAN connection according to the settings configured in WUI.
	LAN P1-P5	Connecters for local network devices.
(6)	PWR	Connecter for a power adapter.
	ON/OFF	Power Switch.
(7)		Connecter for installing LTE antennas.
(8)	SIM 2/1	Slots for installing SIM card.

I-1-1-3 Vigor2927ac / Vigor2927ax / Vigor2927Lac



No.	LED	Status	Explanation
(1)	ACT	Off	The router is powered off.
		Blinking	The router is powered on and running normally.
	WAN2/WAN1	On	Internet connection is ready.
		Off	Internet connection is not ready.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	USB1/USB2	On	USB device is connected and ready for use.
		Off	No USB device is connected.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	LTE	On	LTE device is connected and ready for use.
		Off	LTE device is not detected, or has serious problem (e.g., no SIM card, SIM pin error, SIM deactivated, and etc.).
		Blinking	Slowly: LTE device is in dialing up. Quickly: The data is transmitting.
	DMZ	On	The DMZ function is enabled.
		Off	The DMZ function is disabled.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.

(1)	QoS	On	The QoS function is active.
		Off	The QoS function is inactive.
	5G / 2.4G	On	5G / 2.4G: Wireless access point with bandwidth of 5GHz/2.4GHz is ready. WLAN: Wireless access point is ready.
		Off	Wireless function is disabled.
		Blinking	It will blink slowly while wireless traffic goes through. ACT and WLAN LEDs blink quickly and simultaneously when WPS is working, and will return to normal condition after two minutes. (You need to setup WPS within 2 minutes.)
(2)	WAN1,WAN2 / P6		
	Left LED	On	The port is connected.
		Off	The port is disconnected.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	Right LED	On	The port is connected with 1000Mbps.
		Off	The port is connected with 10/100Mbps.
	LAN P1-P5		
	Left LED	On	The port is connected.
		Off	The port is disconnected.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	Right LED	On	The port is connected with 1000Mbps.
		Off	The port is connected with 10/100Mbps

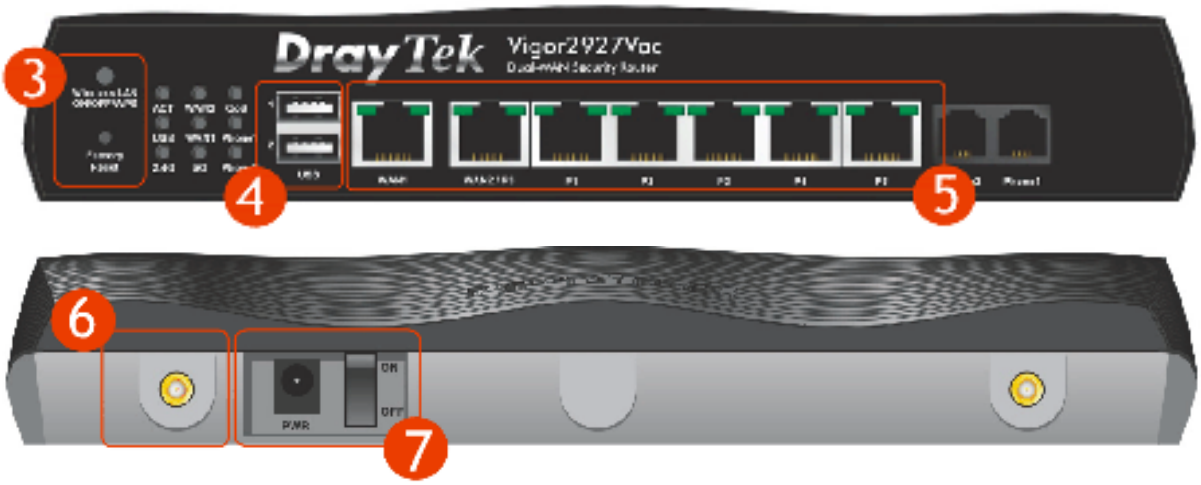


No.	Interface	Description
(3)	Wireless LAN ON/OFF/WPS	Wireless band will be switched /changed according to the button pressed and released. For example, ● 2.4G (On) and 5G (On) – in default. ● 2.4G (Off) and 5G (On) – pressed and released the button once. ● 2.4G (On) and 5G (Off) – pressed and released the button twice. ● 2.4G (Off) and 5G (Off) – pressed and released the button three times. When WPS function is enabled by web user interface, press this button for more than 2 seconds to wait for client's device making network connection through WPS.
	Factory Reset	Restore the default settings. Usage: Turn on the router (ACT LED is blinking). Press the hole and keep for more than 5 seconds. When you see the ACT LED begins to blink rapidly than usual, release the button. Then the router will restart with the factory default configuration.
(4)	USB1~2 / USB	Connecter for a USB device (for 3G/4G USB Modem or printer or thermometer).
(5)	WAN1	Connecter for a modem for accessing Internet.
	WAN2 / P6	Connecter for local network devices or modem for accessing Internet. It is a switchable port. It can be used for LAN connection or WAN connection according to the settings configured in WUI.
	LAN P1-P5	Connecters for local network devices.
(6)		Connecter for installing WLAN antennas. (For ac model)
(7)	PWR	Connecter for a power adapter.

	ON/OFF	Power Switch.
(8)		Connecter for installing LTE antennas. (For L model).
(9)	SIM 2/1	Slots for installing SIM card. (For L model).

I-1-1-4 Vigor2927Vac

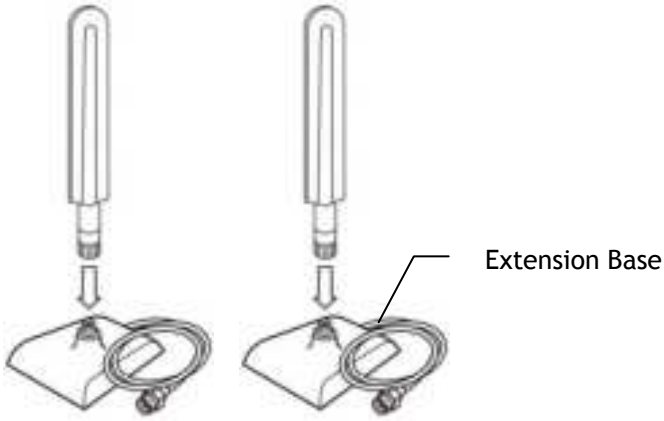
No.	LED	Status	Explanation
(1)	ACT	Off	The router is powered off.
		Blinking	The router is powered on and running normally.
	WAN2/WAN1	On	Internet connection is ready.
		Off	Internet connection is not ready.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	QoS	On	The QoS function is active.
		Off	The QoS function is inactive.
	USB	On	USB device is connected and ready for use.
		Off	No USB device is connected.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	Phone1/Phone 2	On	The phone connected to this port is off-hook.
		Off	The phone connected to this port is on-hook.
		Blinking	A phone call comes.
	2.4G/5G	On	5G / 2.4G: Wireless access point with bandwidth of 5GHz/2.4GHz is ready. WLAN: Wireless access point is ready.
		Off	Wireless function is disabled.
		Blinking	It will blink slowly while wireless traffic goes through. ACT and WLAN LEDs blink quickly and simultaneously when WPS is working, and will return to normal condition after two minutes. (You need to setup WPS within 2 minutes.)
(2)	WAN1,WAN2 / P6		
	Left LED	On	The port is connected.
		Off	The port is disconnected.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	Right LED	On	The port is connected with 1000Mbps.
		Off	The port is connected with 10/100Mbps.
	LAN P1-P5		
	Left LED	On	The port is connected.
		Off	The port is disconnected.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	Right LED	On	The port is connected with 1000Mbps.
		Off	The port is connected with 10/100Mbps



No.	Interface	Description
(3)	Wireless LAN ON/OFF/WPS	Wireless band will be switched /changed according to the button pressed and released. For example, ● 2.4G (On) and 5G (On) – in default. ● 2.4G (Off) and 5G (On) – pressed and released the button once. ● 2.4G (On) and 5G (Off) – pressed and released the button twice. ● 2.4G (Off) and 5G (Off) – pressed and released the button three times. When WPS function is enabled by web user interface, press this button for more than 2 seconds to wait for client's device making network connection through WPS.
	Factory Reset	Restore the default settings. Usage: Turn on the router (ACT LED is blinking). Press the hole and keep for more than 5 seconds. When you see the ACT LED begins to blink rapidly than usual, release the button. Then the router will restart with the factory default configuration.
(4)	USB1~2 / USB	Connecter for a USB device (for 3G/4G USB Modem or printer or thermometer).
(5)	WAN1	Connecter for a modem for accessing Internet.
	WAN2 / P6	Connecter for local network devices or modem for accessing Internet. It is a switchable port. It can be used for LAN connection or WAN connection according to the settings configured in WUI.
	LAN P1-P5	Connecters for local network devices.
(6)		Connecter for installing WLAN antennas. (For ac model)
(7)	PWR	Connecter for a power adapter.
	ON/OFF	Power Switch.

I-1-2 Notes for Antenna Installation (for “L” model)

Magnetic antenna must be installed on the extension base before connecting to Vigor router.



There are two mounting holes for installing antennas with extension base on Vigor router. Please install them as shown below.

Note, if only one antenna shall be installed, please use the mounting hole (major signal transmitted hole) near to the power switch.

While installing the SIM card into the card slot, note that back plate of the SIM card slot must be removed first and the direction of card notch must be on the left side.

There are two types of antennas provided for Vigor2927Lac, which must be installed in different locations carefully and correctly. Wrong installation might cause bad signal of wireless connection. Therefore, pay attention to the installation of antennas by referring to the following illustration.

I-2 Hardware Installation

I-2-1 Installing Vigor Router

Before starting to configure the router, you have to connect your devices correctly. (For the hardware connection, we take *"ac"* model as an example.)

1. Connect the DSL interface to the land line jack with a DSL line cable.

   Connect the cable Modem/DSL Modem/Media Converter to the WAN port of router with Ethernet cable (RJ-45).

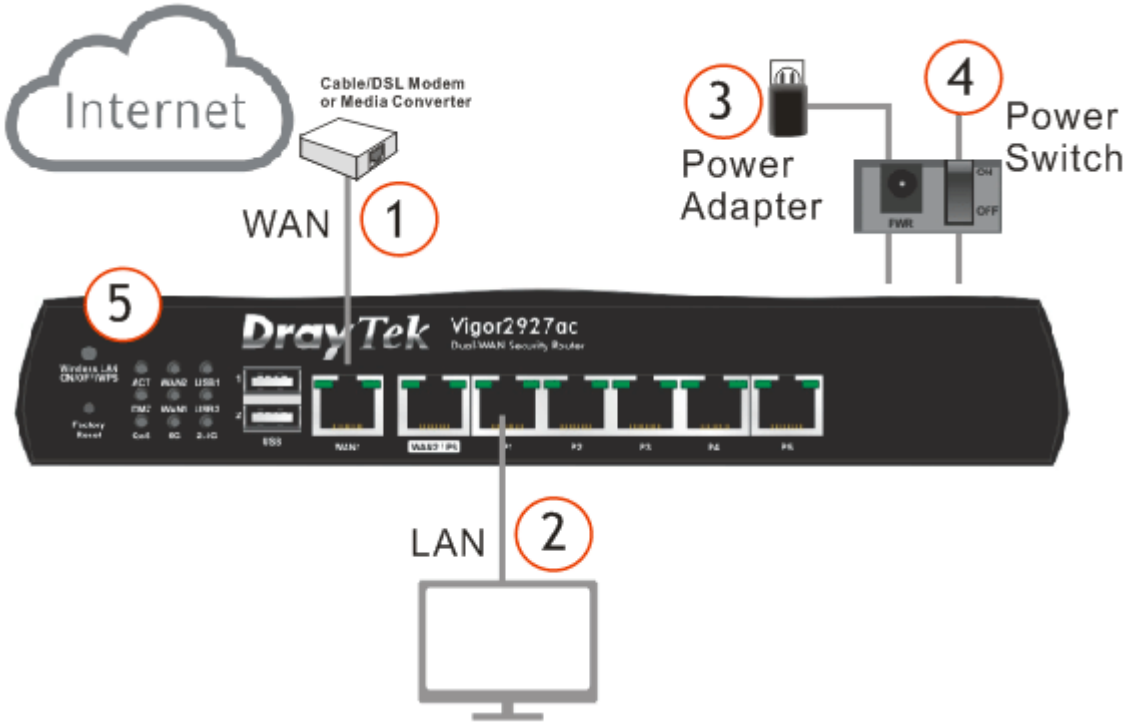
2. Connect one end of an Ethernet cable (RJ-45) to one of the **LAN** ports of the router and the other end of the cable (RJ-45) into the Ethernet port on your computer.

3. Connect one end of the power adapter to the router's power port on the rear panel, and the other side into a wall outlet.

4. Power on the device by pressing down the power switch on the rear panel.

5. The system starts to initiate. After completing the system test, the **ACT** LED will light up and start blinking.

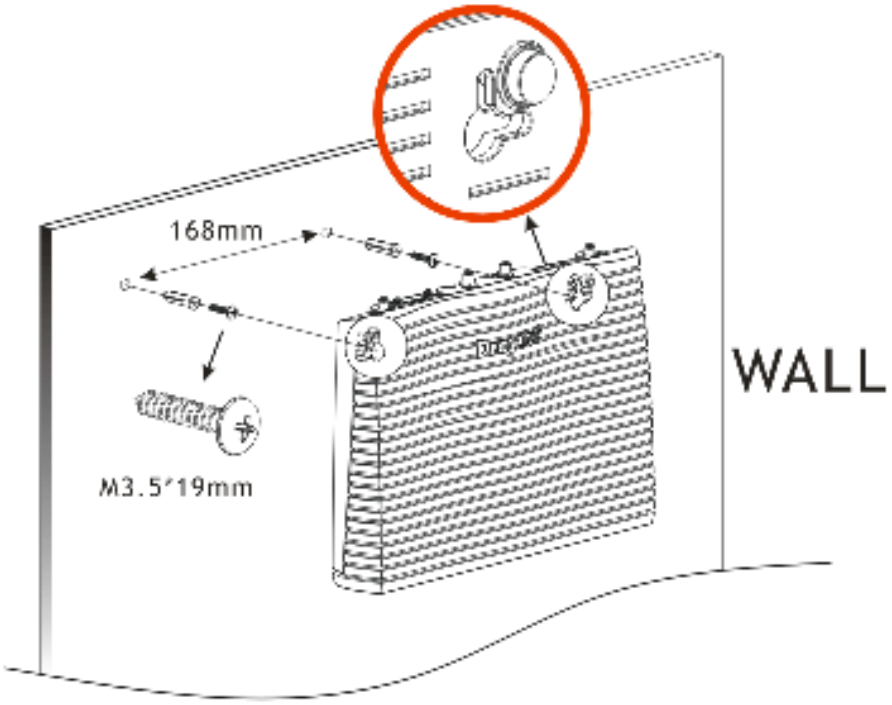
(For the hardware connection, we take *"ac"* model as an example.)



I-2-2 Wall-Mounted Installation

Vigor router has keyhole type mounting slots on the underside.

1. Drill two holes on the wall. The distance between the holes shall be 168mm.
2. Fit screws into the wall using the appropriate type of wall plug.

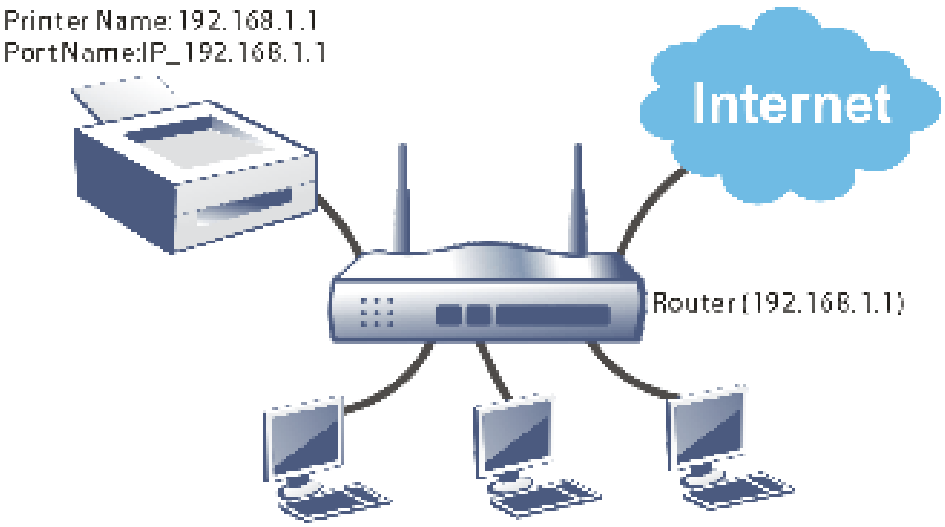


Info	The recommended drill diameter shall be 6.5mm (1/4”).

3. When you finished about procedure, the router has been mounted on the wall firmly.

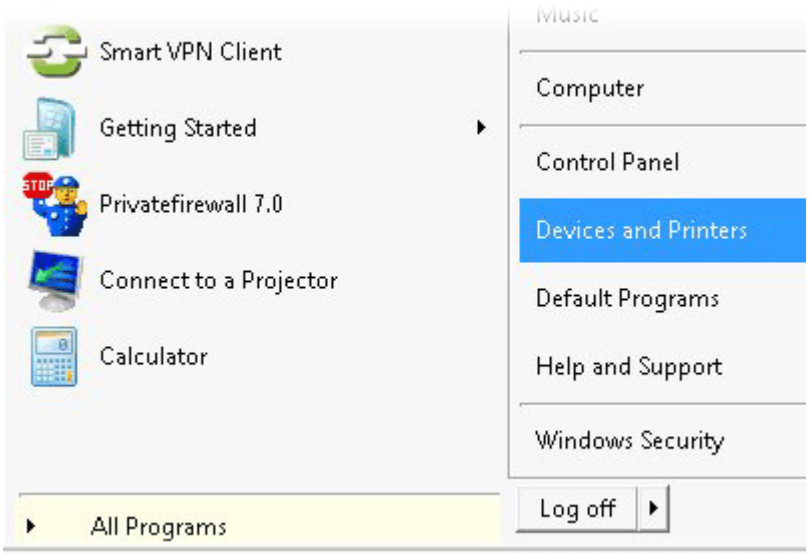
I-2-3 Installing USB Printer to Vigor Router

You can install a printer onto the router for sharing printing. All the PCs connected this router can print documents via the router. The example provided here is made based on Windows 7. For other Windows system, please visit **www.DrayTek.com**.

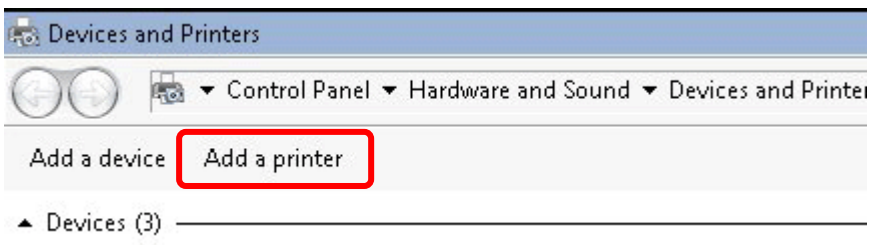


Before using it, please follow the steps below to configure settings for connected computers (or wireless clients).

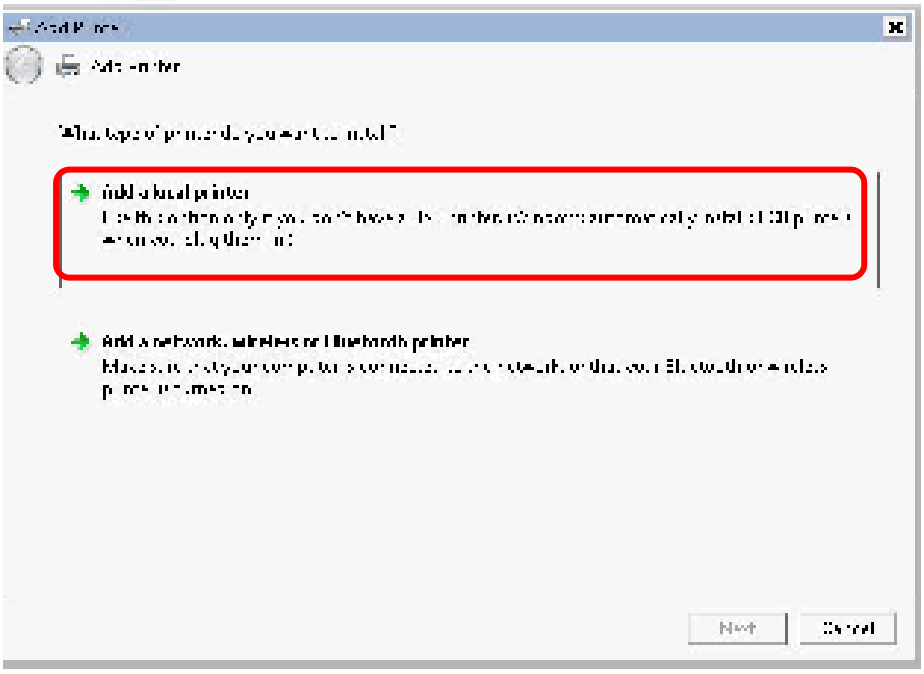
1. Connect the printer with the router through USB/parallel port.
2. Open **All Programs>>Getting Started>>Devices and Printers.**



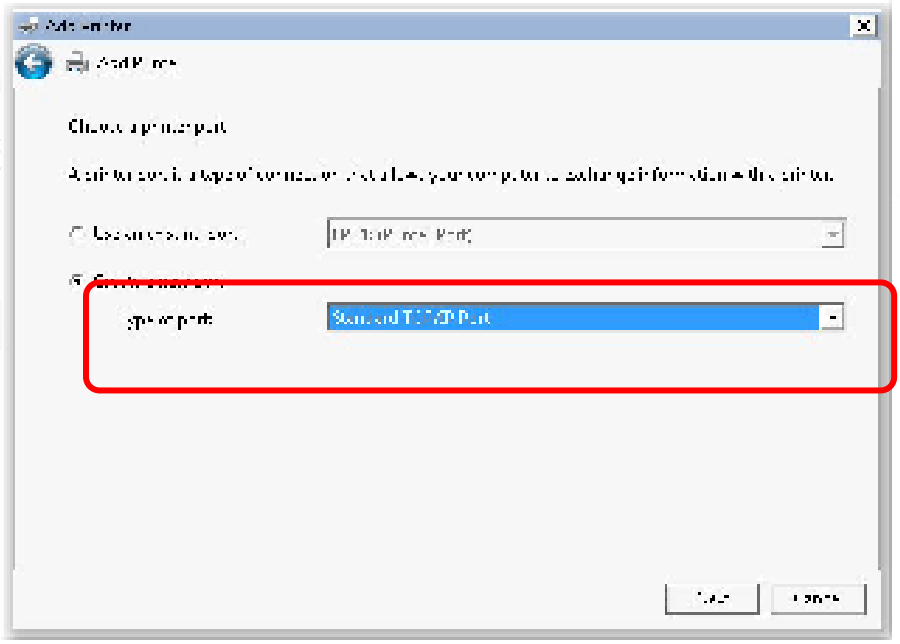
3. Click **Add a printer**.



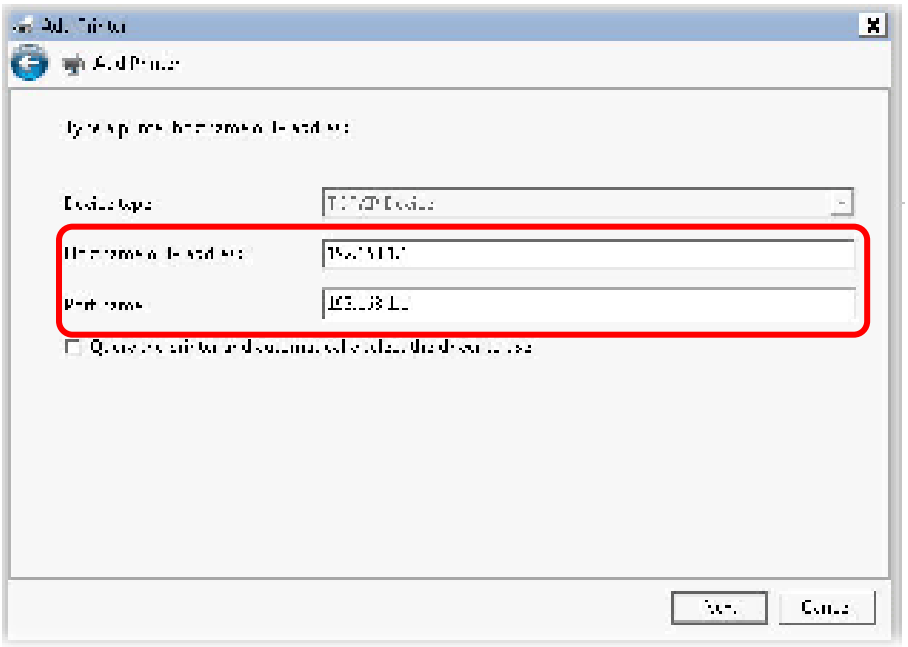
4. A dialog will appear. Click **Add a local printer** and click **Next**.



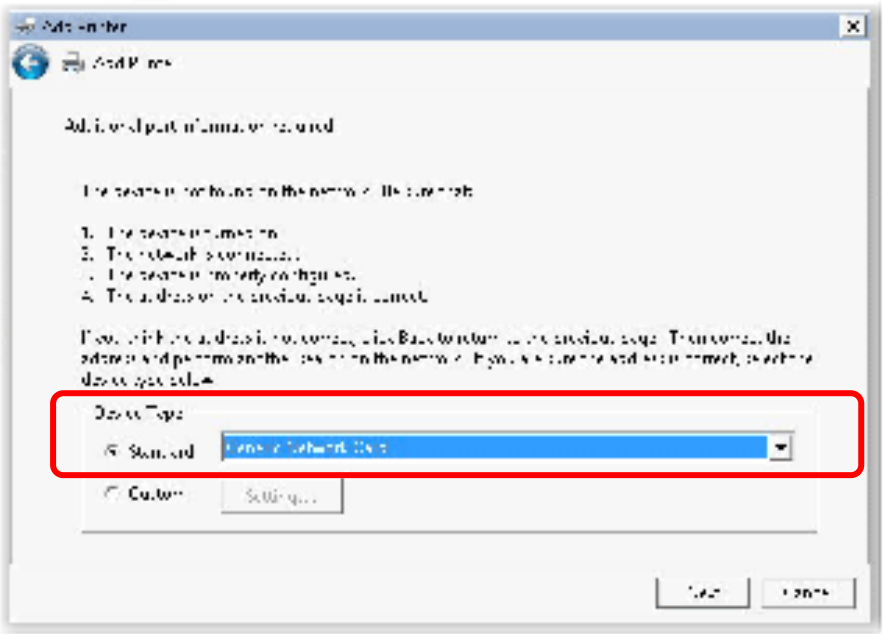
5. In this dialog, choose **Create a new port.** In the field of **Type of port**, use the drop down list to select **Standard TCP/IP Port**. Then, click **Next**.



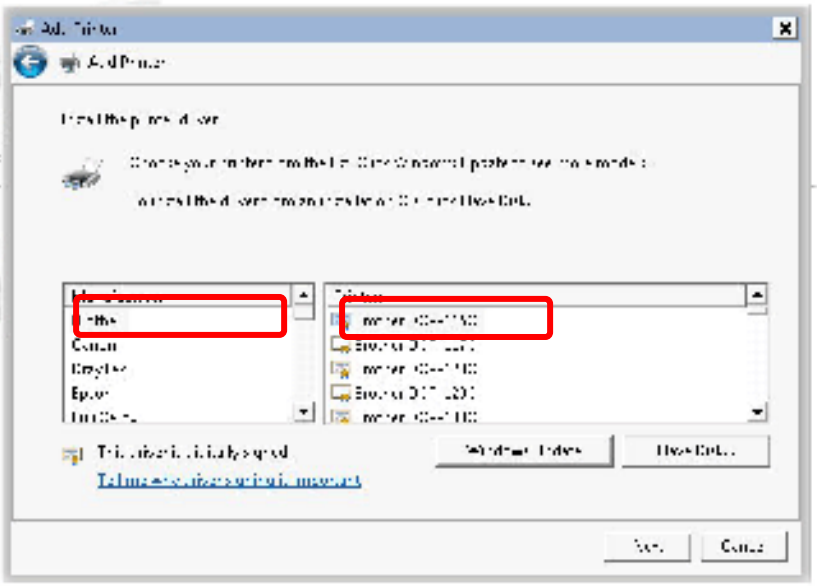
6. In the following dialog, type **192.168.1.1** (router's LAN IP) in the field of **Hostname or IP Address** and type **192.168.1.1** as the **Port name**. Then, click **Next**.



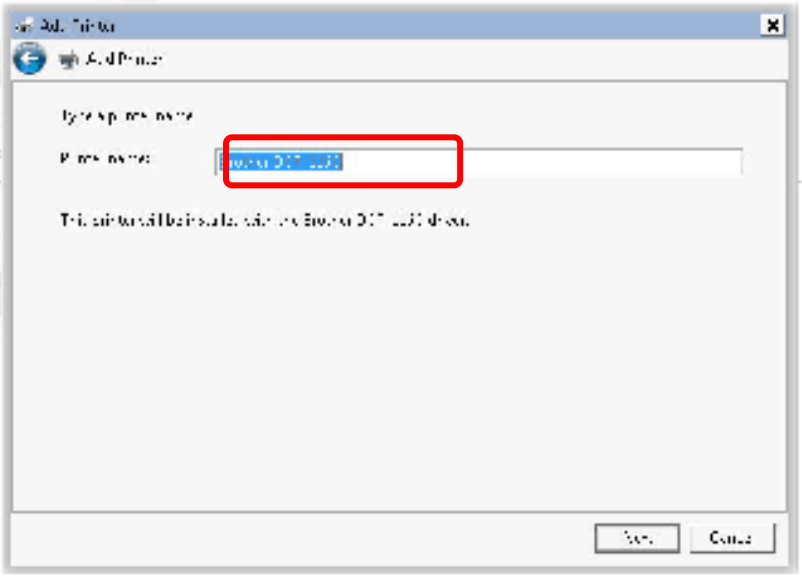
7. Click **Standard** and choose **Generic Network Card**.



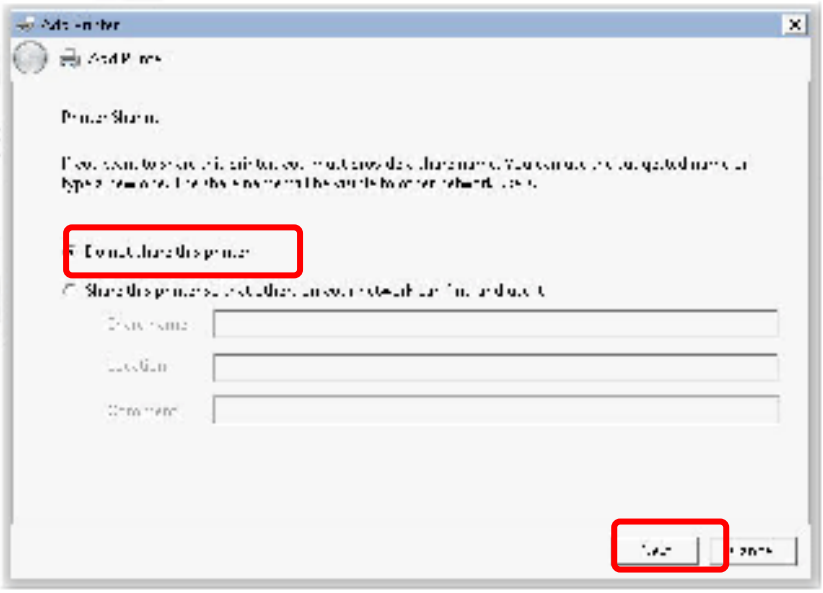
8. Now, your system will ask you to choose right name of the printer that you installed onto the router. Such step can make correct driver loaded onto your PC. When you finish the selection, click **Next**.



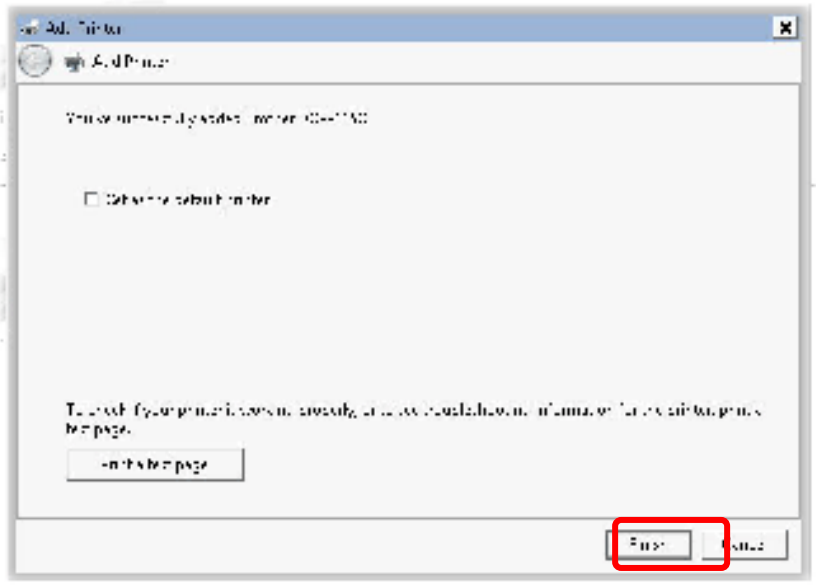
9. Type a name for the chosen printer. Click **Next**.



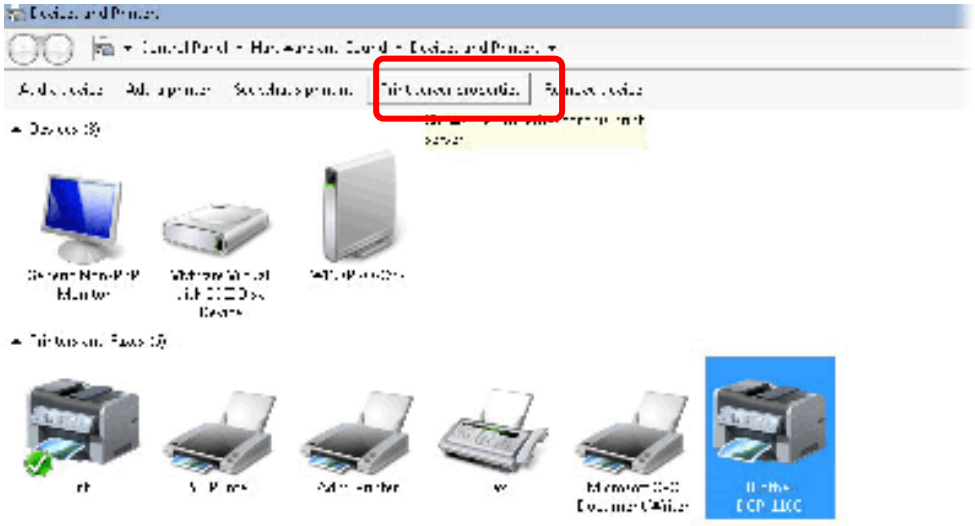
10. Choose **Do not share this printe**r and click **Next**.



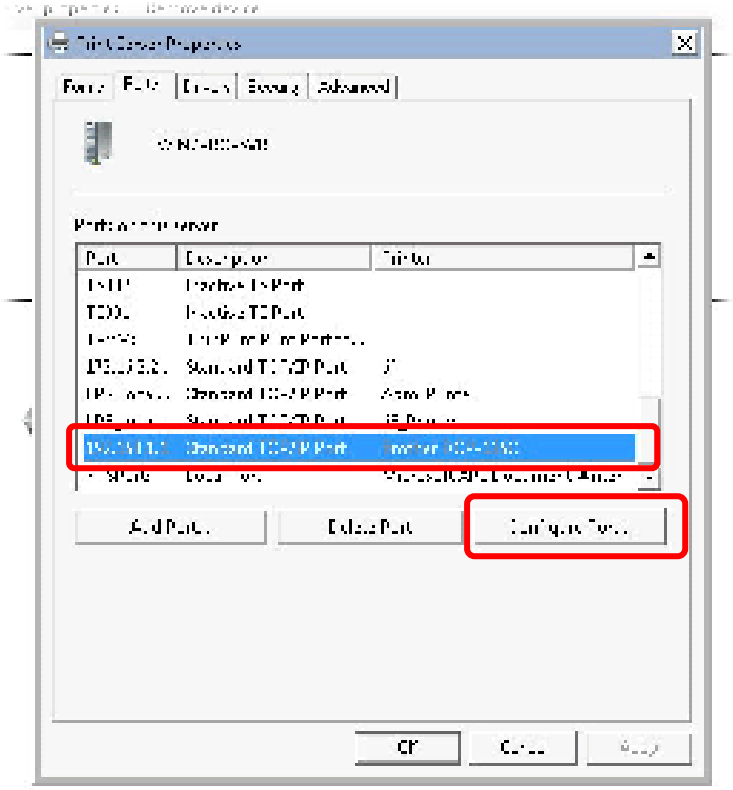
11. Then, in the following dialog, click **Finish**.



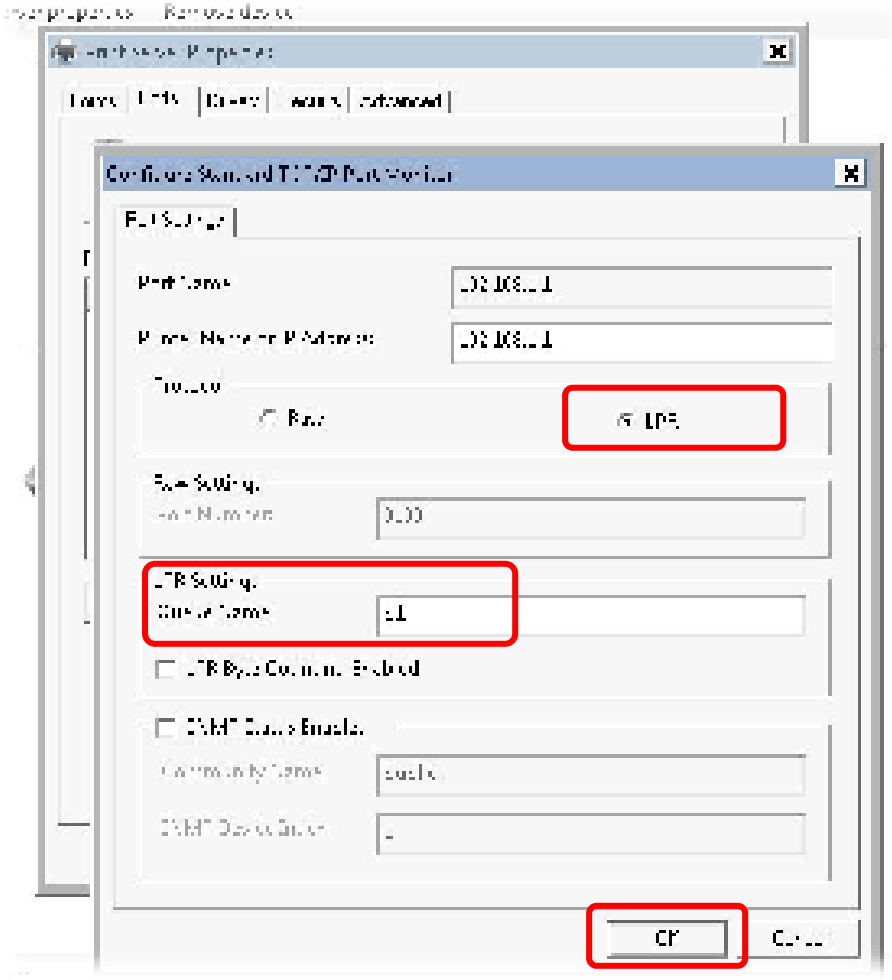
12. The new printer has been added and displayed under **Printers and Faxes**. Click the new printer icon and click **Printer server properties**.



13. Edit the property of the new printer you have added by clicking **Configure Port**.



14. Select "**LPR**" on Protocol, type **p1** (number 1) as **Queue Name**. Then click **OK**. Next please refer to the red rectangle for choosing the correct protocol and LPR name.



The printer can be used for printing now. Most of the printers with different manufacturers are compatible with vigor router.

Info	Some printers with the fax/scanning or other additional functions are not supported. Vigor router supports printing request from computers via LAN ports but not WAN port.

I-3 Accessing Web Page

1. Make sure your PC connects to the router correctly.

   You may either simply set up your computer to get IP dynamically from the router or set up the IP address of the computer to be the same subnet as **the default IP address of Vigor router 192.168.1.1**. For the detailed information, please refer to the later section - Trouble Shooting of the guide.

2. Open a web browser on your PC and type **http://192.168.1.1.** The following window will be open to ask for username and password.

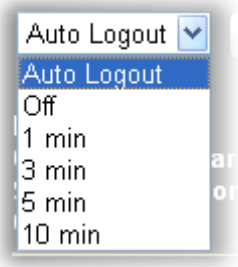
3. Please type “admin/admin” as the Username/Password and click **Login**.

Info	If you fail to access to the web configuration, please go to “Trouble Shooting” for detecting and solving your problem.

4. Now, the **Main Screen** will appear. Take Vigor2927ac as an example.

Info	The home page will be different slightly in accordance with the type of the router you have.

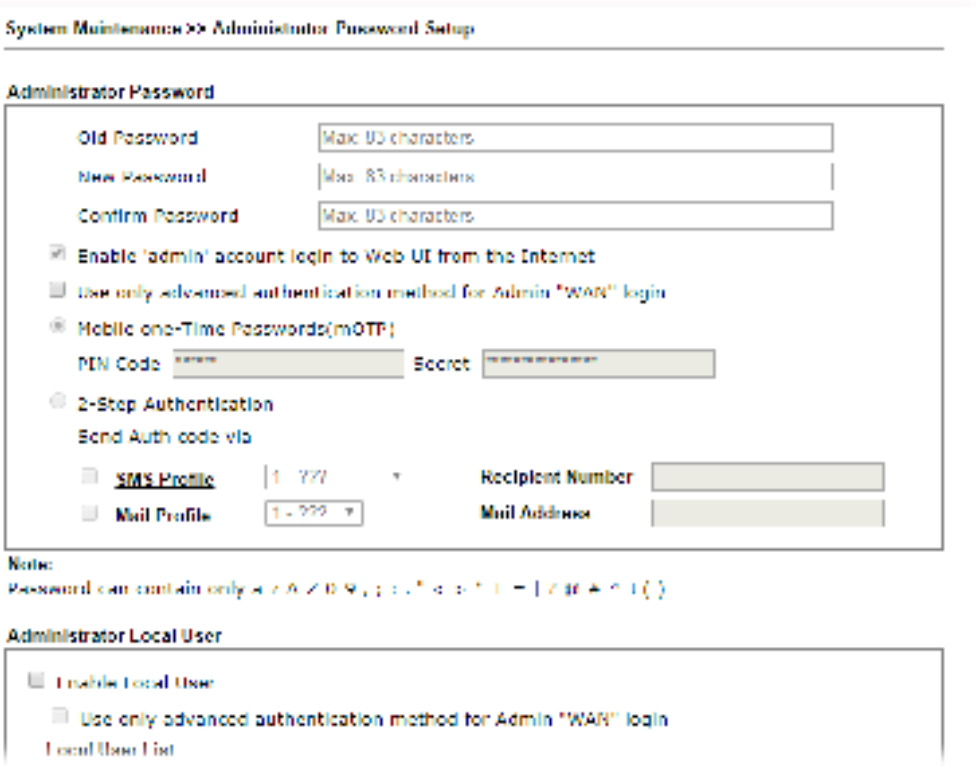
5. The web page can be logged out according to the chosen condition. The default setting is **Auto Logout**, which means the web configuration system will logout after 5 minutes without any operation. Change the setting for your necessity.



I-4 Changing Password

Please change the password for the original security of the router.

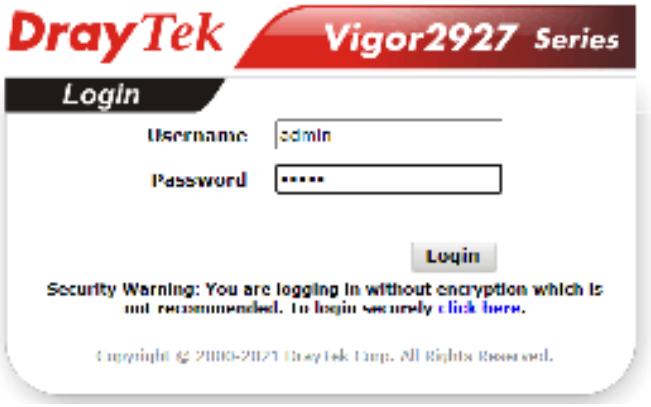
1. Open a web browser on your PC and type **http://192.168.1.1.** A pop-up window will open to ask for username and password.
2. Please type “admin/admin” as Username/Password for accessing into the web user interface with admin mode.
3. Go to **System Maintenance** page and choose **Administrator Password**.



4. Enter the login password (the default is “admin”) on the field of **Old Password**. Type **New Password** and **Confirm Password**. Then click **OK** to continue.

Info	The maximum length of the password you can set is 23 characters.

5. Now, the password has been changed. Next time, use the new password to access the Web user interface for this router.



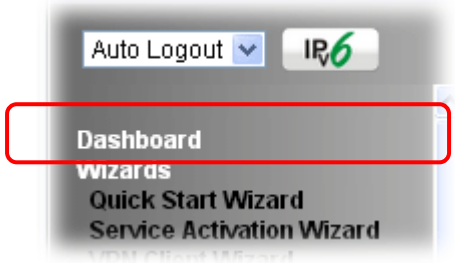
Info

Even the password is changed, the Username for logging onto the web user interface is still “admin”.

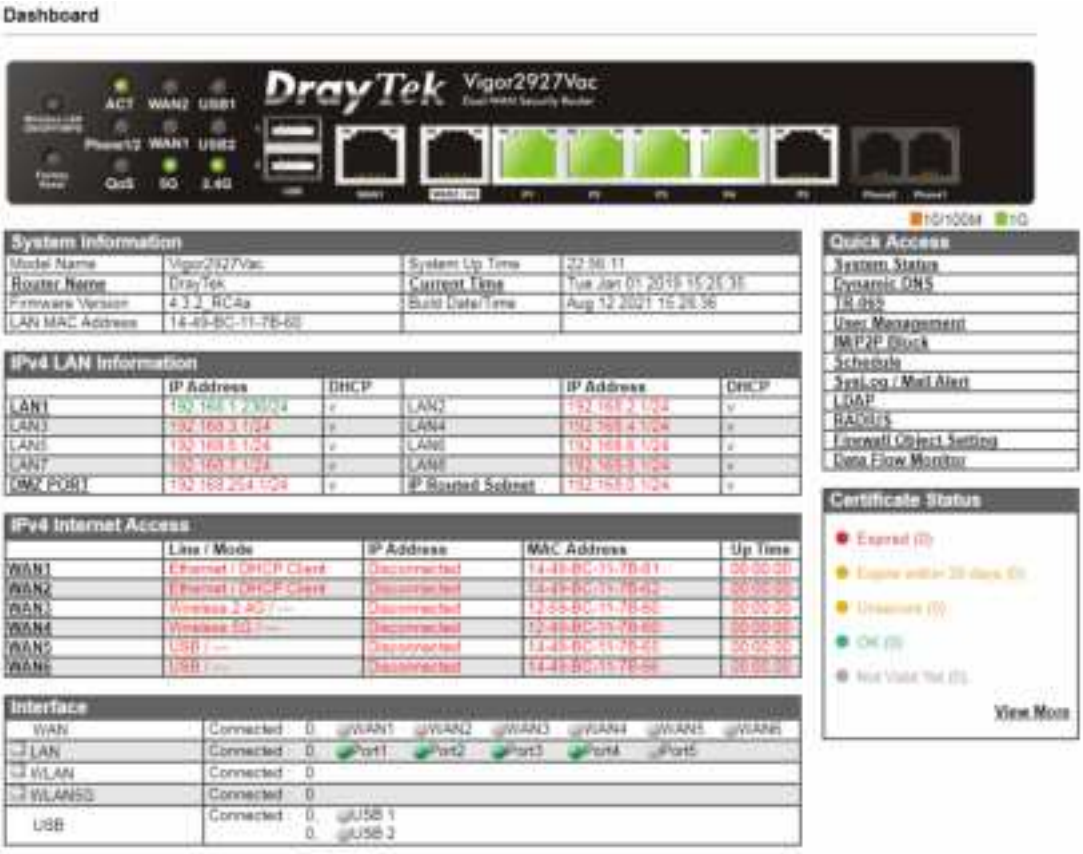
I-5 Dashboard

Dashboard shows the connection status including System Information, IPv4 Internet Access, IPv6 Internet Access, Interface (physical connection), Security and Quick Access.

Click **Dashboard** from the main menu on the left side of the main page.



A web page with default selections will be displayed on the screen. Refer to the following figure:



I-5-1 Virtual Panel

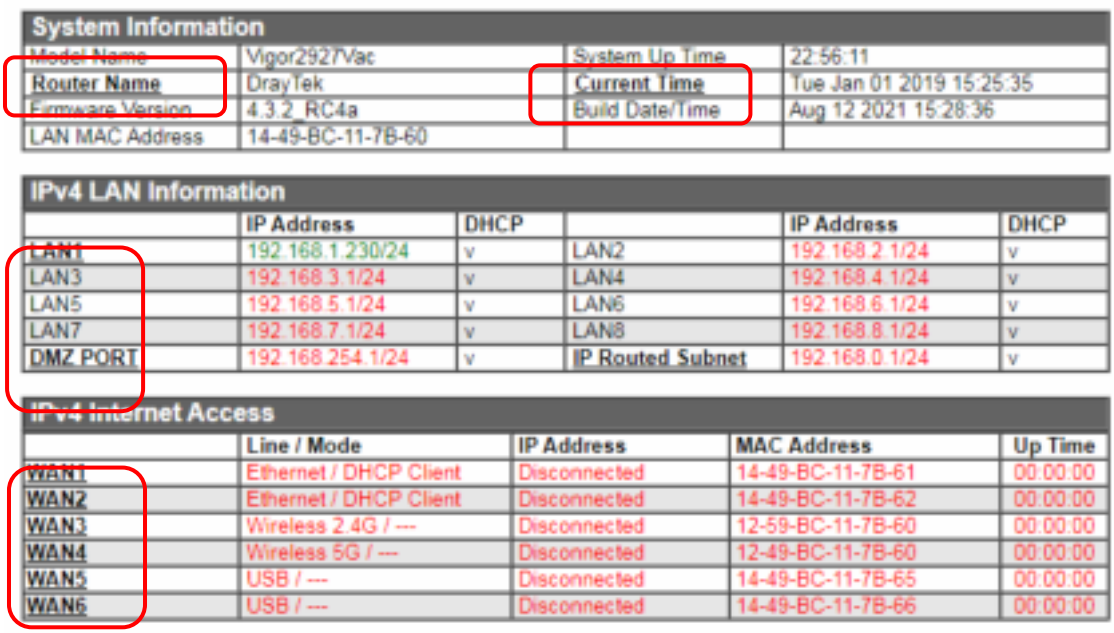
On the top of the Dashboard, a virtual panel (simulating the physical panel of the router) displays the physical interface connection. It will be refreshed every five seconds. When you move and click the mouse cursor on LEDs (except ACT), USB ports, WAN2/P6, or LAN1 – LAN5 (P1~P5), related web setting page will be open for you to configure if required.

Port	Color	Description
WAN2/P6	Black	WAN2 port is disconnected.
	Green	WAN2 port is connected at 1 Gbps.
	Orange	WAN2 port is connected at 10/100 Mbps.
P1 ~ P5	Black	LAN port is disconnected.
	Green	LAN port is connected at 1 Gbps.
	Orange	LAN port is connected at 10/100 Mbps.

For detailed information about the LED display, refer to **I-1-1 LED Indicators and Connectors**.

I-5-2 Name with a Link

A name with a link (e.g., Router Name, Current Time, WAN1~6 and etc.) below means you can click it to open the configuration page for modification.



System Information

Model Name	Vigor2927Vac	System Up Time	22:56:11
Router Name	DrayTek	Current Time	Tue Jan 01 2019 15:25:35
Firmware Version	4.3.2_RC4a	Build Date/Time	Aug 12 2021 15:28:36
LAN MAC Address	14-49-BC-11-7B-60		

IPv4 LAN Information

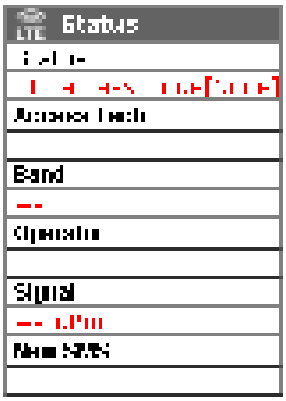
	IP Address	DHCP		IP Address	DHCP
LAN1	192.168.1.230/24	v	LAN2	192.168.2.1/24	v
LAN3	192.168.3.1/24	v	LAN4	192.168.4.1/24	v
LAN5	192.168.5.1/24	v	LAN6	192.168.6.1/24	v
LAN7	192.168.7.1/24	v	LAN8	192.168.8.1/24	v
DMZ PORT	192.168.254.1/24	v	IP Routed Subnet	192.168.0.1/24	v

IPv4 Internet Access

	Line / Mode	IP Address	MAC Address	Up Time
WAN1	Ethernet / DHCP Client	Disconnected	14-49-BC-11-7B-61	00:00:00
WAN2	Ethernet / DHCP Client	Disconnected	14-49-BC-11-7B-62	00:00:00
WAN3	Wireless 2.4G / ---	Disconnected	12-59-BC-11-7B-60	00:00:00
WAN4	Wireless 5G / ---	Disconnected	12-49-BC-11-7B-60	00:00:00
WAN5	USB / ---	Disconnected	14-49-BC-11-7B-65	00:00:00
WAN6	USB / ---	Disconnected	14-49-BC-11-7B-66	00:00:00

I-5-3 Status for LTE

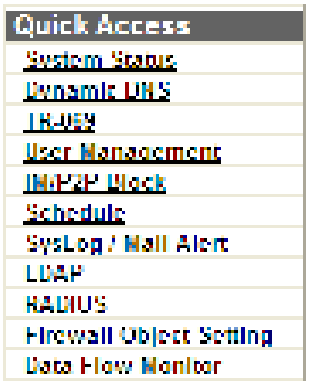
It is a short table which displays current status for Vigor2927L/Vigor2927Lac including acess mode used, access tech adopted, band usage, operator, strength of signal and notification of new SMS received.



I-5-4 Quick Access for Common Used Menu

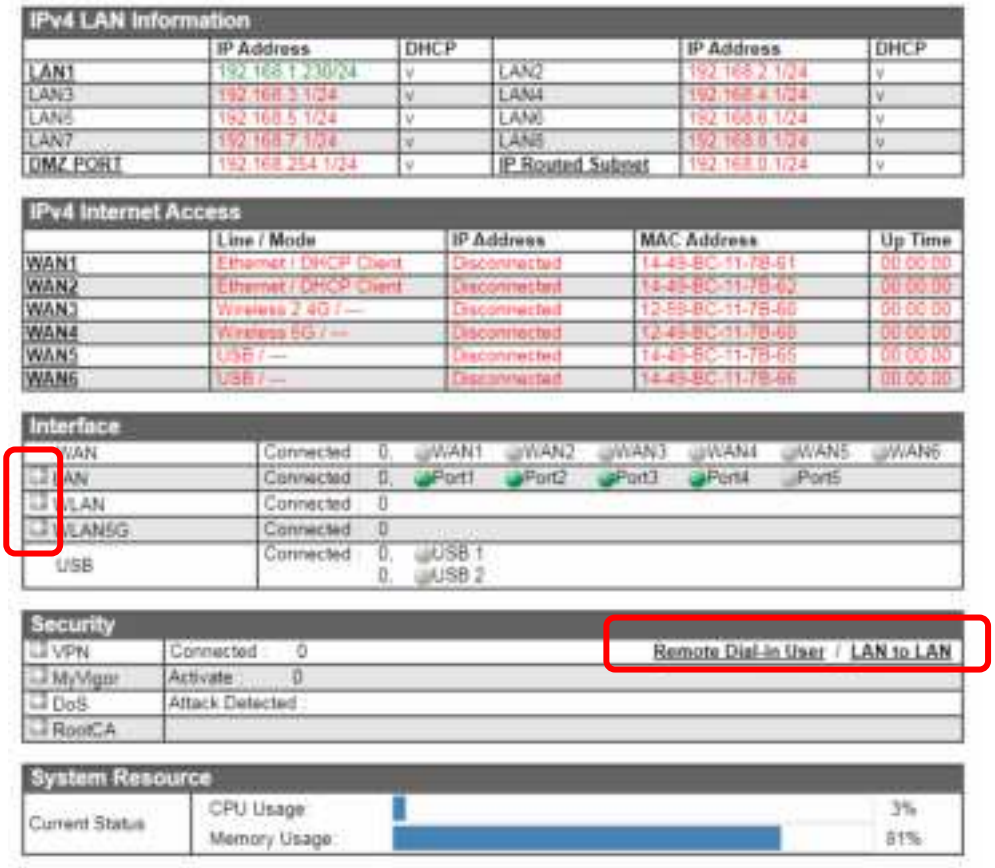
All the menu items can be accessed and arranged orderly on the left side of the main page for your request. However, some **important** and **common** used menu items which can be accessed in a quick way just for convenience.

Look at the right side of the Dashboard. You will find a group of common used functions grouped under **Quick Access**.

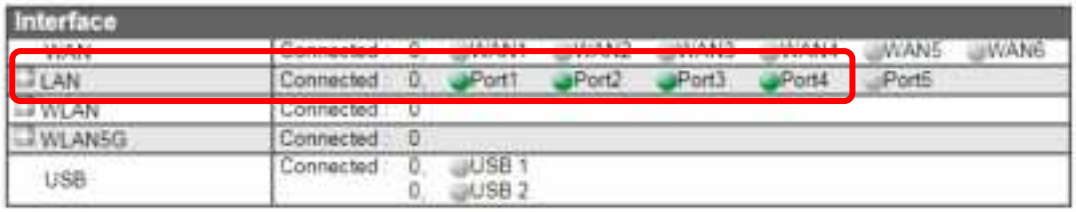


The function links of System Status, Dynamic DDNS, TR-069, User Management, IM/P2P Block, Schedule, Syslog/Mail Alert, LDAP, RADIUS, Firewall Object Setting and Data Flow Monitor are displayed here. Move your mouse cursor on any one of the links and click on it. The corresponding setting page will be open immediately.

In addition, quick access for VPN security settings such as **Remote Dial-in User** and **LAN to LAN** are located on the bottom of this page. Scroll down the page to find them and use them if required.



Note that there is a plus ( ) icon located on the left side of VPN/LAN. Click it to review the VPN connection(s) used presently.

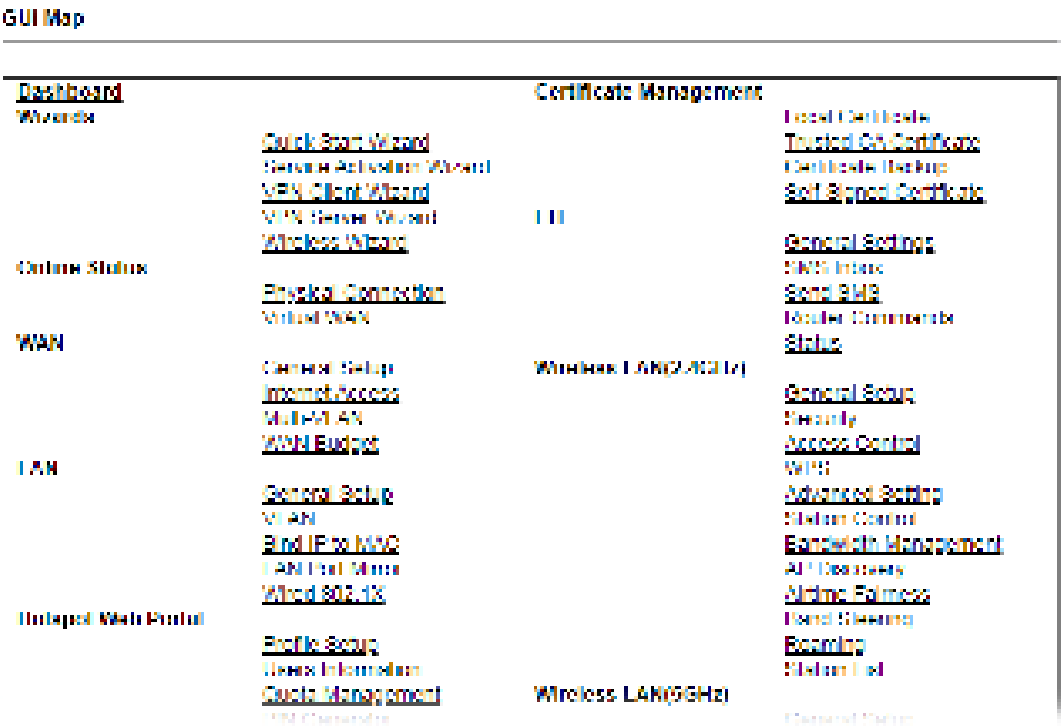


Host connected physically to the router via LAN port(s) will be displayed with green circles in the field of Connected.

All of the hosts (including wireless clients) displayed with Host ID, IP Address and MAC address indicates that the traffic would be transmitted through LAN port(s) and then the WAN port. The purpose is to perform the traffic monitor of the host(s).

I-5-5 GUI Map

All the functions the router supports are listed with table clearly in this page. Users can click the function link to access into the setting page of the function for detailed configuration. Click the icon on the top of the main screen to display all the functions.



I-5-6 Web Console

It is not necessary to use the telnet command via DOS prompt. The changes made by using web console have the same effects as modified through web user interface. The functions/settings modified under Web Console also can be reviewed on the web user interface.

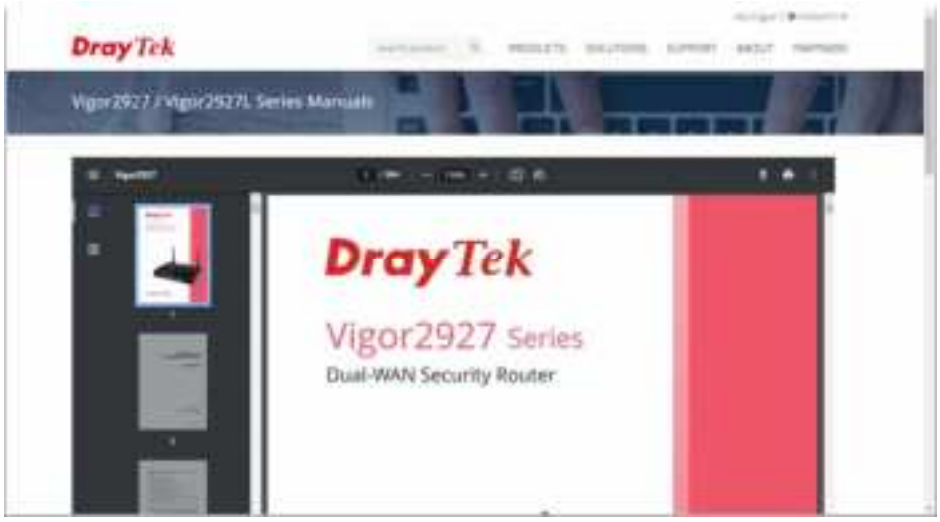
Click the **Web Console** icon on the top of the main screen to open the following screen.

I-5-7 Config Backup

There is one way to store current used settings quickly by clicking the **Config Backup** icon. It allows you to backup current settings as a file. Such configuration file can be restored by using **System Maintenance>>Configuration Backup**.

I-5-8 Manual Download

Click this icon to open online user's guide of Vigor router. This document offers detailed information for the settings on web user interface.



I-5-9 Logout

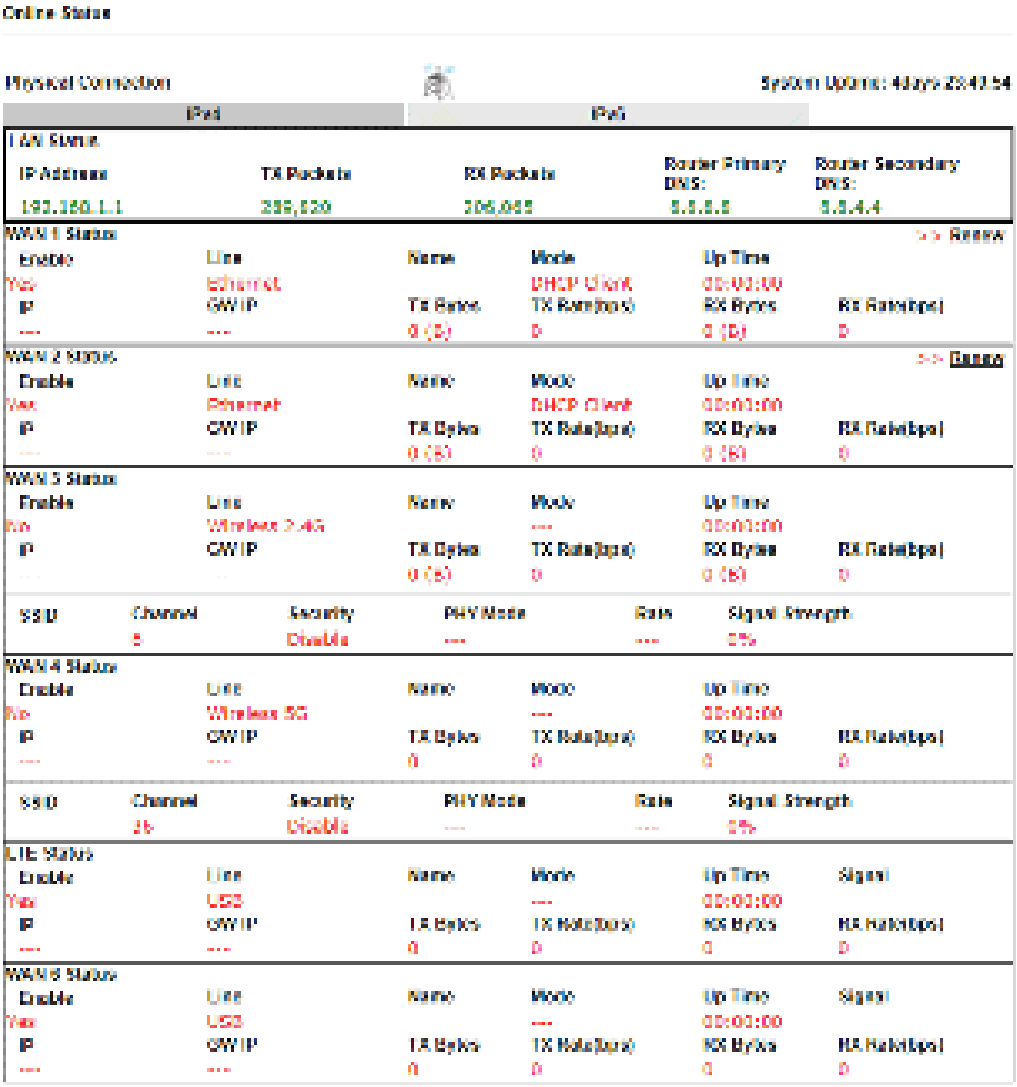
Click this icon to exit the web user interface.

I-5-10 Online Status

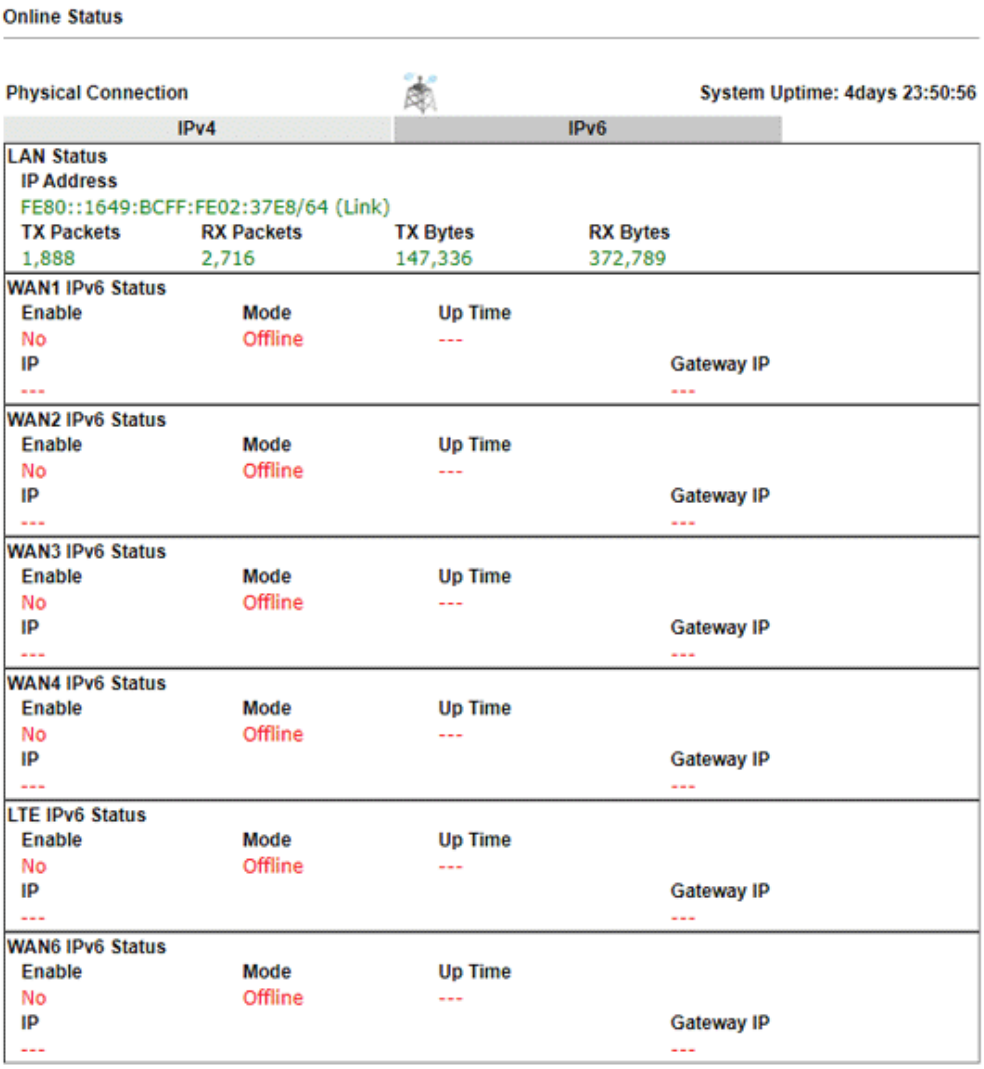
I-5-10-1 Physical Connection

Such page displays the physical connection status such as LAN connection status, WAN connection status, and so on.

Physical Connection for IPv4 Protocol



Physical Connection for IPv6 Protocol



Detailed explanation (for IPv4) is shown below:

Item	Description
LAN Status	**Primary DNS**-Displays the primary DNS server address for WAN interface. **Secondary DNS** -Displays the secondary DNS server address for WAN interface. **IP Address**-Displays the IP address of the LAN interface. **TX Packets**-Displays the total transmitted packets at the LAN interface. **RX Packets**-Displays the total received packets at the LAN interface.
WAN1/WAN2/WAN3 /WAN4/WAN5/WAN6 Status	**Enable – Yes** in red means such interface is available but not enabled. **Yes** in green means such interface is enabled. **Mode** - Displays the type of WAN connection (e.g., PPPoE). **Up Time** - Displays the total uptime of the interface. **IP** - Displays the IP address of the WAN interface. **GW IP** - Displays the IP address of the default gateway. **TX Packets** - Displays the total transmitted packets at the

Item	Description
	WAN interface. **TX Rate** - Displays the speed of transmitted octets at the WAN interface. **RX Packets** - Displays the total number of received packets at the WAN interface. **RX Rate** - Displays the speed of received octets at the WAN interface.

Detailed explanation (for IPv6) is shown below:

Item	Description
LAN Status	**IP Address**- Displays the IPv6 address of the LAN interface.. **TX Packets**-Displays the total transmitted packets at the LAN interface. **RX Packets**-Displays the total received packets at the LAN interface. **TX Bytes** - Displays the speed of transmitted octets at the LAN interface. **RX Bytes** - Displays the speed of received octets at the LAN interface.
WAN IPv6 Status	**Enable – No** in red means such interface is available but not enabled. **Yes** in green means such interface is enabled. No in red means such interface is not available. **Mode** - Displays the type of WAN connection (e.g., TSPC). **Up Time** - Displays the total uptime of the interface. **IP** - Displays the IP address of the WAN interface. **Gateway IP** - Displays the IP address of the default gateway.

Info	The words in green mean that the WAN connection of that interface is ready for accessing Internet; the words in red mean that the WAN connection of that interface is not ready for accessing Internet.

I-5-10-2 Virtual WAN

Such page displays the virtual WAN connection information.

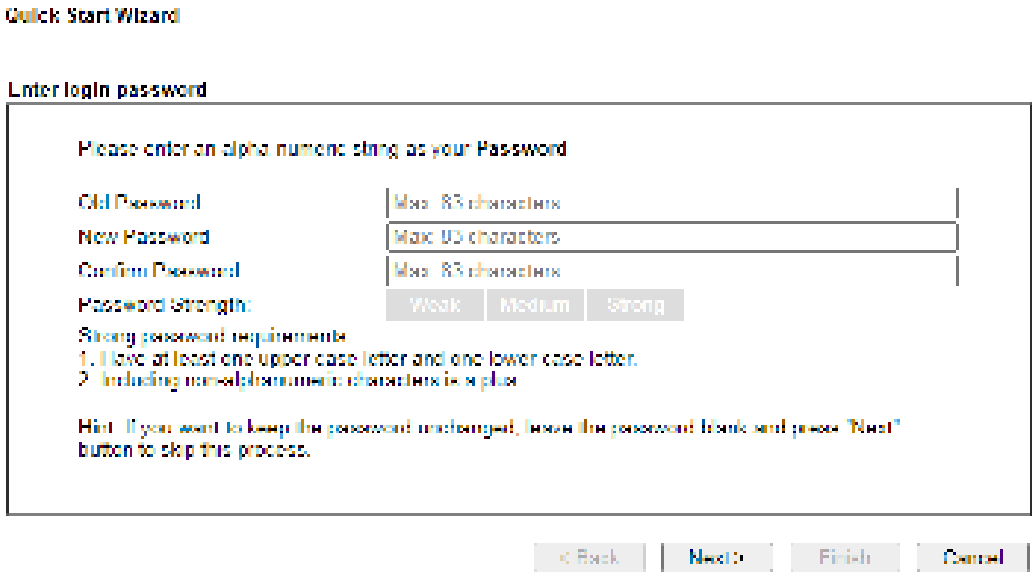
Virtual WAN are used by TR-069 management, VoIP service and so on.

The field of Application will list the purpose of such WAN connection.

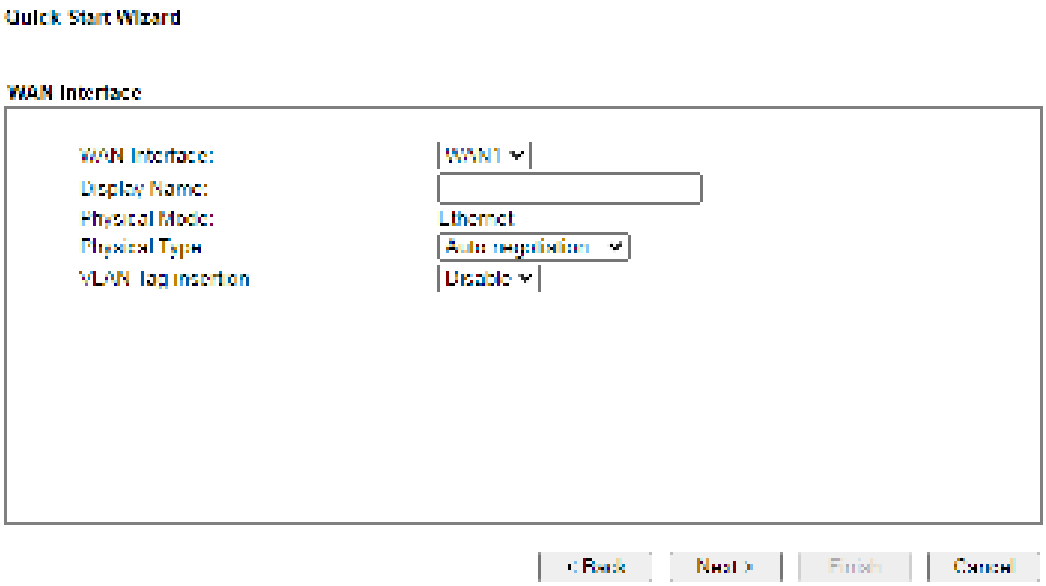
I-6 Quick Start Wizard

Quick Start Wizard can help you to deploy and use the router easily and quickly.

Go to **Wizards>>Quick Start Wizard**. The first screen of **Quick Start Wizard** is entering login password. After typing the password, please click **Next**.



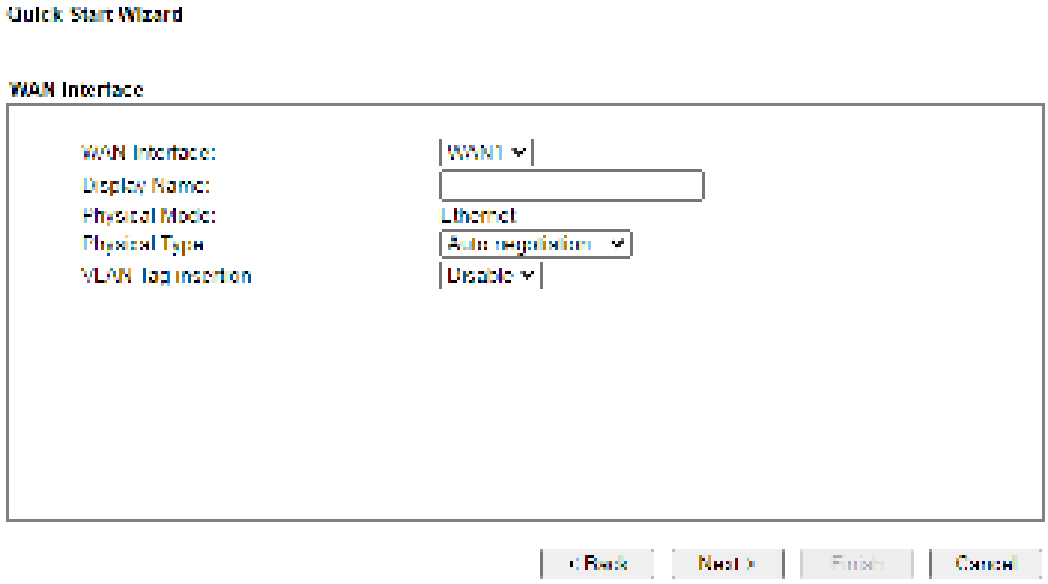
On the next page as shown below, please select the WAN interface that you use. If Ethernet interface is used, please choose WAN1/WAN2; if 3G USB modem is used, please choose WAN3 or WAN4. Then click **Next** for next step.



WAN1, WAN2, WAN3, WAN4, WAN5 and WAN6 will bring up different configuration page. Refer to the following for detailed information.

I-6-1 For WAN1/WAN2 (Ethernet)

WAN1/WAN2 can be configured for physical mode of Ethernet.



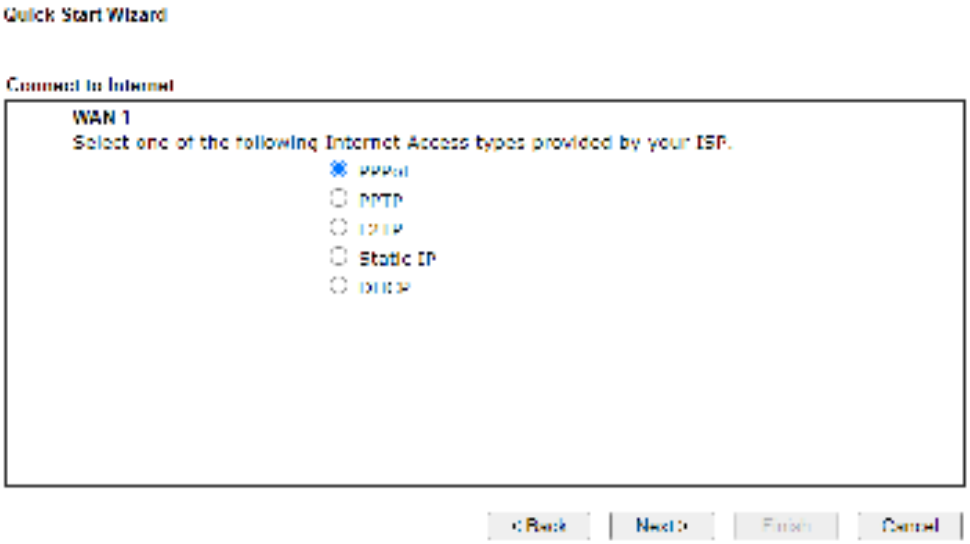
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Display Name	Enter a name for the router.
Physical Type	This setting is available when **Ethernet** is selected as **Physical Mode**. In general, **Auto negotiation** is suggested.
VLAN Tag insertion	The settings configured in this field are available when **Ethernet** is selected as **Physical Mode**. **Disable** – Disable the function of VLAN with tag. **Enable** – Enable the function of VLAN with tag. The router will add specific VLAN number to all packets on the WAN while sending them out. Please Enter the tag value and specify the priority for the packets sending by WAN. ● **Tag value** – Enter the value as the VLAN ID number. The range is form 0 to 4095. ● **Priority** – Enter the packet priority number for such VLAN. The range is from 0 to 7.

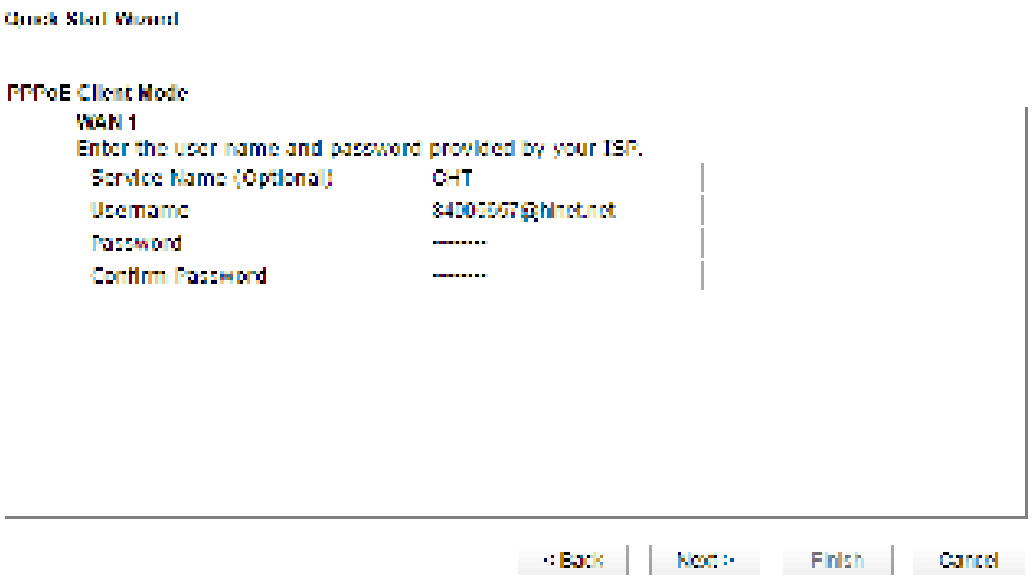
On the next page as shown below, please select the appropriate Internet access type according to the information from your ISP. For example, you should select PPPoE mode if the ISP provides you PPPoE interface. Then click **Next** for next step.

Ethernet WAN1/2 - PPPoE

1. Choose **WAN1** as the WAN Interface and choose **Ethernet** as the **Physical Mode**. Click the **Next** button. The following page will be open for you to specify Internet Access Type.



2. Click **PPPoE** as the Internet Access Type. Then click **Next** to continue.

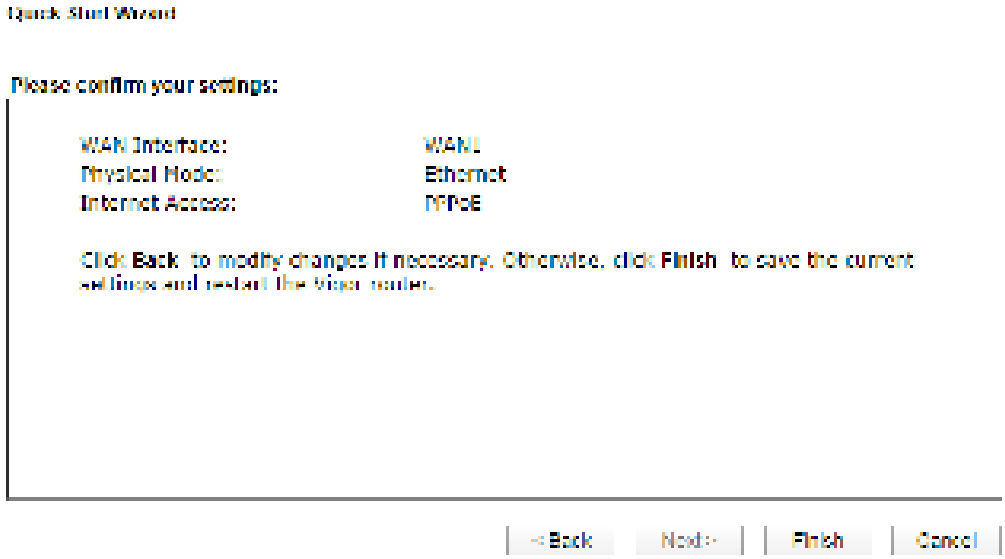


Available settings are explained as follows:

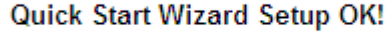
Item	Description
Service Name (Optional)	Enter the description of the specific network service.
Username	Assign a specific valid user name provided by the ISP. **Note:** The maximum length of the user name you can set is 63 characters.
Password	Assign a valid password provided by the ISP. **Note:** The maximum length of the password you can set is 62 characters.

Item	Description
Confirm Password	Re-enter the password.
Back	Click it to return to previous setting page.
Next	Click it to get into the next setting page.
Cancel	Click it to give up the quick start wizard.

3. Please manually enter the Username/Password provided by your ISP. Click **Next** for viewing summary of such connection.



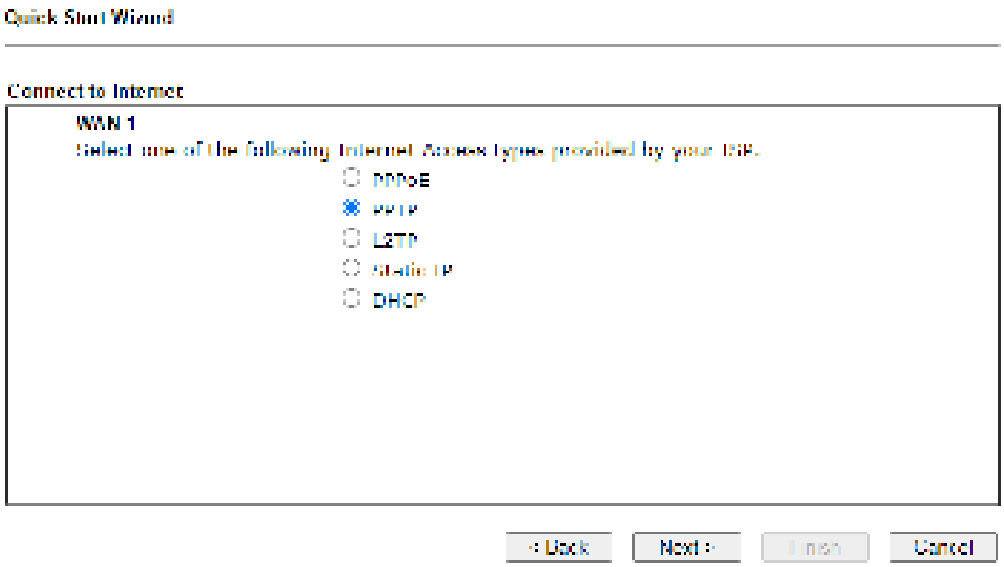
4. Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.



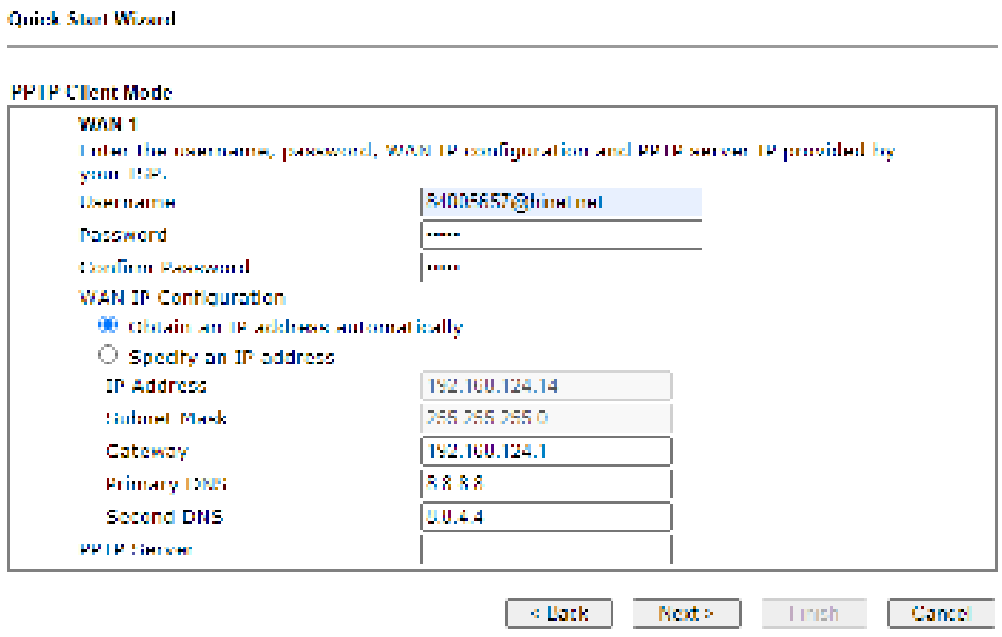
5. Now, you can enjoy surfing on the Internet.

Ethernet WAN1/2 - PPTP/L2TP

1. Choose **WAN1** as the WAN Interface and choose **Ethernet** as the **Physical Mode**. Click the **Next** button. The following page will be open for you to specify Internet Access Type.



2. Click **PPTP/L2TP** as the Internet Access Type. Then click **Next** to continue.

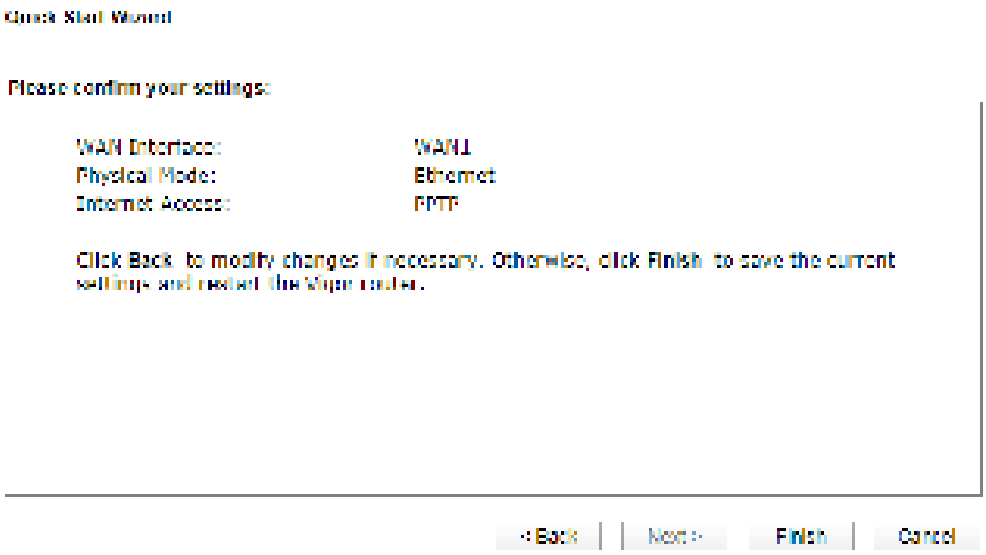


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Username	Assign a specific valid user name provided by the ISP. **Note:** The maximum length of the user name you can set is 63 characters.
Password	Assign a valid password provided by the ISP. **Note:** The maximum length of the password you can set is 62 characters.

Confirm Password	ReEnter the password.
WAN IP Configuration	**Obtain an IP address automatically** – The router will get an IP address automatically from DHCP server. **Specify an IP address** – You have to type relational settings manually. **IP Address** - Enter the IP address. **Subnet Mask** – Enter the subnet mask. Gateway – Enter the IP address of the gateway. **Primary DNS** – Enter the primary IP address for the router. **Second DNS** – Enter secondary IP address for necessity in the future.
PPTP Server / L2TP Server	Enter the IP address of the server.
Back	Click it to return to previous setting page.
Next	Click it to get into the next setting page.
Cancel	Click it to give up the quick start wizard.

3. Please Enter the IP address/mask/gateway information originally provided by your ISP. Then click **Next** for viewing summary of such connection.

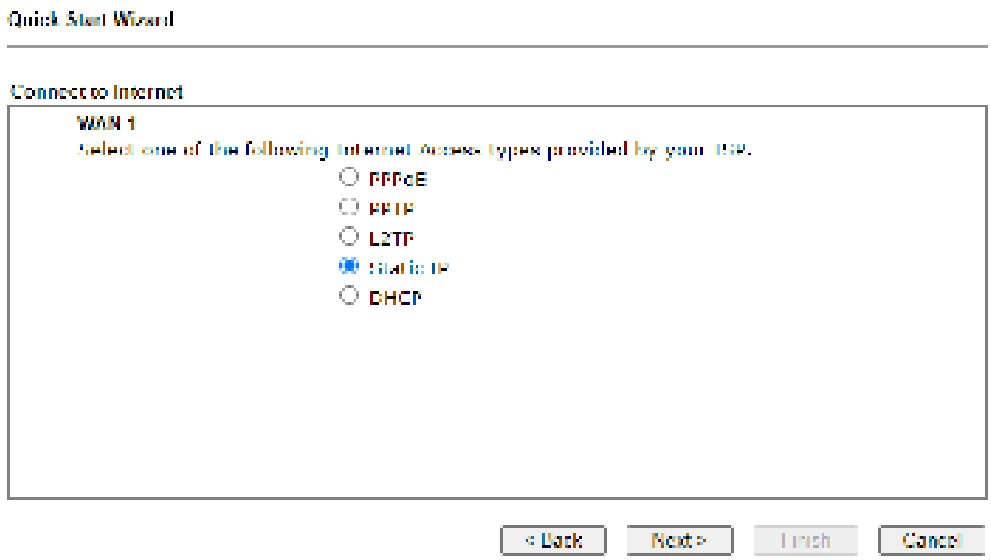


4. Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

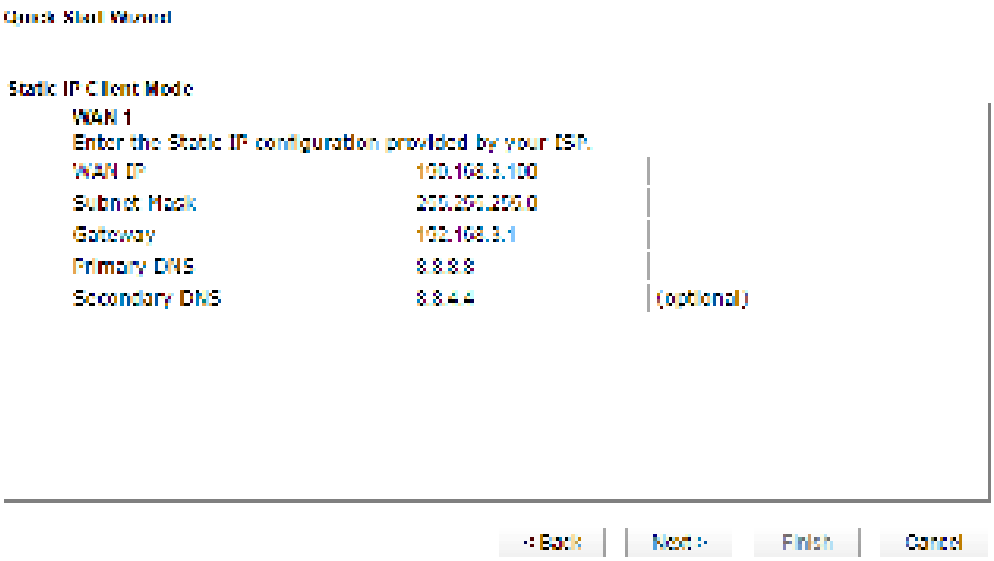
5. Now, you can enjoy surfing on the Internet.

Ethernet WAN1/2 - Static IP

1. Choose **WAN1** as the WAN Interface and choose **Ethernet** as the **Physical Mode**. Click the **Next** button. The following page will be open for you to specify Internet Access Type.



2. Click **Static IP** as the Internet Access type. Simply click **Next** to continue.

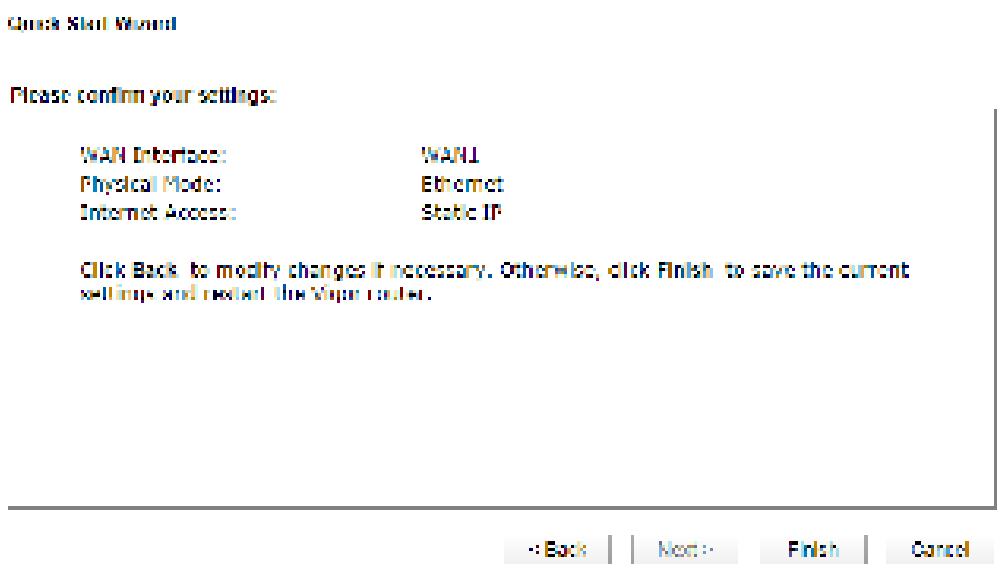


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
WAN IP	Enter the IP address.
Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask.
Gateway	Enter the IP address of gateway.
Primary DNS	Enter the primary IP address for the router.
Secondary DNS	Enter the secondary IP address for necessity in the future.
Back	Click it to return to previous setting page.

Next	Click it to get into the next setting page.
Cancel	Click it to give up the quick start wizard.

3. Please Enter the IP address information originally provided by your ISP. Then click **Next** for next step.



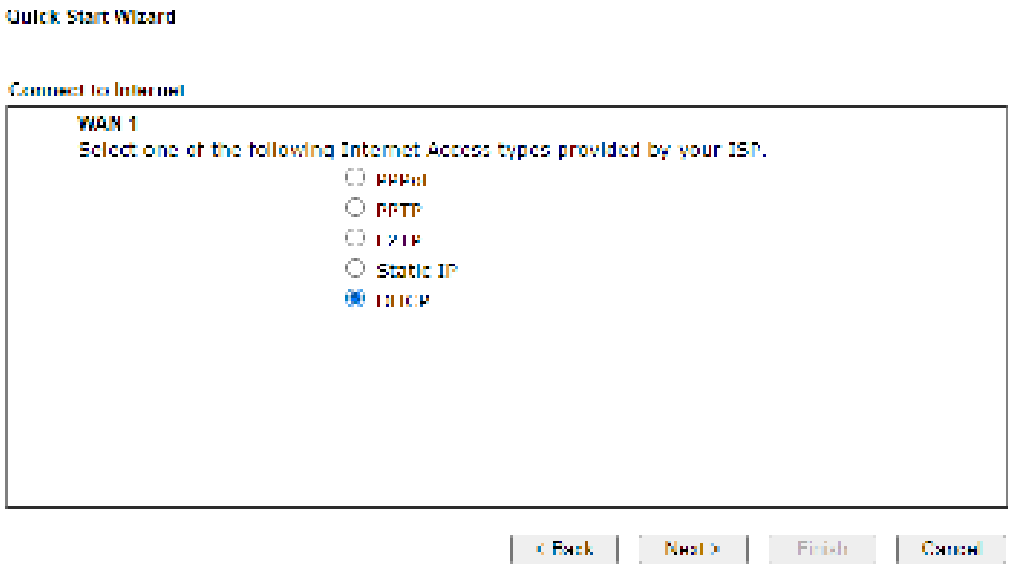
4. Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!

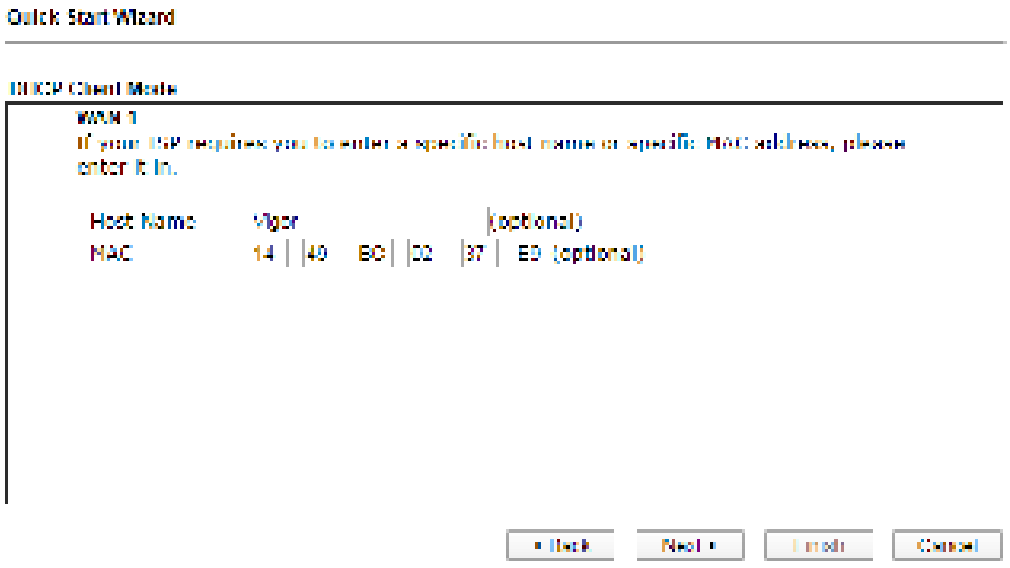
5. Now, you can enjoy surfing on the Internet.

Ethernet WAN1/2 - DHCP

1. Choose **WAN1** as the WAN Interface and choose **Ethernet** as the **Physical Mode**. Click the **Next** button. The following page will be open for you to specify Internet Access Type.



2. Click **DHCP** as the Internet Access type. Simply click **Next** to continue.

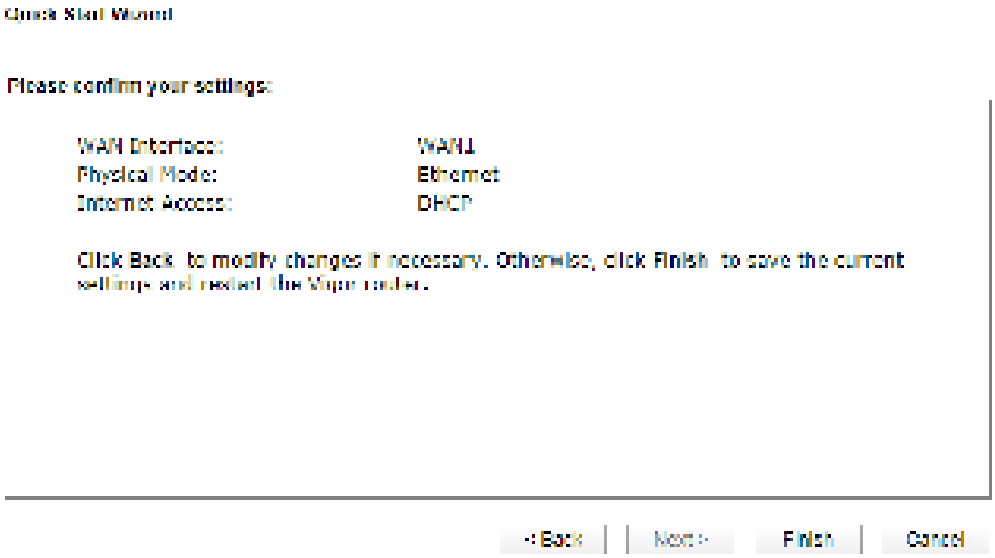


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Host Name	Enter the name of the host. **Note:** The maximum length of the host name you can set is 39 characters.
MAC	Some Cable service providers specify a specific MAC address for access authentication. In such cases you need to enter the MAC address.
Back	Click it to return to previous setting page.

Next	Click it to get into the next setting page.
Cancel	Click it to give up the quick start wizard.

3. After finished the settings above, click **Next** for viewing summary of such connection.



4. Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!

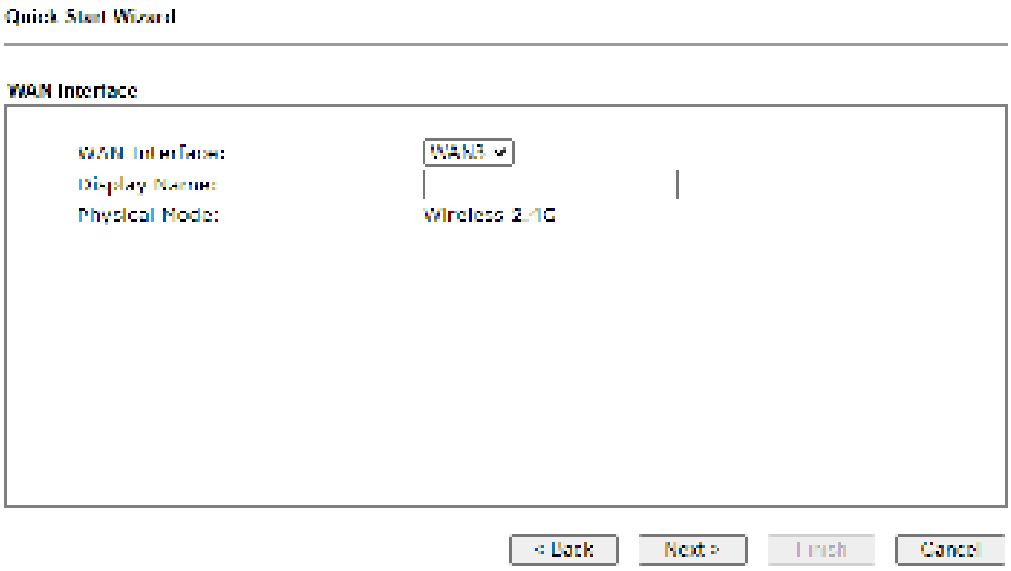
5. Now, you can enjoy surfing on the Internet.

I-6-2 For WAN3/WAN4 (Wireless 2.4G/Wireless 5G)

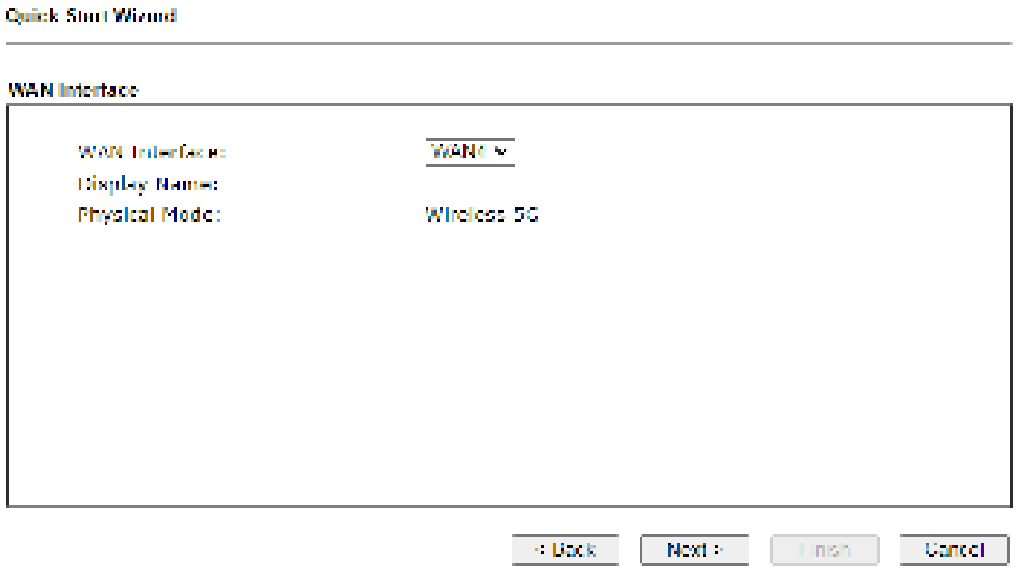
WAN3/WAN4 shall be used for wireless (2.4G or 5G) connection.

Wireless WAN3/WAN4 - Static IP

1. Choose **WAN3**/**WAN4** as WAN Interface and chooose **Wireless 2.4G** or **Wireless 5G** as the physical mode.

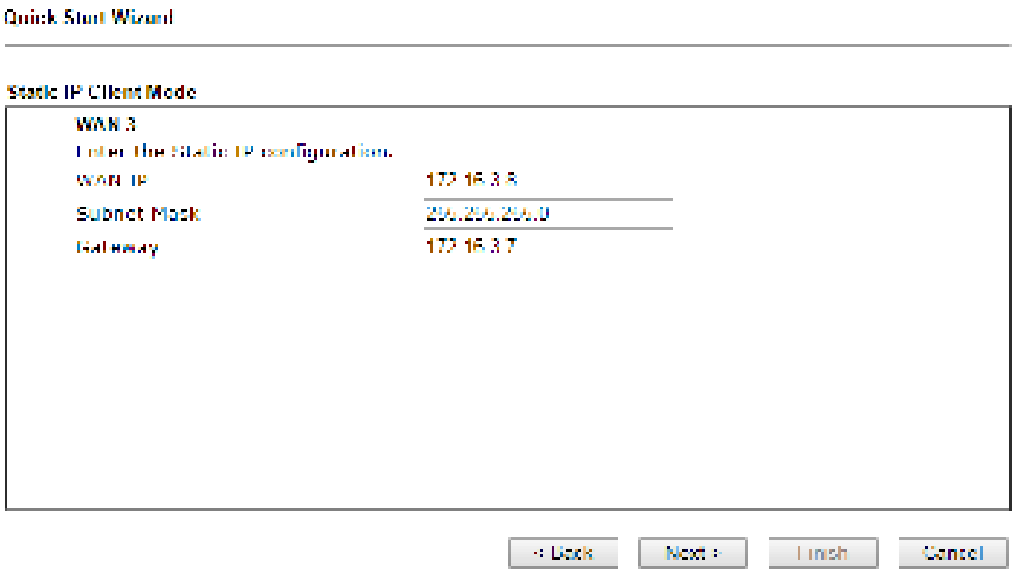


or



2. Then, click **Next** for getting the following page.

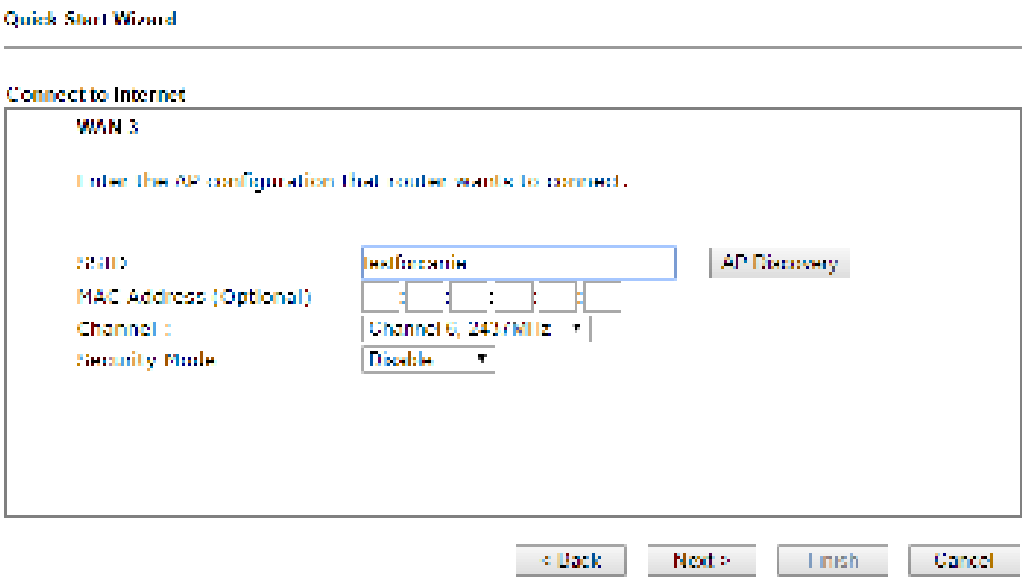
3. After click **Static IP** as the Internet Access type, you will get the following page. Enter the required information and click **Next** to continue.



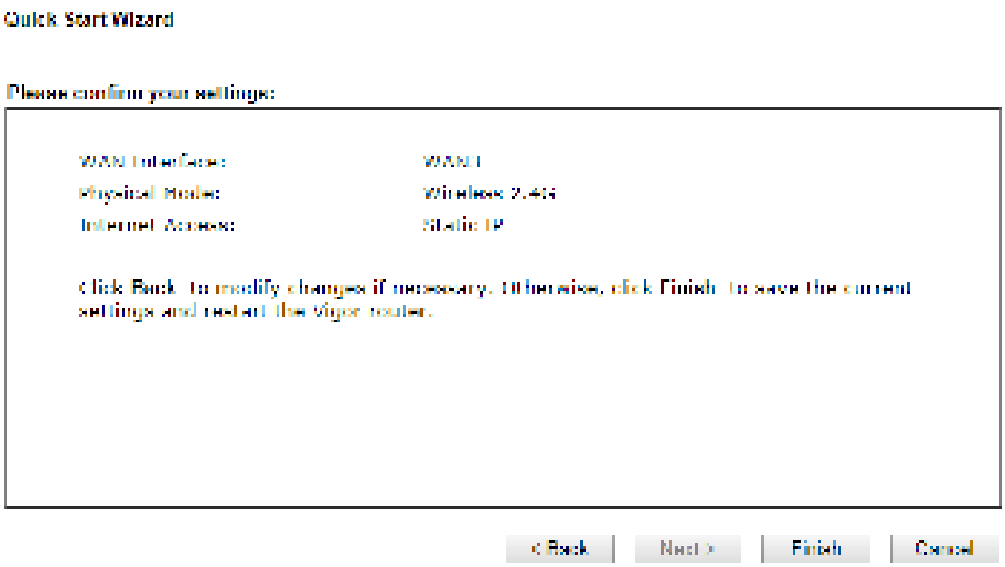
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
WAN IP	Enter the IP address.
Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask.
Gateway	Enter the IP address of gateway.
Back	Click it to return to previous setting page.
Next	Click it to get into the next setting page.
Cancel	Click it to give up the quick start wizard.

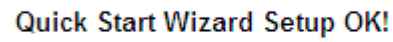
4. From the following page, enter the SSID of an existed AP as the wireless connection server for this WAN. Or click **AP Discovery** to find an access point as the server for this WAN interface. Click **Next** to continue.



5. Then, a summary of the connection will be shown on the screen.



6. Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

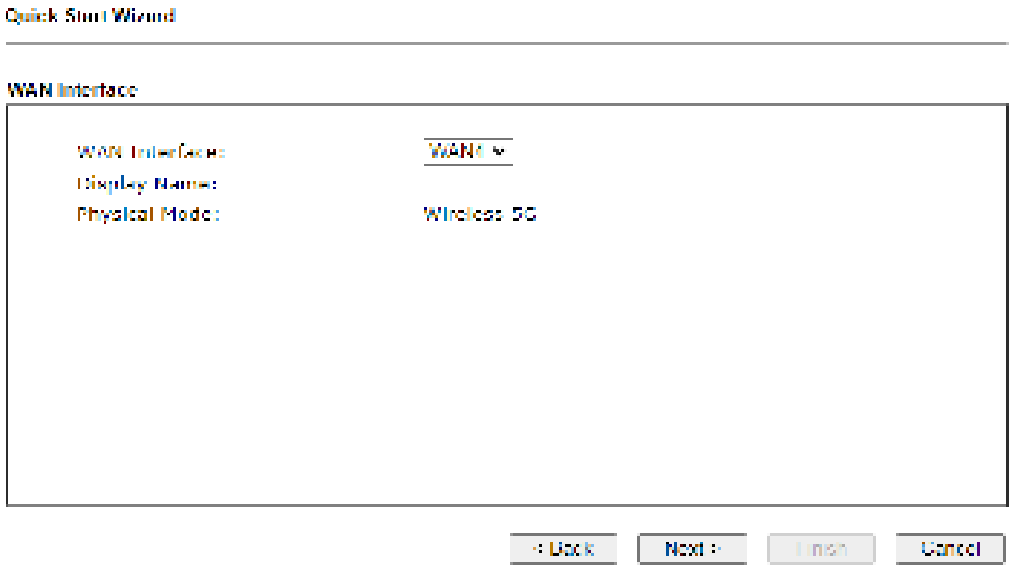


7. Now, you can enjoy surfing on the Internet.

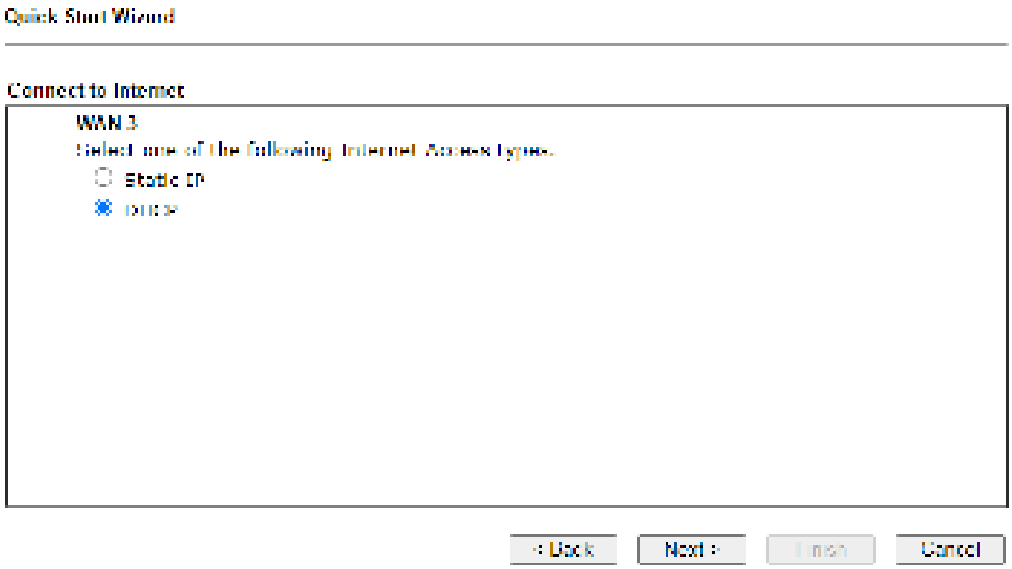
Wireless WAN3/WAN4 - DHCP

1. Choose **WAN3**/**WAN4** as WAN Interface and chooose **Wireless 2.4G** or **Wireless 5G** as the physical mode.

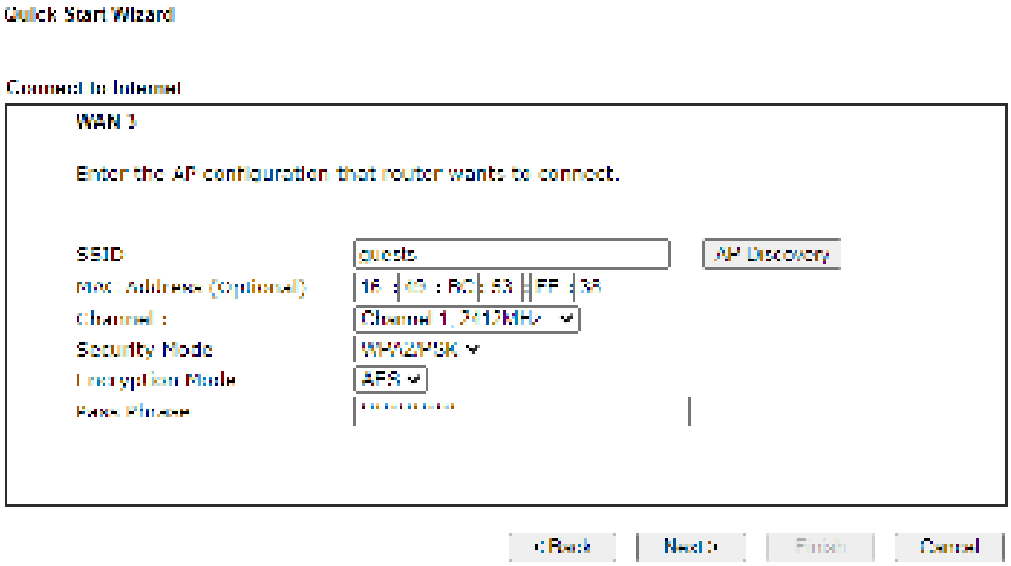
or



2. Then, click **Next** for getting the following page.



3. After click **DHCP** as the Internet Access type, you will get the following page. Eenter the SSID of an existed AP as the wireless connection server for this WAN. Or click **AP Discovery** to find an access point as the server for this WAN interface. Click **Next** to continue.

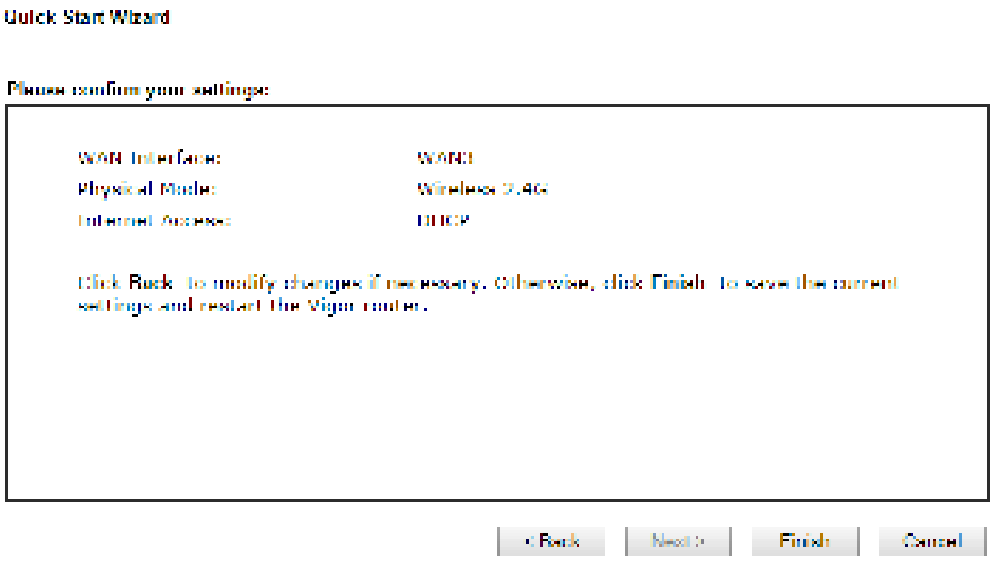


Available settings are explained as follows:

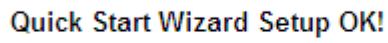
Item	Description
SSID	Enter the SSID of an existed AP. Or click **AP Discovery** to find an access point as the server for this WAN interface.
MAC Address	Enter the MAC address of an existed AP.
Channel	Choose a channel of frequency of the Wireless AP.
Securithy Mode	The Router connects to the wireless AP as a WEP, WPA or WPA2 client. Select a mode to connect to the Wireless AP.
Encryption Mode	WPA/PSK uses TKIP as Encryption Mode. WPA2/PSK uses AES as Encryption Mode.

Pass Phrase	It is available when WPA/PSK or WPA2/PSK is enabled.
WEP Keys	It is available when WEP is enabled.
Back	Click it to return to previous setting page.
Next	Click it to get into the next setting page.
Cancel	Click it to give up the quick start wizard.

4. Then, a summary of the connection will be shown on the screen.



5. Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

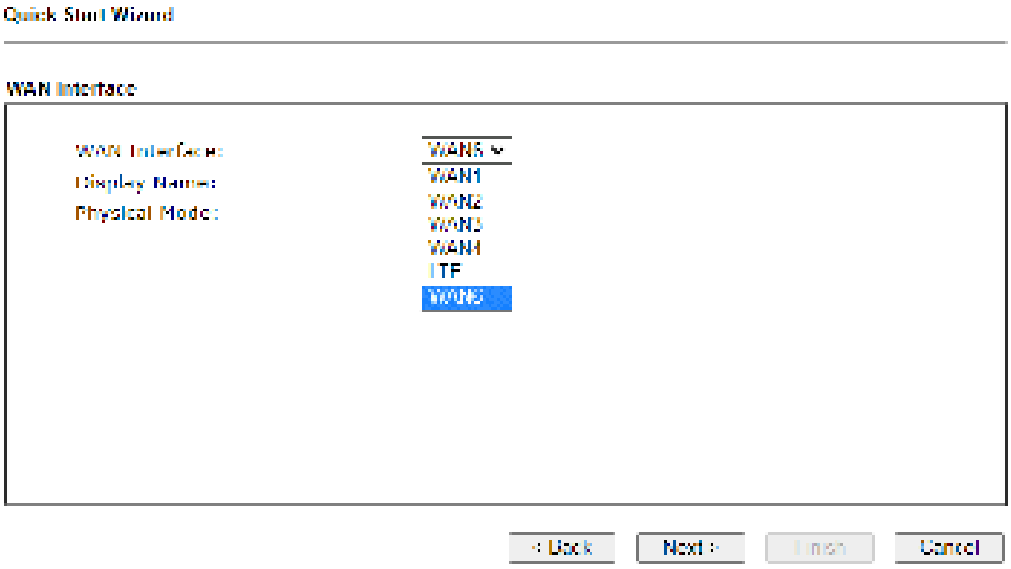


6. Now, you can enjoy surfing on the Internet.

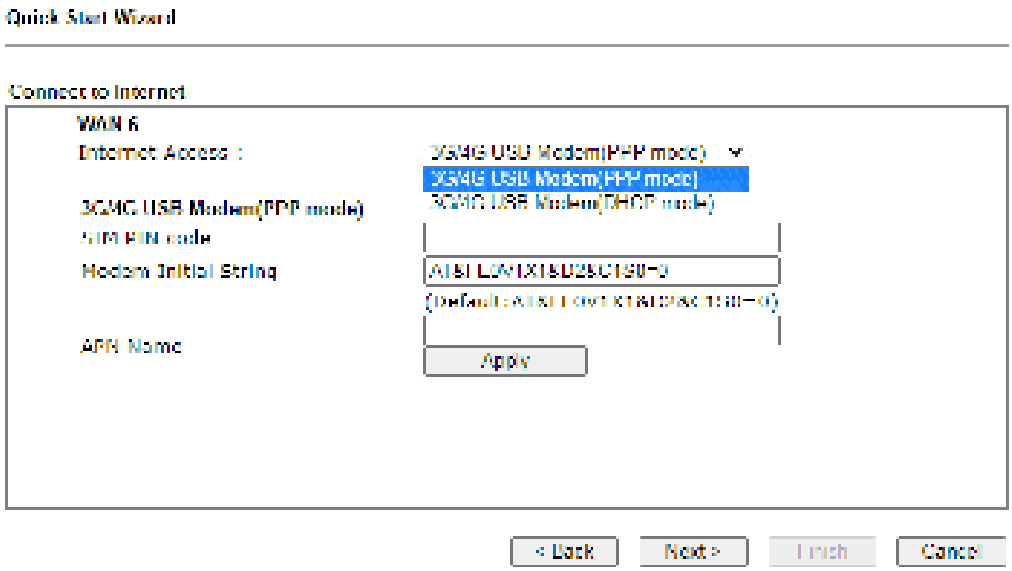
I-6-3 For WAN5/WAN6 (USB)

WAN3/WAN4 is dedicated to physical mode in USB.

1. Choose **WAN5**/**WAN6** as WAN Interface. For "L" model, the WAN5 will be changed as LTE.



2. Then, click **Next** for getting the following page.

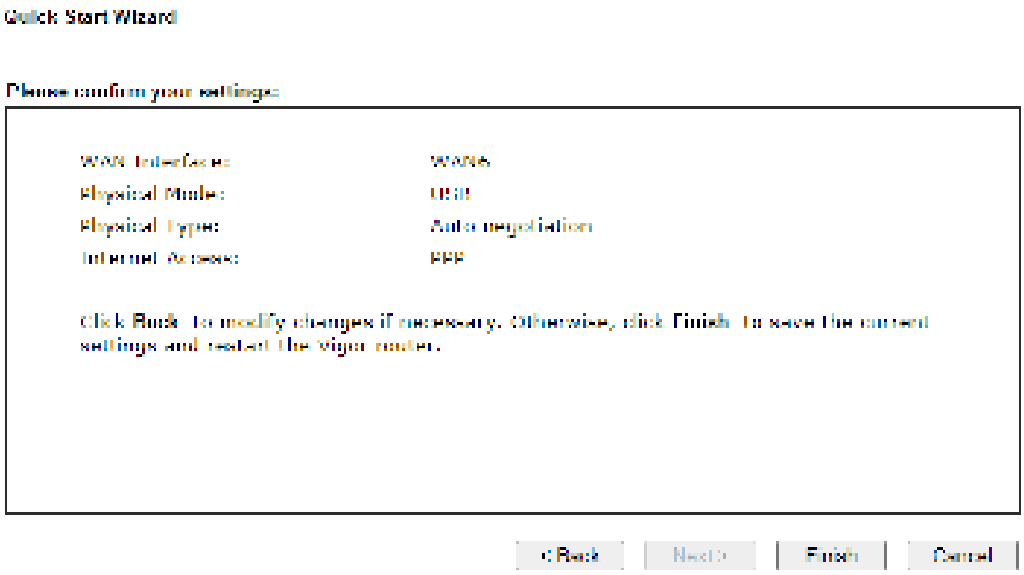


Available settings are explained as follows:

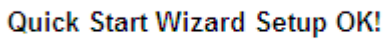
Item	Description
Internet Access	Choose one of the selections as the protocol of accessing the internet.
3G/4G USB Modem (PPP mode)	**SIM Pin code** -Type PIN code of the SIM card that will be used to access Internet. The maximum length of the pin code you can set is 15 characters. **Modem Initial String** - Such value is used to initialize USB modem. Please use the default value. If you have any question, please contact to your ISP. The maximum length of the string you can set is 47 characters.

	APN Name – APN means Access Point Name which is provided and required by some ISPs. Enter the name and click **Apply**.
3G/4G USB Modem (DHCP mode)	**SIM Pin code** – Type PIN code of the SIM card that will be used to access Internet. **Network Mode** – Force Vigor router to connect Internet with the mode specified here. If you choose 4G/3G/2G as network mode, the router will choose a suitable one according to the actual wireless signal automatically. **APN Name** – APN means Access Point Name which is provided and required by some ISPs.
Back	Click it to return to previous setting page.
Next	Click it to get into the next setting page.
Cancel	Click it to give up the quick start wizard.

3. Then, click **Next** for viewing summary of such connection.



4. Click **Finish**. A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.



5. Now, you can enjoy surfing on the Internet.

I-7 Service Activation Wizard

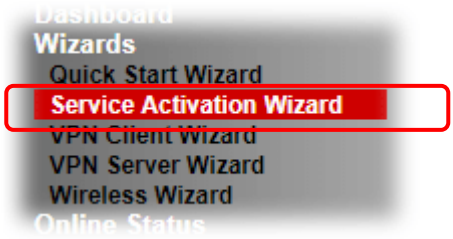
Service Activation Wizard can guide you to activate WCF service (Web Content Filter) with a quick and easy way. **For the Service Activation Wizard is only available for admin operation, therefore, please type "admin/admin" on Username/Password while Logging into the web user interface.**

Service Activation Wizard is a tool which allows you to use trial version of WCF directly without accessing into the server (***MyVigor***) located on http://myvigor.draytek.com. For using Web Content Filter Profile, please refer to later section **Web Content Filter Profile** for detailed information.

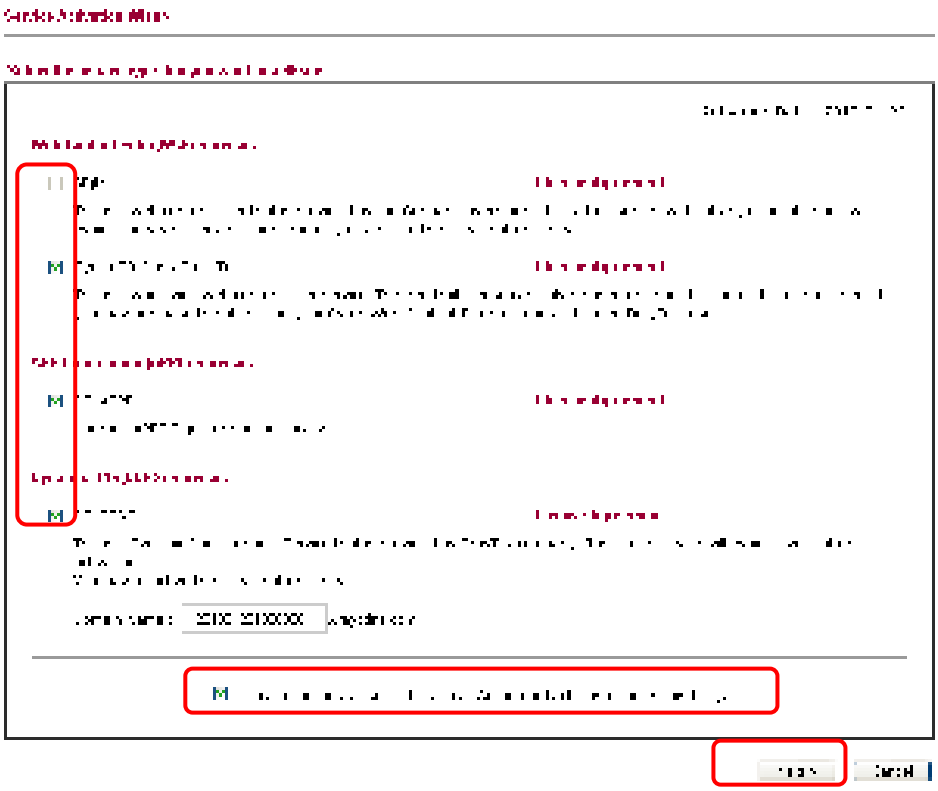
Now, follow the steps listed below to activate WCF feature for your router.

Info	Such function is available only for Admin Mode.

1. Open **Wizards>>Service Activation Wizard**.



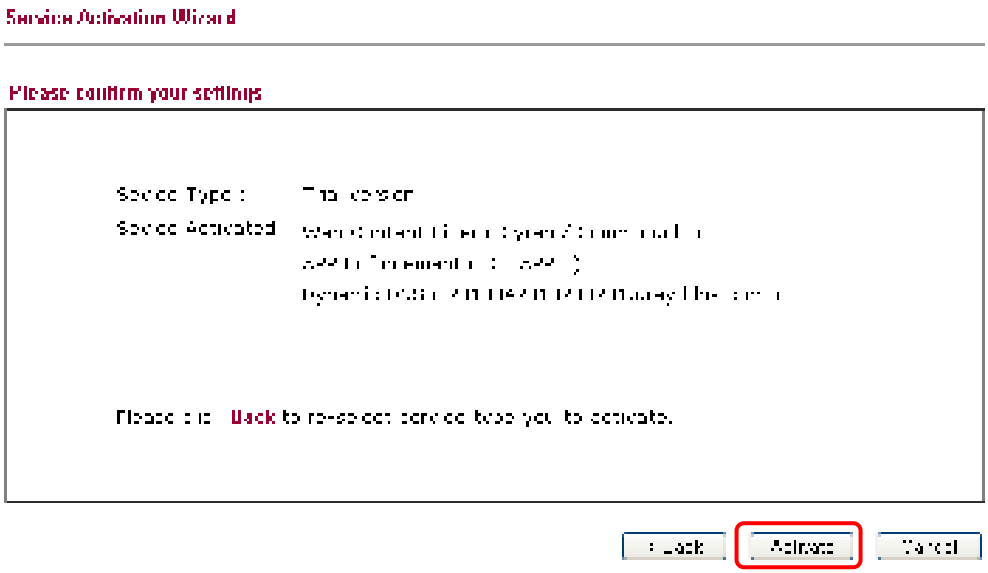
2. The screen of **Service Activation Wizard** will be shown as follows. You can activate the Web content filter services and/or APPE enforcement service and / or DDNS service at the same time or individually. When you finish the selection, please click **Next**.



Info

- BPjM is web content filter (WCF) for German Speaking users. It is ideal for your family to provide more Internet security for youngsters.
- Cryan 30-day trial is WCF which offers 30-day trial period.
- DT-APPE, developed by DrayTek, offers a mechanism to upgrade APPE signature automatically.
- DT-DDNS, developed by DrayTek, offers one year free charge service of dynamic DNS service for internal use.

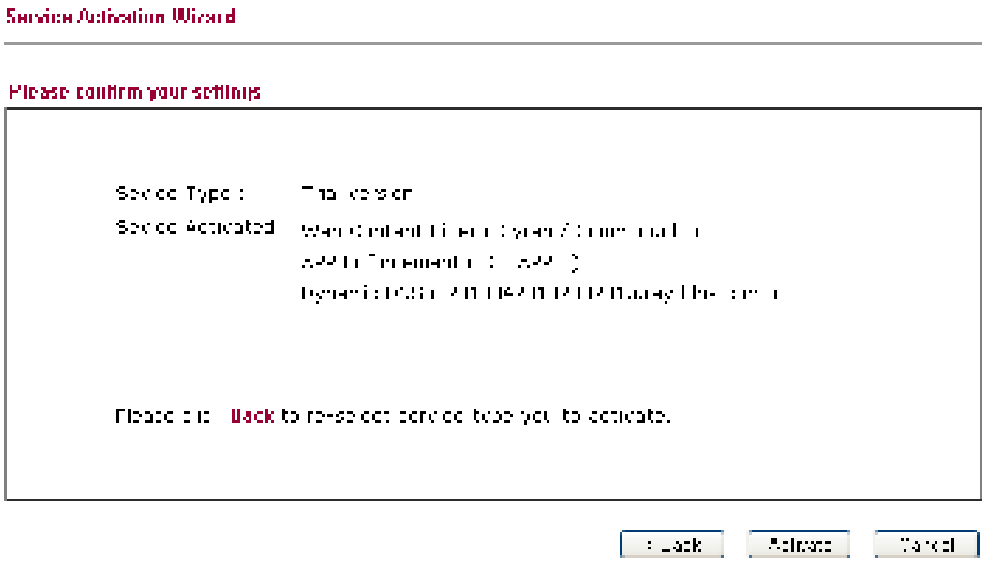
3. Setting confirmation page will be displayed as follows, please click **Activate**.



Info

The service will be activated and applied as the default rule configured in Firewall>>General Setup.

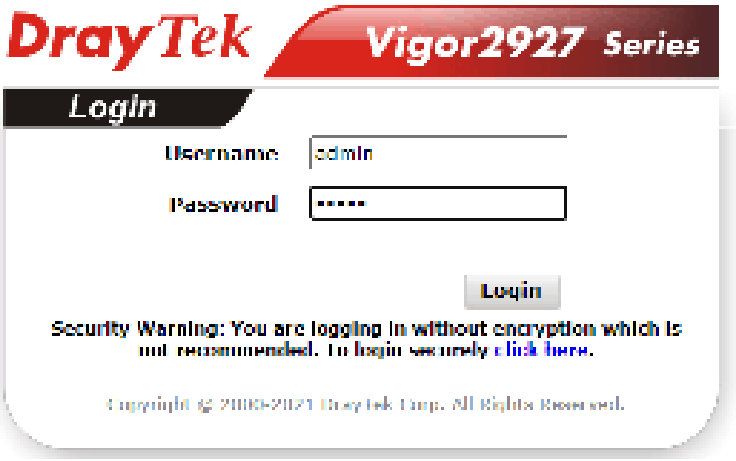
4. Now, the web page will display the service that you have activated according to your selection(s).



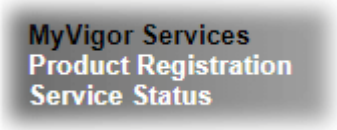
I-8 Registering Vigor Router

You have finished the configuration of Quick Start Wizard and you can surf the Internet at any time. Now it is the time to register your Vigor router to MyVigor website for getting more service. Please follow the steps below to finish the router registration.

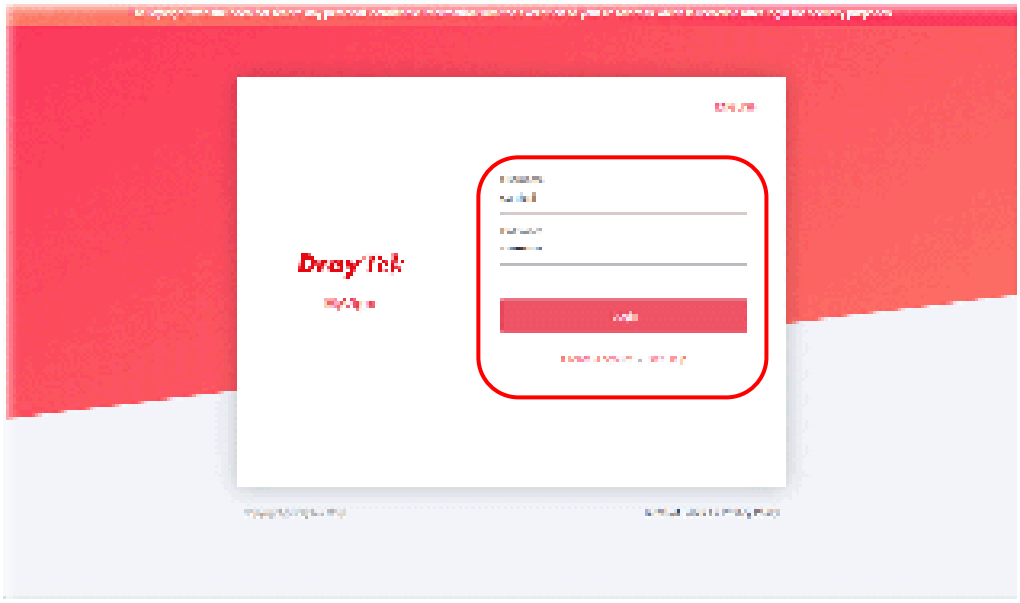
1 Please login the web configuration interface of Vigor router by typing "**admin**/**admin**" as User Name / Password.



2 Click **MyVigor Services>>Production Registration** from the home page.

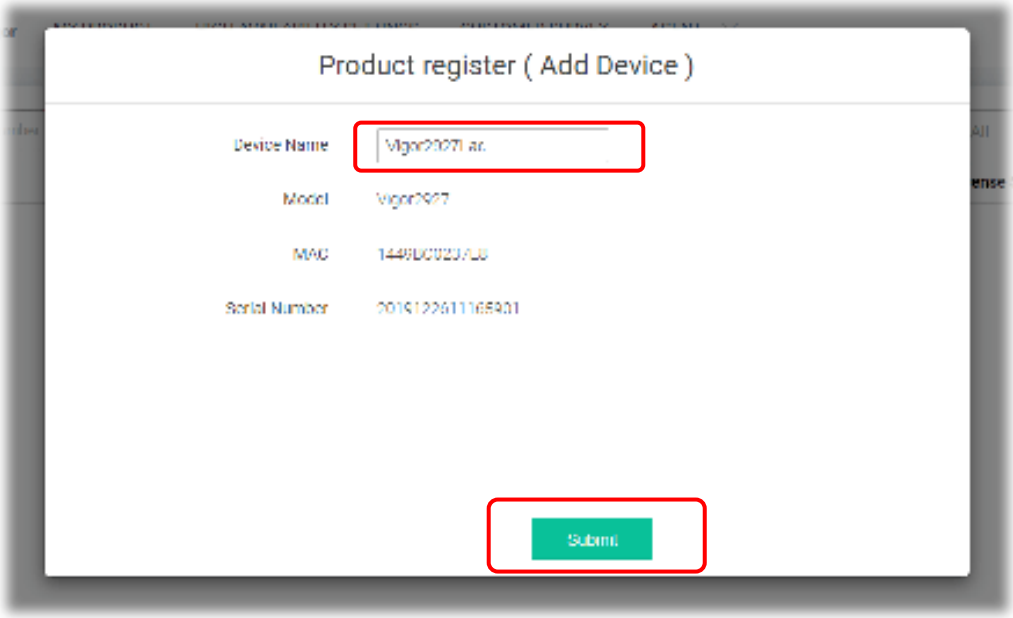


3 A **Login** page will be shown on the screen. Please Enter the account and password that you created previously. And click **Login**.

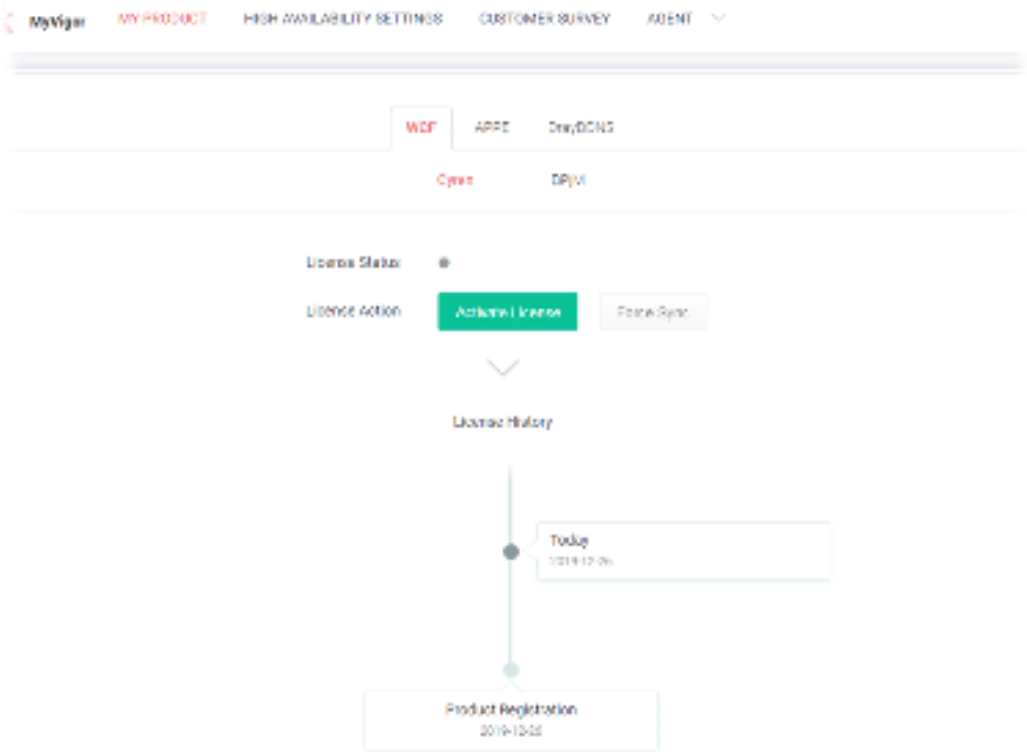


Info	If you haven't an accessing account, please refer to section Creating an Account for MyVigor to create your own one. Please read the articles on the Agreement regarding user rights carefully while creating a user account.

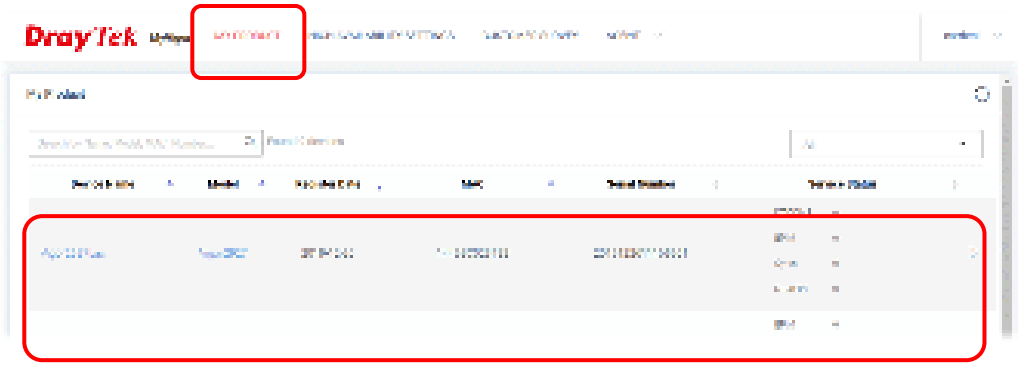
4 The following page will be displayed after you logging in MyVigor. Type a nickname for the router, then click **Submit**.



5 When the following page appears, your router information has been added to the database. Your router has been registered to *myvigor* website successfully.



6 Clicking **MYPRODUCT** for viewing the general information of the registered router on MyVigor website.



This page is left blank.

Part II Connectivity

It means wide area network. Public IP will be used in WAN.

It means local area network. Private IP will be used in LAN. Local Area Network (LAN) is a group of subnets regulated and ruled by router. The design of network structure is related to what type of public IP addresses coming from your ISP.

When the data flow passing through, the Network Address Translation (NAT) function of the router will dedicate to translate public/private addresses, and the packets will be delivered to the correct host PC in the local area network.

DNS, LAN DNS, IGMP, LDAP, UpnP, IGMP, WOL, RADIUS, SMS, Bonjour

Static Route, Load-Balance/Route Policy

II-1 WAN

It allows users to access Internet.

Basics of Internet Protocol (IP) Network

IP means Internet Protocol. Every device in an IP-based Network including routers, print server, and host PCs, needs an IP address to identify its location on the network. To avoid address conflicts, IP addresses are publicly registered with the Network Information Centre (NIC). Having a unique IP address is mandatory for those devices participated in the public network but not in the private TCP/IP local area networks (LANs), such as host PCs under the management of a router since they do not need to be accessed by the public. Hence, the NIC has reserved certain addresses that will never be registered publicly. These are known as ***private*** IP addresses, and are listed in the following ranges:

From 10.0.0.0 to 10.255.255.255
From 172.16.0.0 to 172.31.255.255
From 192.168.0.0 to 192.168.255.255

What are Public IP Address and Private IP Address

As the router plays a role to manage and further protect its LAN, it interconnects groups of host PCs. Each of them has a private IP address assigned by the built-in DHCP server of the Vigor router. The router itself will also use the default **private IP** address: 192.168.1.1 to communicate with the local hosts. Meanwhile, Vigor router will communicate with other network devices through a **public IP** address. When the data flow passing through, the Network Address Translation (NAT) function of the router will dedicate to translate public/private addresses, and the packets will be delivered to the correct host PC in the local area network. Thus, all the host PCs can share a common Internet connection.

Get Your Public IP Address from ISP

In ADSL deployment, the PPP (Point to Point)-style authentication and authorization is required for bridging customer premises equipment (CPE). Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet (PPPoE) connects a network of hosts via an access device to a remote access concentrator or aggregation concentrator. This implementation provides users with significant ease of use. Meanwhile it provides access control, billing, and type of service according to user requirement.

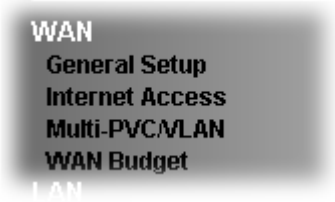
When a router begins to connect to your ISP, a serial of discovery process will occur to ask for a connection. Then a session will be created. Your user ID and password is authenticated via **PAP** or **CHAP** with **RADIUS** authentication system. And your IP address, DNS server, and other related information will usually be assigned by your ISP.

Network Connection by 3G/4G USB Modem

For 3G/4G mobile communication through Access Point is popular more and more, Vigor2927 adds the function of 3G/4G network connection for such purpose. By connecting 3G/4G USB Modem to the USB port of Vigor2927, it can support LTE/HSDPA/UMTS/EDGE/GPRS/GSM and the future 3G/4G standard (HSUPA, etc). Vigor2927n with 3G/4G USB Modem allows you to receive 3G/4G signals at any place such as your car or certain location holding outdoor activity and share the bandwidth for using by more people. Users can use LAN ports on the router to access Internet. Also, they can access Internet via 802.11(a/b/g/n/ac) wireless standard, and enjoy the powerful firewall, bandwidth management, and VPN features of Vigor2927n series.

After connecting into the router, 3G/4G USB Modem will be regarded as the WAN3/WAN4 port. However, the original WAN1 and WAN2 still can be used and Load-Balance can be done in the router. Besides, 3G/4G USB Modem in WAN3/WAN4 also can be used as backup device. Therefore, when WAN1 and WAN2 are not available, the router will use 3.5G for supporting automatically. The supported 3G/4G USB Modem will be listed on DrayTek web site. Please visit www.draytek.com for more detailed information.

Web User Interface

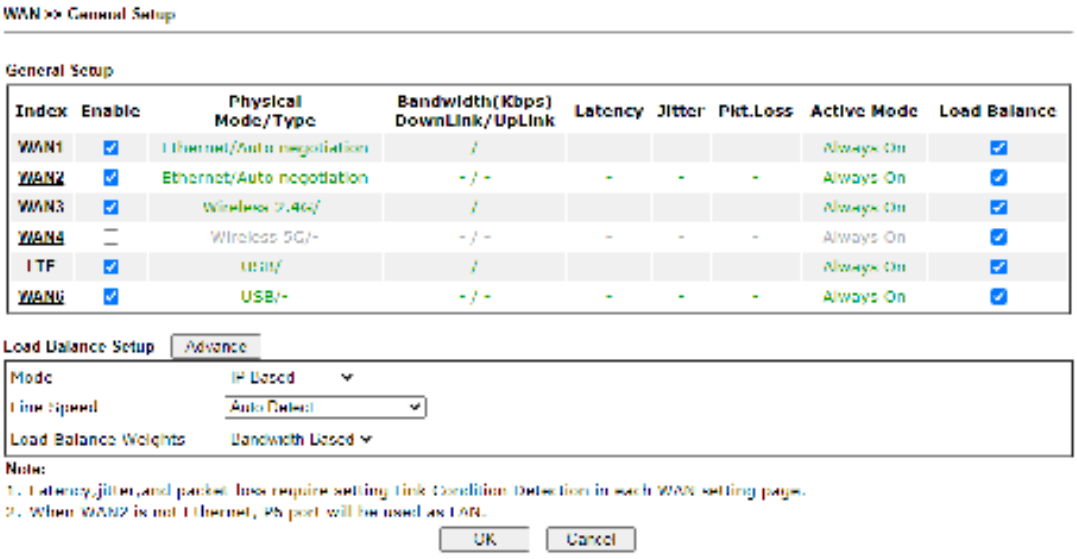


II-1-1 General Setup

This section will introduce some general settings of Internet and explain the connection modes for WAN1, WAN2, WAN3, WAN4, WAN5/LTE and WAN6 in details.

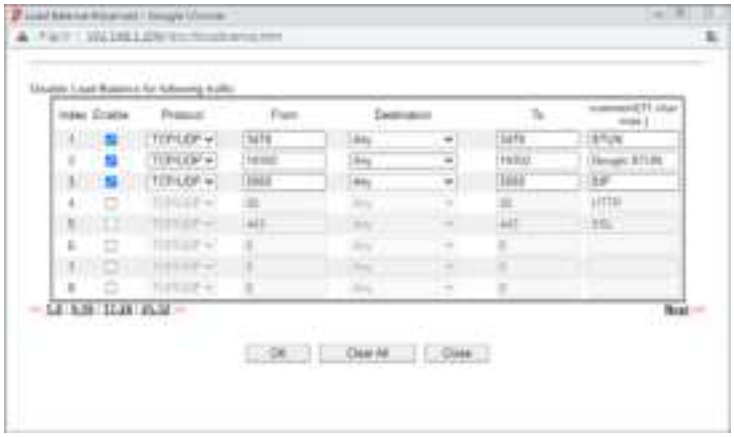
This router supports multiple-WAN function. It allows users to access Internet and combine the bandwidth of the multiple WANs to speed up the transmission through the network. Each WAN port can connect to different ISPs, even if the ISPs use different technology to provide telecommunication service (such as DSL, Cable modem, etc.). If any connection problem occurred on one of the ISP connections, all the traffic will be guided and switched to the normal communication port for proper operation. Please configure WAN1, WAN2, WAN3, WAN4, WAN5/LTE and WAN6 settings.

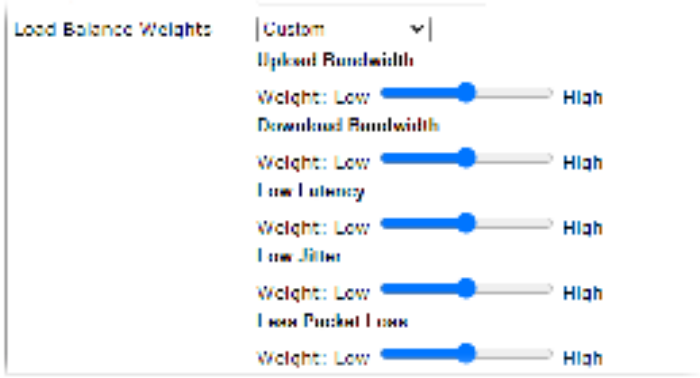
This webpage allows you to set general setup for WAN1, WAN2, WAN3, WAN4, WAN5/LTE and WAN6 respectively.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Index	Click the WAN interface link under Index to access into the WAN configuration page.
Enable	**V** means such WAN interface is enabled and ready to be used.
Physical Mode / Type	Display the physical mode and physical type of such WAN interface.
Bandwidth(Kbps) DownLink/UpLink	Display the downstream and upstream rate of such WAN interface.

Active Mode	Display whether such WAN interface is Active device or backup device. **Backup (WAN#) -** Display the backup WAN interface for such WAN when it is disabled.
Load Balance	Select to enable the load balance function.
Load Balance Setup	**Advance** - Load Balance for the traffic of STUN, google STUN, and SIP are disabled in default to prevent from conflict. The following dialog allows you to define protocol, port and name for the traffic not to be applied with load balance. That is, when an item is enabled (checked), it might not be affected by load balance. 
Mode	**IP Based** - The same source / destination IP pair will select the same WAN interface as policy. It is the default setting. **Session Based**- All of the WAN interfaces will be used (as out-going WAN) for passing through new sessions to get better transmission speed. Though good speed test result for throughput might be reached; however, some web site may not open smoothly, especially the site need authentication, e.g., FTP. If you have no strong demand about speed test result, keep default settings as IP based.
Line Speed	This option is available for multiple-WAN for getting enough bandwidth for each WAN port. If you know the practical bandwidth for your WAN interface, please choose the setting of **According to Line Speed**. Otherwise, please choose **Auto Detect** to let the router reach the best load balance.
Load Balance Weights	There are four weight types for choosing to meet your request. **Custom** - You can distribute the usage ratio for each WAN interface by setting weights for bandwidth, latency, jitter, and packet loss respectively.



- **Upload** / **Download Bandwidth** - The higher the weight is, the WAN interface with higher bandwidth will get higher usage.
- **Low Latency** - It defines the time taken by Vigor router when sending the packets to the IP set in Link Condition Detection. The higher the weight is, the WAN interface with lower latency will get higher usage.
- **Low Jitter** - It defines the change rate of latency. For stable session, small jitter value will be better. The higher the weight is, the WAN interface with lower jitter will get higher usage.
- **Less Packet Loss** - It defines the proportion that packets will be discarded before arriving at the IP set in Link Condition Detection. The higher the weight is, the WAN interface with lower packet loss will get higher usage.

Bandwidth-Based - The load balance weight for each WAN will be executed according to line speed setting (DownLink/UpLink Rate). This is default setting.

Quality-Based - The load balance weight for each WAN will be executed according to the transmission rate, latency time and the jitter time.

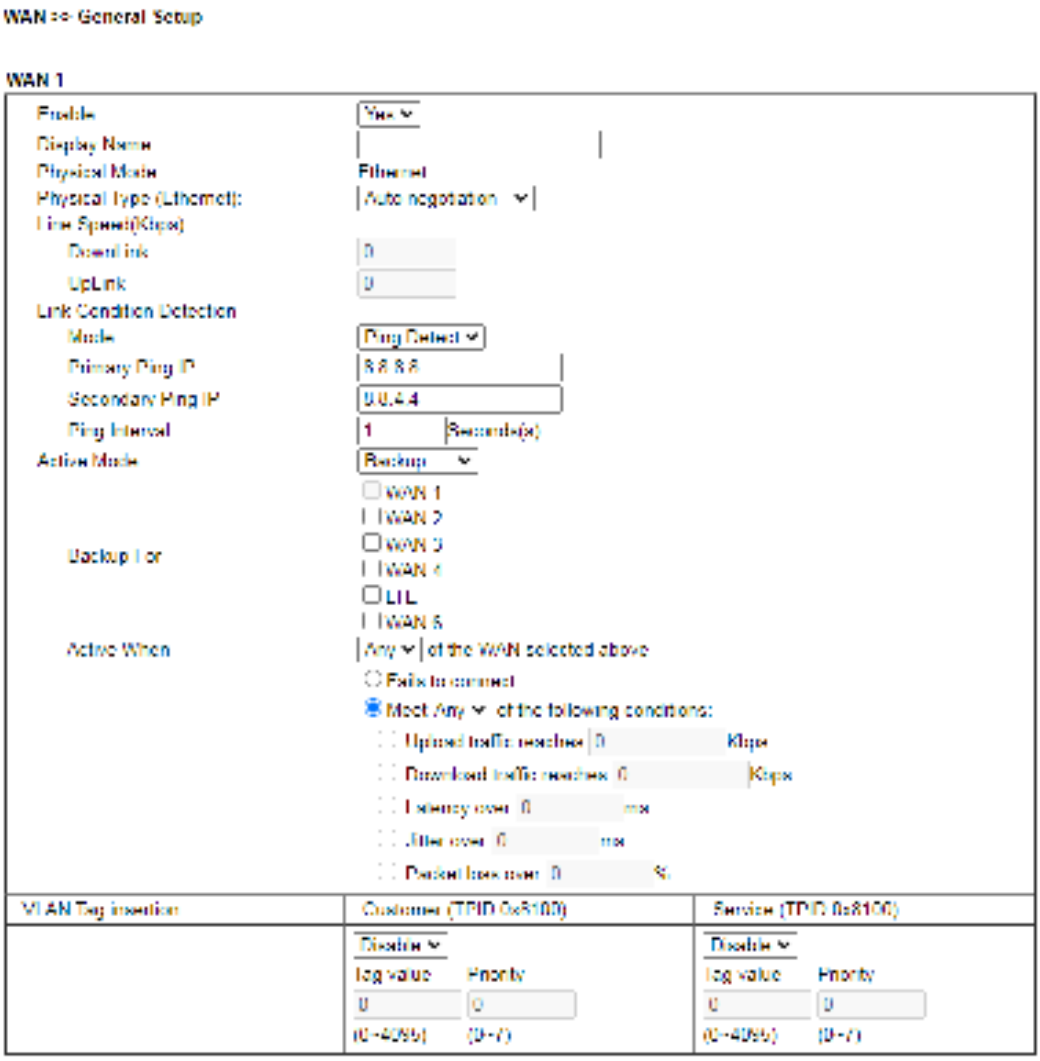
Reliabiltiy-Based - The load balance weight for each WAN will be executed according to line speed and packet loss value. Usually, the WAN interface with low packet loss will have the higher ratio to be used.

Info	Wired router (e.g., Vigor2927) does not support WAN3 and WAN4.

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

II-1-1-1 WAN1/WAN2 (Ethernet)

WAN1/WAN2 can be configured for physical mode of Ethernet.



Available settings are explained as follows:

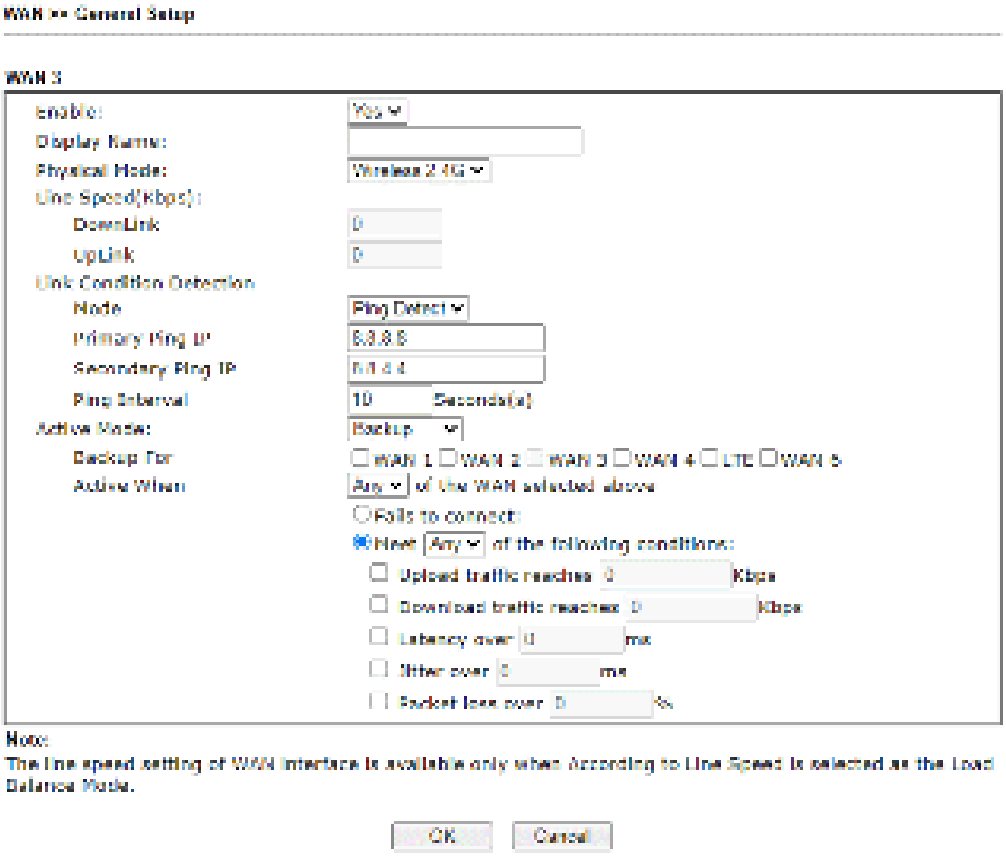
Item	Description
Enable	Choose **Yes** to invoke the settings for this WAN interface. Choose **No** to disable the settings for this WAN interface.
Display Name	Enter the description for such WAN interface.
Physical Mode	Display the physical mode (Ethernet) of the interface.
Physical Type	You can change the physical type for WAN1/2 or choose **Auto negotiation** for determined by the system.
Line Speed (Kbps)	If your choose **According to Line Speed** as the **Line Speed** on **WAN>>General Setup**, please enter the line speed for downloading and uploading for such WAN interface. The unit is kbps.
Link Condition Detection	In order for the system to detect the latency, jitter, and packet-loss status for each WAN interface, you have to specify the IP transmitting data through the interface. **Mode** - Choose Ping Detect, Http Detect, or Disable as detection mode. If Ping Detect or Http Detect is selected,

	you have to configure the following option. • **Primary Ping IP** - Enter an IP address. • **Secondary Ping IP** - Enter an IP address. • **Ping Interval** - Set a time interval (unit:second) for the system to ping the IP address specified above.
Active Mode	**Always On** - Choose **Always On** to make this WAN connection being activated always. **Backup** – Choose it to make this WAN connection as a backup connection. **Backup For** - Specify the WAN interface by checking the WAN box. This WAN will be the backup WAN for the selected WAN interface(s). **Active When** - Set the condition for backup connection. **Any/All** – This WAN will be activated when any/all master WAN interface(s), • **Fails to connect** • **Meet All/Any of the following conditions** – When the upload traffic, download traffic, latency, jitter and/or packet loss of active WAN reaches the traffic threshold (specified here), the backup WAN will be enabled automatically to share the overloaded data traffic.
VLAN Tag insertion	Such feature is offered to the user with the environment supporting IEEE_802.1ad. In which, service is used for outer tag; customer is used for inner tag. It is available only when **Ethernet** is selected as **Physical Mode**. **Disable** – Disable the function of VLAN with tag. **Enable** –Enable the function of VLAN with tag. The router will add specific VLAN number to all packets on the WAN while sending them out. Please Enter the tag value and specify the priority for the packets sending by WAN1. • **Tag value** – Enter the value as the VLAN ID number. The range is form 0 to 4095. • **Priority** – Enter the packet priority number for such VLAN. The range is from 0 to 7.

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

II-1-1-2 WAN3/WAN4 (Wireless 2.4G or 5G)

WAN3/WAN4 can be configured for physical mode of Wireless 2.4G or Wireless 5G.



Available settings are explained as follows:

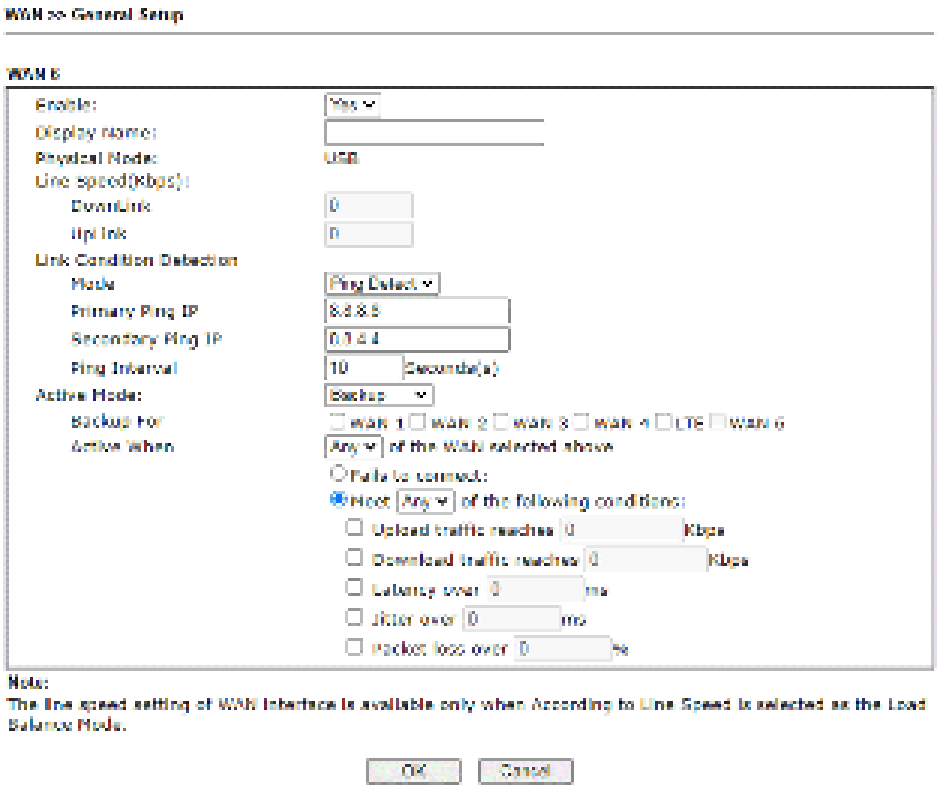
Item	Description
Enable	Choose **Yes** to invoke the settings for this WAN interface. Choose **No** to disable the settings for this WAN interface.
Display Name	Enter the description for such WAN interface.
Physical Mode	Choose the physical mode (Wireless 2.4G / Wireless 5G) of the interface.
Line Speed (Kbps)	If your choose **According to Line Speed** as the **Line Speed** on **WAN>>General Setup**, please enter the line speed for downloading and uploading for such WAN interface. The unit is kbps.
Link Condition Detection	In order for the system to detect the latency, jitter, and packet-loss status for each WAN interface, you have to specify the IP transmitting data through the interface. **Mode** - Choose Ping Detect, Http Detect, or Disable as detection mode. If Ping Detect or Http Detect is selected, you have to configure the following option. ● **Primary Ping IP** - Enter an IP address. ● **Secondary Ping IP** - Enter an IP address. ● **Ping Interval** - Set a time interval (unit:second) for the system to ping the IP address specified above.
Active Mode	**Always On** - Choose **Always On** to make this WAN connection being activated always.

	Backup – Choose it to make this WAN connection as a backup connection. **Backup For** - Specify the WAN interface by checking the WAN box. This WAN will be the backup WAN for the selected WAN interface(s). **Active When** - Set the condition for backup connection. **Any/All** – This WAN will be activated when any/all master WAN interface(s), • **Fails to connect** • **Meet All/Any of the following conditions** – When the upload traffic, download traffic, latency, jitter and/or packet loss of active WAN reaches the traffic threshold (specified here), the backup WAN will be enabled automatically to share the overloaded data traffic.

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

II-1-1-3 WAN5 / WAN6 (USB) or LTE

To use 3G/4G network connection through 3G/4G USB Modem, please configure **WAN5 or LTE / WAN6** interface.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Choose **Yes** to invoke the settings for this WAN interface. Choose **No** to disable the settings for this WAN interface.
Display Name	Enter the description for such WAN interface.
Physical Mode	Display the physical mode of such WAN interface.
Line Speed (Kbps)	If your choose **According to Line Speed** as the **Line Speed** on **WAN>>General Setup**, please enter the line speed for

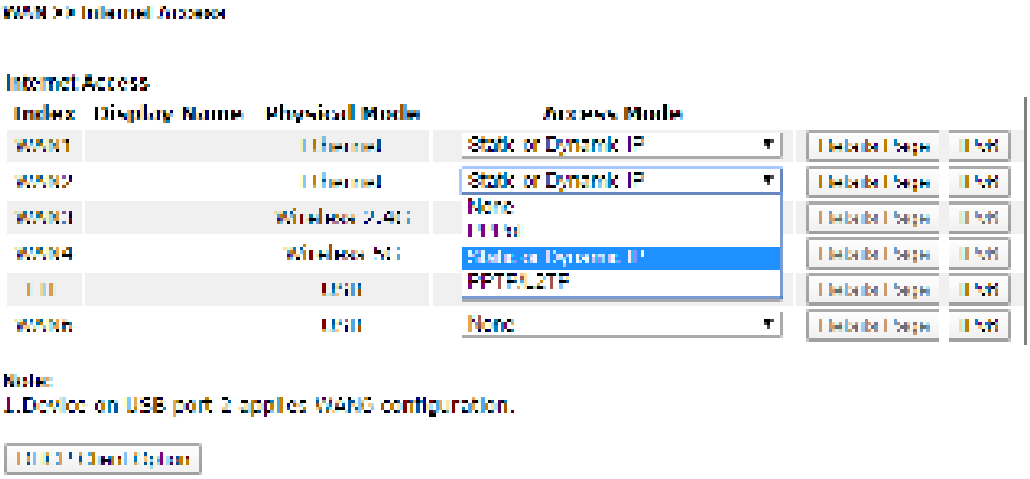
	downloading and uploading for such WAN interface. The unit is kbps.
Link Condition Detection	In order for the system to detect the latency, jitter, and packet-loss status for each WAN interface, you have to specify the IP transmitting data through the interface. **Mode** - Choose Ping Detect, Http Detect, or Disable as detection mode. If Ping Detect or Http Detect is selected, you have to configure the following option. • **Primary Ping IP** - Enter an IP address. • **Secondary Ping IP** - Enter an IP address. • **Ping Interval** - Set a time interval (unit:second) for the system to ping the IP address specified above.
Active Mode	**Always On** - Choose **Always On** to make this WAN connection being activated always. **Backup** – Choose it to make this WAN connection as a backup connection. **Backup For** - Specify the WAN interface by checking the WAN box. This WAN will be the backup WAN for the selected WAN interface(s). **Active When** - Set the condition for backup connection. **Any/All** – This WAN will be activated when any/all master WAN interface(s), • **Fails to connect** • **Meet All/Any of the following conditions** – When the upload traffic, download traffic, latency, jitter and/or packet loss of active WAN reaches the traffic threshold (specified here), the backup WAN will be enabled automatically to share the overloaded data traffic.

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

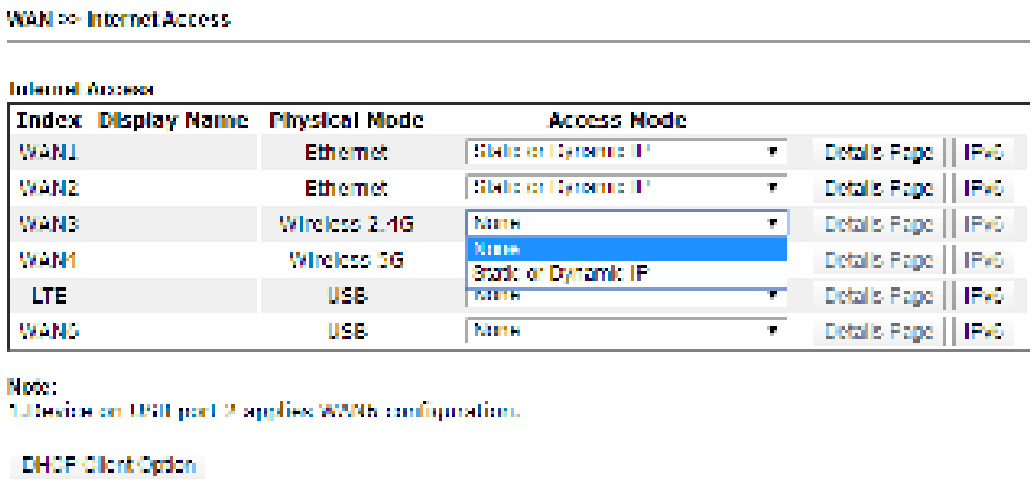
II-1-2 Internet Access

For the router supports multi-WAN function, the users can set different WAN settings (for WAN1, WAN2, WAN3 or LTE, WAN4) for Internet Access. Due to different Physical Mode for WAN interface, the Access Mode for these connections also varies. Refer to the following figures for examples.

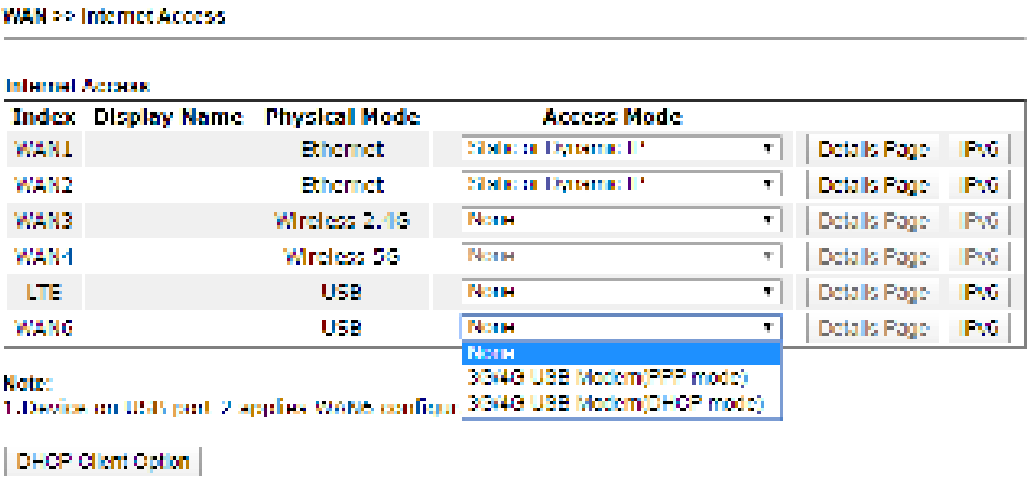
Access Mode for Etherenet,



Access Mode for Wireless 2.4G/5G,

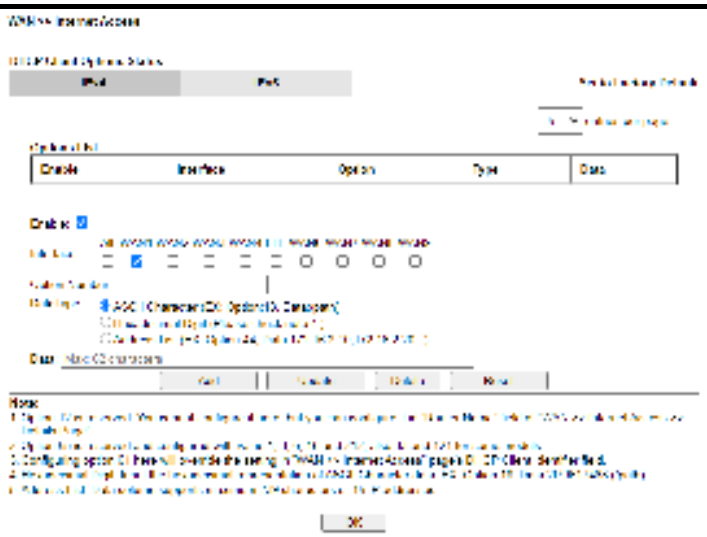


Access Mode for USB,



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Index	Display the WAN interface.
Display Name	It shows the name of the WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4/WAN5 or LTE/WAN6 that entered in general setup.
Physical Mode	It shows the physical connection for WAN interfaces according to the real network connection.
Access Mode	Use the drop down list to choose a proper access mode. The details page of that mode will be popped up. If not, click Details Page for accessing the page to configure the settings.
Details Page	This button will open different web page (based on IPv4) according to the access mode that you choose in WAN interface. Note that **Details Page** will be changed slightly based on physical mode specified on **WAN>>General Setup**.
IPv6	This button will open different web page (based on Physical Mode) to setup IPv6 Internet Access Mode for WAN interface.
DHCP Client Option	This button allows you to configure DHCP client options. DHCP packets can be processed by adding option number and data information when such function is enabled and configured.



Enable/Disable – Enable/Disable the function of DHCP Option. Each DHCP option is composed by an option number with data. For example,

Option number:100

Data: abcd

When such function is enabled, the specified values for DHCP option will be seen in DHCP reply packets.

Interface – Specify the WAN interface(s) that will be overwritten by such function. WAN7 ~ WAN9 can be located under **WAN>>Multi-PVC/VLAN**.

Option Number – Type a number for such function.

DataType – Choose the type (ASCII or Hex) for the data to be stored.

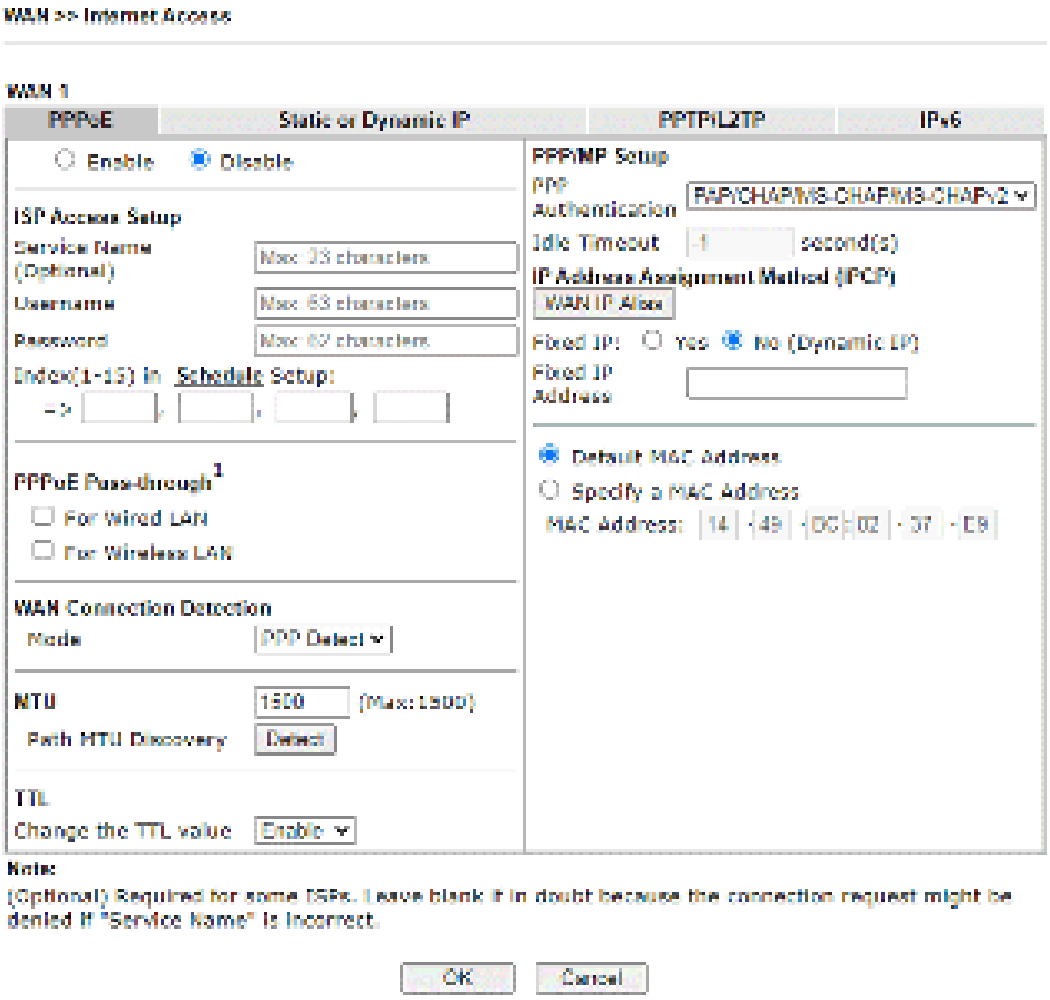
Data – Enter the content of the data to be processed by the function of DHCP option.

Info

If you choose to configure option 61 here, the detailed settings in WAN>>Interface Access will be overwritten.

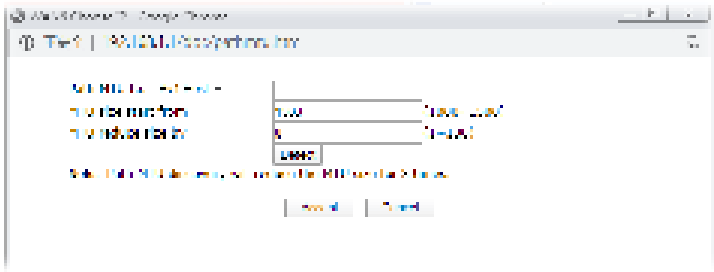
II-1-2-1 Details Page for PPPoE in WAN1/WAN2 (Physical Mode: Ethernet)

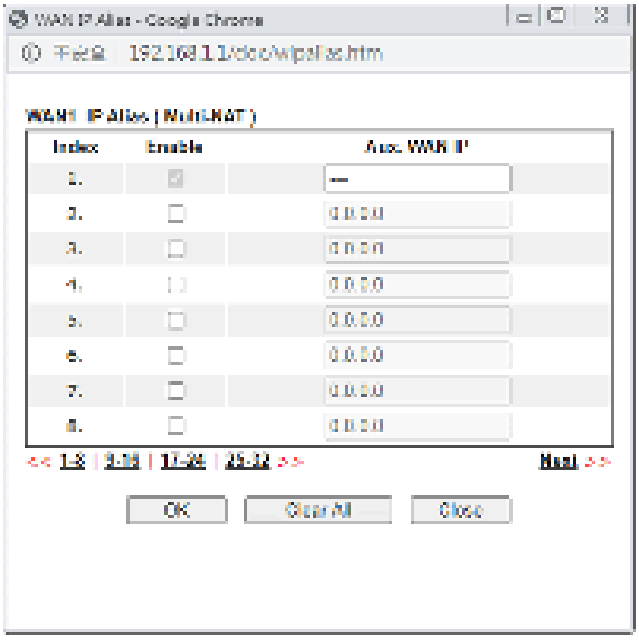
To choose PPPoE as the accessing protocol of the Internet, please select **PPPoE** from the **WAN>>Internet Access >>WAN1/2** page. The following web page will be shown.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable/Disable	Click **Enable** for activating this function. If you click **Disable**, this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid.
ISP Access Setup	Enter your allocated username, password and authentication parameters according to the information provided by your ISP. **Service Name (Optional)** - Enter the description of the specific network service. **Username** – Enter the username provided by ISP in this field. The maximum length of the user name you can set is 63 characters. **Password** – Enter the password provided by ISP in this field. The maximum length of the password you can set is 62 characters. **Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup -** You can Enter four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in **Applications >> Schedule** web page and you

	can use the number that you have set in that web page.
PPPoE Pass-through	The router offers PPPoE dial-up connection. Besides, you also can establish the PPPoE connection directly from local clients to your ISP via the Vigor router. When PPPoA protocol is selected, the PPPoE package transmitted by PC will be transformed into PPPoA package and sent to WAN server. Thus, the PC can access Internet through such direction. **For Wired LAN** – If you check this box, PCs on the same network can use another set of PPPoE session (different with the Host PC) to access into Internet. **For Wireless LAN** – It is available for *n* model. If you check this box, PCs on the same wireless network can use another set of PPPoE session (different with the Host PC) to access into Internet. **Note:** To have PPPoA Pass-through, please choose PPPoA protocol and check the box(es) here. The router will behave like a modem which only serves the PPPoE client on the LAN. That's, the router will offer PPPoA dial-up connection.
WAN Connection Detection	Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through PPP Detect or Ping Detect. **Mode** – Choose **PPP Detect** or **Ping Detect** for the system to execute for WAN detection. If you choose Ping Detect as the detection mode, you have to type required settings for the following items. ● **Primary/Secondary Ping IP** – If you choose **Ping Detect** as detection mode, you have to type Primary or Secondary IP address in this field for pinging. ● **Ping Gateway IP** – If you choose **Ping Detect** as detection mode, you also can enable this setting to use current WAN gateway IP address for pinging. ● With the IP address(es) pinging, Vigor router can check if the WAN connection is on or off. ● **TTL (Time to Live)** – Set TTL value of PING operation. ● **Ping Interval** – Enter the interval for the system to execute the PING operation. ● **Ping Retry** – Enter the number of times that the system is allowed to execute the PING operation before WAN disconnection is judged.
MTU	It means Max Transmit Unit for packet. **Path MTU Discovery** – It is used to detect the maximum MTU size of a packet not to be segmented in specific transmit path. Click **Detect** to open the following dialog.  ● **Path MTU to** – Enter the IP address as the specific transmit path. ● **MTU size start from** – Determine the starting point value of the packet. Default setting is 1500. ● **MTU reduce size by** – It determines the decreasing size

	of MTU value. For example, the number specified in this field is “8”. The maximum MTU size is “1500”. After clicking the “detect” button, the system will calculate and get the suitable MTU value such as 1500, 1492, 1484 and etc., automatically. ● **Detect** – Click it to detect a suitable MTU value ● **Accept** – After clicking it, the detected value will be displayed in the field of MTU.
TTL	**Change the TTL value –** Enable or disable the TTL (Time to Live) for a packet transmitted through Vigor router. ● **Enable** - TTL value will be reduced (-1) when it passess through Vigor router. It will cause the client, accessing Internet through Vigor router, be blocked by certain ISP when TTL value becomes “0”. ● **Disable** – TTL value will not be reduced. Then, when a packet passes through Vigor router, it will not be cancelled. That is, the client who sends out the packet will not be blocked by ISP.
PPP/MP Setup	**PPP Authentication** – Select **PAP only** or **PAP** / **CHAP** / **MS-CHAP** / **MS-CHAPv2** for PPP. **Idle Timeout** – Set the timeout for breaking down the Internet after passing through the time without any action. **IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP)-** Usually ISP dynamically assigns IP address to you each time you connect to it and request. In some case, your ISP provides service to always assign you the same IP address whenever you request. In this case, you can fill in this IP address in the Fixed IP field. Please contact your ISP before you want to use this function. **WAN IP Alias** - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 32 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using. Enter the additional WAN IP address and check the Enable box. Then click **OK** to exit the dialog.  **Fixed IP Address** – Enter a fixed IP address. **Default MAC Address** – Enter MAC address for the router. You

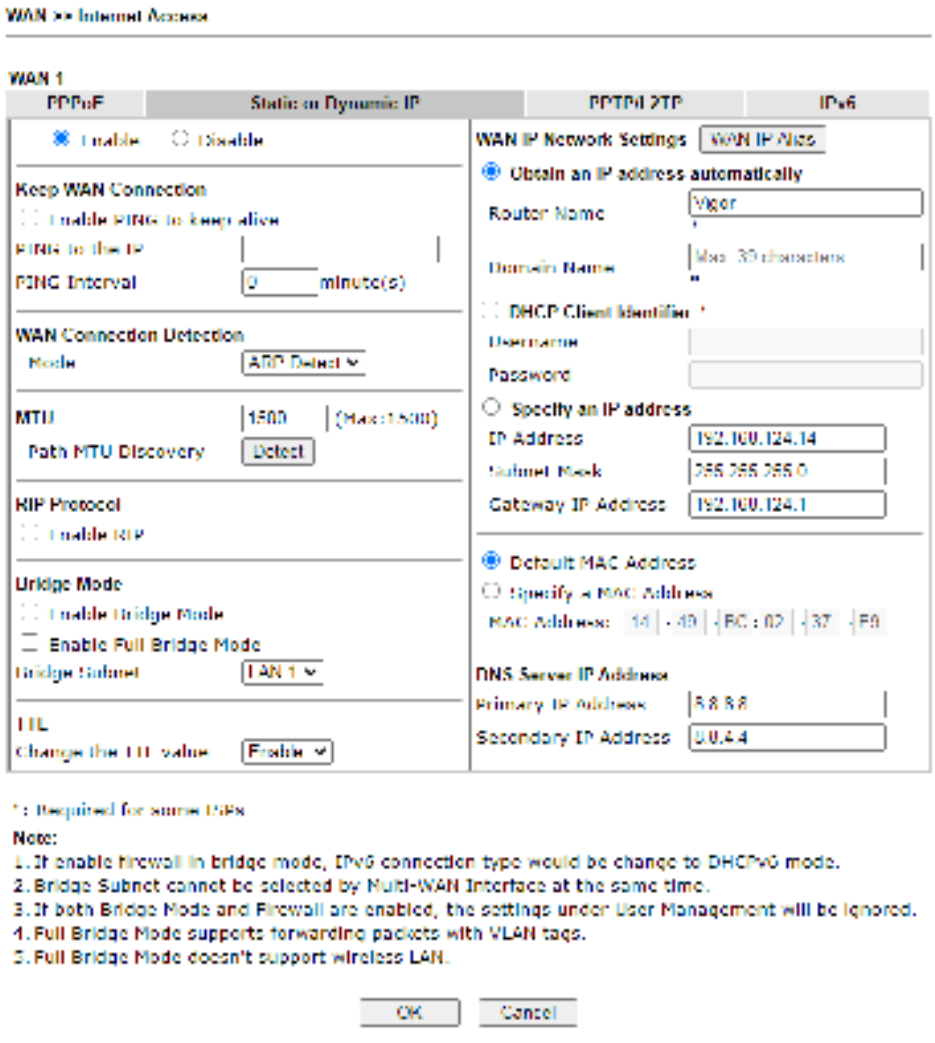
	can use **Default MAC Address** or specify another MAC address for your necessity. **Specify a MAC Address** – Enter the MAC address for the router manually.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to activate them.

II-1-2-2 Details Page for Static or Dynamic IP in WAN1/WAN2 (Physical Mode: Ethernet)

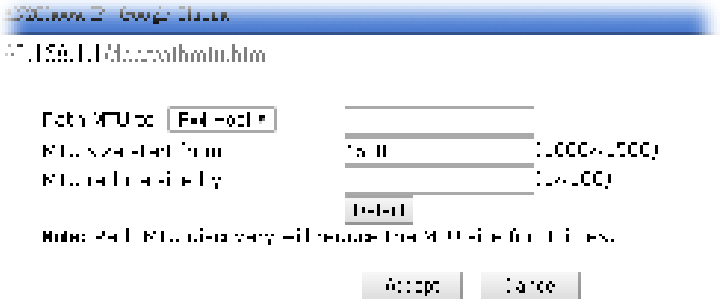
For static IP mode, you usually receive a fixed public IP address or a public subnet, namely multiple public IP addresses from your DSL or Cable ISP service providers. In most cases, a Cable service provider will offer a fixed public IP, while a DSL service provider will offer a public subnet. If you have a public subnet, you could assign an IP address or many IP address to the WAN interface.

To use **Static or Dynamic IP** as the accessing protocol of the internet, please click the **Static or Dynamic IP** tab. The following web page will be shown.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable / **Disable**	Click **Enable** for activating this function. If you click **Disable**, this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid.

Keep WAN Connection	Normally, this function is designed for Dynamic IP environments because some ISPs will drop connections if there is no traffic within certain periods of time. Check **Enable PING to keep alive** box to activate this function. **PING to the IP** - If you enable the PING function, please specify the IP address for the system to PING it for keeping alive. **PING Interval** - Enter the interval for the system to execute the PING operation.
WAN Connection Detection	Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect. **Mode** – Choose **ARP Detect**, **Ping Detect** or **Always On** for the system to execute for WAN detection. If you choose Ping Detect as the detection mode, you have to type required settings for the following items. ● **Primary/Secondary Ping IP** – If you choose **Ping Detect** as detection mode, you have to type Primary or Secondary IP address in this field for pinging. ● **Ping Gateway IP** – If you choose **Ping Detect** as detection mode, you also can enable this setting to use current WAN gateway IP address for pinging. With the IP address(es) pinging, Vigor router can check if the WAN connection is on or off. ● **TTL (Time to Live)** – Set TTL value of PING operation. ● **Ping Interval** – Enter the interval for the system to execute the PING operation. ● **Ping Retry** – Enter the number of times that the system is allowed to execute the PING operation before WAN disconnection is judged.
MTU	It means Max Transmit Unit for packet. **Path MTU Discovery** – It is used to detect the maximum MTU size of a packet not to be segmented in specific transmit path. Click **Detect** to open the following dialog.  ● **Path MTU to** – Enter the IP address as the specific transmit path. ● **MTU size start from** – Determine the starting point value of the packet. Default setting is 1500. ● **MTU reduce size by** – It determines the decreasing size of MTU value. For example, the number specified in this field is “8”. The maximum MTU size is “1500”. After clicking the “detect” button, the system will calculate and get the suitable MTU value such as 1500, 1492, 1484 and etc., automatically.

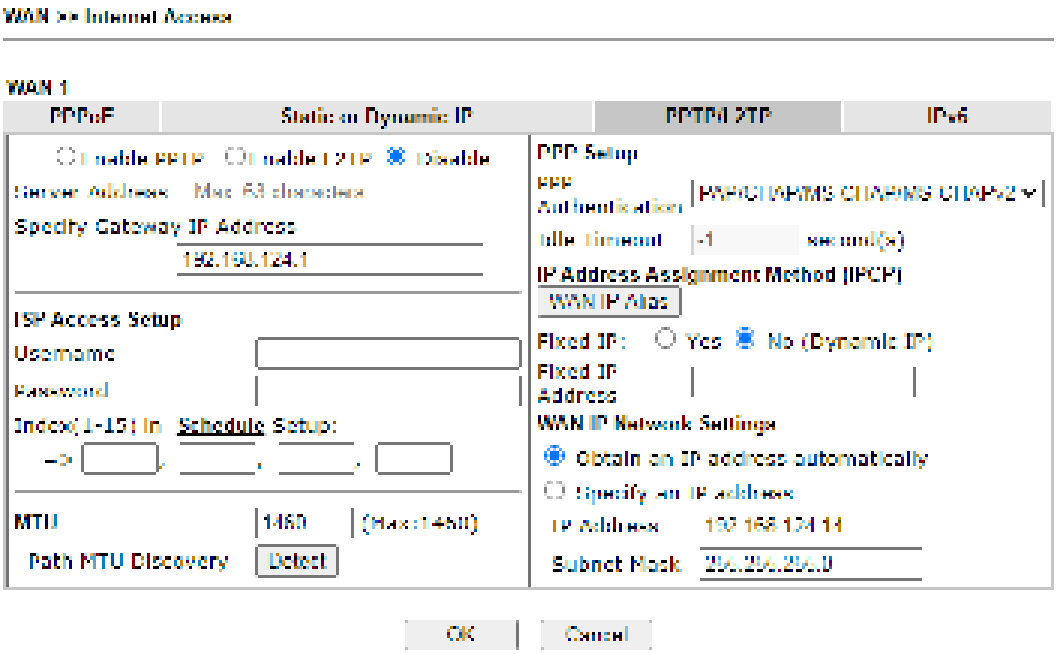
	• **Detect** – Click it to detect a suitable MTU value • **Accept** – After clicking it, the detected value will be displayed in the field of MTU.
RIP Protocol	Routing Information Protocol is abbreviated as RIP（RFC1058） specifying how routers exchange routing tables information. Click **Enable RIP** for activating this function.
Bridge Mode	**Enable Full Bridge Mode** – If the function is enabled, the router will work as a bridge modem which is able to forward incoming packets with VLAN tags. **Enable Bridge Mode** - If the function is enabled, the router will work as a bridge modem. Yet, the incoming packets with VLAN tags will be discarded. **Enable Firewall** – It is available when Bridge Mode is enabled. When both Bridge Mode and Firewall check boxes are enabled, the settings configured (user profiles) under User Management will be ignored. And all of the filter rules defined and enabled in Firewall menu will be activated. **Bridge Subnet** – Make a bridge between the selected LAN subnet and such WAN interface.
TTL	**Change the TTL value –** Enable or disable the TTL (Time to Live) for a packet transmitted through Vigor router. • **If enabled** - TTL value will be reduced (-1) when it passess through Vigor router. It will cause the client, accessing Internet through Vigor router, be blocked by certain ISP when TTL value becomes "0". • **If disabled** – TTL value will not be reduced. Then, when a packet passes through Vigor router, it will not be cancelled. That is, the client who sends out the packet will not be blocked by ISP.
WAN IP Network Settings	This group allows you to obtain an IP address automatically and allows you Enter IP address manually. **WAN IP Alias** - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 32 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using. **Obtain an IP address automatically** – Click this button to obtain the IP address automatically if you want to use **Dynamic IP** mode. • **Router Name**: Enter the router name provided by ISP. • **Domain Name**: Enter the domain name that you have assigned. **DHCP Client Identifier:** Check the box to specify username and password as the DHCP client identifier for some ISP. • **Username:** Type a name as username. The maximum length of the user name you can set is 63 characters. • **Password:** Type a password. The maximum length of the password you can set is 62 characters. **Specify an IP address** – Click this radio button to specify some data if you want to use **Static IP** mode. • **IP Address**: Enter the IP address. • **Subnet Mask**: Enter the subnet mask. • **Gateway IP Address**: Enter the gateway IP address. **Default MAC Address**: Click this radio button to use default

	MAC address for the router. **Specify a MAC Address**: Some Cable service providers specify a specific MAC address for access authentication. In such cases you need to click the **Specify a MAC Address** and enter the MAC address in the MAC Address field.
DNS Server IP Address	Enter the primary IP address for the router if you want to use **Static IP** mode. If necessary, Enter secondary IP address for necessity in the future.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to activate them.

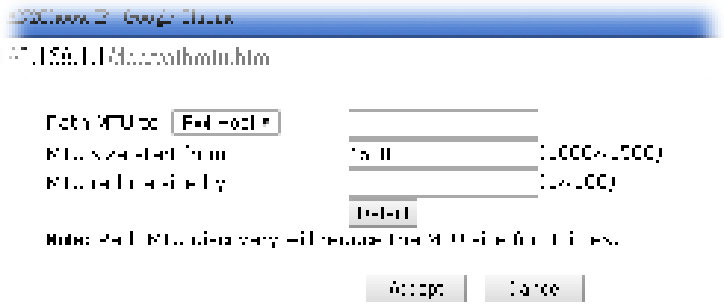
II-1-2-3 Details Page for PPTP/L2TP in WAN1/WAN2 (Physical Mode: Ethernet)

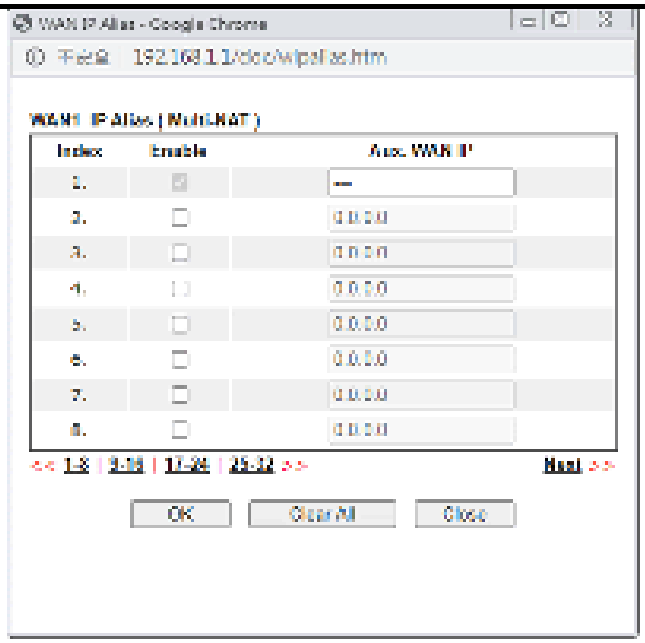
To use **PPTP/L2TP** as the accessing protocol of the internet, please click the **PPTP/L2TP** tab. The following web page will be shown.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
PPTP/L2TP	**Enable PPTP-** Click this radio button to enable a PPTP client to establish a tunnel to a DSL modem on the WAN interface. **Enable L2TP** - Click this radio button to enable a L2TP client to establish a tunnel to a DSL modem on the WAN interface. **Disable** – Click this radio button to close the connection through PPTP or L2TP. **Server Address** - Specify the IP address of the PPTP/L2TP server if you enable PPTP/L2TP client mode. **Specify Gateway IP Address** – Specify the gateway IP address for DHCP server.
ISP Access Setup	**Username** -Enter the username provided by ISP in this field. The maximum length of the user name you can set is 63 characters. **Password** -Enter the password provided by ISP in this field. The maximum length of the password you can set is 62 characters. **Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup -** You can Enter four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in **Applications >> Schedule** web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.
MTU	It means Max Transmit Unit for packet. **Path MTU Discovery** – It is used to detect the maximum MTU size of a packet not to be segmented in specific transmit path. Click **Detect** to open the following dialog.

	 ● **Path MTU to** – Enter the IP address as the specific transmit path. ● **MTU size start from** – Determine the starting point value of the packet. Default setting is 1500. ● **MTU reduce size by**– It determines the decreasing size of MTU value. For example, the number specified in this field is “8”. The maximum MTU size is “1500”. After clicking the “detect” button, the system will calculate and get the suitable MTU value such as 1500, 1492, 1484 and etc., automatically. ● **Detect** – Click it to detect a suitable MTU value ● **Accept** – After clicking it, the detected value will be displayed in the field of MTU.
PPP/MP Setup	**PPP Authentication** – Select **PAP only** or **PAP** / **CHAP** / **MS-CHAP** / **MS-CHAPv2** for PPP. **Idle Timeout** – Set the timeout for breaking down the Internet after passing through the time without any action. **IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP)-** Usually ISP dynamically assigns IP address to you each time you connect to it and request. In some case, your ISP provides service to always assign you the same IP address whenever you request. In this case, you can fill in this IP address in the Fixed IP field. Please contact your ISP before you want to use this function. **WAN IP Alias** - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 32 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using. Enter the additional WAN IP address and check the Enable box. Then click **OK** to exit the dialog.

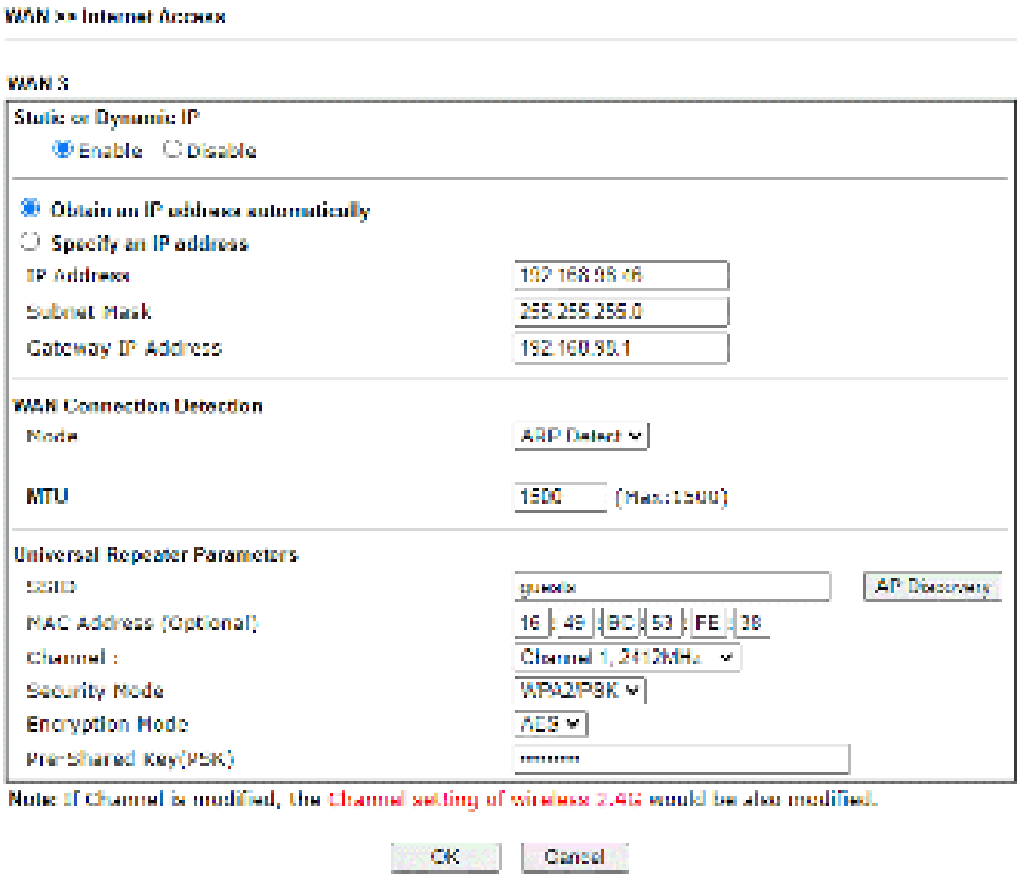
	 **Fixed IP Address** - Enter a fixed IP address.
WAN IP Network Settings	**Obtain an IP address automatically** - Click this button to obtain the IP address automatically. **Specify an IP address** - Click this radio button to specify some data. ● **IP Address** - Enter the IP address. ● **Subnet Mask** - Enter the subnet mask.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to activate them.

II-1-2-4 Details Page for WAN3/WAN4 (Physical Mode: Wireless 2.4G/ Wireless 5G)

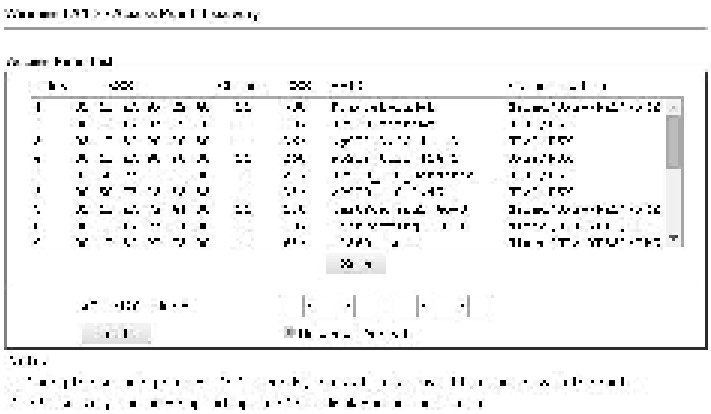
When Wireless 2.4G is selected as Physical Mode, WAN uses wireless station mode to access Internet. The Router acts as a 2.4GHz wireless station and connects to the specific Wireless AP.

Open **WAN>>Internet Access>>WAN3/4** page. The following web page will be shown.



Available settings are explained as follows:

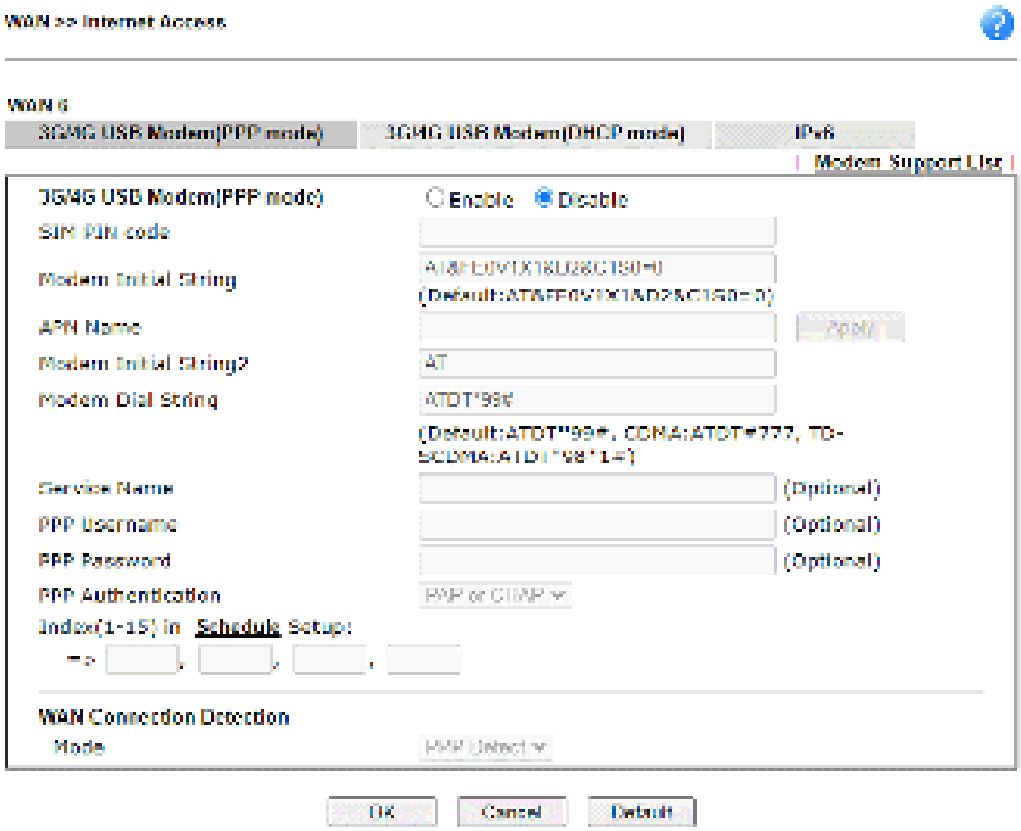
Item	Description
Enable/Disable	Click **Enable** for activating this function. If you click **Disable**, this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid.
Obtain an IP address automatically	Click this radio button to obtain the IP address automatically if you want to use **Dynamic IP** mode.
Specify an IP address	Click this radio button to specify dome data if you want to use **Static IP** mode. **IP address** - Enter the IP address. **Subnet Mask** - Enter the subnet mask. **Gateway IP Address** - Enter the gateway IP address.
WAN Connection Detection	Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect. **Mode** – Choose **ARP Detect**, **Ping Detect** or **Always On** for the system to execute for WAN detection. If you choose Ping Detect as the detection mode, you have to type required settings for the following items. ● **Ping IP** – If you choose **Ping Detect** as detection mode,

	you also can enable this setting to use current WAN gateway IP address for pinging. With the IP address(es) pinging, Vigor router can check if the WAN connection is on or off. ● **TTL (Time to Live)** – Set TTL value of PING operation.
MTU	It means Max Transmit Unit for packet.
Universal Repeater Parameters	**AP Discovery** - Click this button to open the Access Point Discovery window. Let wireless 2.4GHz do AP discovery and choose the Wireless AP you wan to connect to.  **SSID** - The identification of the Wireless AP. **MAC Address (Optional)-** The MAC Address of the Wireless AP. **Channel** - The channel of frequency of the Wireless AP. **Security Mode** - The mode to connect to the Wireless AP. ● **Disable** – The Router connects to the wireless AP without any encryption mechanism. ● **WEP** – The Router connects to the wireless AP as a WEP client and the encryption key should be entered in WEP Key. - **64-Bit** - For 64 bits WEP key, either 5 ASCII characters, such as 12345 (or 10 hexadecimal digitals leading by 0x, such as 0x4142434445.) - **128-Bit** - For 128 bits WEP key, either 13 ASCII characters, such as ABCDEFGHIJKLM (or 26 hexadecimal digits leading by 0x, such as 0x41424344454647484 94A4B4C4D). - **WEP keys** – Four keys can be entered here, but only one key can be selected at a time. The keys can be entered in ASCII or Hexadecimal. Check the key you wish to use. ● **WPA/PSK** – The Router connects to the wireless AP as a WPA client and the encryption key should be entered in PSK. ● **WPA2/PSK** – The Router connects to the wireless AP as a WPA2 client and the encryption key should be entered in PSK. - **Encryption Mode** - WPA/PSK uses TKIP as Encryption Mode. WPA2/PSK uses AES as Encryption Mode. - **Pre-Shared Key (PSK)** – The PSK. Either 8~63 ASCII characters, such as 012345678..(or 64 Hexadecimal digits leading by 0x, such as "0x321253abcde...").

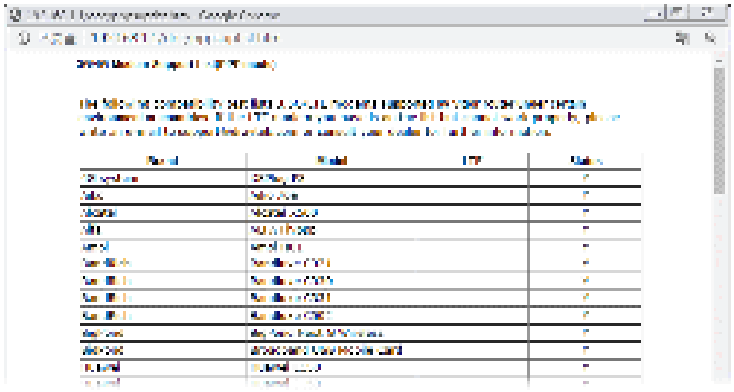
After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to activate them.

II-1-2-5 Details Page for 3G/4G USB Modem (PPP mode) in WAN5 / WAN6

To use **3G/4G USB Modem (PPP mode)** as the accessing protocol of the internet, please choose **Internet Access** from **WAN** menu. Then, select **3G/4G USB Modem (PPP mode)** for WAN5/WAN6. The following web page will be shown.



Available settings are explained as follows:

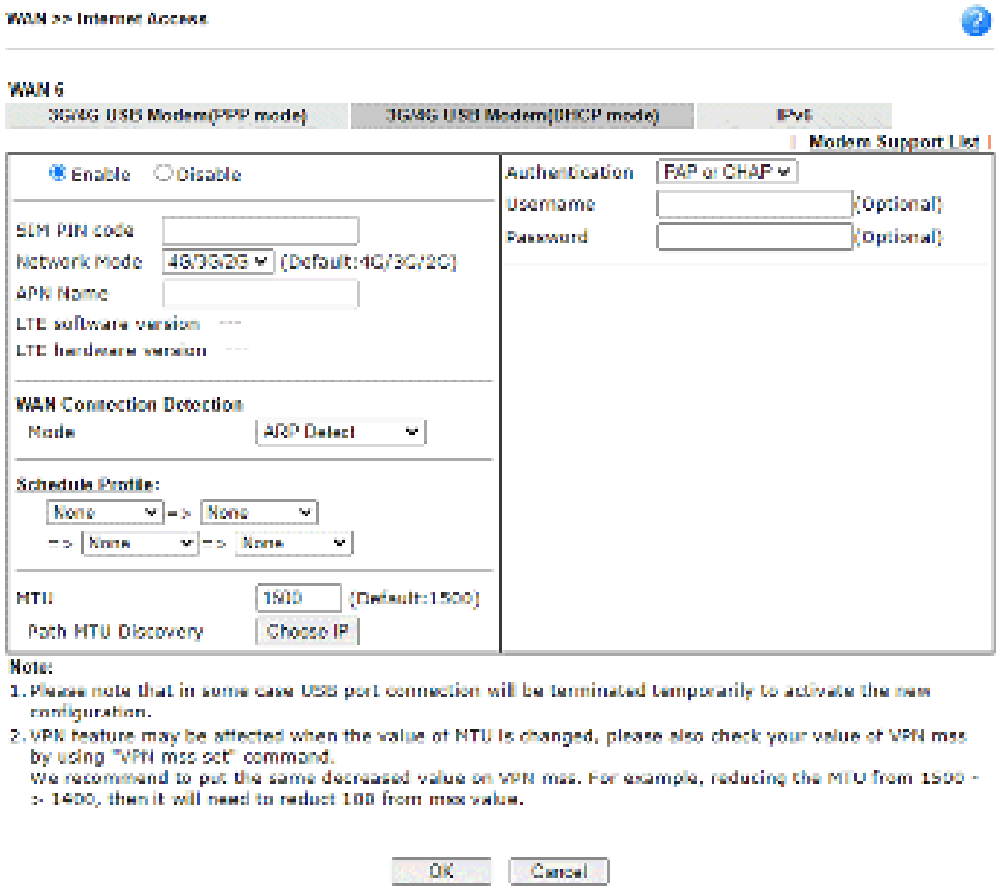
Item	Description
Modem Support List	It lists all of the modems supported by such router. 
3G/4G USB Modem (PPP mode)	Click **Enable** for activating this function. If you click **Disable**, this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid.
SIM PIN code	Type PIN code of the SIM card that will be used to access Internet. The maximum length of the PIN code you can set is 15

	characters.
Modem Initial String	Such value is used to initialize USB modem. Please use the default value. If you have any question, please contact to your ISP. The maximum length of the string you can set is 47 characters.
APN Name	APN means Access Point Name which is provided and required by some ISPs. Enter the name and click **Apply**. The maximum length of the name you can set is 43 characters.
Modem Initial String2	The initial string 1 is shared with APN. In some cases, user may need another initial AT command to restrict 3G band or do any special settings. The maximum length of the string you can set is 47 characters.
Modem Dial String	Such value is used to dial through USB mode. Please use the default value. If you have any question, please contact to your ISP. The maximum length of the string you can set is 31 characters.
Service Name	Enter the description of the specific network service.
PPP Username	Enter the PPP username (optional). The maximum length of the name you can set is 63 characters.
PPP Password	Enter the PPP password (optional). The maximum length of the password you can set is 62 characters.
PPP Authentication	Select **PAP only** or **PAP or CHAP** for PPP.
Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup	Set the wireless LAN to work at certain time interval only. You may choose up to 4 schedules out of the 15 schedules pre-defined in **Applications >> Schedule** setup. The default setting of this field is blank and the function will always work.
WAN Connection Detection	Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through PPP Detect or Ping Detect. **Mode** – Choose **PPP Detect** or **Ping Detect** for the system to execute for WAN detection. If you choose Ping Detect as the detection mode, you have to type required settings for the following items. ● **Primary/Secondary Ping IP** – If you choose **Ping Detect** as detection mode, you have to type Primary or Secondary IP address in this field for pinging. ● **Ping Gateway IP** – If you choose **Ping Detect** as detection mode, you also can enable this setting to use current WAN gateway IP address for pinging. With the IP address(es) pinging, Vigor router can check if the WAN connection is on or off. ● **TTL (Time to Live)** – Set TTL value of PING operation. ● **Ping Interval** – Enter the interval for the system to execute the PING operation. ● **Ping Retry** – Enter the number of times that the system is allowed to execute the PING operation before WAN disconnection is judged.

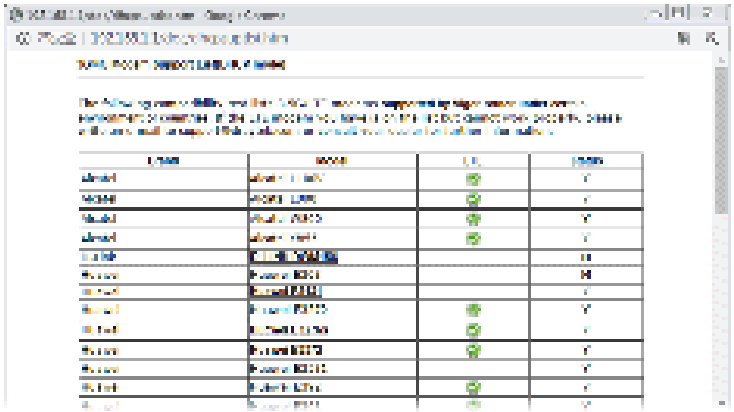
After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to activate them.

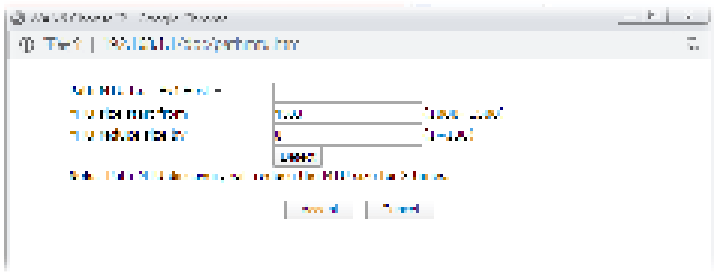
II-1-2-6 Details Page for 3G/4G USB Modem (DHCP mode) in WAN5 / WAN6

To use **3G/4G USB Modem (DHCP mode)** as the accessing protocol of the internet, please choose **Internet Access** from **WAN** menu. Then, select **3G/4G USB Modem (DHCP mode)** for WAN5/WAN6. The following web page will be shown.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Modem Support List	It lists all of the modems supported by such router. 
Enable / Disable	Click **Enable** for activating this function. If you click **Disable**, this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid.

SIM PIN code	Type PIN code of the SIM card that will be used to access Internet. The maximum length of the PIN code you can set is 19 characters.
Network Mode	Force Vigor router to connect Internet with the mode specified here. If you choose 4G/3G/2G as network mode, the router will choose a suitable one according to the actual wireless signal automatically.
APN Name	APN means Access Point Name which is provided and required by some ISPs. Enter the name and click **Apply**. The maximum length of the name you can set is 47 characters.
WAN Connection Detection	Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect, Strict ARP Detect or Ping Detect. **Mode** – Choose **ARP Detect**, **Strict ARP Detect** or **Ping Detect** for the system to execute for WAN detection. If you choose Ping Detect as the detection mode, you have to type required settings for the following items. ● **Primary/Secondary Ping IP** – If you choose **Ping Detect** as detection mode, you have to type Primary or Secondary IP address in this field for pinging. ● **Ping Gateway IP** – If you choose **Ping Detect** as detection mode, you also can enable this setting to use current WAN gateway IP address for pinging. With the IP address(es) pinging, Vigor router can check if the WAN connection is on or off. ● **TTL (Time to Live)** – Set TTL value of PING operation. ● **Ping Interval** – Enter the interval for the system to execute the PING operation. ● **Ping Retry** – Enter the number of times that the system is allowed to execute the PING operation before WAN disconnection is judged.
Schedule Profiles	Set the wireless LAN to work at certain time interval only. You may choose up to 4 schedules out of the 15 schedules pre-defined in **Applications >> Schedule** setup. The default setting of this field is blank and the function will always work.
MTU	It means Max Transmit Unit for packet. **Path MTU Discovery** – It is used to detect the maximum MTU size of a packet not to be segmented in specific transmit path. Click **Choose IP** to open the following dialog.  ● **Path MTU to** – Enter the IP address as the specific transmit path.

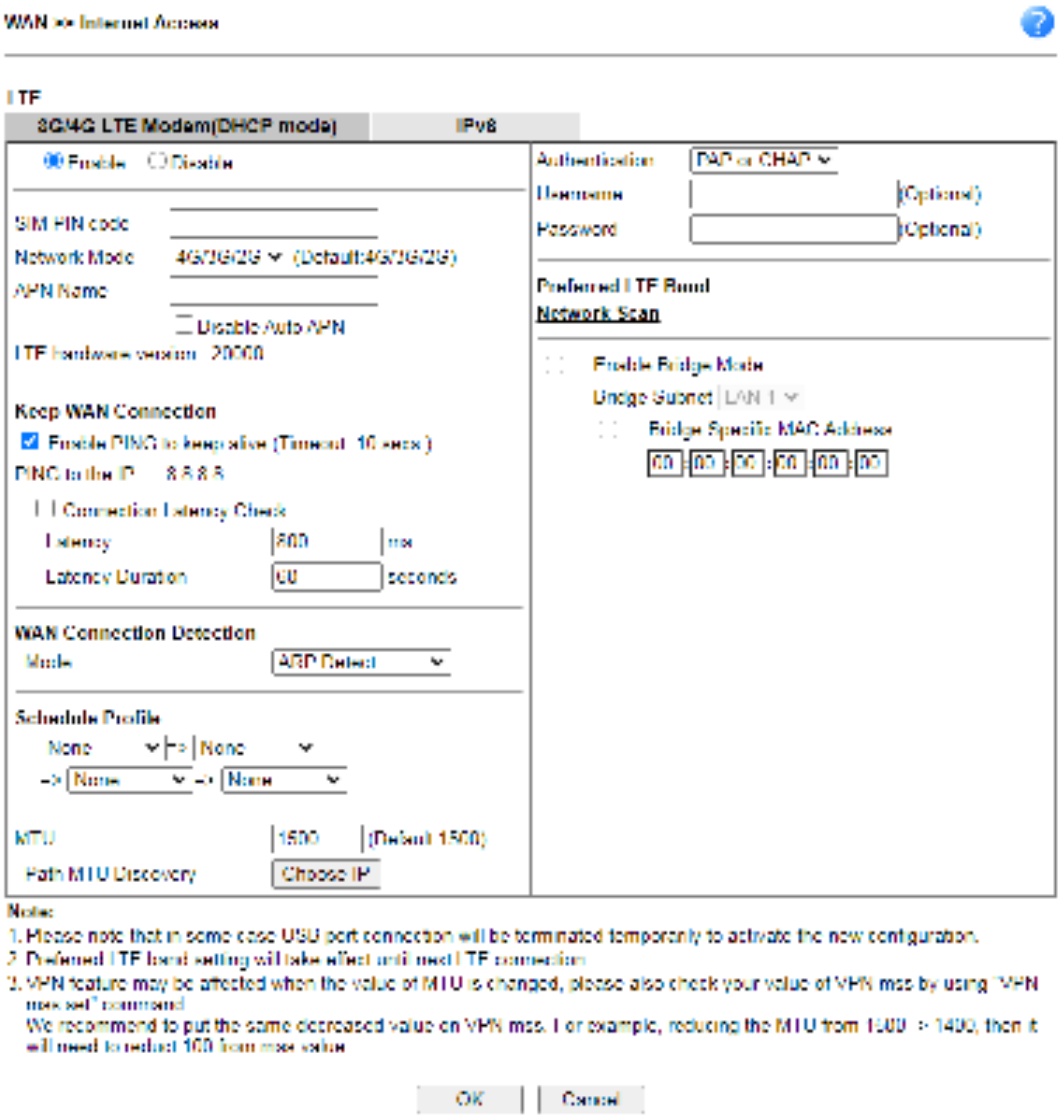
	• **MTU size start from** – Determine the starting point value of the packet. Default setting is 1500. • **MTU reduce size by**– It determines the decreasing size of MTU value. For example, the number specified in this field is "8". The maximum MTU size is "1500". After clicking the "detect" button, the system will calculate and get the suitable MTU value such as 1500, 1492, 1484 and etc., automatically. • **Detect** – Click it to detect a suitable MTU value • **Accept** – After clicking it, the detected value will be displayed in the field of MTU.
Authentication	Select **PAP only** or **PAP or CHAP** for PPP authentication. **Username** – Enter the username for authentication (optional). **Password** – Enter the password for authentication (optional).

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to activate them.

II-1-2-7 Details Page for 3G/4G USB Modem (DHCP mode) in LTE WAN

It is available for "L" model only. LTE WAN uses the embedded LTE module to access internet.

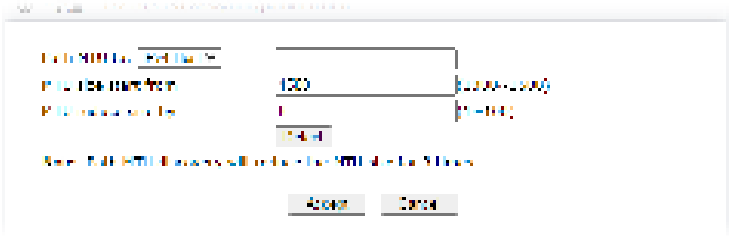
To use **3G/4G USB Modem (DHCP mode)** as the accessing protocol of the internet, please choose **Internet Access** from **WAN** menu. Then, select **3G/4G USB Modem (DHCP mode)** for LTE. The following web page will be shown.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Click **Enable** for activating this function. If you click **Disable**, this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid.
SIM PIN code	Enter PIN code of the SIM card that will be used to access Internet. The maximum length of the PIN code you can set is 15 characters.
Network Mode	Force Vigor router to connect Internet with the mode specified here. If you choose 4G/3G/2G as network mode, the router will choose a suitable one according to the actual wireless signal automatically.

APN Name	APN means Access Point Name which is provided and required by some ISPs. Enter the name and click **Apply**. The maximum length of the name you can set is 47 characters.
LTE hardware version	The hardware version of the embedded LTE module.
Keep WAN Connection	Normally, this function is designed for Dynamic IP environments because some ISPs will drop connections if there is no traffic within certain periods of time. Check **Enable PING to keep alive** box to activate this function. **Enable PING to Keep alive** – If you enable the PING function, please specify an IP address for the system to PING it for keeping alive. Vigor system will send a packet per second to the specified IP address. If the system does not receive any reply from that IP within 10 seconds, Vigor system will reboot LTE module until successfully set LTE connection. ● **PING to the IP** – Enter an IP address. **Connection Latency Check** - Enable the latency time setting for packet reply. If it is enabled (checked), Vigor system will wait for the packet reply from the specified IP address. When the time of waiting packet reply reaches the time threshold (defined in Latency) and continues for a period of time (defined in Latency Duration), Vigor system will reboot LTE module until successfully set LTE connection. ■ **Latency** – Set a time threshold for packet reply. Default value is 800 (unit: micro-second). ■ **Latency Duration** – Set a time period. Default value is 60 (unit: second).
WAN Connection Detection	Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect. **Mode** – Choose **ARP Detect** or **Ping Detect** for the system to execute for WAN detection. If you choose Ping Detect as the detection mode, you have to type required settings for the following items. ● **Primary/Secondary Ping IP** – If you choose **Ping Detect** as detection mode, you have to type Primary or Secondary IP address in this field for pinging. ● **Ping Gateway IP** – If you choose **Ping Detect** as detection mode, you also can enable this setting to use current WAN gateway IP address for pinging. With the IP address(es) pinging, Vigor router can check if the WAN connection is on or off. ● **TTL (Time to Live)** – Set TTL value of PING operation. ● **Ping Interval** – Enter the interval for the system to execute the PING operation. ● **Ping Retry** – Enter the number of times that the system is allowed to execute the PING operation before WAN disconnection is judged.
Schedule Profile	Set the LTE WAN to work at certain time interval only. Specify up to 4 time schedule entries to enable or disable the WAN. All the schedules can be set previously in **Applications >> Schedule** web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.
MTU	Maximum Transmission Unit, the size of the largest packet, in bytes, that can be transmitted to the WAN. The maximum

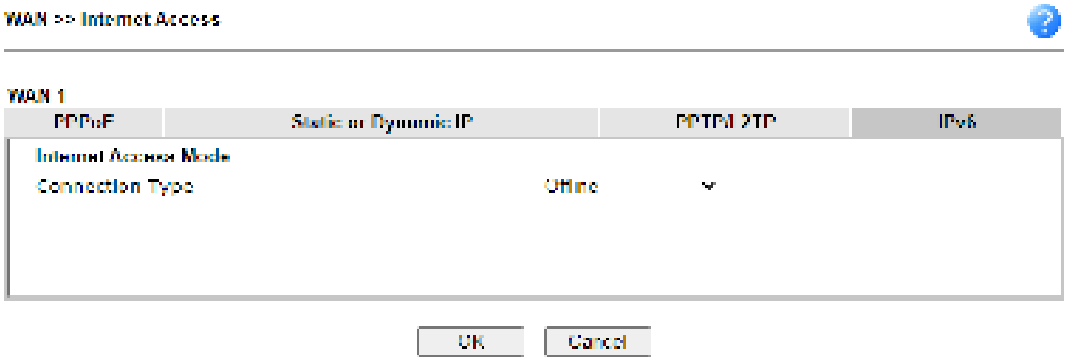
	value is 1500. **Path MTU Discovery** – Use this feature to determine the optimal MTU size for the WAN. Click **Choose IP** to open the following dialog.  ● **Path MTU to** – Select Host / IP, for an IPv4 address or Host / IPv6, for an IPv6 address, and then enter the IP address in the textbox. ● **MTU size start from** – Determine the starting point value of the packet. ● **MTU reduce size by** – Number of octets by which to decrease the 1500-byte MTU. Start with a 0 value for the reduce size and click the Detect button. If the message Fail is returned, increase the MTU reduce size and try again. Repeat until you see the message Success, indicating that the optimal MTU size has been reached. ● **Detect** – Click it to detect a suitable MTU value ● **Accept** – After clicking it, the detected value will be displayed in the field of MTU.
Authentication	The protocol used for PPP authentication. ● **PAP only** - Only PAP (Password Authentication Protocol) is used. ● **PAP or CHAP** - Both PAP and CHAP (Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol) can be used for PPP authentication. Router negotiates with the PPTP or L2TP server to determine which protocol to use. **Username** –Username provided by the ISP for authentication (optional). **Password** –Password provided by the ISP for authentication (optional).
Preferred LTE Band	Click the link to specify the preferred LTE band. A dialog will be open and list available LTE bands supported by the LTE module for the user to choose for establishing the network connection.
Network Scan	Click it to search the nearby ISP for LTE connection. The following dialog lists available ISP services detected by Vigor router.

Enable Bridge Mode	If the function is enabled, the router will work as a LTE bridge modem. **Bridge Specific MAC Address** - Enter the MAC address of the device (e.g., a computer, router or a WiFi router) which needs to be connected to the Internet through the LTE modem.

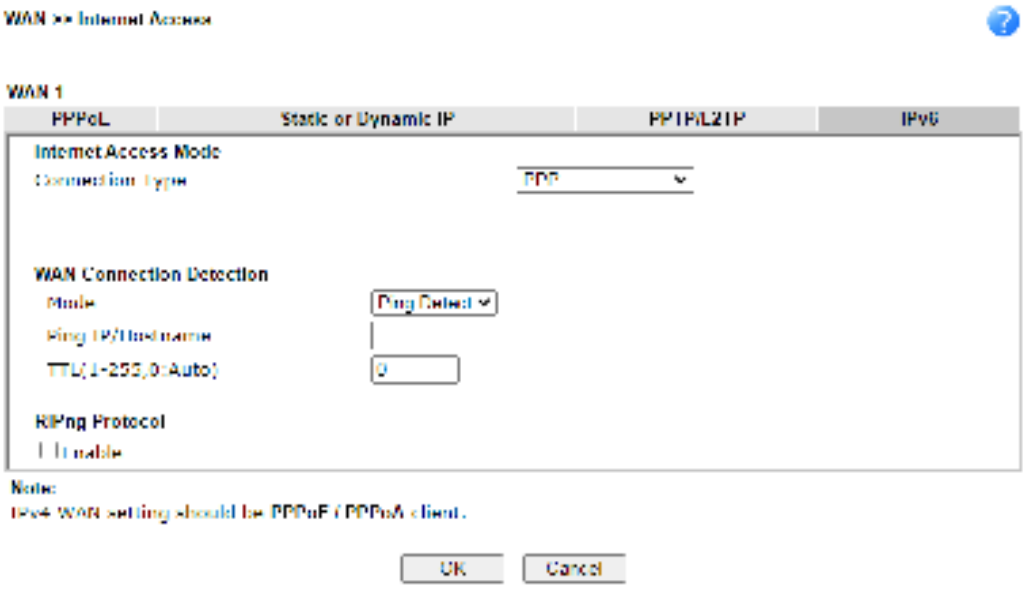
After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to activate them.

II-1-2-8 Details Page for IPv6 – Offline in WAN1/WAN2/WAN5/WAN6

When Offline is selected, the IPv6 connection will be disabled.



II-1-2-9 Details Page for IPv6 – PPP in WAN1/WAN2



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
WAN Connection Detection	Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through Ping Detect. **Mode** – Choose **Always On** or **Ping Detect** for the system to execute for WAN detection. **Always On** means no detection will be executed. The network connection will be on always. ● **Ping IP/Hostname** – If you choose **Ping Detect** as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging. ● **TTL (Time to Live)** –If you choose **Ping Detect** as detection mode, you have to type TTL value.
RIPng Protocol	RIPng (RIP next generation) offers the same functions and benefits as IPv4 RIP v2.

Below shows an example for successful IPv6 connection based on PPP mode.

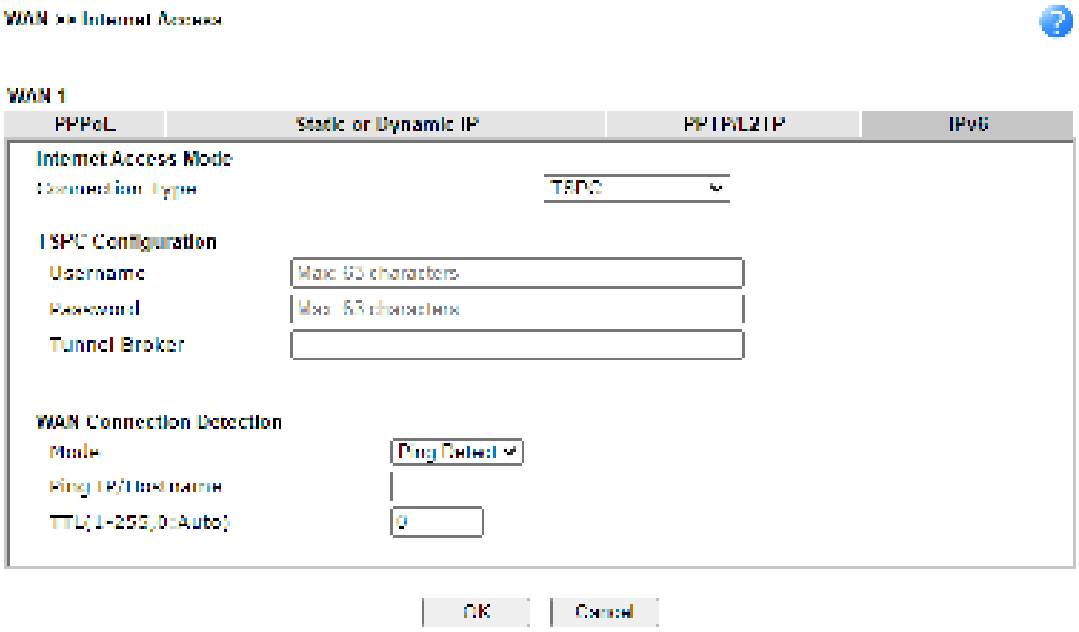
Info	At present, the IPv6 prefix can be acquired via the PPPoE mode connection which is available for the areas such as Taiwan (hinet), the Netherlands, Australia and UK.

II-1-2-10 Details Page for IPv6 – TSPC in WAN1/WAN2/WAN5/WAN6

Tunnel setup protocol client (TSPC) is an application which could help you to connect to IPv6 network easily.

Please make sure your IPv4 WAN connection is OK and apply one free account from hexago (http://gogonet.gogo6.com/page/freenet6-account) before you try to use TSPC for network connection. TSPC would connect to tunnel broker and requests a tunnel according to the specifications inside the configuration file. It gets a public IPv6 IP address and an IPv6 prefix from the tunnel broker and then monitors the state of the tunnel in background.

After getting the IPv6 prefix and starting router advertisement daemon (RADVD), the PC behind this router can directly connect to IPv6 the Internet.

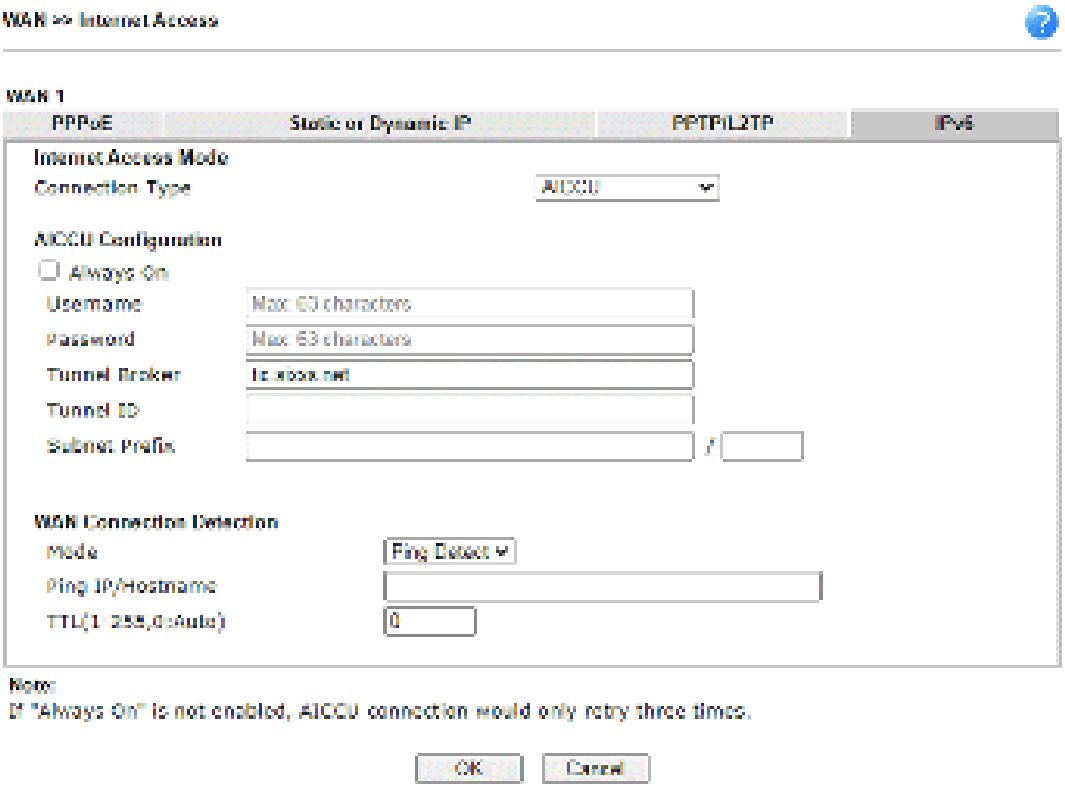


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Username	It is suggested for you to apply another username and password for http://gogonet.gogo6.com/page/freenet6-account. The maximum length of the name you can set is 63 characters.
Password	Enter the password assigned with the user name. The maximum length of the name you can set is 19 characters.
Tunnel Broker	Enter the address for the tunnel broker IP, FQDN or an optional port number.
WAN Connection Detection	Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through Ping Detect. **Mode** - Choose **Always On** or **Ping Detect** for the system to execute for WAN detection. **Always On** means no detection will be executed. The network connection will be on always. ● **Ping IP/Hostname** - If you choose **Ping Detect** as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging. ● **TTL (Time to Live)** -If you choose **Ping Detect** as detection mode, you have to type TTL value.

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

II-1-2-11 Details Page for IPv6 – AICCU in WAN1/WAN2/WAN5/WAN6



Available settings are explained as follows:

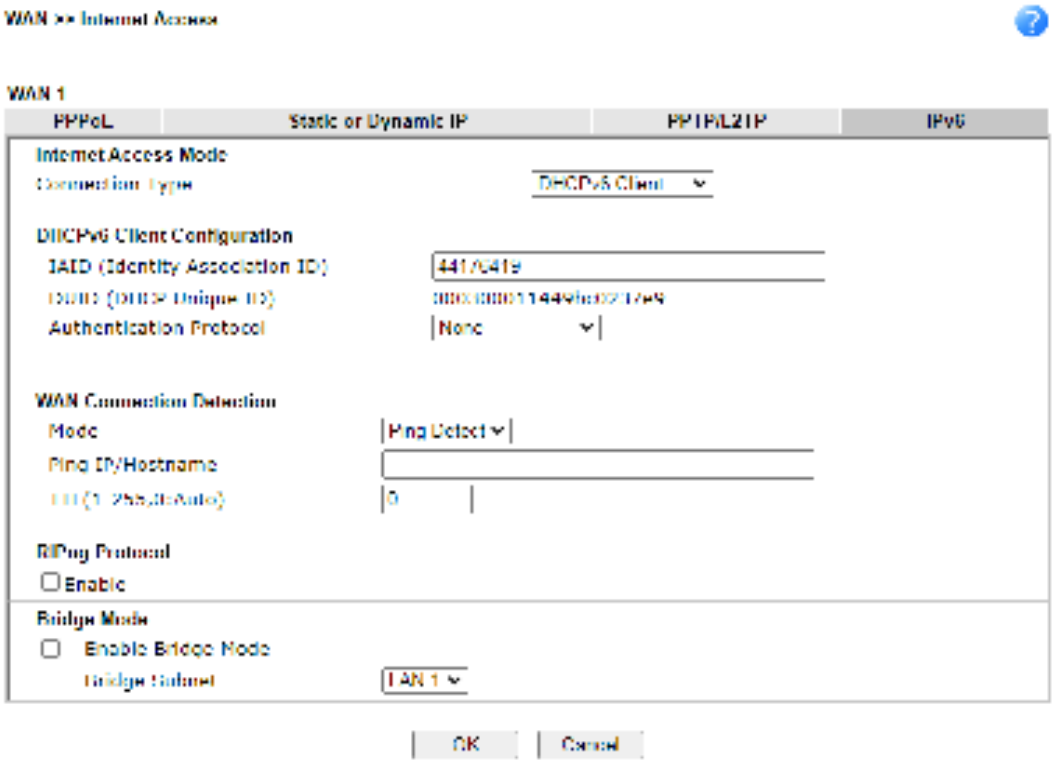
Item	Description
Always On	Check this box to keep the network connection always.
Username	Enter the name obtained from the broker. Please apply new account at http://www.sixxs.net/. It is suggested for you to apply another username and password. The maximum length of the name you can set is 19 characters.
Password	Enter the password assigned with the user name. The maximum length of the password you can set is 19 characters.
Tunnel Broker	It means a server of AICCU. The server can provide IPv6 tunnels to sites or end users over IPv4. Enter the address for the tunnel broker IP, FQDN or an optional port number.
Tunnel ID	One user account may have several tunnels. And, each tunnel shall have one specified tunnel ID (e.g., T115394). Enter the ID offered by Tunnel Broker.
Subnet Prefix	Enter the subnet prefix address obtained from service provider. The maximum length of the prefix you can set is 128 characters.
WAN Connection Detection	Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through Ping Detect. **Mode** – Choose **Always On** or **Ping Detect** for the system to

	execute for WAN detection. ● **Ping IP/Hostname** – If you choose **Ping Detect** as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging. ● **TTL (Time to Live)** –If you choose **Ping Detect** as detection mode, you have to type TTL value.

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

II-1-2-12 Details Page for IPv6 – DHCPv6 Client in WAN1/WAN2

DHCPv6 client mode would use DHCPv6 protocol to obtain IPv6 address from server.



Available settings are explained as follows:

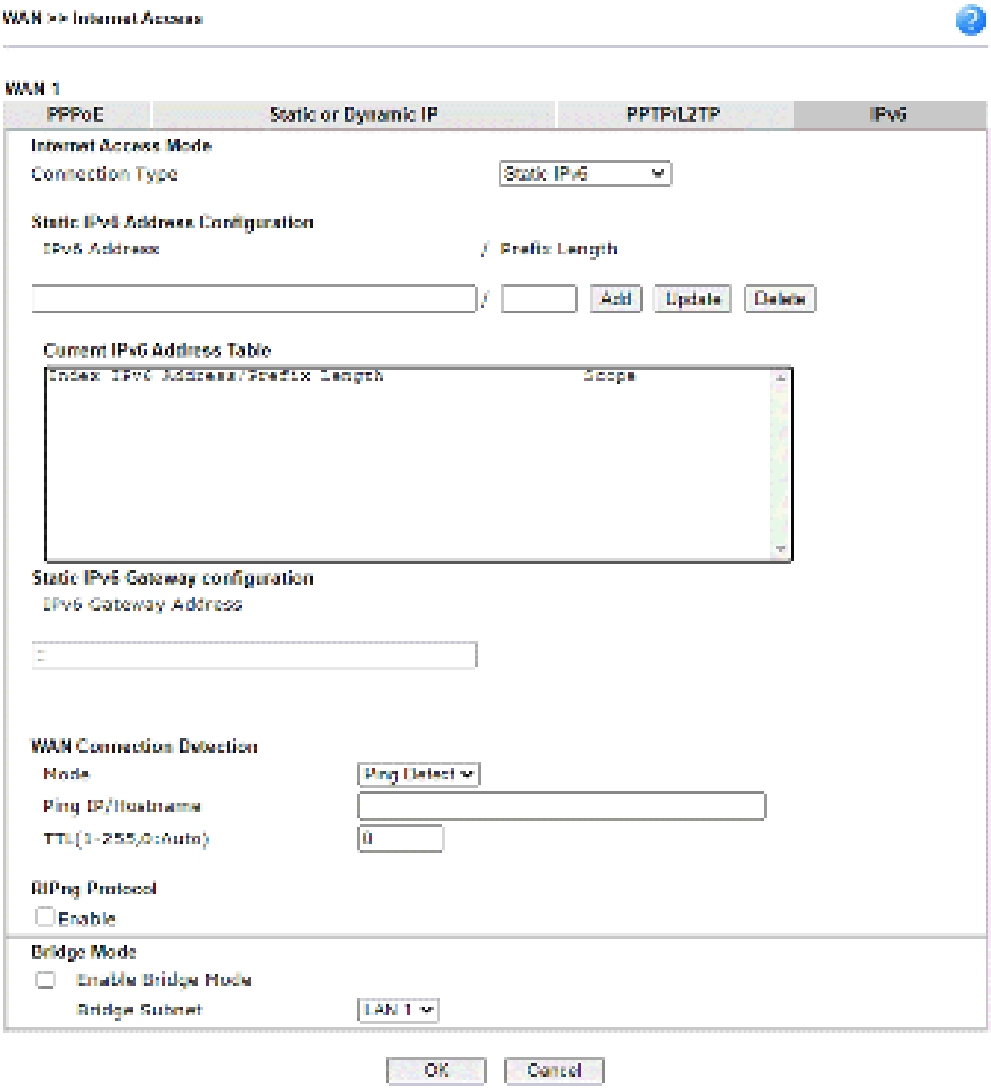
Item	Description
DHCPv6 Client Configuration	**IAID** - Type a number as IAID. **DUID** – Display the DHCP unique ID used by such WAN interface. **Authentication Protocol** – Such protocol will be used for the client to be authenticated by DHCPv6 server before accessing into Internet. There are three types can be specified, **Reconfigure Key**, **Delayed** and **None**. In general, the default setting is None. ● **Reconfigure Key** – During the connection process, DHCPv6 server will authenticate the client automatically. ● **Delayed** - During the connection process, DHCPv6 server will authenticate and identify the client based on the key ID, realm and secret information specified in these fields. **Key ID** – Type a value (range from 1 to 65535) which will

	be used to generate HMAC-MD5 value. **Realm** – The name (1 to 31 characters) typed here will identify the key which generates HMAC-MD5 value. **Secret** – Type a text (1 to 31 characters) as s a unique identifier for each client on each DHCP server.
WAN Connection Detection	Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through NS Detect or Ping Detect. **Mode** – Choose **Always On**, **Ping Detect** or **NS Detect** for the system to execute for WAN detection. With **NS Detect** mode, the system will check if network connection is established or not, like IPv4 ARP Detect. **Always On** means no detection will be executed. The network connection will be on always. ● **Ping IP/Hostname** – If you choose **Ping Detect** as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging. ● **TTL (Time to Live)** –If you choose **Ping Detect** as detection mode, you have to type TTL value.
RIPng Protocol	RIPng (RIP next generation) offers the same functions and benefits as IPv4 RIP v2.
Bridge Mode	**Enable Bridge Mode** - If the function is enabled, the router will work as a bridge modem. **Enable Firewall** – It is available when Bridge Mode is enabled. When both Bridge Mode and Firewall check boxes are enabled, the settings configured (user profiles) under User Management will be ignored. And all of the filter rules defined and enabled in Firewall menu will be activated. **Bridge Subnet** – Make a bridge between the selected LAN subnet and such WAN interface.

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

II-1-2-13 Details Page for IPv6 – Static IPv6 in WAN1/WAN2

This type allows you to setup static IPv6 address for WAN interface.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Static IPv6 Address Configuration	**IPv6 Address** – Enter the IPv6 Static IP Address. **Prefix Length** – Enter the fixed value for prefix length. **Add** – Click it to add a new entry. **Update** - Click it to modify an existed entry. **Delete** – Click it to remove an existed entry.
Current IPv6 Address Table	Display current interface IPv6 address.
Static IPv6 Gateway Configuration	**IPv6 Gateway Address** - Type your IPv6 gateway address here.
WAN Connection Detection	Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through Ping Detect. **Mode** - Choose **Always On** or **Ping Detect** for the system to execute for WAN detection. **Always On** means no detection will be executed. The network connection will be on always.

	● **Ping IP/Hostname** – If you choose **Ping Detect** as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging. ● **TTL (Time to Live)** –If you choose **Ping Detect** as detection mode, you have to type TTL value.
RIPng Protocol	RIPng (RIP next generation) offers the same functions and benefits as IPv4 RIP v2.
Bridge Mode	**Enable Bridge Mode** - If the function is enabled, the router will work as a bridge modem. **Enable Firewall** – It is available when Bridge Mode is enabled. When both Bridge Mode and Firewall check boxes are enabled, the settings configured (user profiles) under User Management will be ignored. And all of the filter rules defined and enabled in Firewall menu will be activated. **Bridge Subnet** – Make a bridge between the selected LAN subnet and such WAN interface.

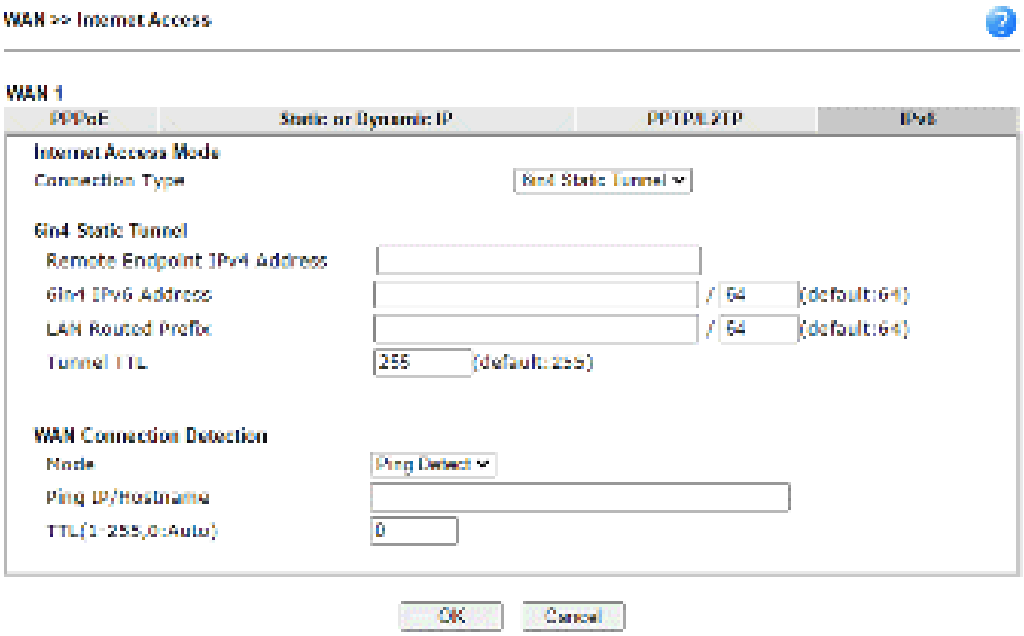
After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

II-1-2-14 Details Page for IPv6 – 6in4 Static Tunnel in WAN1/WAN2

This type allows you to setup 6in4 Static Tunnel for WAN interface.

Such mode allows the router to access IPv6 network through IPv4 network.

However, 6in4 offers a prefix outside of 2002::0/16. So, you can use a fixed endpoint rather than anycast endpoint. The mode has more reliability.



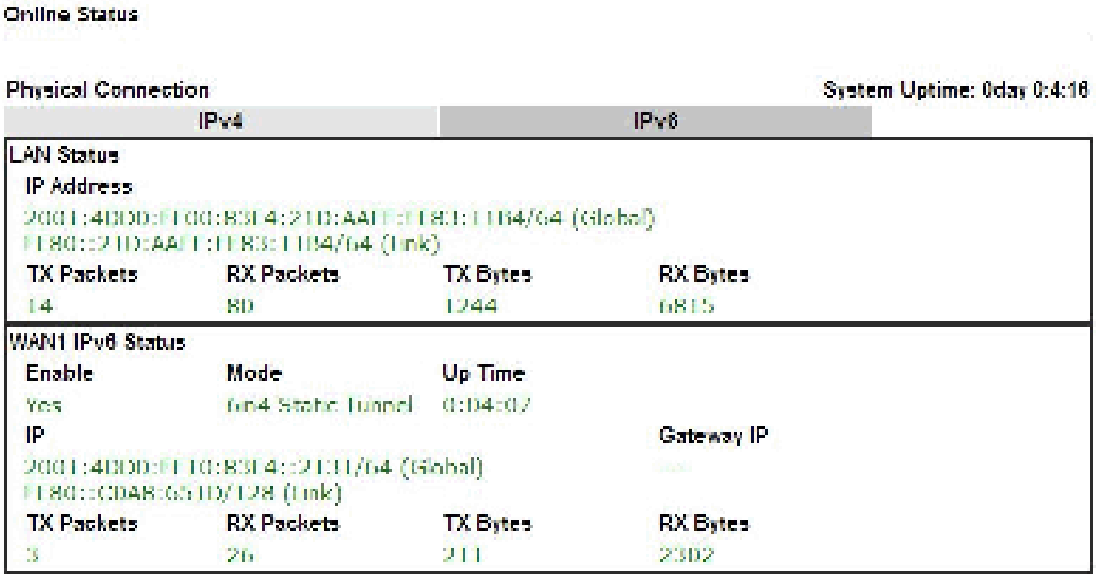
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
6in4 Static Tunnel	**Remote Endpoint IPv4 Address -** Enter the static IPv4 address for the remote server. **6in4 IPv6 Address** - Enter the static IPv6 address for IPv4 tunnel with the value for prefix length. **LAN Routed Prefix** - Enter the static IPv6 address for LAN routing with the value for prefix length.

	Tunnel TTL - Enter the number for the data lifetime in tunnel.
WAN Connection Detection	Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through Ping Detect. **Mode** – Choose **Always On** or **Ping Detect** for the system to execute for WAN detection. **Always On** means no detection will be executed. The network connection will be on always. ● **Ping IP/Hostname** – If you choose **Ping Detect** as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging. ● **TTL (Time to Live)** –If you choose **Ping Detect** as detection mode, you have to type TTL value.

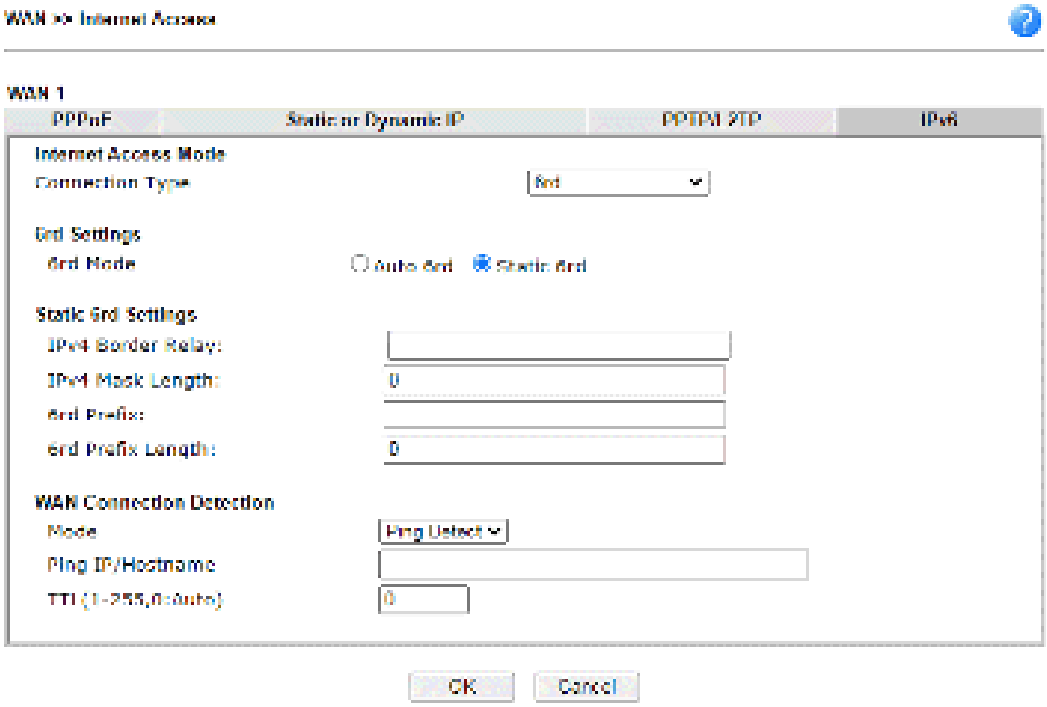
After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

Below shows an example for successful IPv6 connection based on 6in4 Static Tunnel mode.



II-1-2-15 Details Page for IPv6 – 6rd in WAN1/WAN2

This type allows you to setup 6rd for WAN interface.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
6rd Mode	**Auto 6rd** – Retrieve 6rd prefix automatically from 6rd service provider. The IPv4 WAN must be set as "DHCP". **Static 6rd -** Set 6rd options manually.
IPv4 Border Relay	Enter the IPv4 addresses of the 6rd Border Relay for a given 6rd domain.
IPv4 Mask Length	Type a number of high-order bits that are identical across all CE IPv4 addresses within a given 6rd domain. It may be any value between 0 and 32.
6rd Prefix	Enter the 6rd IPv6 address.
6rd Prefix Length	Enter the IPv6 prefix length for the 6rd IPv6 prefix in number of bits.
WAN Connection Detection	Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through Ping Detect. **Mode** - Choose **Always On** or **Ping Detect** for the system to execute for WAN detection. **Always On** means no detection will be executed. The network connection will be on always. ● **Ping IP/Hostname** - If you choose **Ping Detect** as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging. ● **TTL (Time to Live)** -If you choose **Ping Detect** as detection mode, you have to type TTL value.

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

Below shows an example for successful IPv6 connection based on 6rd mode.

Online Status

Physical Connection | System Uptime: 0day 0:9:16

IPv4	IPv6

LAN Status

IP Address

2001:E11:A065:1D00:21D:AAFF:FE03:11B1/64 (Global)
FE80::21D:AAFF:FE03:11B1/64 (Link)

TX Packets	RX Packets	TX Bytes	RX Bytes
15	113	1351	10040

WAN1 IPv6 Status

Enable	Mode	Up Time	
Yes	6rd	0:09:06	

IP	Gateway IP
2001:E11:A065:1D01:21D:AAFF:FE03:11B5/128 (Global) FE80::C0A8:651D/128 (Link)	---

TX Packets	RX Packets	TX Bytes	RX Bytes
13	29	967	2620

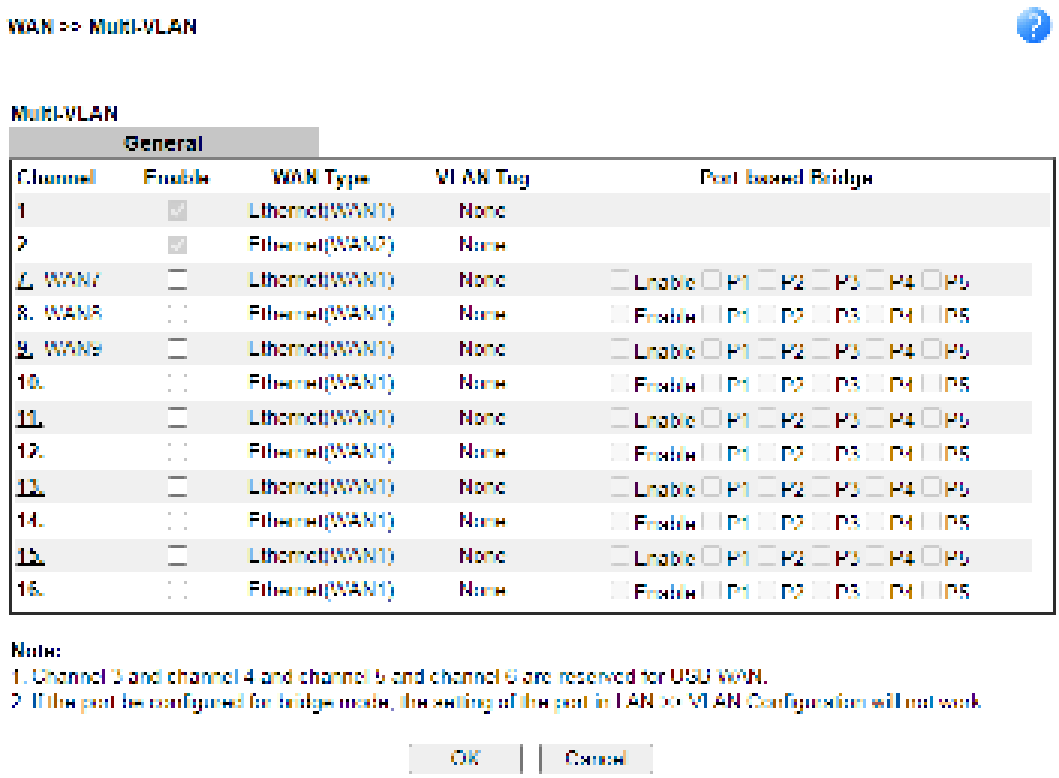
II-1-3 Multi-VLAN

Multi-VLAN allows users to create profiles for specific WAN interface and bridge connections for user applications that require very high network throughput. Simply go to **WAN** and select **Multi-VLAN**.

- Channel 1/2: Ethernet on WAN1/WAN2.
- Channel 3: Wireless 2.4GHz on WAN3.
- Channel 4: Wireless 5GHz on WAN4.
- Channel 5/6: USB1/USB2 (WAN5/WAN6).

Channels 7 through 16 can be bridged to one or more of the 4 LAN ports P2 through P5. In addition, **Channels 7 through 9** can be configured as virtual WANs (WAN7 through WAN9).

General



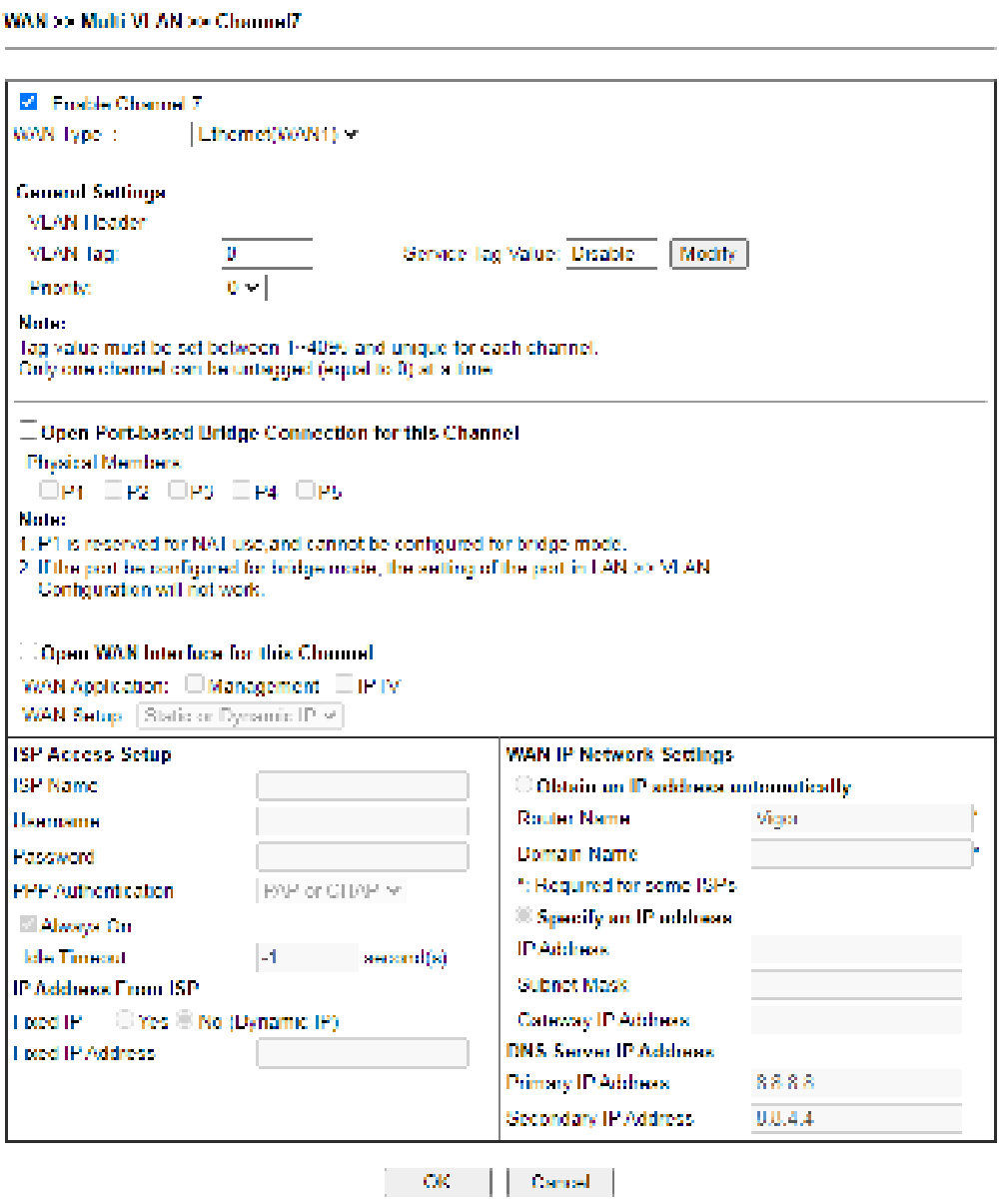
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Channel	Display the number of each channel. Channels 7 ~ 16 are configurable.
Enable	Display whether the settings in this channel are enabled (Yes) or not (No).
WAN Type	Displays the physical medium that the channel will use.
VLAN Tag	Displays the VLAN tag value that will be used for the packets traveling on this channel.

Port-based Bridge	The network traffic flowing on each channel will be identified by the system via their VLAN Tags. Channels using the same WAN type may not configure the same VLAN tag value. **Enable** - Check this box to enable the port-based bridge function on this channel. **P1** ~ **P5** – Check the box(es) to build bridge connection on LAN.

To configure a PVC channel, click its channel number.

WAN links for Channel 7, 8 and 9 are provided for router-borne application such as **TR-069**. The settings must be applied and obtained from your ISP. For your special request, please contact with your ISP and then click WAN link of Channel 7, 8 and 9 to configure your router.



Available settings are explained as follows:

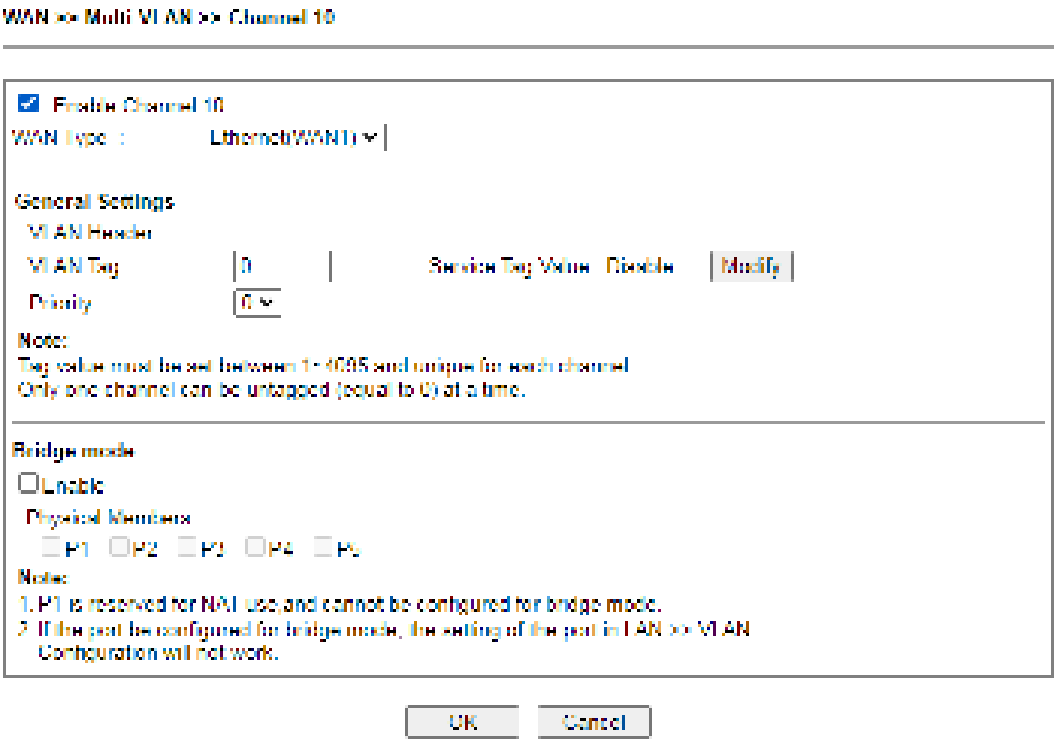
Item	Description
Enable Channel 7/8/9	Check it to enable this channel.
WAN Type	Specify a WAN type of the VLAN. **Ethernet (WAN1/2)** - A VLAN will be created on WAN1/2.
General Settings	**VLAN Tag –** Enter the value as the VLAN ID number. Valid settings are in the range from 1 to 4095. The network traffic flowing on each channel will be identified by the system via their VLAN Tags. Channels using the same WAN type may not configure the same VLAN tag value. **Priority –** Choose the number to determine the packet priority for such VLAN. The range is from 0 to 7. **Service Tag Value** - Such value varies depending on the setting configured in **WAN>>General Setup**. If required,

	click **Modify** to open **WAN>>General Setup.** Then, enable **VLAN Tag insertion** for service (outer tag) and specify the value as the VLAN ID number. Or, disable it.
Open Port-based Bridge Connection for this Channel	The settings here will create a bridge between the LAN ports selected and the WAN. The WAN interface of the bridge connection will be built upon the WAN type selected using the VLAN tag configured. **Physical Members**—Group the physical ports by checking the corresponding check box(es) for applying the port-based bridge connection. **Note:** LAN port P1 is reserved for NAT use and cannot be selected for bridging.
Open WAN Interface for this Channel	Check the box to enable relating function. **WAN Application -** ● **Management** can be specified for general management (Web configuration/telnet/TR069). If you choose Management, the configuration for this VLAN will be effective for Web configuration/telnet/TR069. ● **IPTV** - The IPTV configuration will allow the WAN interface to send IGMP packets to IPTV servers. **WAN Setup** – Choose **PPPoE/PPPoA** or **Static or Dynamic IP** to determine what WAN settings must be configured.
ISP Access Setup	Enter your allocated username, password and authentication parameters according to the information provided by your ISP. **ISP Name** – PPP Service Name. Enter if your ISP requires this setting; otherwise leave blank. **Username** – Name provided by the ISP for PPPoE/PPPoA authentication. Maximum length is 62 characters. **Password** – Password provided by the ISP for PPPoE/PPPoA authentication. Maximum length is 62 characters. **PPP Authentication** –The protocol used for PPP authentication. ● **PAP only**- Only PAP (Password Authentication Protocol) is used. ● **PAP or CHAP**- Both PAP and CHAP (Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol) can be used for PPP authentication. Router negotiates with the PPTP or L2TP server to determine which protocol to use. **Always On** – If selected, the router will maintain the PPPoE/PPPoA connection. **Idle Timeout** – Maximum length of time, in seconds, of idling allowed (no traffic) before the connection is dropped. **IP Address From ISP** - Specifies how the WAN IP address of the channel configured. ● **Fixed IP** **Yes** - IP address entered in the Fixed IP Address field will be used as the IP address of the virtual WAN. **No** - Virtual WAN IP address will be assigned by the ISP's PPPoE/PPPoA server.
WAN IP Network Settings	**Obtain an IP address automatically** – Select this option if the router is to receive IP configuration information from a DHCP

	server. ● **Router Name** – Sets the value of DHCP Option 12, which is used by some ISPs. ● **Domain Name** – Sets the value of DHCP Option 15, which is used by some ISPs. **Specify an IP address** – Select this option to manually enter the IP address. ● **IP Address** – Type in the IP address. ● **Subnet Mask** – Type in the subnet mask. ● **Gateway IP Address** – Type in gateway IP address. **DNS Server IP Address -** Type in the primary IP address for the router if you want to use **Static IP** mode. If necessary, type in secondary IP address for necessity in the future.

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings and return to previous page.

Click any index (10~16) to get the following web page:



Available settings are explained as follows:

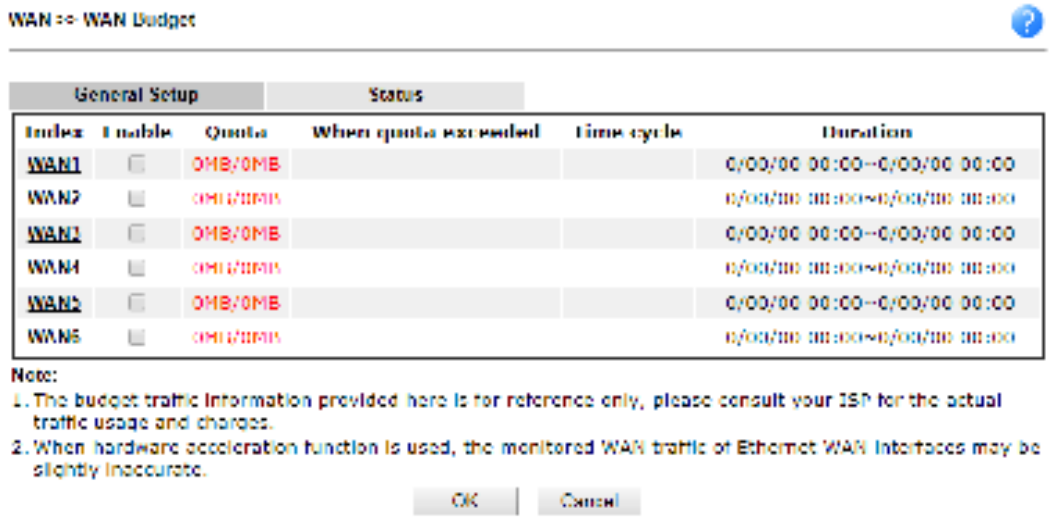
Item	Description
Enable Channel 10~16	Click it to enable the configuration of this channel.
WAN Type	The connections and interfaces created in every channel may select a specific WAN type to be built upon. In the Multi-VLAN application, only the Ethernet WAN type is available. The user will be able to select the physical WAN interface the channel shall use here.
General Settings	**VLAN Tag** – Enter the value as the VLAN ID number. Valid settings are in the range from 1 to 4095. The network traffic flowing on each channel will be identified by the system via their VLAN Tags. Channels using the same WAN type may not configure the same VLAN tag value. **Priority** – Choose the number to determine the packet priority for such VLAN. The range is from 0 to 7.
Bridge mode	**Enable** – Click it to enable Bridge mode for such channel. **Physical Members** – Group the physical ports by checking the corresponding check box(es) for applying the bridge connection. **Note:** LAN port P1 is reserved for NAT use and cannot be selected for bridging.

After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

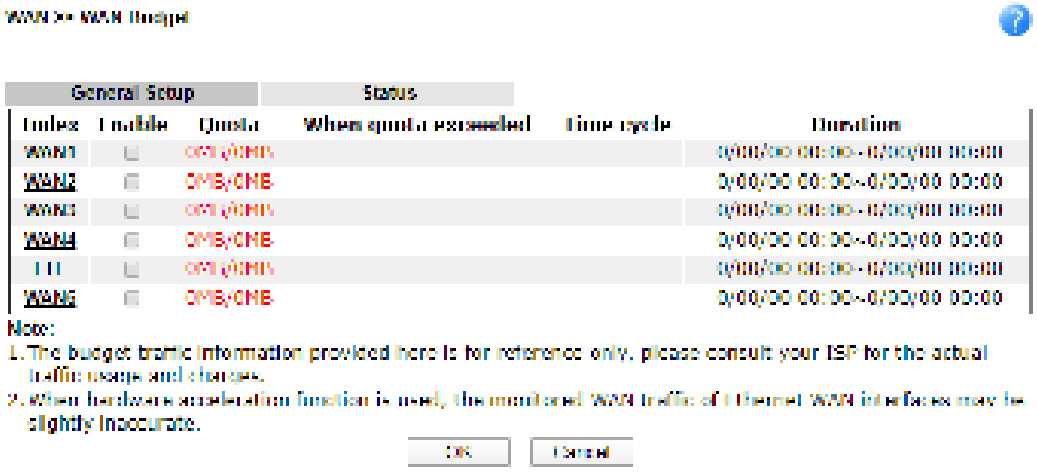
II-1-4 WAN Budget

This function is used to determine the data *traffic volume* for each WAN interface respectively to prevent from overcharges for data transmission by the ISP. Please note that the Quota Limit and Billing cycle day of month settings will need to be configured correctly first in order for some period calculations to be performed correctly.

II-1-4-1 General Setup



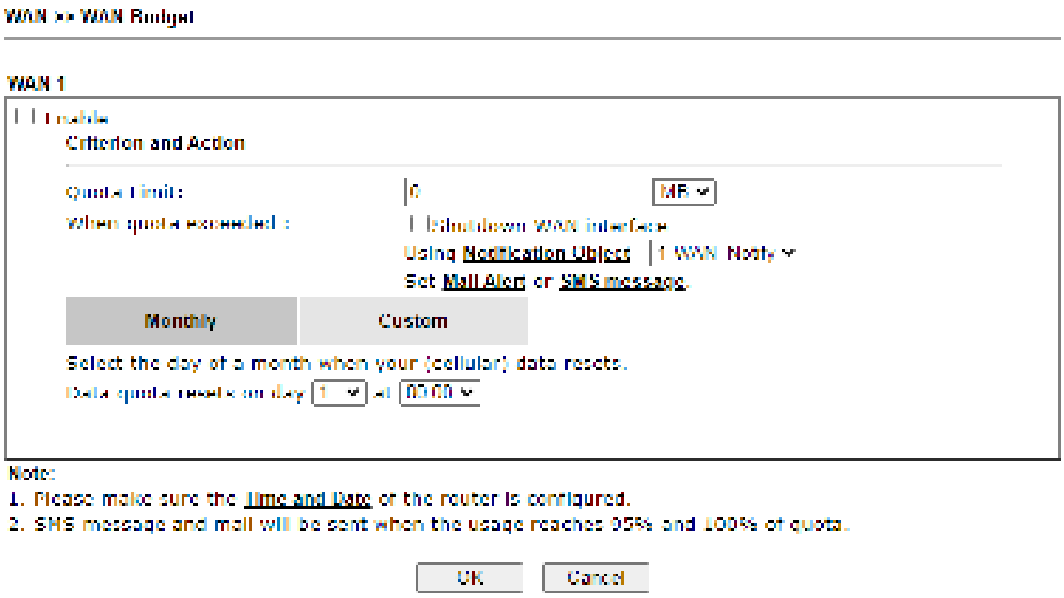
or



Item	Description
Index	The WAN port. Click to configure WAN Budget for a particular WAN.
Enable	**v -** WAN Budget is enabled on this WAN. **x -** WAN Budget is disabled on this WAN.
Quota	The current cycle's Internet usage is expressed as *x/ y* where *x* is the cumulative usage and *y* is the upper limit. For example, 100MB/200MB means the usage thus far in this cycle is 100MB, and the upper limit is 200MB.

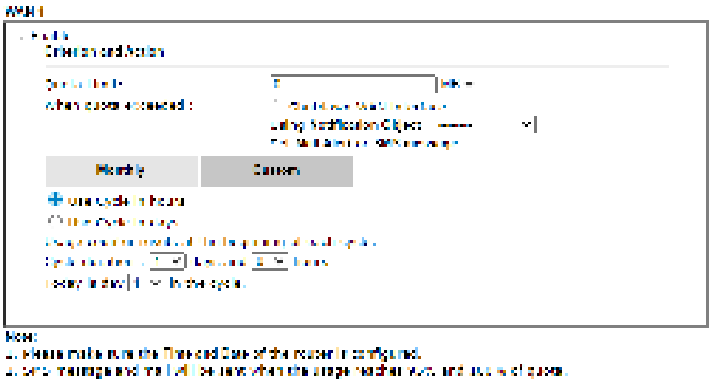
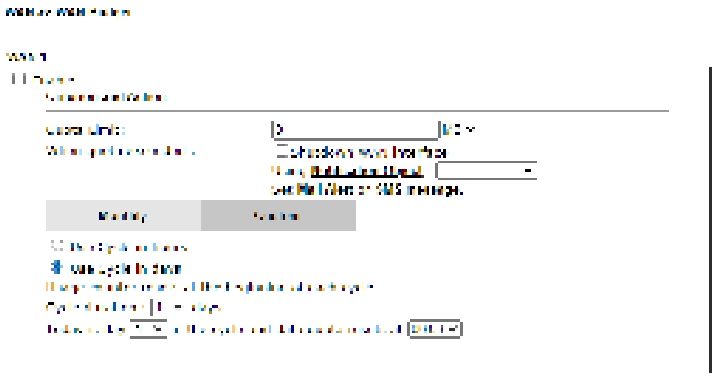
When quota exceeded	Actions to be taken once the quota is reached. **Shutdown** – WAN will be disabled. **Mail Alert** – Email will be sent to the administrator.
Time cycle	Reset frequency of the usage data. **Monthly** – The Monthly option in the **Criterion and Action** tab was used to set up the usage quota. **User Defined**: The User Defined option in the **Criterion and Action** tab was used to set up the usage qota.
Duration	Start and end timestamps of the current cycle.

Click WAN1 (to WAN6) or LTE link to open the following web page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check the box to enable such function.
Quota Limit	Enter the data traffic quota allowed for such WAN interface. There are two unit (MB and GB) offered for you to specify.
When quota exceeded	Check the box(es) as the condition(s) for the system to perform when the traffic has exceeded the budget limit. **Shutdown WAN interface** – All the outgoing traffic through such WAN interface will be terminated. ● **Using Notification Object** – The system will send out a notification based on the content of the notification object. ● **Set Mail Alert** – The system will send out a warning message to the administrator when the quota is running out. However, the connection charges will be calculated continuously. ● **Set SMS message** - The system will send out SMS message to the administrator when the quota is running out.
Monthly	Some ISP might apply for the network limitation based on the traffic limit per month. This setting is to offer a mechanism of resetting the traffic record every month.

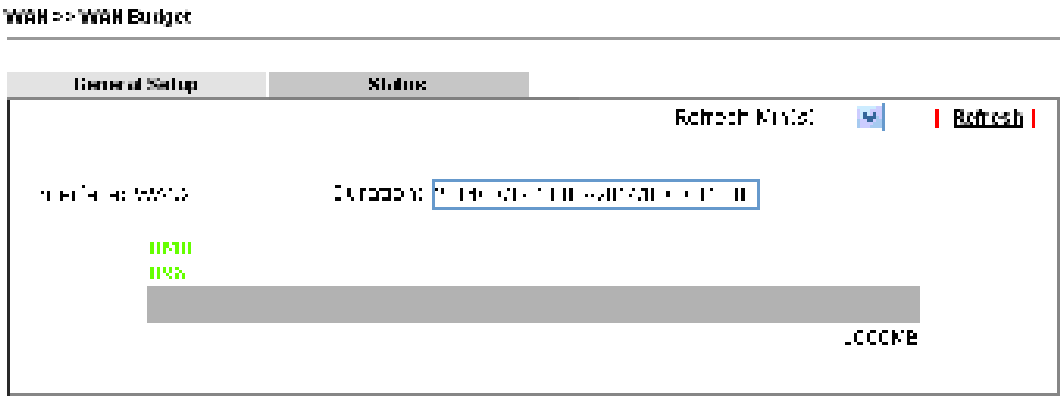
	 Select the day of a month when your (cellular) data resets. Data quota resets on day 1 ▼ at 00:00 ▼ **Data quota resets on day ...**– You can determine the starting day in one month.
Custom	This setting allows the user to define the billing cycle according to his request. The WAN budget will be reset with an interval of billing cycle. Monthly is default setting. If long period or a short period is required, use **Custom**. The period of cycle duration is between 1 day and 60 days. You can determine the cycle duration by specifying the days and the hours. In addition, you can specify which day of today is in a cycle. **Use Cycle in hours** -  ● **Cycle duration**: Specify the days and hours to reset the traffic record. For example, 7 means the whole cycle is 7 days; 20 means the whole cycle is 20 days. When the time is up, the router will reset the traffic record automatically. ● **Today is day** – Specify the day in the cycle as the starting point which Vigor router will reset the traffic record. For example, “3” means the third day of the cycle duration. **Use Cycle in days** -  ● **Cycle duration**: Specify the days to reset the traffic record. For example, 7 means the whole cycle is 7 days; 20 means the whole cycle is 20 days. When the time is up, the router will reset the traffic record automatically. ● **Today is day** – Specify the day and time for data quota rest in the cycle as the starting point which Vigor router will reset the traffic record. For example, “3” means the

	third day of the cycle duration.

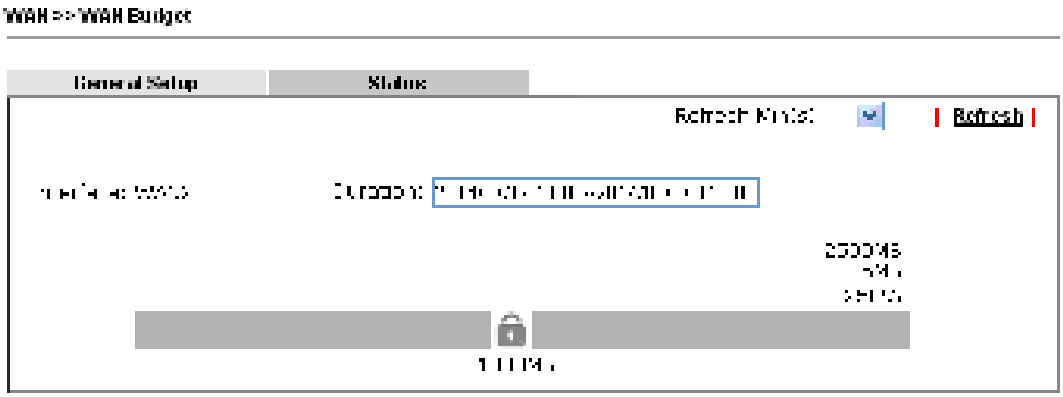
After finished the above settings, click **OK** to save the settings.

II-1-4-2 Status

The status page displays the status WAN budget, including the duration and the usage.



If the WAN budget is exhausted, a lock will be displayed on the page if **Shutdown WAN interface** is selected. Which means no data transmission will be carried out. Moreover, the system will send out a warning message to the administrator if **Mail Alert** is selected. Or, the system will send out SMS message to the administrator if **SMS message** is selected.



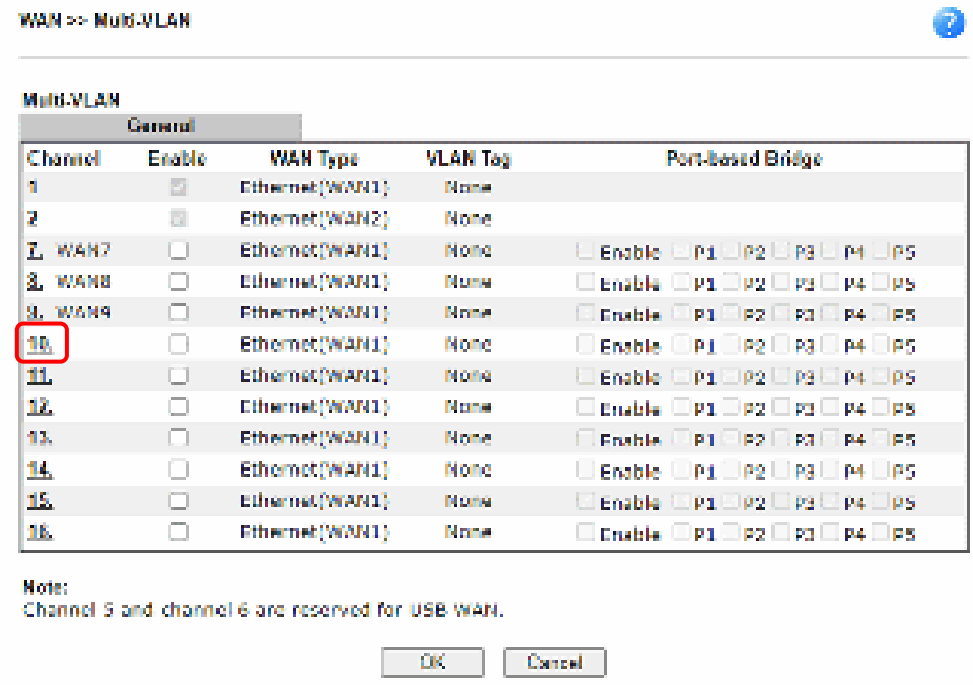
Application Notes

A-1 How to set up Multi-PVC for triple play deployment?

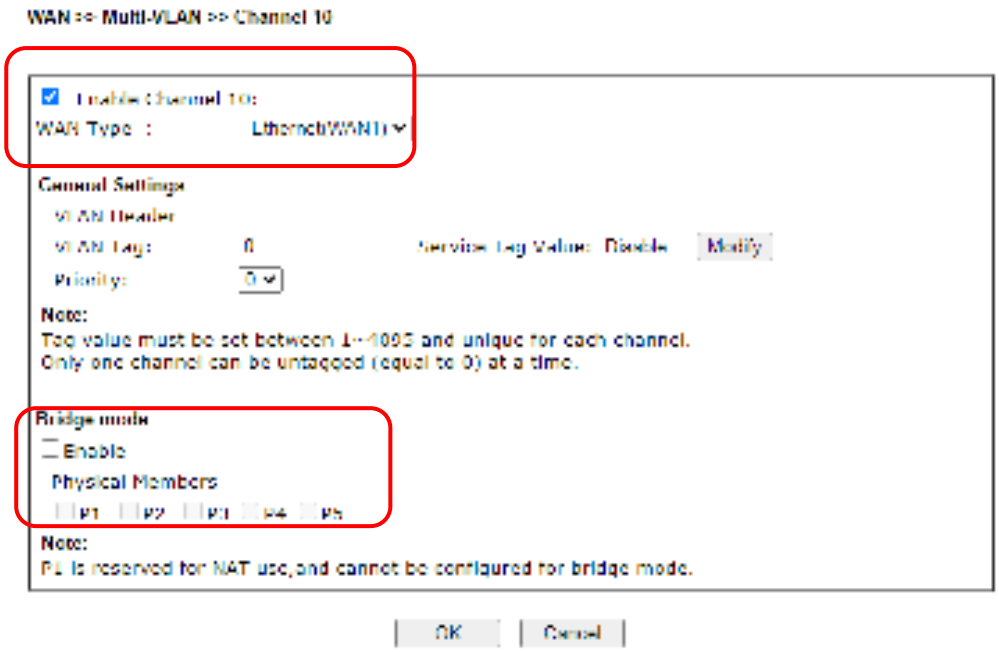
By adding VLAN tags to differentiate the traffic, the service provider is able to deliver video, voice, and data to the subscribers over a single connection, which is also known as the triple play service. This document is going to demonstrate how to configure the Multi-PVC feature for triple play deployment. There are two types of setup, one is doing port-based bridge that will connect the media, such as the set-top box (STB), directly to the service provider via a specific LAN port; the other is opening a virtual WAN interface and doing NAT for the application.

Bridge the Virtual WAN to a LAN port

1. Go to **WAN >> Multi-VLAN**, click on a channel to configure.



2. Configure the channel as follows,



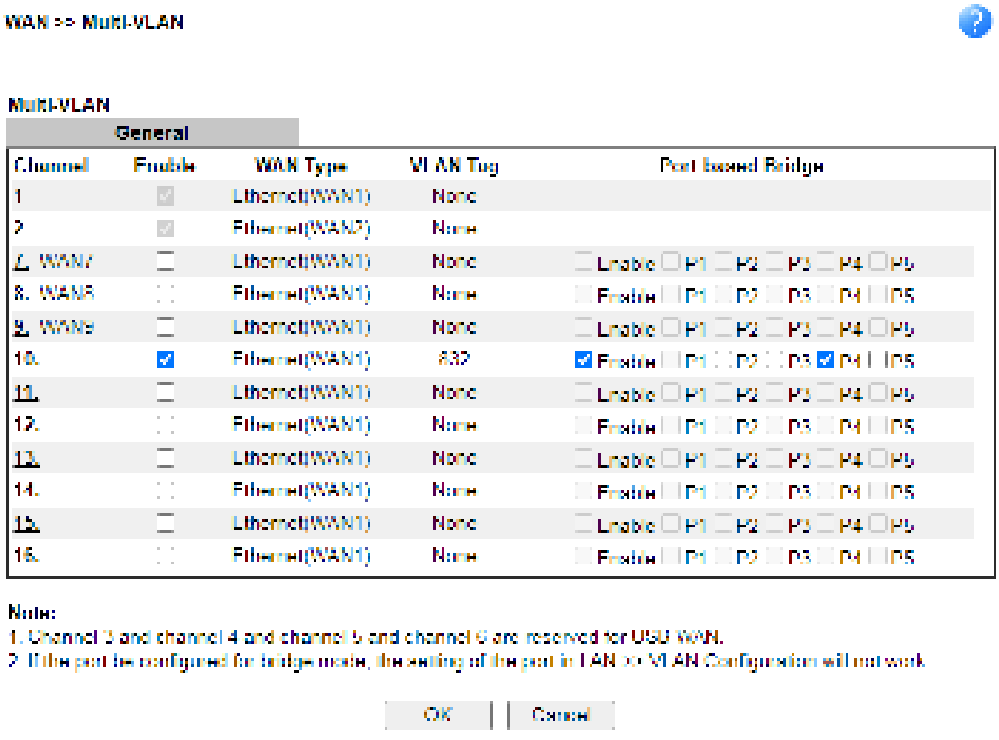
(a) enable this channel.

(b) set WAN Type to the WAN interface that the service provider is on.

(c) enable Add VLAN Header and enter the VLAN Tag and Priority as the service provider requires.

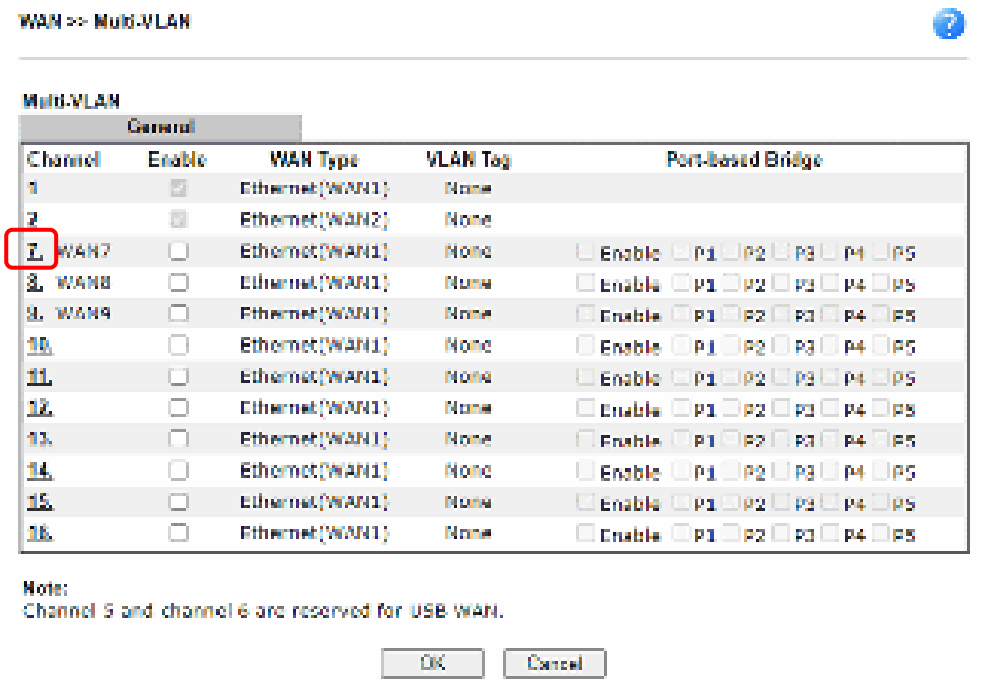
(d) check Enable for Bridge Mode, and select the physical port member to which you're going to connect the STB.

3. Click **OK** to save the configuration, the configuration will be displayed on the main page. And now you may connect the STB to the Bridged port to use the IPTV service.

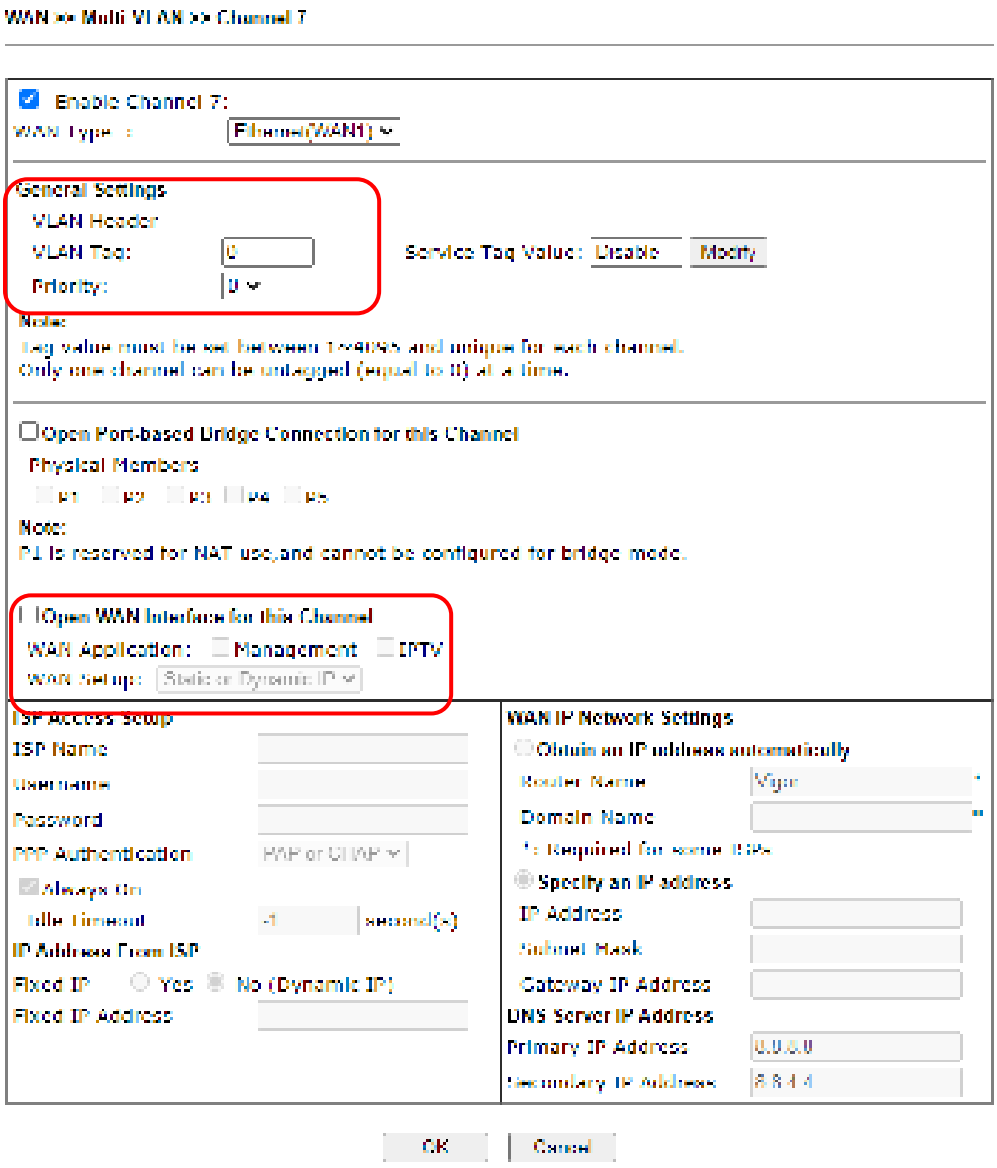


Open a Virtual WAN Interface

1. Go to **WAN >> Multi-PVC/VLAN**, click on channel 7, 8 or 9 to configure.



2. Configure the channel as follows,



(a) enable this channel.

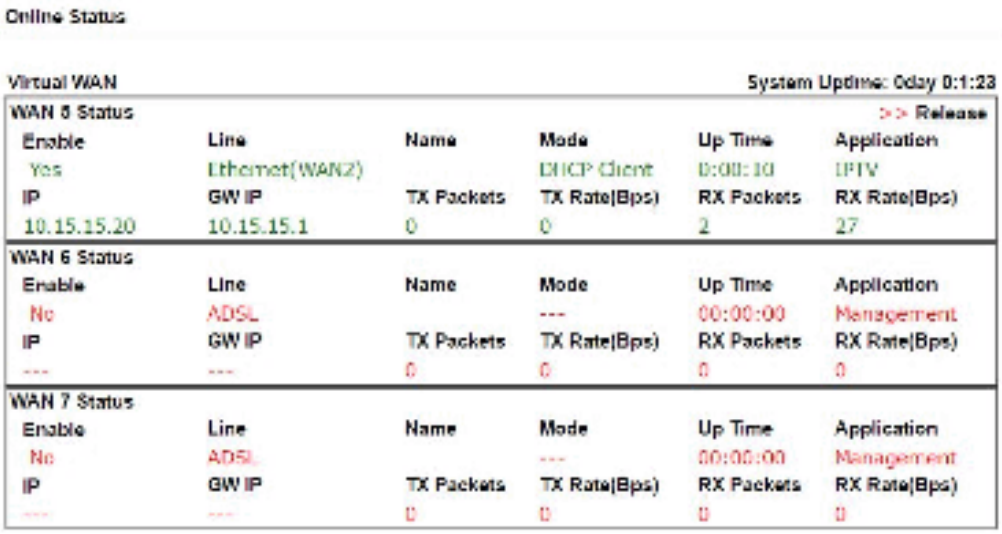
(b) set WAN Type to the WAN interface that the service provider is on.

(c) enter the VLAN Tag and Priority as the service provider requires.

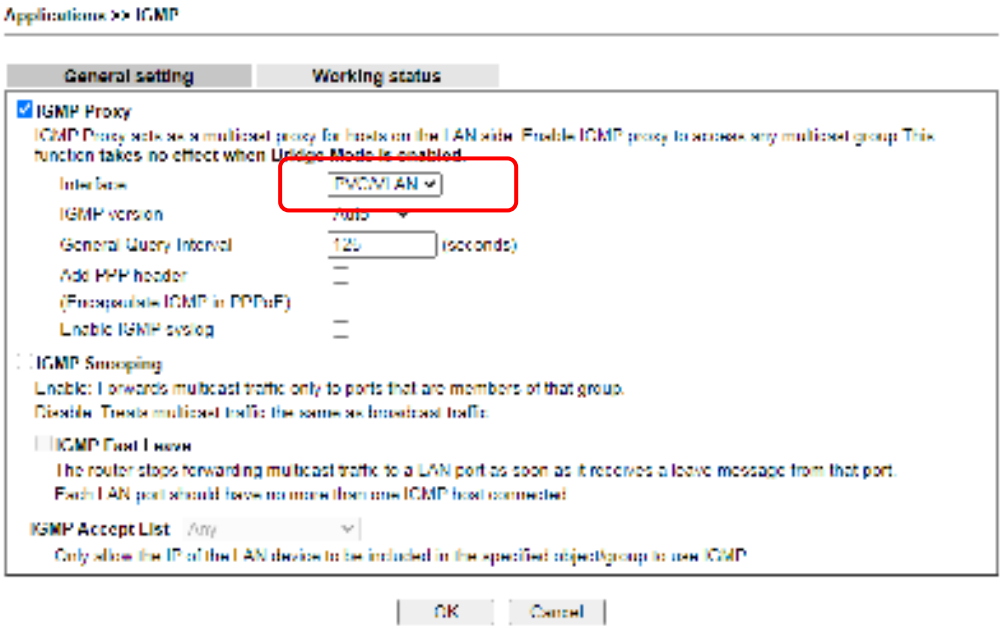
(d) enable "Open WAN Interface for this Channel", and select the kind of Application will be used on this channel. (Note: this option is only available on channel 7-9)

(e) set up the Internet Access type as the ISP requires.

3. Click **OK** to save the profile and reboot the router to apply the settings. After the router restart, go to **Online Status >> Virtual WAN** to make sure the WAN interface is up and has obtained an IP address.



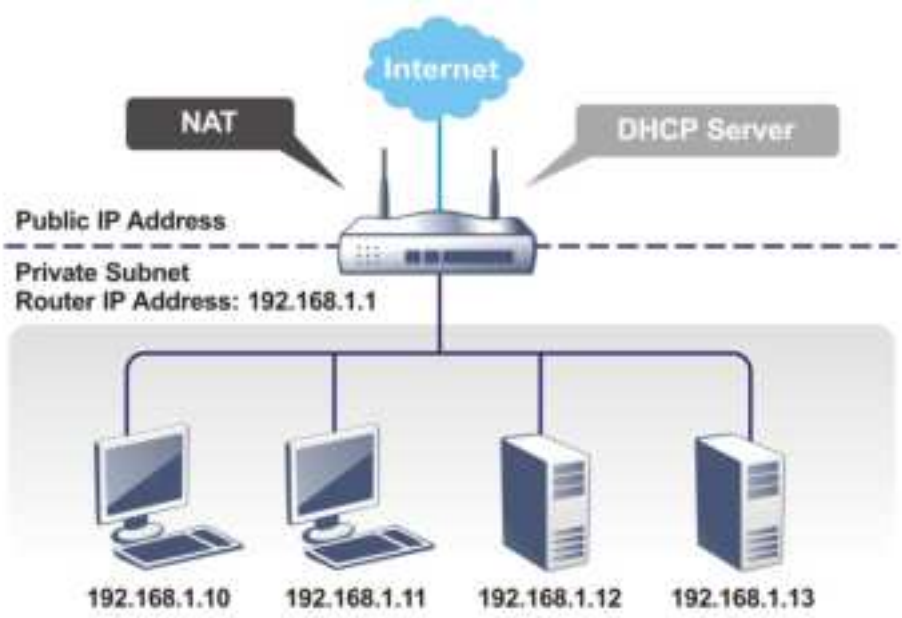
4. Now, you may use the virtual WAN interface for applications such as IGMP Proxy, this can be done by selecting the WAN interface as "PVC/VLAN".



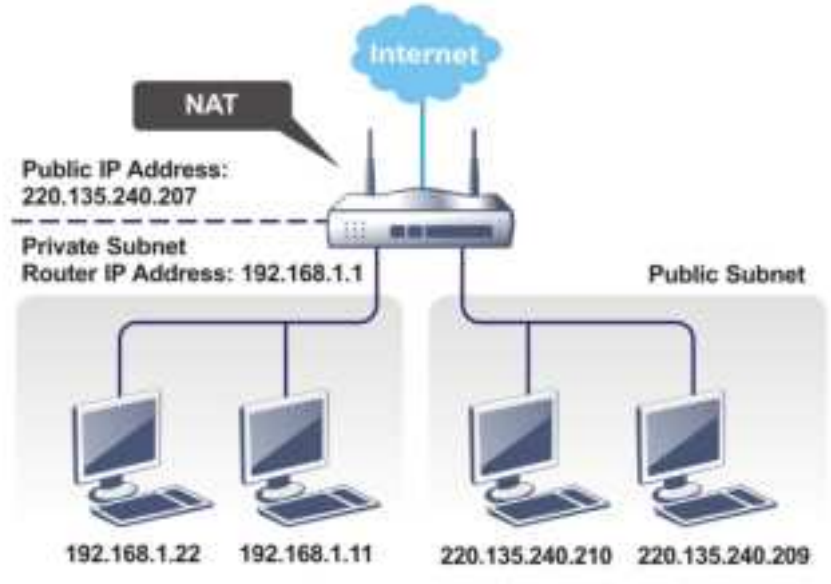
II-2 LAN

Local Area Network (LAN) is a group of subnets regulated and ruled by router. The design of network structure is related to what type of public IP addresses coming from your ISP.

The most generic function of Vigor router is NAT. It creates a private subnet of your own. As mentioned previously, the router will talk to other public hosts on the Internet by using public IP address and talking to local hosts by using its private IP address. What NAT does is to translate the packets from public IP address to private IP address to forward the right packets to the right host and vice versa. Besides, Vigor router has a built-in DHCP server that assigns private IP address to each local host. See the following diagram for a briefly understanding.



In some special case, you may have a public IP subnet from your ISP such as 220.135.240.0/24. This means that you can set up a public subnet or call second subnet that each host is equipped with a public IP address. As a part of the public subnet, the Vigor router will serve for IP routing to help hosts in the public subnet to communicate with other public hosts or servers outside. Therefore, the router should be set as the gateway for public hosts.



What is Routing Information Protocol (RIP)

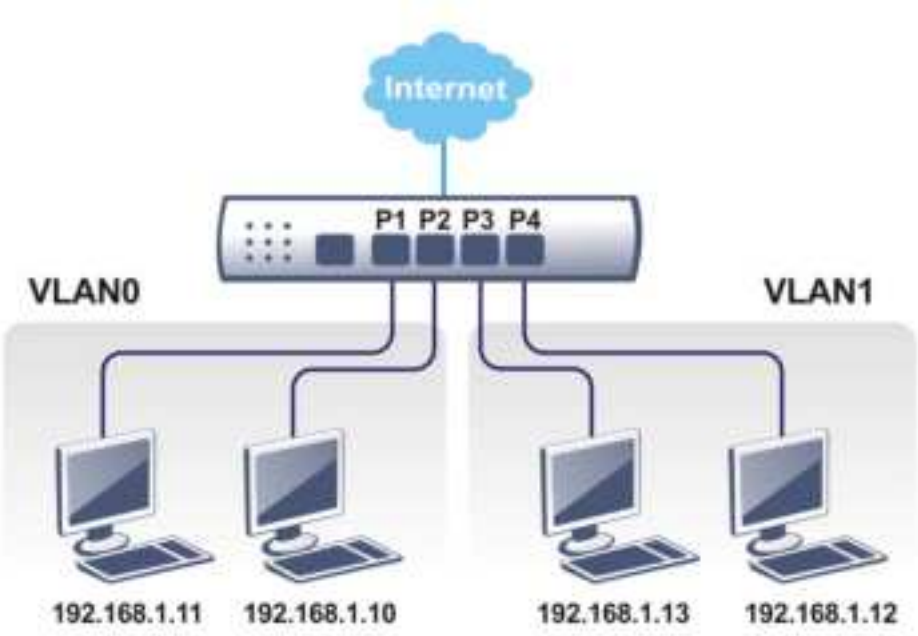
Vigor router will exchange routing information with neighboring routers using the RIP to accomplish IP routing. This allows users to change the information of the router such as IP address and the routers will automatically inform for each other.

What is Static Route

When you have several subnets in your LAN, sometimes a more effective and quicker way for connection is the **Static routes** function rather than other method. You may simply set rules to forward data from one specified subnet to another specified subnet without the presence of RIP.

What are Virtual LANs and Rate Control

You can group local hosts by physical ports and create up to 8 virtual LANs. To manage the communication between different groups, please set up rules in Virtual LAN (VLAN) function and the rate of each.



Web User Interface

A LAN comprises a collection of LAN clients, which are networked devices on your premises. A LAN client can be a computer, a printer, a Voice-over-IP (VoIP) phone, a mobile phone, a gaming console, an Internet Protocol Television (IPTV), etc, and can have either a wired (using Ethernet cabling) or wireless (using Wi-Fi) network connection.

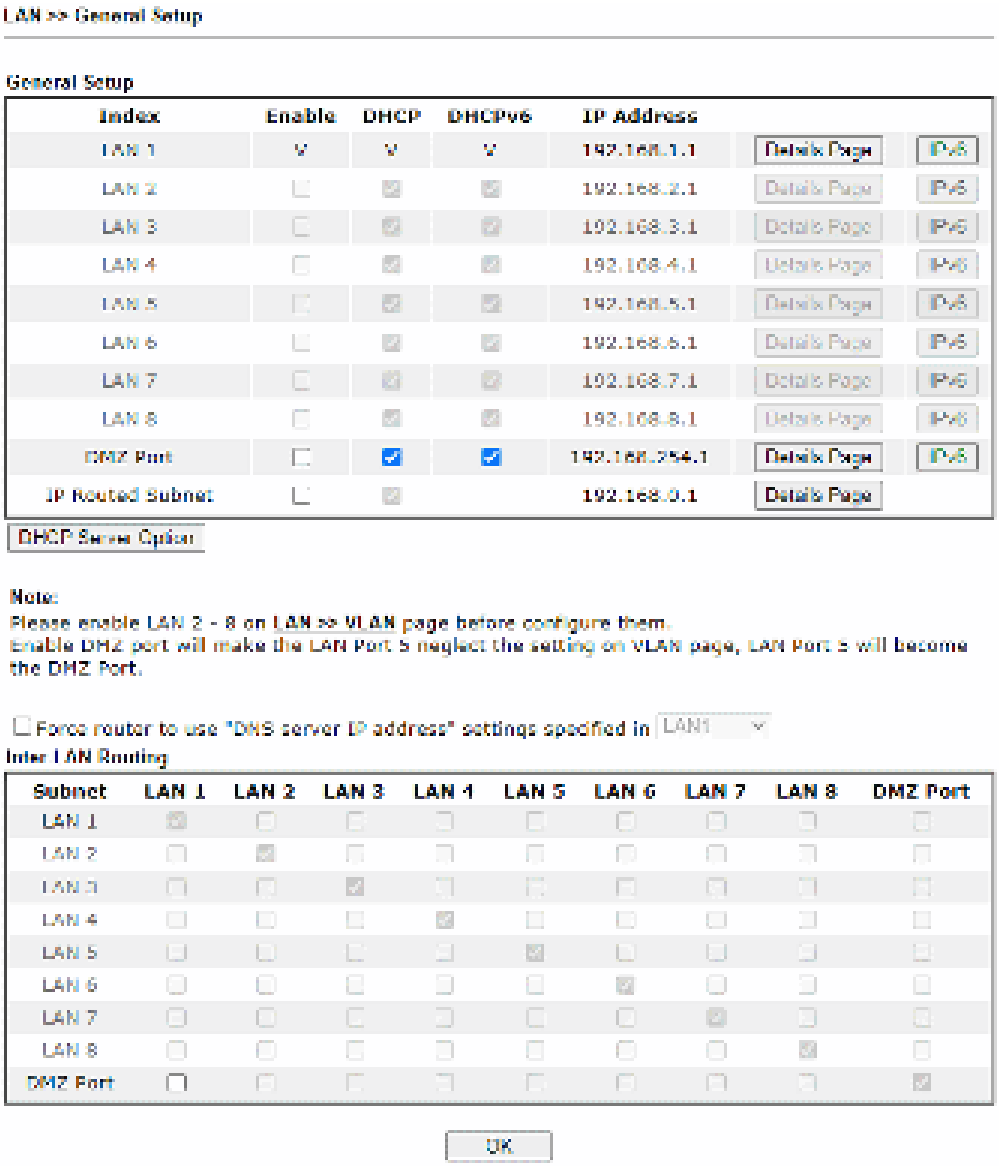
LAN clients within the same LAN are normally able to communicate with one another directly, as they are peers to one another, unless measures, such as firewalls or VLANs, have been put in place to restrict such access. Nowadays the most common LAN firewalls are implemented on the LAN client itself. For example, Microsoft Windows since Windows XP and Apple OS X have built-in firewalls that can be configured to restrict traffic coming in and going out of the computer. VLANs, on the other hand, are usually set up using network switches or routers, such as the Vigor2927.

To communicate with the hosts outside of the LAN, LAN clients have to go through a network gateway, which in most cases is a router (such as the Vigor 2862) that sits between the LAN and the ISP network, which is the WAN. The router acts as a director to ensure traffic between the LAN and the WAN reach their intended destinations.

II-2-1 General Setup

This page provides you the general settings for LAN. Click **LAN** to open the LAN settings page and choose **General Setup**.

There are eight subnets provided by the router which allow users to divide groups into different subnets (LAN1 – LAN8). In addition, different subnets can link for each other by configuring **Inter-LAN Routing**. At present, LAN1 setting is fixed with NAT mode only. LAN2 – LAN8 can be operated under **NAT** or **Route** mode. IP Routed Subnet can be operated under Route mode.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
General Setup	Allow to configure settings for each subnet respectively. **Index -** Display all of the LAN items. **Enable-** Basically, LAN1 status is enabled in default. LAN2 –LAN8 and IP Routed Subnet can be observed by checking the box of **Enable**. **DHCP**/**DHCPv6-** LAN1 is configured with DHCP/DHCPv6 in default. If required, please check the DHCP box for each LAN. **IP Address -** Display the IP address for each LAN item. Such information is set in default and you can not modify it. **Details Page -** Click it to access into the setting page. Each LAN will have different LAN configuration page. **Each LAN must be configured in different subnet.** **IPv6 –** Click it to access into the settings page of IPv6.
DHCP Server Option	DHCP packets can be processed by adding option number and data information when such function is enabled. For detailed information, refer to later section.

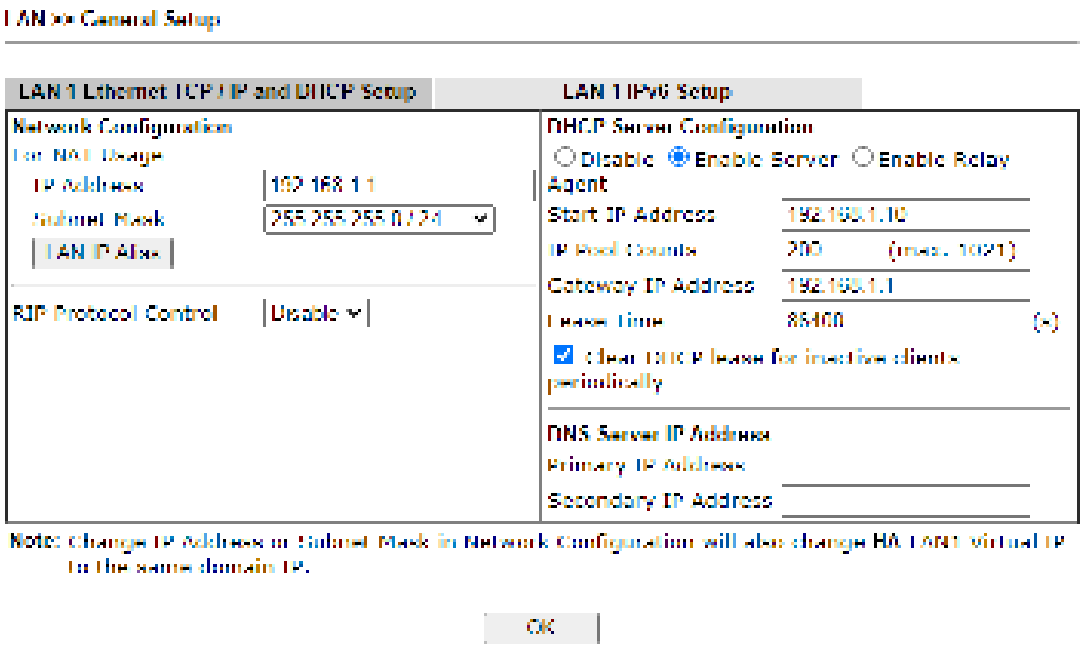
Force router to use "DNS server IP address ...."	Force Vigor router to use DNS servers configured in LAN1/LAN2/LAN3/LAN4/LAN5/LAN6/LAN7/LAN8/DMZ Port instead of DNS servers given by the Internet Access server (PPPoE, PPTP, L2TP or DHCP server).
Inter-LAN Routing	Check the box to link two or more different subnets (LAN and LAN). Inter-LAN Routing allows different LAN subnets to be interconnected or isolated. It is only available when the VLAN functionality is enabled. Refer to section II-2-2 VLAN on how to set up VLANs. In the Inter-LAN Routing matrix, a selected checkbox means that the 2 intersecting LANs can communicate with each other.

When you finish the configuration, please click **OK** to save and exit this page.

Info	To configure a subnet, select its Detials Page button to bring up the LAN Details Page.

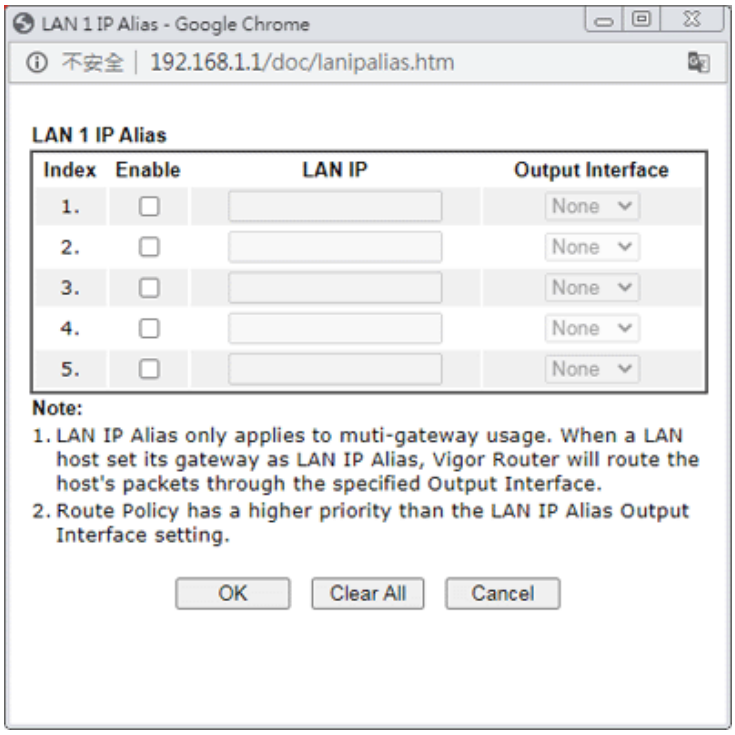
II-2-1-1 Details Page for LAN1 – Ethernet TCP/IP and DHCP Setup

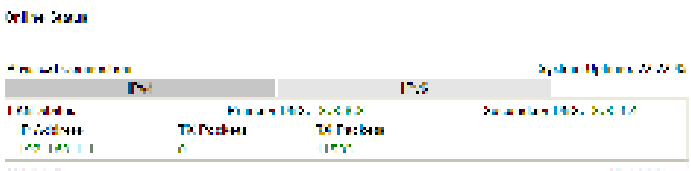
There are two configuration pages for LAN1, Ethernet TCP/IP and DHCP Setup (based on IPv4) and IPv6 Setup. Click the tab for each type and refer to the following explanations for detailed information.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Network Configuration	**For NAT Usage,** **IP Address** - This is the IP address of the router. (Default: 192.168.1.1). **Subnet Mask -** The subnet mask, together with the IP Address

	field, indicates the maximum number of clients allowed on the subnet. (Default: 255.255.255.0/ 24). **LAN IP Alias** –Such feature allows specifying multiple gateways (under a switch) with different WAN interfaces for accessing the Internet via the Vigor router.  **RIP Protocol Control,** **Enable** – When Enabled, the router will attempt to exchange routing information with neighbouring routers using the Routing Information Protocol.
DHCP Server Configuration	DHCP stands for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. The router by factory default acts a DHCP server for your network so it automatically dispatches related IP settings to any local user configured as a DHCP client. It is highly recommended that you leave the router enabled as a DHCP server if you do not have a DHCP server for your network. If you want to use another DHCP server in the network other than the Vigor Router's, you can let Relay Agent help you to redirect the DHCP request to the specified location. **Disable** – Let you manually assign IP address to every host in the LAN. **Enable Server -** Let the router assign IP address to every host in the LAN. ● **Start IP Address -** The beginning LAN IP address that is given out to LAN DHCP clients. ● **IP Pool Counts -** The maximum number of IP addresses to be handed out by DHCP. The default value is 200. Valid range is between 1 and 1021. The actual number of IP addresses available for assignment is the IP Pool Counts, or 1021 minus the last octet of the Start IP Address, whichever is smaller. ● **Gateway IP Address -** The IP address of the gateway, which is the host on the LAN that relays all traffic coming into and going out of the LAN. The gateway is normally the router, and therefore the Gateway IP

	Address should be identical to the IP Address in the **Network Configuration** section above. ● **Lease Time** - The maximum duration DHCP-issued IP addresses can be used before they have to be renewed. ● **Clear DHCP lease for inactive clients periodically -** If selected, the router sends ARP requests recycles IP addresses previously assigned to inactive DHCP clients to prevent exhaustion of the IP address pool. **Note**: When Clear DHCP lease for inactive clients periodically is enabled, router will do the following: ■ Check activities of DHCP clients by ARP requests every minute when the available DHCP IP addresses are less than 30 ■ Clear DHCP lease when the client is not responding ARP replies. **Enable Relay Agent** – When selected, all DHCP requests are forwarded to a DHCP server outside of the LAN subnet, and whose address is specified in the DHCP Server IP Address field. ● **DHCP Server IP Address** – It is available when **Enable Relay Agent** is checked. Set the IP address of the DHCP server you are going to use so the Relay Agent can help to forward the DHCP request to the DHCP server.
DNS Server IP Address	DNS stands for Domain Name System. Every Internet host must have a unique IP address, also they may have a human-friendly, easy to remember name such as www.yahoo.com. The DNS server converts the user-friendly name into its equivalent IP address. **Primary IP Address -** You must specify a DNS server IP address here because your ISP should provide you with usually more than one DNS Server. **Secondary IP Address -** You can specify secondary DNS server IP address here because your ISP often provides you more than one DNS Server. The default DNS Server IP address can be found via Online Status:  If both the Primary IP and Secondary IP Address fields are left empty, the router will assign DNS servers obtained from WAN interface to local users as a DNS proxy server and maintain a DNS cache. If there is no DNS servers available, router will use its own IP address instead. If the IP address of a domain name is already in the DNS cache, the router will resolve the domain name immediately. Otherwise, the router forwards the DNS query packet to the external DNS server by establishing a WAN (e.g. DSL/Cable) connection.

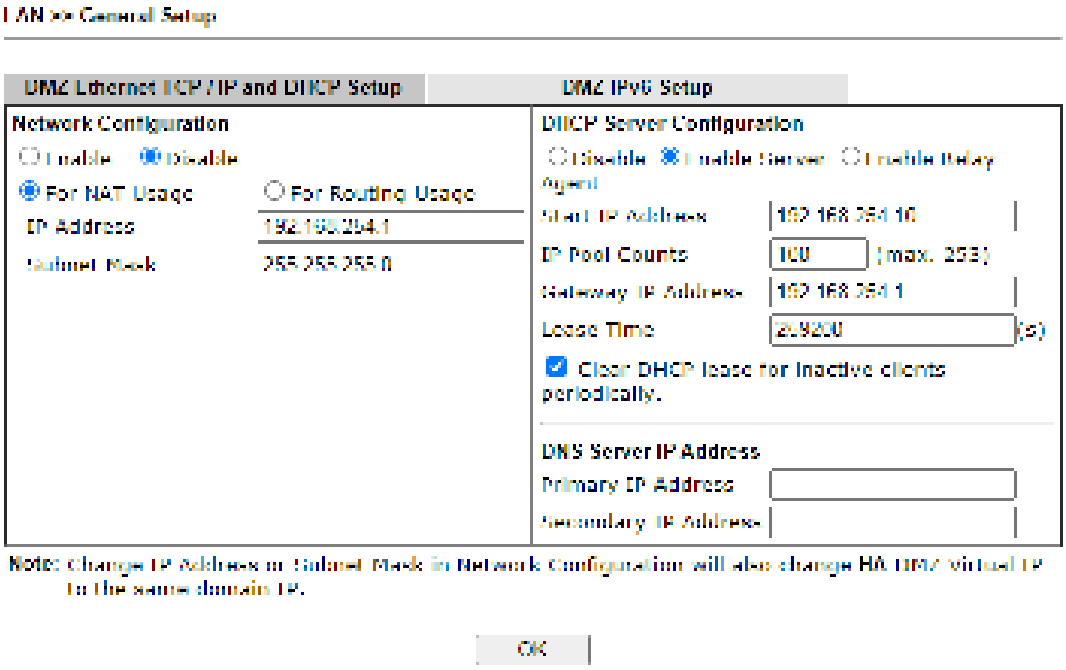
When you finish the configuration, please click **OK** to save and exit this page.

Private IP addresses can be assigned automatically to LAN clients using Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP), or manually assigned. The DHCP server can either be the

router (the most common case), or a separate server, that hands out IP addresses to DHCP clients.

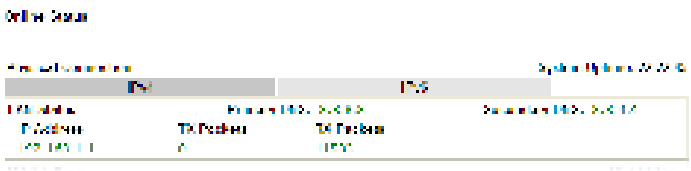
Alternatively, static IP addresses can be manually configured on LAN clients as part of their network settings. No matter how IP addresses are configured, it is important that no two devices get the same IP address. If both DHCP and static assignment are used on a network, it is important to exclude the static IP addresses from the DHCP IP pool. For example, if your LAN uses the 192.168.1.x subnet and you have 20 DHCP clients and 20 static IP clients, you could configure 192.168.1.10 as the Start IP Address, 50 as the IP Pool Counts (enough for the current number of DHCP clients, plus room for future expansion), and use addresses greater than 192.168.1.100 for static assignment.

II-2-1-2 Details Page for LAN2 ~ LAN8 and DMZ



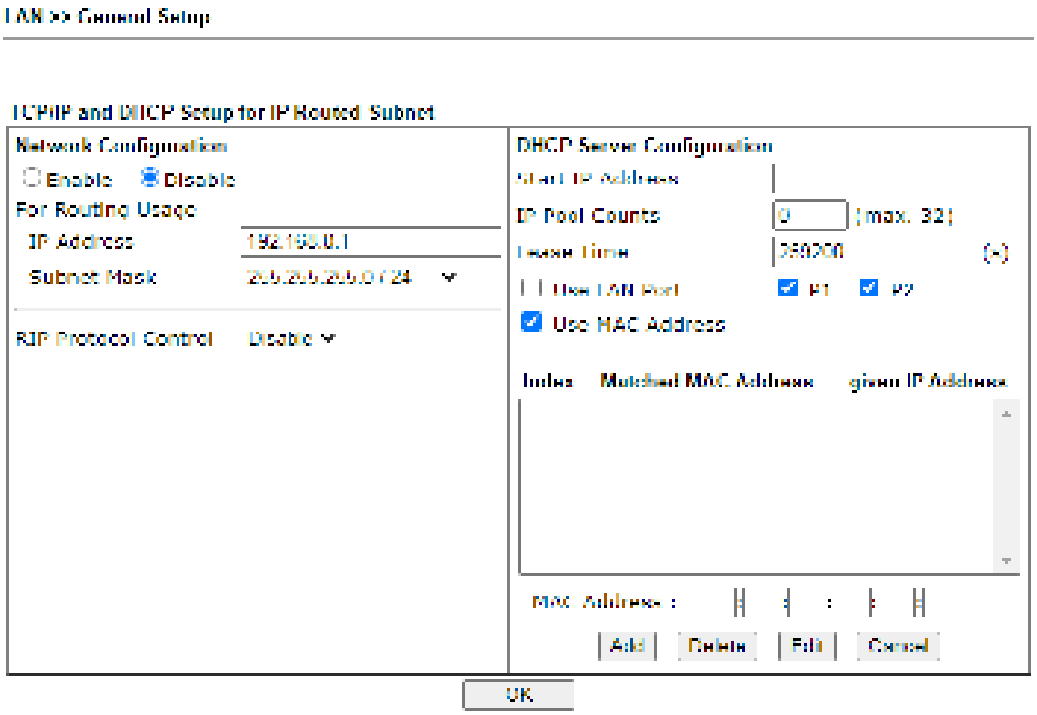
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Network Configuration	**Enable/Disable -** Click **Enable** to enable such configuration; click **Disable** to disable such configuration. **For NAT Usage -** Click this radio button to invoke NAT function. **For Routing Usage -** Click this radio button to invoke this function. **IP Address** - This is the IP address of the router. (Default: 192.168.1.1). **Subnet Mask -** The subnet mask, together with the IP Address field, indicates the maximum number of clients allowed on the subnet. (Default: 255.255.255.0/ 24).
DHCP Server Configuration	**Disable –** Let you manually assign IP address to every host in the LAN. **Enable Server -** Let the router assign IP address to every host in the LAN. ● **Start IP Address -** The beginning LAN IP address that is given out to LAN DHCP clients. ● **IP Pool Counts -** The maximum number of IP addresses to be handed out by DHCP. The default value is 100. Valid range is between 1 and 1021. The actual number of IP addresses available for assignment is the IP Pool Counts, or 1021 minus the last octet of the Start IP Address, whichever is smaller. ● **Gateway IP Address -** The IP address of the gateway, which is the host on the LAN that relays all traffic coming into and going out of the LAN. The gateway is normally the router, and therefore the Gateway IP Address should be identical to the IP Address in the **Network Configuration** section above.

	● **Lease Time** - The maximum duration DHCP-issued IP addresses can be used before they have to be renewed. ● **Clear DHCP lease for inactive clients periodically -** If selected, the router sends ARP requests recycles IP addresses previously assigned to inactive DHCP clients to prevent exhaustion of the IP address pool. **Note**: When Clear DHCP lease for inactive clients periodically is enabled, router will do the following: - Check activities of DHCP clients by ARP requests every minute when the available DHCP IP addresses are less than 30 - Clear DHCP lease when the client is not responding ARP replies. **Enable Relay Agent** – When selected, all DHCP requests are forwarded to a DHCP server outside of the LAN subnet, and whose address is specified in the DHCP Server IP Address field. ● **DHCP Server IP Address** – It is available when **Enable Relay Agent** is checked. Set the IP address of the DHCP server you are going to use so the Relay Agent can help to forward the DHCP request to the DHCP server.
DNS Server IP Address	DNS stands for Domain Name System. Every Internet host must have a unique IP address, also they may have a human-friendly, easy to remember name such as www.yahoo.com. The DNS server converts the user-friendly name into its equivalent IP address. **Primary IP Address -** You must specify a DNS server IP address here because your ISP should provide you with usually more than one DNS Server. **Secondary IP Address -** You can specify secondary DNS server IP address here because your ISP often provides you more than one DNS Server. The default DNS Server IP address can be found via Online Status:  If both the Primary IP and Secondary IP Address fields are left empty, the router will assign its own IP address to local users as a DNS proxy server and maintain a DNS cache. If the IP address of a domain name is already in the DNS cache, the router will resolve the domain name immediately. Otherwise, the router forwards the DNS query packet to the external DNS server by establishing a WAN (e.g. DSL/Cable) connection.

When you finish the configuration, please click **OK** to save and exit this page.

II-2-1-3 Details Page for IP Routed Subnet



Available settings are explained as follows:

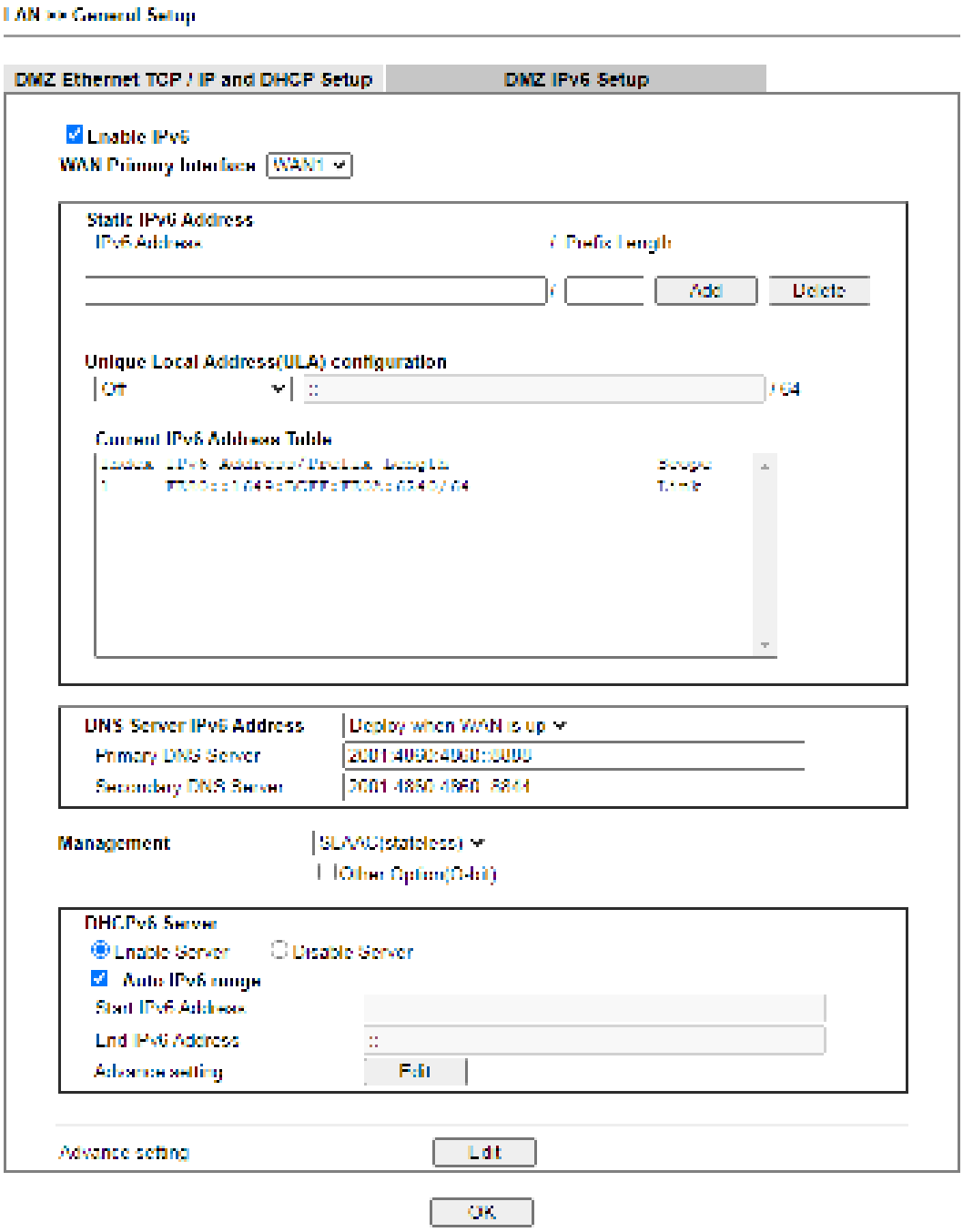
Item	Description
Network Configuration	**Enable/Disable -** Click **Enable** to enable such configuration; click **Disable** to disable such configuration. **For Routing Usage,** **IP Address** - This is the IP address of the router. (Default: 192.168.1.1). **Subnet Mask -** The subnet mask, together with the IP Address field, indicates the maximum number of clients allowed on the subnet. (Default: 255.255.255.0/ 24). **RIP Protocol Control,** **Enable** – When Enabled, the router will attempt to exchange routing information with neighbouring routers using the Routing Information Protocol.
DHCP Server Configuration	DHCP stands for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. The router by factory default acts a DHCP server for your network so it automatically dispatch related IP settings to any local user configured as a DHCP client. It is highly recommended that you leave the router enabled as a DHCP server if you do not have a DHCP server for your network. **Start IP Address -** Enter a value of the IP address pool for the DHCP server to start with when issuing IP addresses. If the 1st IP address of your router is 192.168.1.1, the starting IP address must be 192.168.1.2 or greater, but smaller than 192.168.1.254. **IP Pool Counts -** Enter the maximum number of PCs that you want the DHCP server to assign IP addresses to. The default is 50 and the maximum is 253. **Lease Time** - Enter the time to determine how long the IP address assigned by DHCP server can be used.

	Use LAN Port – Specify an IP for IP Route Subnet. If it is enabled, DHCP server will assign IP address automatically for the clients coming from P1 and/or P2. Please check the box of P1 and P2. **Use MAC Address -** Check such box to specify MAC address. ● **MAC Address:** Enter the MAC Address of the host one by one and click **Add** to create a list of hosts which can be assigned, deleted or edited from above pool. Set a list of MAC Address for 2nd DHCP server will help router to assign the correct IP address of the correct subnet to the correct host. So those hosts in 2nd subnet won't get an IP address belonging to 1st subnet. **Add –** Enter the MAC address in the boxes and click this button to add. **Delete** – Click it to delete the selected MAC address. **Edit** – Click it to edit the selected MAC address. **Cancel** – Click it to cancel the job of adding, deleting and editing.

When you finish the configuration, please click **OK** to save and exit this page.

II-2-1-4 Details Page for LAN IPv6 Setup

There are two configuration pages for LAN1/LAN2/LAN3/LAN4/LAN5/LAN6/LAN7/LAN8/DMZ Port, Ethernet TCP/IP and DHCP Setup (based on IPv4) and IPv6 Setup. Click the tab for each type and refer to the following explanations for detailed information. Below shows the settings page for IPv6.

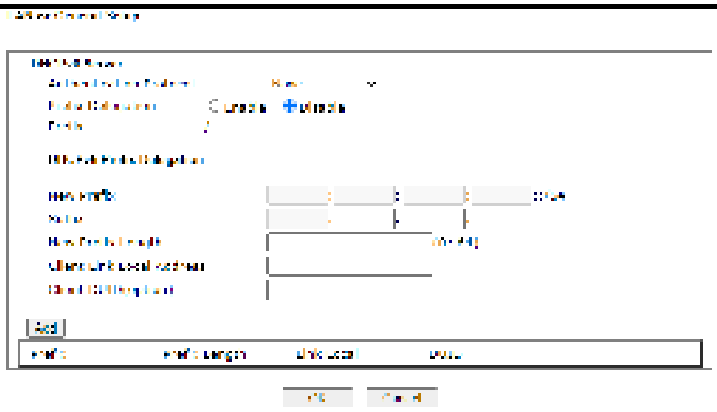
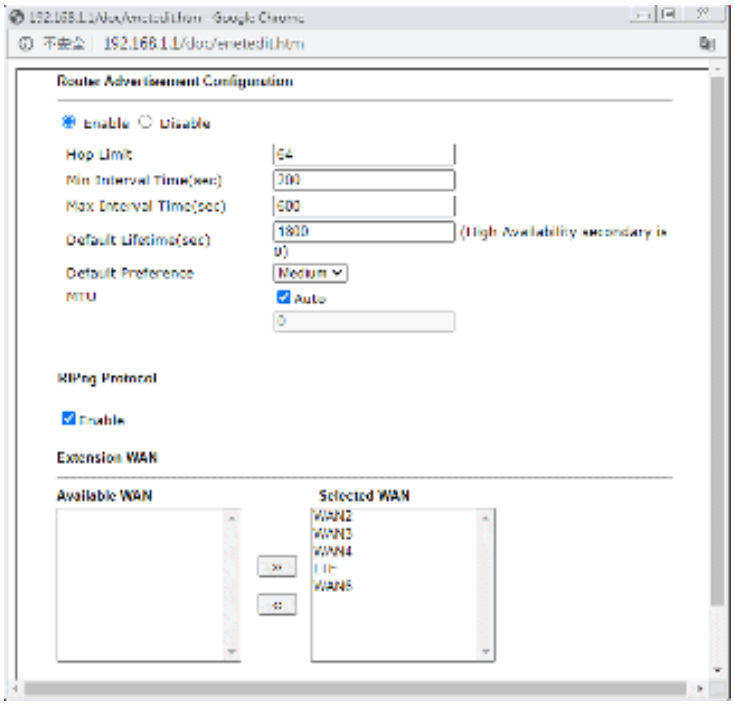


It provides 2 daemons for LAN side IPv6 address configuration. One is **SLAAC**(stateless) and the other is **DHCPv6** (Stateful) server.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check the box to enable the configuration of LAN 1 IPv6 Setup.

WAN Primary Interface	Use the drop down list to specify a WAN interface for IPv6.
Static IPv6 Address configuration	**IPv6 Address** –Type static IPv6 address for LAN. **Prefix Length** –Enter the fixed value for prefix length. **Add** –Click it to add a new entry. **Delete** –Click it to remove an existed entry.
Unique Local Address (ULA) configuration	Unique Local Addresses (ULAs) are private IPv6 addresses assigned to LAN clients. **Off -** ULA is disabled. **Manually ULA Prefix -** LAN clients will be assigned ULAs generated based on the prefix manually entered. **Auto ULA Prefix -** LAN clients will be assigned ULAs using an automatically-determined prefix.
Current IPv6 Address Table	Display current used IPv6 addresses.
DNS Server IPv6 Address	**Deploy when WAN is up** –The RA (router advertisement) packets will be sent to LAN PC with DNS server information only when network connection by any one of WAN interfaces is up. **Enable** – The RA (router advertisement) packets will be sent to LAN PC with DNS server information no matter WAN connection is up or not. ● **Primary DNS Sever** – Enter the IPv6 address for Primary DNS server. ● **Secondary DNS Server** –Type another IPv6 address for DNS server if required. **Disable** – DNS server will not be used.
Management	Configures the Managed Address Configuration flag (M-bit) in Route Advertisements. ● **Off** - No configuration information is sent using Route Advertisements. ● **SLAAC(stateless) -** M-bit is unset. ● **DHCPv6(stateful**) - M-bit is set, which indicates to LAN clients that they should acquire all IPv6 configuration information from a DHCPv6 server. The DHCPv6 server can either be the one built into the Vigor2927, or a separate DHCPv6 server. **Other Option (O-bit)** - Check this box to enable the O-bit for obtaining additional information (e.g., DNS) from DHCPv6.
DHCPv6 Server	**Enable Server** –Click it to enable DHCPv6 server. DHCPv6 Server could assign IPv6 address to PC according to the Start/End IPv6 address configuration. **Disable Server** –Click it to disable DHCPv6 server. **Auto IPv6 range** –After check the box, Vigor router will assign the IPv6 range automatically. **Start IPv6 Address** / **End IPv6 Address** –Enter the start and end address for IPv6 server. **Advance setting** – Click the Edit button to configure advanced IPv6 settings for DHCPv6 server.

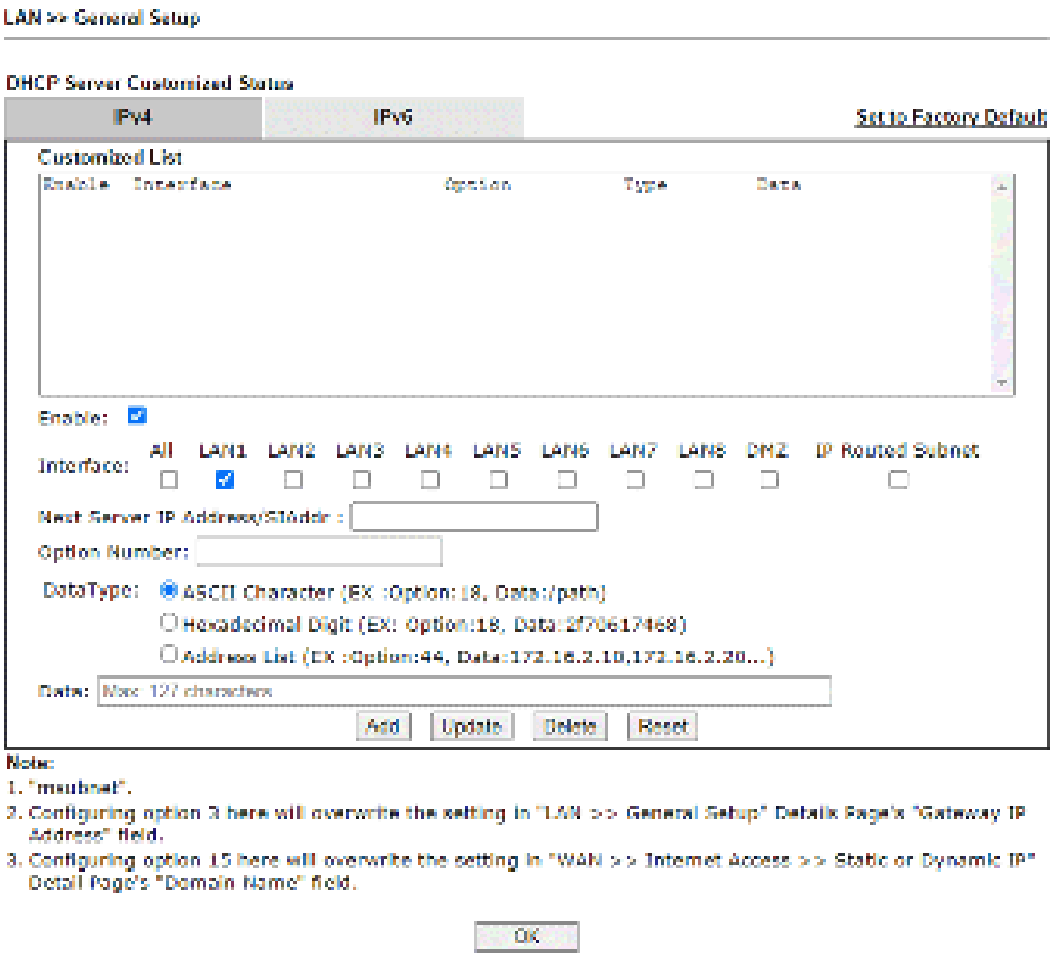
	
Advance setting	The Advanced Settings page has additional settings for Router Advertisement and enabling multiple WANs for IPv6 traffic.  **Router Advertisement Configuration** – Click **Enable** to enable router advertisement server. The router advertisement daemon sends Router Advertisement messages, specified by RFC 2461, to a local Ethernet LAN periodically and when requested by a node sending a Router Solicitation message. These messages are required for IPv6 stateless auto-configuration. **Disable** – Click it to disable router advertisement server. **Hop Limt** – The value is required for the device behind the router when IPv6 is in use. **Min/Max Interval Time (sec)** – It defines the interval (between minimum time and maximum time) for sending RA (Router Advertisement) packets. **Default Lifetime (sec)** –Within such period of time, Vigor router can be treated as the default gateway. **Default Preference** – It determines the priority of the host behind the router when RA (Router Advertisement) packets are transmitted. **MTU** – It means Max Transmit Unit for packet. If **Auto** is

	selected, the router will determine the MTU value for LAN. **RIPng Protocol** –RIPng (RIP next generation) offers the same functions and benefits as IPv4 RIP v2. **Extension WAN** – In addition to the default WAN used for IPv6 traffic specified in the WAN Primary Interface in the LAN IPv6 Setup page, additional WANs can be selected to carry IPv6 traffic by enabling them in the Extension WAN section. **Available WAN** - Additional WANs available but not currently selected to carry IPv6 traffic. **Selected WAN** - Additional WANs selected to carry IPv6 traffic.

After making changes on the Advance setting page, click the **OK** button to retain the changes and return to the LAN IPv6 Setup page. Be sure to click OK on the LAN IPv6 Setup page or else changes made on the Advance setting page will not be saved.

II-2-1-5 DHCP Server Options

DHCP Options can be configured by clicking the **DHCP Server Option** button on the **LAN**>> **General Setup** screen.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Customized List	Shows all the DHCP options that have been configured in the system.

Enable	If selected, DHCP option entry is enabled. If unselected, DHCP option entry is disabled.
Interface	LAN interface(s) to which this entry is applicable.
Next Server IP Address/SIAddr	Overrides the DHCP Next Server IP address (DHCP Option 66) supplied by the DHCP server.
Option Number	DHCP option number (e.g., 100).
DataType	Type of data in the Data field: **ASCII Character** - A text string. Example: /path. **Hexadecimal Digit -** A hexadecimal string. Valid characters are from 0 to 9 and from a to f. Example: 2f70617468. **Address List -** One or more IPv4 addresses, delimited by commas.
Data	Data of this DHCP option.

To add a DHCP option entry from scratch, clear the data entry fields (**Enable**, **Interface**, **Option Number**, **DataType** and **Data**) by clicking Reset. After filling in the values, click **Add** to create the new entry.

To add a DHCP option entry modeled after an existing entry, click the model entry in **Customized List**. The data entry fields will be populated with values from the model entry. After making all necessary changes for the new entry, click **Add** to create it.

To modify an existing DHCP option entry, click on it in **Customized List**. The data entry fields will be populated with the current values from the entry. After making all necessary changes, click **Update** to save the changes.

To delete a DHCP option entry, click on it in **Customized List**, and then click **Delete**.

II-2-2 VLAN

Virtual Local Area Networks (VLANs) allow you to subdivide your LAN to facilitate management or to improve network security.

Select **LAN>>VLAN** from the menu bar of the Web UI to bring up the VLAN Configuration page.

Tagged VLAN

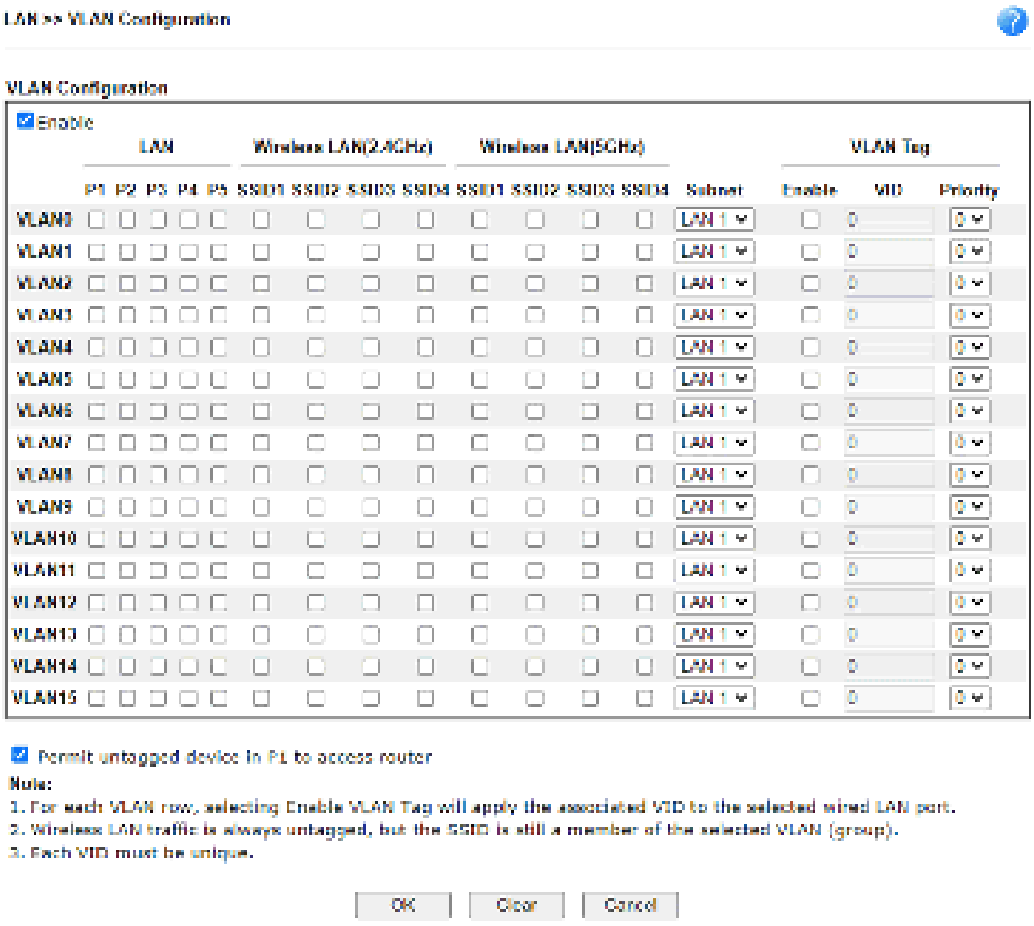
The tagged VLANs (802.1q) can mark data with a VLAN identifier. This identifier can be carried through an onward Ethernet switch to specific ports. The specific VLAN clients can also pick up this identifier as it is just passed to the LAN. You can set the priorities for LAN-side QoS. You can assign each of VLANs to each of the different IP subnets that the router may also be operating, to provide even more isolation. The said functionality is **tag-based multi-subnet**.

Port-Based VLAN

Relative to tag-based VLAN which groups clients with an identifier, port-based VLAN uses physical ports (P1 ~ P4) to separate the clients into different VLAN group.

Virtual LAN function provides you a very convenient way to manage hosts by grouping them based on the physical port. The multi-subnet can let a small businesses have much better isolation for multi-occupancy applications. Go to **LAN** page and select **VLAN**. The following page will appear. Click **Enable** to invoke VLAN function.

Below is an example page in Vigor2927ac:



Info	Settings in this page only applied to LAN port but not WAN port.

Available settings are explained as follows:

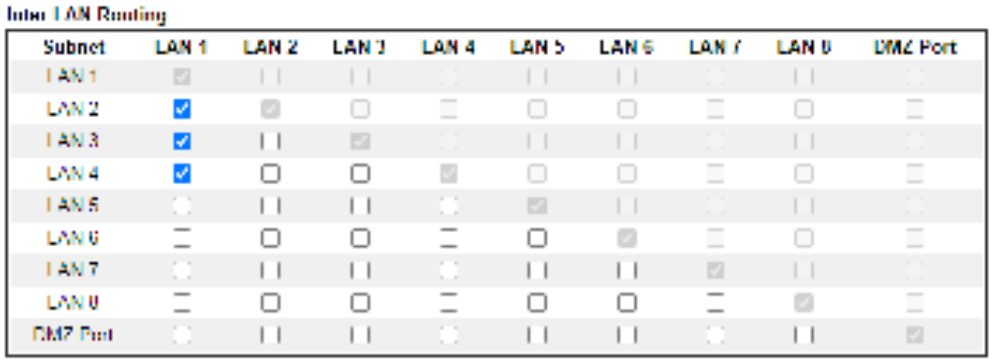
Item	Description
Enable	Click it to enable VLAN configuration.
LAN	**P1 – P5** - Check the LAN port(s) to group them under the selected VLAN.
Wireless LAN (2.4GHz)	**SSID1 – SSID4** –Check the SSID boxes to group them under the selected VLAN.
Wireless LAN (5GHz)	**SSID1 – SSID4** –Check the SSID boxes to group them under the selected VLAN.
Subnet	Choose one of them to make the selected VLAN mapping to the specified subnet only. For example, LAN1 is specified for VLAN0. It means that PCs grouped under VLAN0 can get the IP address(es) that specified by the subnet.
VLAN Tag	**Enable** - Check the box to enable the function of VLAN with tag. The router will add specific VLAN number to all packets on the LAN while sending them out. Please Enter the tag value and specify the priority for the packets sending by LAN. **VID** - Enter the value as the VLAN ID number. The range is form 0 to 4095. VIDs must be unique. **Priority** - Valid values are from 0 to 7, where 1 has the lowest priority, followed by 0, and finally from 2 to 7 in increasing order of priority.
Permit untagged device in P1 to access router	Select to allow untagged hosts connected to LAN port P1 to access the router. In case you have incorrectly configured VLAN functionality, you will still be able to access the router via the Web UI, and telnet and SSH shells to adjust the configuration.

Info	Leave one VLAN untagged at least to prevent from not connecting to Vigor router due to unexpected error.

Inter-LAN Routing

The Vigor router supports up to 15 VLANs. Each VLAN can be set up to use one or more of the Ethernet ports and wireless LAN Service Set Identifiers (SSIDs). Within the grid of VLANs (horizontal rows) and LAN interfaces (vertical columns),

- all hosts within the same VLAN (horizontal row) are visible to one another
- all hosts connected to the same LAN or WLAN interface (vertical column) are visible to one another if
  - they belong to the same VLAN, or
  - they belong to different VLANs, and inter-LAN routing (LAN>>General Setup) between them is enabled (see below).

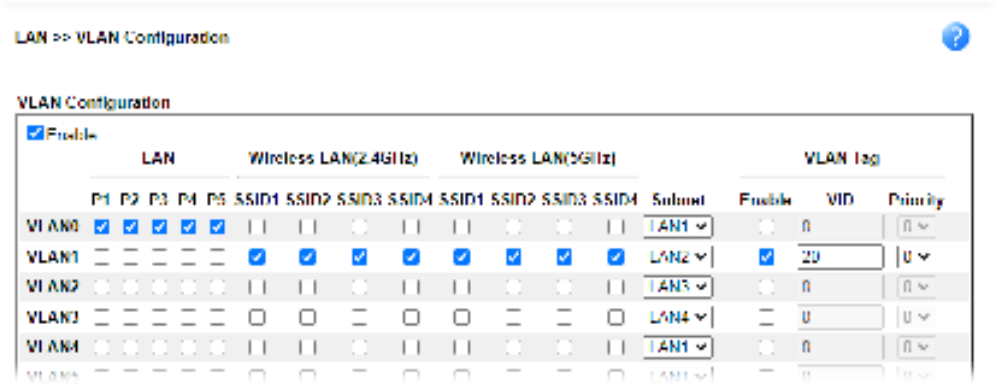


Inter-LAN Routing allows different LAN subnets to be interconnected or isolated. It is only available when the VLAN functionality is enabled. In the Inter-LAN Routing matrix, a selected checkbox means that the 2 intersecting LANs can communicate with each other.

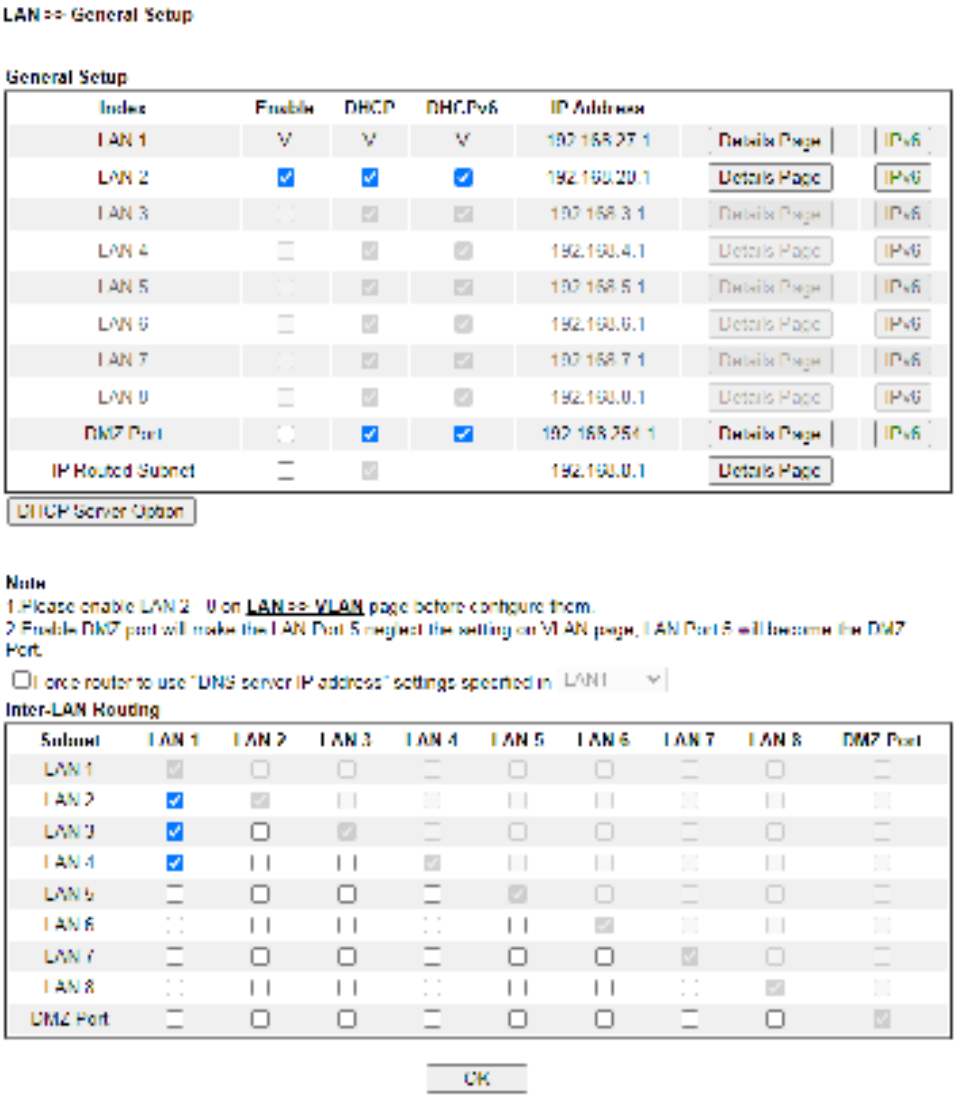
Vigor2927 series features a hugely flexible VLAN system. In its simplest form, each of the Gigabit LAN ports can be isolated from each other, for example to feed different companies or departments but keeping their local traffic completely separated.

Configuring port-based VLAN for wireless and non-wireless clients

1. All the wire network clients are categorized to group VLAN0 in subnet 192.168.1.0/24 (LAN1).
2. All the wireless network clients are categorized to group VLAN1 in subnet 192.168.2.0/24 (LAN2).
3. Open **LAN>>VLAN Configuration**. Check the boxes according to the statement in step 1 and Step 2.



4. Click **OK**.
5. Open **LAN>>General Setup**. If you want to let the clients in both groups communicate with each other, simply activate **Inter-LAN Routing** by checking the box between **LAN1** and **LAN2.**

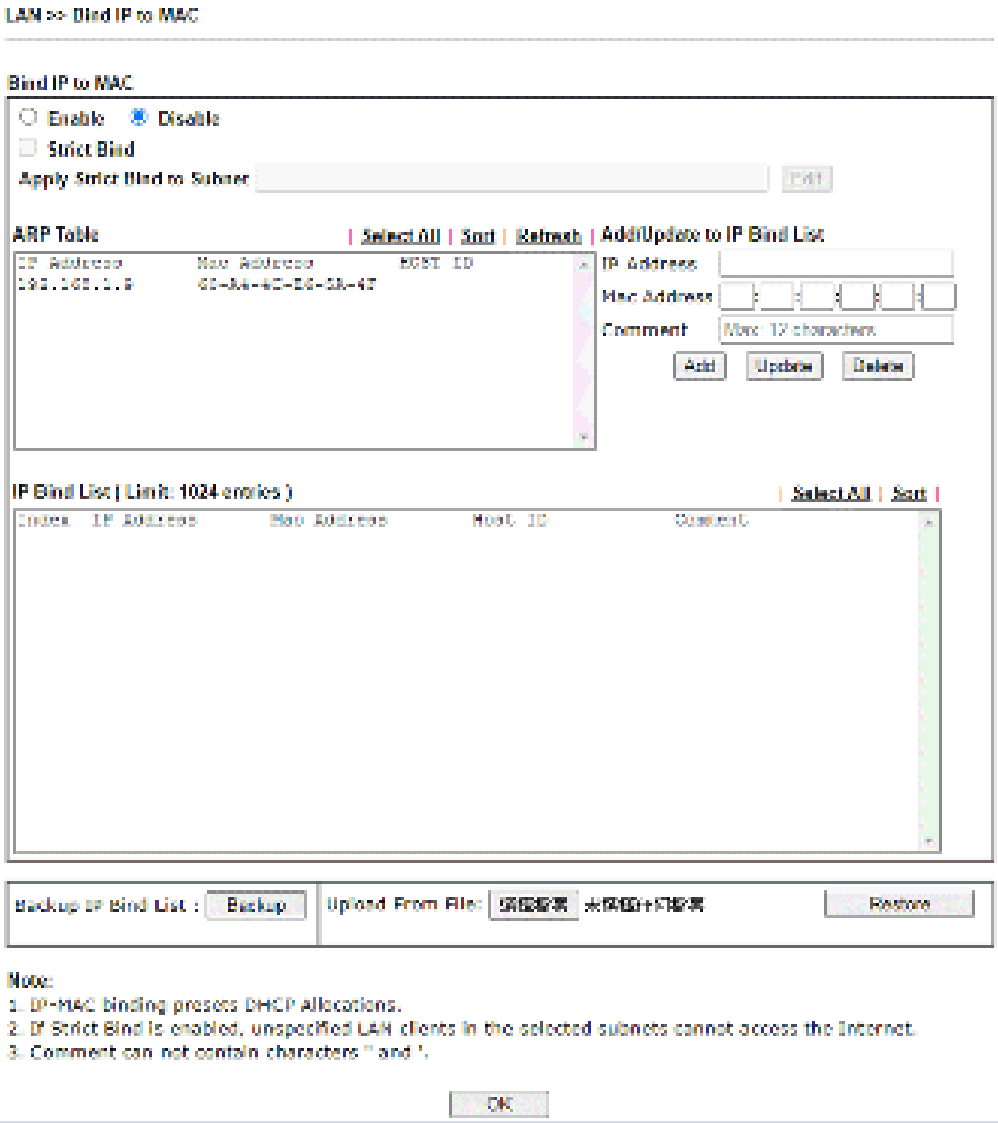


Vigor router supports up to six private IP subnets on LAN. Each can be independent (isolated) or common (able to communicate with each other). This is ideal for departmental or multi-occupancy applications.

II-2-3 Bind IP to MAC

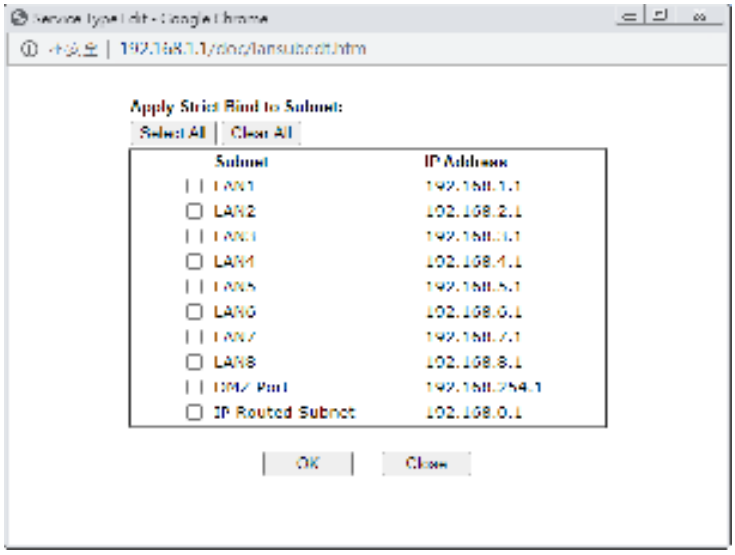
This function is used to bind the IP and MAC address in LAN to have a strengthening control in network. With the Bind IP to MAC feature you can reserve LAN IP addresses for LAN clients. Each reserved IP address is associated with a Media Access Control (MAC) address.

Click **LAN** and click **Bind IP to MAC** to open the setup page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Click this radio button to invoke this function. However, IP/MAC which is not listed in IP Bind List also can connect to Internet.
Disable	Click this radio button to disable this function. All the settings on this page will be invalid.
Strict Bind	Check the box to block the connection of the IP/MAC which is not listed in IP Bind List. LAN clients will be assigned IP addresses according to the MAC-to-IP address associations on this page. LAN client whose MAC address has not been bound to an IP address will

	be denied network access. **Note**: Before selecting **Strict Bind**, make sure at least one valid MAC address has been bound to an IP address. Otherwise no LAN clients will have network access, and it will not be possible to connect to the router to make changes to its configuration. **Apply Strict Bind to Subnet** – Choose the subnet(s) for applying the rules of Bind IP to MAC. 
ARP Table	This table is the LAN ARP table of this router. The information for IP and MAC will be displayed in this field. Each pair of IP and MAC address listed in ARP table can be selected and added to IP Bind List by clicking **Add** below.
Select All	Select all entries in the ARP Table for manipulation.
Sort	Reorder the entry based on the IP address.
Refresh	Refresh the ARP table listed below to obtain the newest ARP table information.
Add or Update to IP Bind List	**IP Address** – Enter the IP address to be associated with a MAC address. **Mac Address** – Enter the MAC address of the LAN client's network interface. **Comment** – Type a brief description for the entry.
Add	It allows you to add the one you choose from the ARP table or the IP/MAC address typed in **Add and Edit** to the table of **IP Bind List**.
Update	It allows you to edit and modify the selected IP address and MAC address that you create before.
Delete	You can remove any item listed in **IP Bind List**. Simply click and select the one, and click **Delete**. The selected item will be removed from the **IP Bind List**.
IP Bind List	It displays a list for the IP bind to MAC information.
Backup IP Bind List	Click **Backup** and enter a filename to back up IP Bind List to a file.
Upload From File	Click **Browse…** to select an IP Bind List backup file. Click **Restore** to restore the backup and overwrite the existing list.

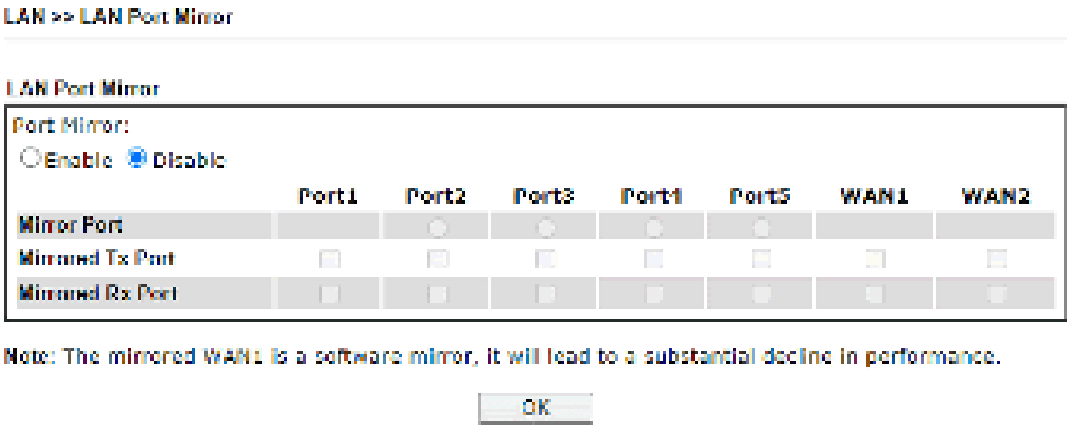
Info	Before you select Strict Bind, you have to bind one set of IP/MAC address for one PC. If not, no one of the PCs can access into Internet. And the web user interface of the router might not be accessed.

When you finish the configuration, click **OK** to save the settings.

II-2-4 LAN Port Mirror

The **LAN Port Mirror** function allows network traffic of select LAN ports to be forwarded to another LAN port for analysis. This is useful for enforcing policies, detecting unauthorized access, monitoring network performance, etc.

Select **LAN>>LAN Port Mirror** from the menu bar of the Web UI to bring up the **LAN Port Mirror** configuration page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

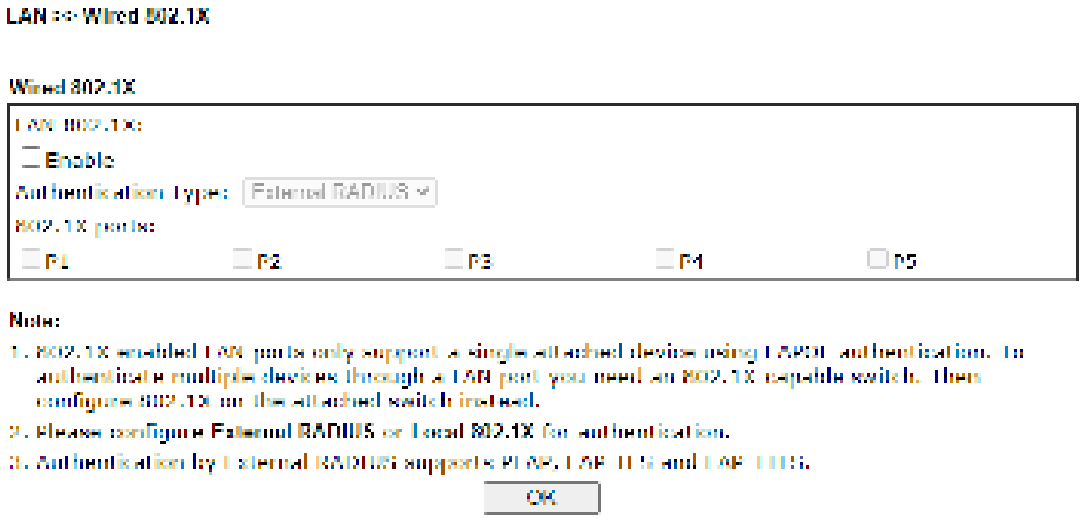
Item	Description
Port Mirror	Enables or disables LAN Port Mirroring.
Mirror Port	One and only one port is selected as the mirror port, to which traffic is to be forwarded.
Mirrored Tx Port	Port(s) whose outbound traffic will be forwarded to the mirror port.
Mirrored Rx Port	Port(s) whose inbound traffic will be forwarded to the mirror port.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

II-2-5 Wired 802.1x

Wired 802.1X provides authentication for clients wishing to connect to the LAN by Ethernet. Only one client can be authenticated on each LAN port.

Select **LAN>>Wired 802.1X** from the menu bar of the Web UI to bring up the **Wired 802.1X** configuration page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check the box to enable LAN 802.1x function.
Authentication Type	**External RADIUS** - An external RADIUS server is to be used for 802.1X authentication. Go to **Applications >> RADIUS / TACACS+>>External RADIUS** to specify the RADIUS server. **Local 802.1X** - Use the user database on the router to authenticate clients. Go to **User Management >> User Profile** to set up users by entering user names, passwords and ensure that Local 802.1X service is enabled for the profiles.
802.1X ports	802.1X authentication will be available for the selected LAN ports.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

II-3 Hardware Acceleration

Hardware Acceleration is also called **PPA** in DrayTek for it is based on **Protocol Processing Engine (PPE)** of Infineon. It can only support 4096 sessions for network traffic (IN & OUT).

When the data traffic is heavy and data transmission is getting slowly and slowly, you can configure this page to accelerate the data streaming by hardware itself. Open **Hardware Acceleration** to access into the following page:

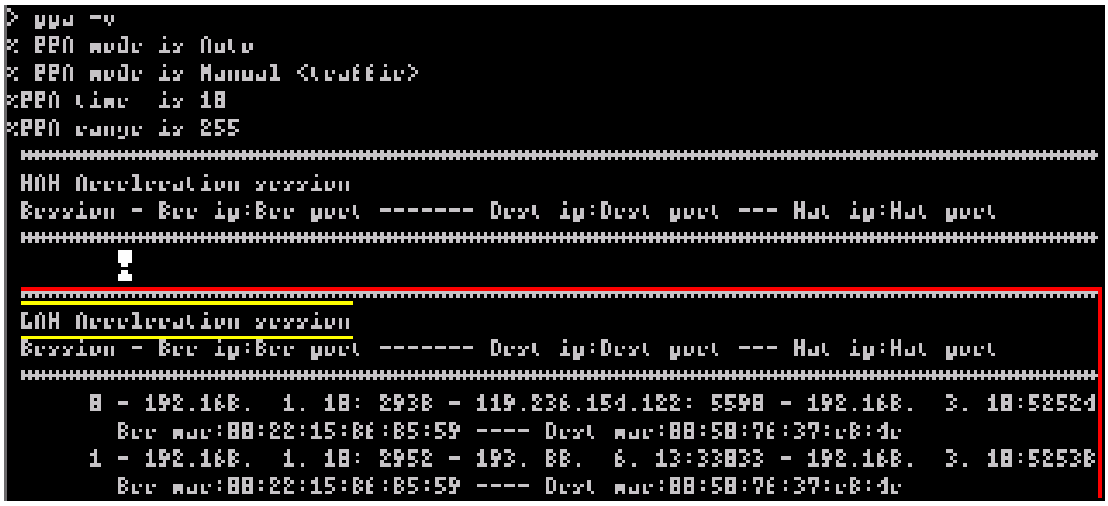
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Acceleration	**Disable** – The default setting. **Enable -** Choose to enable the hardware acceleration function.
NAT	Select TCP and/or UDP.
IPsec	Select TCP and/or UDP.
Exception List	If you want to restrict some users/clients from transmitting data through the router by using the hardware acceleration function, check this box to create an exclusion list. **MAC Address -** Enter the MAC address of the client. **ARP Table -** Click to select the client listed on the ARP table.

	Then, the MAC address of the selected client will be shown on the MAC Address field. **Exception Type -** Select NAT and / or IPsec. **Description -** Enter a brief explanation for the selected client.

Checking the PPA status

For checking whether the rule of PPA is working or not, a user can login to Vigor2927 series by using telnet. User can view how many sessions are transferring in each direction of PPA table after entering "**ppa -v**".



II-4 NAT

Usually, the router serves as an NAT (Network Address Translation) router. NAT is a mechanism that one or more private IP addresses can be mapped into a single public one. Public IP address is usually assigned by your ISP, for which you may get charged. Private IP addresses are recognized only among internal hosts.

When the outgoing packets destined to some public server on the Internet reach the NAT router, the router will change its source address into the public IP address of the router, select the available public port, and then forward it. At the same time, the router shall list an entry in a table to memorize this address/port-mapping relationship. When the public server response, the incoming traffic, of course, is destined to the router's public IP address and the router will do the inversion based on its table. Therefore, the internal host can communicate with external host smoothly.

The benefit of the NAT includes:

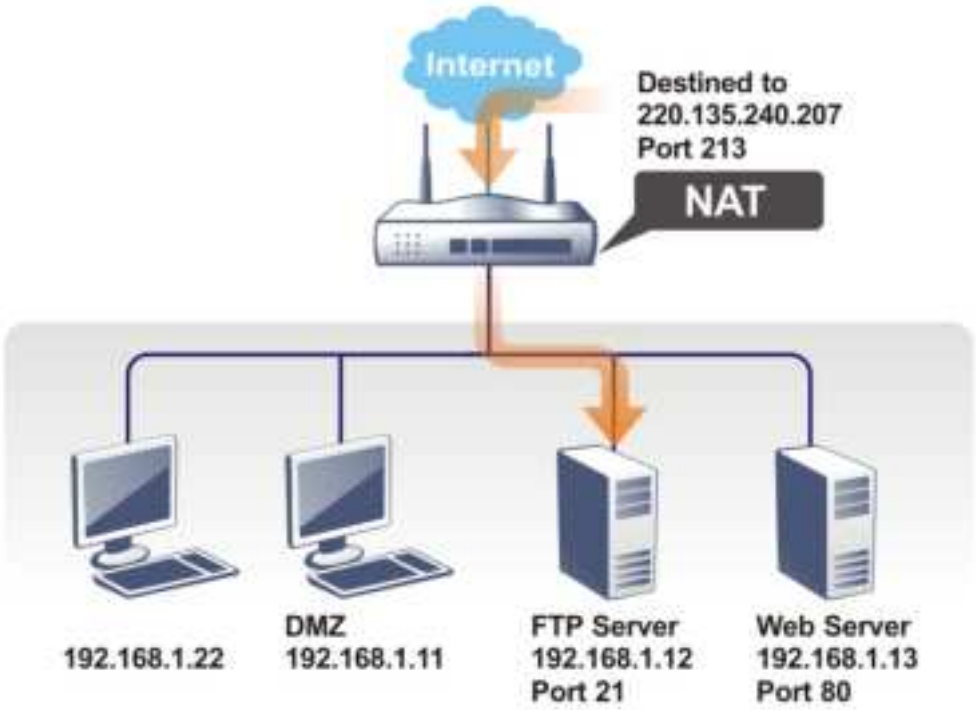
- **Save cost on applying public IP address and apply efficient usage of IP address.** NAT allows the internal IP addresses of local hosts to be translated into one public IP address, thus you can have only one IP address on behalf of the entire internal hosts.
- **Enhance security of the internal network by obscuring the IP address.** There are many attacks aiming victims based on the IP address. Since the attacker cannot be aware of any private IP addresses, the NAT function can protect the internal network.

Info	On NAT page, you will see the private IP address defined in RFC-1918. Usually we use the 192.168.1.0/24 subnet for the router. As stated before, the NAT facility can map one or more IP addresses and/or service ports into different specified services. In other words, the NAT function can be achieved by using port mapping methods.

Web User Interface

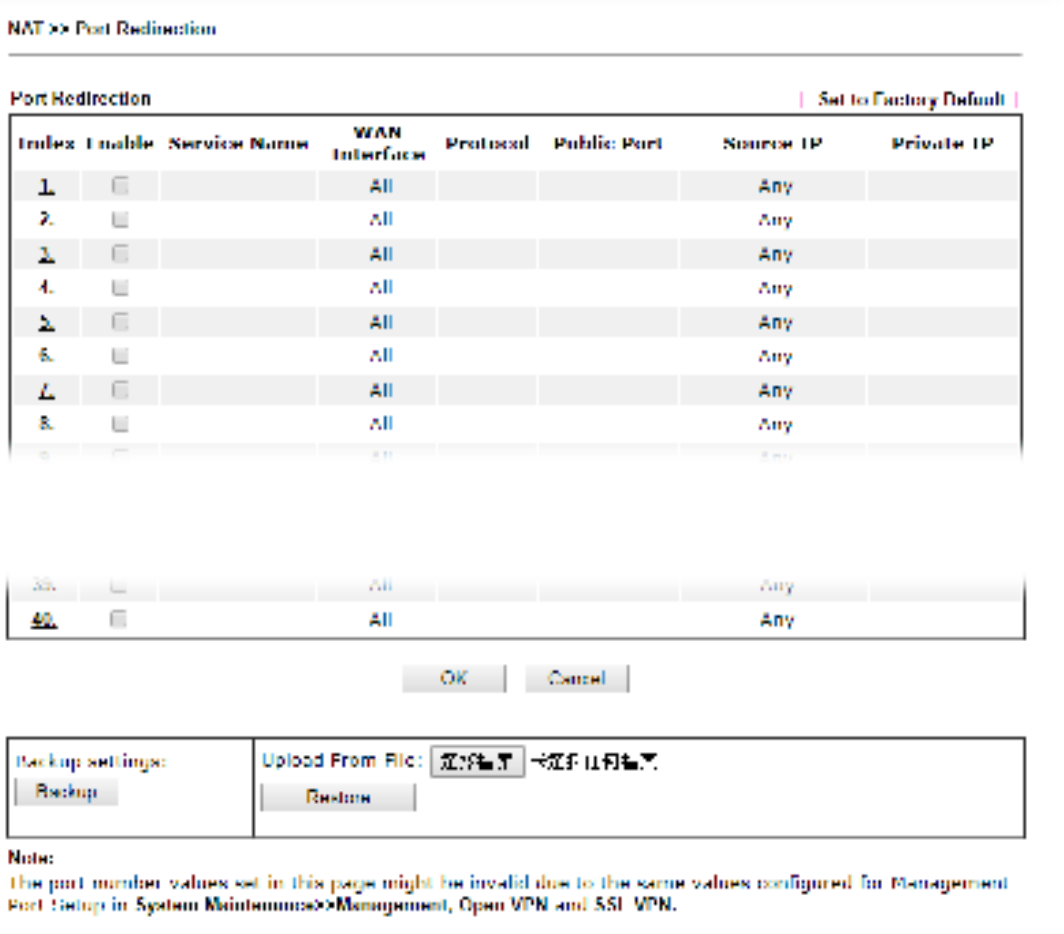
II-4-1 Port Redirection

Port Redirection is usually set up for server related service inside the local network (LAN), such as web servers, FTP servers, E-mail servers etc. Most of the case, you need a public IP address for each server and this public IP address/domain name are recognized by all users. Since the server is actually located inside the LAN, the network well protected by NAT of the router, and identified by its private IP address/port, the goal of Port Redirection function is to forward all access request with public IP address from external users to the mapping private IP address/port of the server.



The port redirection can only apply to incoming traffic.

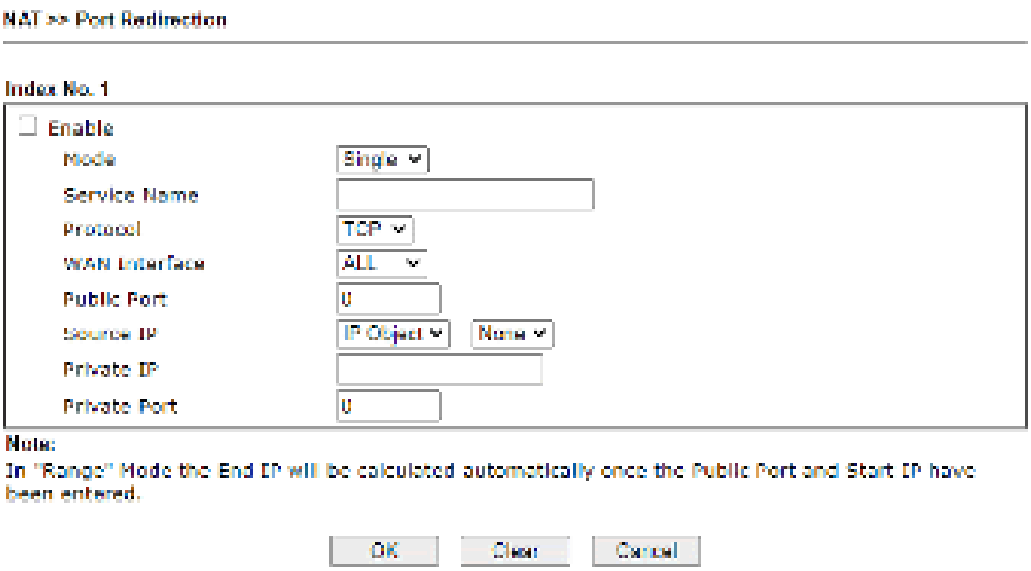
To use this function, please go to **NAT** page and choose **Port Redirection** web page. The **Port Redirection Table** provides 40 port-mapping entries for the internal hosts.



Each item is explained as follows:

Item	Description
Index	Display the number of the profile.
Enable	Check the box to enable the port redirection profile.
Service Name	Display the description of the specific network service.
WAN Interface	Display the WAN IP address used by the profile.
Protocol	Display the transport layer protocol (TCP or UDP).
Public Port	Display the port number which will be redirected to the specified **Private IP and Port** of the internal host.
Source IP	Display the IP object of the source IP.
Private IP	Display the IP address of the internal host providing the service.
Backup	Click it to backup the configuration of port redirection settings.
Restore	Click it to restore the configuration of port redirection settings. Before clicking, make sure upload the configuration file onto Vigor router.

Press any number under Index to access into next page for configuring port redirection.



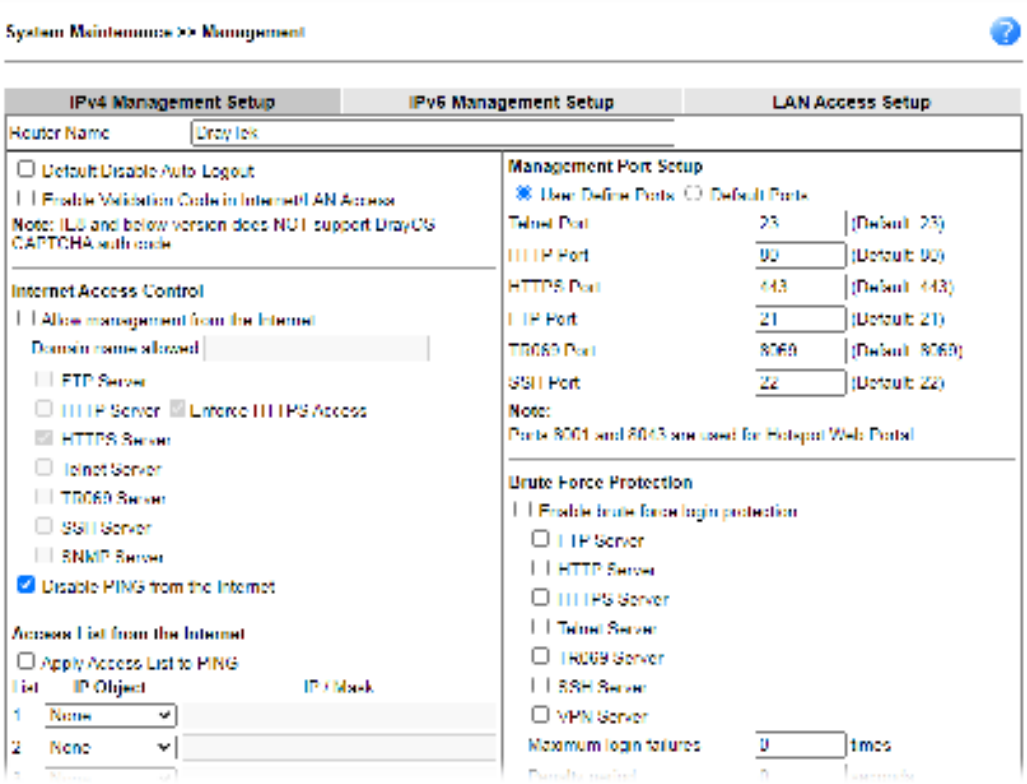
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check this box to enable such port redirection setting.
Mode	Two options (Single and Range) are provided here for you to choose. To set a range for the specific service, select **Range**. In Range mode, if the public port (start port and end port) and the starting IP of private IP had been entered, the system will calculate and display the ending IP of private IP automatically.
Service Name	Enter the description of the specific network service.
Protocol	Select the transport layer protocol (TCP or UDP).
WAN Interface	Select the WAN interface used for port redirection. There are eight WAN IP alias that can be selected and used for port redirection. The default setting is **All** which means all the incoming data from any port will be redirected to specified range of IP address and port.
Public Port	Specify which port can be redirected to the specified **Private IP and Port** of the internal host. If you choose **Range** as the port redirection mode, you will see two boxes on this field. Enter the required number on the first box (as the starting port) and the second box (as the ending port).
Source IP	**IP Object** - Use the drop down list to specify an IP object profile. **IP Group** - Use the drop down list to specify an IP group profile.
Private IP	Specify the private IP address of the internal host providing the service. If you choose **Range** as the port redirection mode, you will see two boxes on this field. Type a complete IP address in the first box (as the starting point). The second one will be assigned automatically later.
Private Port	Specify the private port number of the service offered by the internal host.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

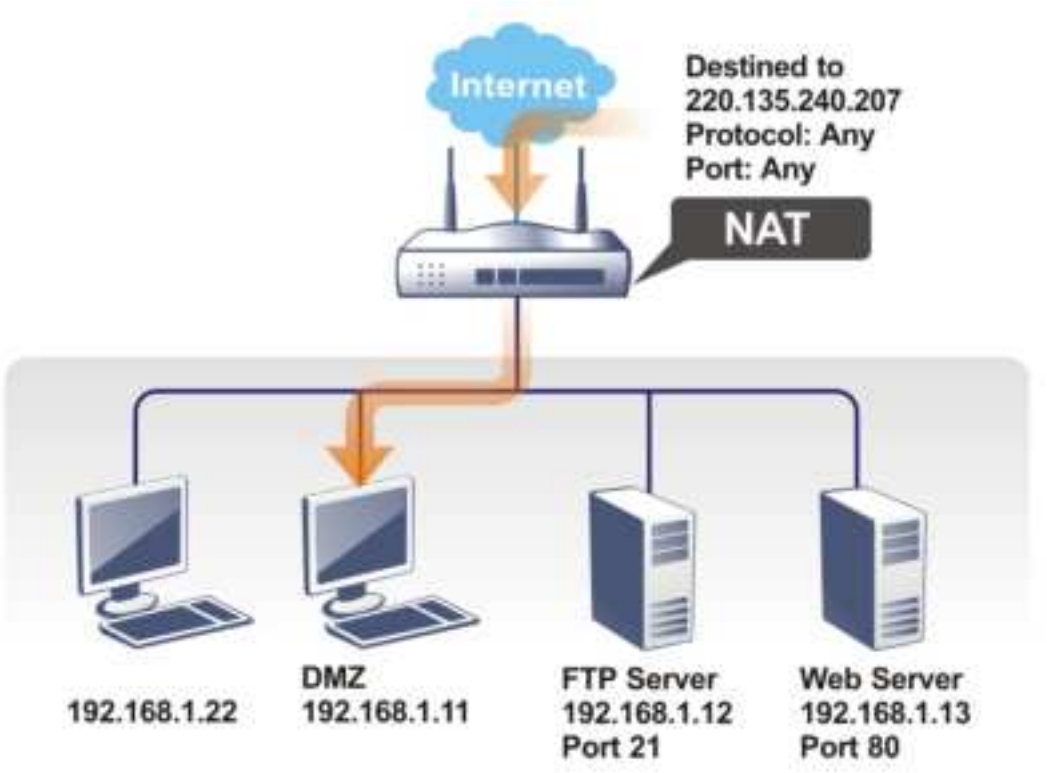
Note that the router has its own built-in services (servers) such as Telnet, HTTP and FTP etc. Since the common port numbers of these services (servers) are all the same, you may need to reset the router in order to avoid confliction.

For example, the built-in web user interface in the router is with default port 80, which may conflict with the web server in the local network, http://192.168.1.13:80. Therefore, you need to **change the router's http port to any one other than the default port 80** to avoid conflict, such as 8080. This can be set in the **System Maintenance >>Management Setup**. You then will access the admin screen of by suffixing the IP address with 8080, e.g., http://192.168.1.1:8080 instead of port 80.



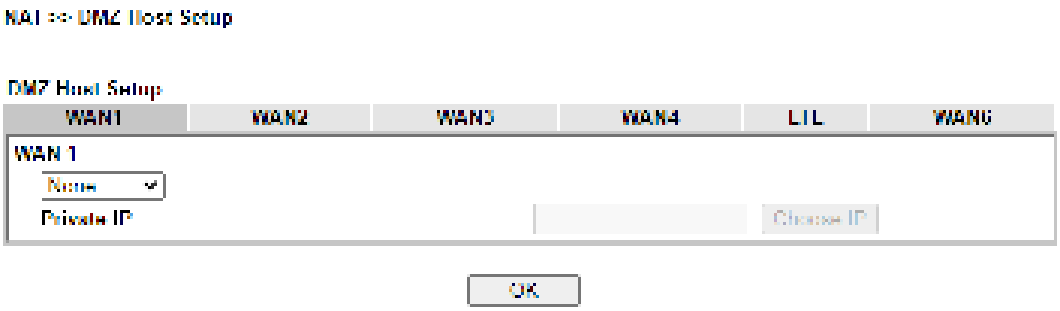
II-4-2 DMZ Host

As mentioned above, **Port Redirection** can redirect incoming TCP/UDP or other traffic on particular ports to the specific private IP address/port of host in the LAN. However, other IP protocols, for example Protocols 50 (ESP) and 51 (AH), do not travel on a fixed port. Vigor router provides a facility **DMZ Host** that maps ALL unsolicited data on any protocol to a single host in the LAN. Regular web surfing and other such Internet activities from other clients will continue to work without inappropriate interruption. **DMZ Host** allows a defined internal user to be totally exposed to the Internet, which usually helps some special applications such as Netmeeting or Internet Games etc.

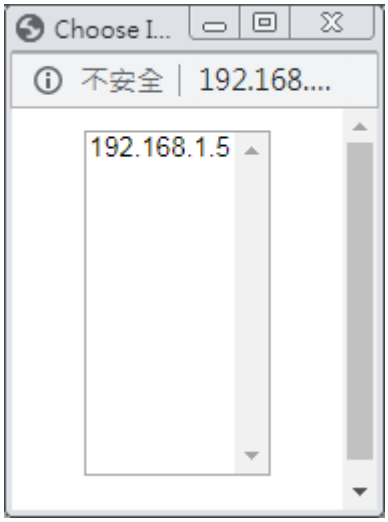


The security properties of NAT are somewhat bypassed if you set up DMZ host. We suggest you to add additional filter rules or a secondary firewall.

Click **DMZ Host** to open the following page. You can set different DMZ host for each WAN interface. Click the WAN tab to switch into the configuration page for that WAN.

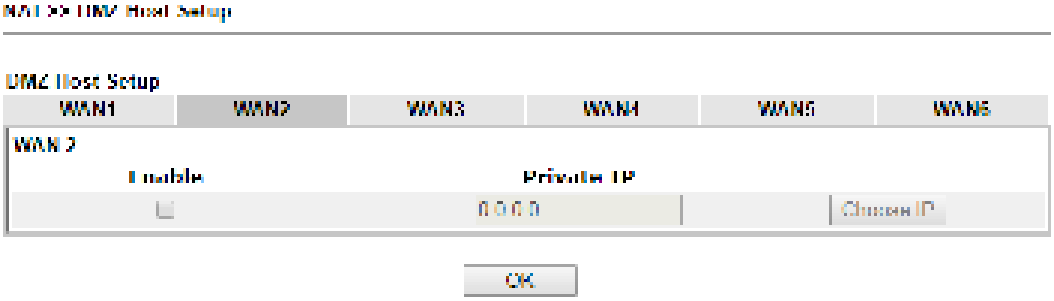


Available settings are explained as follows:

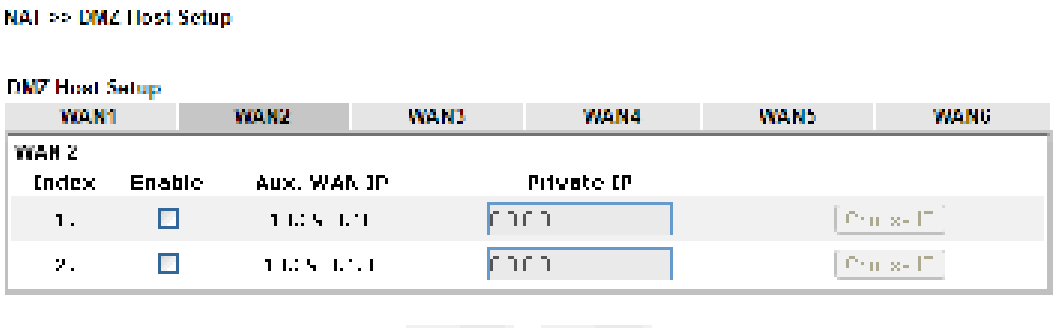
Item	Description
WAN 1	Choose **Private IP** or **None** first.
Private IP	Enter the private IP address of the DMZ host, or click Choose PC to select one.
Choose IP	Click this button and then a window will automatically pop up, as depicted below. The window consists of a list of private IP addresses of all hosts in your LAN network. Select one private IP address in the list to be the DMZ host.  When you have selected one private IP from the above dialog, the IP address will be shown on the following screen. Click **OK** to save the setting.

DMZ Host for WAN2, WAN3, LTE or WAN4 is slightly different with WAN1. **Active True IP** selection is available for WAN1 only.

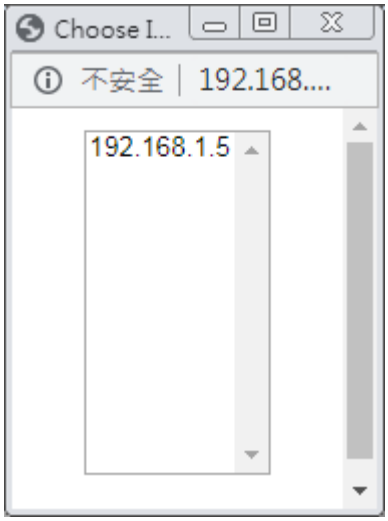
See the following figure.



If you previously have set up **WAN Alias** for **PPPoE** or **Static or Dynamic IP** mode in WAN2 interface, you will find them in **Aux. WAN IP** for your selection.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check to enable the DMZ Host function.
Private IP	Enter the private IP address of the DMZ host, or click Choose PC to select one.
Choose IP	Click this button and then a window will automatically pop up, as depicted below. The window consists of a list of private IP addresses of all hosts in your LAN network. Select one private IP address in the list to be the DMZ host.  When you have selected one private IP from the above dialog, the IP address will be shown on the screen. Click **OK** to save the setting.

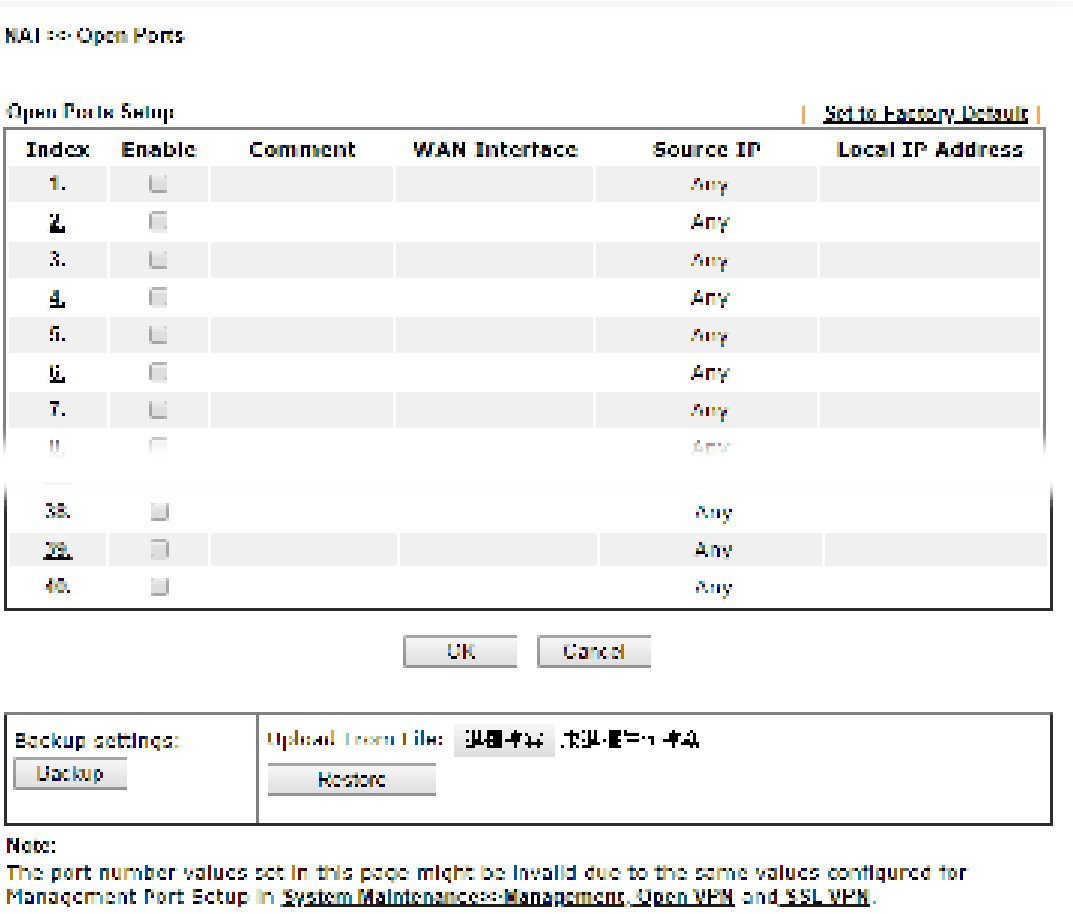
After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

II-4-3 Open Ports

Open Ports allows you to open a range of ports for the traffic of special applications.

Common application of Open Ports includes P2P application (e.g., BT, KaZaA, Gnutella, WinMX, eMule and others), Internet Camera etc. Ensure that you keep the application involved up-to-date to avoid falling victim to any security exploits.

Click **Open Ports** to open the following page:

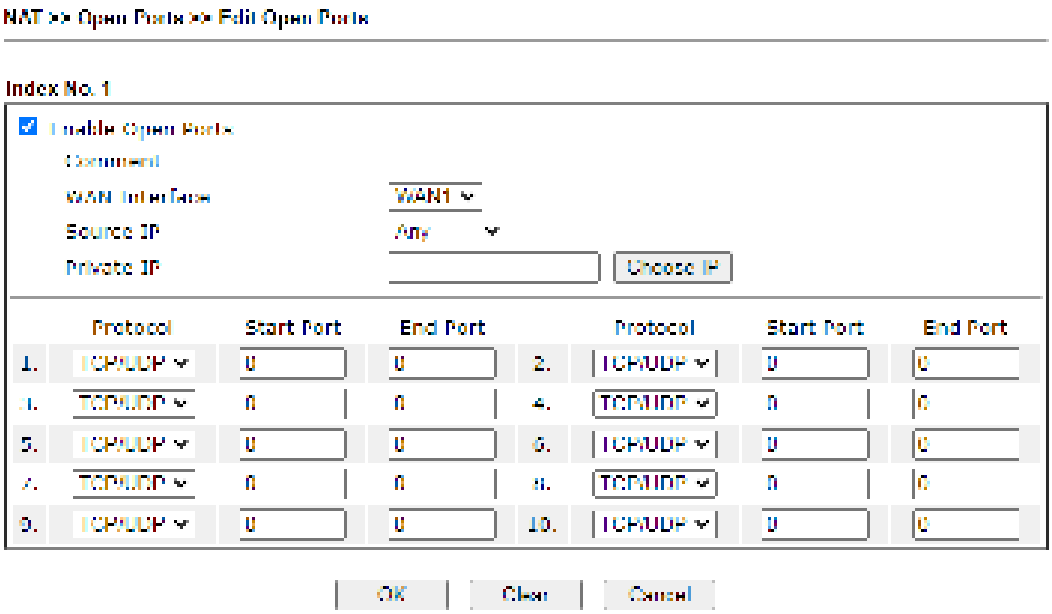


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Index	Indicate the relative number for the particular entry that you want to offer service in a local host. You should click the appropriate index number to edit or clear the corresponding entry.
Enable	Check the box to enable the open port profile.
Comment	Specify the name for the defined network service.
WAN Interface	Display the WAN interface used by such index.
Aux. WAN IP	Display the IP alias setting used by such index. If no IP alias setting exists, such field will not appear.
Source IP	Display the name of the IP object.
Local IP Address	Display the private IP address of the local host offering the service.

Backup	Click it to backup the configuration of open ports settings.
Restore	Click it to restore the configuration of open ports settings. Before clicking, make sure upload the configuration file onto Vigor router.

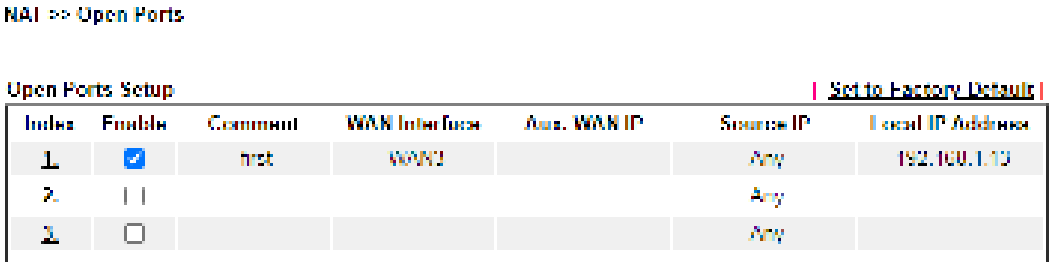
To add or edit port settings, click one index number on the page. The index entry setup page will pop up. In each index entry, you can specify **10** port ranges for diverse services.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable Open Ports	Check to enable this entry.
Comment	Make a name for the defined network application/service.
WAN Interface	Specify the WAN interface that will be used for this entry.
Source IP	**Any -** Any IP can be used as the source IP. **IP Object** - Use the drop down list to specify an IP object proifle. **IP Group** - Use the drop down list to specify an IP group profile.
WAN IP	Specify the WAN IP address that will be used for this entry. This setting is available when WAN IP Alias is configured.
Private IP	Enter the private IP address of the local host or click **Choose PC** to select one. **Choose IP -** Click this button and, subsequently, a window having a list of private IP addresses of local hosts will automatically pop up. Select the appropriate IP address of the local host in the list.
Protocol	Specify the transport layer protocol. It could be **TCP**, **UDP**, or **-----** (none) for selection.
Start Port	Specify the starting port number of the service offered by the local host.
End Port	Specify the ending port number of the service offered by the local host.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.



II-4-4 Port Triggering

Port Triggering is a variation of open ports function.

The key difference between "open port" and "port triggering" is:

- Once the OK button is clicked and the configuration has taken effect, "open port" keeps the ports opened forever.
- Once the OK button is clicked and the configuration has taken effect, "port triggering" will only attempt to open the ports once the triggering conditions are met.
- The duration that these ports are opened depends on the type of protocol used. The "default" durations are shown below and these duration values can be modified via telnet commands.

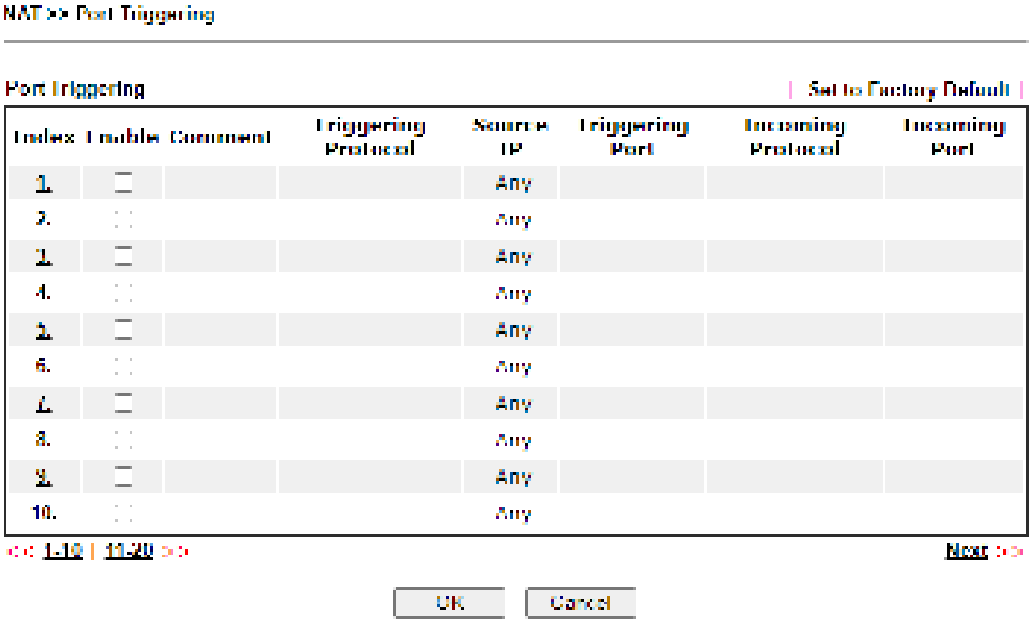
  TCP: 86400 sec.

  UDP: 180 sec.

  IGMP: 10 sec.

  TCP WWW: 60 sec.

  TCP SYN: 60 sec.

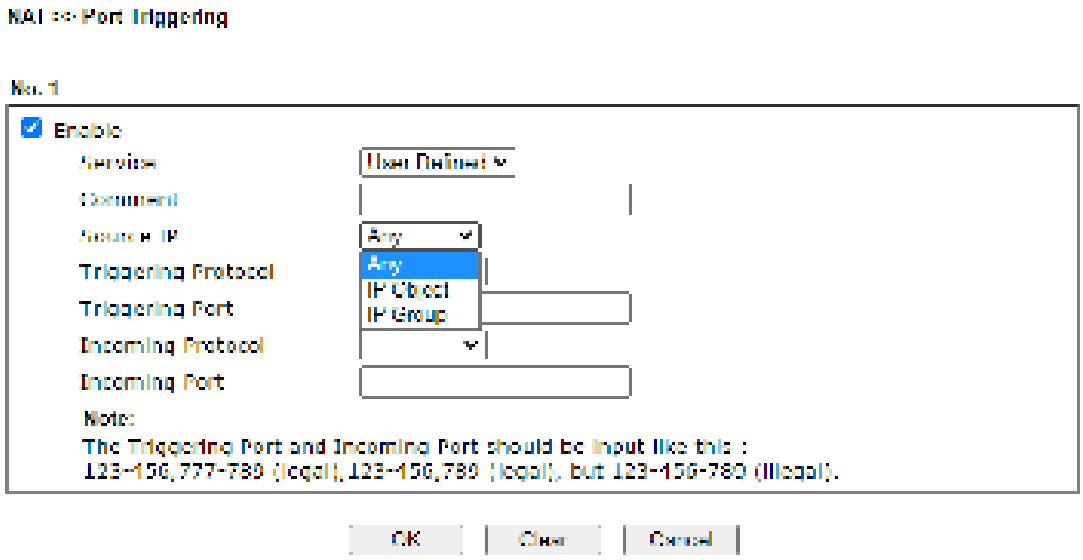


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Index	Indicate the relative number for the port triggering profile. You should click the appropriate index number to edit or

	clear the corresponding entry.
Enable	Check the box to enable the Port Triggering profile.
Comment	Display the text which memorizes the application of this rule.
Triggering Protocol	Display the protocol of the triggering packets.
Source IP	Display the name of the IP object.
Triggering Port	Display the port of the triggering packets.
Incoming Protocol	Display the protocol for the incoming data of such triggering profile.
Incoming Port	Display the port for the incoming data of such triggering profile.

Click the index number link to open the configuration page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check to enable this entry.
Service	Choose the service type to apply for such trigger profile.
Comment	Enter the text to memorize the application of this rule.
Source IP	**Any -** Any IP can be used as the source IP. **IP Object** - Use the drop down list to specify an IP object proifle. **IP Group** - Use the drop down list to specify an IP group profile.
Triggering Protocol	Select the protocol (TCP, UDP or TCP/UDP) for such triggering profile.
Triggering Port	Enter the port or port range for such triggering profile.
Incoming Protocol	When the triggering packets received, it is expected the incoming packets will use the selected protocol. Select the protocol (TCP, UDP or TCP/UDP) for the incoming data of such triggering profile.
Incoming Port	Enter the port or port range for the incoming packets.

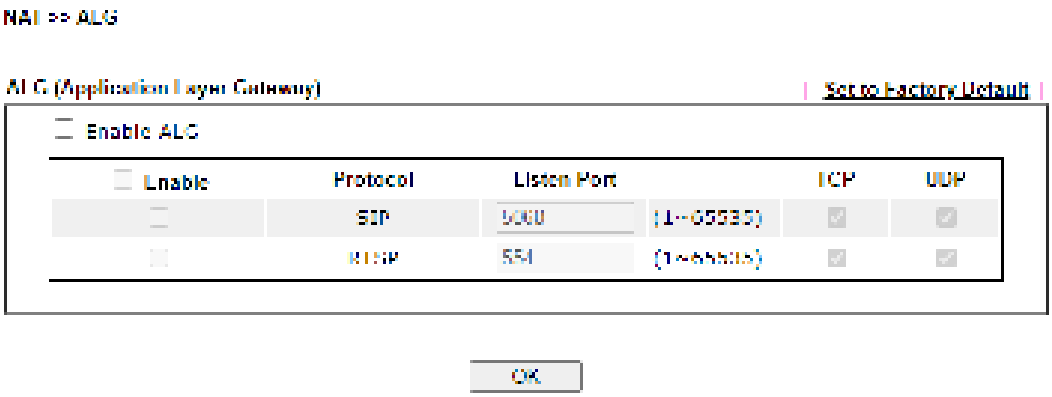
After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

II-4-5 ALG

ALG means **Application Layer Gateway**. There are two methods provided by Vigor router, RTSP (Real Time Streaming Protocol) ALG and SIP (Session Initiation Protocol) ALG, for processing the packets of voice and video.

RTSP ALG makes RTSP message, RTCP message, and RTP packets of voice and video be transmitted and received correctly via NAT by Vigor router.

However, SIP ALG makes SIP message and RTP packets of voice be transmitted and received correctly via NAT by Vigor router.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable ALG	Check to enable such function.
Listen Port	Type a port number for SIP or RTSP protocol.
TCP	Check the box to make correspond protocol message packet from TCP transmit and receive via NAT.
UDP	Check the box to make correspond protocol message packet from UDP transmit and receive via NAT.

II-5 Applications

Dynamic DNS

Most ISPs assigns dynamic WAN IP addresses to their customers. Dynamic IP addresses presents challenges to users who would like to accept remote connections to their LANs from the Internet, as service could be disrupted due to the IP address changing without notice. By setting up service with a Dynamic DNS (DDNS) provider, and configuring Dynamic DNS updates on the Vigor router, you can have reliable access to your network by means of an easy-to-remember domain address that resolves to the most current WAN IP address.

The Vigor router supports a wide range of DDNS providers, such as DynDNS, No-IP.com, DtDNS, and ChangeIP. Please contact the DDNS provider of your choice to set up service before configuring DDNS on the router.

LAN DNS / DNS Forwarding

LAN DNS allows the network administrator to override standard DNS resolutions for selecting domain addresses. The router will respond to queries on matched domain addresses with custom IP addresses.

DNS Forwarding allows the network administrator to forward DNS queries to different DNS servers based on the domain name.

LAN DNS and DNS Forwarding only affect DNS queries that are sent to the WAN through the router. DNS queries that are directed to a DNS server on the LAN will not be intercepted by the router.

Schedule

The Vigor router has a built-in clock which can update itself manually or automatically by means of Network Time Protocols (NTP). As a result, you can not only schedule the router to dialup to the Internet at a specified time, but also restrict Internet access to certain hours so that users can connect to the Internet only during certain hours, say, business hours. The schedule is also applicable to other functions.

RADIUS/TACACS+

Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) is a security authentication client/server protocol that supports authentication, authorization and accounting, which is widely used by Internet service providers. It is the most common method of authenticating and authorizing dial-up and tunneled network users.

The built-in RADIUS client feature enables the router to assist the remote dial-in user or a wireless station and the RADIUS server in performing mutual authentication. It enables centralized remote access authentication for network management.

LDAP /Active Directory Setup

Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is a communication protocol for using in TCP/IP network. It defines the methods to access distributing directory server by clients, work on directory and share the information in the directory by clients. The LDAP standard is established by the work team of Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF).

As the name described, LDAP is designed as an effect way to access directory service without the complexity of other directory service protocols. For LDAP is defined to perform, inquire and modify the information within the directory, and acquire the data in the directory

securely, therefore users can apply LDAP to search or list the directory object, inquire or manage the active directory.

UPnP

The Vigor supports UPnP (Universal Plug and Play), which is a suite of network protocols that simplifies network configuration. Applications and network devices on the LAN, that support UPnP, may request the router to modify its settings to allow NAT Traversal, so that WAN hosts can connect to them directly.

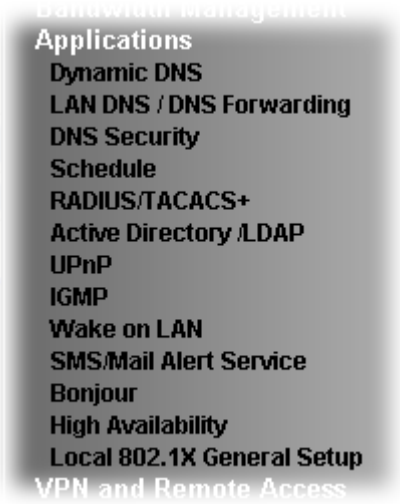
Examples of applications and devices that support UPnP include file-sharing applications such as uTorrent, Vuze and eMule, gaming consoles such as the Sony PlayStations 3 and 4 Xbox 360 and Xbox One, media streaming applications such as Plex and XBMC, and messaging and calling applications such as Skype. To find out if a certain application or network device supports or requires UPnP, please consult its user manual or check with its vendor.

Wake on LAN

Using the Wake on LAN (WoL) feature, LAN clients that support WoL can be powered on or resume from sleep over the network, without the need for physical access to the device.

In order for LAN clients to be able to woken from sleep or off states, the network interface card must be configured to monitor Wake-on-LAN messages. Consult the documentation of the LAN client for details on setting up its network interface for Wake on LAN.

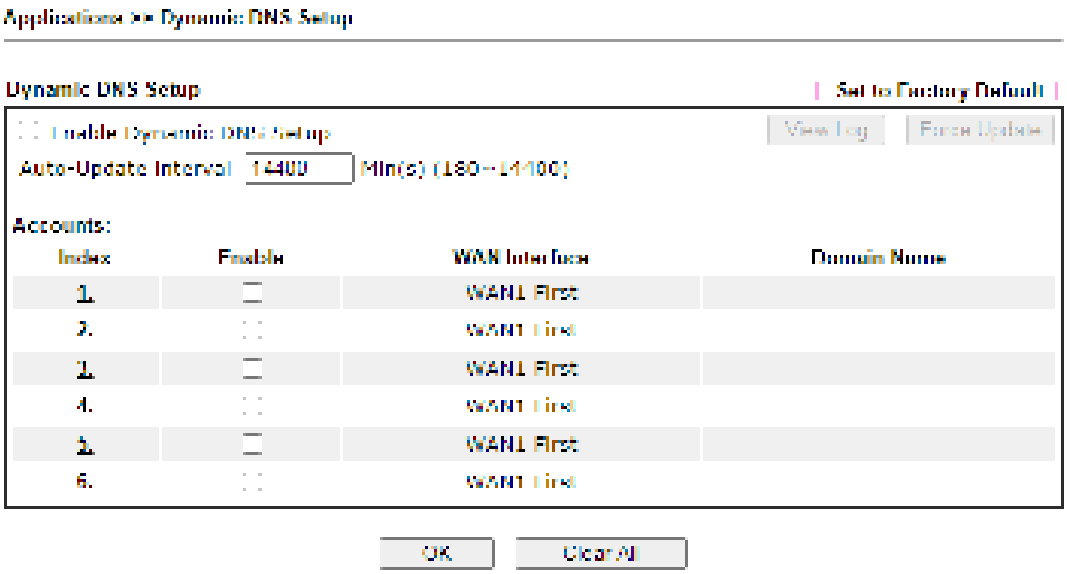
Web User Interface



II-5-1 Dynamic DNS

Enable the Function and Add a Dynamic DNS Account

To begin configuring Dynamic DNS, from the main menu, navigate to **Applications**, and select **Dynamic DNS**. The Dynamic DNS main configuration screen appears:

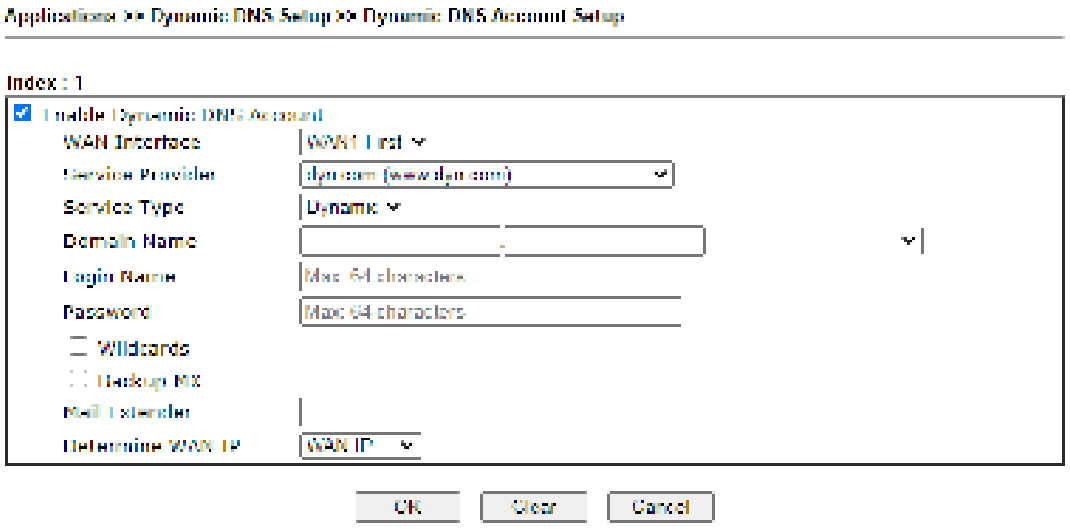


Available settings are explained as follows:

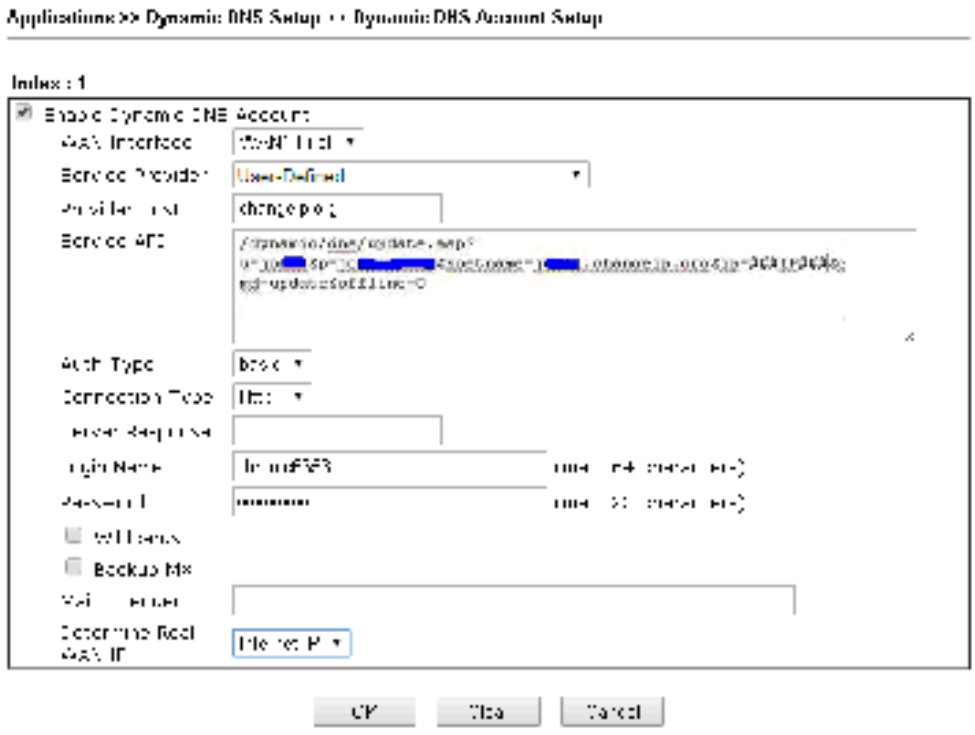
Item	Description
Enable Dynamic DNS Setup	Select to enable DDNS function.
Set to Factory Default	Click to clear all profiles to factory settings.
View Log	Select to display the most recent DDNS update messages.
Force Update	Click to connect immediately to DDNS servers to update IP address information.

Auto-Update interval	The frequency, in minutes, at which the router connects to DDNS servers to update IP address information.
Index	Click to bring up the configuration page of the DDNS profile.
Enable	Check the box to enable such account.
WAN Interface	Shows the WAN interface associated with the DDNS profile.
Domain Name	Shows the domain name with which the profile is associated.

After clicking on the index number, the detail configuration screen for the DDNS profile appears:

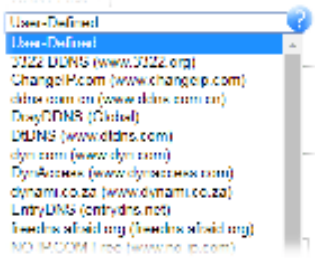


If **User-Defined** is specified as the service provider, the web page will be changed slightly as follows:



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description

Enable Dynamic DNS Account	Select to enable this DDNS profile.
WAN Interface	Select the WAN interface to monitor for IP address changes. **WANx First** – The specified WAN interface will be examined first. If it is online, its IP address will be used in the DDNS update. **WANx Only** – Only the specified WAN interface will be examined. If the WAN interface is online, its IP address will be used in the DDNS update. Otherwise no update will be performed for this DDNS profile.
Service Provider	Select the DDNS provider. If your DDNS provider is not listed, select **User-Defined** and manually configure the profile.  ● **Provider Host** - Enter the IP address or the domain name of the host which provides related service. Note that such option is available when Customized is selected as Service Provider. ● **Service API** - Enter the API information obtained from DDNS server. Note that such option is available when Customized is selected as Service Provider. (e.g: /dynamic/dns/update.asp?u=jo***&p=jo********&hostname=j****.changeip.org&ip=###IP### &cmd=update&offline=0) ● **Auth Type** - Two types can be used for authentication. **Basic** – Username and password defined later can be shown from the packets captured. **URL** - Username and password defined later can be shown in URL. (e.g., http://ns1.vigorddns.com/ddns.php?username=xxxx&password=xxxx&domain=xxxx.vigorddns.com) Note that such option is available when Customized is selected as Service Provider. ● **Connection Type** - There are two connection types (HTTP and HTTPs) to be specified. Note that such option is available when Customized is selected as Service Provider. ● **Server Response** - Type any text that you want to receive from the DDNS server. Note that such option is available when Customized is selected as Service Provider. If other service provider is selected, you have to configure Service Type, Domain Name, Login Name and Password. ● **Service Type** - Select the service type that matches that of your DynDNS account. If you are unsure which service type to select, try Dynamic first. This options is

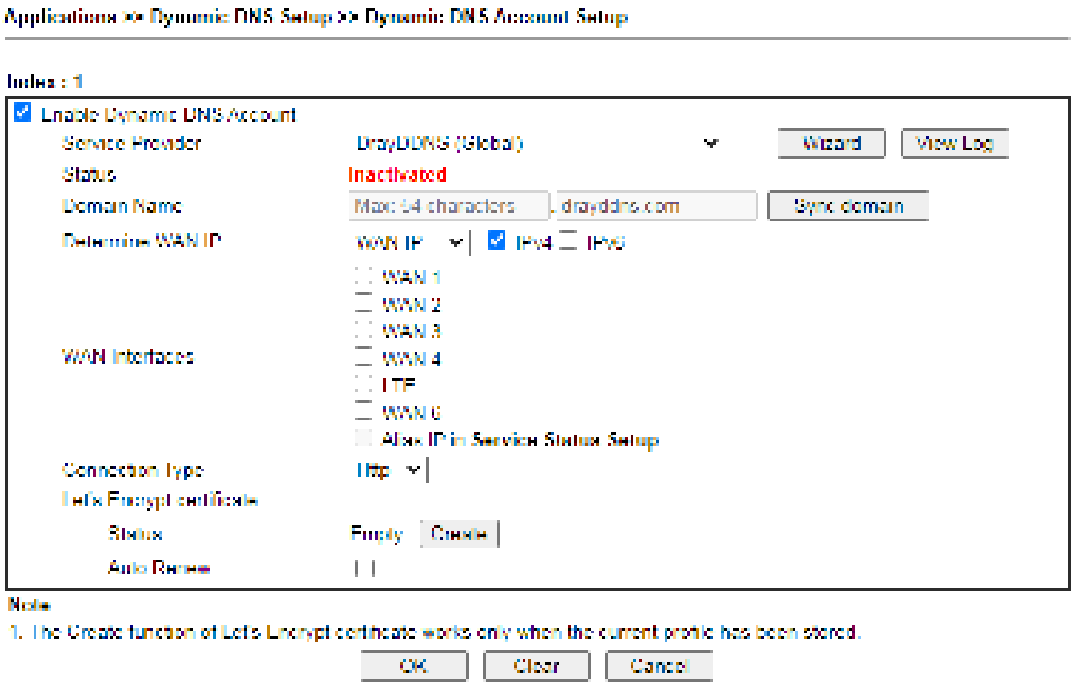
	applicable to DynDNS only. ● **Domain Name** - The domain and subdomain to be updated.
Login Name	The login name of the DDNS account.
Password	The password of the DDNS account.
Wildcard and Backup MX	The Wildcard and Backup MX (Mail Exchange) features are not supported for all Dynamic DNS providers. You could get more detailed information from their websites.
Mail Extender	If the mail server is defined with another name, please enter the name in this area. Such mail server will be used as backup mail exchange.
Determine WAN IP	If a Vigor router is installed behind any NAT router, you can enable such function to locate the real WAN IP. When the WAN IP used by Vigor router is private IP, this function can detect the public IP used by the NAT router and use the detected IP address for DDNS update. There are two methods offered for you to choose: ● **WAN IP** - The IP address of the router's WAN interface will be used. ● **Internet IP** – The real public IP address will be used. Select this option if the IP address assigned to the router's WAN interface is not the actual external IP address.

Click **OK** to save changes, **Clear** to clear all settings, or **Cancel** to discard changes and return to the main DDNS screen.

DrayDDNS Settings

DrayDDNS, a new DDNS service developed by DrayTek, can record multiple WAN IP (IPv4) on single domain name. It is convenient for users to use and easily to set up. Each Vigor Router is available to register one domain name.

Choose **DrayDDNS (Global)** as the service provider, the web page will be displayed as follows:



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable Dynamic DNS Account	Check this box to enable the current account. If you did check the box, you will see a check mark appeared on the Active column of the previous web page in step 2).
Service Provider	Choose **DrayDDNS (Global)** as the service provider. **Wizard** – This button is available when DrayTek Global is selected as Service Provider. To activate the DrayTek's DDNS service, click it to enable license issued by DrayTek through **Wizards>>Service Activation Wizard**. Refer to secion **A-1 How to use DrayDDNS?** for detailed information.
Status	Display if the license is actvtaed or not.
Determine WAN IP	If a Vigor router is installed behind any NAT router, you can enable such function to locate the real WAN IP. When the WAN IP used by Vigor router is private IP, this function can detect the public IP used by the NAT router and use the detected IP address for DDNS update. There are two methods offered for you to choose: ● **WAN IP** - If it is selected and the WAN IP of Vigor router is private, DDNS update will take place right away. ● **Internet IP** – If it is selected and the WAN IP of Vigor router is private, it will be converted to public IP before DDNS update takes place.

WAN Interfaces	**WANx** - While connecting, the router will use WANx as the channel for such account.
Let's Encrypt certificate	**Create** –Click it to generate a certificate issued by Let's Encrypt for applying to such DDNS account. **Auto Update** – Check the box to make the system update the certificate automatically.

Disable the Function and Clear all Dynamic DNS Accounts

Uncheck **Enable Dynamic DNS Setup**, and click **Clear All** button to disable the function and clear all accounts from the router.

Delete a Dynamic DNS Account

Click the **Index** number you want to delete and then click **Clear All** button to delete the account.

DDNS updates take place when:

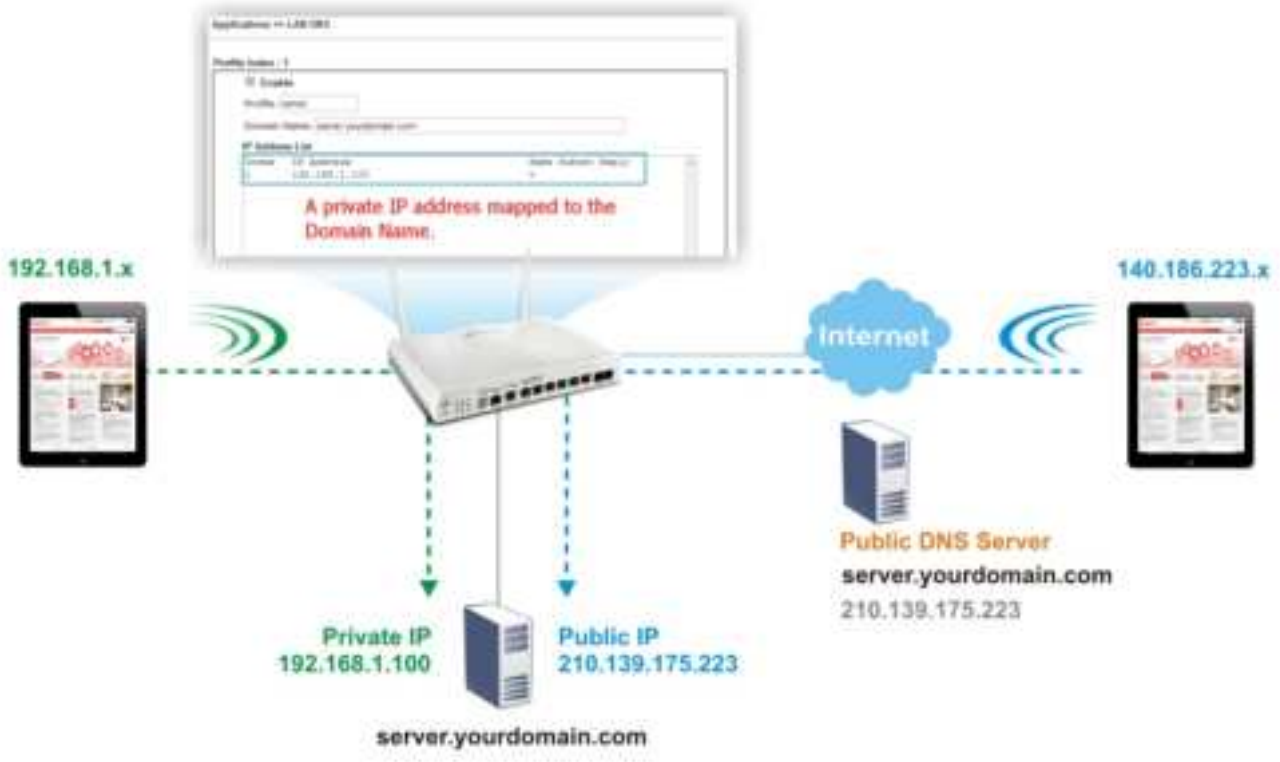
- The router is powered on or rebooted.
- The public IP address of any WAN interface changes.
- The online status of a WAN interface changes (going from online to offline or vice versa).
- The DDNS function is changed from disabled to enabled.
- A DDNS entry is modified and enabled.
- The Auto-Update Interval has elapsed.

Procedures for Setting up a Dynamic DNS Entry

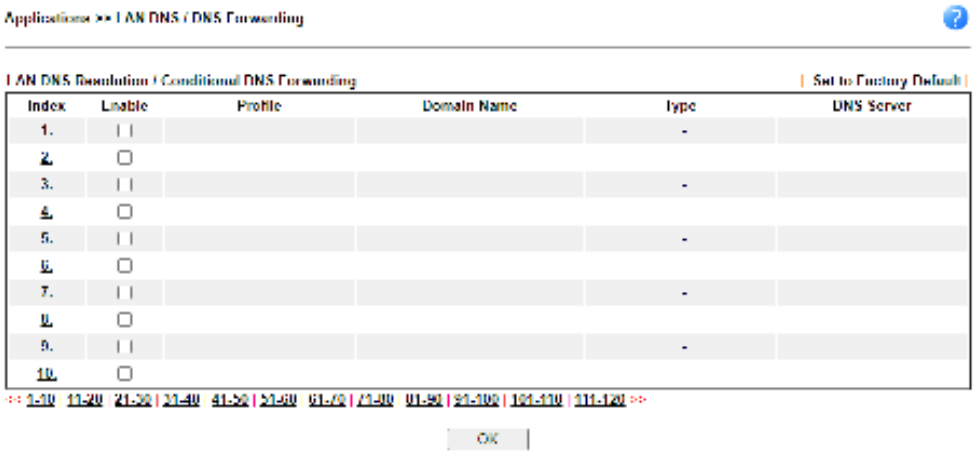
1. Contact the dynamic DNS provider of your choice and have service set up. Most DDNS providers accept signups on their websites. Service could be provided free of charge or for a fee.
2. Create a DDNS entry on the router by selecting the appropriate DDNS provider and enter the account information.
3. Make sure that both the DDNS entry and the DDNS feature are enabled on the router.
4. Click the View Log button on the DDNS main page to bring up the update log.
5. Examine the update log to make sure the update was successful.
6. If the update was not successful, verify the DDNS entry to make sure the settings are entered correctly.

II-5-2 LAN DNS / DNS Forwarding

LAN DNS lets the network administrators host servers with privacy and security. When the network administrators of your office set up FTP, Mail or Web server inside LAN, you can specify specific private IP address (es) to correspondent servers. Thus, even the remote PC is adopting public DNS as the DNS server, the LAN DNS resolution on Vigor2927 series will respond the specified private IP address.



To start configuring LAN DNS or DNS Forwarding, from the main menu, click **Applications**, followed by **LAN DNS** / **DNS Forwarding**.

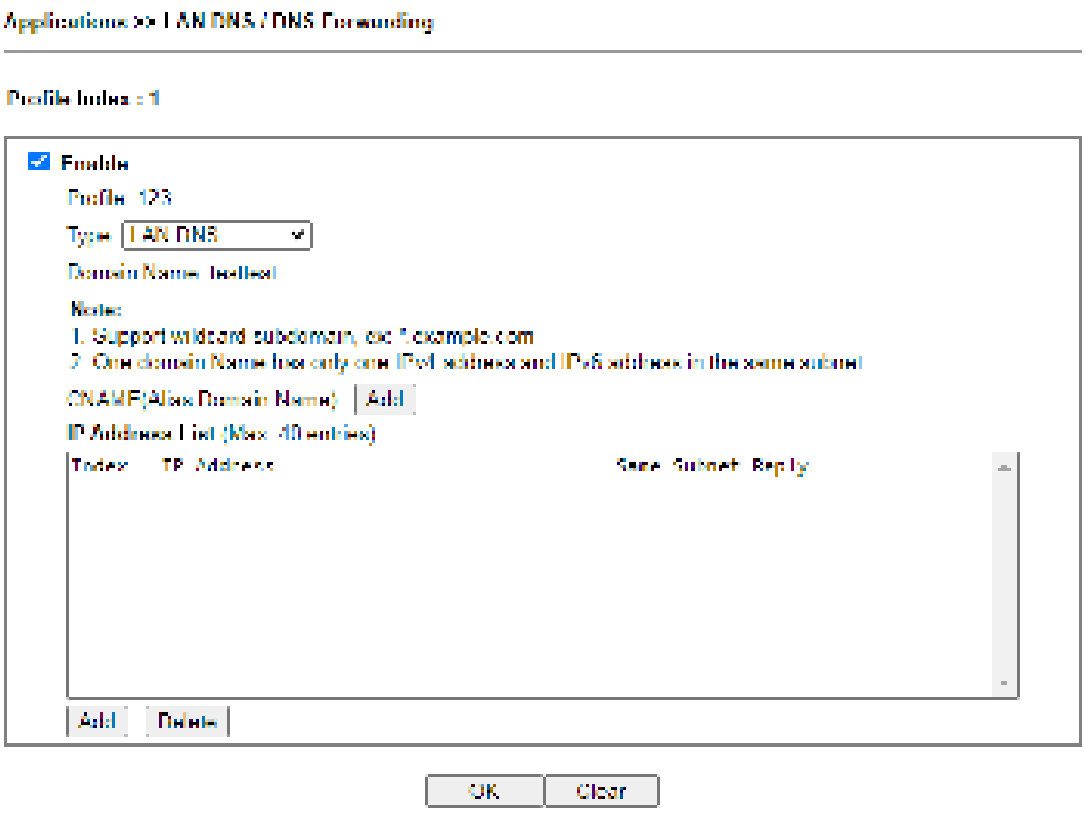


Each item is explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Click to clear all profiles to factory settings.
Index	Click to bring up the configuration page for the profile.

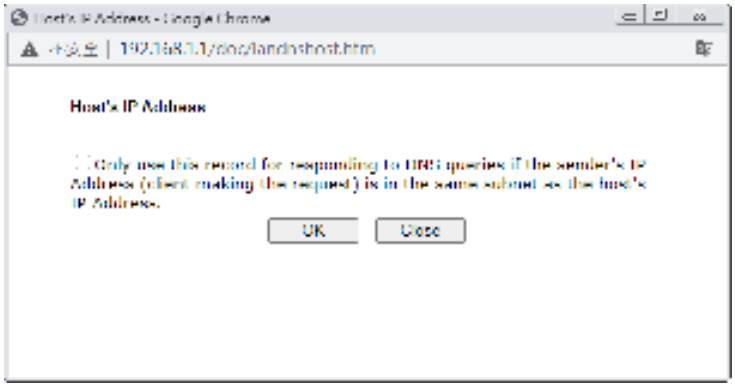
Enable	Select to enable this profile.
Profile	Shows the name of the profile.
Domain Name	Shows the domain name configured for the profile.
Type	Display the type (LAN DNS or DNS Forwarding) of the profile.
DNS Server	DNS server to which DNS queries for the specified domain name will be forwarded.

To configure a LAN DNS profile, click on its index to bring up the configuration page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Select to enable this profile.
Profile	Enter a name to identify this profile. **Note:** If you type a name here for LAN DNS and click **OK** to save the configuration, the name also will be applied to conditional DNS forwarding automatically.
Type	Choose LAN DNS or LAN Forwarding.
If LAN DNS is selected	**Domain Name -** Enter the domain name for the router to look for in DNS queries to intercept and reply to. Wildcards in the form of asterisks (*) can be used to match a domain level. For example, *.draytek.com will match domain names such as www.draytek.com and ftp.draytek.com, whereas www.draytek.* will match domain names such as www.draytek.com and www.draytek.co.uk. **CNAME -** Click **Add** to add an domain name alias for the domain name. Click Delete next to an alias entry to delete it.

	IP Address List - The IP address listed here will be used for mapping with the domain name specified above. In general, one domain name maps with one IP address. If required, you can configure two IP addresses mapping with the same domain name. **Add** –Click **Add** to bring up the Add IP Address dialog box:  ● **Host's IP Address –** Enter the IP address to be returned in response to a DNS query for the configured domain names and aliases. ● **Only responds to the DNS...** – Select to use this IP address only if the IP address of the source of the DNS query belongs to the same subnet as the host IP address entered above. After changes have been made, click **OK** to save and dismiss the dialog box, or **Close** to discard the changes and dismiss the dialog box. **Delete** –To delete an IP address, click on it and then click Delete.
If DNS Forwarding is selected	**Domain Name -** Enter the domain name for the router to look for in DNS queries to intercept and reply to. Wildcards in the form of asterisks (*) can be used to match a domain level. For example, *.draytek.com will match domain names such as www.draytek.com and ftp.draytek.com, whereas www.draytek.* will match domain names such as www.draytek.com and www.draytek.co.uk. **DNS Server IP Address -** Enter the IP address of the DNS server you want to use for DNS forwarding.

To save changes made to the LAN DNS profile, click **OK**. To clear the profile and restore the factory default blank values, click **Clear**.

II-5-3 DNS Security

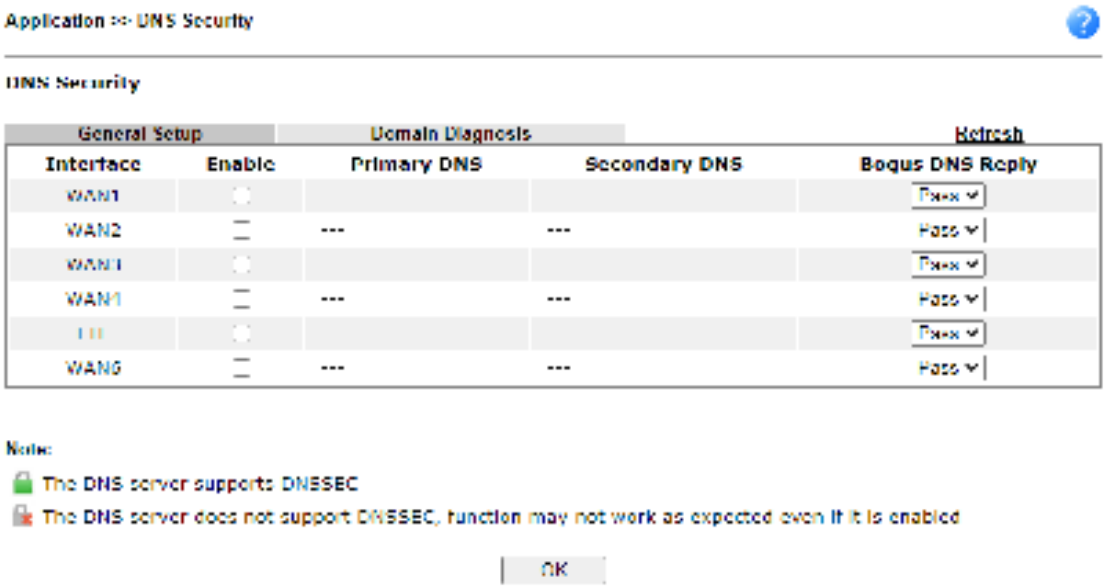
Domain Name System Security Extensions (DNSSEC) protects against DNS-based attacks by authenticating DNS responses from DNS resolvers.

The DNS servers must support DNS security validation for the feature to function properly.

To configure DNS security, from the main menu, click **Applications**, followed by **DNS Security**.

II-5-3-1 General Setup

All of WAN interfaces of Vigor router can be configured with DNS Security enabled respectively.



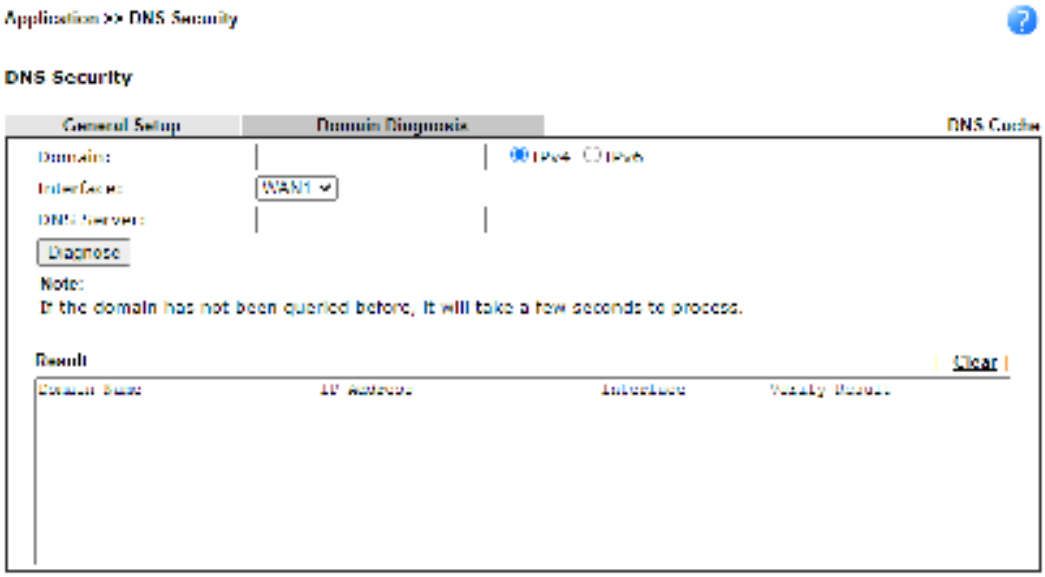
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Interface	The WAN interface name for which DNS security is to be configured.
Enable	Select to enable DNS security for this WAN Interface.
Primary DNS	Shows the primary DNS server IP address in effect for this WAN.
Secondary DNS	Shows the secondary DNS server IP address in effect for this WAN.
Bogus DNS Reply	Show action to be taken for DNS responses that fail authentication. Choose Pass or Drop. **Pass** – Pass DNS result. **Drop** – Do not pass DNS result.

Press **OK** to save changes.

II-5-3-2 Domain Diagnose

While using the Domain Diagnose feature, you can check to see if the router's DNS security function is working properly, or whether a given domain is secured by DNS security. Note that DNS Security has to be first enabled or the test results would not be meaningful.

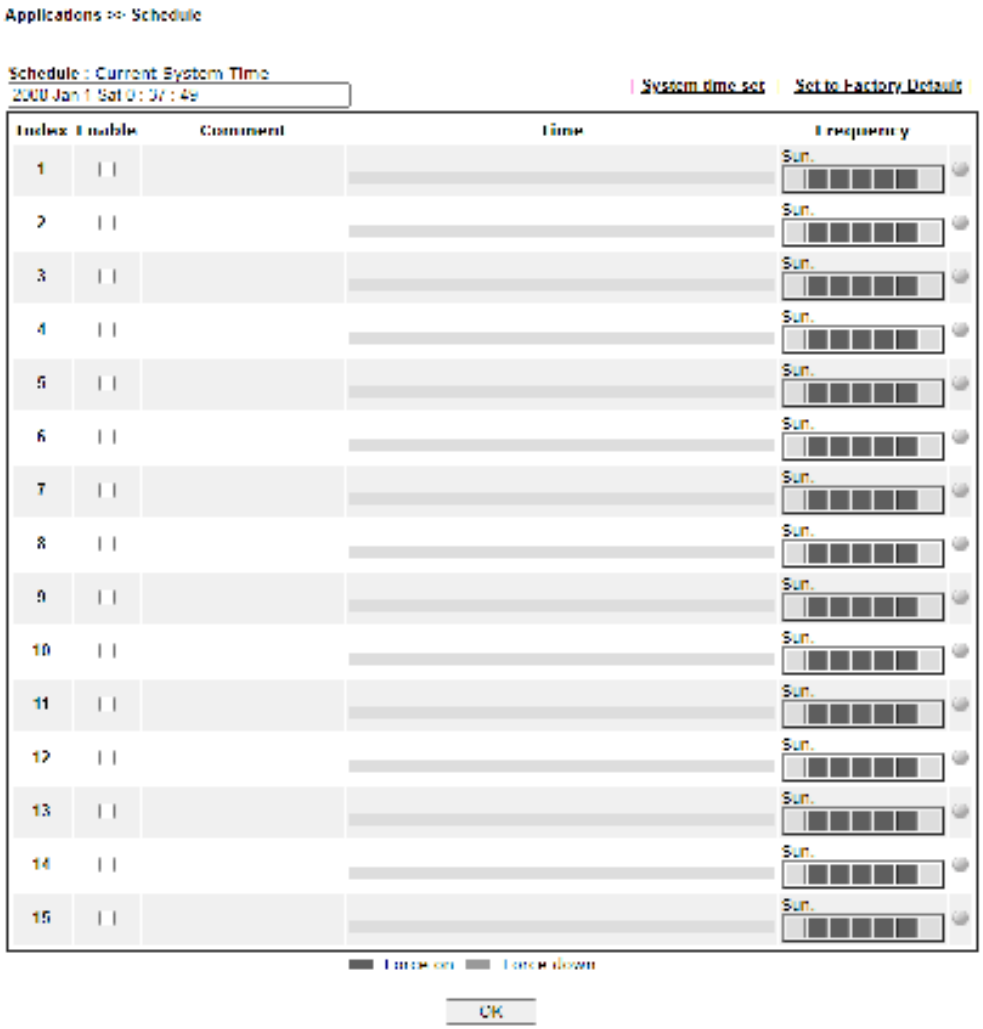


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Domain	Enter domain address to be diagnosed. Select the type of IP address to be looked up. IPv4 – looks up A records. IPv6 – looks up AAAA records.
Interface	Select the WAN port to be used for the lookup.
DNS Server	Enter the IPv4 address of the DNS server to be used for the lookup.
Diagnose	Click to begin DNS lookup.
Result	The history of domain diagnosis is shown in the Result panel.

II-5-4 Schedule

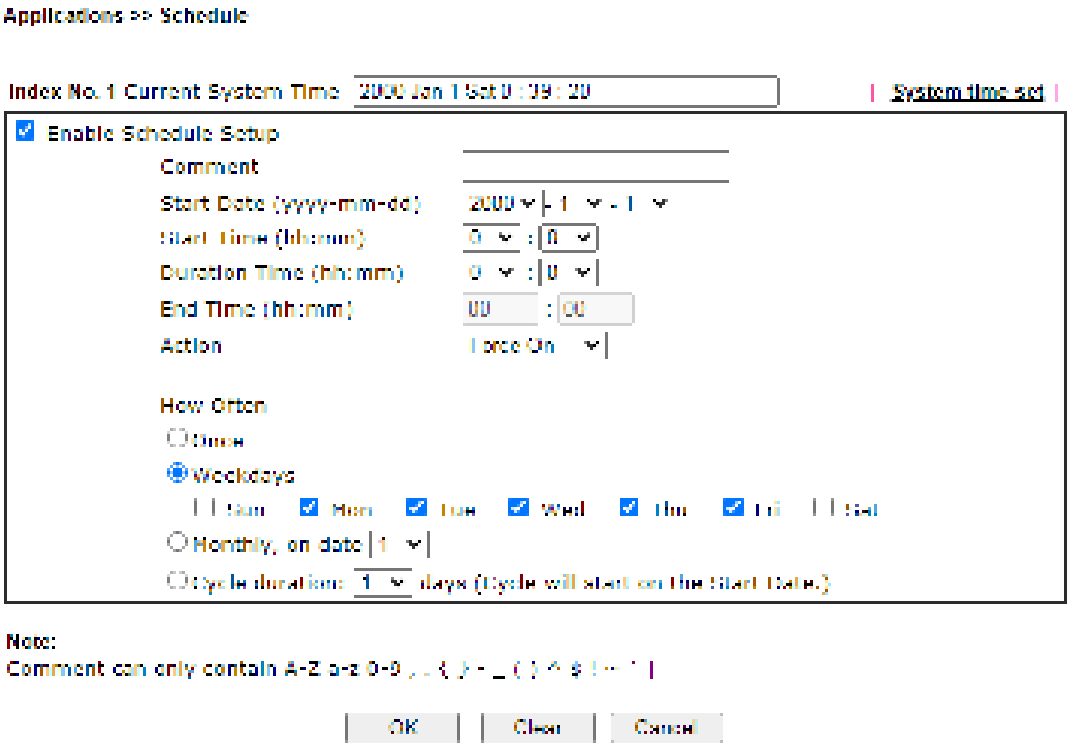
Time schedules can be created and used with router features that support them, so that those features can be turned on and off automatically at preconfigured times.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Current System Time	Shows the current time of the router.
System time set	Click to navigate to **System Maintenance >> Time and Date** to set the system time and date.
Set to Factory Default	Reset all schedules to factory default values.
Index	Shows the index number of the schedule entry.
Enable	Select to enable the schedule; clear to disable it.
Comment	Shows the name given to the schedule.
Time	Shows the start and end times of the schedule. The time interval of the schedule is indicated in dark grey.
Frequency	Shows the days of the week configured for the schedule. Selected days are shown in dark grey. - If it lights in green, it means such schedule is active.

To configure a schedule, click on its index to bring up the settings page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable Schedule Setup	Select to enable the schedule; clear to disable it.
Comment	Name to identify this schedule entry.
Start Date (yyyy-mm-dd)	The date when the entry comes into effect.
Start Time (hh:mm)	The time when the schedule is triggered. See the **How Often** setting below for details.
Duration Time (hh:mm)	How long the action lasts when the scheduled is triggered.
End Time (hh:mm)	It will be calculated automatically when Start Time and Duration Time are configured well.
Action	Action to take when the schedule is triggered. **Force On** - The feature with which this schedule is associated will be turned on. **Force Down** - The feature with which this schedule is associated will be turned off.
How Often	How frequently the schedule is triggered. ● **Once** - The schedule is triggered once, on the **Start Date** at the **Start Time**, for the **Duration Time**. ● **Weekdays** - The schedule will be triggered repeatedly, starting on the **Start Date** at the **Start Time**, on the selected days of the week, at the **Start Time**, for the **Duration Time**. ● **Monthly, on date** – The router will only execute the action applied such schedule on the date (1 to 28) of a month. ● **Cycle duration** – Type a number as cycle duration. Then, any action applied such schedule will be

	executed per several days. For example, “3” is selected as cycle duration. That means, the action applied such schedule will be executed every three days since the date defined on the Start Date.

To save changes made to the Schedule, click **OK**. To clear the schedule and restore the factory default blank values, click **Clear**. To cancel the changes and return to the main Schedule page, click **Cancel**.

Example

Suppose you want to control the PPPoE Internet access connection to be always on (Force On) from 9:00 to 18:00 for whole week. Other time the Internet access connection should be disconnected (Force Down).

Office Hour:

(Force On)

Mon - Sun **9:00 am** **to** **6:00 pm**

1. Make sure the PPPoE connection and **Time Setup** is working properly.
2. Configure the PPPoE always on from 9:00 to 18:00 for whole week.
3. Configure the **Force Down** from 18:00 to next day 9:00 for whole week.
4. Assign these two profiles to the PPPoE Internet access profile. Now, the PPPoE Internet connection will follow the schedule order to perform **Force On** or **Force Down** action according to the time plan that has been pre-defined in the schedule profiles.

II-5-5 RADIUS/TACACS+

Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) is a security authentication client/server protocol that supports authentication, authorization and accounting, which is widely used by Internet service providers. It is the most common method of authenticating and authorizing dial-up and tunneled network users.

The router supports external TACACS+ and internal and external RADIUS servers for user authentication. Services that require user authentication include WLAN and VPN.

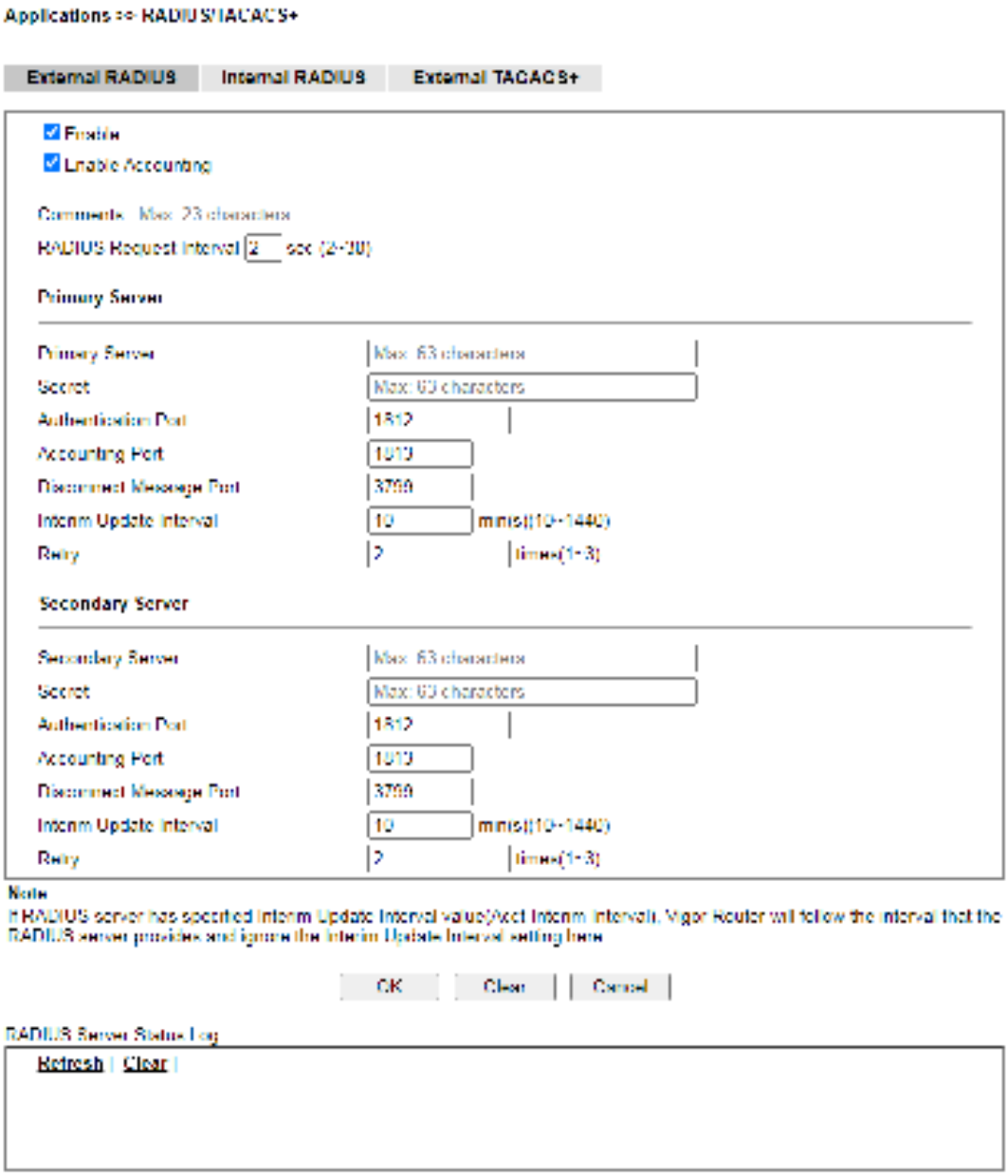
To configure RADIUS or TACACS+ servers, from the Main Menu select **Applications >> RADIUS/TACACS+**.

II-5-5-1 External RADIUS

The built-in RADIUS client feature enables the router to assist the remote dial-in user or a wireless station and the RADIUS server in performing mutual authentication. It enables centralized remote access authentication for network management.

Vigor router can be operated as a RADIUS client. This web page is used to configure settings for external RADIUS server. Then LAN users of Vigor router will be authenticated and accounted by such server for network application.

Select External RADIUS to configure the router to use an external RADIUS server for user authentication.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check to enable RADIUS client profile. **Comments** - Enter a brief description for this profile. **RADIUS Request Interval** - Set a timeout value for the router waiting for a response from the RADIUS server. If no response, Vigor router will send the authentication request again. **Enable Accounting -** RADIUS Accounting is a network customer billing mechanism for RADIUS server. If enabled, Vigor router will deliver accounting request (e.g., IP address, traffic from the client) to the specified RADIUS server periodically. ● **Accounting Port -** Set the UDP port number (1813 in default) as the accounting port. ● **Disconnect Message Port -** Set a UDP port number (3799 in default) for receiving the

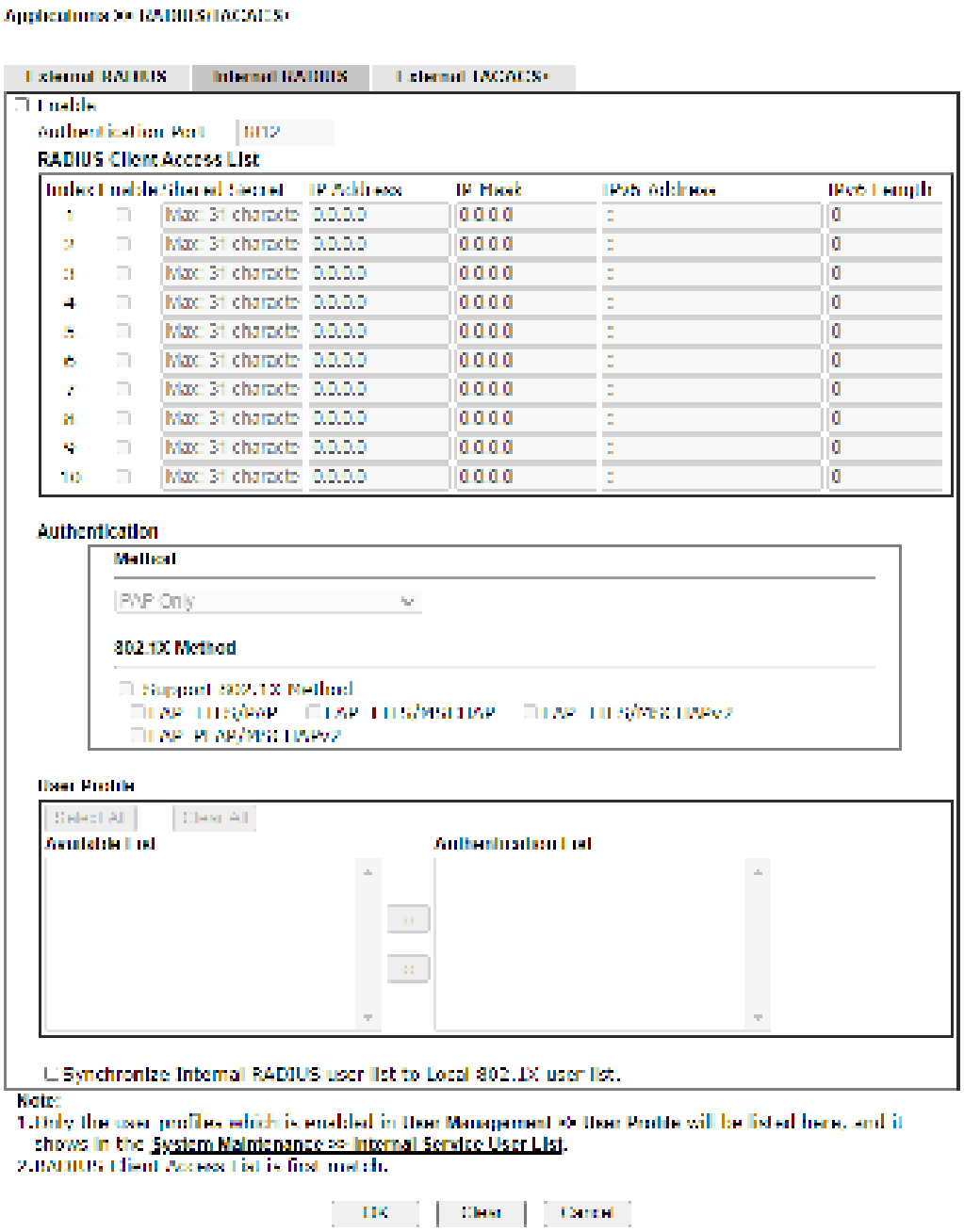
	disconnected-request packets from the AAA server. Note that these packets have been accepted by the RADIUS server before being disconnected by the AAA server. ● **Interim Update Interval -** Set a value (10 minutes in default). It indicates the time between each transmittal of an interim update for a specific session.
Primary Server	**Primary Server** - Enter the IP address of RADIUS server. **Secret** - The RADIUS server and client share a secret that is used to authenticate the messages sent between them. Both sides must be configured to use the same shared secret. The maximum length of the shared secret you can set is 36 characters. **Authentication Port** - The UDP port number that the RADIUS server is using. The default value is 1812, based on RFC 2138. **Retry** - Set the number of attempts to perform reconnection with RADIUS server. If the connection (with the Primary Server) still fails, stop the connection attempt and begin to make connection with the secondary server.
Secondary Server	**Secondary Server** - Enter the IP address of RADIUS server. **Secret** - The RADIUS server and client share a secret that is used to authenticate the messages sent between them. Both sides must be configured to use the same shared secret. The maximum length of the shared secret you can set is 36 characters. **Authentication Port** - The UDP port number that the RADIUS server is using. The default value is 1812, based on RFC 2138. **Retry** - Set the number of attempts to perform reconnection. If the connection (with the Secondary Server) still fails, stop the connection attempt. The client authentication would be determined as "failed".
RADIUS Server Status Log	Display the record of current status of RADIUS server.

To save changes on the page, click **OK**. To discard changes, click **Cancel**. To reset all settings to blank, click **Clear**.

II-5-5-2 Internal RADIUS

Except for being a built-in RADIUS client, Vigor router also can be operated as a RADIUS server which performs security authentication by itself. This page is used to configure settings for internal RADIUS server. Then LAN user of Vigor router will be authenticated by Vigor router directly.

Select Internal RADIUS to configure the router's built-in RADIUS server.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Select to enable the router's internal RADIUS server.
Authentication Port	The UDP port for authentication messages.
RADIUS Client Access List	Only clients that meet the criteria configured in the access list are allowed to access the RADIUS server. **Enable** - Select to enable this client entry. **Shared Secret** - A text string that is known to both the router's RADIUS server and the RADIUS client that is used to authenticate messages sent between them. Maximum length is 36 characters. **IP Address** - Base address of the IP block. **IP Mask** - Enter the IP mask to configure the size of the IP

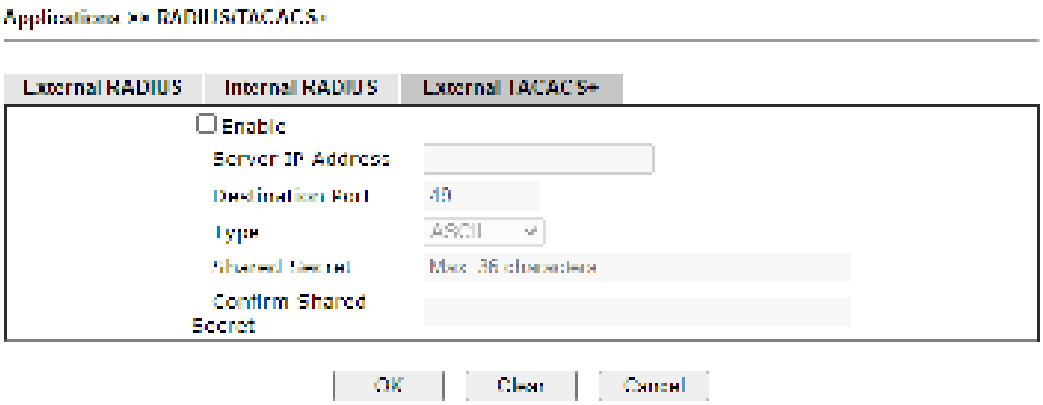
	block. **IPv6 Address** - Base address of the IPv6 block. **IPv6 Length** - The prefix length of the IPv6 block.
Authentication	Configures the authentication settings. Specify the way to authenticate the wireless client. **PAP** – Only the Password Authentication Protocol will be used to validate users. **PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP/MS-CHAPv2** – PAP, CHAP (Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol), and Microsoft versions of CHAP can be used to validate users. **Support 802.1X Method** – The built in RADIUS server offered by Vigor router can act as the AAA server. Select to enable 802.1X support.
User Profile	During the process of security authentication, user account and user password will be required for identity authentication. Before configuring such page, create at least one user profile in **User Management>>User Profile** first. **Select All** – Click to move all user profiles under the Available List to the Authentication List. **Clear All** - Click to remove all user profiles from the Authentication List. **Available List** – The user profiles **without** RADIUS server enabled in **User Management >> User Profile** will be listed in this field. **Authentication List** –The user profiles with RADIUS server enabled in **User Management >> User Profile** will be listed in this field.
Synchronize Internal RADIUS user list to Local 802.1X user list	Users can be authenticated by RADIUS server and local 802.1X to get certain network service. It is not necessary to create new user profiles (containing user accounts and user passwords) for RADIUS and local 802.1X respectively. Simply select to update the 802.1X authentication list to match the RADIUS authentication list.

To add a User Profile to the RADIUS server, select it under **Available List**, then click the >> button. To remove a User Profile from the RADIUS server, select it under **Selected Authentication List**, then click the << button.

To save changes on the page, click **OK**. To discard changes, click **Cancel**. To reset all settings to blank, click **Clear**.

II-5-5-3 External TACACS+

It means Terminal Access Controller Access-Control System Plus. It works like RADIUS does. Click the **External TACACS+** to open the following page:



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Select to enable the use of an external TACACS+ server.
Server IP Address	The IP address of the TACACS+ server.
Destination Port	The port used by the TACACS+ server. Port 49 is most common.
Shared Secret	A text string that is known to both the TACACS+ server and client (the router) that is used to authenticate messages sent between them. Maximum length is 36 characters.
Confirm Shared Secret	Enter the shared secret again for verification.

To save changes on the page, click **OK**. To discard changes, click **Cancel**. To reset all settings to blank, click **Clear**.

II-5-6 Active Directory/LDAP

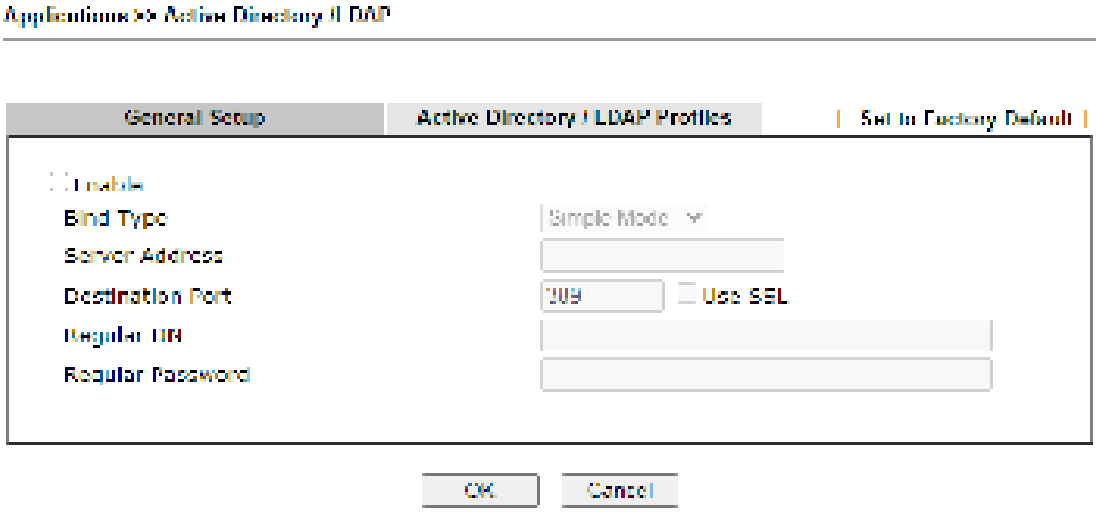
Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is an industry-standard protocol for maintaining and accessing directory information on a network. When used in conjunction with a Vigor router, LDAP can be used to authenticate VPN connection attempts.

Active Directory (AD) is a directory service from Microsoft that supports LDAP queries.

To configure Active Directory or LDAP settings, from the Main Menu select **Applications >> Active Directory / LDAP**.

II-5-6-1 General Setup

To configure the settings for the LDAP server, select **General Setup**.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Select to enable LDAP client.
Bind Type	Select from one of 3 bind types: ● **Simple Mode** – Initiate bind operation (authentication) without performing user search. This mode can be used when all users belong to the same branch in the LDAP structure. ● **Anonymous** – Bind anonymously, without supplying the distinguished name (DN) and password, and perform user search. This mode can be used when not all users belong to the same branch and the server allows anonymous searches. ● **Regular Mode** – Same as Anonymous mode, except that the DN and password are sent to the server. This mode can be used when not all users belong to the same branch and the server does not allow anonymous searches. For the regular mode, you'll need to Enter the **Regular DN** and **Regular Password**.
Server Address	The network address of the LDAP server.
Destination Port	The network port that the LDAP server listens on. The default ports are 389 for unsecured connections and 636 for LDAPS (LDAP over SSL) connections.

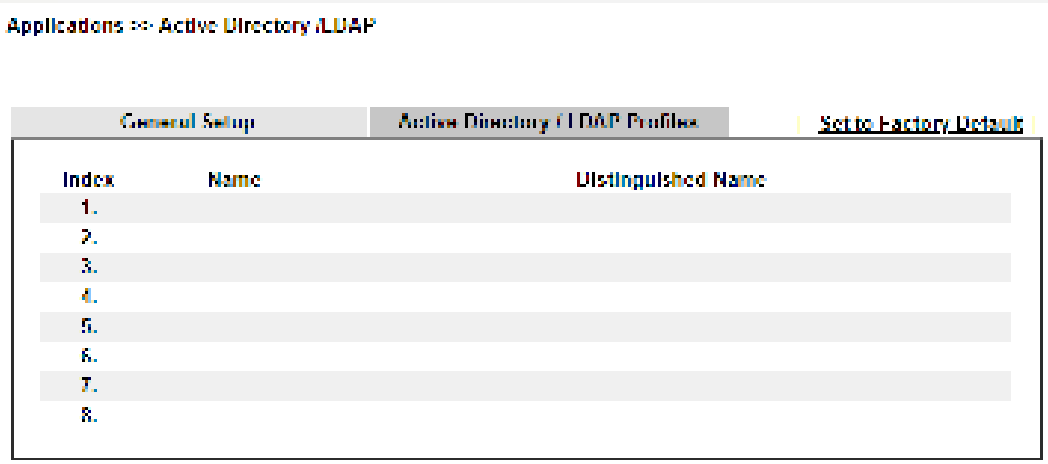
Use SSL	Select to use Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) for LDAP traffic.
Regular DN	Enter the LDAP Distinguished Name for authentication if **Bind Type** is set to **Regular Mode**.
Regular Password	Enter the LDAP Password for authentication if **Bind Type** is set to **Regular Mode**.

To save changes on the page, select **OK**; to discard changes, select **Cancel**.

II-5-6-2 Active Directory / LDAP Profiles

Up to 8 LDAP profiles can be created. These profiles would be used with User Management for different purposes in management.

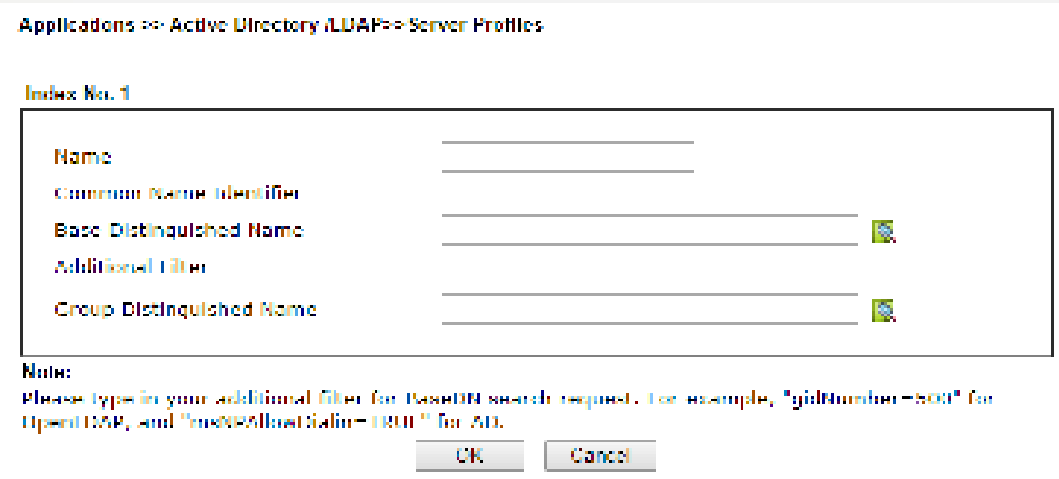
Click on the Active Directory / LDAP Profiles to bring up the index page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Index	The index of the LDAP profile. Click to show the profile settings page.
Name	Displays the user-defined name that identifies this entry.
Distinguished Name	Displays the distinguished name (DN) configured in the profile.

To configure an LDAP profile, click on its index to show the following settings page.



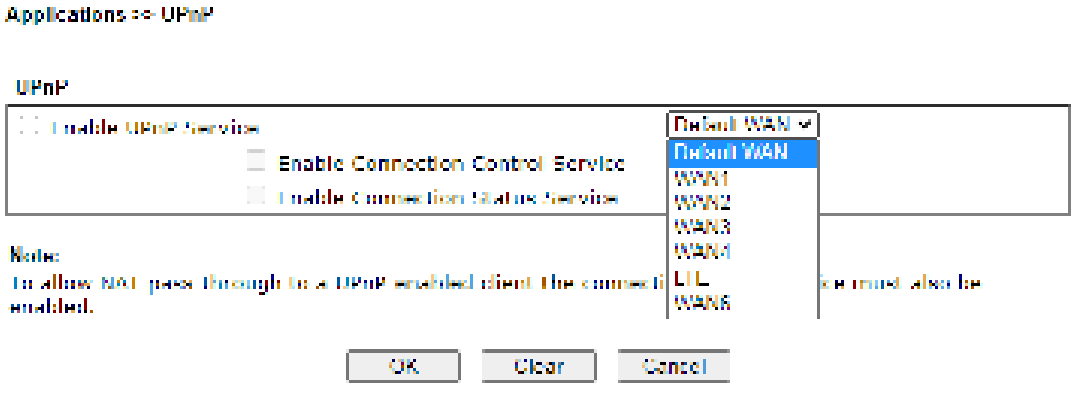
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Name	Name that identifies this profile. Maximum length is 19 characters.
Common Name Identifier	The common name attribute, which is typically “cn” in most LDAP configurations.
Base Distinguished Name	The starting point of user search in the LDAP directory, for example, dc=draytek,dc=com. – click this icon to display a list of valid DNs in the LDAP directory.
Additional Filter	Additional filter to be applied to the search request to identify eligible users. For example, – “OpenLDAP: (gidNumber=500)” Here group ID 500 is the group of dial-in users. – “ActiveDirectory: (msNPAllowDialin=TRUE)” The msNPAllowDialin attribute indicates that the user has permission to dial in remotely.
Group Distinguished Name	The base DN of the tree in the LDAP directory that contains groups, for example, ou=groups,dc=draytek,dc=com. - click this icon to display a list of valid DNs in the LDAP directory.

To save changes on the page, select **OK**; to discard changes, select **Cancel**.

II-5-7 UPnP

To configure UPnP settings, from the Main Menu select **Applications >> UPnP**.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable UPNP Service	Select to enable UPnP.

Default WAN	Select the WAN port on which ports will be opened in response to UPnP commands.
Enable Connection Control Service	Select to enable the connection control service.
Enable Connection Status Service	Select to enable the connection status service.

To save changes on the page, select **OK**; to discard changes, select **Cancel**; to revert all settings to the factory default, select **Clear**.

The reminder as regards concern about Firewall and UPnP:

Can't work with Firewall Software

Enabling firewall applications on your PC may cause the UPnP function not working properly. This is because these applications will block the accessing ability of some network ports.

Security Considerations

Activating UPnP allows any application or network devices to open ports on the WAN side to allow connections to the LAN, which could compromise network security. Also if UPnP applications or network devices malfunction or terminate abnormally, the opened ports may remain open indefinitely, and thus increasing the chance of it getting exploited by malicious parties.

If you do not have applications or network devices which requires UPnP, you are advised to disable UPnP.

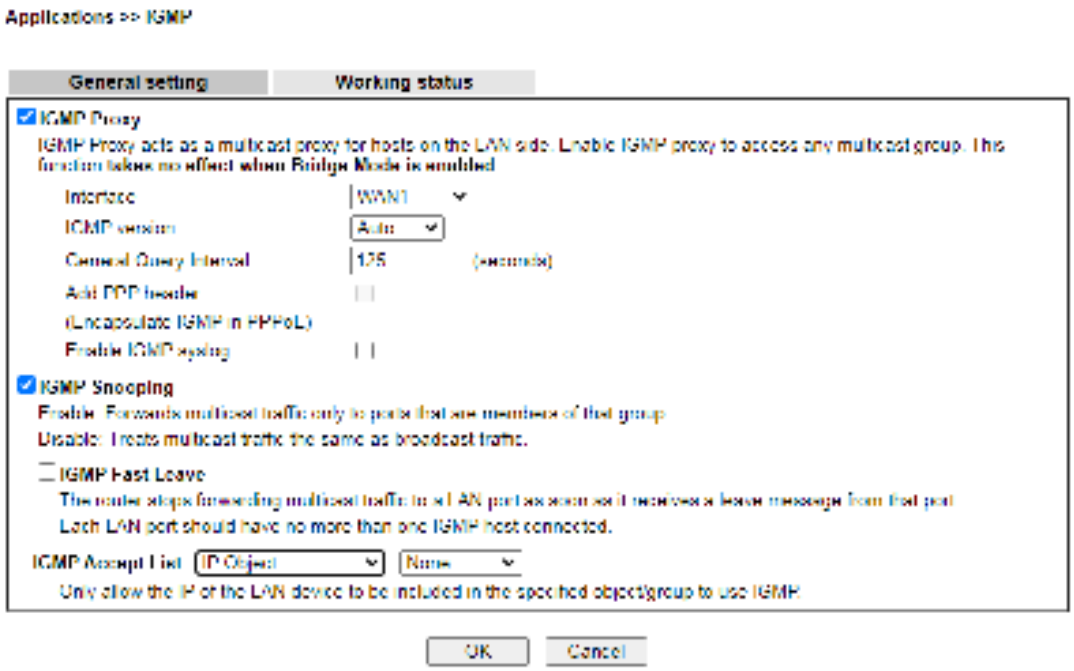
Info	UPnP is required for some applications such as PPS, Skype, eMule...and etc. If you are not familiar with UPnP, it is suggested to turn off this function for security.

II-5-8 IGMP

Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) is an IPv4 communication protocol for establishing multicast group memberships.

To configure IGMP settings, from the Main Menu select **Applications >> IGMP**.

II-5-8-1 General Setting



Available settings are explained as follows:

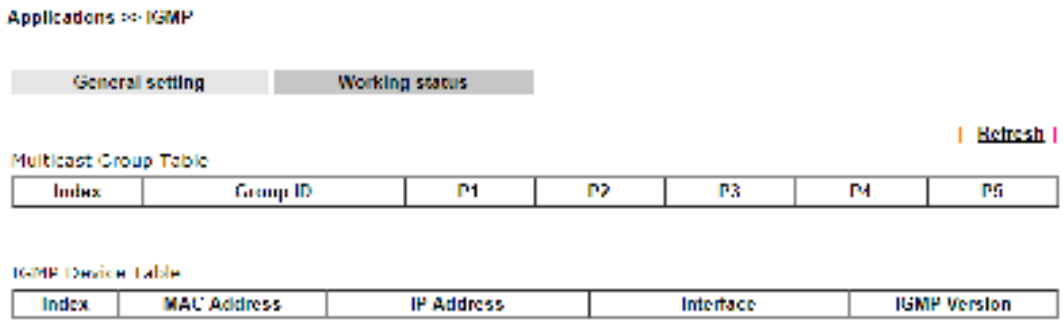
Item	Description
IGMP Proxy	Check this box to enable this function. The application of multicast will be executed through WAN /PVC/VLAN port. In addition, such function is available in NAT mode. **Interface** – Specify an interface for packets passing through. **IGMP version** – At present, two versions (v2 and v3) are supported by Vigor router. Choose the correct version based on the IPTV service you subscribe. **General Query Interval** – Vigor router will periodically check which IP obtaining IPTV service by sending query. It might cause inconvenience for client. Therefore, set a suitable time (unit: second) as the query interval to limit the frequency of query sent by Vigor router. **Add PPP header** – Check this box if the interface type for IGMP is PVC/VLAN. It depends on the specifications regulated by each ISP. If you have no idea to enable or disable, simply contact your ISP providers. **Enable IGMP syslog** - Check the box to store the IGMP status onto Syslog.

IGMP Snooping	Select to enable IGMP Snooping so that multicast traffic are forwarded to IGMP clients that have joined a multicast group.
IGMP Fast Leave	This option is shown only when IGMP Snooping is enabled. Select to enable IGMP Fast Leave. Normally when the router receives a “leave” message from an IGMP host, it will send a last member query message to see if there are still members within the multicast group. When Fast Leave is enabled, multicast for a group is immediately terminated when the last host in that group sends a “leave” message.
IGMP Accept List	Select IP Object or IP Group. Only the IP of the LAN device within the IP object / IP group will be allowed to use IGMP.

To save changes on the page, select **OK**; to discard changes, select **Cancel**.

II-5-8-2 Working Status

Displays a list of active multicast groups.



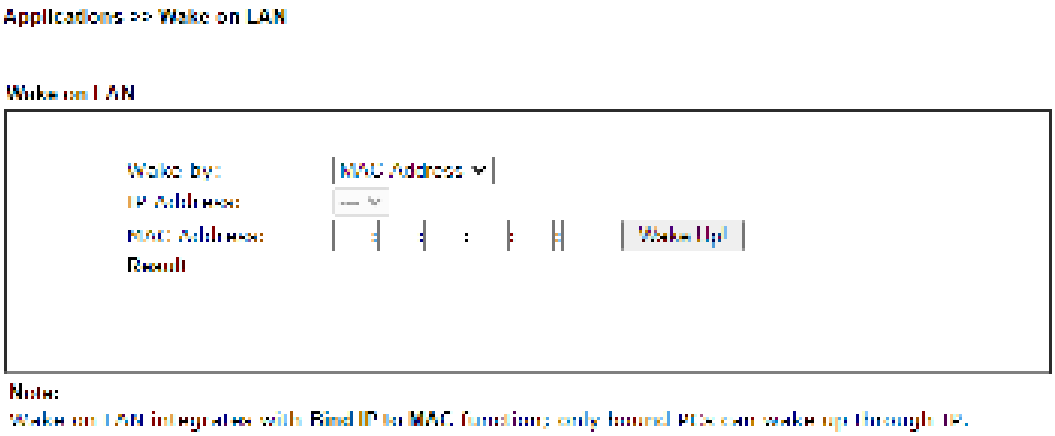
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Refresh	Click to reload the Multicast Group Table with the latest information.
Index	Index number of the multicast group.
Group ID	ID port of the multicast group, which is within the IP range reserved for IGMP, 224.0.0.0 through 239.255.255.254.
P1 to P5	LAN ports that have IGMP hosts joined to this multicast group.

II-5-9 Wake on LAN

If you wish to be able to select the IP address of the Wake-on-LAN client, its MAC address must first be bound to a static IP address using the Bind IP to MAC function (see section 8.5 Bind IP to MAC).

To configure Wake on LAN settings, from the Main Menu select **Applications >> Wake on LAN**.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Wake by	Two types provide for you to wake up the binded IP. ● If you choose Wake by **MAC Address**, you have to Enter the correct MAC address of the host in MAC Address boxes. ● If you choose **Wake by IP Address**, you have to choose the correct IP address.
IP Address	The IP addresses that have been configured in **Firewall>>Bind IP to MAC** will be shown in this drop down list. Choose the IP address from the drop down list that you want to wake up.
MAC Address	Type any one of the MAC address of the bound PCs.
Wake Up	Click this button to wake up the selected IP. See the following figure. The result will be shown on the box.
Result	Result of the transmission of the Wake-on-LAN message.

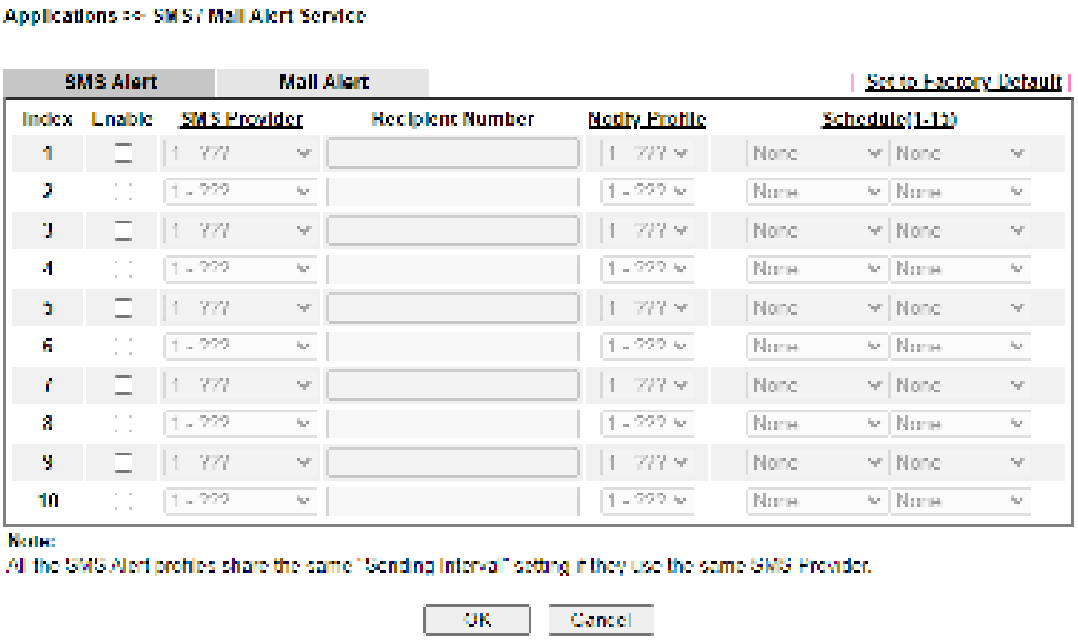
II-5-10 SMS / Mail Alert Service

The function of SMS (Short Message Service)/Mail Alert is that Vigor router sends a message to user's mobile or e-mail box through specified service provider to assist the user knowing the real-time abnormal situations.

Vigor router allows you to set up to **10** SMS profiles which will be sent out according to different conditions.

II-5-10-1 SMS Alert

This page allows you to specify SMS provider, who will get the SMS, what the content is and when the SMS will be sent.



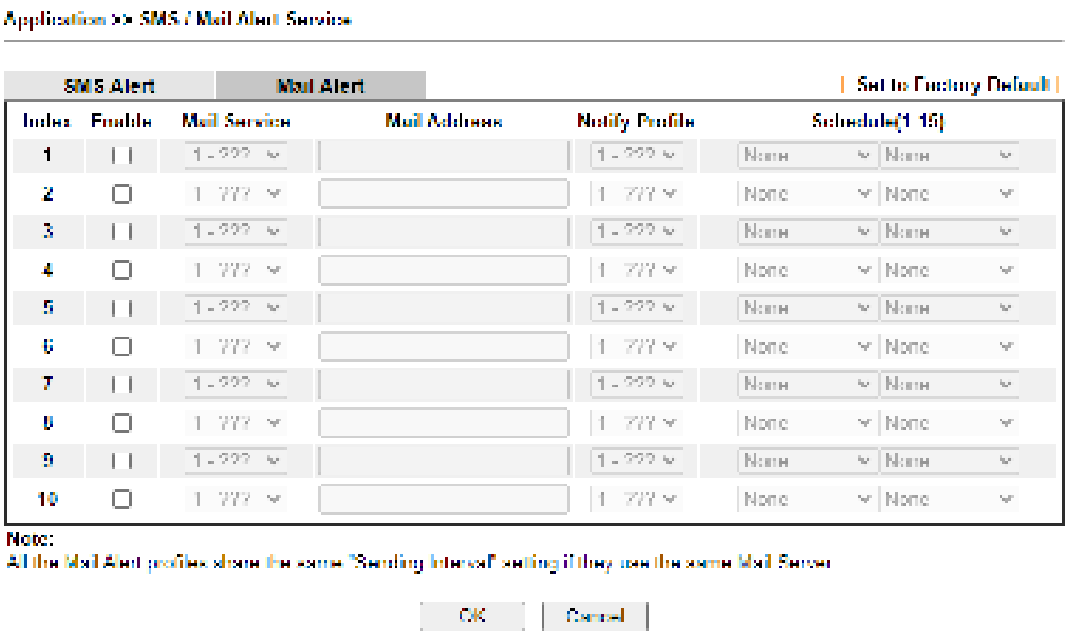
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check the box to enable or disable the profile.
SMS Provider	Use the drop down list to choose SMS service provider. You can click **SMS Provider** link to define the SMS server.
Recipient Number	Enter the phone number of the one who will receive the SMS.
Notify Profile	Use the drop down list to choose a message profile. The recipient will get the content stated in the message profile. You can click the **Notify Profile** link to define the content of the SMS.
Schedule (1-15)	Enter the schedule number that the SMS will be sent out. You can click the **Schedule(1-15)** link to define the schedule.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

II-5-10-2 Mail Alert

This page allows you to specify Mail Server profile, who will get the notification e-mail, what the content is and when the message will be sent.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check the box to enable / disable this profile.
Mail Service	Use the drop down list to choose mail service object. All of the available objects are created in **Object Settings>>SMS/Mail Service Object**. If there is no object listed, click **Mail Service** link to define a new one with specified service provider.
Mail Address	Enter the e-mail address of the one who will receive the notification message.
Notify Profile	Use the drop down list to choose a message profile. The recipient will get the content stated in the message profile. You can click the **Notify Profile** link to define the content of the mail message.
Schedule (1-15)	Enter the schedule number that the notification will be sent out. You can click the **Schedule(1-15)** link to define the schedule.

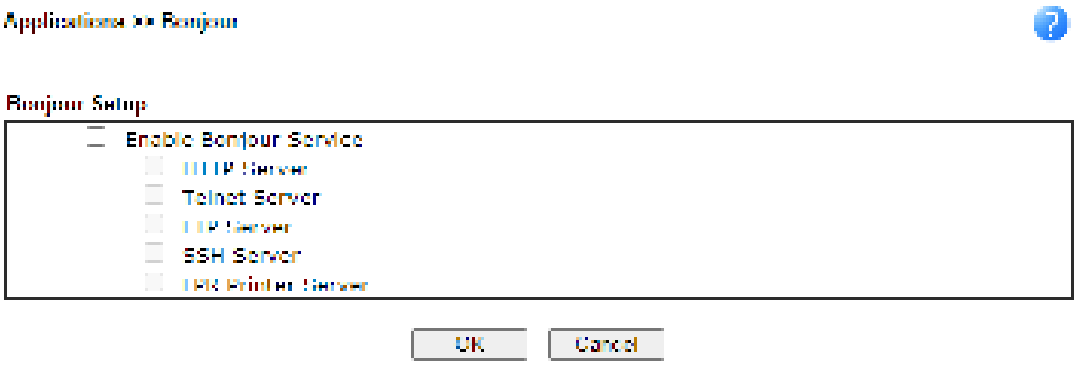
After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

II-5-11 Bonjour

Bonjour is a service discovery protocol which is a built-in service in Mac OS X; for Windows or Linux platform, there is correspondent software to enable this function for free.

Usually, users have to configure the router or personal computers to use above services. Sometimes, the configuration (e.g., IP settings, port number) is complicated and not easy to complete. The purpose of Bonjour is to decrease the settings configuration (e.g., IP setting). If the host and user's computer have the plug-in bonjour driver install, they can utilize the service offered by the router by clicking the router name icon. In short, what the Clients/users need to know is the name of the router only.

To enable the Bonjour service, click **Application>>Bonjour** to open the following page. Check the box(es) of the server service(s) that you want to share to the LAN clients.

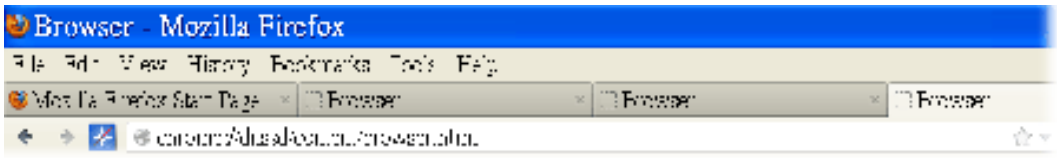


Available settings are explained as follows:

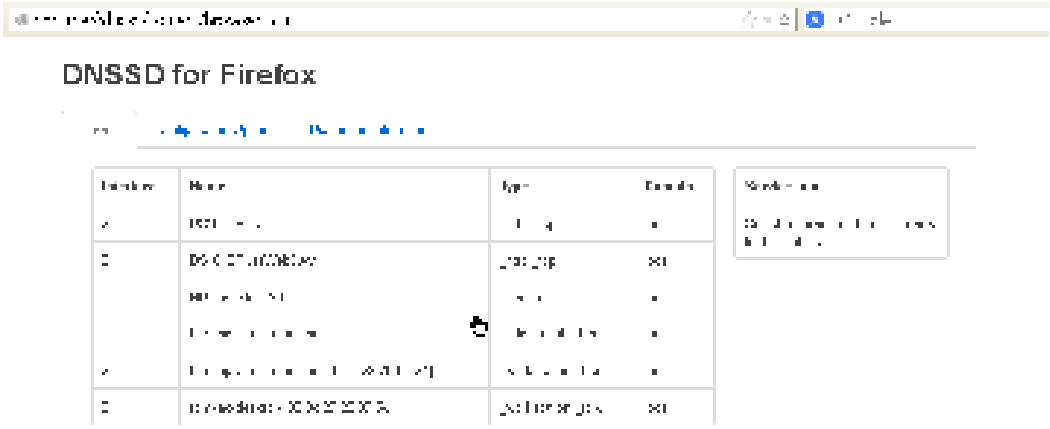
Item	Description
Enable Bonjour Service	Select to enable the Bonjour service on the router. The rest of the checkboxes will be enabled for selection when this checkbox has been selected.
HTTP Server	Select to allow the router's HTTP server to be discovered via Bonjour.
Telnet Server	Select to allow the router's telnet server to be discovered via Bonjour.
FTP Server	Select to allow the router's FTP server to be discovered via Bonjour.
SSH Server	Select to allow the router's SSH server to be discovered via Bonjour.
LPR Print Server	Select to allow the router's LPR server to be discovered via Bonjour. This allows printers attached to the router's USB ports to be discovered.

Below shows an example for applying the bonjour feature that Vigor router can be used as the FTP server.

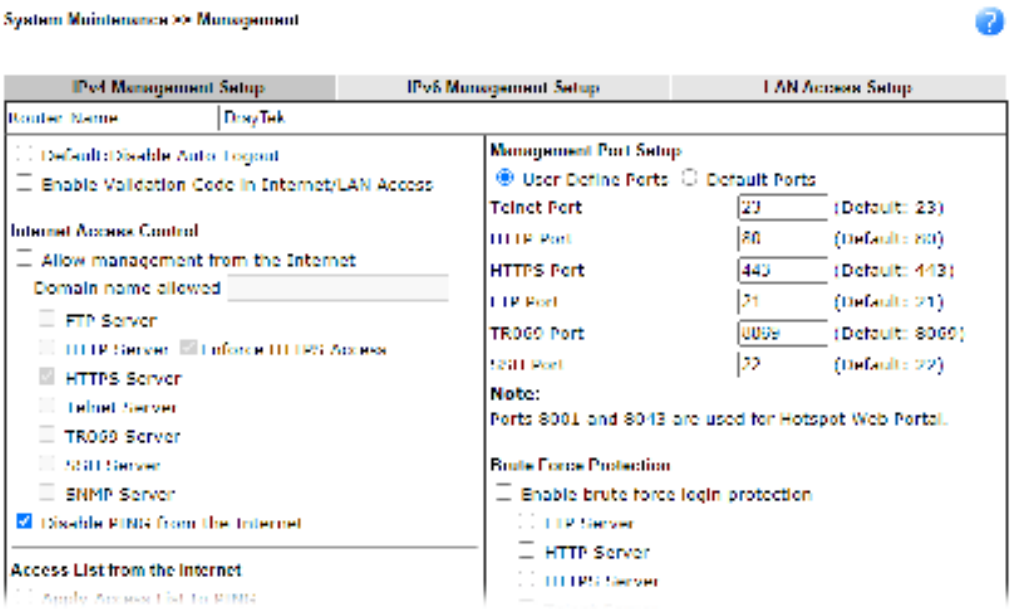
1. Here, we use Firefox and DNSSD to discover the service in such case. Therefore, just ensure the Bonjour client program and DNSSD for Firefox have been installed on the computer.



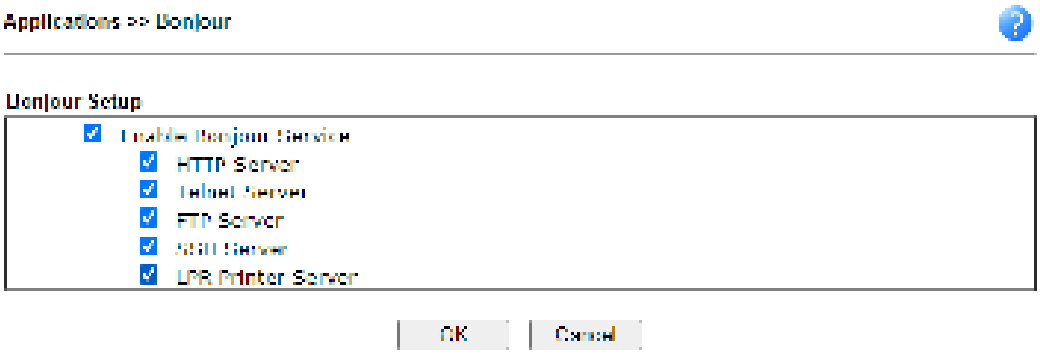
2. Open the web browse, Firefox. If Bonjour and DNSSD have been installed, you can open the web page (DNSSD) and see the following results.



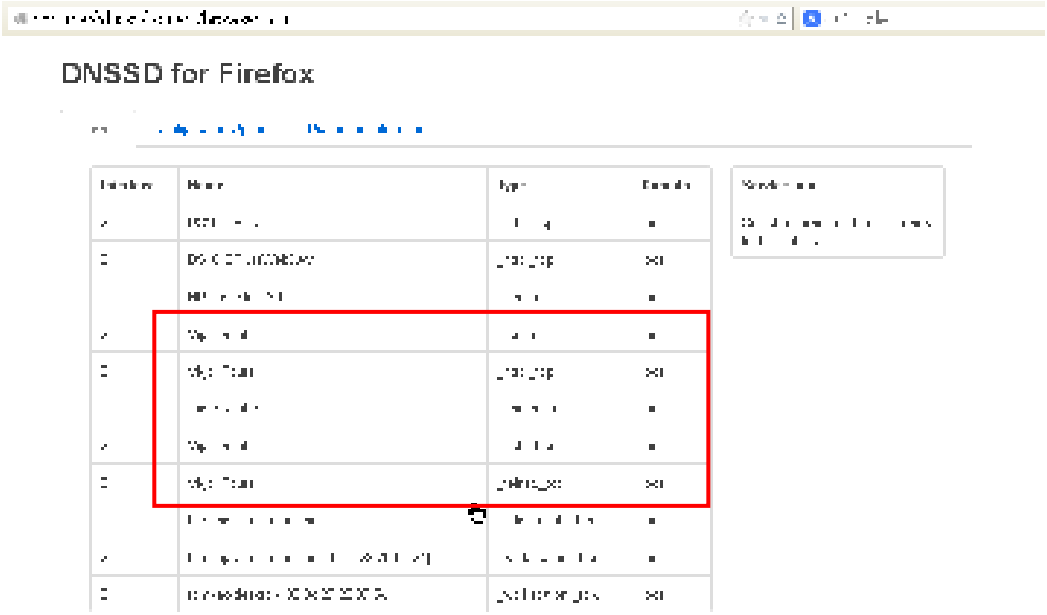
3. Open **System Maintenance>>Management**. Type a name as the Router Name and click **OK**.



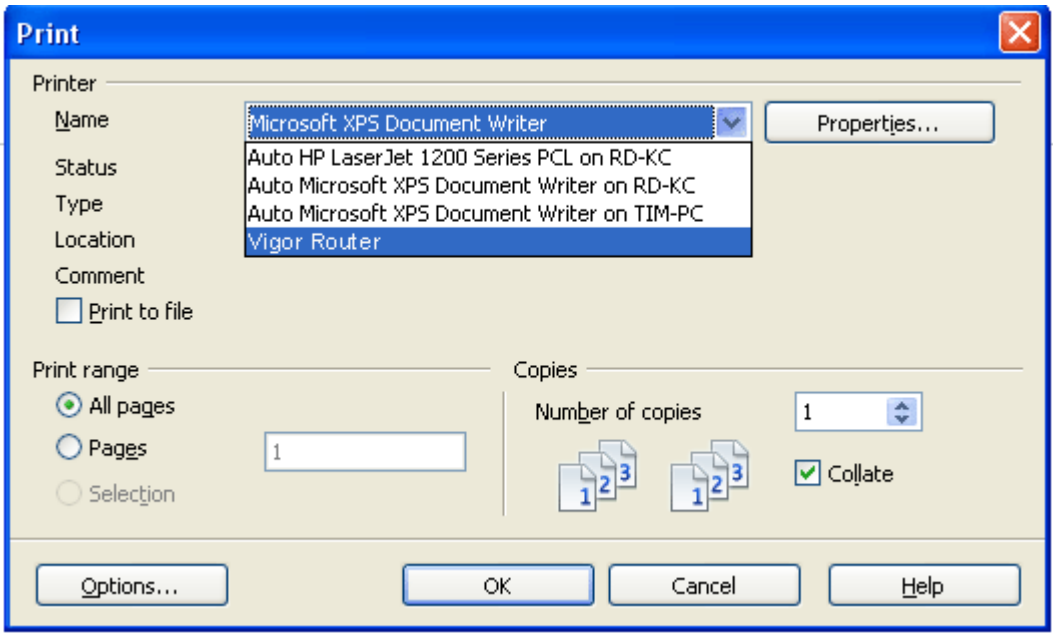
4. Next, open **Applications>>Bonjour**. Check the service that you want to use via Bonjour.



5. Open the DNSSD page again. The available items will be changed as the follows. It means the Vigor router (based on Bonjour protocol) is ready to be used as a printer server, FTP server, SSH Server, Telnet Server, and HTTP Server.



6. Now, any page or document can be printed out through Vigor router (installed with a printer).



II-5-12 High Availability

The High Availability (HA) feature of the router provides redundancy of network resources, and reduces downtime in case of component failure. The level of sophistication of HA is determined by availability requirements and tolerance of system interruptions. Systems that provide near full-time availability typically have redundant hardware and software.

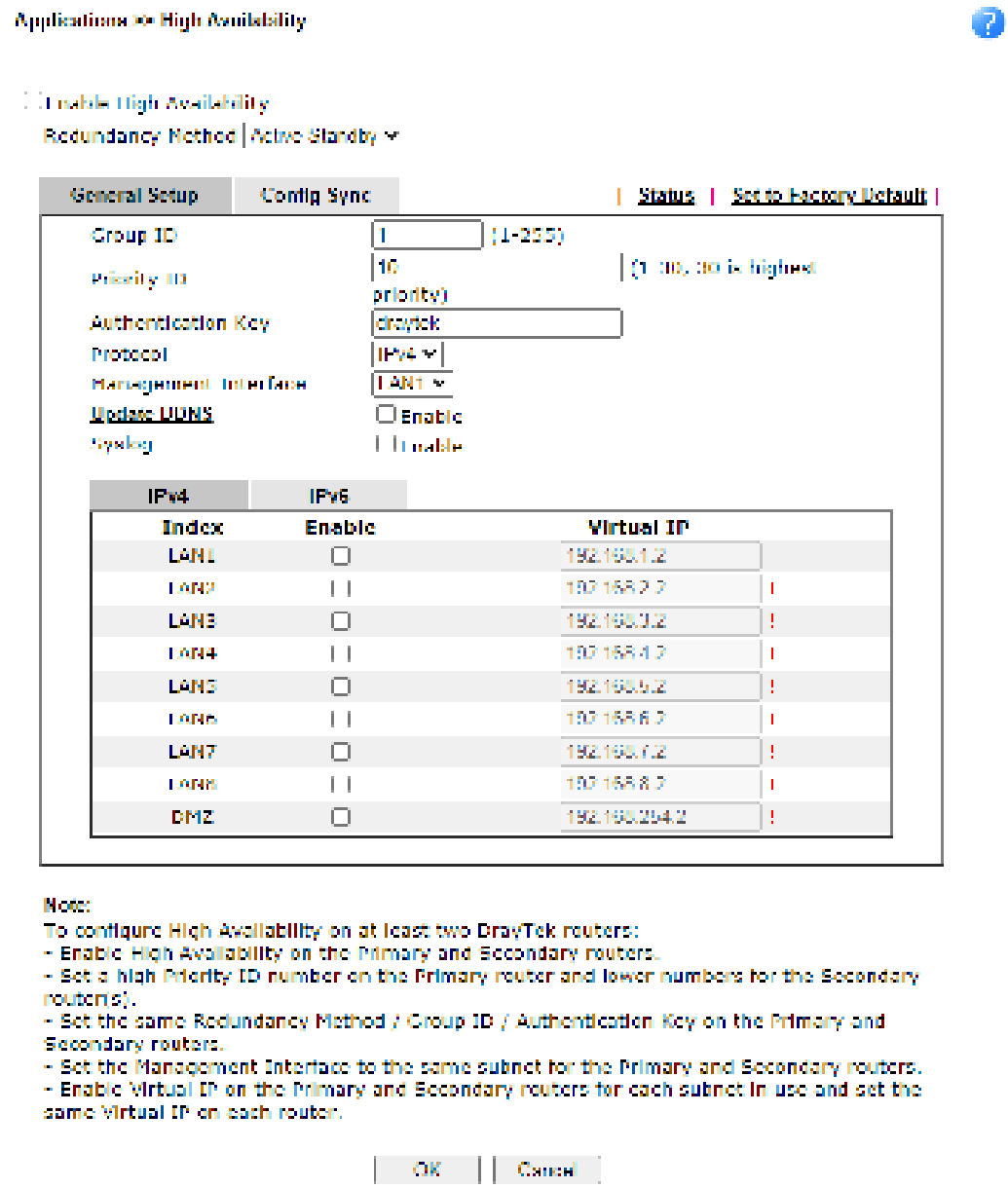
The HA of the Vigor2927 Series is designed to avoid single points-of-failure. When failures occur, the failover process transfers the network load handled by the failed component (the primary router) to the backup component (the secondary router), and the availability of network resources are preserved and partially failed transactions are recovered. In a matter of seconds the system returns to normal operation.

In order to set up High Availability, at least 2 DrayTek routers have to be configured in the following manner:

- Enable High Availability on both the primary and secondary routers.
- Set a high priority ID on the primary router, and a lower priority ID on the secondary router.
- Configure identical redundancy methods, group IDs, and authentication keys on both routers.
- Set the management interface of both routers to the same subnet.
- Enable virtual IP on both routers for each subnet in use. Make sure the virtual IPs are identical on both routers.

II-5-12-1 General Setup

Open **Applications>>High Availability** to bring up the configuration page to configure High Availability.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable High Abailablity	Check this box to enable HA function.
Redundancy Method	Select the redundancy method for high availability. **Hot-Standby -** This method is suitable when there is only one ISP account. When this method is selected, ● During normal operation the secondary router will be idling. When the primary router fails to operate normally, the secondary router(s) will take over. ● WAN settings of the primary and secondary routers are

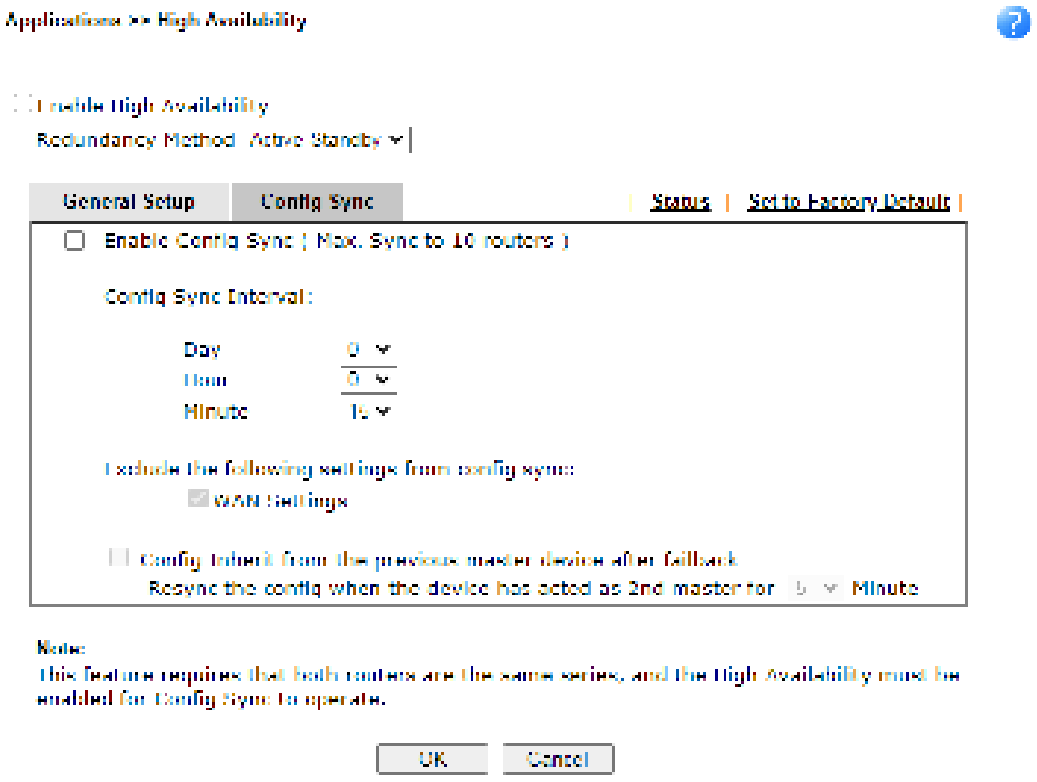
	identical. **Note**: When Hot-Standby is used, the wireless LAN function on secondary router will be "disabled" directlly. Clients can not connect to the secondary router any more. **Active-Standby -** This method is suitable when there are multiple simultaneously active ISP connections. When this method is selected, ● All WANs on the secondary routers can be up at the same time. LANs that are not configured under high availability can be routed to secondary routers. ● WAN settings of primary and secondary routers are independently configured. ● Config Sync may be enabled to synchronize most configuration settings between the primary and secondary routers. ● All routers must be set to the same redundancy method.
Group ID	Enter a value (1~255). In LAN environment, multiple routers can be devided into several groups. Each router must be specified with one group ID. Different routers with the same ID value will be categorized into the same group. Only one of the routers in the same group will be selected as the primary router.
Priority ID	Enter a value (1~30). Different routers must be configured with different IDs. All routers within a group must be assigned a priority ID. Within a group, the router with the largest priority ID (i.e., the highest priority) will be the primary router. When multiple routers in a group are assigned the same priority ID, routers with lower LAN IP addresses (configured on the LAN >> General Setup page) have higher priority.
Authentication Key	Enter an authentication key up to 31 characters long. This is used to encrypt the DARP (DrayTek Address Redundancy Protocol) traffic to guard against malicious attacks.
Protocol	Select the IP protocol to be used for DARP.
Management Interface	Select the interface to be used for DARP negotiation between routers. Only interfaces which are enabled in **LAN>>General Setup** are available for selection. However, LAN1 is always enabled.
Update DDNS	**Enable** – Check the box to update the DDNS server for the secondary device when the primary router fails. If the primary device fails, and the secondary device must take over the job of data transmitting and receiving. Then the system will update the DDNS server to make the user connect to the specified domain name.
Syslog	**Enable** – Check the box to record required information on Syslog.
LAN1 ~ LAN8, DMZ	**Enable** – Check the box to enable the interface. **Virtual IP -** Enter the IP address of the router plays the role

	of Primary device.

When you finish the configuration, please click **OK** to save and exit this page.

II-5-12-2 Config Sync

This page is used to specify the synchronization time for such Vigor router.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable Config Sync (Max. Sync to 10 routers)	Check this box to enable configuration synchronization. To sync configuration from primary to secondary router, both primary and seconday routers need to enable “config sync”. Note that config sync can be enabled by **Hot-Standby** redundancy method only.
Config Sync Interval	**Day** / **Hour** / **Minute** - The primary router will synchronize its configuration with secondary routers at every specified time interval.
Exclude the following settings from config sync	This setting is available when the Redundancy Method is set to **Hot Standby**. Select the configuration settings to be excluded from synchronization.
Config Inherit from the previous master device after failback	The configuration inherits will be executed only when the device (router) plays the role of the master device. Once another device with the priority ID higher than this device is ready to take over the management as the master device, after acting as the primary master for a while, this device will sync the configuration to all members in the same group and return to the role of the backup device (secondary

	master). **Config Inherit**... for ( ) minute - Enter a value.

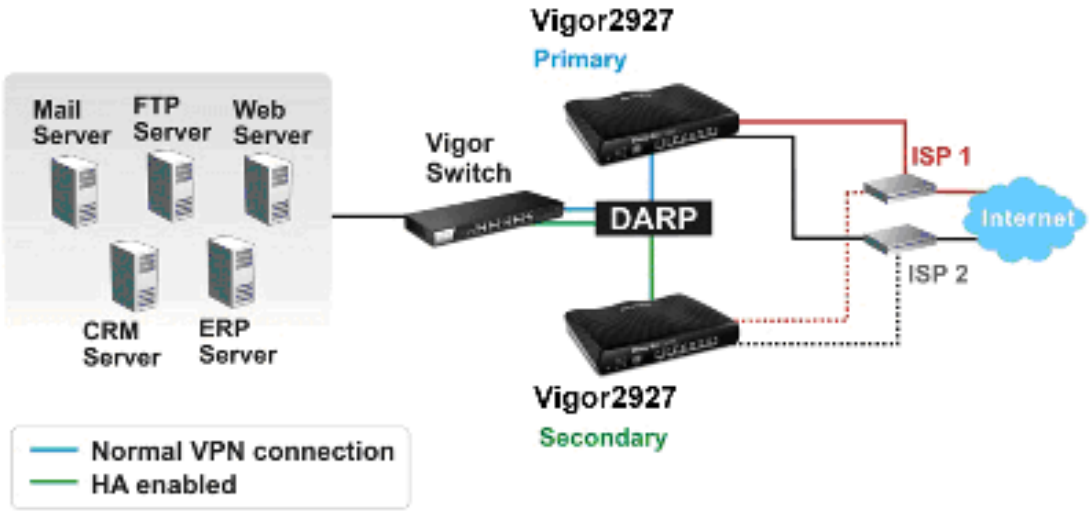
When you finish the configuration, please click **OK** to save and exit this page.

When the configuration method is set to “Hot Standby”, the following settings will not be synchronized:

- WAN (user selectable)
- LAN
- LAN IPv6
- router name
- admin and user passwords

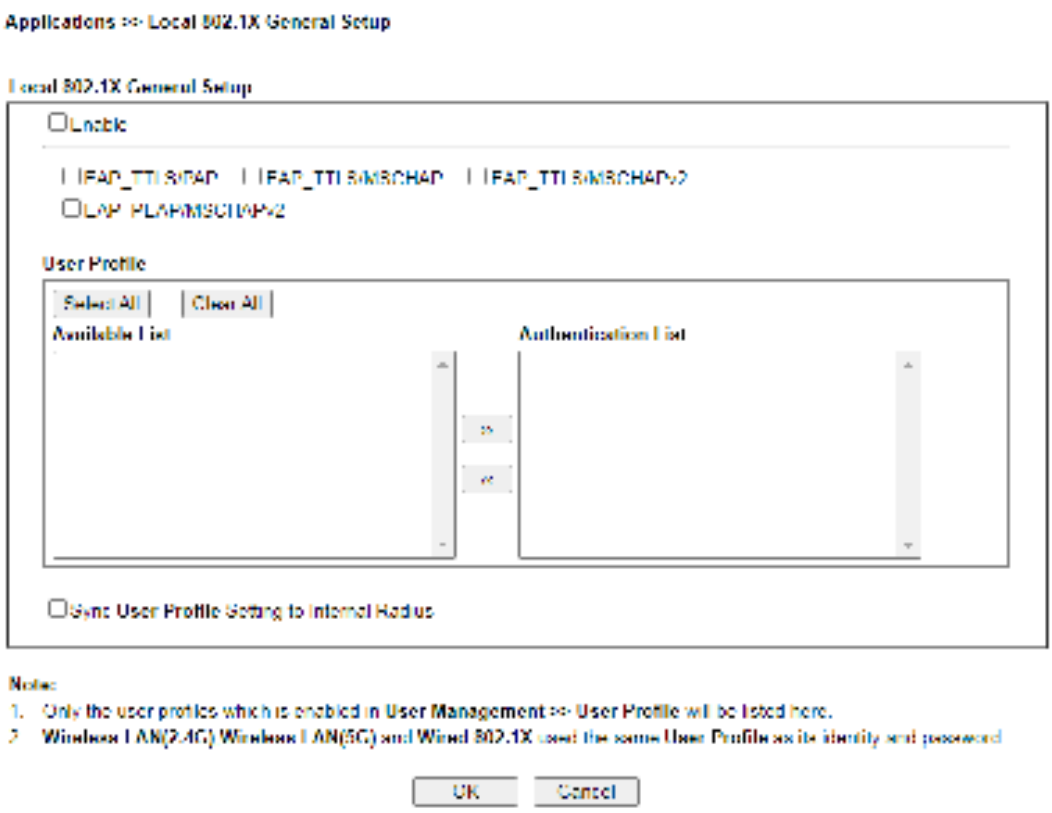
Example:

In the following example, the first Vigor2927 is configured as the primary device, and the other Vigor2927 is the secondary device. When the primary Vigor2927 breaks down, the secondary device assumes the role of the primary device by taking over all responsibilities as soon as possible. However, when the primary device recovers, the secondary device will once again be the standby device.

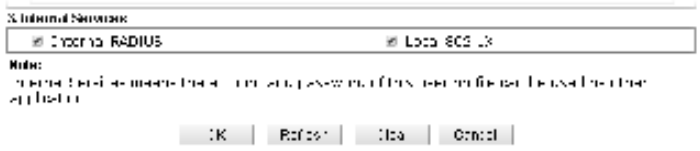


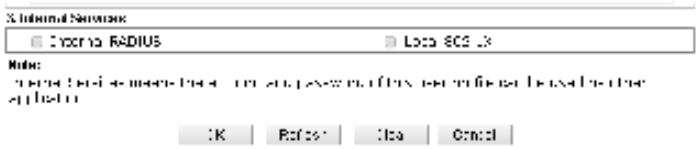
II-5-13 Local 802.1X General Setup

Such page allows you to configure general settings for Local 802.1X server built in Vigor router. The local 802.X server can be used to authenticate wired and wireless LAN clients.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Click it to enable the built-in 802.1X server. At present, such feature can be used for wireless and wired 802.1x authentication.
User Profile	**Select All** – Click to add all User Profiles to the 802.1X server. All profiles will appear under the Authentication List. **Clear All** – Remove all user profiles from the 802.1X server. All profiles will appear under Available List.
Sync User Profile ...	Make the enabling/disabling setting for both Internal RADIUS and Local 802.1X synchronize for all of the user profiles (**User Management>>User Profile**). For example, if Local 802.1x is configured as Enabled (checked), the Internal RADIUS will be configured as Enabled too.  If Local 802.1X is configured as Disabled (unchecked), the

	Internal RADIUS will be changed as Disabled too, even if it is enabled previously. 
OK	Click it to save the settings.
Cancel	Click it to give up all settings configuration.

When you finish the configuration, please click **OK** to save and exit this page.

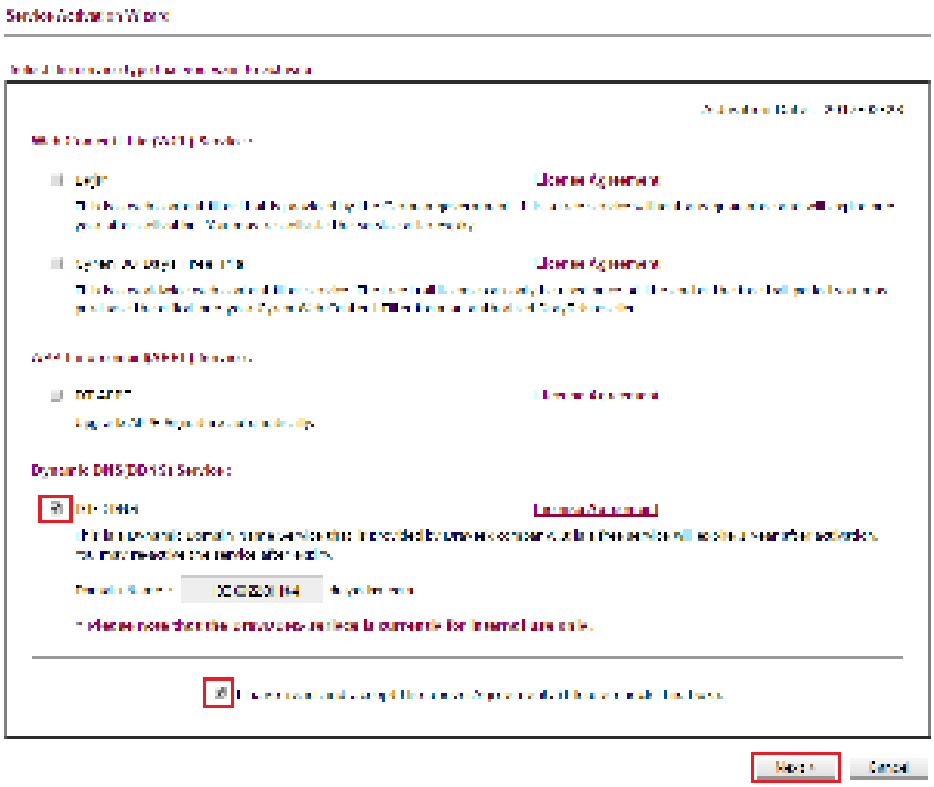
Application Notes

A-1 How to use DrayDDNS?

Vigor router supports various DDNS service providers, user can set up user-defined profile to update the DDNS even the service provider is not on the list. Now, DrayTek starts to support our own DDNS service - DrayDDNS. We will provide a domain name for each Vigor Router, this single domain name can record IP addresses of all WAN.

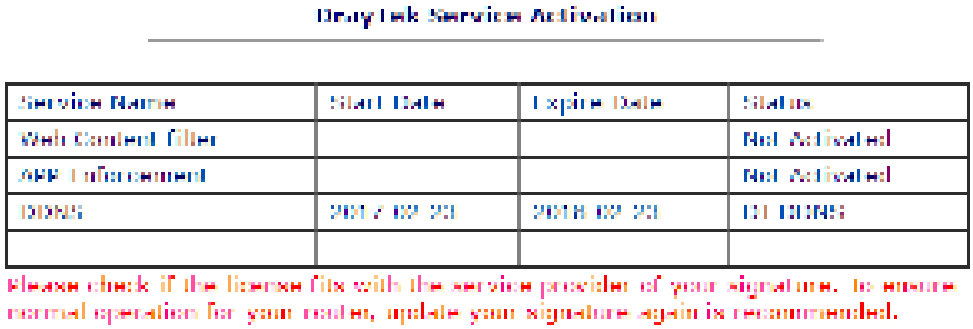
Activate DrayDDNS License

1. Go to **Wizards >> Service Activation Wizard**, wait for the router to connect to MyVigor server, then tick **DT-DDNS** and **I have read and accept the above Agreement**, click **Next**.



2. Confirm the information, then click **Activate**.

3. MyVigor server will reply with the service activation information.



Configure DDNS Profile

1. Go to **Applications >> Dynamic DNS Setup**,

   a. Tick **Enable Dynamic DNS Setup**

   b. Click an available profile index

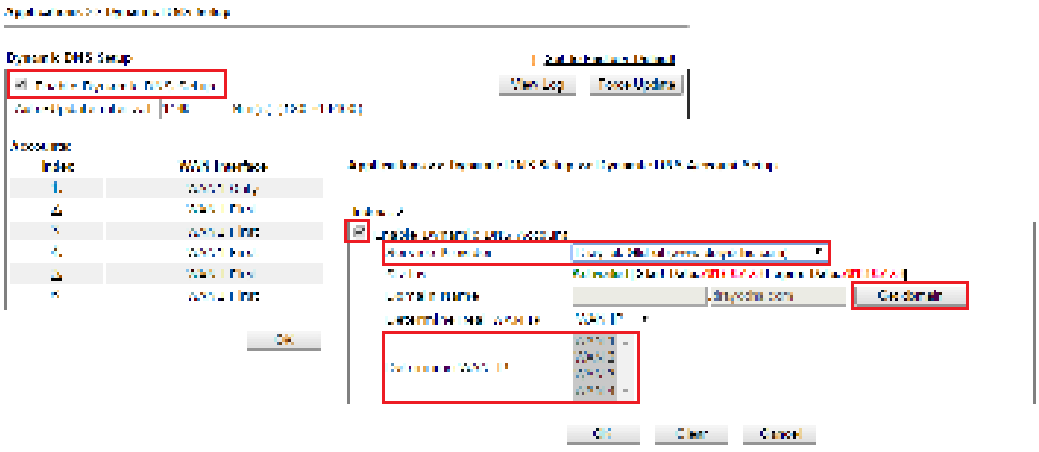
   c. Tick **Enable Dynamic DNS Account**

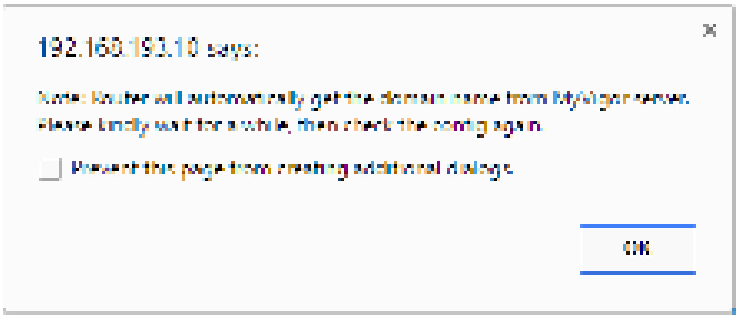
   d. Select **DrayDDNS Global (www.drayddns.com)** as **Service Provider**

   e. Select the WAN you would like to upload the IP to DDNS server

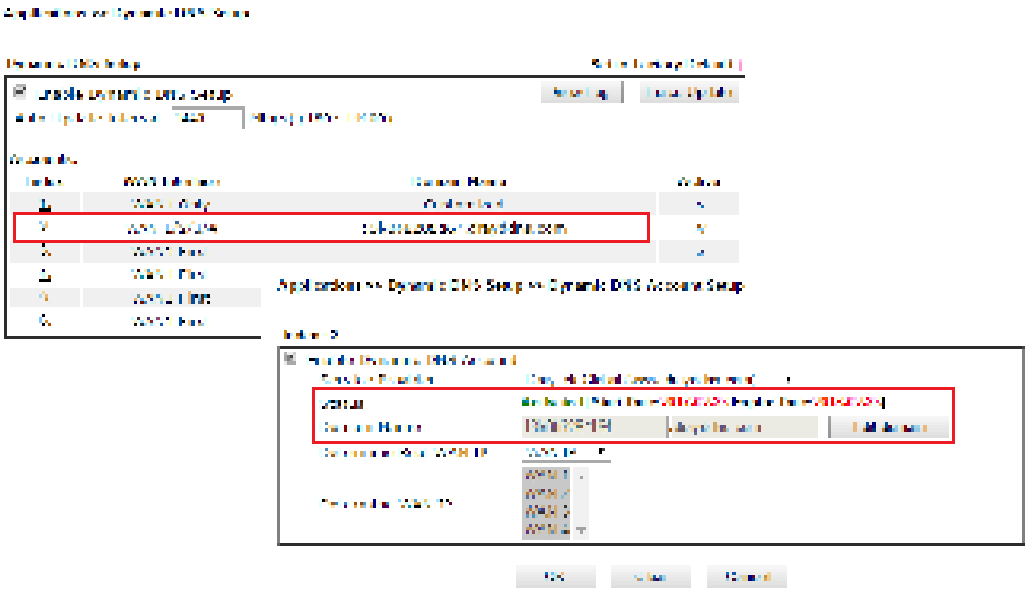
   f. Click **Get domain**

   g. Click **OK** on the pop up notification window





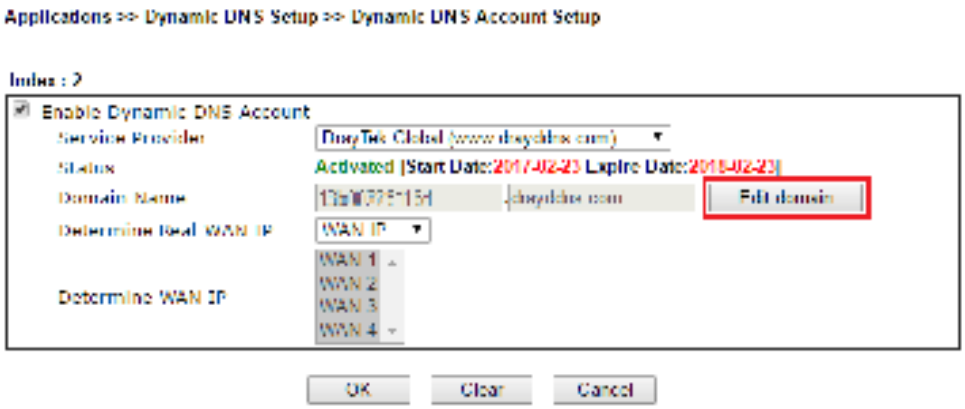
2. Wait few seconds for router to get the domain name, then, we can click the profile to check the information of license and domain name.



Modify Domain Name

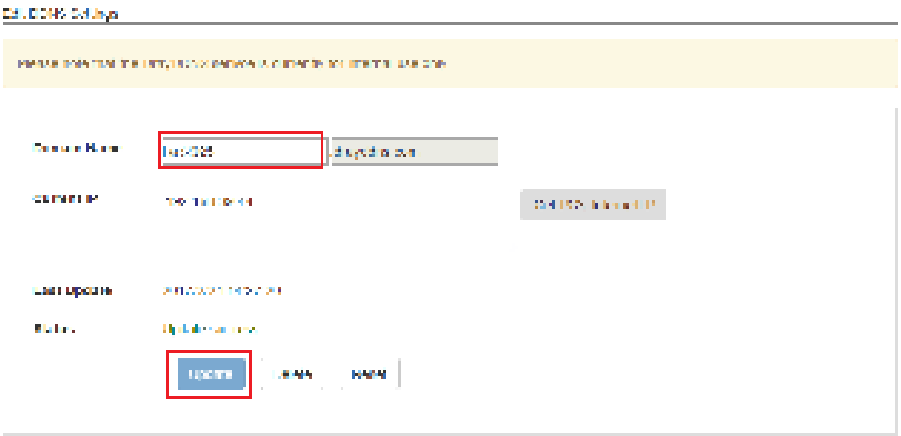
Currently, only the domain name is allowed to be modified MyVigor website. We will need to register the router to MyVigor server, and log in to MyVigor website to modify it.

1. Please visit https://myvigor.draytek.com/ or go to **Applications >> Dynamic DNS Setup >> DrayDDNS** profile and click **Edit domain**.

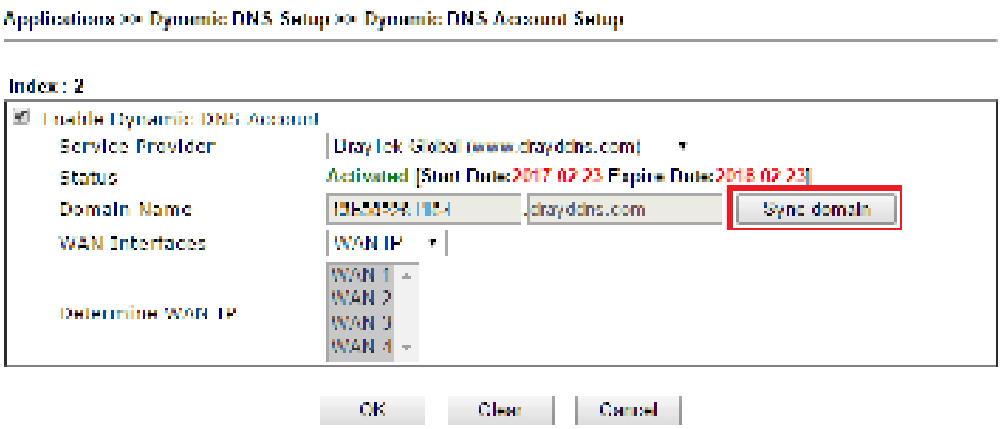


2. Log in to MyVigor Website, choose the profile, then click **Edit DDNS settings**.

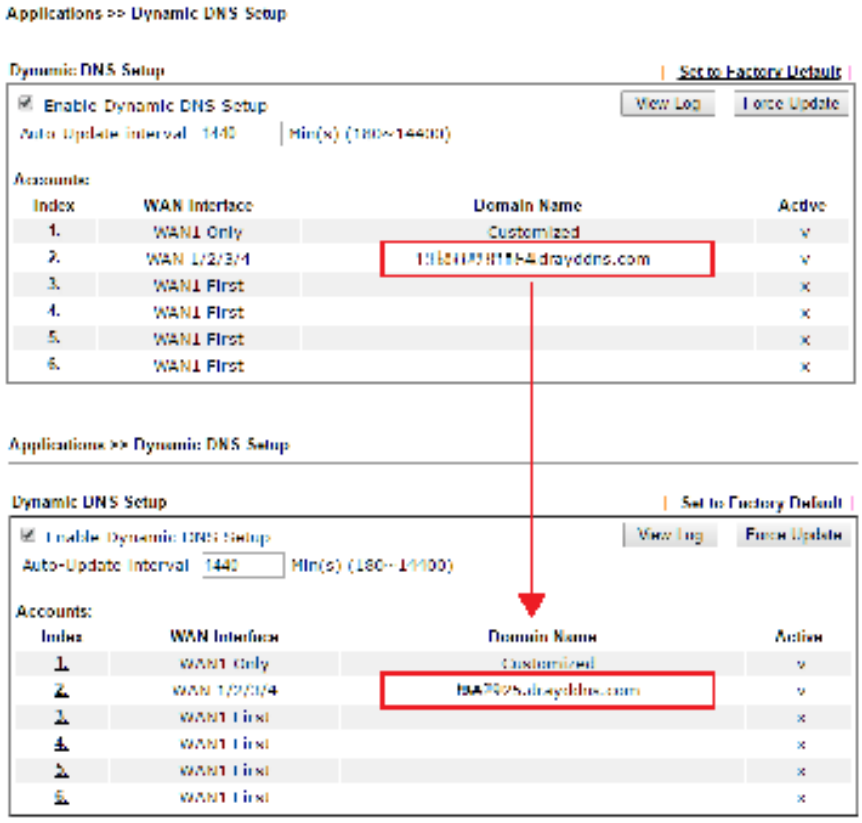
3. Input the desired **Domain name (e.g., XXXX25)** and click **Update**.



4. Vigor router will get the modified domain name when the it performs next DDNS updating. We can click **Sync domain** to accelerate this process.



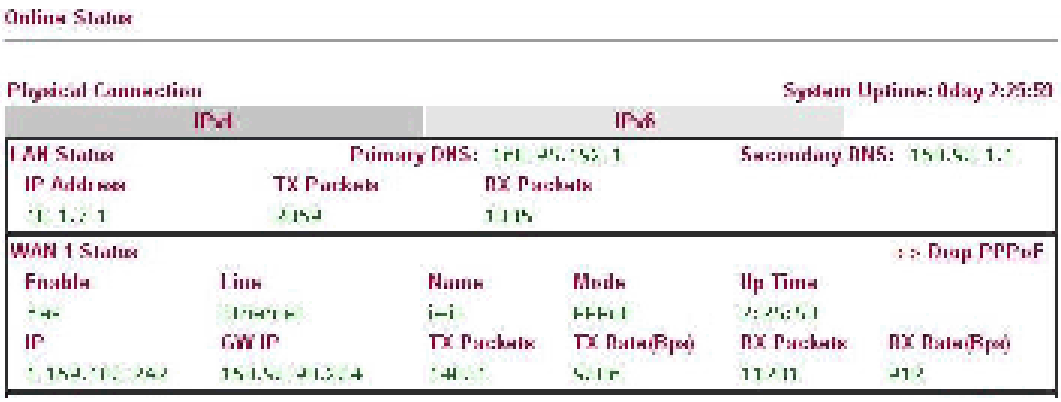
After few seconds, the router will get the new domain name and print it on the profiles list.



A-2 How to Configure Customized DDNS?

This article describes how to configure customized DDNS on Vigor routers to update your IP to the DDNS server. We will take “Changeip.org” and “3322.net” as example. Before setting, please make sure that the WAN connection is up.

Part A : Changeip.org



Note that,

Username: jo***

Password: jo********

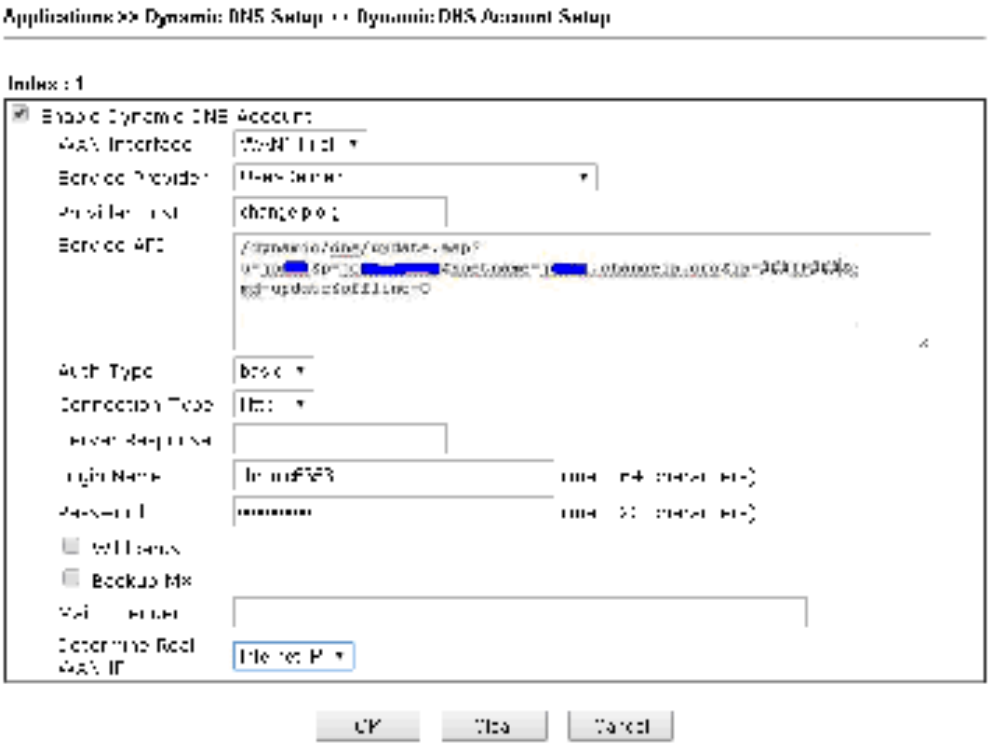
Host name: j*****.changeip.org

WAN IP address: 1.169.185.242

Following is the screenshot of editing the HTML script on the browser to update your IP to the DDNS server.

Now we have to configure the router so it can do the same job for us automatically.

3. Please go to **Applications >> Dynamic DNS** to create a profile for customized DDNS client.



2. Set the Service Provider as **User-Defined**.

3. Set the Service API as:
/dynamic/dns/update.asp?u=jo***&p=jo********&hostname=j****.changeip.org&ip=###IP### &cmd=update&offline=0

   In which, ###IP### is a value which will be replaced with the current interface IP address automatically when DDNS service is running. In this case the IP will be 1.169.185.242.

4. After setting, the Customized DDNS service will be up, and our IP will be updated to the DDNS server.

Part B : 3322.net

WAN 1	
Link Status	: Connected
MAC Address	: 00-50-7F-C8-C6-A1
Connection	: PPPoE
IP Address	: 111.243.178.53
Default Gateway	: 168.95.98.254
Primary DNS	: 168.95.192.1
Secondary DNS	: 168.95.1.1

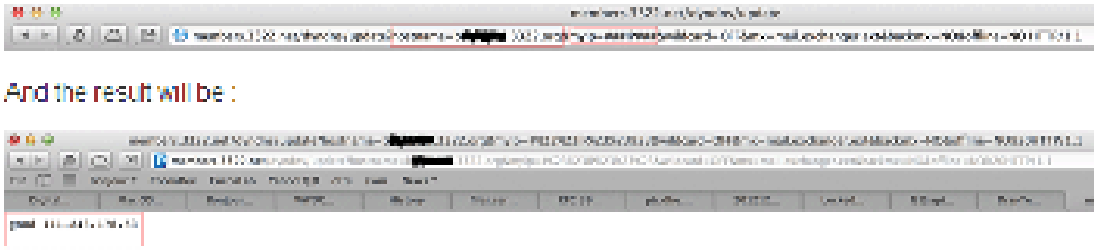
Username: bi*******

Password: 88********

Host name: bi*******.3322.org

WAN IP address: 111.243.178.53

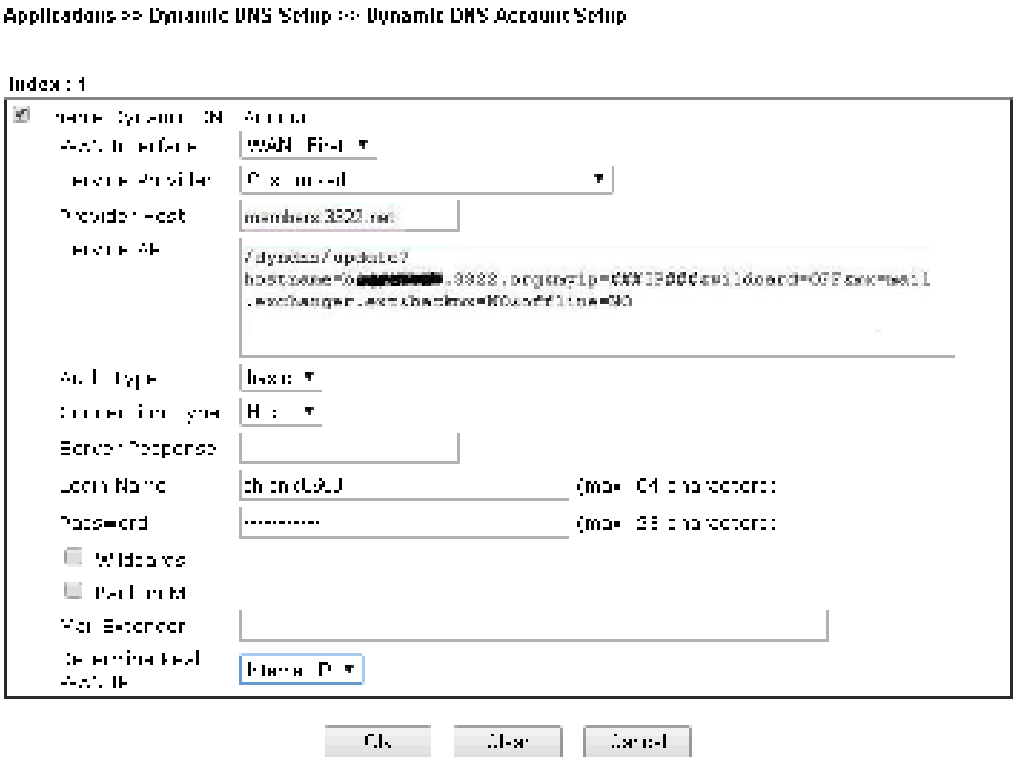
To update the IP to the DDNS server via editing the HTML script, we can Enter the following script on the browser:



"good 111.243.178.53" means our IP has been updated to the server successfully.

Now we have to configure the router so it can do the same job for us automatically.

1. Please go to **Applications >> Dynamic DNS** to create a profile for Customized DDNS client.



4. Set the Service Provider as **User-Defined**.

5. Set the Provider Host as **member.3322.net**.

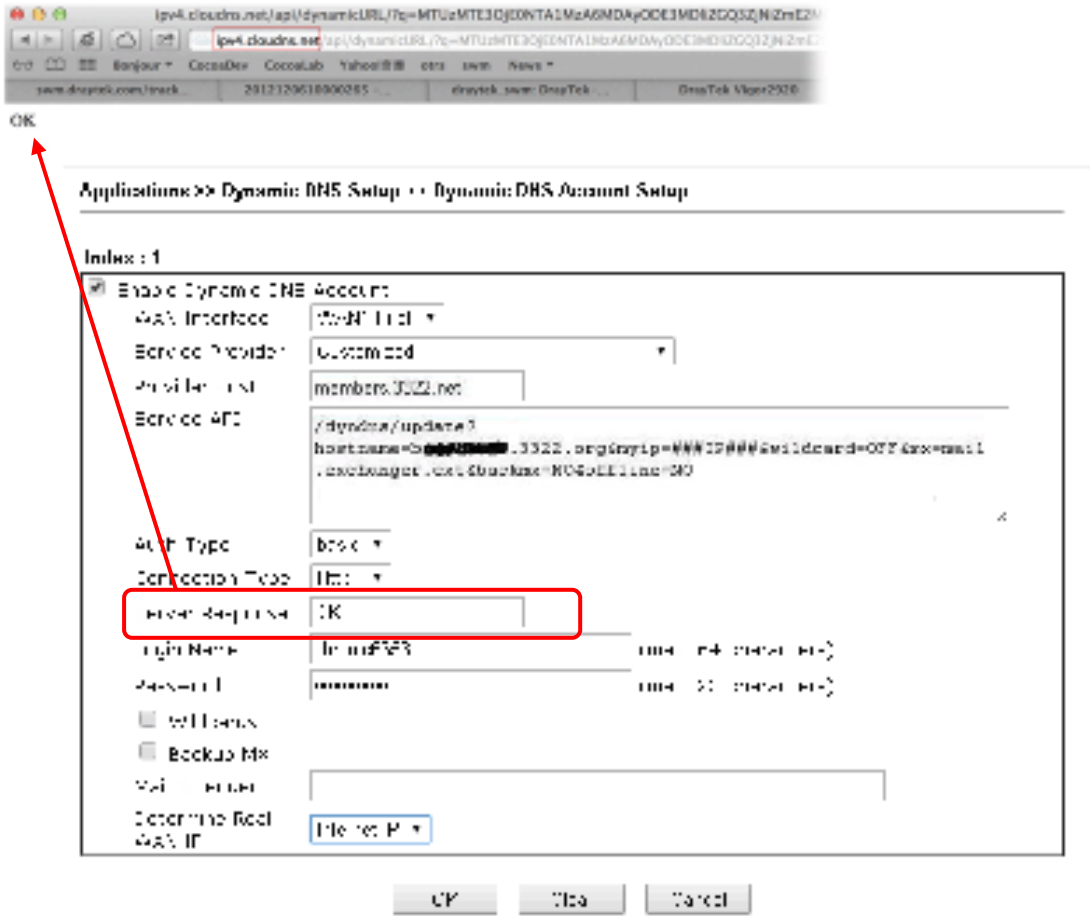
6. Set the Service API as:
/dyndns/update?hostname=yourhost.3322.org&myip=###IP###&wildcard=OFF&mx=mail.exchanger.ext&backmx=NO&offline=NO

7. Enter your account and password.

8. After the setting, the Customized DDNS service will be up, and our IP will be updated to the DDNS server automatically.

Part C : Extend Note

The customized Service Provider is also eligible with the ClouDNS.net.



II-6 Routing

Route Policy (also well known as PBR, policy-based routing) is a feature where you may need to get a strategy for routing. The packets will be directed to the specified interface if they match one of the policies. You can setup route policies in various reasons such as load balance, security, routing decision, and etc.

Through protocol, IP address, port number and interface configuration, Route Policy can be used to configure any routing rules to fit actual request. In general, Route Policy can easily reach the following purposes:

Load Balance

You may manually create policies to balance the traffic across network interface.

Specify Interface

Through dedicated interface (WAN/LAN/VPN), the data can be sent from the source IP to the destination IP.

Address Mapping

Allows you specify the outgoing WAN IP address (es) for an internal private IP address or a range of internal private IP addresses.

Priority

The router will determine which policy will be adopted for transmitting the packet according to the priority of Static Route and Route Policy.

Failover to/Failback

Packets will be sent through another Interface or follow another Policy when the original interface goes down (**Failover to**). Once the original interface resumes service (**Failback**), the packets will be returned to it immediately.

Other routing

Specify routing policy to determine the direction of the data transmission.

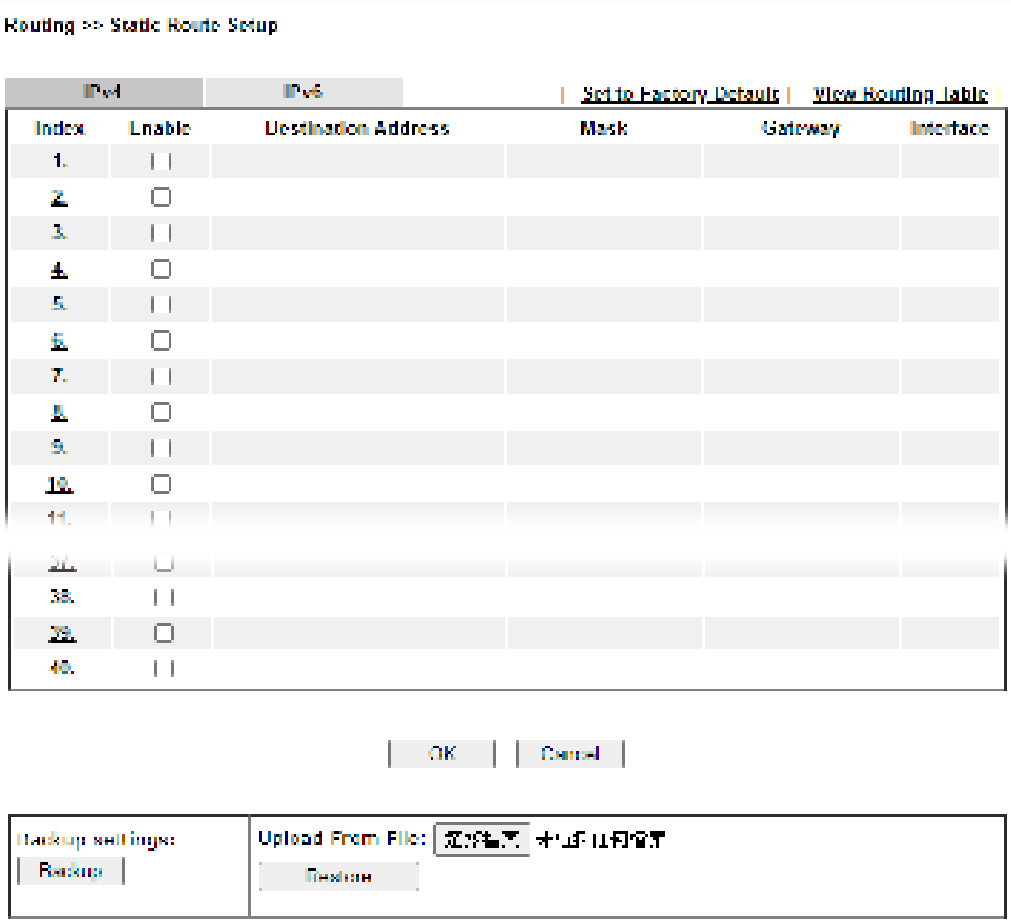
Info	For more detailed information about using policy route, refer to Support >>FAQ/Application Note on www.draytek.com.

Web User Interface

II-6-1 Static Route

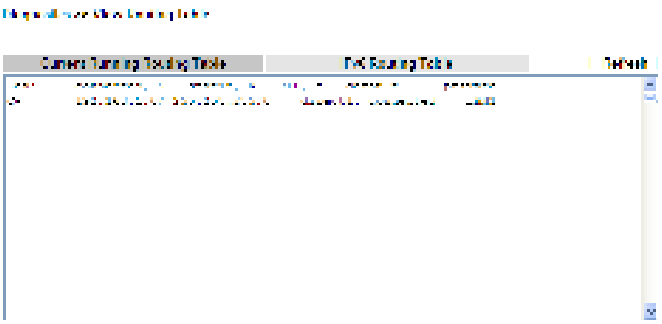
Go to **Routing** >> **Static Route**. The router offers IPv4 and IPv6 for you to configure the static route. Both protocols bring different web pages.

Static Route for IPv4



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Index	The number (1 to 40) under Index allows you to open next page to set up static route.
Enable	Check the box to enable the static route profile.
Destination Address	Displays the destination address of the static route.

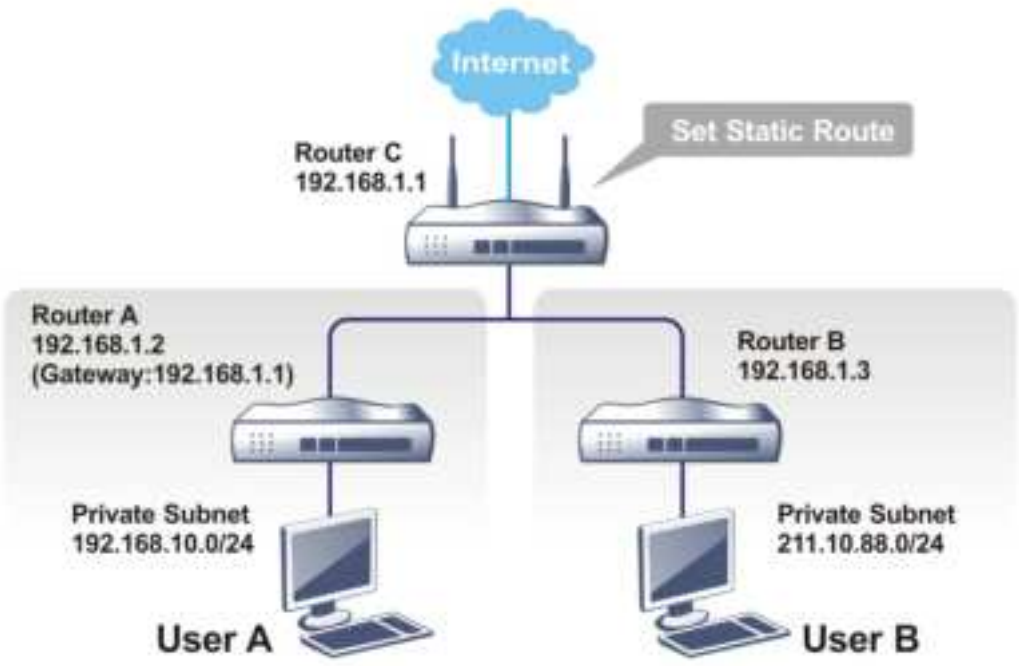
Set to Factory Default	Clear all of the settings and return to factory default settings.
Viewing Routing Table	Displays the routing table for your reference. 
Backup	Click it to backup the configuration of static route settings.
Restore	Click it to restore the configuration of static route settings. Before clicking, make sure upload the configuration file onto Vigor router.

Add Static Routes to Private and Public Networks

Here is an example (based on IPv4) of setting Static Route in Main Router so that user A and B locating in different subnet can talk to each other via the router. Assuming the Internet access has been configured and the router works properly:

- use the Main Router to surf the Internet.
- create a private subnet 192.168.10.0 using an internal Router A (192.168.1.2)
- create a public subnet 211.100.88.0 via an internal Router B (192.168.1.3).
- have set Main Router 192.168.1.1 as the default gateway for the Router A 192.168.1.2.

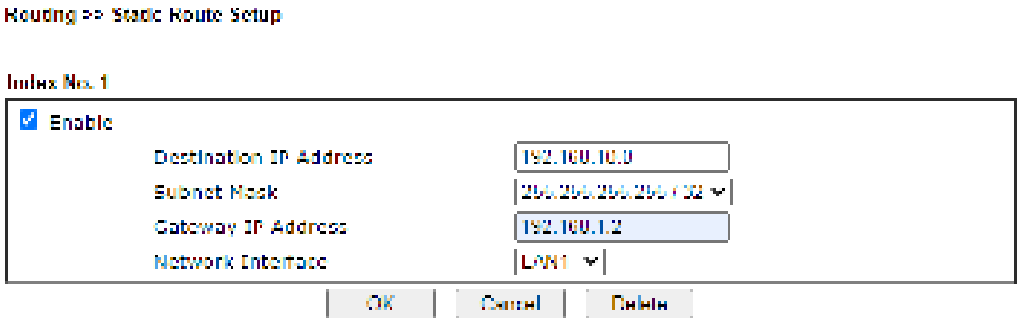
Before setting Static Route, user A cannot talk to user B for Router A can only forward recognized packets to its default gateway Main Router.



1. Go to **LAN** page and click **General Setup**, select 1st Subnet as the **RIP Protocol Control**. Then click the **OK** button.

Info	There are two reasons that we have to apply RIP Protocol Control on 1st Subnet. The first is that the LAN interface can exchange RIP packets with the neighboring routers via the 1st subnet (192.168.1.0/24). The second is that those hosts on the internal private subnets (ex. 192.168.10.0/24) can access the Internet via the router, and continuously exchange of IP routing information with different subnets.

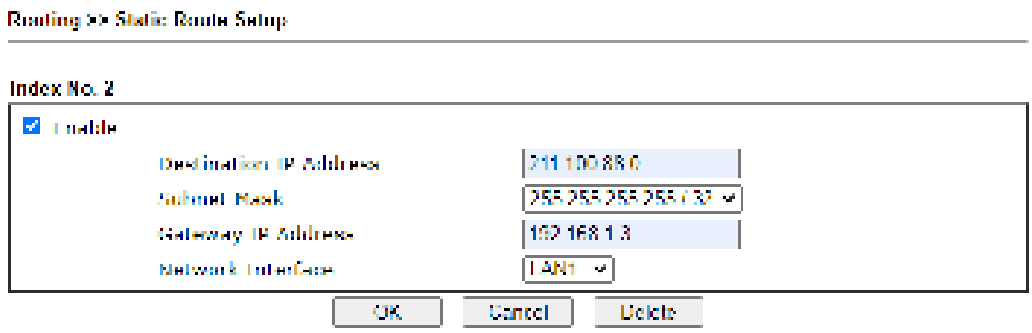
2. Click the **Routing >> Static Route** and click on the **Index Number 1.** Check the **Enable** box. Please add a static route as shown below, which regulates all packets destined to 192.168.10.0 will be forwarded to 192.168.1.2. Click **OK**.



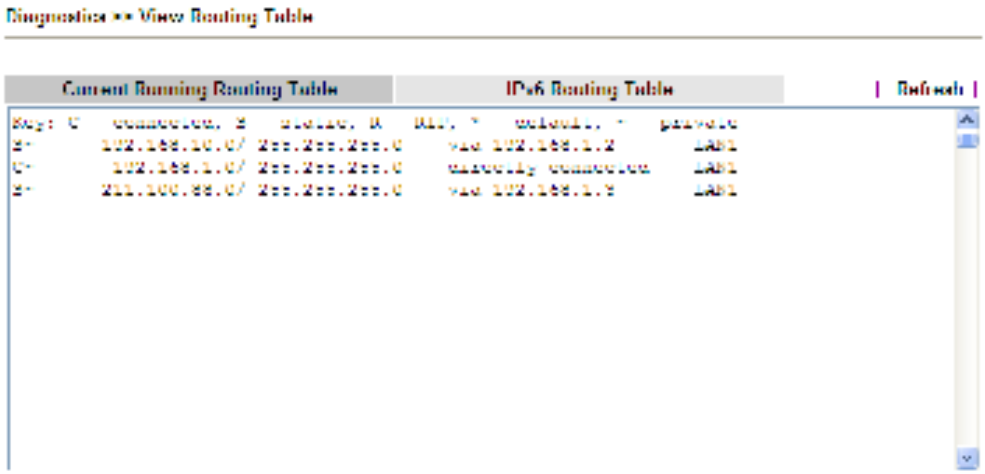
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Click it to enable this profile.
Destination IP Address	Enter an IP address as the destination of such static route.
Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask for such static route.
Gateway IP Address	Enter the IP address of the gateway.
Network Interface	Use the drop down list to specify an interface for such static route.

3. Return to **Static Route Setup** page. Click on another **Index Number** to add another static route as show below, which regulates all packets destined to 211.100.88.0 will be forwarded to 192.168.1.3. Click **OK**.

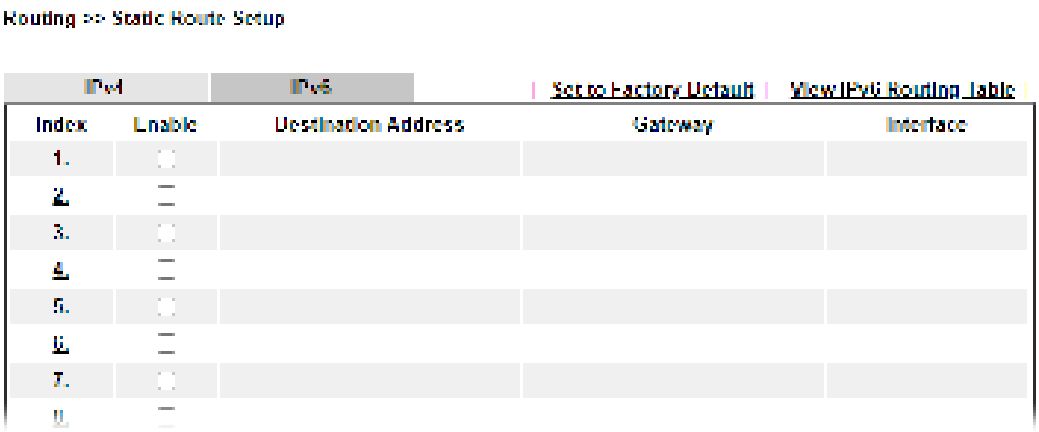


4. Go to **Diagnostics** and choose **Routing Table** to verify current routing table.



Static Route for IPv6

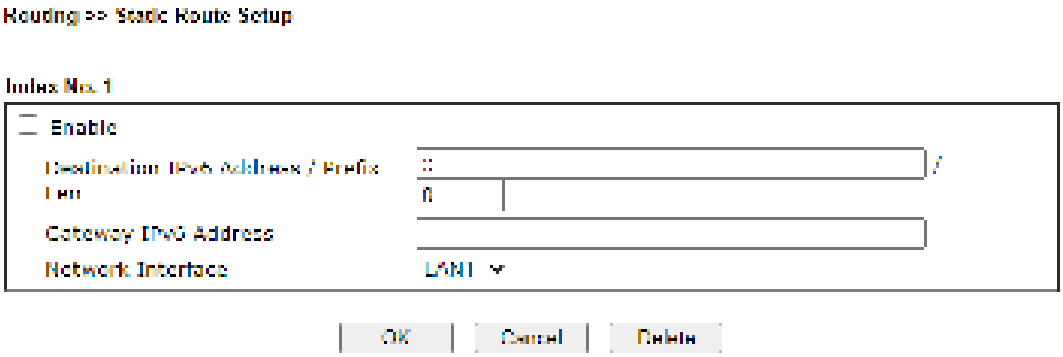
You can set up to 40 profiles for IPv6 static route. Click the IPv6 tab to open the following page:



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Index	The number (1 to 40) under Index allows you to open next page to set up static route.
Enable	Check the box to enable the static route profile.
Destination Address	Displays the destination address of the static route.
Gateway	Displays the IP address of the gateway.
Interface	Displays the interface used for this static route.
Set to Factory Default	Clear all of the settings and return to factory default settings.
Viewing IPv6 Routing Table	Displays the routing table for your reference.
Backup	Click it to backup the configuration of static route settings.
Restore	Click it to restore the configuration of static route settings. Before clicking, make sure upload the configuration file onto Vigor router.

Click any underline of index number to get the following page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

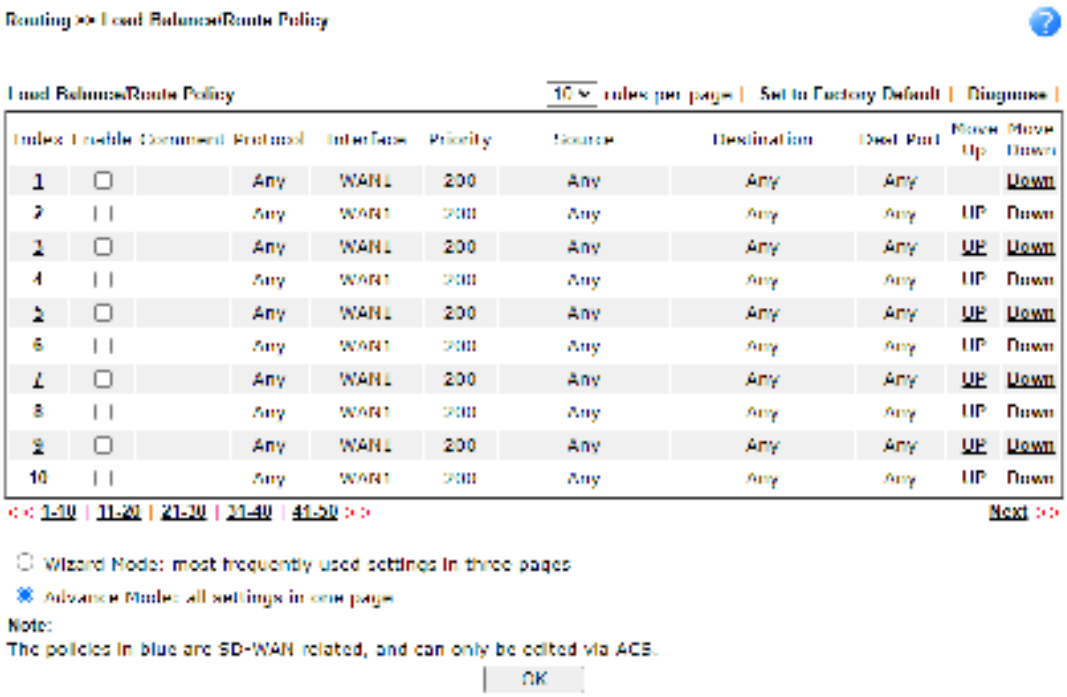
Item	Description
Enable	Click it to enable this profile.
Destination IPv6 Address / Prefix Len	Enter the IP address with the prefix length for this entry.
Gateway IPv6 Address	Enter the gateway address for this entry.
Network Interface	Use the drop down list to specify an interface for this static route.

When you finish the configuration, please click **OK** to save and exit this page.

II-6-2 Load-Balance /Route Policy

It allows network administrator to manage the outbound traffic more specifically. The policy set in Load-Balance/Route Policy always has higher priority than **Default Route** and **Auto Load Balance** set in **WAN >> Internet Access**, and always has lower priority than the **Firewall** Rules. Administrator may also define a priority to this policy.

This page lists all the policies and shows whether the policy is enabled/disabled, what are the criteria to match, and through which the interface should the traffic to go if the criteria are matched, and also its priority.

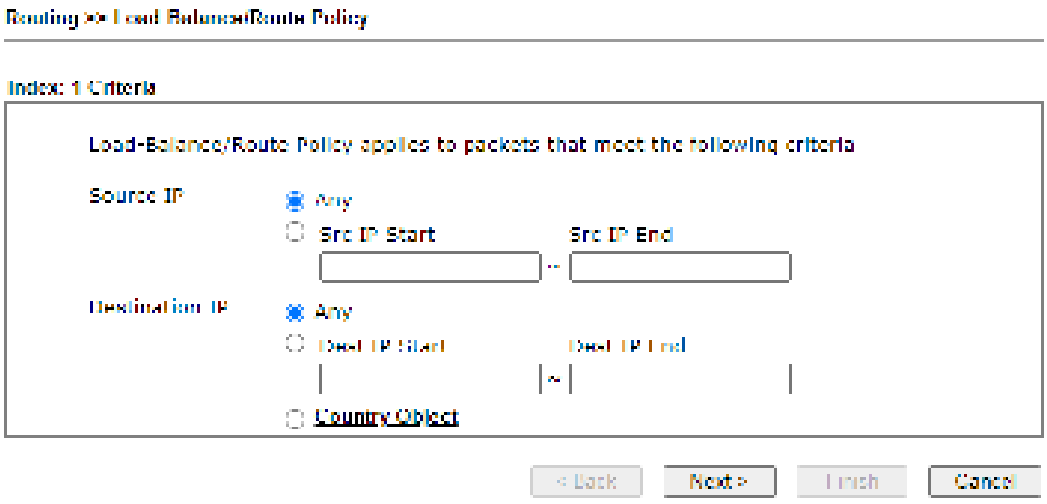


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Index	Click the number of index to access into the configuration web page.
Enable	Check this box to enable this policy.
Protocol	Display the protocol used for this policy.
Interface	Display the interface to send packets to once the policy is matched.
Priority	Display the priority value for such route policy profile.
Source	Display the content of source IP, subnet, object or group.
Destination	Display the content of destination IP, subnet, object or group.
Dest Port	Display the content of the destination port.
Move UP/Move Down	Use **Up** or **Down** link to move the order of the policy.
Wizard Mode	Allow to configure frequently used (simple and basic) settings of route policy via three setting pages.
Advance Mode	Allow to configure detailed settings of route policy.

To use Wizard Mode, simple do the following steps:

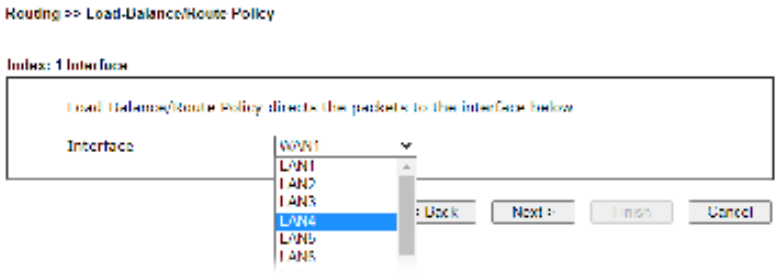
1. Click the **Wizard Mode** radio button.
2. Click **Index 1**. The setting page will appear as follows:



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Source IP	**Any** – Any IP can be treated as the source IP. **Src IP Start -** Enter the source IP start for the specified WAN interface. **Src IP End -** Enter the source IP end for the specified WAN interface. If this field is blank, it means that all the source IPs inside the LAN will be passed through the WAN interface.
Destination IP	**Any** – Any IP can be treated as the destination IP. **Dest IP Start-** Enter the destination IP start for the specified WAN interface. **Dest IP End -** Enter the destination IP end for the specified WAN interface. If this field is blank, it means that all the destination IPs will be passed through the WAN interface. **Country Object** – Specify a country object. All the IPs coming from the country (countries) specified in the object will be passed through the WAN interface.

3. Click **Next** to get the following page.

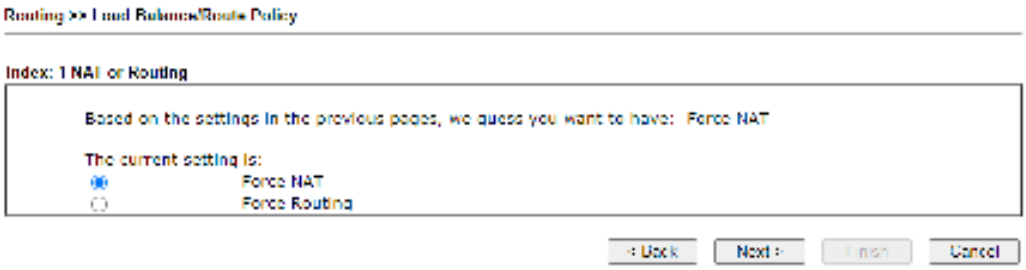


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description

Interface	Use the drop down list to choose a WAN or LAN interface or VPN profile. Packets match with the above criteria will be transferred to the interface chosen here.

4. Specify an interface and click **Next**. The following page will appear only if you choose WAN1 ~WAN9 as Interface.



Available settings are explained as follows:

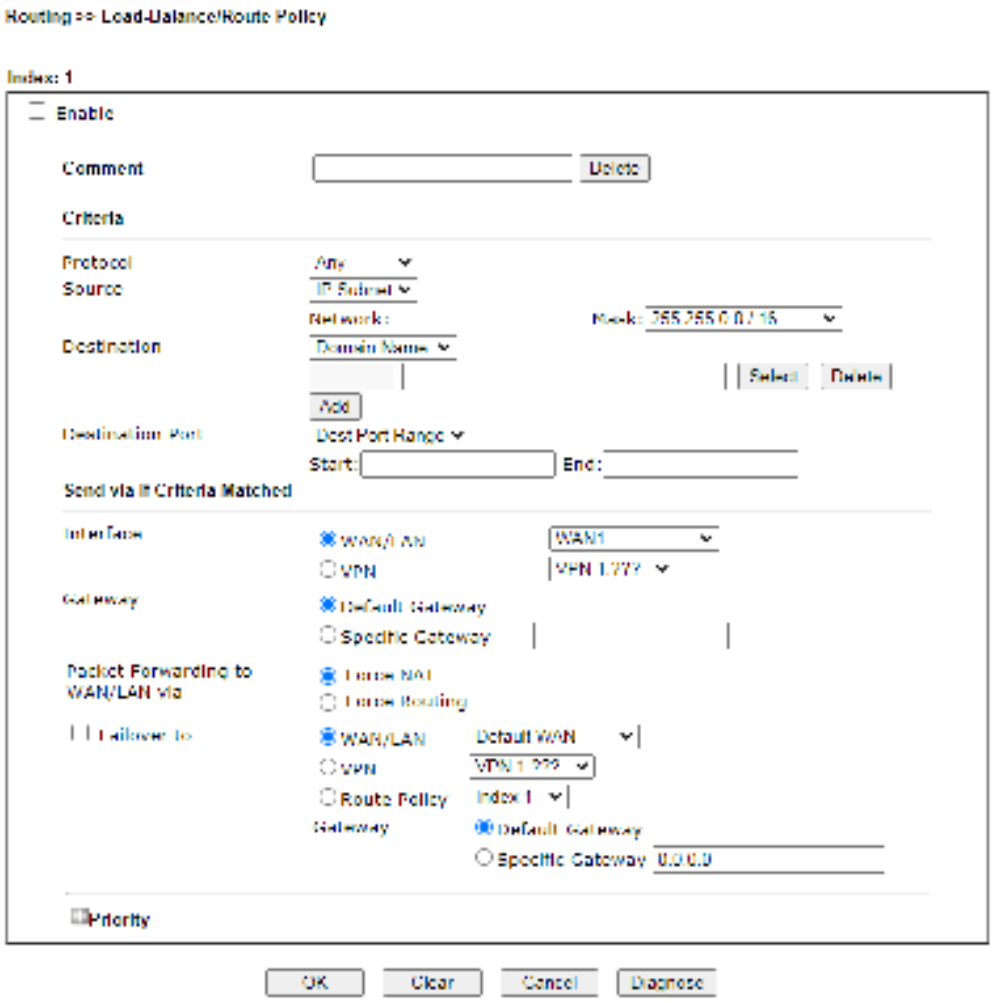
Item	Description
Force NAT / Force Routing	It determines which mechanism that the router will use to forward the packet to WAN.

5. After choosing the mechanism, click **Next** to get the summary page for reference.

6. If there is no error, click **Finish** to complete wizard setting.

To use **Advance** Mode, do the following steps:

1. Click the **Advance Mode** radio button.
2. Click **Index 1** to access into the following page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check this box to enable this policy.
Comment	Type a brief explanation for such profile.
Protocol	Use the drop-down menu to choose a proper protocol for the WAN interface.
Source	**Any** – Any IP can be treated as the source IP. **IP Range** – Define a range of IP address as source IP addresses. ● **Start -** Type an address as the starting IP for such profile. ● **End -** Type an address as the ending IP for such profile. **IP Subnet** – Define a subnet containing IP address and mask address. ● **Network** – Type an IP address here. ● **Mask** – Use the drop down list to choose a suitable mask

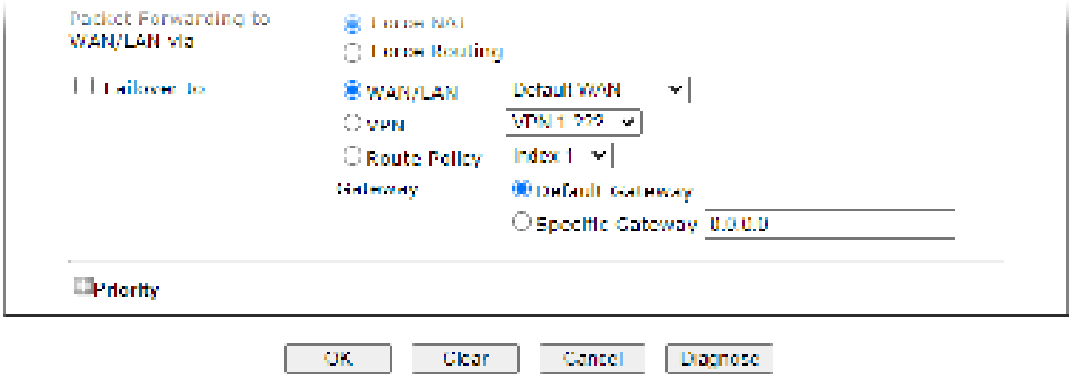
	for the network. **IP Object** / **IP Group**– Use the drop down list to choose a preconfigured IP object/group.
Destination	**Any** – Any IP can be treated as the destination IP. **IP Range** – Define a range of IP address as destination IP addresses. ● **Start -** Type an address as the starting IP for such profile. ● **End -** Type an address as the ending IP for such profile. **IP Subnet** – Define a subnet containing IP address and mask address. ● **Network** – Type an IP address here. ● **Mask** – Use the drop down list to choose a suitable mask for the network. **Domain Name** – Specify a domain name as the destination. ● **Select** – Click it to choose an existing domain name defined in Objects Setting>>String Object. ● **Delete** – Remove current used domain name. ● **Add** – Create a new domain name as the destination. **IP Object** / **IP Group**– Use the drop down list to choose a preconfigured IP object/group. **Country Object** – Use the drop dwon list to choose a preconfigured object. Then all IPs within that country will be treated as the destination IP.
Destination Port	**Any** – Any port number can be treated as the destination port. **Dest Port Range –** ● **Start -** Enter the destination port start for the destination IP. ● **End -** Enter the destination port end for the destination IP. If this field is blank, it means that all the destination ports will be passed through the WAN interface.
Send to if criteria matched	**Interface** – Use the drop down list to choose a WAN or LAN interface or VPN profile. Packets match with the above criteria will be transferred to the interface chosen here. **Gateway IP** – **Specific gateway** is used only when you want to forward the packets to the desired gateway. Usually, Default Gateway is selected in default. **Packet Forwarding to WAN/LAN via** – When you choose WAN (e.g., WAN1) as the Interface for packet transmission, you have to specify the way the packet forwarded to. Choose **Force NAT** or **Force Routing**. **Failover to** – Check this button to lead the data passing through specific interface (WAN/LAN/VPN/Route Policy) automatically when the selected interface (defined in **Send via if criteria matched**) is down. ● **WAN/LAN –** Use the drop down list to choose an interface as an auto failover interface. ● **VPN –** Use the drop down list to choose a VPN tunnel as a failover tunnel.

	● **Route Policy** – Use the drop down list to choose an existed route policy profile. ● **Gateway** – Specific gateway is used only when you want to forward the packets to the desired gateway. Usually, Default Gateway is selected in default.
Priority	Packets will be transmitted based on all routes or Route Policy. Vigor router will determine which rule will be adopted for transmitting the packet according to the priority of Static Route and Route Policy. The greater the value is, the lower the priority is. Default value for route policy is "200" which means it has higher priority than the default route.

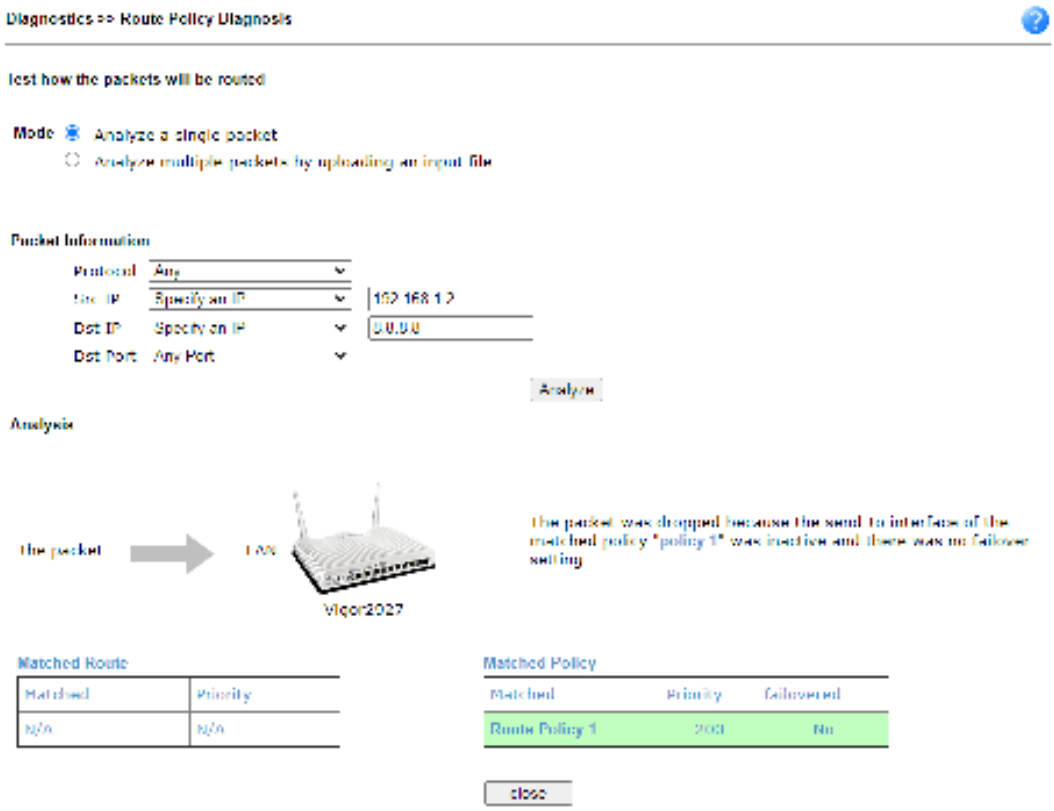
3. When you finish the configuration, please click **OK** to save and exit this page.

Diagnose for Route Policy

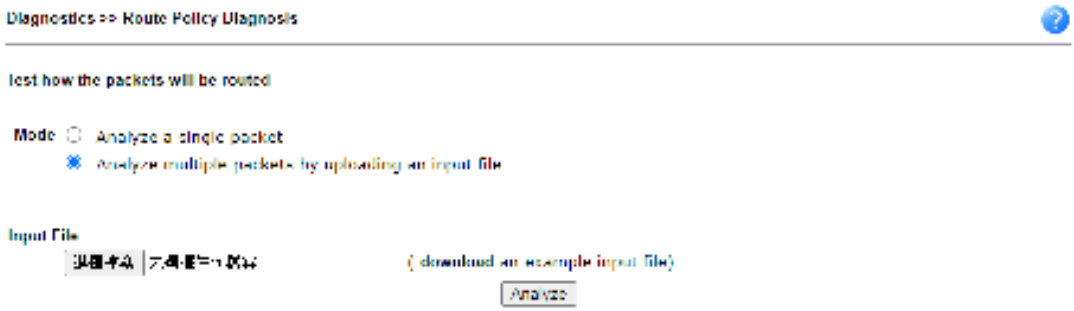
The button of **Diagnose** located below the Load-Balance /Route Policy profile is used to trace possible path of the packets sent out of the router.



Click **Diagnose** to get the following page.

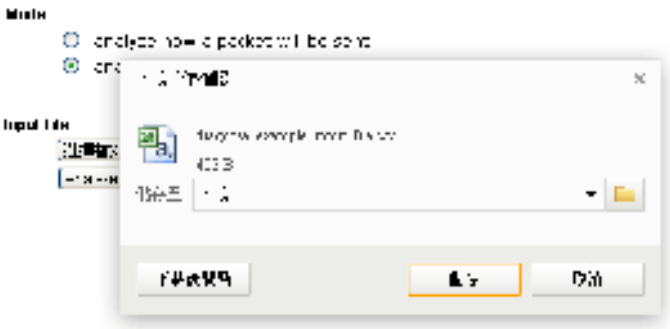


or



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Mode	**Analyze a single packet** – Choose such mode to make Vigor router analyze how a single packet will be sent by a route policy. **Analyze multiple packets…** - Choose such mode to make Vigor router analyze how multiple packets in a specified file will be sent by a route policy.
Packet Information	Specify the nature of the packets to be analyzed by Vigor router. **Protocol -** Specify a protocol for diagnosis. **Src IP** – Type an IP address as the source IP. **Dst IP** – Type an IP address as the destination IP. **Dst Port** – Use the drop down list to specify the destination port. **Analyze** – Click it to perform the job of analyzing. The

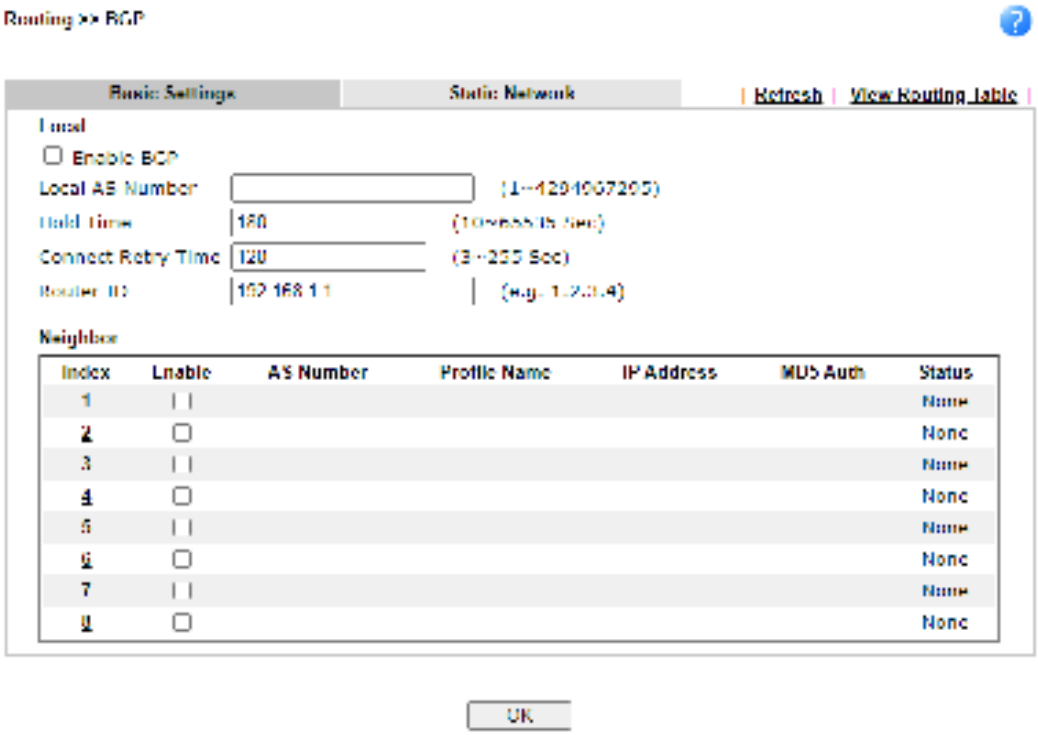
	analyzed result will be shown on the page. If required, click **export analysis** to export the result as a file.
Input File	**Select** – Click the download link to get a blank example file. Then, click such button to select that blank ".csv" file for saving the result of analysis.  **Analyze** – Click it to perform the job of analyzing. The analyzed result will be shown on the page. If required, click **export analysis** to export the result as a file. Note that the analysis was based on the current "load-balance/route policy" settings, we do not guarantee it will be 100% the same as the real case.

II-6-3 BGP

Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) is a standardized protocol designed to exchange routing and reachability information among autonomous systems (AS) on the Internet.

II-6-3-1 Basic Settings

Set general settings for for local router and neighboring routers.



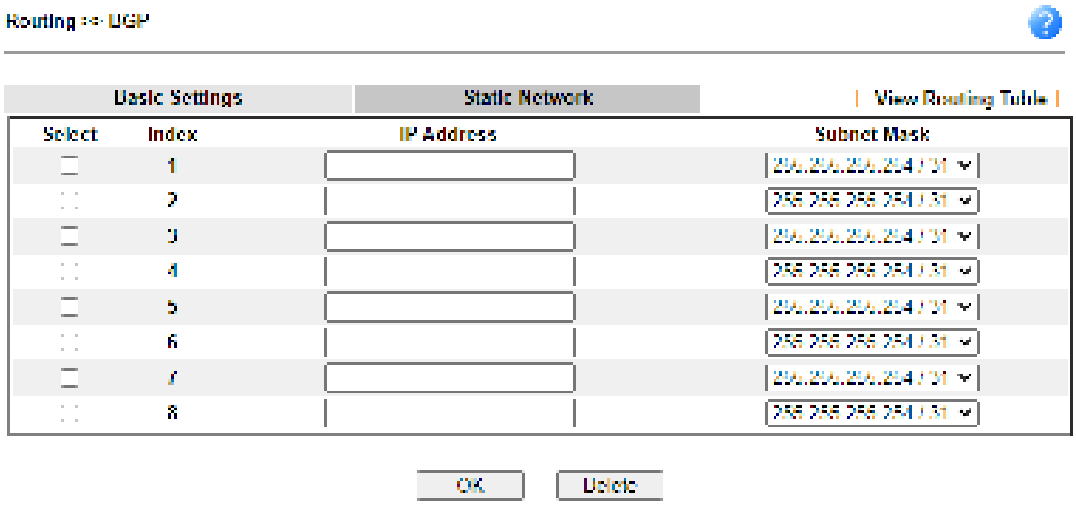
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Local	
Enable BGP	Check the box to enable basic BGP function for local router.
Local AS Number	Set the AS number for local router.
Hold Time	Set the time interval (in seconds) to determine the peer is dead when the router is unable to receive any keepalive message from the peer within the time.
Connect Retry Time	If the router fails to connect to neighboring router, it requires a period of time to reconnect. Set the time interval to do reconnection.
Router ID	Specify the LAN subnet for the router.
Neighbor	
Index	Click the index number link to configure neighbor profile.
Enable	Check the box to enable the basic BGP function for neighboring router.

AS Number	Display the AS Number for neighboring router.
Profile Name	Display the name of the neighboring profile.
IP Address	Display the IP address specified for the neighboring profile.
MD5 Auth	Display the status (enabled or disabled) of MD5 authentication.
Status	Display the connection status for local router and neighboring router.

II-6-3-2 Static Network

This page allows you to configure up to eight neighboring routers for exchanging the routing information with the local router.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Select	Check the box to enable the configuration for the selected index entry.
IP Address	Enter the IP address for a router.
Subnet Mask	Use the drop down list to specify a subnet mask for the IP address.

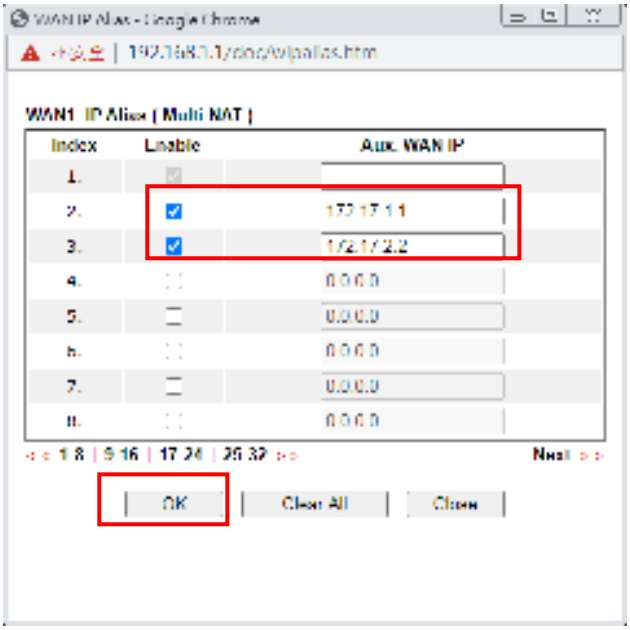
Application Notes

A-1 How to set up Address Mapping with Route Policy?

Address Mapping is used to map a specified private IP or a range of private IPs of NAT subnet into a specified WAN IP (or WAN IP alias IP). Refer to the following figure.

This document introduces how to set up address mapping with Route Policy. When a WAN interface has multiple public IP addresses, Administrator may specify the outgoing IP for certain internal IP address by a Route Policy.

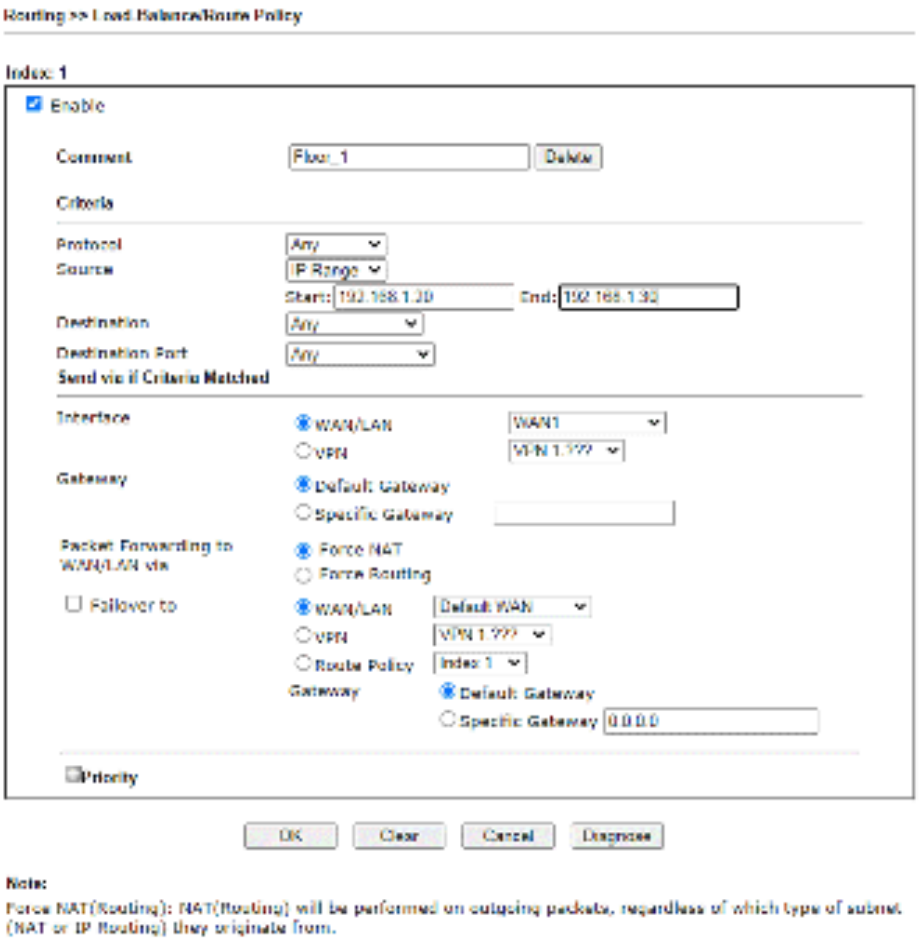
1. Set up WAN IP Alias. Go to **WAN >> Internet Access >> Details** Page, and click on **WAN IP Alias** button.



- Check **Enable**.
- Enter the WAN IP address.
- Click **OK** to save.

After setting up the WAN IP Alias, the IP addresses will be shown in the drop-down list of Interface in Route Policy setting.

2. Go to **Routing>> Load Balance/Route policy**. Create a Route Policy for specific IP address to send from specific WAN IP Address.



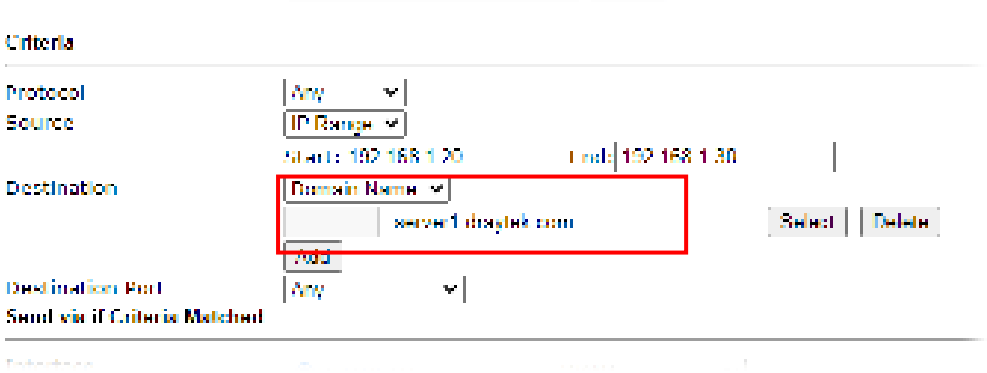
- Enable this policy.
- Enter **Source IP** as the range of private IP address.
- Leave the Destination IP and Port as **Any**.
- Select **Interface** as WAN, and then select Interface address from the drop-down list. (The List can be edited in **WAN IP Alias** setting.)
- Enable **Failover to** other WAN so the traffic will be sent via other Interface when the path fails. But do not enable this option if you want the traffic only to use a designated IP address.
- Click **OK** to save.

3. After the above configuration, packet source from the range between 192.168.1.20 and 192.168.1.30 sent to the Internet will use the public IP 172.17.1.1.

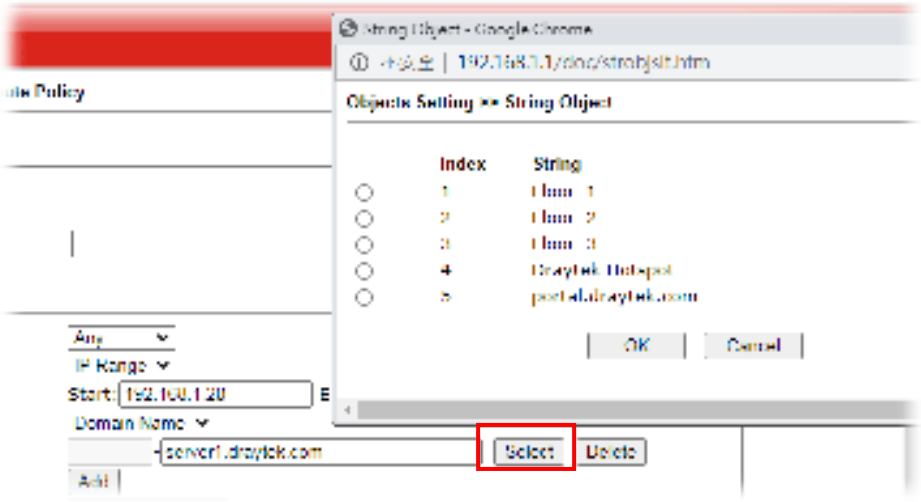
A-2 How to use destination domain name in a route policy?

Route Policy supports using a domain name as destination criteria. It provides a more direct way to set up route polices if the network administrator is trying to specify the gateway for the traffic that destined for a certain website.

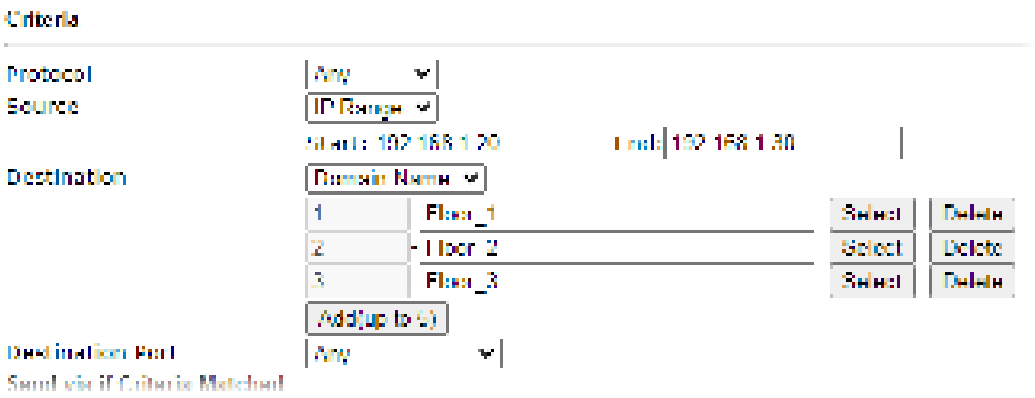
To use a destination domain name as criteria, just select **Domain Name** as **Destination** in Criteria, and enter the domain name in the empty field.



Or you may click **Select**, and use a string that is pre-defined in Objects Settings >> String Object as the domain name.

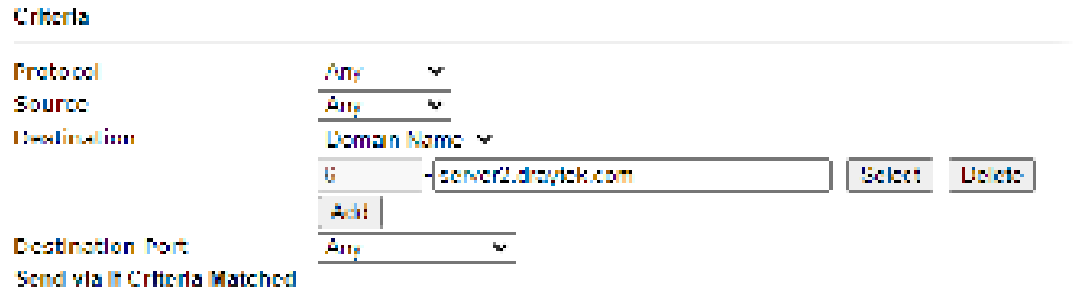


Click **Add** too add more domain names, we can set up to 5 domain names in one route policy.

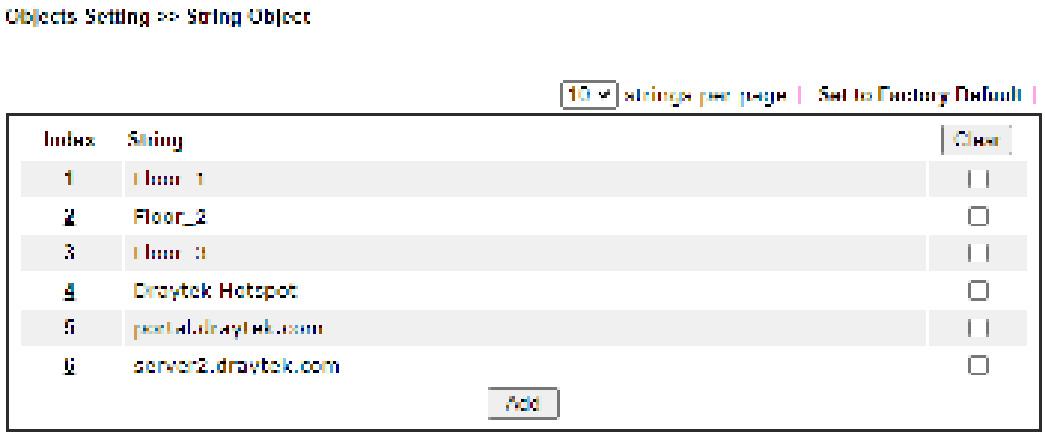


Auto-create String Objects

If you manually enter the domain name in a route policy, after clicking **OK** to apply the route policy, those domain names will be given a number.



That means the router has automatically created string objects for those domain names, so that they can be used in other route policies or other functions.

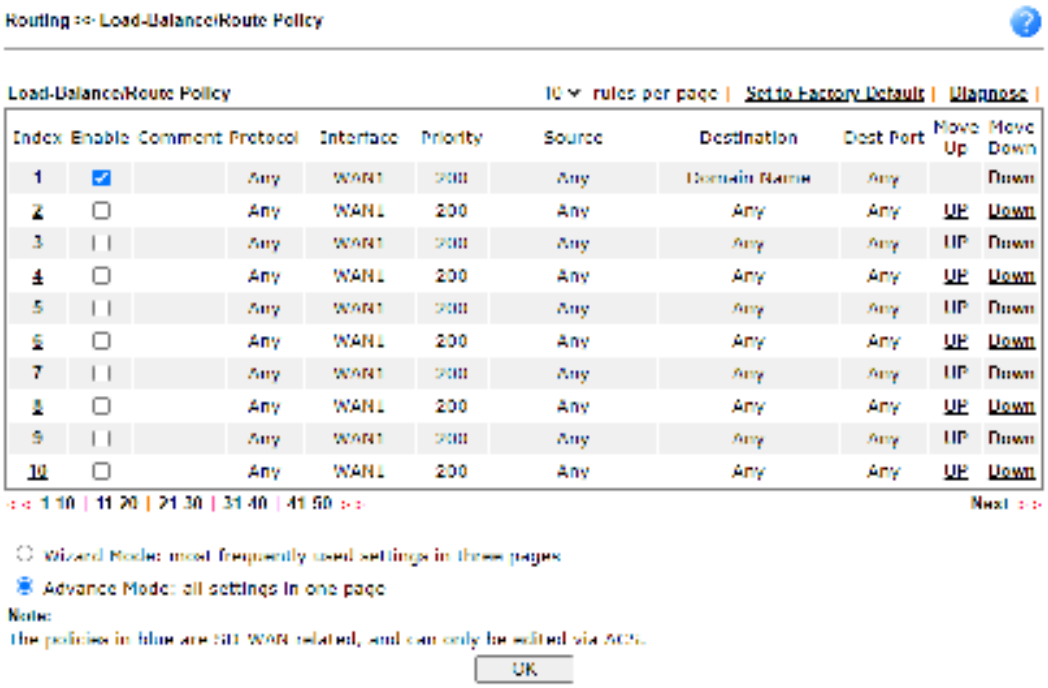


A-3 Introduction to Load Balance/Route Policy

This document introduces the Load-Balance/Route Policy. This feature allows network administrator to manage the outbound traffic more specifically.

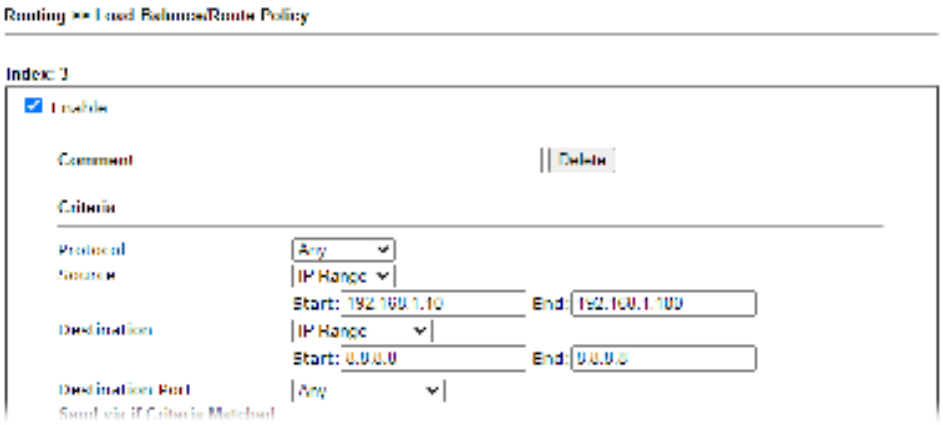
The Policy set in Load-Balance/Route Policy always has higher priority than Default Route and Auto Load Balance set in **WAN >> General Setup**, and always has lower priority than the Firewall Rules. Administrator may also define a priority to this policy.

To configure Route Policy, go to **Routing>>Load-Balance/Route Policy**. The following image is a screen-shot of Load-Balance/Route policy page. It lists all the policies and shows whether the policy is enabled, what are the criteria to match, and through which the interface should the traffic to go if the criteria are matched, and also its priority.



To set up a Route Policy, just click on an Index number. At the bottom of the page, there are two configuration modes could be choose: the Wizard Mode provides a simple and basic configuration; while Advance Mode allows more options.

1. First, set the criteria of the packets to apply this policy.



a. Select a Protocol.

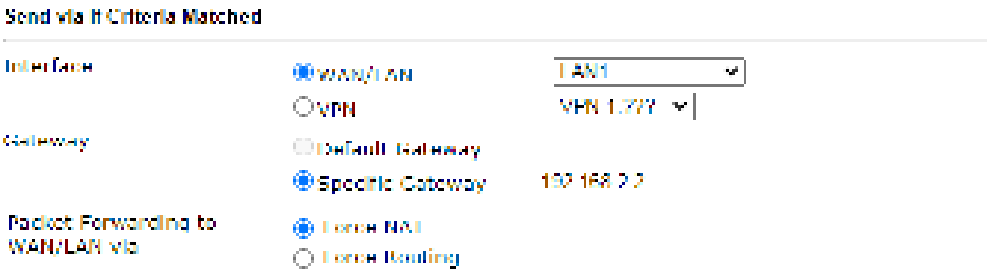
b. Enter the Source IP address range, the Source IP could be a single address if the Start and End are the same.

c. Enter the Destination IP address range.

d. Select the Destination Port.

The above configuration is an example that if a packet is sent from192.168.1.10~192.168.1.100 to 8.8.8.8, no matter what the protocol or destination port is, it will follow this route policy.

2. Next, we select an interface and gateway through which should the packet be sent if it matches the criteria.

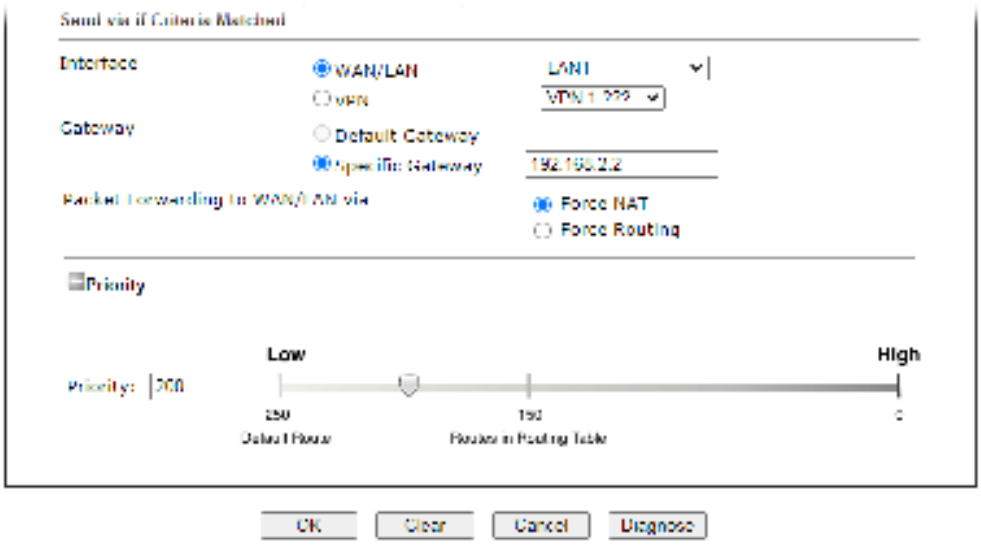


a. Select an Interface.

b. Select a Gateway IP. Note that if Interface is chosen to be a LAN, it is necessary to designate a specific gateway.

The above configuration is an example that if a packet matches the criteria of this Route Policy, it will be sent to the default gateway then the destination through VPN1.

3. In **Advance Mode**, if the Interface is selected as WAN or VPN, there are some more options:



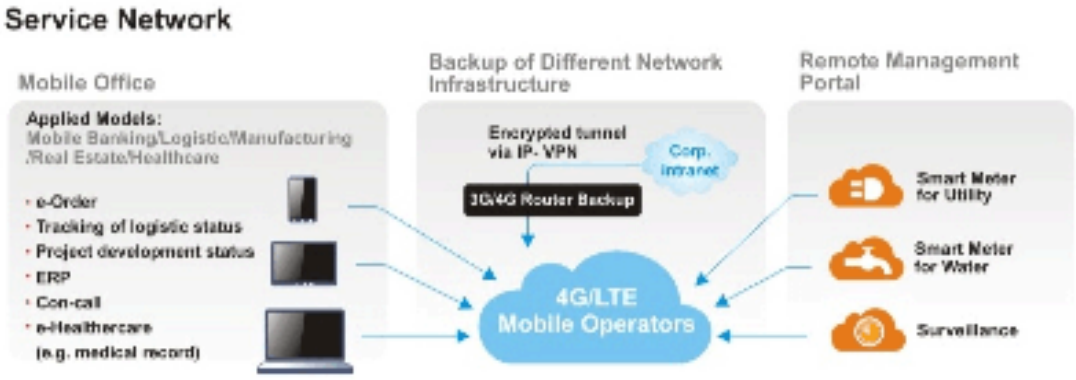
- **Priority**: Administrator may set priority between 1 and 249 for this Route policy, where smaller number indicates higher priority. When two policies are having the same priority, the first (according to the policy index order) matched policy will be implemented.

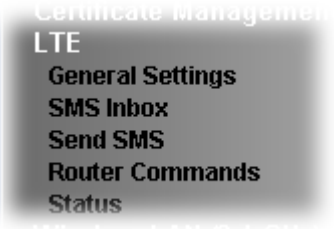
II-7 LTE

LTE WAN with SIM card can provide convinent Internet access for Vigor router. However, we can't stop thinking about what can Vigor router utilize this SIM card to provide more useful functions for user? Now, we have developed some useful functions for user, such as sending SMS from a router to report router status, rebooting router remotely via SMS with taking security into consideration, and so on.

This section can guide you to use the SIM card in LTE WAN to perform SMS related operations.

Info	This function is used for “L” models only.

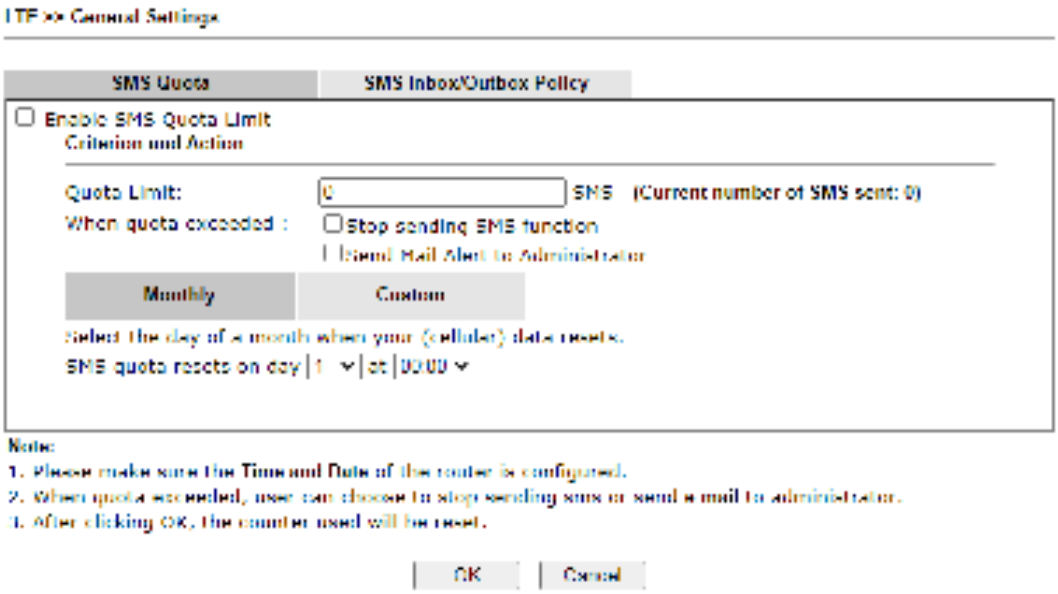




II-7-1 General Settings

This page allows you to configure general settings for LTE. When SMS Quota Limit is enabled, you can specify the number of SMS quota, actions to perform when quota exceeded, and the period of resetting SMS quota used.

II-7-1-1 SMS Quota



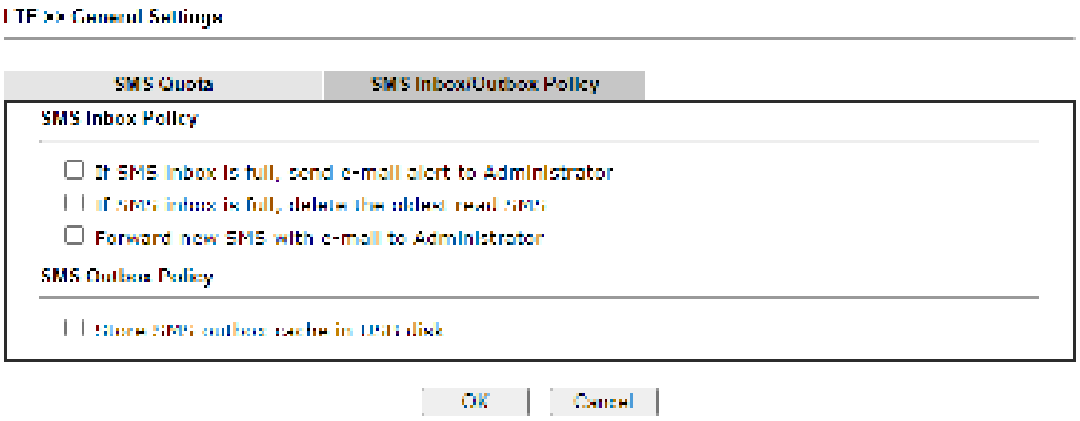
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable SMS Quota Limit	Check the box to enable such feature.
Quota Limit	Specify the maximum number of sending SMS for LTE.
When quota exceeded	There are two actions to be performed when the quota limit is expired. **Stop sending SMS** – If it is checked, no SMS for LTE will be sent after the quota limit is expired. **Send Mail Alert to Administrator** – If it is checkd, a mail alert will be sent to the administrator when the quota limit is expired.
Monthly	This setting is to offer a mechanism of resetting the number of SMS sent record every month.

	SMS quota resets on day XX at XX ...-You can determine the starting day in one month. The number of SMS sent will be reset.
Custom	This setting allows the user to define the billing cycle according to his request. The number of SMS sent will be reset with an interval of cycle duration. **Custom** - Monthly is default setting. If long period or a short period is required, use **Custom**. The period of reset is between 1 day and 60 days. You can determine the cycle duration by specifying the days and the hours. ● **Cycle duration**: Specify the days to reset the number of SMS sent. For example, 7 means the whole cycle is 7 days; 20 means the whole cycle is 20 days. When the time is up, the router will reset the number of SMS sent automatically. ● **Today is day XX in the cycle** -Specify the day in the cycle duration as the starting point which Vigor router will reset the number of SMS sent. For example, 3 means the third day of the duration cycle.

II-7-1-2 SMS Inbox/Outbox

Such page allows you to determine which policy shall be used for SMS inbox/outbox.



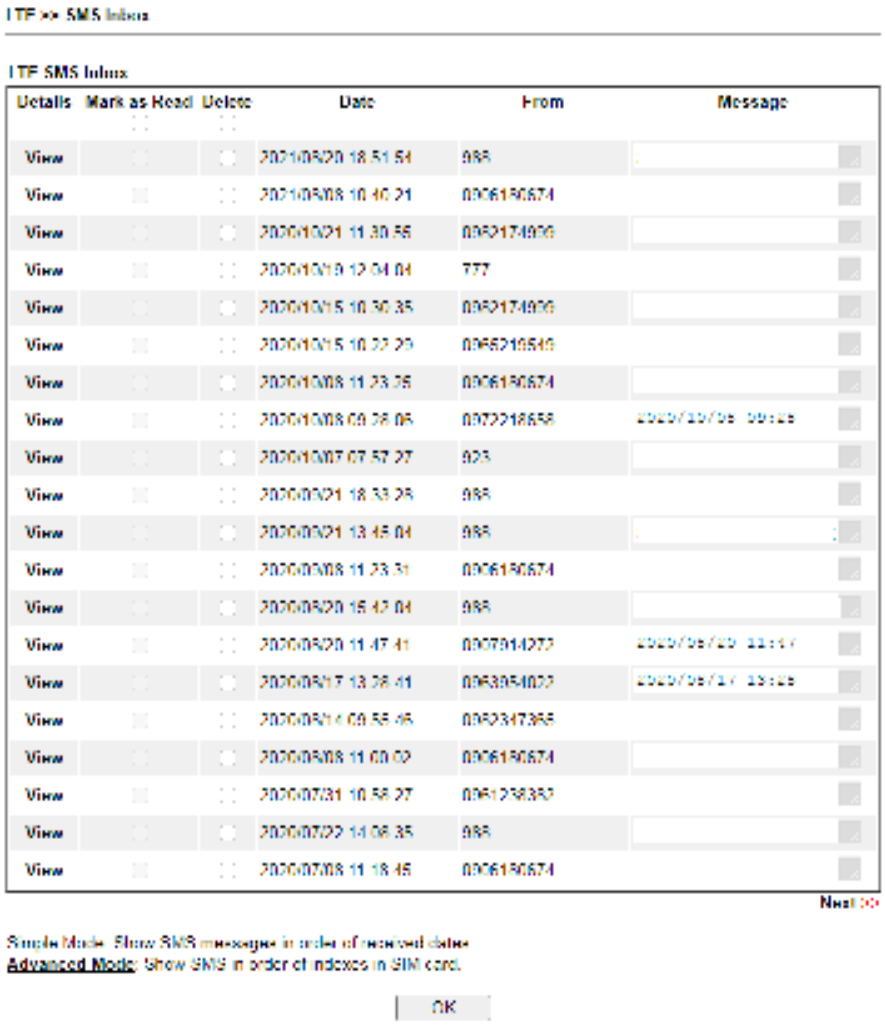
II-7-2 SMS Inbox

This page will list the received SMS messages in the LTE SIM card. The SMS Inbox table shows the received date, the phone number or sender ID where this message was from, and the beginning of the message content.

Since the data size of one SMS is limited, a long message will be sent by multiple SMS. For the convenience of users, we provide two modes. **Simple Mode** lists SMS messages in order for received time. **Advanced Mode** lists SMS in order for real index in the SIM card. Different SIM cards have different capacities. In general, it's around 30 to 40 SMS. Please note that the SIM card can not receive new SMS when all SMS indexes are occupied.

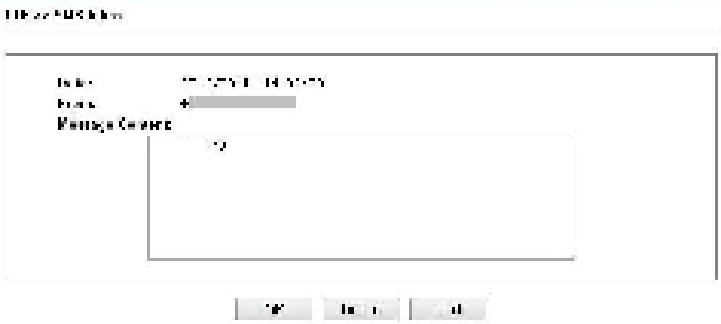
Click the Simple Mode link or the Advanced Mode link below to switch between these two modes.

II-7-2-1 Simple Mode

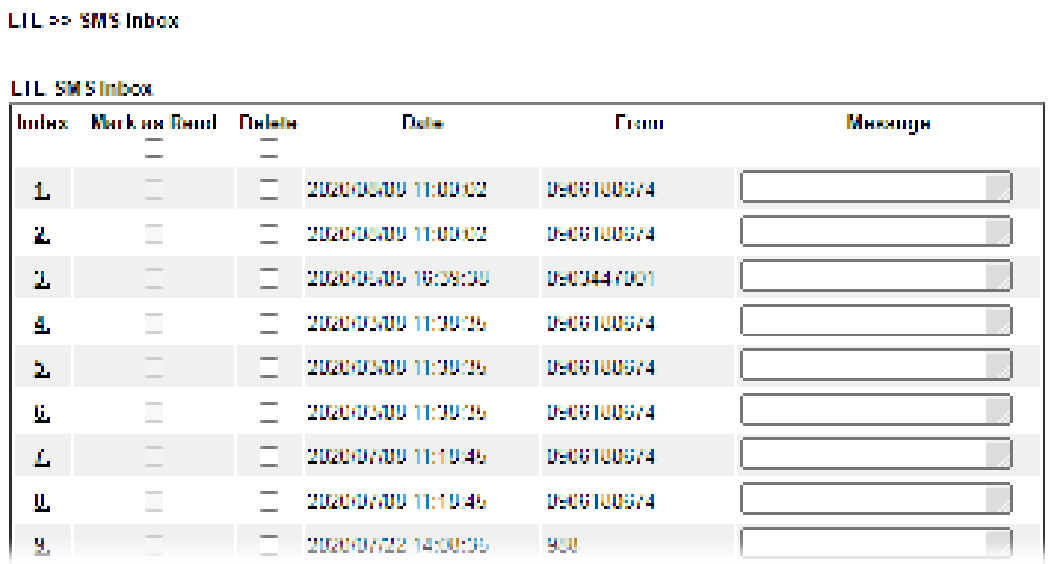


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Details	If you want to read the full content of the message, click the View link of that message to open the following page. It will change the message into "read" state.

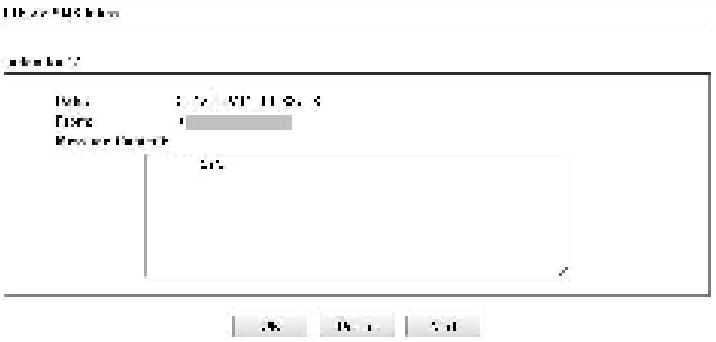
	 • **Message Content** - Display the full content of the message. • **OK** - Return to previous page. • **Delete** - Click it to delete this message and return to previous page. • **Next** - Click it to see the content of next message.
Mark as Read	Those messages in "unread" state are showed in bold text. If you want to change messages into "read" state, select them and click the OK button. Checking the checkbox in title will select all "unread" messages in this page.
Delete	If you want to delete messages, select them and click the OK button. Checking the checkbox in title will select all messages in this page.

II-7-2-1 Advanced Mode



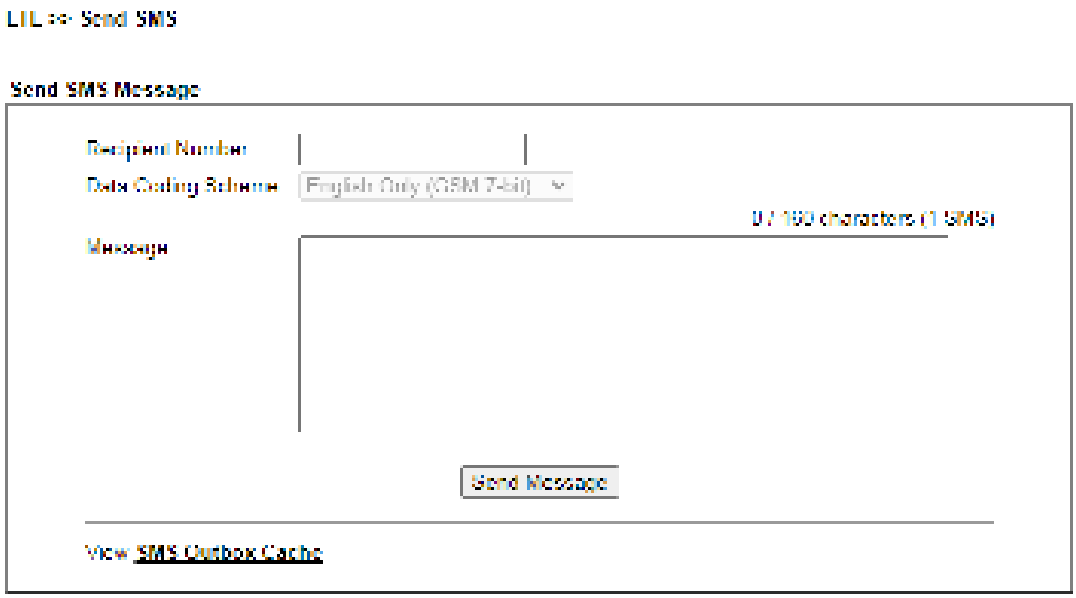
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Mark as Read	Those SMS in "unread" state are shown in bold text. If you want to change SMS into "read" state, select them and click the OK button. Checking the checkbox in title will select all "unread" SMS in this page.
Delete	If you want to delete SMS, select them and click the OK button. Checking the checkbox in title will select all SMS in this page.

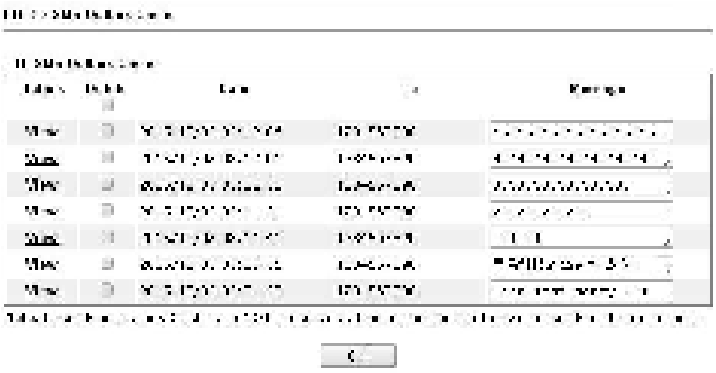
Index	If you want to read the full content of the message of the SMS, click the index link of that SMS to open the following page. It will change all SMS of the message into "read" state.  **Message Content** - Display the full content of the message. **OK** - Return to previous page. **Delete** - Click it to delete all SMS of this message and return to previous page. **Next -** Click it to see the content of next SMS index.

II-7-3 Send SMS

This page is used to send SMS messages by the LTE SIM card. It also displays the number of SMS required to send the message.



Available settings are explained as follows:

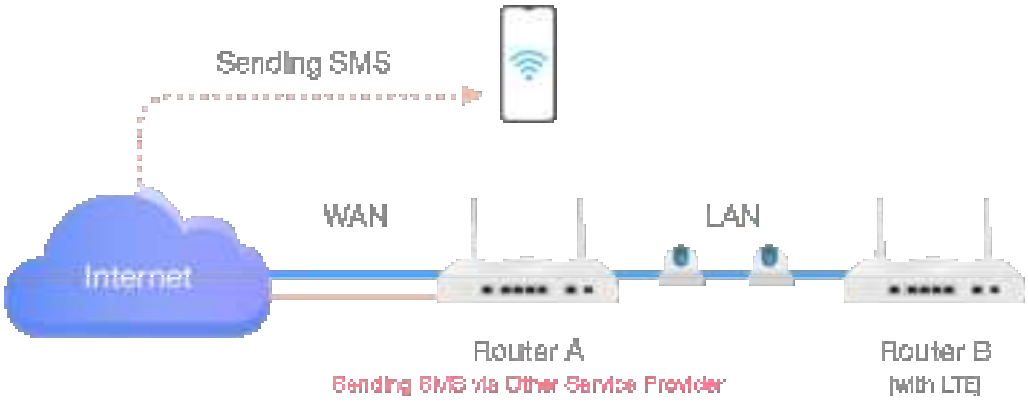
Item	Description
Recipient Number	Enter the phone number of the recipient. The format can be an international phone number (+8869123455678) or a general phone number(0912345678).
Data Coding Scheme	The router will automatically select a suitable Data Coding Scheme according to the current content in Message. GSM 7-bit and UCS-2 are supported.
Message	Enter the message content to send. The total number of characters that you can Enter this field is 1024.
Send Message	Click it to send this SMS message to the recipient immediately.
View SMS Outbox Cache	Display the record of SMS messages sent from the Router. 

II-7-4 SMS Gateway

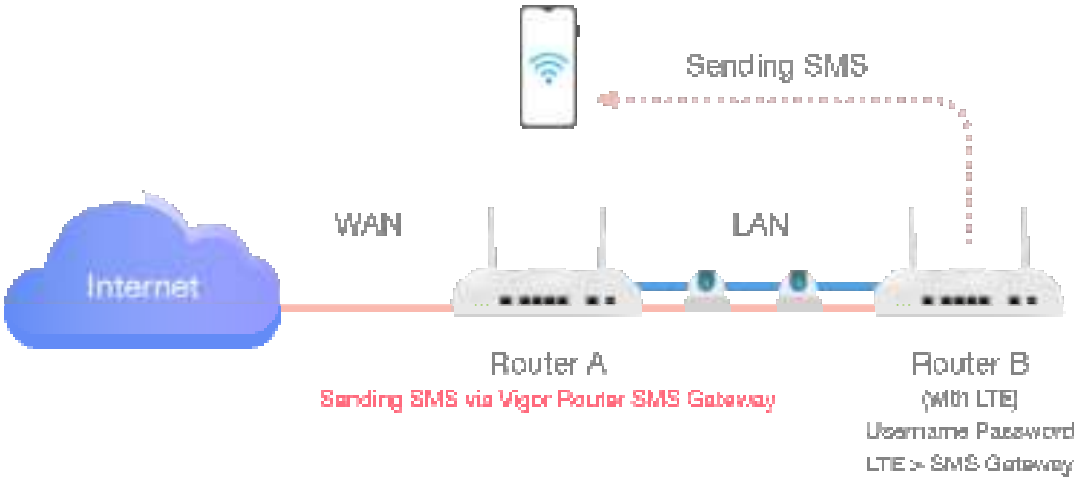
Vigor router can serve as an SMS Gateway for sending alerts via SMS to mobile phones.

Take a look at the following two pictures.

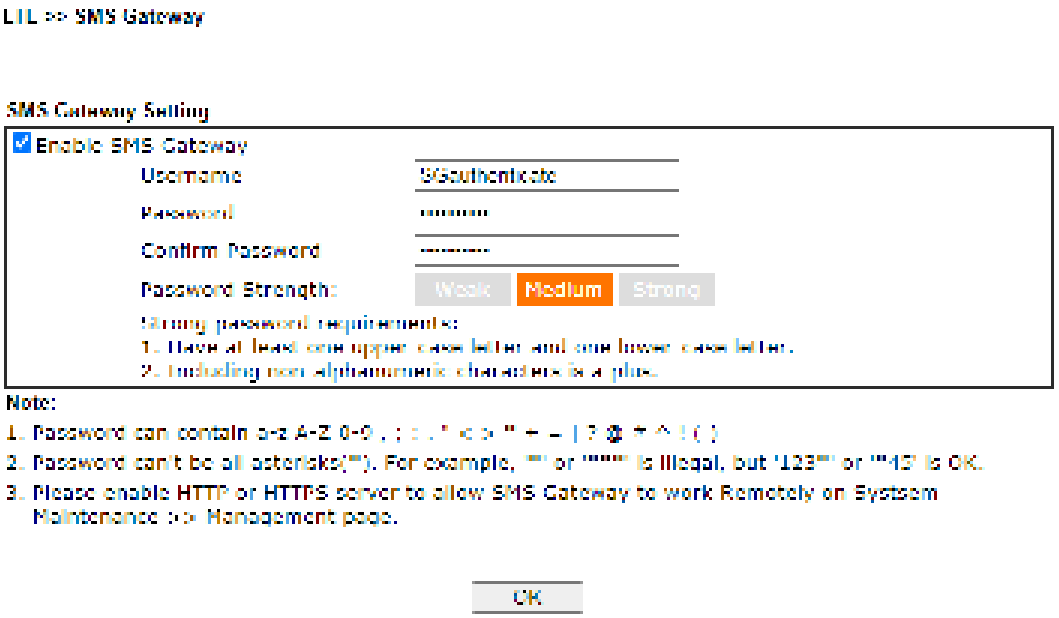
The IP cameras connect to Router A and Router B via LAN. Where there is something wrong with IP camera, Router A can only send the SMS with alerts/warning message via a specified service provider on Internet.



With the feature of SMS Gateway on Router B, even Router A is offline, router B could serve as an SMS Gateway that can send SMS (related to alerts or other events) to mobile phones directly.



For router B, simply open **LTE>>SMS Gateway** and set a pair of username and password.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable SMS Gateway	Check the box to enable SMS gateway of this router.
Username	Define a username.
Password	Define a password.
Confirm Passowrd	Enter the password again.

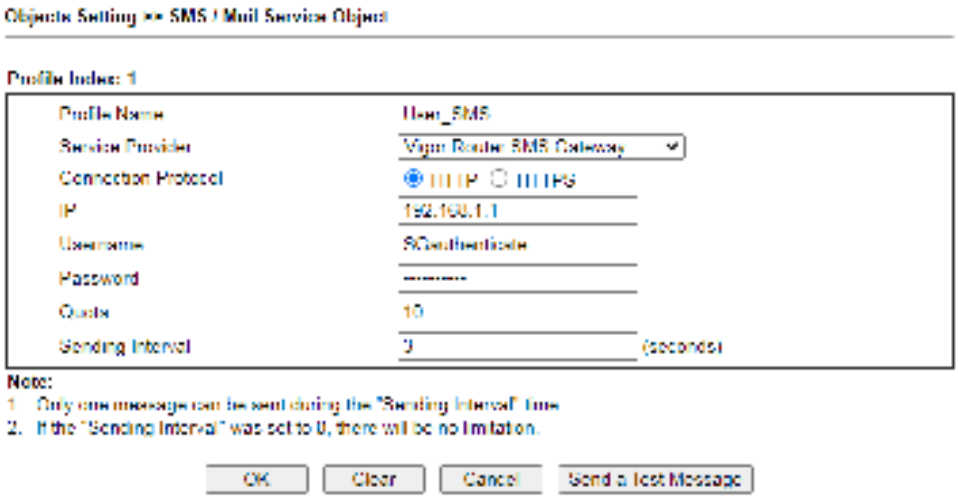
Below shows the settings configured on Router A and Router B.

1. Connect Router A and Router B (with LTE module).

2. On Router B, set a pair of username (e.g., SGauthenticate) and password on **LTE>>SMS Gateway**.

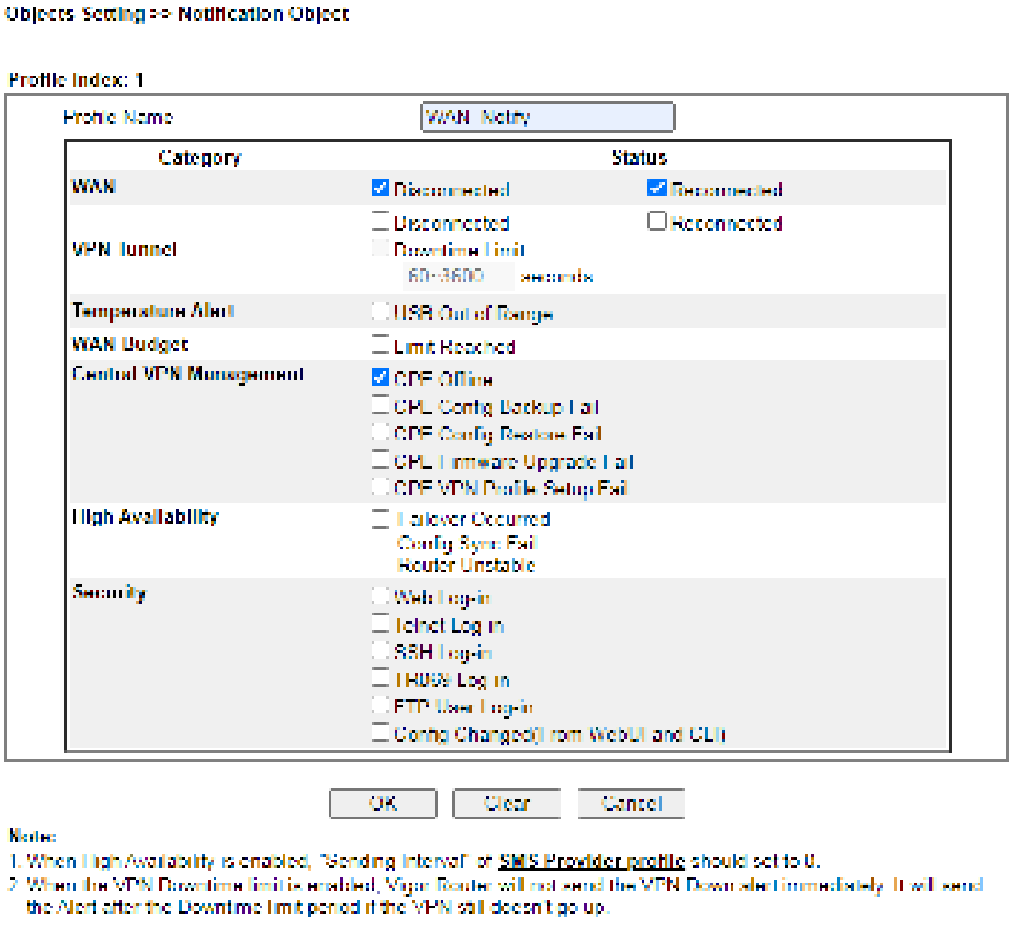
3. On Router A, open **Object Settings >> SMS/Mail Service Object>>Service Provider**. Click any index number (e.g., #1 in this case) to open the following page. Select **Vigor**

Router SMS Gateway as the service provider. Set the WAN IP or LAN IP of this router in IP field.



As for username and password, please enter the same values as configured in Step 2.

4. Next, go to **Objects Setting >> Notification Object**. Select disconnection or connection of WAN, VPN tunnel and click **OK** to save the setting on Router A.



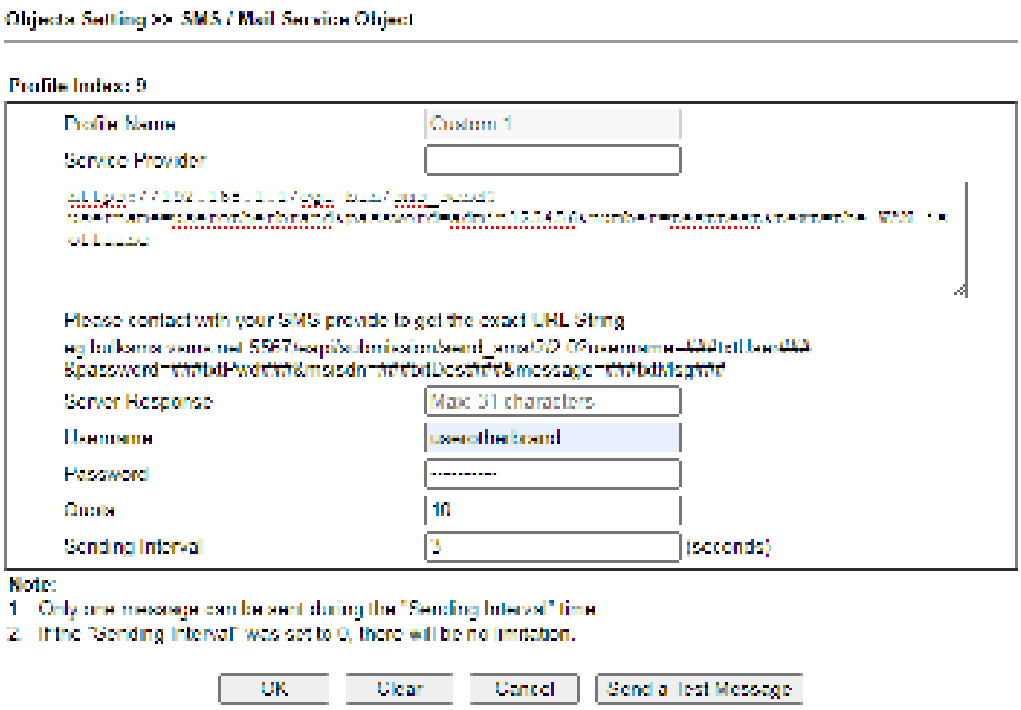
5. Once the router A encounters the condition set above, router B (as an SMS gateway) will send out an SMS to the recipient.

For a user who owns a non-DrayTek LTE router, there is one way to send the SMS to mobile phones through the non-DrayTek LTE router and DrayTek router.

1. Make sure the DrayTek router and the non-DrayTek LTE router are connected via LAN.

2. Obtain the exact URL string from non-DrayTek LTE router.

3. On DrayTek router, open **Objects Setting>>SMS/Mail Service Object** and click the number link #9 or #10 to customize SMS service object.



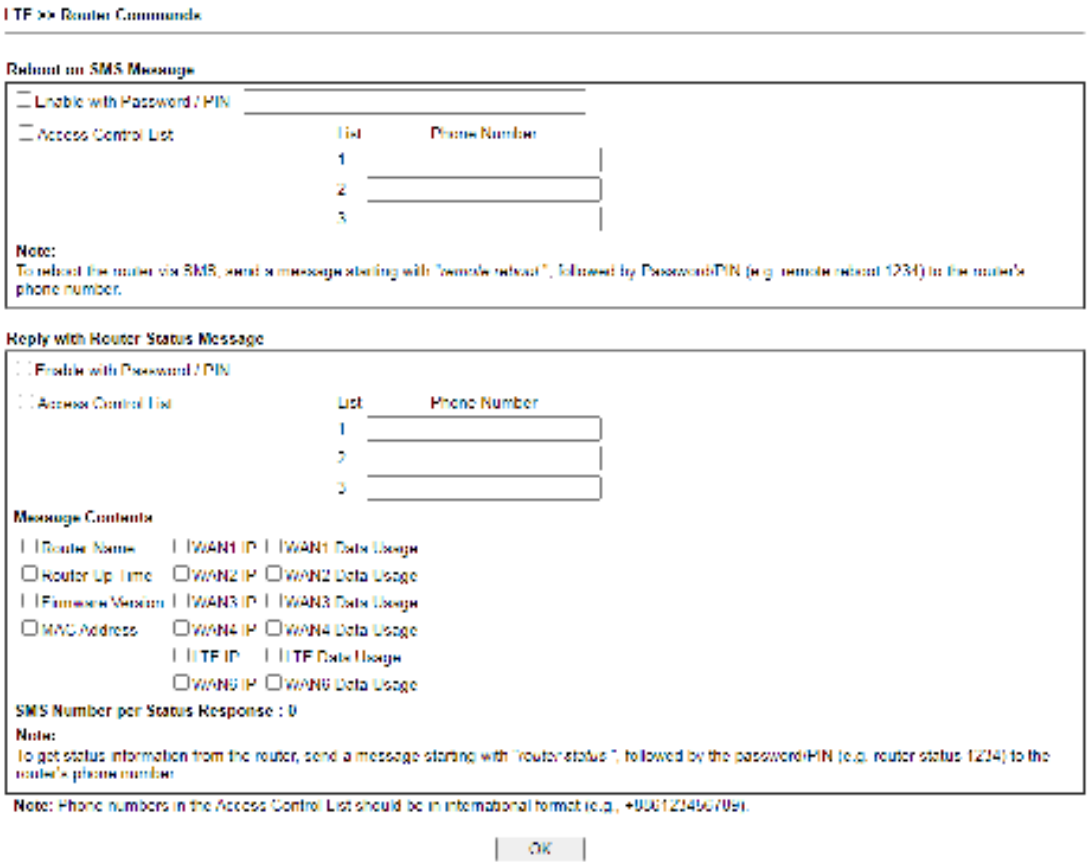
Enter the data coming from the non-DrayTek LTE router, e.g., the URL string, the username, password, and warning message on the entry box.

4. Click **OK** to save the settings.

II-7-5 Router Commands

This page allows the user to set function to reboot Vigor router remotely and get the router status via SMS.

Go to **LTE>>Router Commands** to get the following page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

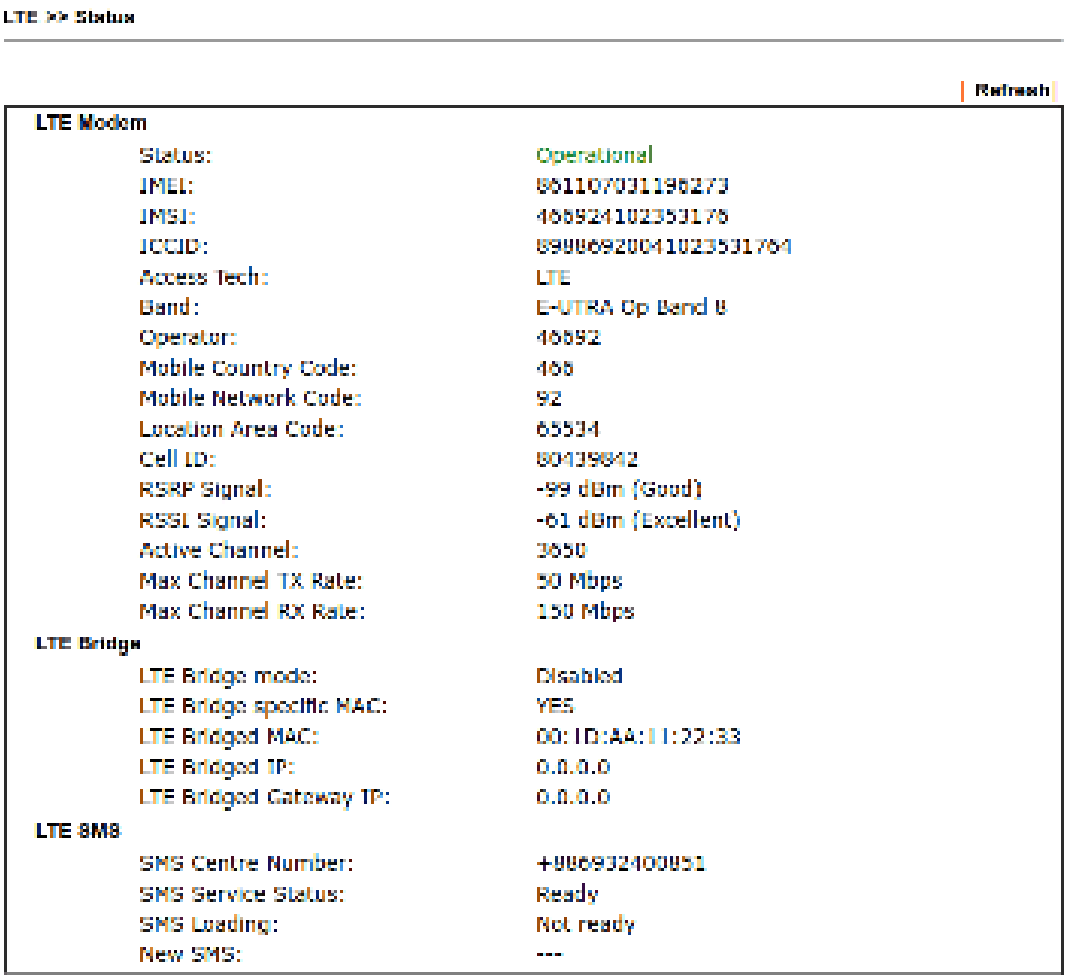
Item	Description
Reboot on SMS Message	
Enable with Password / PIN	To reboot Vigor router remotely via SMS, please check such box and Enter the password/PIN number (treated as authentication for any mobile phone). The password shall be composed by letters, numbers and baseline.

Access Control List	Check the box to type or modify (up to 3) phone numbers. The phone number specified here is capable of sending SMS to reboot such Vigor router remotely. **Note**: If such option is **enabled**, only mobile phones specified here are allowed to send SMS to reboot Vigor router if correct password is given. That is, if it is **disabled** (unchecked), any mobile phone can send SMS to reboot such Vigor router if correct password is given.
Reply with Router Status Message	
Enable with Password / PIN	Users can get the WAN data usage and basic information about Vigor router (e.g., IP address, MAC address) through the mobile phone by entering the password/PIN specified in this field. The password shall be composed by letters, numbers and baseline.
Access Control List	Check the box to type or modify (up to 3) phone numbers. The phone number specified here is capable of getting related information about Vigor router remotely. **Note**: If such option is **enabled**, only mobile phones specified here are allowed to obtaine related information about Vigor router if correct password is given. That is, if it is **disabled** (unchecked), any mobile phone can get the data of Vigor router if correct password is given.
Message Contents	There are several types of message contents for you to select. Choose and check the required item, then Vigor router will offer the status response about that item via SMS.
SMS messages per status response	Display the total number of the type for status response. Display the total number of SMS required to send the status message which contains the current selected Message Contents.

II-7-6 Status

Vigor router with LTE function is capable of accessing into Internet and able to send SMS to specified mobile phone. In addition, it can be treated as a LTE modem.

This page will display basic information about the embedded LTE module and the current LTE connection.



Each item is explained as follows:

Item	Description
LTE Modem	
Status	LTE WAN status.
IMEI	International Mobile Equipment Identity of the embedded LTE module.
IMSI	International Mobile Subscripber Identity of the LTE SIM card.
Access Tech	Type of LTE connection (CDMA/GSM/WCDMA/LTE/TD-SCDMA).
Band	Band of LTE connection.
Operator	ISP name of LTE connection.

Mobile Country Code / **Mobile Network Code** / **Location Area Code** / **Cell ID :**	Base station information.
Signal	Signal strength of LTE connection.
Active Channel	Frequency of LTE connection.
Interference with 2.4GHz WLAN	Whether the current LTE frequency causes interference with 2.4G wireless. If Yes, the interfered 2.4G wireless channels will be indicated.
Max Channel TX Rate / **Max Channel RX Rate**	Maximum TX/RX link rate of LTE connection.
LTE SMS	
SMS Centre Number	The phone number for SMS service of the LTE SIM card.
SMS Service status	Whether the SMS service of the LTE SIM card is ready.
SMS Loading	Whether the received SMS messages in the LTE SIM card have been loaded to the Router.
New SMS	The number of unread SMS in SMS Inbox.

This page is left blank.

Part III Wireless LAN

Wireless LAN enables high mobility so WLAN users can simultaneously access all LAN facilities just like on a wired LAN as well as Internet access.

III-1 Wireless LAN (2.4GHz/5GHz)

This function is available on wireless models only (models with –ax or –ac suffixes).

In recent years, the market for wireless communications has enjoyed tremendous growth. Wireless technology now reaches virtually every location on earth. Billions of people exchange information daily with wireless communication products. The Vigor2927 series of wireless routers (with “n”, “n-plus”, or “ac” in the model name), designed with maximum flexibility and efficiency in mind, is ideal for use in a small office or home. In a business environment, any authorized personnel can bring a WLAN-equipped tablet, PDA or notebook into a meeting room and connect to the network without drilling holes through walls or tearing up flooring to lay a clot of LAN cabling. Wireless networking enables high mobility so WLAN users can access all LAN resources in the same manner just as they would on a wired LAN, but without the cables.

All Vigor2927 wireless routers support 2.4 GHz. ac models add support for 5 GHz frequencies. Channel operations of 20 and 40 MHz are possible on the 2.4 GHz spectrum, and 20, 40 and 80 MHz are supported on the 5 GHz spectrum. “ac” models (2865ac) support data rates of up to 1.3 Gbps on 802.11ac 80 MHz channels, whereas “n” models support data rates of up to 300 Mbps on 802.11n 40 MHz channels.

Info	The actual data throughput will vary according to the network conditions and environmental factors, including volume of network traffic, network overhead and building materials.

In an Infrastructure Mode of wireless network, Vigor wireless router plays a role as an Access Point (AP) connecting to lots of wireless clients or Stations (STA). All the STAs will share the same Internet connection via Vigor wireless router. The wireless network settings, such as SSID, channels, encryption protocol, can be configured in General Settings.

Multiple SSIDs

Vigor wireless routers support up to four SSIDs (Service Set Identifiers) per band for wireless connections. A service set is a group of wireless network clients that have the same

networking parameters. Each service set can be configured to have a unique name (SSID) and specific download and upload rates, and can be used by different categories of users.

Real-time Hardware Encryption

Vigor wireless routers are equipped with a hardware AES encryption engine to provide the most effective and efficient protection of wireless traffic, without sacrificing user experience.

Complete Security Standard Selection

To ensure the security and privacy of your wireless communication, we provide several prevailing standards on market.

WEP (Wired Equivalent Privacy) is a legacy method to encrypt each frame transmitted via radio using either a 64-bit or 128-bit key. Usually access point will preset a set of four keys and it will communicate with each station using only one out of the four keys.

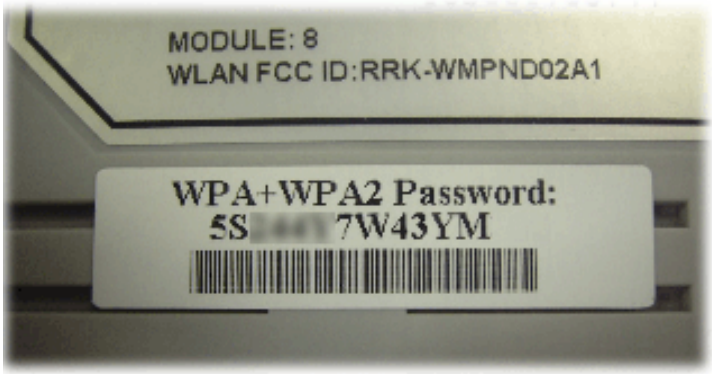
WPA (Wi-Fi Protected Access), the most dominating security mechanism in industry, is separated into two categories: WPA-personal or called WPA Pre-Share Key (WPA/PSK), and WPA-Enterprise or called WPA/802.1x.

In WPA-Personal, a pre-defined key (PSK) is used to encrypt traffic during data transmission. WPA uses the Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP) for data encryption whereas WPA2 applies AES (Advanced Encryption Standard). A major advantage of WPA-Enterprise is that it supports not only encryption but also authentication.

You should select the appropriate security mechanism according to your needs. Because WEP has proven to be vulnerable to attacks, you should consider using WPA instead for the most secure connection. No matter which security suite you select, they all will enhance the over-the-air data protection and /or privacy on your wireless network. The Vigor wireless router is very flexible and can support multiple secure connections with both WEP and WPA at the same time.

Info

The default password (PSK) is listed on a label attached to the bottom of the router. Since anyone who has physical access to the router can discover the default password, you are strongly advised to change it.



Separate the Wireless and the Wired LAN- WLAN Isolation

WLAN Isolation allows you to separate wireless LAN clients from wired ones, either for the purpose of quarantining certain users, or restricting their access to LAN resources. When WLAN isolation is enabled on an SSID, its users will only be able to connect to the WAN (i.e., internet). This is ideal for providing visitors Internet access while keeping the wired network secure.

For the highest degree of security, you may consider adding firewall rules to filter access by MAC address.

Manage Wireless Stations - Station List

All stations on the wireless network and their connection status is shown here.

DFS Restrictions

In certain parts of the world, there are radar systems that are primary users of the 5 GHz band. WLAN equipment on the 5 GHz band is considered secondary users and must not cause interference to the primary users. By utilizing a feature called Dynamic Frequency Selection, the wireless router detects the presence of radar signals and relocates the wireless network to a clear channel. DFS channels vary by region, and we must obtain certification from the authorities before making them available for use on the Vigor router. We are working on DFS certification in Europe and will open up those channels by releasing new firmware once we pass certification. In Europe, these DFS channels will be made available 52, 56, 60, 64, 100, 104, 108, 112, 116, 120, 124, 128, 132, 136 and 140.

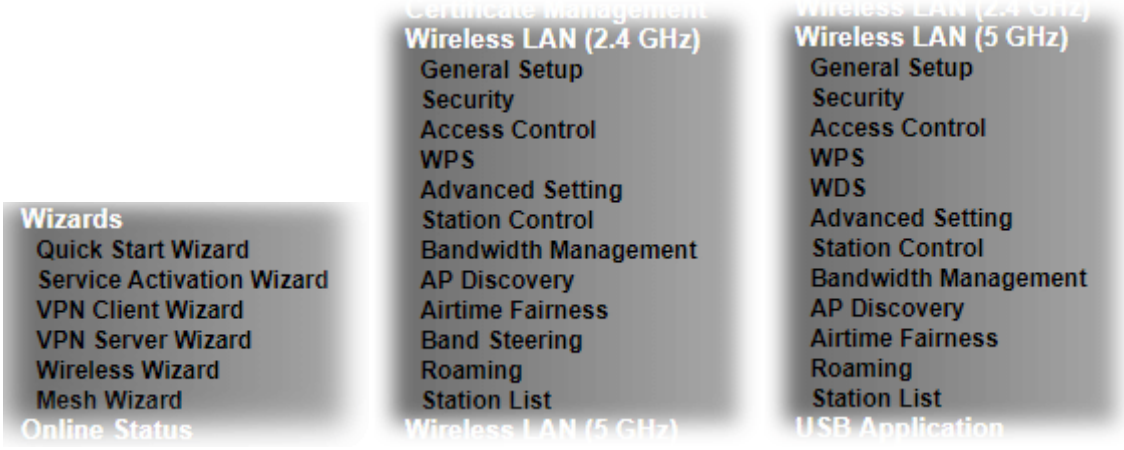
At this time, we have no plans to pursue DFS certification in the USA, so DFS channels will not be available in the foreseeable future. The U.S. DFS channels 52, 56, 60, 64, 100, 104, 108, 112, 116, 120, 124, 128, 132, 136 and 140 will not be available on routers sold in the United States.

In the rest of world, there are restrictions on DFS channels as well. Uncertified DFS channels will be unavailable for selection depending on the country code programmed in the router.

WPS

WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup) makes connecting wireless clients to wireless access points and routers a simple process.

Web User Interface



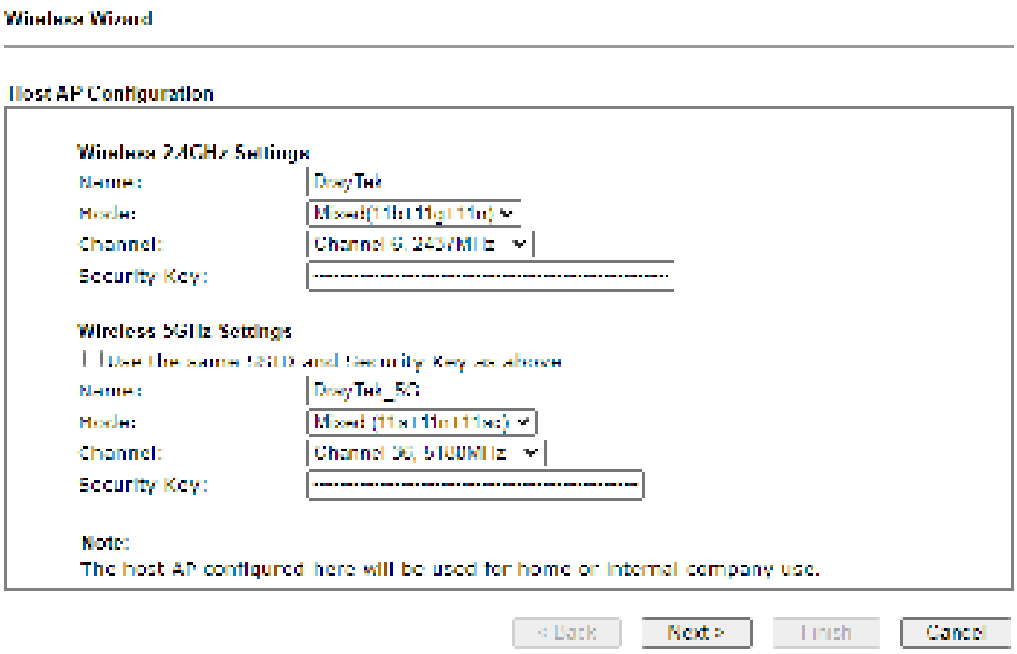
III-1-1 Wireless Wizard

On Wi-Fi-equipped models, you can configure the wireless access point (AP) using the Wireless Wizard. The Host AP Configuration sets up SSID 1 for use by internal users, who are allowed to access both the LAN and the WAN (Internet), whereas the Guest AP Configuration sets up SSID 2 for use by visitors, who are allowed only WAN access and whose access speeds can optionally be throttled.

The Wireless Wizard allows you to quickly configure a host SSID (for internal use, such as in a home or business environment), and optionally a guest SSID (for wireless clients that are restricted to Internet access only, typically used by visitors).

Follow the steps listed below:

1. On the menu bar, click on **Wizards**, and then **Wireless Wizard**.
2. The Host AP Configuration page appears. This page sets up SSID 1 for use by internal users. SSID 1 configured using the wizard will have no access speed throttling (by means of the Rate Control feature), and both the LAN and the WAN will be accessible.



Available settings are explained as follows:

User-configurabe Item	Description
Wireless 2.4GHz Settings	
Name	Service Set Identification (SSID), which shows up as the AP identifier. Maximum length is 32 characters.
Mode	Allowed Wi-Fi modes. 802.11b is the original Wi-Fi mode on the 2.4 GHz band and supports raw data rates up to 11 Mbit/s. 802.11g allows for enhanced throughput up to 54 Mbit/s. 802.11n provides throughput up to 300 MHz. Available selections are • 11b Only • 11g Only • 11n Only (2.4 GHz) • Mixed(11b+11g) • Mixed(11g+11n) • Mixed(11b+11g+11n) The selections labeled “Mixed” enable multiple simultaneously-active modes.
Channel	Wi-Fi channel used for this SSID. If set to Auto, the router uses the best available channel.
Security Key	The Pre-shared Key (PSK) used by WPA2/PSK (Wireless Protected Access 2/Pre-shared Key) to encrypt wireless traffic. The key is composed of 8 to 63 ASCII characters. You may also specify the key using 64 hexadecimal digits, prefixed with the sequence 0x (“0x321253abcde…”).
Wireless 5GHz Settings	
Use the same SSID and Security Key as above	If selected, the SSID Name and Security Key from the 2.4 GHz section will be used.

Name	Service Set Identification (SSID), which shows up as the AP identifier. Maximum length is 32 characters.
Mode	Allowed Wi-Fi modes. 802.11a is the original Wi-Fi mode on the 5 GHz band and supports raw data rates up to 11 Mbit/s. 802.11n enhances the throughput and provides up to 300 MHz. The newest standard, 802.11ac, can achieve 1.3 Gbit/s of data throughput on the 5 GHz band. Available selections are • 11a Only • 11n Only (5GHz) • Mixed(11a+11n) • Mixed(11a+11n+11ac) The selections labeled “Mixed” enable multiple simultaneously-active modes.
Channel	Wi-Fi channel used for this SSID. If set to Auto, the router uses the best available channel.
Security Key	The Pre-shared Key (PSK) used by WPA2/PSK (Wireless Protected Access 2/Pre-shared Key) to encrypt wireless traffic. The key is composed of 8 to 63 ASCII characters. You may also specify the key using 64 hexadecimal digits, prefixed with the sequence 0x (“0x321253abcde…”).
Next	Click it to get into the next setting page.
Cancel	Exit the wireless wizard without saving any changes.

3. Click **Next** to proceed to the Guest AP Configuration page. The Guest AP Configuration page appears. This page sets up SSID 2 for use by guest users. SSID 2 configured using the wizard can optionally be set up with access speed throttling (by means of the Rate Control feature), and only the WAN (the Internet) will be accessible.

   SSID 2 shares the same Mode and Channel settings as SSID 1 configured on the previous page.

   Available settings are explained as follows:

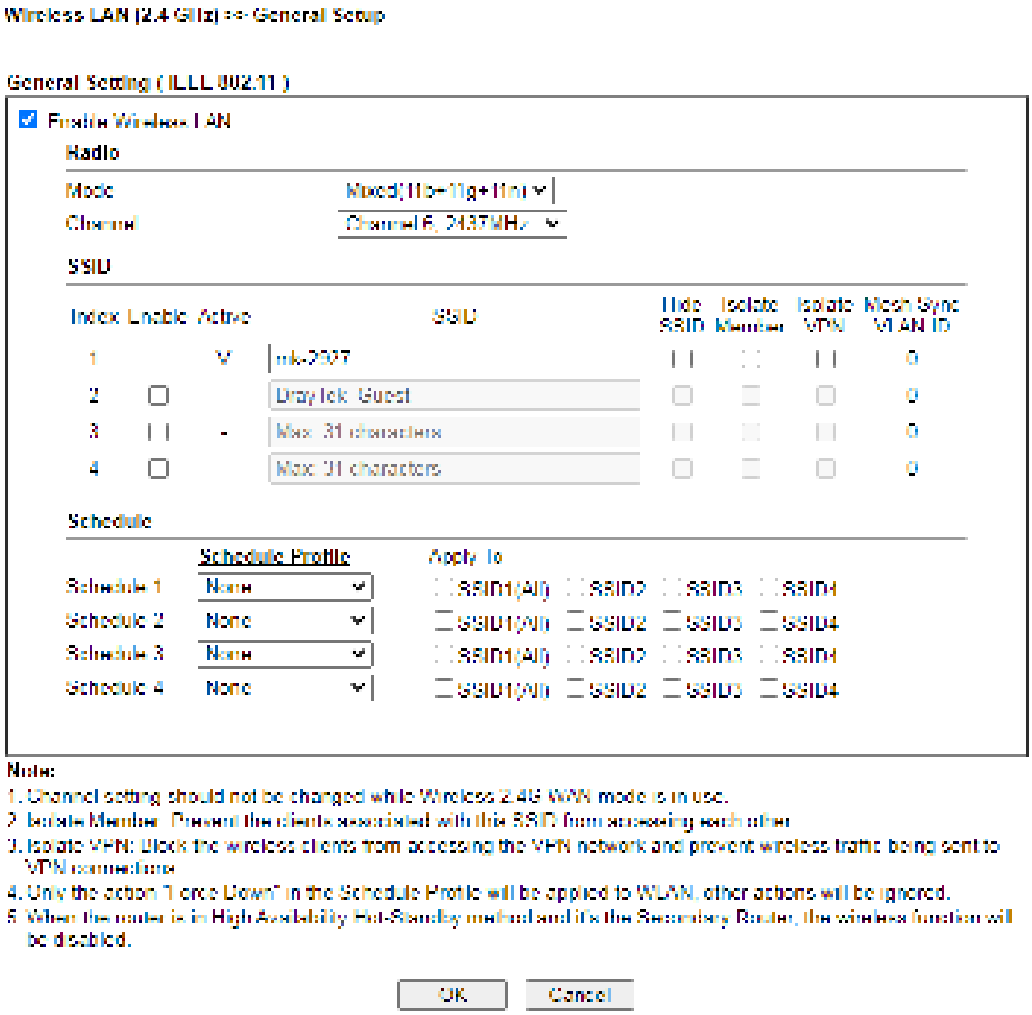
User-configurabe Item	Description
Wireless 2.4GHz Settings	
Enable/Disable	Enable or disable the SSID for guest use.
SSID	Service Set Identification (SSID), which shows up as the AP identifier. Maximum length is 32 characters.
Security Key	The Pre-shared Key (PSK) used by WPA2/PSK (Wireless Protected Access 2/Pre-shared Key) to encrypt wireless traffic. The key is composed of 8 to 63 ASCII characters. You may also specify the key using 64 hexadecimal digits, prefixed with the sequence 0x (“0x321253abcde…”).
Bandwidth Limit	**Enable** – Check the box to set the bandwidth limit for data transmission in upload and download. It controls the data transmission rate through wireless connection. **Total Upload** – Check Enable and Enter the transmitting rate for data upload. Default value is 30,000 kbps. **Total Download** – Enter the transmitting rate for data download. Default value is 30,000 kbps.
Wireless 5GHz Settings	
Enable/Disable	Click it to enable or disable settings in this page.
Use the same SSID and Security Key as above	If selected, the SSID Name and Security Key from the 2.4 GHz section will be used.
SSID	Service Set Identification (SSID), which shows up as the AP identifier. Maximum length is 32 characters.
Security Key	The Pre-shared Key (PSK) used by WPA2/PSK (Wireless Protected Access 2/Pre-shared Key) to encrypt wireless traffic. The key is composed of 8 to 63 ASCII characters. You may also specify the key using 64 hexadecimal digits, prefixed with the sequence 0x (“0x321253abcde…”).
Next	Click it to get into the next setting page.
Cancel	Exit the wireless wizard without saving any changes.

4. Click **Next** to proceed to the Configuration Summary page.

5. The **Configuration Summary** page displays all the settings you have entered. Click **Finish** to save the settings, **Back** to make changes, or **Cancel** to exit the wizard without saving the settings.

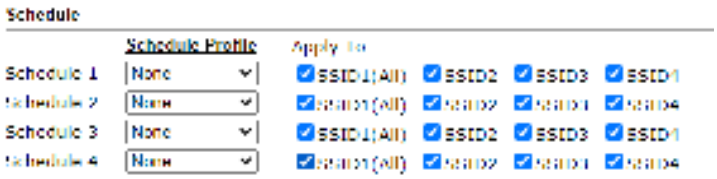
III-1-2 General Setup

The **Wireless LAN>>Genera Setup** section lets you configure the most basic settings of your wireless network, including the SSIDs, WLAN channels and bandwidth control.



Available settings are explained as follows:

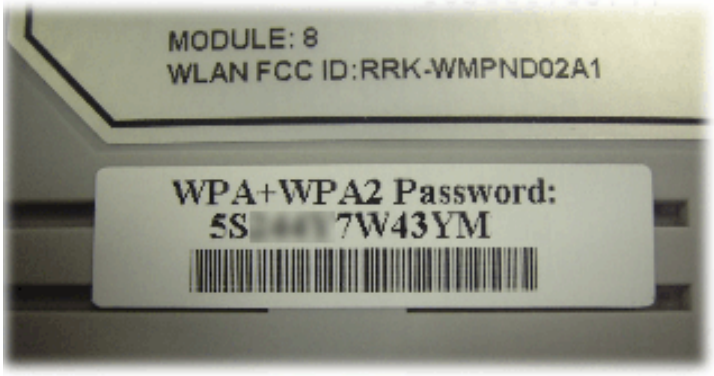
Item	Description
Enable Wireless LAN	Check the box to enable wireless function.
Radio	
Mode	Select the 802.11 mode allowed on the band. On the 2.4 GHz band, the following wireless mode options are available: • 11b Only • 11g Only • 11n Only (2.4 GHz) • Mixed (11b+11g) • Mixed (11g+11n) • Mixed (11b+11g+11n) On the 5 GHz band on ac models (e.g., 2927ac), the following options are available: • 11a Only

	• 11n Only (5 GHz) • Mixed (11a+11n) • Mixed (11a+11n+11ac)
Channel	Allows you to specify a particular wireless channel to use, or let the system determine the optimal channel by selecting "**Auto**". The list of available channels varies depending on the locale for which the router is intended.
SSID	
SSID	Service Set Identification (SSID), which shows up as the AP identifier. Maximum length is 32 characters.
Hide SSID	Select to keep SSIDs from showing up when scans are performed by wireless clients, which makes it harder for unauthorized clients or STAs to join your wireless LAN. Depending on the wireless client and software used, the user may see only an AP listed without the SSID, or the AP might not even show up.
Isolate	**Member** – Check this box to disallow communication between wireless clients (stations) on the same SSID. **VPN** – Check this box to block wireless clients (stations) from accessing VPN clients.
Mesh Sync VLAN ID	Display the VLAN ID, which will synchronize copy to the mesh node using the same SSID.
Schedule	
Schedule Profile	Set the wireless LAN to be disabled at certain time intervals. You may choose up to 4 schedules out of the 15 schedules defined in **Applications >> Schedule**. Only "Force Down" schedule profiles take effect, and the wireless function will be turned off for the duration of the profile. The default setting is blank for all schedules, meaning wireless function will always work.
Apply To	Selected SSID (2 /3 /4) will be forced up /down based on the schedule profile used. 

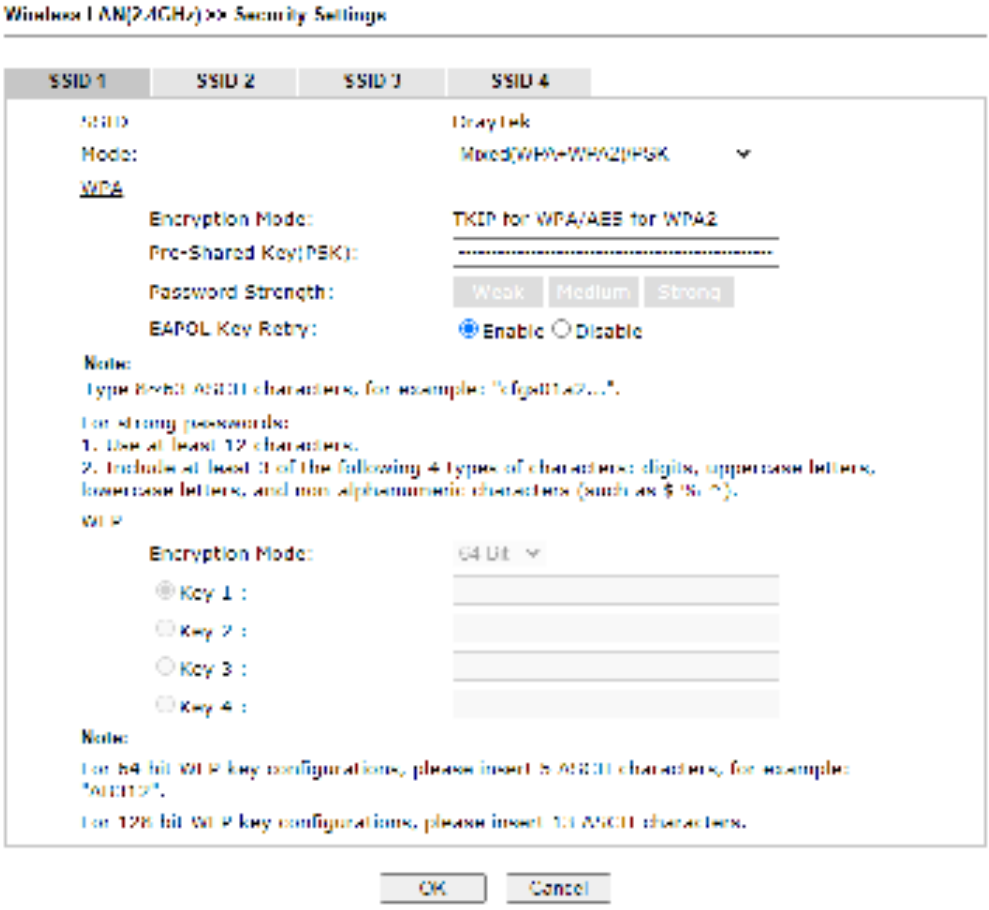
To save changes on the General Settings page, select **OK**; to discard changes, select **Cancel**.

III-1-3 Security

Every router has a default wireless password (PSK) which is provided on a label attached to the bottom of the router. For the wireless client who wants to access into Internet through such router, please input the default PSK value for connection.



For extra security you can set your own wireless password by clicking the **Wireless LAN>>Security Settings** entry on the Web User Interface. Each of the 4 SSIDs can be configured independently using their own tab page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Mode	This dialog box lists all available security modes.

	Info You should also set **Wireless LAN(2.4GHz) 802.1X Setting** simultaneously if 802.1x mode is selected. **Disable** – Encryption mechanism is disabled. **WEP** – Allow only connections from WEP clients. Encryption key should be entered in the WEP Key section. **WEP/802.1x Only -** Accepts only WEP clients and the encryption key is obtained dynamically from RADIUS server with 802.1X protocol. Allow only connections from WEP clients. Encryption key is obtained from a RADIUS server using the 802.1X protocol. **WPA/802.1x Only -** Allow only connections from WPA clients. Encryption key is obtained from a RADIUS server using the 802.1X protocol. **WPA2/802.1x Only-** Allow only connections from WPA2 clients. Encryption key is obtained from a RADIUS server using the 802.1X protocol. **Mixed (WPA+WPA2/802.1x only) -** Allow connections from both WPA and WPA2 clients. Encryption key is obtained from a RADIUS server using the 802.1X protocol. **WPA/PSK -** Allow connections only from WPA clients. Encryption key should be entered in the PSK field. **WPA2/PSK -** Allow connections only from WPA2 clients. Encryption key should be entered in the PSK field. **Mixed (WPA+ WPA2)/PSK -** Allow connections from both WPA and WPA2 clients. Encryption key should be entered in the PSK field. **WPA3/SAE -** Allow connections only from WPA3 clients. Encryption key should be entered in the PSK field. **Mixed (WPA2+ WPA3)/SAE -** Allow connections from both WPA2 and WPA3 clients. Encryption key should be entered in the PSK field. **OWE** - WPA3 also introduces a new open and secure connection mode; "Opportunistic Wireless Encryption" (OWE). It allows the clients to connect without a password, ideal for hotspot networks, but the connection between each individual client is uniquely encrypted behind the scenes.
WPA	WPA encrypts each frame transmitted from the radio using the key, which is either entered in the PSK (Pre-Shared Key) field, or or automatically negotiated via 802.1x authentication from a RADIUS server. **Pre-Shared Key (PSK)** - Enter 8~63 ASCII characters, for example, “012345678..” , or 64 hexadecimal digits with a leading “0x”, for example, "0x321253abcde...". **Password Strength** – The system will display the strength of the password, indicated by the words “weak”, “medium” or “strong”. **EAPOL Key Retry** - The default setting is "Enable". It can make sure that the key will be installed and used once in order to prevent key reinstallation attack.
WEP	WEP keys can either be 64-bit or 128-bit. **64-Bit** - Either 5 ASCII characters, for example “12345”, or 10 hexadecimal digitals with a leading “0x”, such as

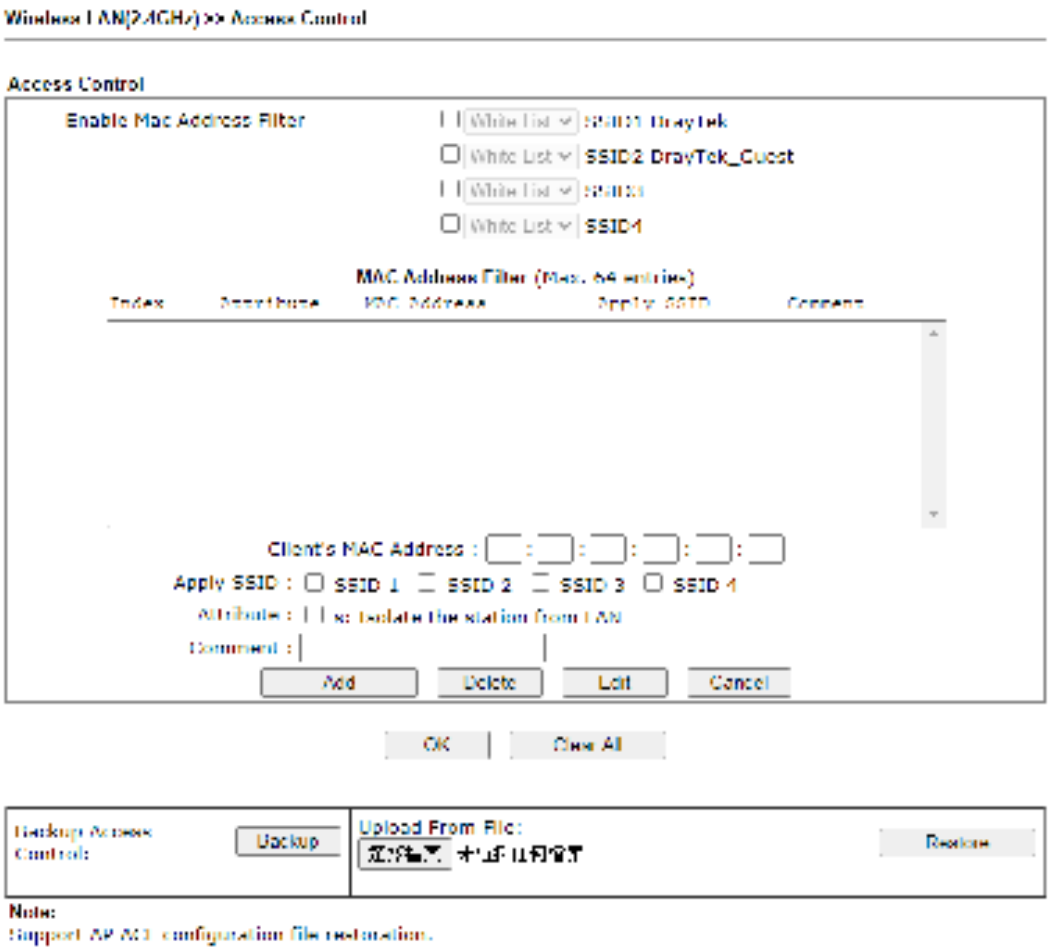
	“0x4142434445”. **128-Bit** - Either 13 ASCII characters, for example “ABCDEFGHIJKLM”, or 26 hexadecimal digits with a leading “0x”, for example “0x41424344454647484 94A4B4C4D”. Up to four keys can be entered here, but only one key can be selected at any time. The keys can be entered in ASCII or Hexadecimal. All wireless devices intending to connect to the same SSID must support the same WEP encryption bit size and have the same key.

To save changes on this page, select **OK**; to discard changes, select **Cancel**.

III-1-4 Access Control

In the **Access Control**, the router may restrict wireless access to certain wireless clients only by referencing a MAC address black or white list. The user may block wireless clients by inserting their MAC addresses into a black list, or only allow certain wireless clients to connect by inserting their MAC addresses into a white list.

In the Access Control web page, users may configure the **white**/**black** list modes used by each SSID and the MAC addresses applied to their lists.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable Mac Address Filter	Select the SSIDs that you would like to have MAC Address

	filter enabled. Select **White List** or **Black List** in the combo box next to each enabled SSIDs. **White List** - Only allow wireless clients whose MAC addresses are listed in the MAC Address Filter list. **Black List** - Only allow wireless clients whose MAC addresses are not listed in the MAC Address Filter list.
MAC Address Filter	Displays all MAC addresses in the filter list.
Client's MAC Address	Manually enter the MAC address of wireless client.
Apply SSID	Select the SSIDs to which the above MAC address filter will be applied.
Attribute	**s: Isolate the station from LAN -** select to isolate the wireless client from LAN.
Comment	Enter a brief description for the specified client's MAC address.
Add	Add a new filter entry to the MAC Address filter list using the information entered above.
Delete	Delete the selected MAC address from the list.
Edit	Update the selected MAC address in the list using the information entered above.
Cancel	Clear the contents of all the above fields. This will discard all changes without saving to the MAC Address Filter list.
OK	Click to save the MAC Address Filter list.
Clear All	Remove all entries from the MAC Address Filter list.
Backup Access Control	Settings on this web page can be saved as a file which can be restored in the future by this device or other device.
Upload From File	Restore wireless access control settings and applied onto this device.

To save changes on this page, select **OK**.

III-1-5 WPS

WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup) provides an easy way to connect wireless to wireless access points and routers with WPA or WPA2 encryption.

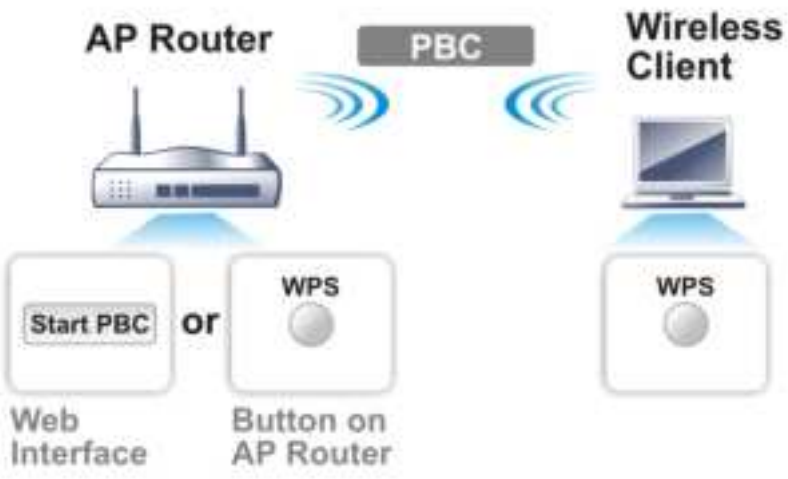
Info	WPS works with wireless stations with WPS or WPS2 support. It does not work with WEP.

It is the simplest way to build connection between wireless network clients and vigor router. Users do not need to select any encryption mode and type any long encryption passphrase to setup a wireless client every time. He/she only needs to press a button on wireless client, and WPS will connect for client and router automatically.

There are two methods to do network connection through WPS between AP and Stations: pressing the ***Start PBC*** button or using ***PIN Code***.

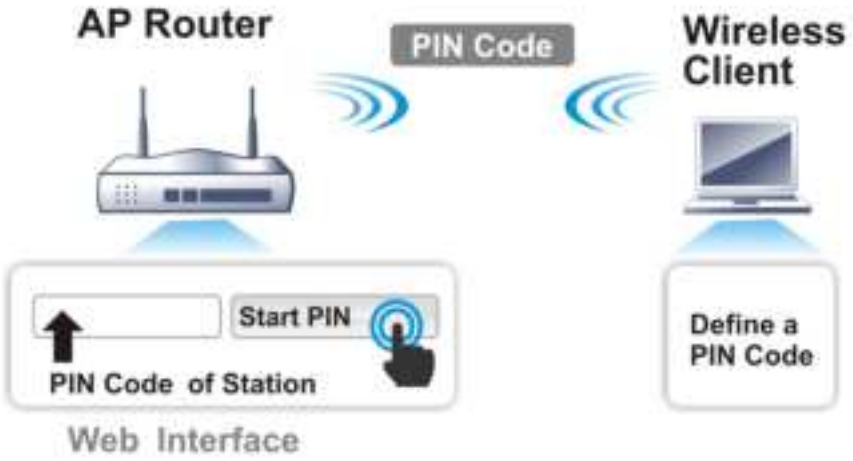
Using the PBC button

On the Vigor router, press and hold the WPS button on the front panel for 2 seconds, or click the **Start PBC** button on the **Wireless LAN>>WPS** page in the Web User Interface. On the wireless station (for example, a laptop computer), press the **WPS/Start PBC** button on the network card.

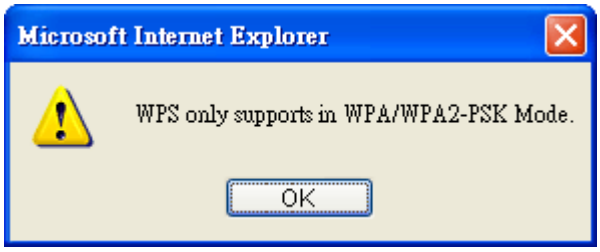


Using a PIN code

You may establish a wireless connection by entering a PIN code generated by a wireless client that supports WPS.

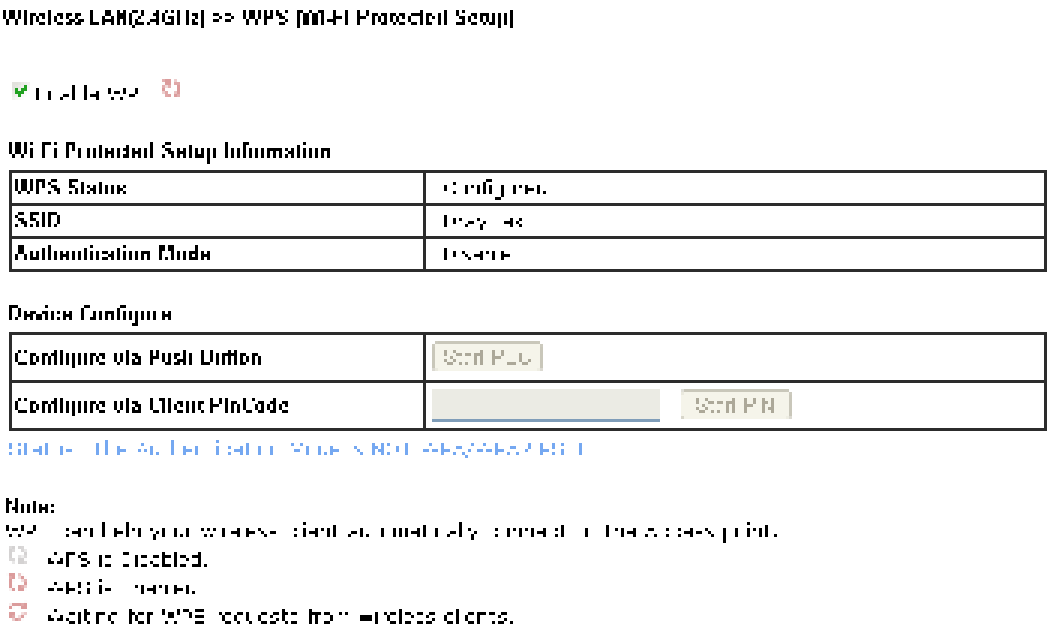


WPS is only supported when the encryption protocol is set to WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK. If other protocols (such as WEP) have been selected in **Wireless LAN>>Security**, you will see the following message box:



Please click **OK** to dismiss dialog box, return to **Wireless LAN>>Security** and select WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK mode before attempting to enable WPS again.

Below shows **Wireless LAN>>WPS** web page:



Available settings are explained as follows:

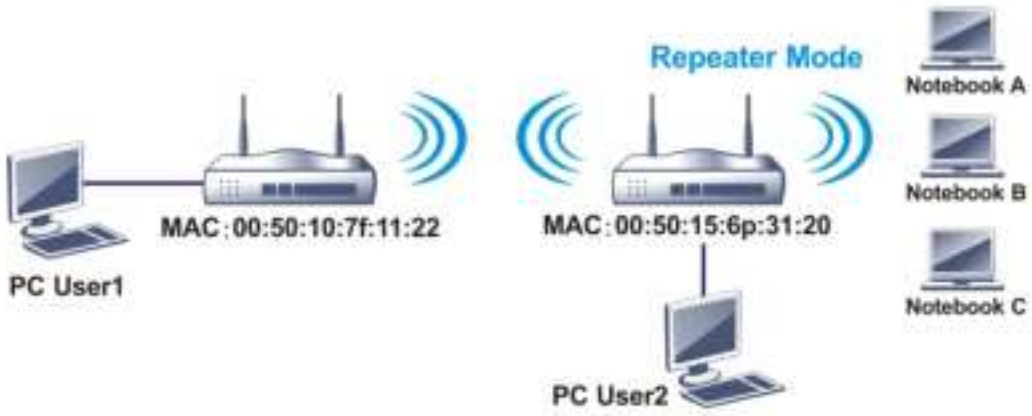
Item	Description
Enable WPS	Check this box to enable WPS setting.
WPS Status	Displays system information related to WPS. The message “Configured” means that the wireless security (encryption) function of the router is properly configured and functioning properly.
SSID	Displays the SSID1. WPS is supported on SSID1 only.
Authentication Mode	Displays the current authentication mode of the router.
Configure via Push Button	Click **Start PBC** to invoke Push-Button style WPS setup procedure. The router will wait for about 2 minutes for WPS connection requests from wireless clients. The WPS LED on the router will blink fast when WPS is in progress, and will return to normal condition after two minutes.
Configure via Client PinCode	Enter a PIN code, and click the **Start PIN** button. The WPS LED on the router will blink rapidly when WPS is in progress, for up to 2 minutes or until a successful WPS connection from a wireless client has been established.

III-1-6 WDS (for 5GHz)

Wireless Distribution System (WDS) is a protocol for linking access points (AP) wirelessly. WDS supports two modes:

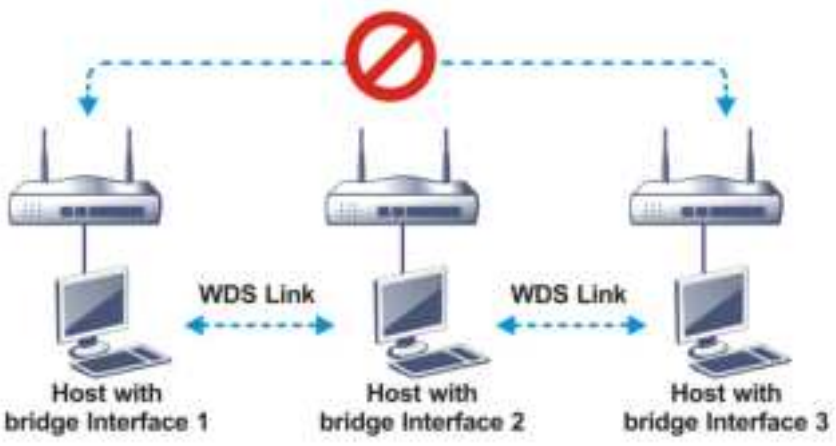
- **Bridge mode**, which bridges traffic between two LANs wirelessly.

- **Repeater mode**, which extends the coverage range of a WLAN.

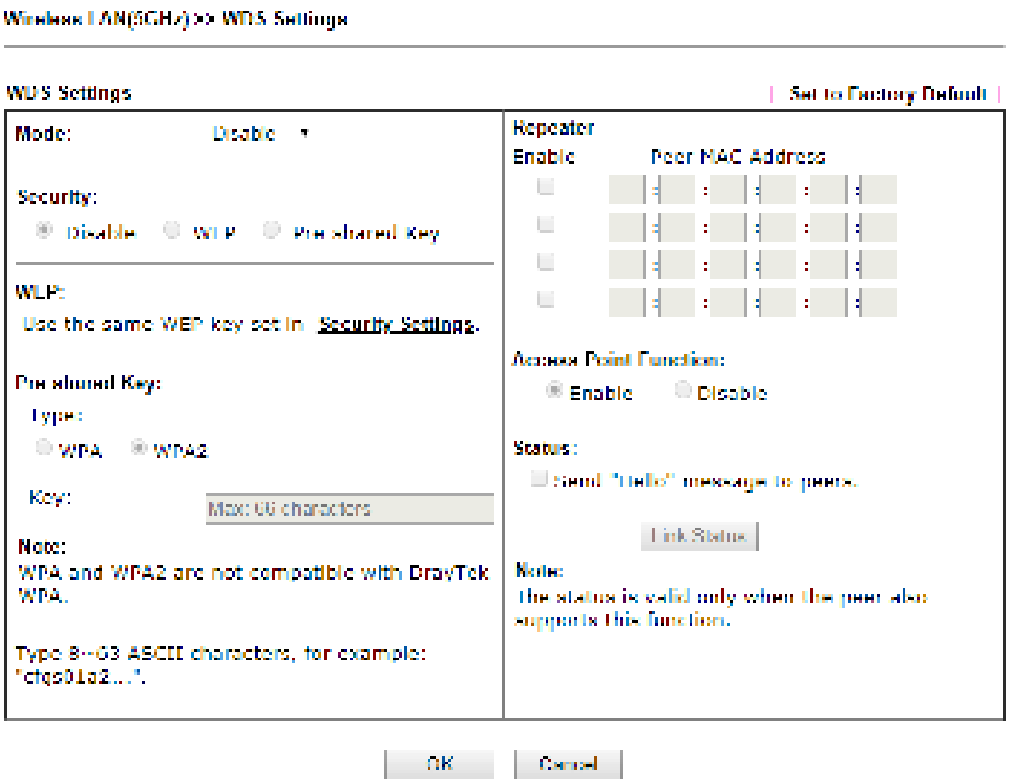


The main difference between these two modes is that, in **Repeater** mode, the packets received from one peer AP can be repeated to another peer AP through WDS links, whereas in **Bridge** mode, packets received from a WDS link will only be forwarded to local wired or wireless hosts. In other words, only Repeater mode can do WDS-to-WDS packet forwarding.

In the following example, hosts connected to Bridge 1 or 3 can communicate with hosts connected to Bridge 2 through WDS links. However, hosts connected to Bridge 1 cannot communicate with hosts connected to Bridge 3 through Bridge 2.



Click **WDS** from **Wireless LAN** menu. The following page will be shown.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Mode	Choose the WDS mode. **Disable** – WDS is disabled. **Repeater** – WDS is enabled in Repeater mode.
Security	Choose one of the types for the router. The setting you choose here will make the following WEP or Pre-shared key field valid or not. **Disable** – Security is disabled. **WEP** - Security is enabled. **Pre-shared key** – Security is enabled.
Pre-shared Key	**Type** – Select either WPA or WPA2 as the encryption protocol. **Key** – Enter 8 ~ 63 ASCII characters or 64 hexadecimal digits with a leading “0x”.
Repeater	If Repeater was selected as the WDS mode, enter the peer MAC addresses in these fields. Up to four peer MAC addresses may be entered in this page. Select the checkbox in front of a MAC address to enable it.
Access Point Function	Select **Enable** to make this router serve as an access point; select **Disable** to disable access point function.
Status	Click to send a “hello” message to peers. This only works if the peer also supports this function.

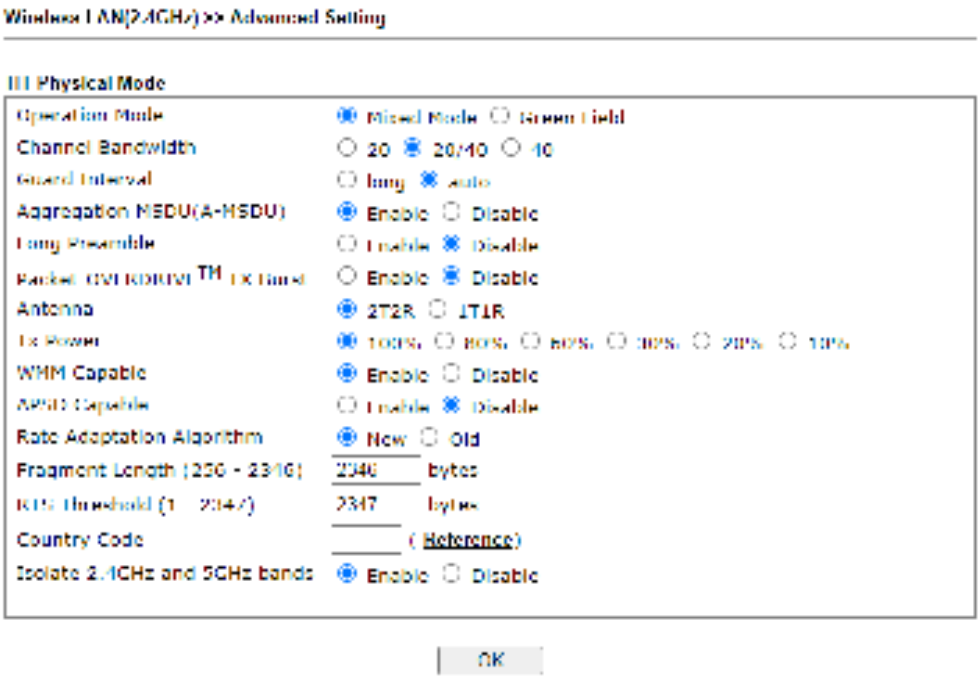
To save changes on this page, select **OK**; to discard changes, select **Cancel**.

III-1-7 Advanced Setting

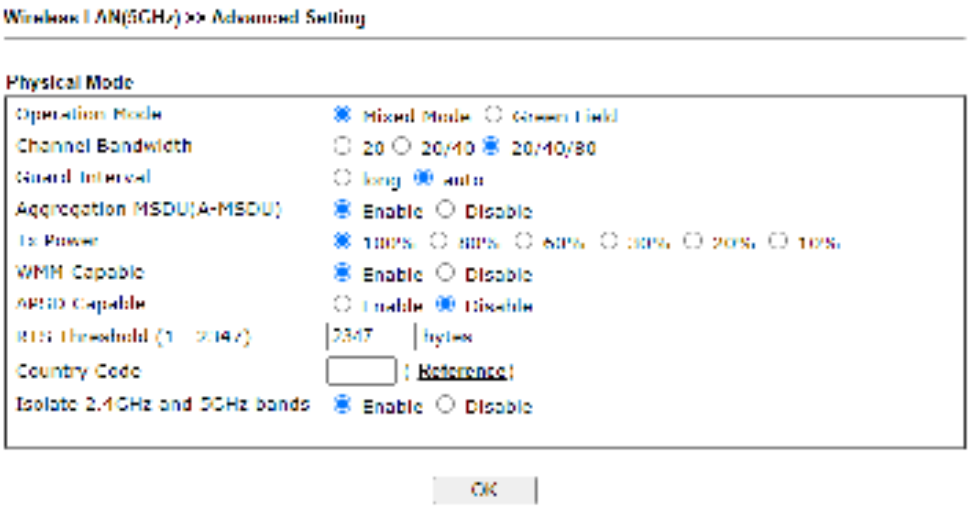
On this page you can configure advanced settings such as operation mode, channel bandwidth, guard interval, and aggregation MSDU for wireless data transmission.

If the Vigor router supports dual-band WLAN, you will see separate Advanced Setting sections for 2.4GHz and 5GHz.

2.4 GHz Advanced Setting page



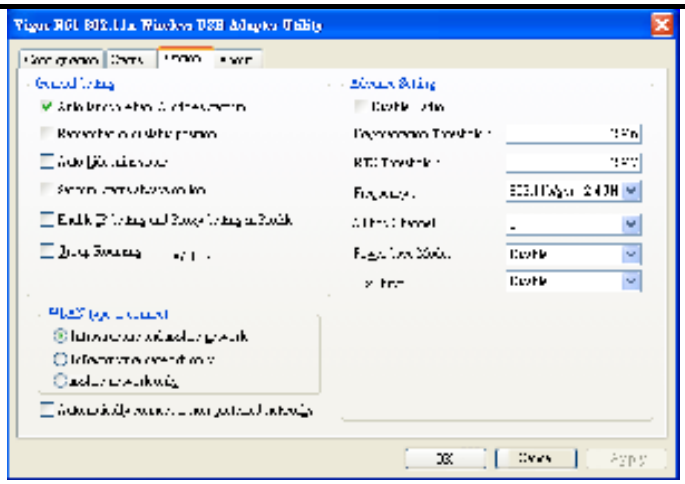
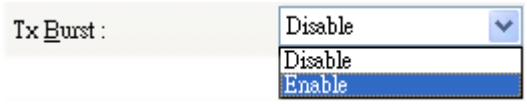
5 GHz Advanced Setting page:



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Operation Mode	**Mixed Mode** – The router can transmit data using all protocols supported by 802.11a/b/g and 802.11n standards. However, all wireless transmissions will be slowed down

	when any 802.11g or 802.11b wireless client is connected. **Green Field** – Select this mode to achieve the highest throughput. This mode supports data transmission between 802.11n systems only. In addition, it does not have protection mechanism to prevent conflicts with neighboring 802.11a/b/g devices.
Channel Bandwidth	**20** –Vigor Router will utilize 20 MHz channels for data transmission and reception between the AP and wireless stations. **40** –Vigor Router will utilize 40 MHz for data transmission and reception between the AP and wireless stations. **20/40** – Vigor Router will utilize either 20 MHz or 40 MHz for data transmission and reception depending on the number of nearby wireless APs. 20MHz will be used when there are more than 10 wireless APs; otherwise 40MHz will be used. Selecting this setting ensures the best performance for data transit on networks with both 20 MHz and 40 MHz clients.
Guard Interval	Enabling this setting ensures the integrity of wireless traffic by inserting guard intervals between symbols to reduce the adverse effects of propagation delays, and signal multipath or reflections. If you choose auto as guard interval, the router will choose short guard interval (which increases wireless performance) or long guard interval for data transmit depending on the station capability.
Aggregation MSDU (A-MSDU)	Aggregation MSDU can combine frames of different sizes to improve performance at the MAC layer for clients from certain manufacturers. The default setting is **Enable**.
Long Preamble	This option determines the length of the sync field in an 802.11 packet. Most modern wireless network uses short preamble with 56 bit sync fields which yield better transmission speeds. However, some older 802.11b wireless devices only support long preamble which uses 128-bit sync fields. Click **Enable** to use Long Preamble to maintain compatibility with these devices.
Packet-OVERDRIVE	This feature can enhance the performance in data transmission about 40%* (by checking **Tx Burst**). It is active only when both the Access Point and Station (in wireless client) support and invoke this function at the same time. **Note:** Vigor N61 wireless adapter supports this function. Therefore, you can install it on your PC to take advantage of Packet-OVERDRIVE (Refer to the following picture of Vigor N61 wireless utility window: choose Enable for TxBURST on the **Option** tab).

	  **Info** * Real transmission rate depends on the environment of the network.
Antenna	Vigor router can be attached with two antennas to have good data transmission via wireless connection. However, if you have only one antenna attached, please choose 1T1R.
TX Power	Sets the power percentage of the access point's transmission signal. The greater the TX Power value, the higher intensity of the signal will be.
WMM Capable	WMM stands for Wi-Fi Multimedia. It provides basic Quality of Service (QoS) by prioritizing traffic based on four access categories defined in the IEEE 802.11e standard. The access categories are AC_VO, AC_VI, AC_BE and AC_BK, which corresponds to traffic types of voice, video, best effort and low priority (background) data, respectively. To apply WMM parameters to wireless data transmission, click the **Enable** radio button.
APSD Capable	APSD (Automatic Power-Save Delivery) is an enhancement over the power-saving mechanisms supported by Wi-Fi networks. It allows access points to buffer traffic before transmitting it to wireless devices, thus allowing wireless devices to enter into power saving mode which reduces power consumption. Not all wireless clients support APSD properly, and the only way to find out if APSD is appropriate for your network is to experiment. The default setting is **Disable**.
Rate Adaptation Algorithm	Sets the way the Wireless transmission rate is adjusted dynamically. In most cases, selecting "New" will result in better performance than "Old".
Fragment Length (256 – 2346)	Set the Fragment threshold. You are advised to leave the default value, 2346, untouched.
RTS Threshold (1 – 2347)	Minimize the collision (unit is bytes) between hidden stations to improve wireless performance. Set the RTS threshold. Do not modify default value if you

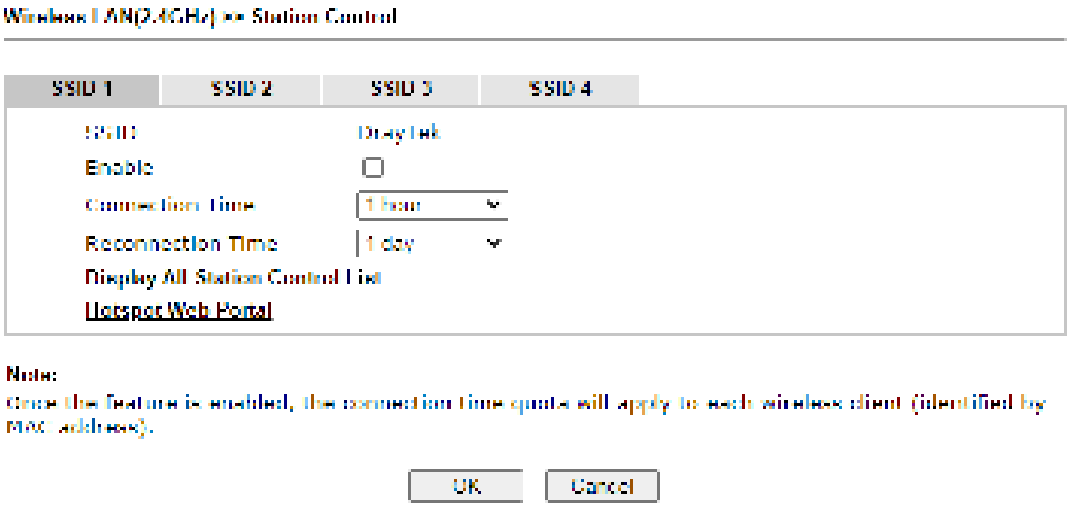
	don't know what it is, default value is 2347. Adjusts the 802.11 maximum transmit frame size, which might reduce chances of collision with hidden stations. You are advised to leave the default value, 2347, untouched.
Country Code	Vigor router broadcasts country codes according to the 802.11d standard. However, some wireless stations will detect/scan access points looking for country codes to determine which country it is in, and utilize channels appropriate to the country. The wireless client might get confused if there are multiple access points in the vicinity broadcasting different country codes. In such cases, it might be necessary to change the country code of the access point to ensure these clients can successfully establish a wireless connection.
Isolate 2.4GHz and 5GHz bands	The default setting is "Enable". It means that the wireless client using 2.4GHz band is unable to connect to the wireless client with 5GHz band, and vice versa. For WLAN 2.4GHz and 5GHz set with the same SSID name: ● No matter such function is enabled or disabled, clients using WLAN 2.4GHz and 5GHz can communicate for each other if **Isolate Member** (in **Wireless LAN>>General Setup**) is NOT enabled for such SSID. ● Yet, if the function of **Isolate Member** (in **Wireless LAN>>General Setup**) is enabled for such SSID, clients using WLAN 2.4GHz and 5GHz will be unable to communicate with each other.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

III-1-8 Station Control

Station Control is used to specify the duration that the wireless client can connect to the Vigor router. If this function is disabled, wireless clients can connect to the router as long as the router is powered on and the wireless feature is enabled.

This feature is especially useful for free WiFi service. For example, a coffee shop may offer free Wi-Fi service to its guests for one hour every day. In this scenario, the connection time can be set to “1 hour” and reconnection time set to “1 day”. In this way, every guest can surf the net for at most one hour, thus freeing up resources for other guests.



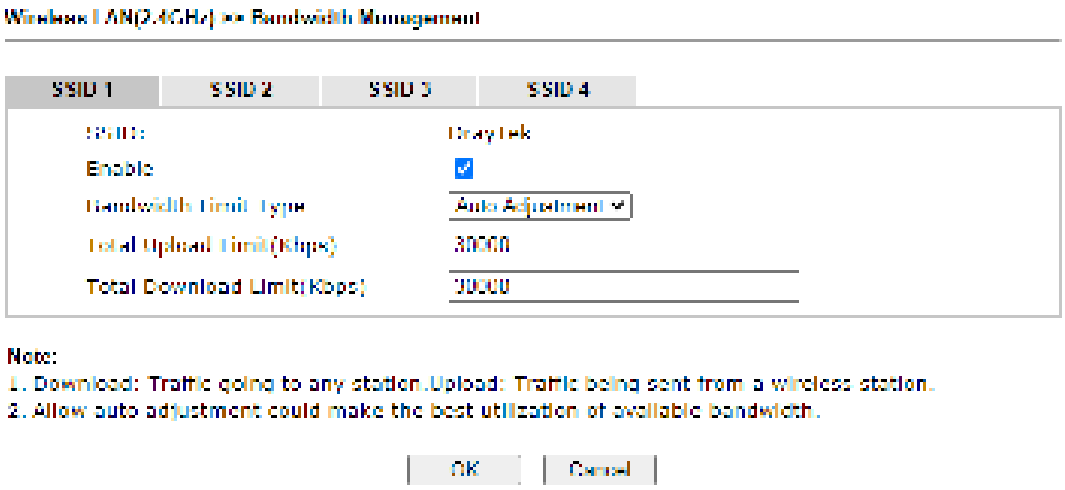
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
SSID	Display the selected SSID.
Enable	Select to enable station control function for this SSID.
Connection Time / **Reconnection Time**	In the Connection Time dropdown box, select the maximum amount of time that a wireless client is allowed to connect within the period of time selected in the Reconnection Time dropdown box. Select **User defined** to manually enter the time in days, hours and minutes.
Display All Station Control List	Click to display all wireless clients that are under Station Control.
Hotspot Web Portal	Click to jump to the **Hotspot Web Portal** page.

To save changes on this page, select **OK**; to discard changes, select **Cancel**.

III-1-9 Bandwidth Management

The downstream or upstream from FTP, HTTP or some P2P applications will occupy large of bandwidth and affect the applications for other programs. Please use Bandwidth Management to make the bandwidth usage more efficient.



Available settings are explained as follows:

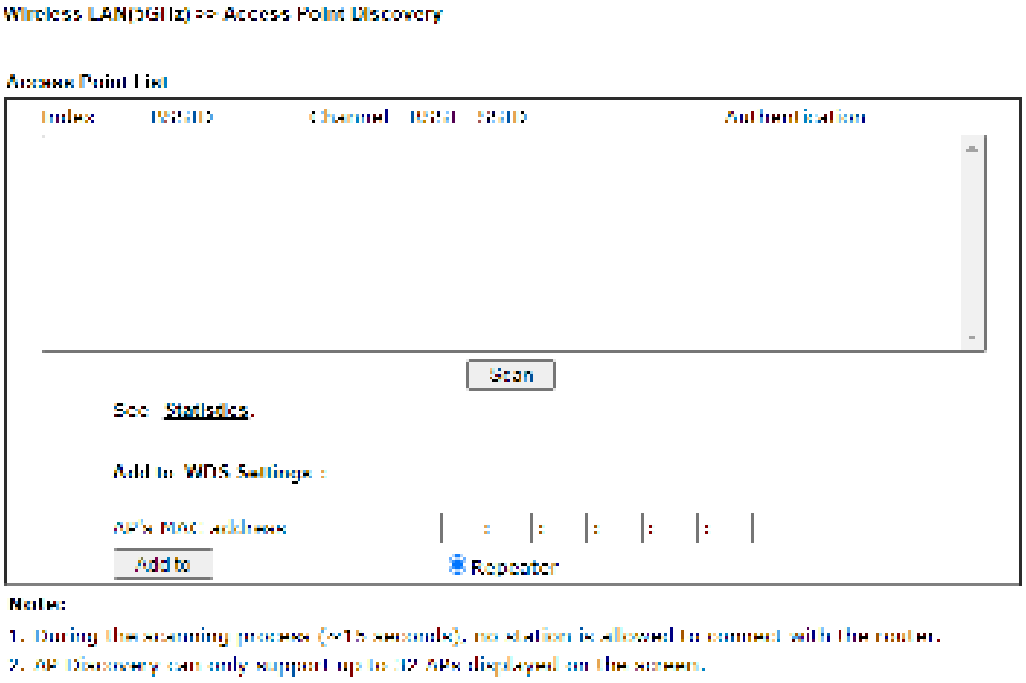
Item	Description
SSID	Display the specific SSID name.
Enable	Check this box to enable the bandwidth management for clients.
Bandwidth Limit Type	**Auto Adjustment -** Bandwidth limit is determined by the system automatically. **Per Station Limit** – Bandwidth limit is determined according to the limitation of the wireless client.
Total Upload Limit	It is available when Auto Adjustment is selected. Type a value to define the maximum data traffic (uploading) for all of the wireless clients connecting to Vigor2927.
Total Download Limit	It is available when Auto Adjustment is selected. Type a value to define the maximum data client(stations) connecting to Vigor2927.
Upload Limit	It is available when Per Station Limit is selected. Type a value to define the maximum data traffic (uploading) for each wireless client connecting to Vigor2927.
Download Limit	It is available when Per Station Limit is selected Type a value to define the maximum data traffic (downloading) for each wireless client connecting to Vigor2927.

To save changes on this page, select **OK**; to discard changes, select **Cancel**.

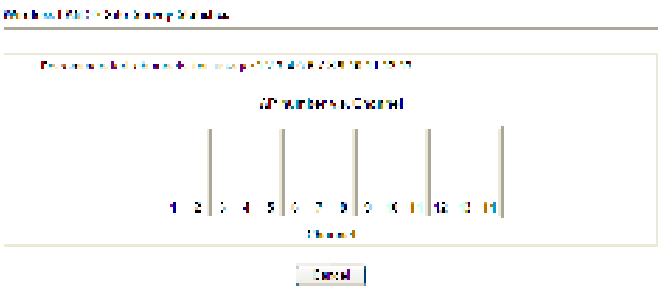
III-1-10 AP Discovery

Vigor router can scan all regulatory channels to find working APs in the neighborhood. The scanning result can be used to determine the most desirable channel to use, or to locate an AP for establishing a WDS link. Note that during the scanning process (about 5 seconds), no client is allowed to connect to the Vigor. Only APs operating on the same band as the Vigor can be discovered.

Click the **Scan** button to start the AP discovery process.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Scan	Click to start the AP discovery process. The results will be shown on the box above this button.
Statistics	Shows channel usage by the neighboring APs. 
Add to WDS Settings	This field is available for WLAN (5GHz).
Add to	To establish a WDS link to an AP that was found in an AP scan, click its entry in the Access Point List window, and its MAC address will be copied to the AP's MAC address field. Select the WDS mode you wish to use and click **Add to**. The AP will be configured in **Wireless LAN >> WDS Settings**.

III-1-11 Airtime Fairness

Airtime fairness is essential in wireless networks that must support critical enterprise applications.

Most of the applications are either symmetric or require more downlink than uplink capacity; telephony and email send the same amount of data in each direction, while video streaming and web surfing involve more traffic sent from access points to clients than the other way around. This is essential for ensuring predictable performance and quality-of-service, as well as allowing 802.11n and legacy clients to coexist on the same network. Without airtime fairness, offices using mixed mode networks risk having legacy clients slow down the entire network or letting the fastest client(s) crowd out other users.

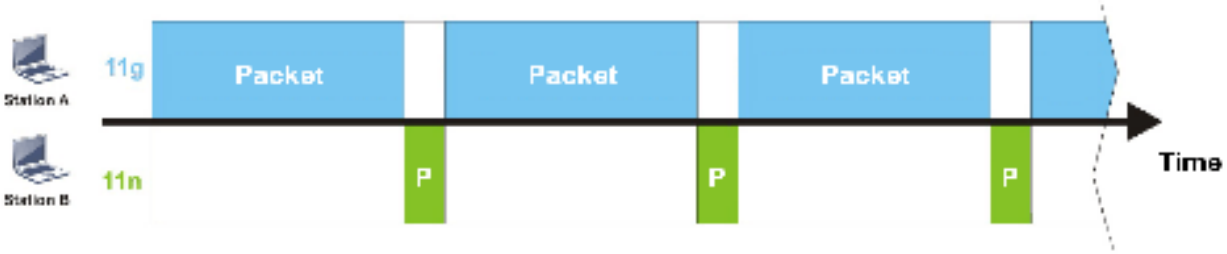
With airtime fairness, every client at a given quality-of-service level has equal access to the network's airtime.

The wireless channel can be accessed by only one wireless station at the same time.

The principle behind the IEEE802.11 channel access mechanisms is that each station has ***equal probability*** to access the channel. When wireless stations have similar data rate, this principle leads to a fair result. In this case, stations get similar channel access time which is called airtime.

However, when stations have various data rate (e.g., 11g, 11n), the result is not fair. The slow stations (11g) work in their slow data rate and occupy too much airtime, whereas the fast stations (11n) become much slower.

Take the following figure as an example, there are 2 wireless stations on the wireless network, Station A (11g) and Station B (11n), both of which transmit data packets to the Vigor router. Even though they have equal opportunity to access the wireless channel, Station B (11n) gets only a little airtime and waits too much because Station A (11g) takes longer to send one packet. In other words, transmission from Station B (fast rate) is effectively being throttled by Station A (slow rate).



To alleviate this problem, Airtime Fairness tries to assign *similar airtime* to each station (A and B) by controlling TX traffic. In the following figure, Station B (11n) has higher opportunities to send data packets than Station A (11g). In this way, Station B (fast rate) gets its fair share of airtime and its speed is not limited by Station A (slow rate).

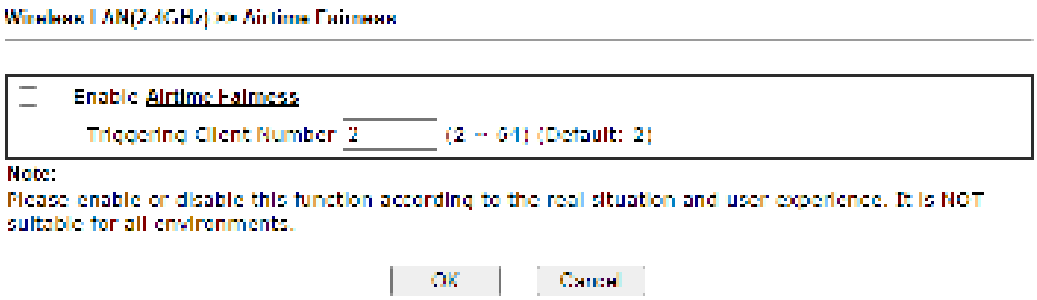
This is similar to automatic Bandwidth Limit, where the dynamic bandwidth limit of each station depends on instant active station number and airtime assignment. Please note that Airtime Fairness of 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz bands are independent, but stations connected to different SSIDs on the same band are prioritized as a group, because they all use the same wireless channel. Under certain environments, this function can reduce the adverse effects of slow wireless devices and improve the overall wireless performance.

Environments that can benefit by applying airtime fairness:

(1) Many wireless stations.

(2) All stations mainly use download traffic.

(3) The performance bottleneck is wireless connection.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable Airtime Fairness	Try to assign similar airtime to each wireless station by controlling TX traffic. **Airtime Fairness** – Click the link to display the following explanation of airtime fairness note. **Triggering Client Number** – Airtime Fairness function is applied only when there are at least this many active wireless stations.

To save changes on this page, select **OK**; to discard changes, select **Cancel**.

Info	Airtime Fairness function and Bandwidth Limit function should be mutually exclusive. So their webs have extra actions to ensure these two functions are not enabled simultaneously.

III-1-12 Band Steering (2.4 GHz)

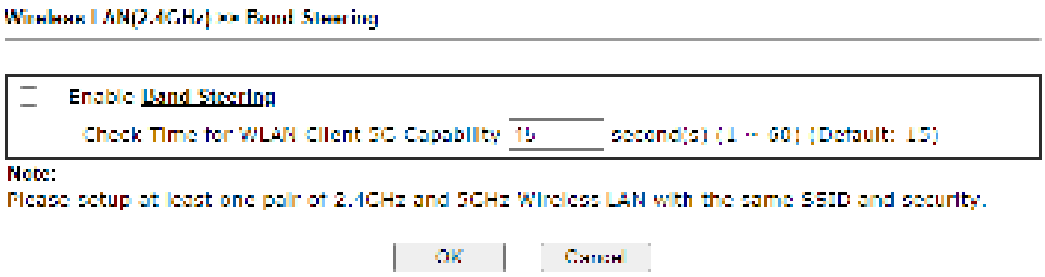
Band Steering detects if the wireless clients are capable of 5GHz operation, and steers them to that frequency. It helps to keep the 2.4 GHz band clear for legacy clients, and improves users' experience by reducing 2.4 GHz channel utilization.

If a dual-band client is detected, the AP will let the wireless client connect to the less congested wireless band, such as the 5GHz band, to reduce network congestion.

Info

For Band Steering to work properly, the same SSID and security settings must be configured on both 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz bands.

To configure Band Steering, go to the **Wireless LAN (2.4GHz)>>Band Steering** page:

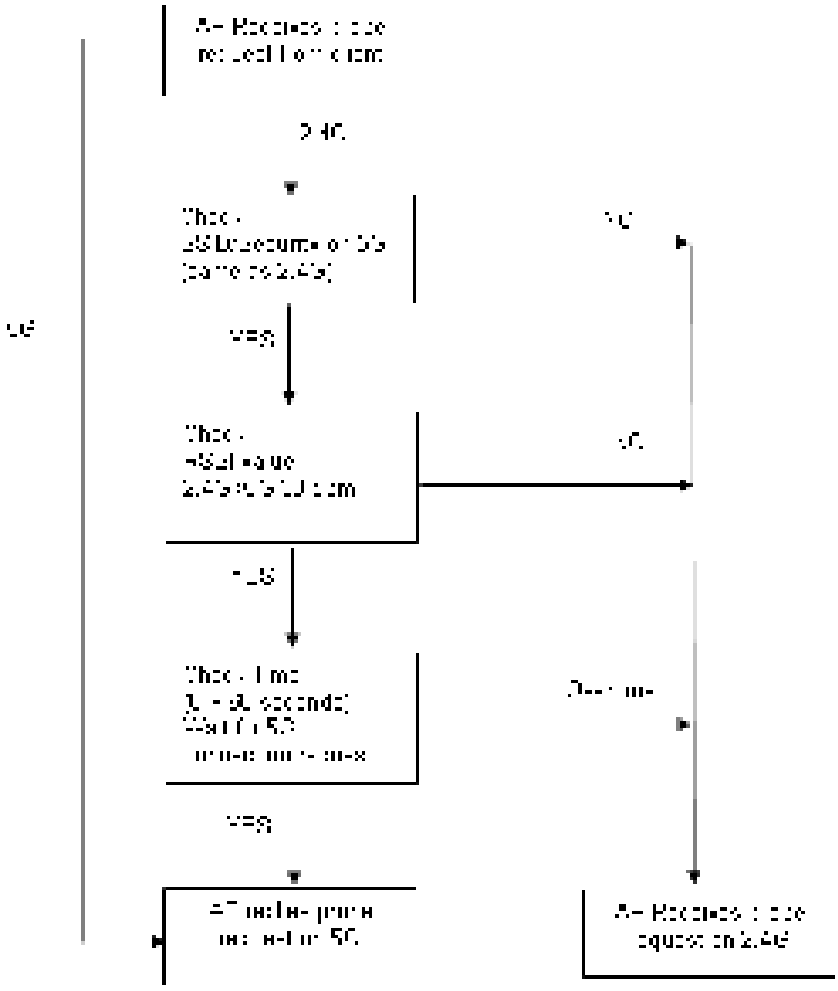


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable Band Steering	When enabled, the router will detect if wireless clients are capable of dual-band or not within the time limit. **Check Time...** - When a wireless client attempts to connect, the router will block attempts to connect to the 2.4 GHz band for the specified period of time (default is 30 seconds), which hopefully will entice the client to connect to the 5 GHz band. If the client fails to connect to the 5 GHz band within the specified interval, it will then be able to connect to the 2.4 GHz band.

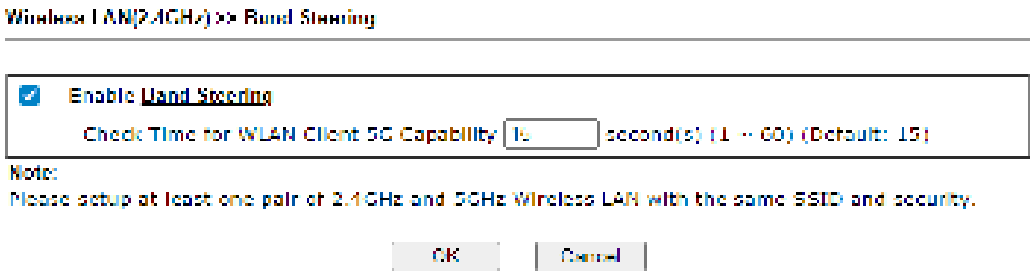
To save changes on this page, select **OK**; to discard changes, select **Cancel**.

The following diagram shows how Band Steering works.



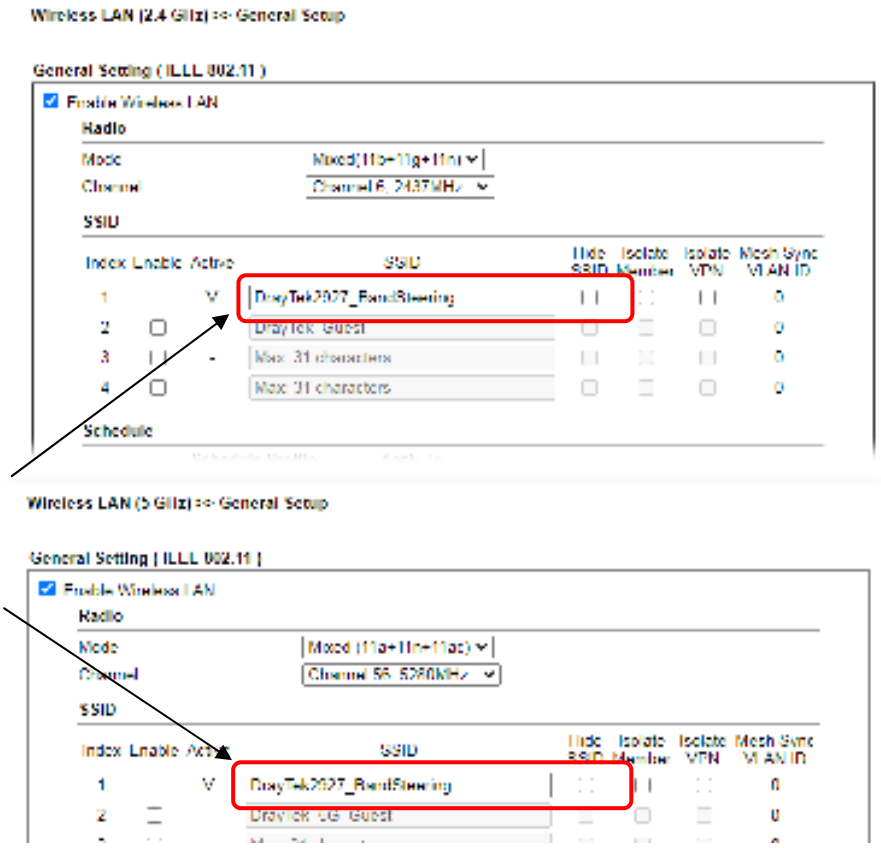
Example: How to Use Band Steering?

1. Open **Wireless LAN(2.4GHz)>>Band Steering**.
2. Check the box of **Enable Band Steering** and use the default value (15) for check time setting.



3. Click **OK** to save the settings.
4. Open **Wireless LAN (2.4GHz)>>General Setup** and **Wireless LAN (5GHz)>> General Setup**. Configure SSID as *DrayTek2927_BandSteering* for both pages. Click **OK** to save the settings.

Same settings for 2.4GHz and 5GHz



5. Open **Wireless LAN (2.4GHz)>>Security** and **Wireless LAN (5GHz)>>Security.** Configure Security as *12345678* for both pages. Click **OK** to save the settings.

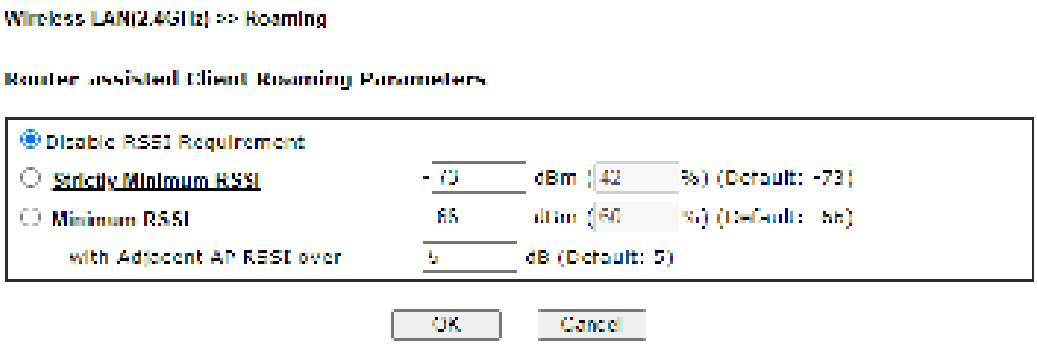
Same value for 2.4GHz and 5GHz

6. The Vigor will now steer wireless clients to the less congested wireless band, such as 5GHz to reduce network congestion.

III-1-13 Roaming

WiFi roaming allows wireless stations to switch connections between access points within an area to achieve better coverage and signal quality. It usually is up to the wireless station to switch to another access point with stronger signal strength while it is already connected, but Vigor wireless routers have an AP-assisted client roaming feature that could facilitate roaming on wireless stations. Depending on the roaming configuration, the Vigor monitors the Received Signal Strength Indicator (RSSI) of wireless stations and disconnect stations whose RSSI falls below a certain (configurable) threshold, thus forcing stations to seek out other WiFi hosts to connect to.

To configure wireless roaming settings, go to Wireless LAN >> Roaming.



Available settings are explained as follows:

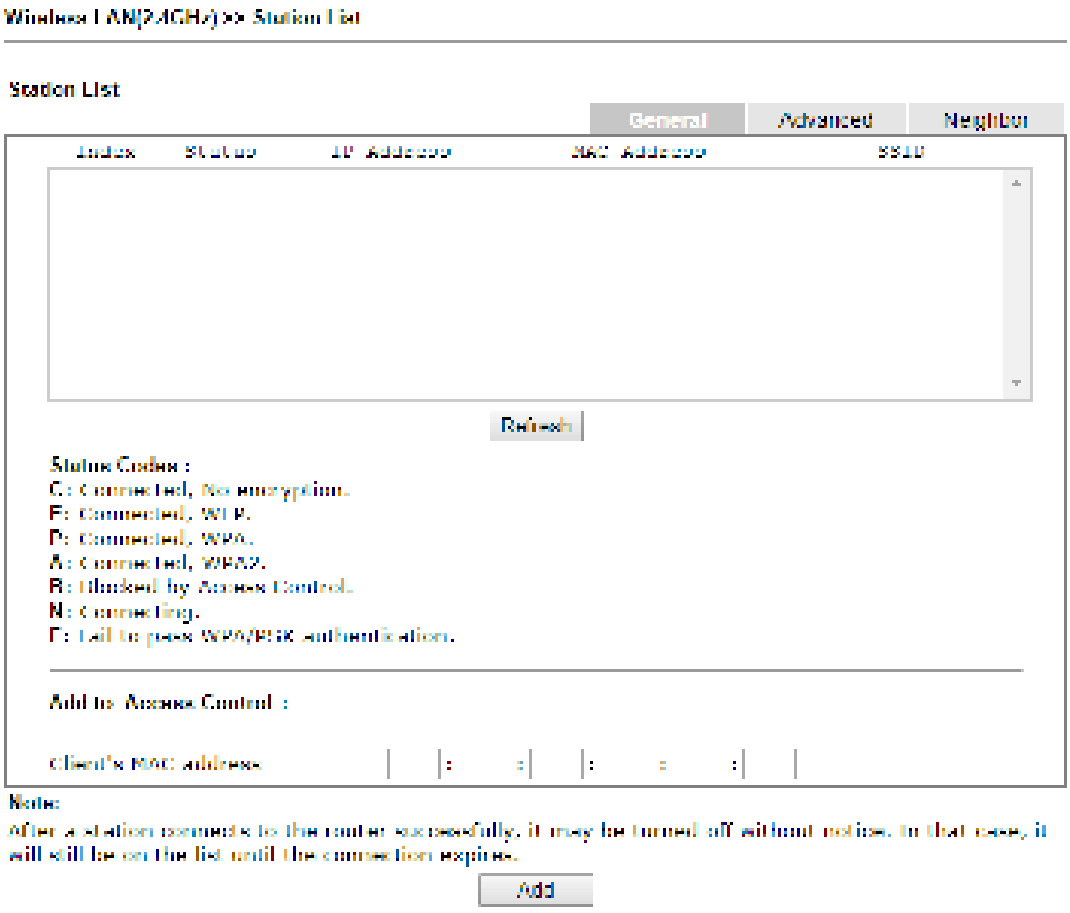
Item	Description
Disable RSSI Requirement	The Vigor router does not pay attention to the RSSI level of wireless stations. Selecting this option means the Vigor router will not interfere with the roaming behavior of wireless stations.
Strictly Minimum RSSI	The Vigor router will immediately disconnect the wireless station if its RSSI falls below the configured value.
Minimum RSSI	**Minimum RSSI -** The Vigor router will disconnect wireless clients whose RSSI falls below the minimum threshold only if there is also a neighboring wireless host (router or AP) that has an RSSI value (defined in the field of With Adjacent AP RSSI over) higher than a certain threshold. In order for this option to work, other wireless hosts connected to the same LAN subnet need to support the exchange of RSSI information with peer wireless hosts via Ethernet. **With Adjacent AP RSSI over** –Specify a value as a threshold.

To save changes on this page, select **OK**; to discard changes, select **Cancel**.

III-1-14 Station List

Station List provides an overview of all currently connected wireless clients and their status. As an added convenience, you may choose to add a particular wireless client to the Access Control by double clicking its entry in the list to populate the MAC address field, followed by clicking the Add button.

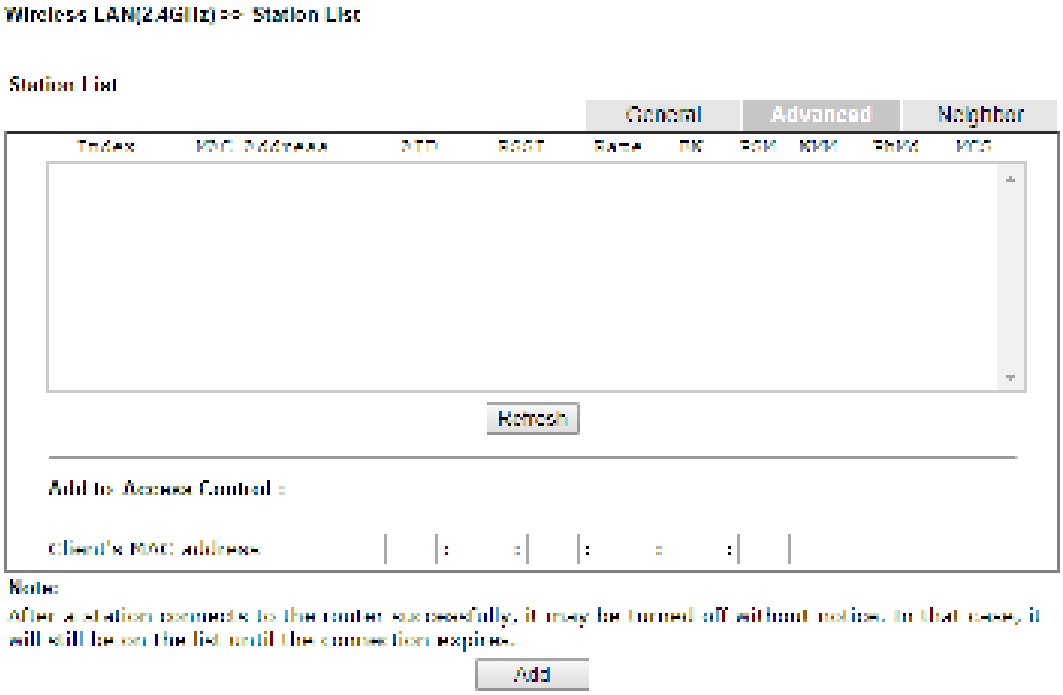
There are 3 tabs on the Station List screen: General, Advanced and Neighbor. Both General and Advanced show wireless stations connected to the Vigor router, whereas Neighbor shows nearby wireless stations connected to other access points that are detected by the Vigor router.



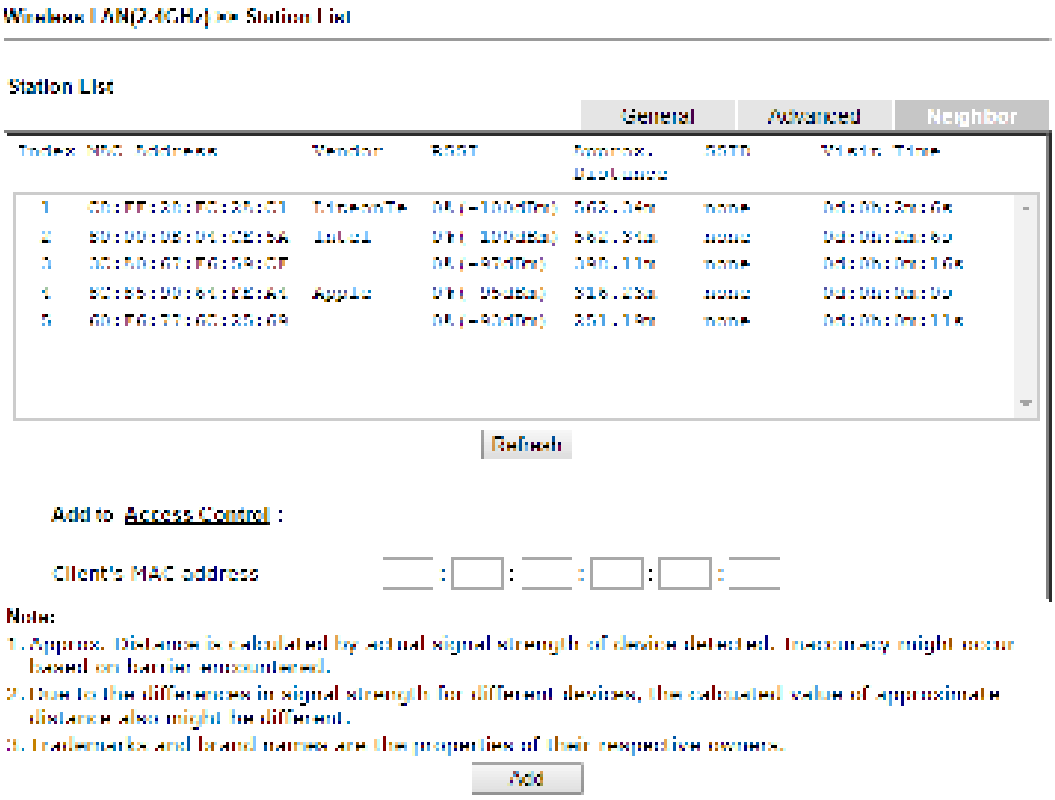
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Refresh	Click to refresh the station list.
Add	Click to add the address in the Client's MAC address field to Access Control.

Below shows the Advanced tab, which lists the same clients as the General tab, but with more detailed information.

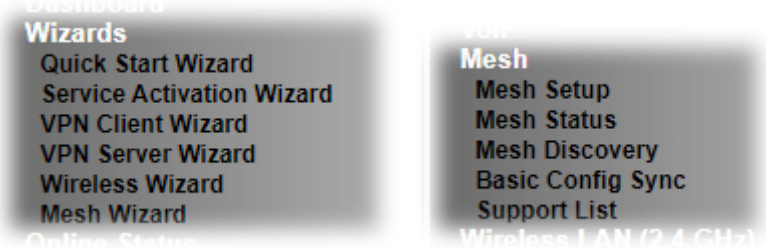


Below shows the Neighbor tab, which lists wireless clients seen by the router but are not connected to the router's built-in access point.



III-2 Mesh Network

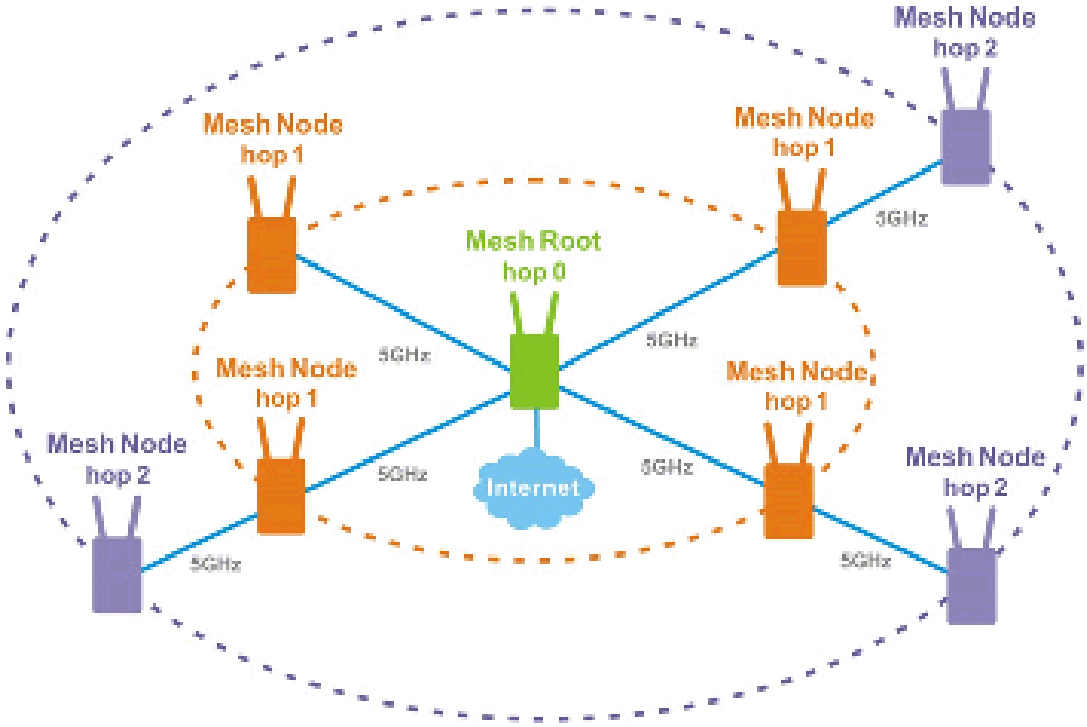
Vigor router plays a role of Mesh root in a VigorMesh network. To configure the mesh network, please use the Mesh Wizard or open the Mesh menu to configure detailed settings.



Please note that, within VigorMesh network,

- the total number allowed for mesh nodes is 8 (including the mesh root)
- the maximum number of hop is 3

Refer to the following figure:



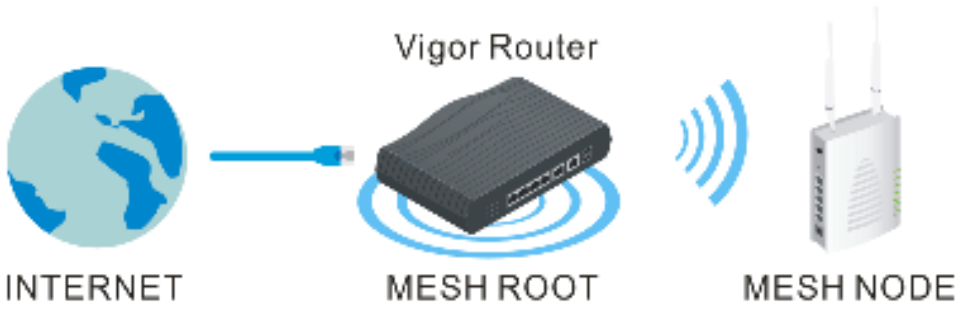
For the mesh group set within VigorMesh network,

- It must be composed by “1” Mesh Root and “0~7” mesh nodes
- (Roaming) Normally members in a mesh group use the same Wireless SSID/security
- (Add) Only the mesh root can add a new mesh node into the mesh group
- (Recover) A disconnected mesh node will automatically try to connect to another connected mesh node of the same group

Mesh Root

Mesh Root indicates that Vigor router would be other AP's uplink connection. As a Mesh Root, Vigor router must connect to internet through WANs to have an internet connection.

The following figure shows how Vigor router runs as MESH ROOT:

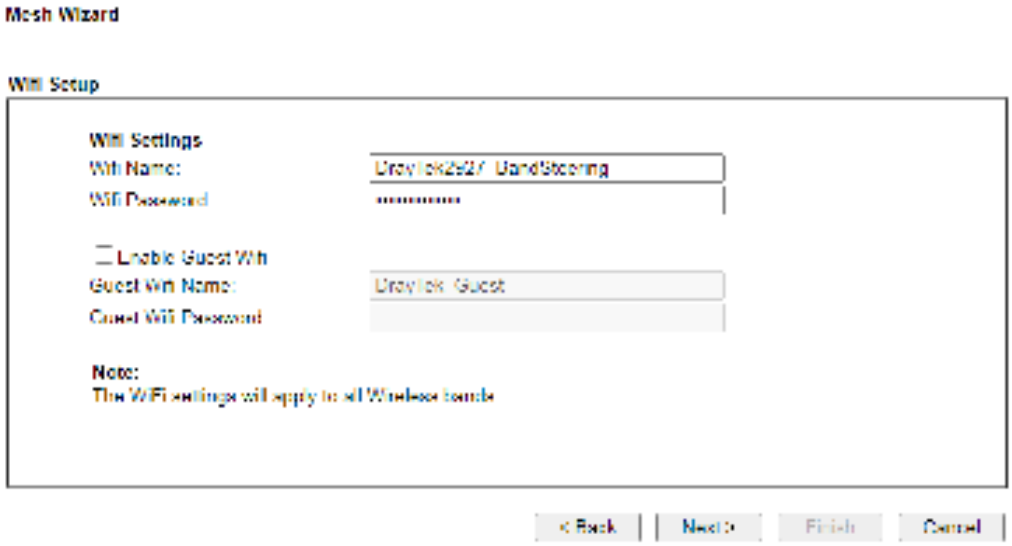


III-2-1 Mesh Wizard

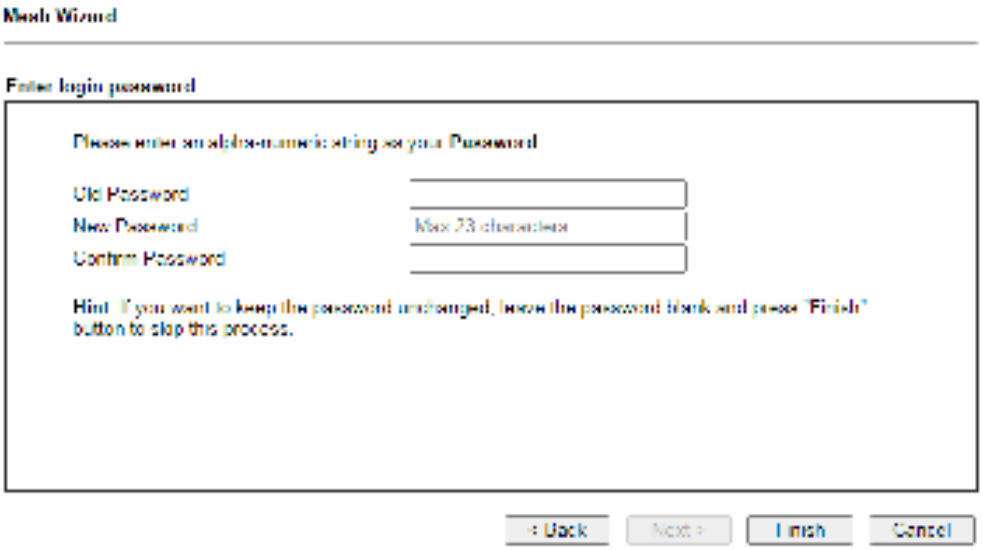
Mesh wizard offers a quick way to configure mesh network.

1. Go to **Wizards>Mesh Wizard**.

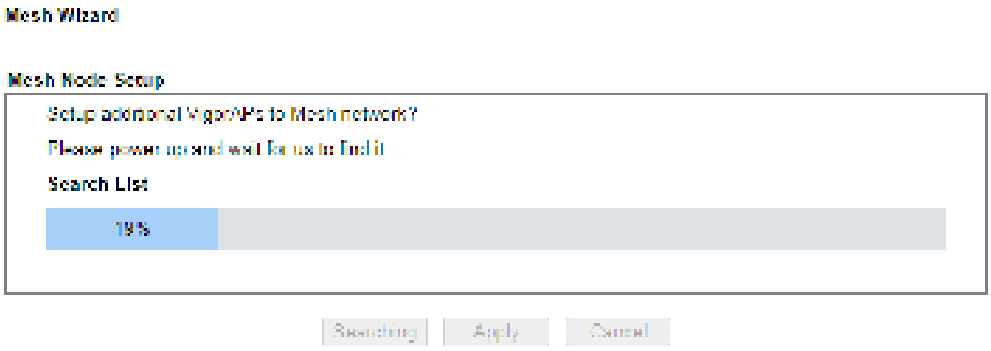
2. Check the **Enable Mesh** box. Click **Next** to get the following page.



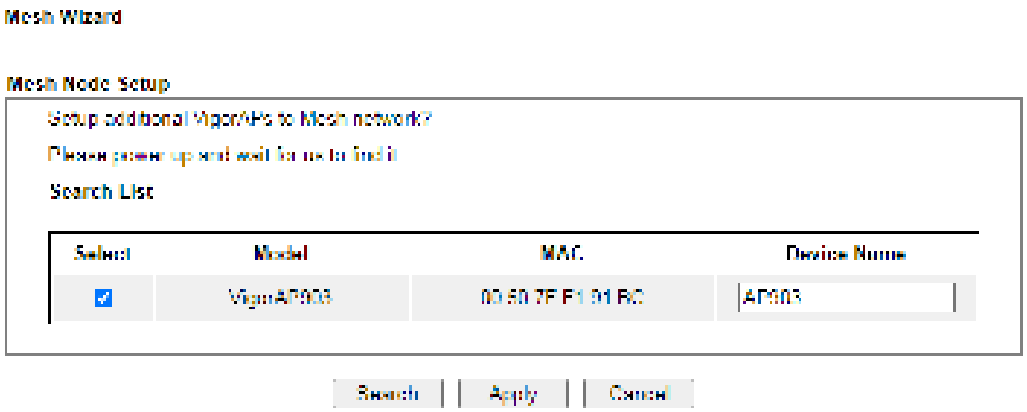
3. Set the Wifi Name and password; click **Next** to get the following page.



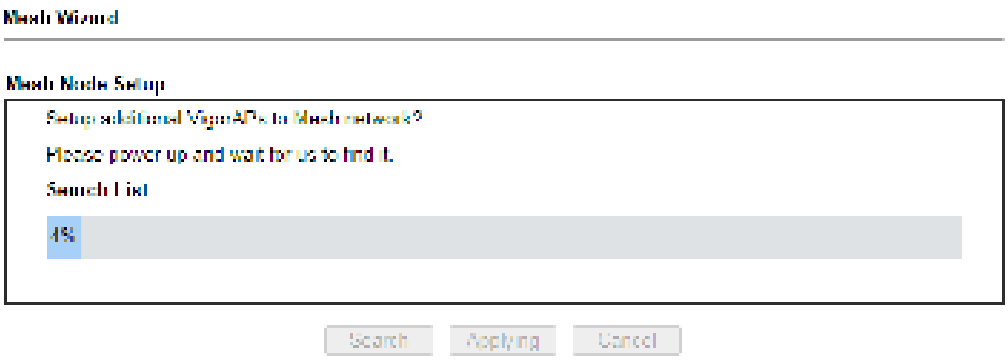
4. Set the password, if required. Then, click **Finish**. The system starts to search available APs.



5. Wait for a few minutes. Later, APs around Vigor router will be shown below.

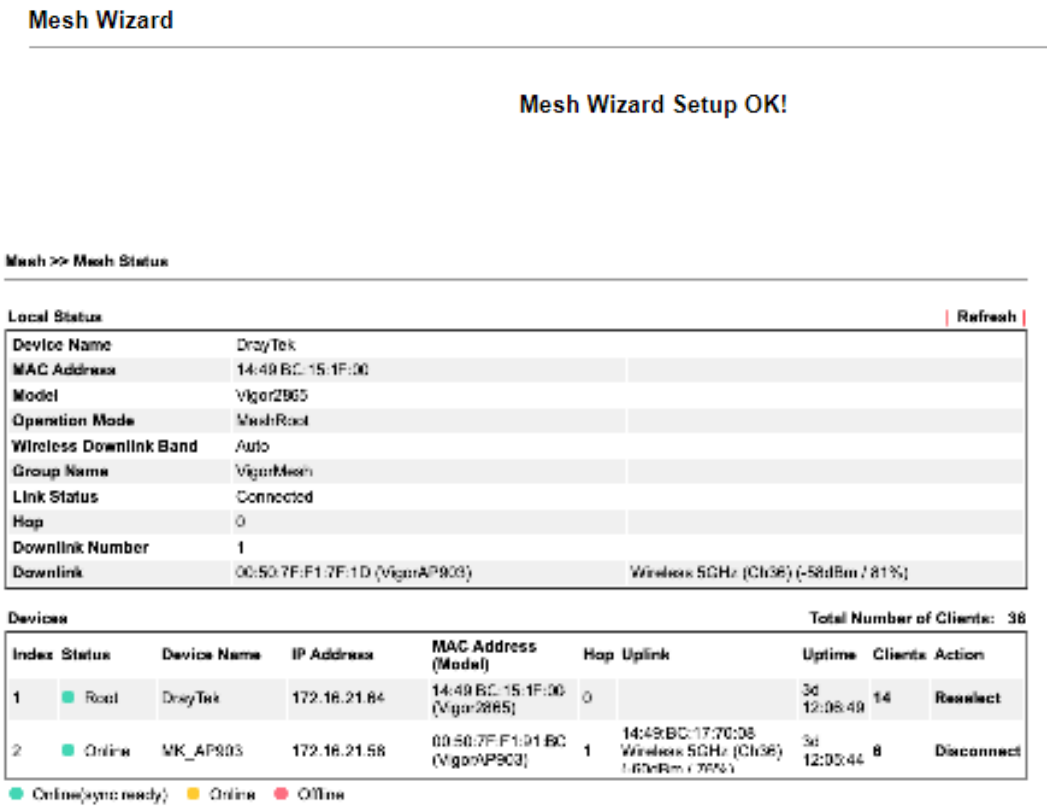


6. Select the one (e.g., VigorAP903 in this case) you want to group under Vigor router. Then, click **Apply**.



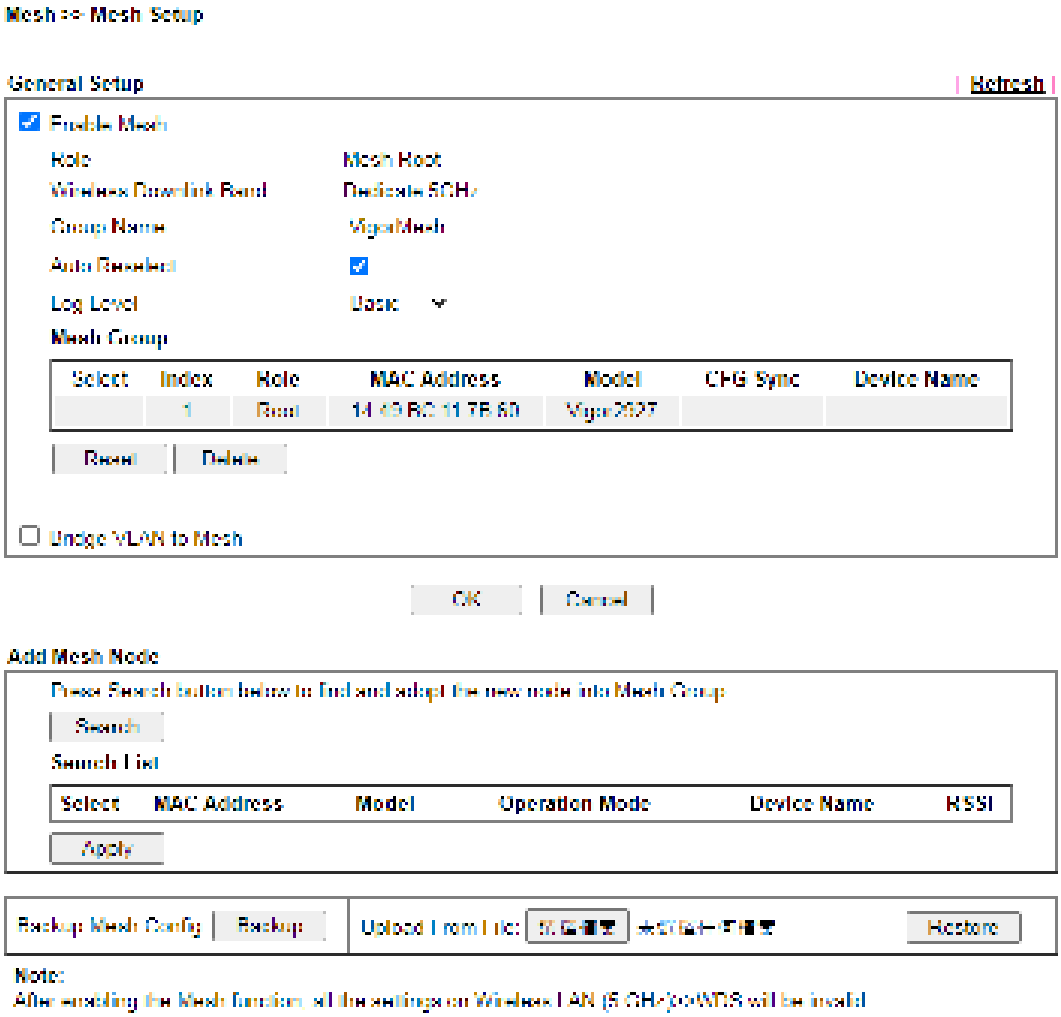
7. When the mesh node setup is finished, click **Finish**.

8. After "Mesh Wizard Setup OK!" appears, go to **Mesh>>Mesh Satus**. The mesh node (AP903) has been grouped under the Vigor router.



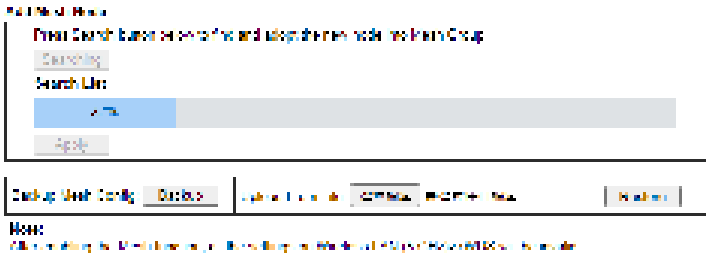
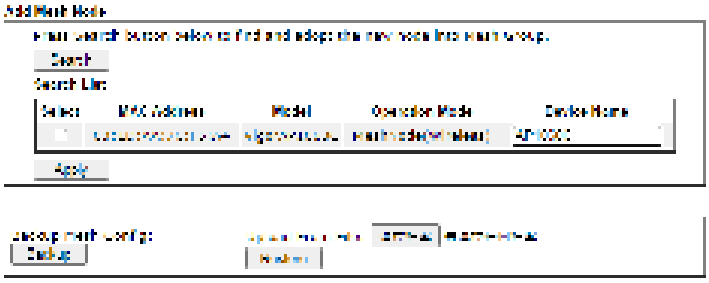
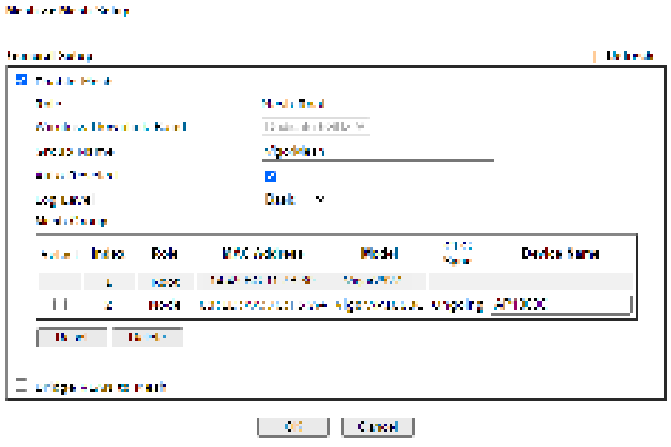
III-2-2 Mesh Setup

This page can modify settings related to Mesh. You can search and specify mesh nodes as members under current mesh group.



Available settings are explained as follows:

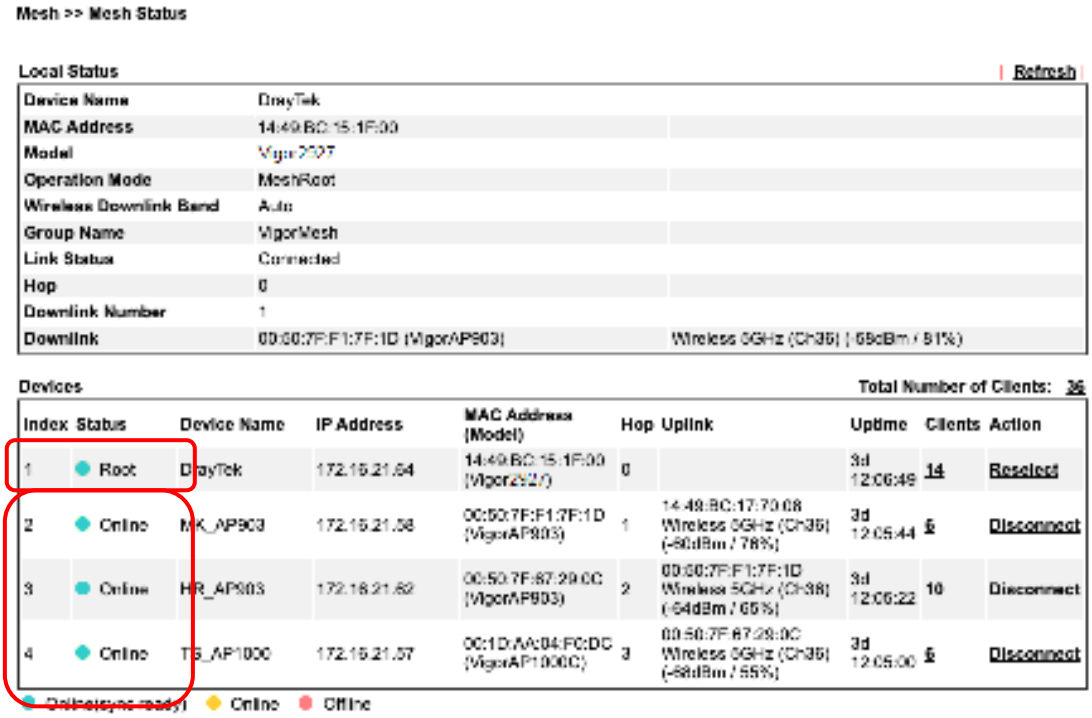
Item	Description
General Setup	
Enable Mesh	Check to enable the mesh function.
Role	Displays the role of Vigor router. Vigor router is a mesh root to provide internet acceess for Mesh Network.
Wireless Downlink Band	At present, only 5GHz is dedicated as the downlink band for connecting with an uplinked mesh node.
Group Name	Displays the name of the current mesh group.
Auto Reselect	It is selected in default. To perform the auto reselect, make sure the process for CFG Sync and CFG Check for mesh nodes are successful. If enabled, after changing the environment of mesh network (e.g., offline, disconnection), the root device will perform auto reselect to reconstruct the mesh network.

Log Level	Choose **Basic** or **Detailed**. Related information will be shown on the **Diagnostics>>Syslog Explorer**.
Mesh Group	The basic information including role, MAC address, and model name of the mesh root and node (up to 8 entries, one mesh root and seven mesh nodes) will be shown on this field. **Reset -** Click it to clear the Mesh Group information. **Delete** - Click it to remove the selected entry.
Bridge VLAN to Mesh	Select to enable the function.
Add Mesh Node - It is available only if the Mesh function is enabled.	
Search	Click to scan available APs around this Vigor router.  The detected APs will be shown on the Search List. 
Apply	Select the mesh node you want and click this button. The new mesh node will be shown on Mesh Group. 
Backup Mesh Config	**Backup** - Click the button to save the configuration as a file.
Select/Restore	Click the Upload button to specify a configuration file. Then click Restore to apply the configuration. When the MAC address of the Vigor router is not the mesh root of the mesh group, the restore operation will not succeed.

III-2-3 Mesh Status

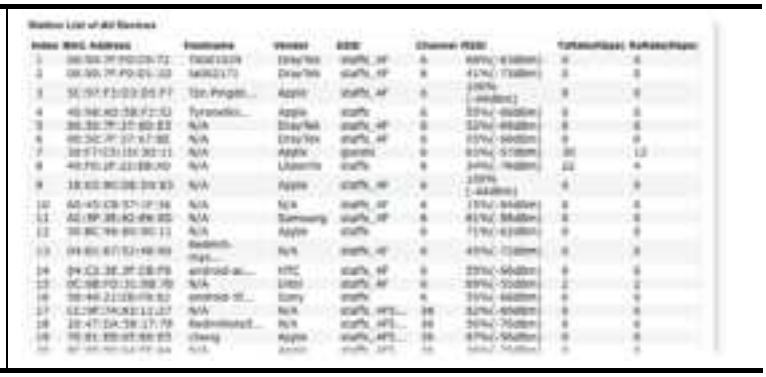
This page shows the mesh network status.

One Mesh Group can contain up to 8 devices. In the following figure, the device with hop 0 is one special Ethernet Backhaul. It means this node will use Ethernet cable to join the mesh group while others use the wireless link.



Available settings are explained as follows:

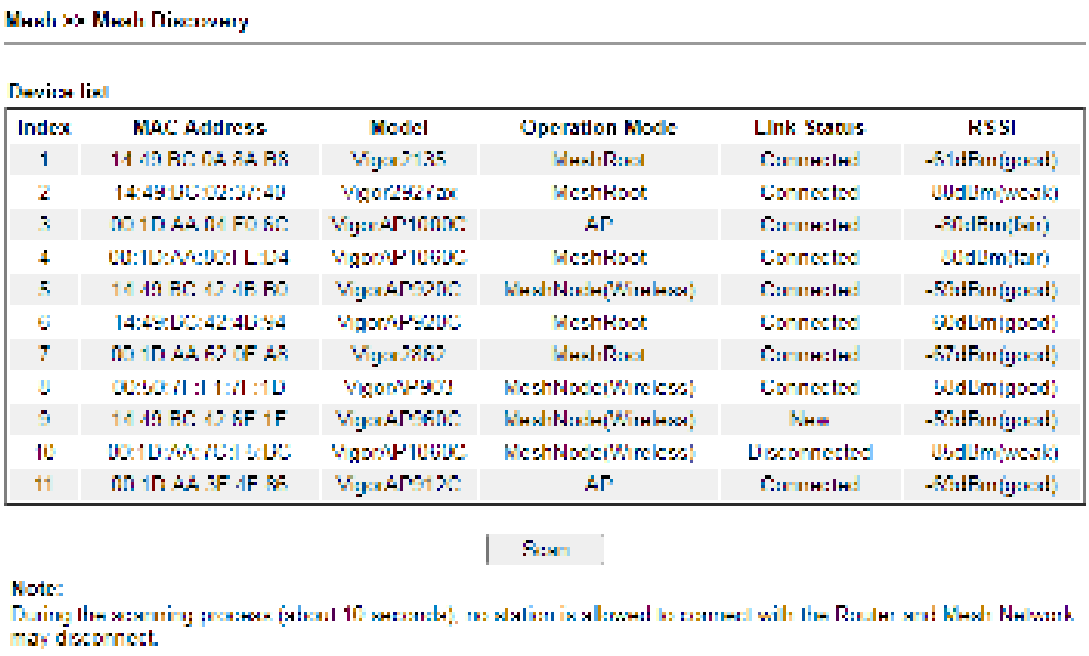
Item	Description
Local Status	Display general information for this device.
Devices	Display detailed information for this device (as mesh root) and mesh node(s) in the group. **Index** – Display the number of the device within a mesh group. **Status** – Display the role and connect status of the device. **Device Name** – Display the name of the device (for identification). **IP Address** – Display the IP address of the device. **MAC Address** – Display the MAC address of the device. **Hop** – Diplay the level of the device in Mesh Network. "0" means the device is connected to Internet by using Ethernet cable (wired). "1" to "3" means how many wireless links the device has to go through to reach a Hop 0 device. **Uplink** – Display the MAC address of the device that the AP connects to.
Total number of Clients	Display the station list of all mesh devices.



III-2-4 Mesh Discovery

Before a Mesh Node is connected, it is unable to check the device status from Mesh Root. This page can help to discover all Mesh devices around and offer the Link Status and Operation Mode of each Mesh device.

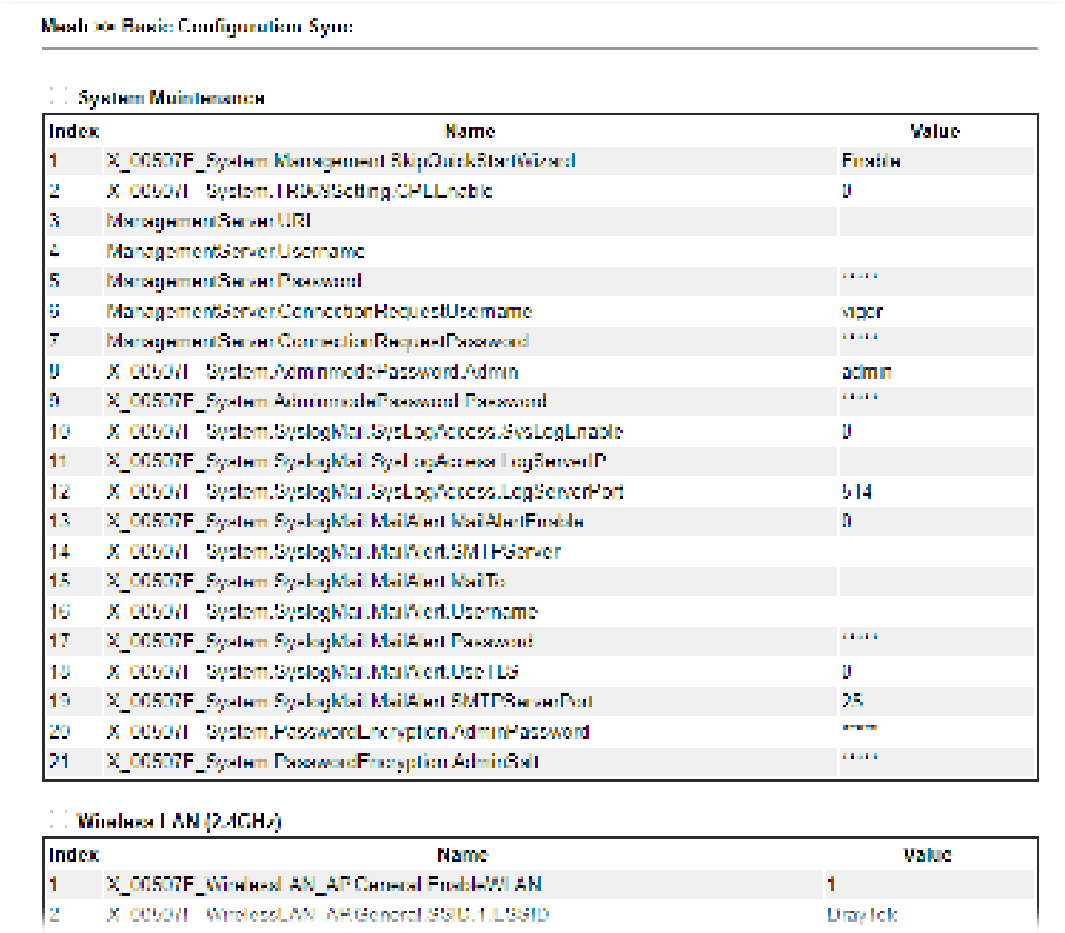
For obtaining the list of devices around this Vigor router, click **Scan**. Later, surrounding Mesh device(s) will be displayed on this page.



Only the device with the Link Status of "New" can be selected and grouped under this router.

III-2-5 Basic Config Sync

If you add one Mesh Node in a mesh group, the Mesh Root will send the basic configuration to the device. This page could help you to change the Mesh Root settings and deliver the new configuration of the Mesh Root to all "connected" Mesh Nodes.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
System Maintenance / **Wireless LAN (2.4Hz)** / **Wireless LAN (5GHz)**	Check the item(s) you want to make configuration sync. **Sync** - Click it to apply the settings configured by this router to all connected mesh node.

Tips for Mesh Network Setup

- Set up TWO mesh devices with uplink RSSI larger than -65dBm.
- Upgrade the firmware version of Mesh devices through Mesh link, starting from the mesh device with less hop number. For example, upgrade the firmware from the root, hop1 Mesh Node then hop2 Mesh Node, and so on.
- VigorMesh network supports up to 3 hops of mesh devices. However, it is suggested to connect the mesh group with less than or equals to 2 hops.

  For your reference, we make a real mesh environment test and get the following record. (Use VigorAP APP to do internet speed test with different hops mesh node.)

  Internet Download Speed (for root and hop1 ~ hop3):

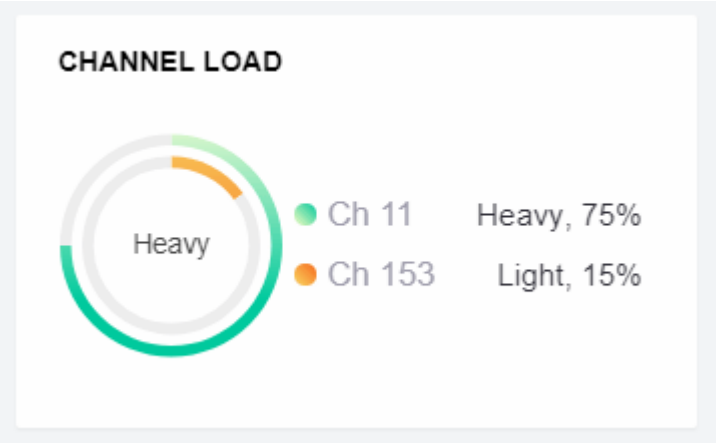
iPad connects to Root : 80Mbps

iPad connects to hop1 Node : 49Mbps (Uplink RSSI : -55dBm)

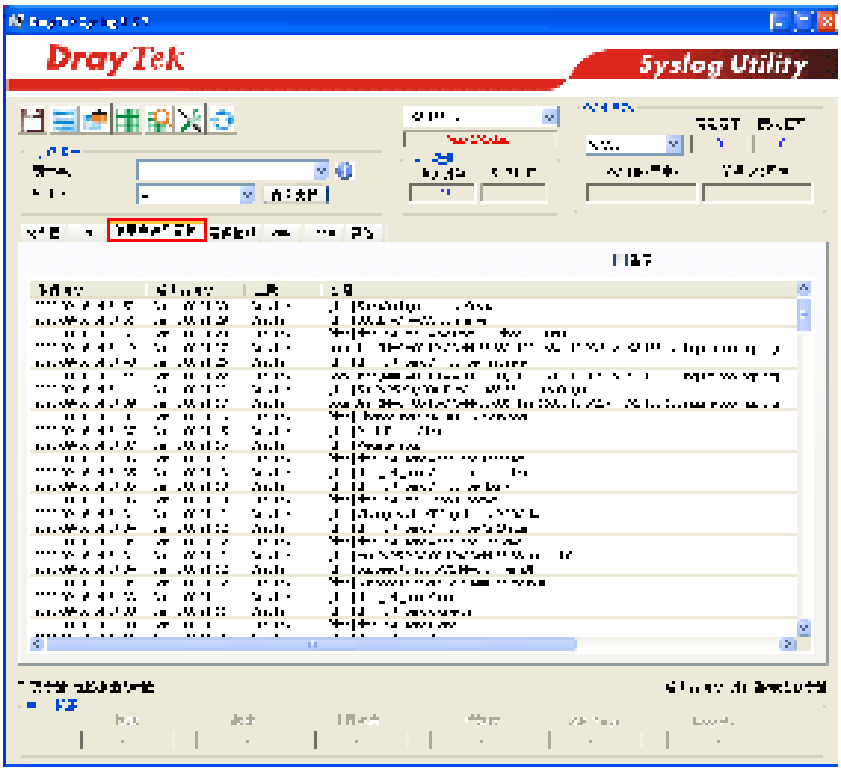
iPad connects to hop2 Node : 41Mbps (Uplink RSSI : hop2 -64dBm / hop1 -55dBm)

iPad connects to hop3 Node : 26Mbps (Uplink RSSI : hop3 -62dBm / hop2 -68dBm / hop1 -55dBm)

- It is not suggested to use a wireless Mesh Node with Ethernet cable connected to a Mesh Root.
- If resetting a Mesh Root,
  - All "connected" Mesh Nodes will be informed to reset.
  - Group List and Group Key will be reset, too.
  - For those Mesh Nodes unable to reset, reset them manually. Reset the Group List by web or factory default.
- If resetting a Mesh Node,
  - Group List and Group Key will be cleared.
  - Link Status will become "New".
- If Mesh Search / Apply / Discover is worked too fast or is done with empty result, your request may be rejected. Please try again.
- Troubleshooting:
  - Check the firmware version. Please make sure all APs within the mesh group are in the newest firmware version.
  - Check the OP (operation) Mode. Make sure new Mesh Node doesn't accidentally get DHCP IP and becomes AP mode.
  - Check the country code and channels. For example, it is impossible for connecting a VigorAP 912C Mesh Root with 5G channel 36 to VigorAP920R Wireless Mesh Node in EU country code.
  - Check the channel load. Make sure it is not over 70%.



  - Collect some Mesh logs and send the result to DrayTek for analyzing.



III-2-6 Support List

Mesh >> Support List

The following compatibility test lists DrayTek AP models supported by Vigor router Mesh.

Model	Status	Firmware Version
VigorAP 802	Y	1.3.6
VigorAP 903	Y	1.2.0
VigorAP 910C	Y	1.3.6
VigorAP 1000C	Y	1.3.5
VigorAP 960C	Y	1.4.0
VigorAP 1060C	Y	1.4.2

Y:Tested and is supported
N:Not supported.

This page is left blank.

Part IV VoIP

Voice over IP network (VoIP) enables you to use your broadband Internet connection to make toll quality voice calls over the Internet.

IV-1 VoIP

Voice over IP network (VoIP) enables you to use your broadband Internet connection to make toll quality voice calls over the Internet.

Info	This function is used for “V” models.

There are many different call signaling protocols, methods by which VoIP devices can talk to each other. The most popular protocols are SIP, MGCP, Megaco and H.323. These protocols are not all compatible with each other (except via a soft-switch server).

The Vigor V models support the SIP protocol as this is an ideal and convenient deployment for the ITSP (Internet Telephony Service Provider) and softphone and is widely supported. SIP is an end-to-end, signaling protocol that establishes user presence and mobility in VoIP structure. Every one who wants to talk using his/her SIP Uniform Resource Identifier, “SIP Address”. The standard format of SIP URI is

sip: user:password @host: port

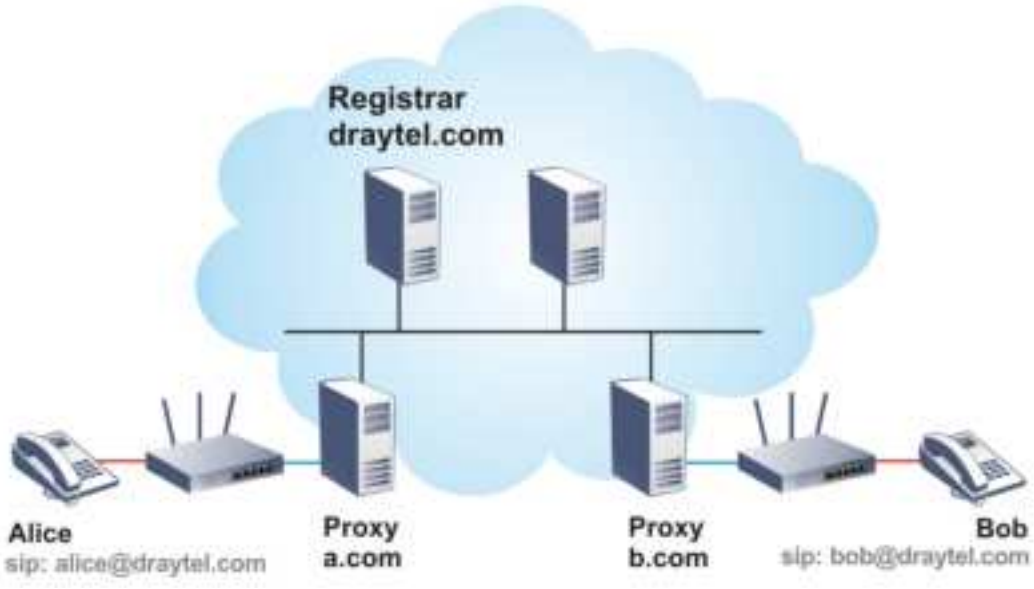
Some fields may be optional in different use. In general, "host” refers to a domain. The “userinfo” includes the user field, the password field and the @ sign following them. This is very similar to a URL so some may call it “SIP URL”. SIP supports peer-to-peer direct calling and also calling via a SIP proxy server (a role similar to the gatekeeper in H.323 networks), while the MGCP protocol uses client-server architecture, the calling scenario being very similar to the current PSTN network.

After a call is setup, the voice streams transmit via RTP (Real-Time Transport Protocol). Different codecs (methods to compress and encode the voice) can be embedded into RTP packets. Vigor V models provide various codecs, including G.711 A/μ-law, G.723, G.726 and G.729 A & B. Each codec uses a different bandwidth and hence provides different levels of voice quality. The more bandwidth a codec uses the better the voice quality, however the codec used must be appropriate for your Internet bandwidth.

Calling via SIP Servers

First, the Vigor V models of yours will have to register to a SIP Registrar by sending registration messages to validate. Then, both parties’ SIP proxies will forward the sequence of messages to caller to establish the session.

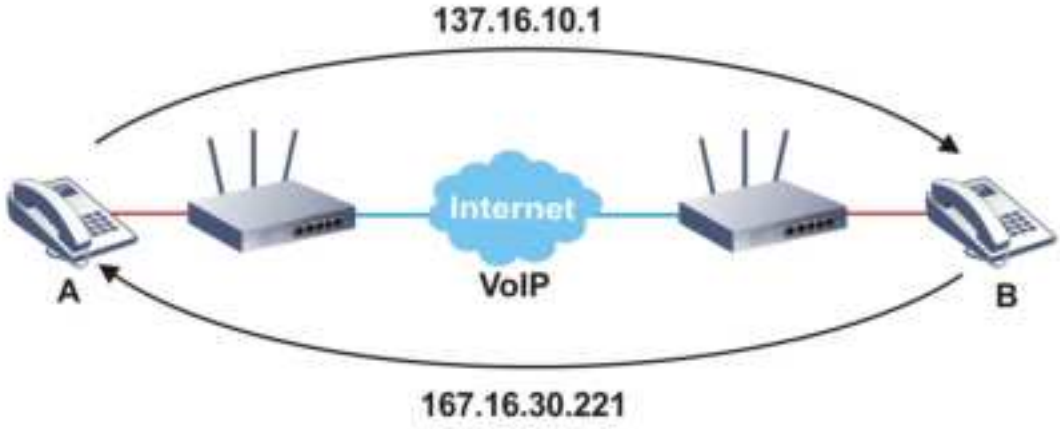
If you both register to the same SIP Registrar, then it will be illustrated as below:



The major benefit of this mode is that you don't have to memorize your friend's IP address, which might change very frequently if it's dynamic. Instead of that, you will only have to using **dial plan** or directly dial your friend's **account name** if you are with the same SIP Registrar.

Peer-to-Peer

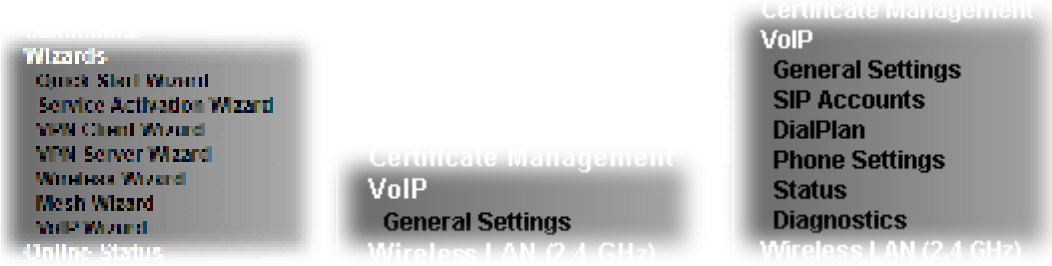
Before calling, you have to know your friend's IP Address. The Vigor VoIP Routers will build connection between each other.



Vigor V models firstly apply efficient codecs designed to make the best use of available bandwidth, but Vigor V models also equip with automatic QoS assurance. QoS Assurance assists to assign high priority to voice traffic via Internet. You will always have the required inbound and outbound bandwidth that is prioritized exclusively for Voice traffic over Internet but you just get your data a little slower and it is tolerable for data traffic.

Our Vigor V models firstly apply efficient codecs designed to make the best use of available bandwidth, but Vigor V models also equip with automatic QoS assurance. QoS Assurance assists to assign high priority to voice traffic via Internet. You will always have the required inbound and outbound bandwidth that is prioritized exclusively for Voice traffic over Internet but you just get your data a little slower and it is tolerable for data traffic.

Web User Interface

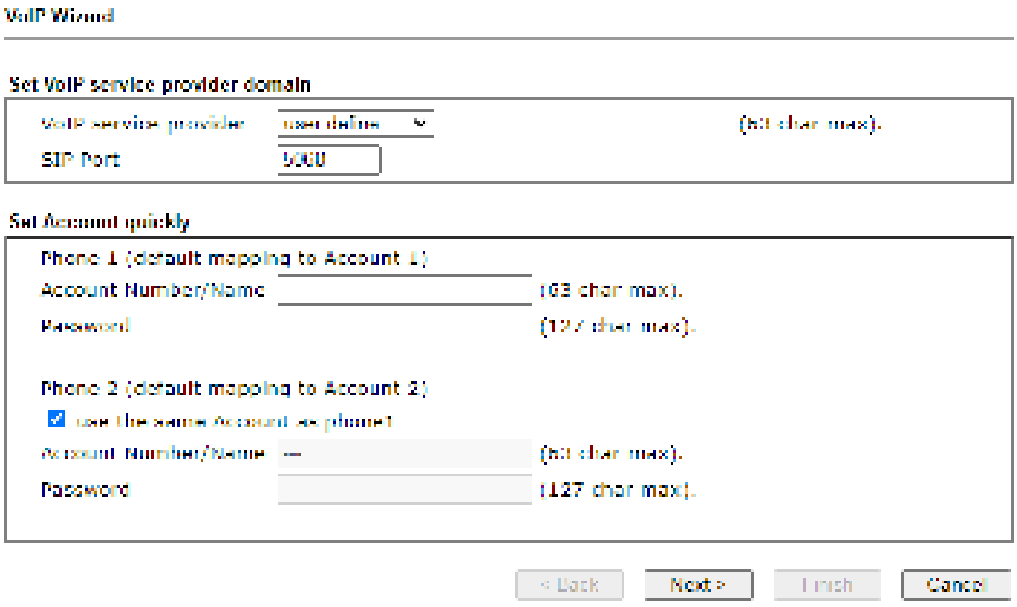


IV-1-1 VoIP Wizard

Vigor router offers a quick method to configure settings for VoIP application. Follow the steps listed below.

Info	This wizard is available for “V” model only.

1. Open **Wizards>>VoIP Wizard**.
2. The screen of **VoIP Wizard** will be shown as follows.

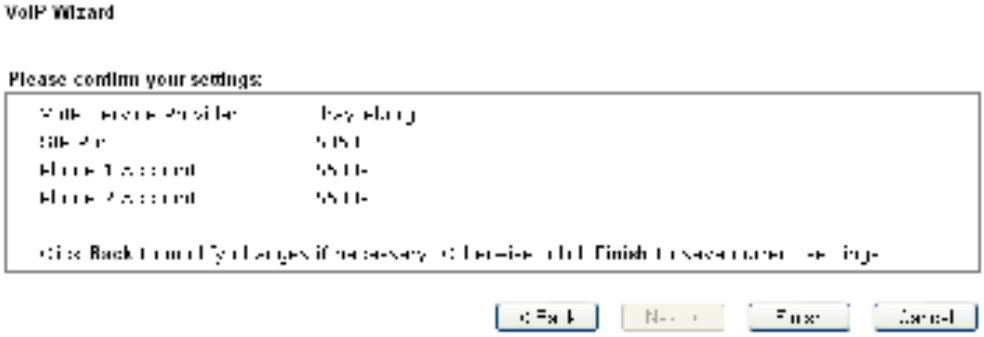


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set VoIP service provider domain	**VoIP service provider** - Use the drop down list to choose the ISP which offers the VoIP service for your router. **SIP Port** – Use the default setting (5060).
Set Account quickly	**Account Number/Name** – Enter the account number/name registered to your ISP. **Password** – Enter the password for the account registered to your ISP.

	Use the same Account as phone 1 – If you don't need to configure Phone 2 settings, simply check this box.
Next	Click it to get into the next setting page.
Cancel	Click it to give up the VoIP wizard.

3. After finished the settings above, click **Next** for viewing summary of such connection.

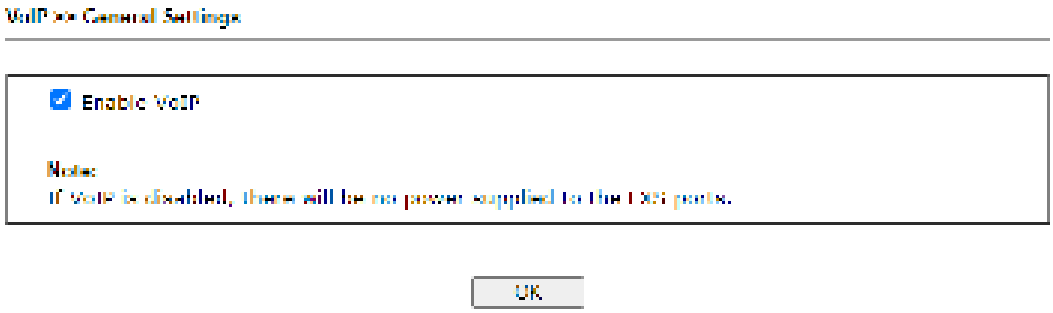


4. Click **Finish.** A page of **VoIP Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear.

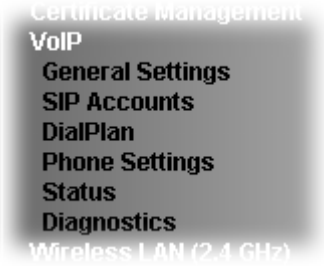
VoIP Wizard Setup OK!

IV-1-2 General Settings

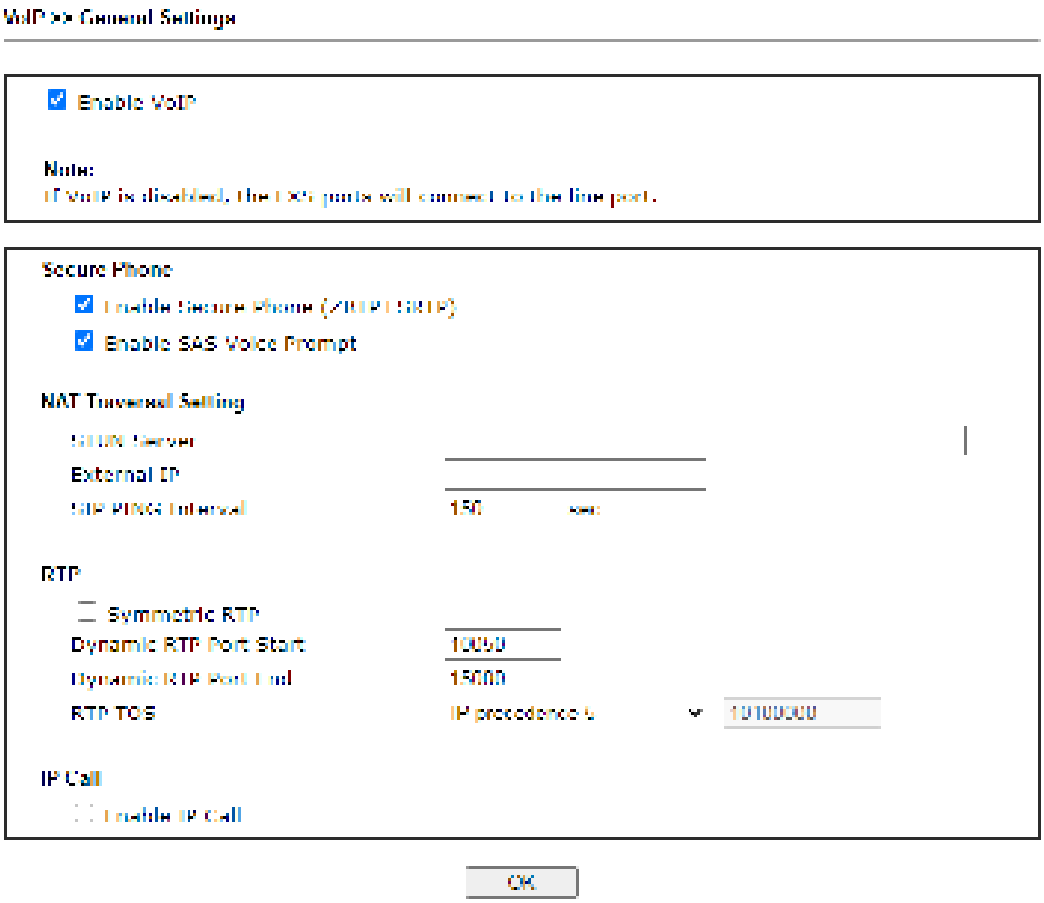
Open **VoIP>>General Settings**. The following page will appear. Check the box of **Enable VoIP** and click **OK** to open the configuration page. If not, no settings will be displayed.



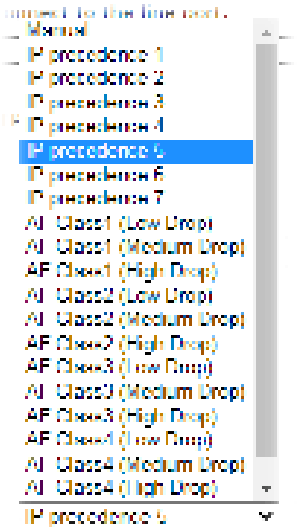
After checking the box and click **OK**, the menu items under VoIP will be shown as follows.



Again, open **VoIP>>General Settings**. The following page appears for you to configure secure phone, IP call; and set NAT Traversal Setting, RTP for the VoIP function.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Secure Phone	**Enable Secure Phone** - It allows users to have encrypted RTP stream with the peer side using the same protocol (ZRTP+SRTP). Check this box to have secure call. **Enable SAS Voice Prompt -** If it is enabled, SAS prompt will be heard for both ends every time. If it is disabled, no SAS prompt will be heard any more.
NAT Traversal Setting	**STUN Server -** Type in the IP address or domain of the STUN server. **External IP -** Type in the gateway IP address. **SIP PING interval -** The default value is 150 (sec). It is useful for a Nortel server NAT Traversal Support.
RTP	**Symmetric RTP** – Check this box to invoke the function. To make the data transmission going through on both ends of local router and remote router not misleading due to IP lost (for example, sending data from the public IP of remote router to the private IP of local router), you can check this box to solve this problem. **Dynamic RTP Port Start** - Specifies the start port for RTP stream. The default value is 10050. **Dynamic RTP Port End** - Specifies the end port for RTP stream. The default value is 15000. **RTP TOS** – It decides the level of VoIP package. Use the drop down list to choose any one of them. 
IP Call	**Enable IP Call** –It allows that a user could dial outgoing IP Calls; and Vigor router could receive the incoming IP Calls.

Application for Secure Phone

Enable SAS Voice Prompt, for ex: if vigor router A calls vigor router B with checking **Enable Secure Phone** and **Enable SAS Voice Prompt**, then:

1. After the connection established, vigor router A will send SAS voice prompt to A and vigor router B will send the SAS voice prompt to B.
2. Then the RTP traffic is secured until the call ends.

3. If vigor router A wants to call vigor router B again next time, both A and B will not hear any voice prompt again even checking **Enable SAS Voice Prompt** on web UI. It means only the first call between them will have voice prompt.

Enable SAS Voice Prompt, for ex: if vigor router A calls vigor router B with checking **Enable Secure Phone** but not **Enable SAS Voice Prompt**, then:

1. After the connection established, vigor router A will **NOT** send SAS voice prompt to vigor router A and vigor router B will NOT send the SAS voice prompt to vigor router B.
2. Even no voice prompt, but the RTP traffic is still secured until the call ends.

Info

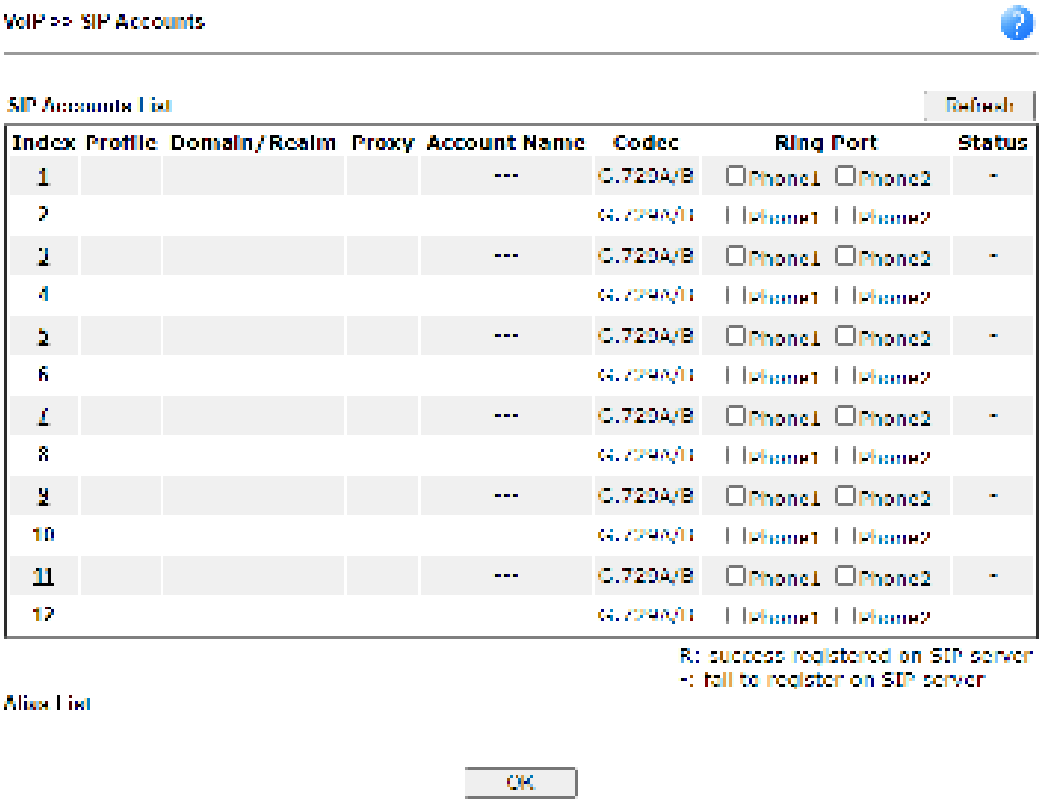
If the incoming or outgoing calls do not match any entry on the phonebook, the router will try to make the call "being protected". But, if the call ends up "unprotected"(e.g. peer side does not support ZRTP+SRTP), the router will not play out a warning message.

IV-1-3 SIP Accounts

In this section, you set up your own SIP settings. When you apply for an account, your SIP service provider will give you an **Account Name** or user name, **SIP Registrar**, **Proxy**, and **Domain name**. (The last three might be the same in some case). Then you can tell your folks your SIP Address as in **Account Name@Domain name**

As Vigor VoIP Router is turned on, it will first register with Registrar using AuthorizationUser@Domain/Realm. After that, your call will be bypassed by SIP Proxy to the destination using AccountName@Domain/Realm as identity.

Info	Selection items for Ring Port will differ according to the router you have.

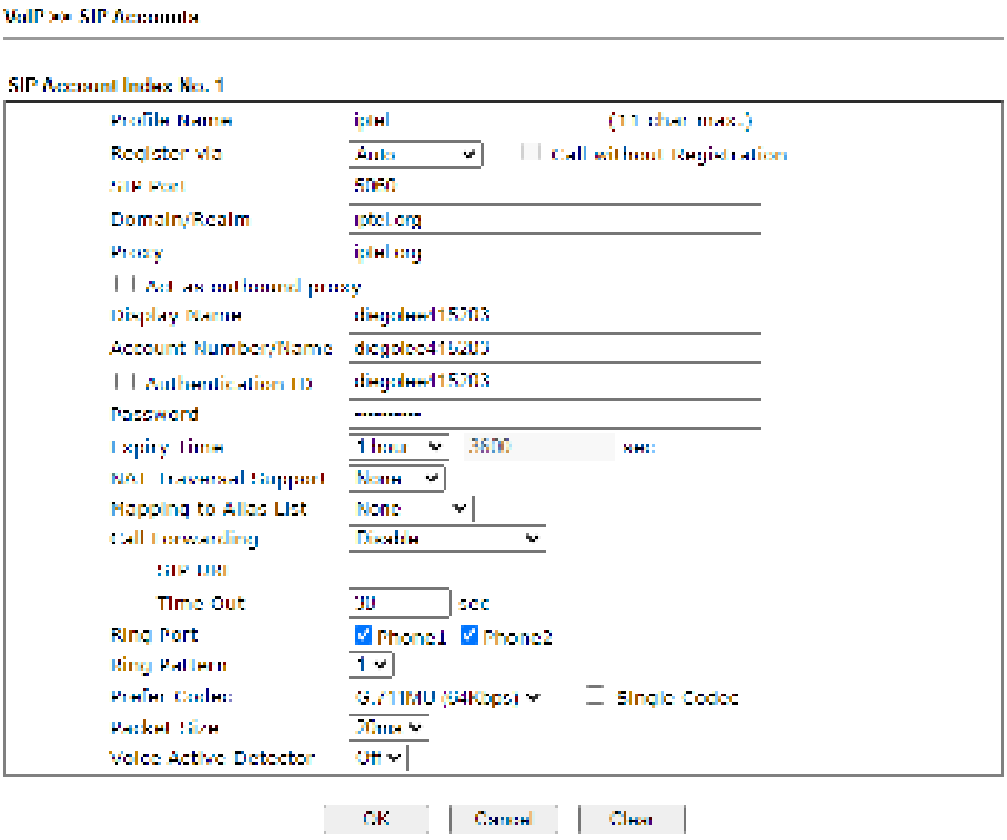


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Index	Click this link to access into next page for setting SIP account.
Profile	Display the profile name of the account.
Domain/Realm	Display the domain name or IP address of the SIP registrar server.
Proxy	Display the domain name or IP address of the SIP proxy server.
Account Name	Display the account name of SIP address before @.
Codec	Display the codec type for the account.
Ring Port	Specify which port will ring when receiving a phone call.

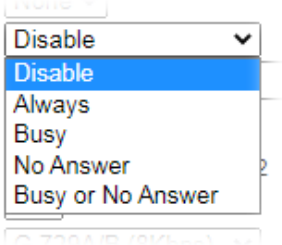
Status	Show the status for the corresponding SIP account. **R** means such account is registered on SIP server successfully. **–** means the account is failed to register on SIP server.
Alias List	Allows you to set multiple SIP alias names.

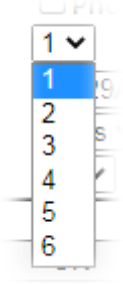
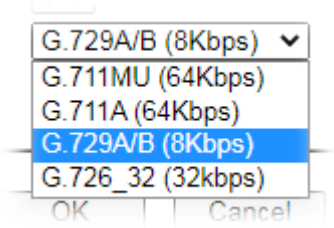
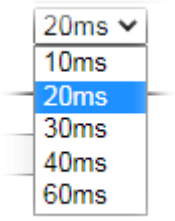
Click any index link to access into the following page for configuring SIP account.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Name	Assign a name for this profile for identifying. You can type similar name with the domain. For example, if the domain name is *draytel.org*, then you might set *draytel-1* in this field.
Register via	If you want to make VoIP call without register personal information, please choose **None** and check the box to achieve the goal. Some SIP server allows user to use VoIP function without registering. For such server, please check the box of **Call without Registration**. Choosing **Auto** is recommended. The system will select a proper way for your VoIP call.
SIP Port	Set the port number for sending/receiving SIP message for building a session. The default value is **5060**. Your peer must set the same value in his/her Registrar.
Domain/Realm	Set the domain name or IP address of the SIP Registrar server.
Proxy	Set domain name or IP address of SIP proxy server. By the time you can type **:port number** after the domain name to specify that port as the destination of data transmission

	(e.g., **nat.draytel.org:5065**)
Act as Outbound Proxy	Check this box to make the proxy acting as outbound proxy.
Display Name	The caller-ID that you want to be displayed on your friend's screen.
Account Number/Name	Enter your account name of SIP Address, e.g. every text before @.
Authentication ID	Check the box to invoke this function and enter the name or number used for SIP Authorization with SIP Registrar. If this setting value is the same as Account Name, it is not necessary for you to check the box and set any value in this field.
Password	The password provided to you when you registered with a SIP service.
Expiry Time	The time duration that your SIP Registrar server keeps your registration record. Before the time expires, the router will send another register request to SIP Registrar again.
NAT Traversal Support	If the router (e.g., broadband router) you use connects to internet by other device, you have to set this function for your necessity. **None** – Disable this function. **Stun** – Choose this option if there is Stun server provided for your router. **Manual** – Choose this option if you want to specify an external IP address as the NAT transversal support. **Nortel** – If the soft-switch that you use supports Nortel solution, you can choose this option.
Mapping to Alias List	Select one of the alias profiles.
Call Forwarding	There are four options for you to choose. **Disable** is to close call forwarding function. **Always** means all the incoming calls will be forwarded into SIP URL without any reason. **Busy** means the incoming calls will be forwarded into SIP URL only when the local system is busy. **No Answer** means if the incoming calls do not receive any response, they will be forwarded to the SIP URL by the time out.  **SIP URL** – Type in the SIP URL (e.g., aaa@draytel.org or abc@iptel.org) as the site for call forwarded. **Time Out** – Set the time out for the call forwarding. The default setting is 30 sec.
Ring Port	Set Phone 1 and/or Phone 2 as the default ring port(s) for this SIP account.
Ring Pattern	Choose a ring tone type for the VoIP phone call.

	
Prefer Codec	Select one of five codecs as the default for your VoIP calls. The codec used for each call will be negotiated with the peer party before each session, and so may not be your default choice. The default codec is G.729A/B; it occupies little bandwidth while maintaining good voice quality. If your upstream speed is only 64Kbps, do not use G.711 codec. It is better for you to have at least 256Kbps upstream if you would like to use G.711.  **Single Codec** - If the box is checked, only the selected Codec will be applied.
Packet Size	The amount of data contained in a single packet. The default value is 20 ms, which means the data packet will contain 20 ms voice information. 
Voice Active Detector	This function can detect if the voice on both sides is active or not. If not, the router will do something to save the bandwidth for other using. Click **On** to invoke this function; click **Off** to close the function.

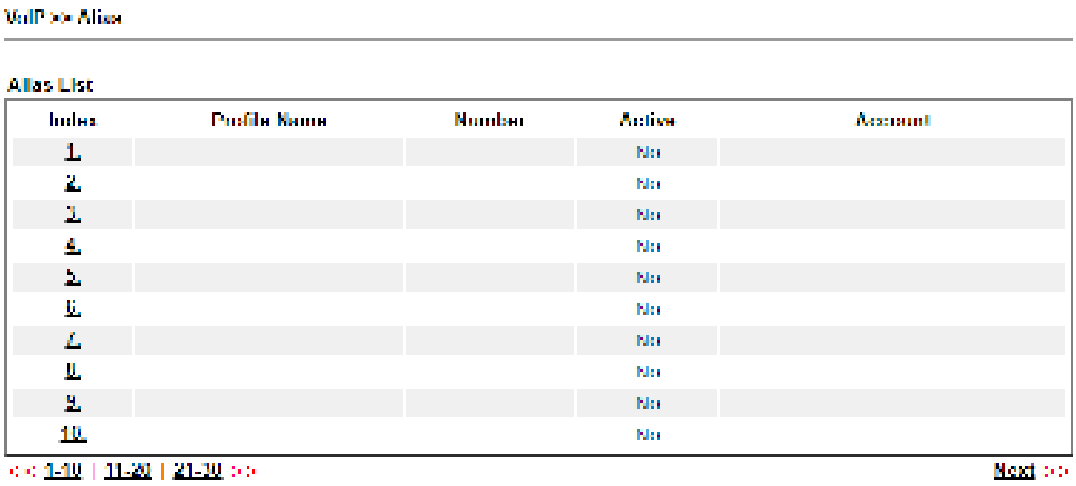
After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

IV-1-3-1 Alias List

This page lists all SIP alias profiles.

A SIP alias is just like an extension number in that people can dial it to reach a specific person directly. Normally, when you have a user account for one ITSP, the ITSP will provide you one SIP account. However, with this feature, you can own multiple SIP alias over one SIP account. When you register with a regular user account, the alias is registered as well as the main SIP account. Then, when somebody dials the alias, the SIP URI bound to the alias will ring.

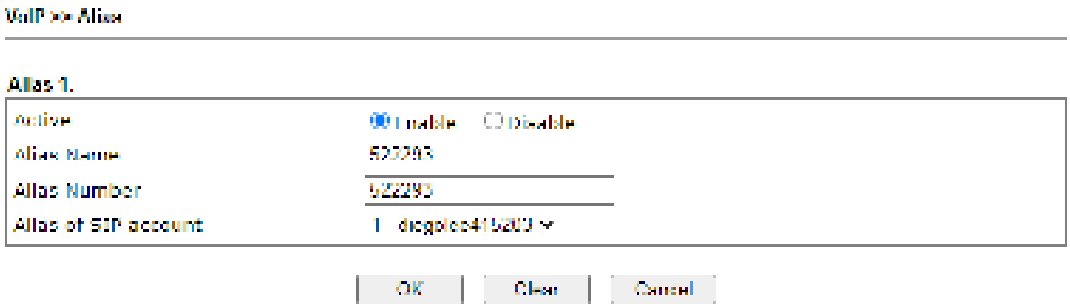
Click the **Alias List** link to access the configuration page as shown below.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Index	Click the number link for each profile.
Profile Name	Display the alias name for such sub account.
Number	Display the phone number of such account.
Active	Display current activation status for such account, enabled or disabled.
Account	Display the SIP account number for such sub account attached.

You can set 30 profiles as alias. Click the number under Index to set detailed configuration.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Active	Click **Enable** to activate this entry. Or, click **Disable** to inactive this entry.
Alias Name	Specify a name for an alias number.
Alias Number	Enter an alias number. The alias numbers are obtained from your ITSP.
Alias of SIP account	Choose one of the items listed in SIP account list for this alias profile.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

VoIP >> Alias

Alias List

Index	Profile Name	Number	Active	Account
1.	[illegible]	[illegible]	Yes	[illegible]
2.			No	
3.			No	
4.			No	
5.			No	
6.			No	
7.			No	
8.			No	
9.			No	
10.			No	

<< 1-10 | 11-20 | 21-30 >>

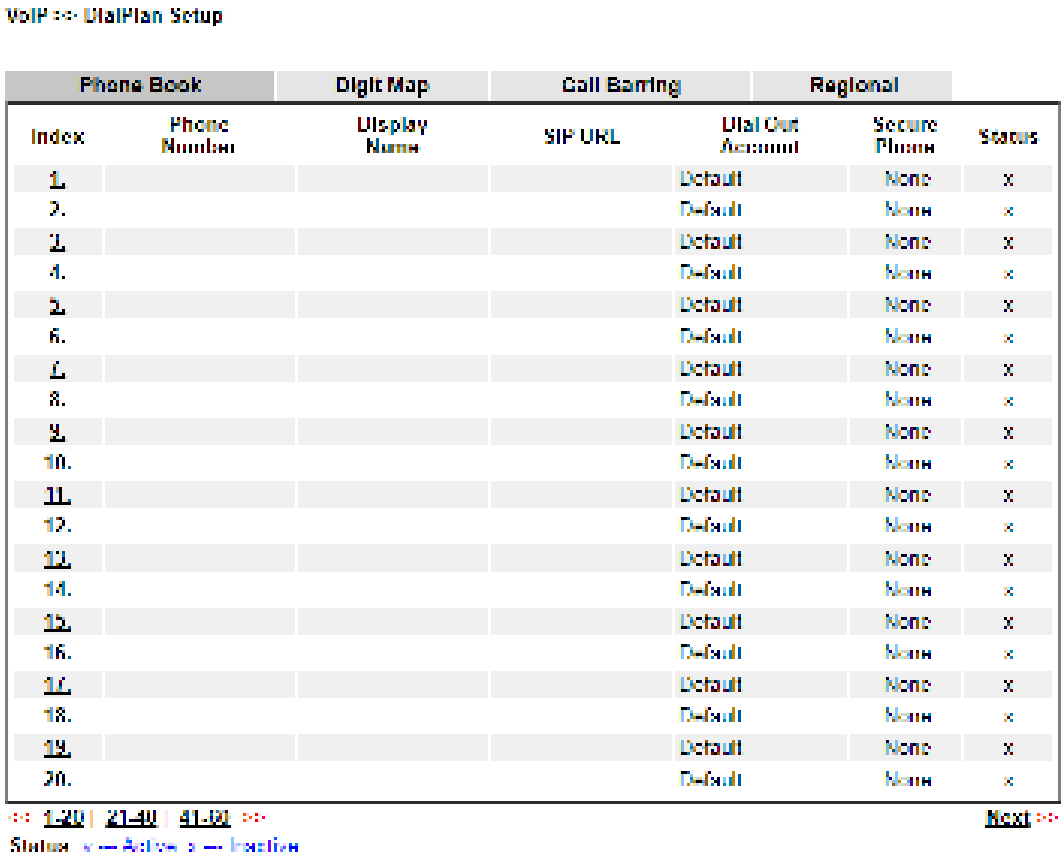
Next >>

IV-1-4 DialPlan

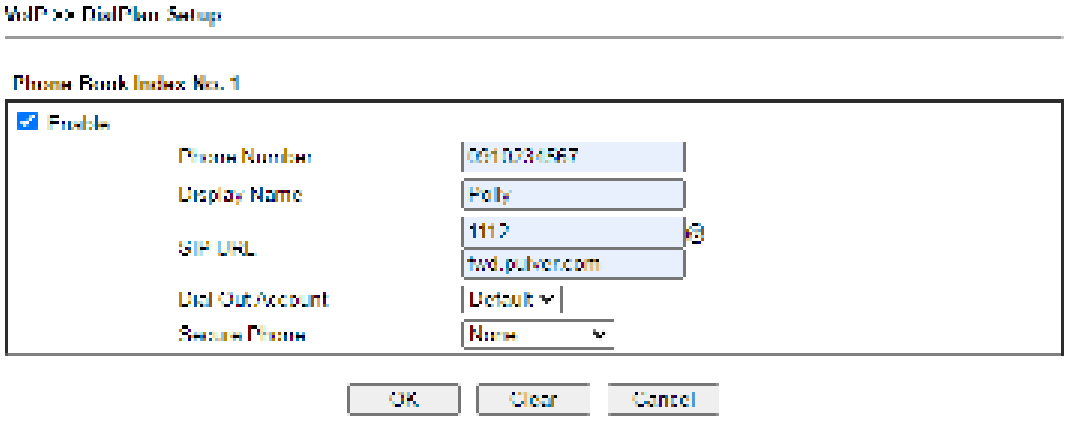
This page allows you to set phone book, digit map, call barring, and regional settings for the VoIP function. Click the links on this page to access into next pages for detailed settings.

IV-1-4-1 Phone Book

In this section, you can set your VoIP contacts in the “phonebook”. It can help you to make calls quickly and easily by using “speed-dial” **Phone Number**. There are total 60 index entries in the phonebook for you to store all your friends and family members’ SIP addresses. **Loop through** and **Backup Phone Number** will be displayed if you are using Vigor2927 series for setting the phone book.



Click any index number to display the dial plan setup page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

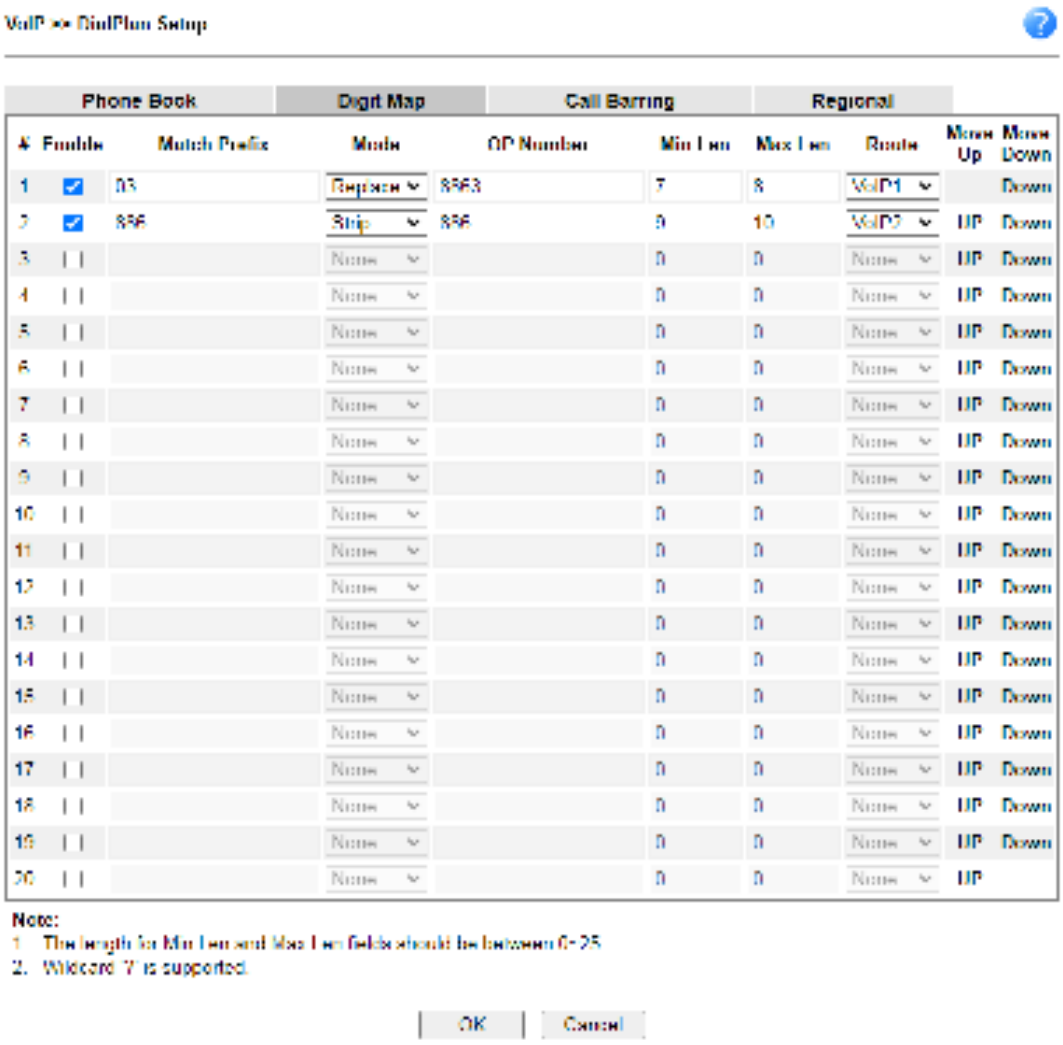
Item	Description
Enable	Click this to enable this entry.
Phone Number	The speed-dial number of this index. This can be any number you choose, using digits **0-9** and * .
Display Name	The Caller-ID that you want to be displayed on your friend's screen. This let your friend can easily know who's calling without memorizing lots of SIP URL Address.
SIP URL	Enter your friend's SIP Address.
Dial Out Account	Choose one of the SIP accounts for this profile to dial out. It is useful for both sides (caller and callee) that registered to different SIP Registrar servers. If caller and callee do not use the same SIP server, sometimes, the VoIP phone call connection may not succeed. By using the specified dial out account, the successful connection can be assured.
Secure Phone	**ZRTP+SRTP** - It allows users to have encrypted RTP stream with the peer side using the same protocol (ZRTP+SRTP). Check this box to have secure call.
Cancel	Return to previous web page.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

Info	If the incoming or outgoing calls do not match any entry on the phonebook, the router will try to make the call "being protected". But, if the call ends up "unprotected"(e.g. peer side does not support ZRTP+SRTP), the router will not play out a warning message.

IV-1-4-2 Digit Map

For the convenience of user, this page allows users to edit prefix number for the SIP account with adding number, stripping number or replacing number. It is used to help user have a quick and easy way to dial out through VoIP interface.



Available settings are explained as follows:

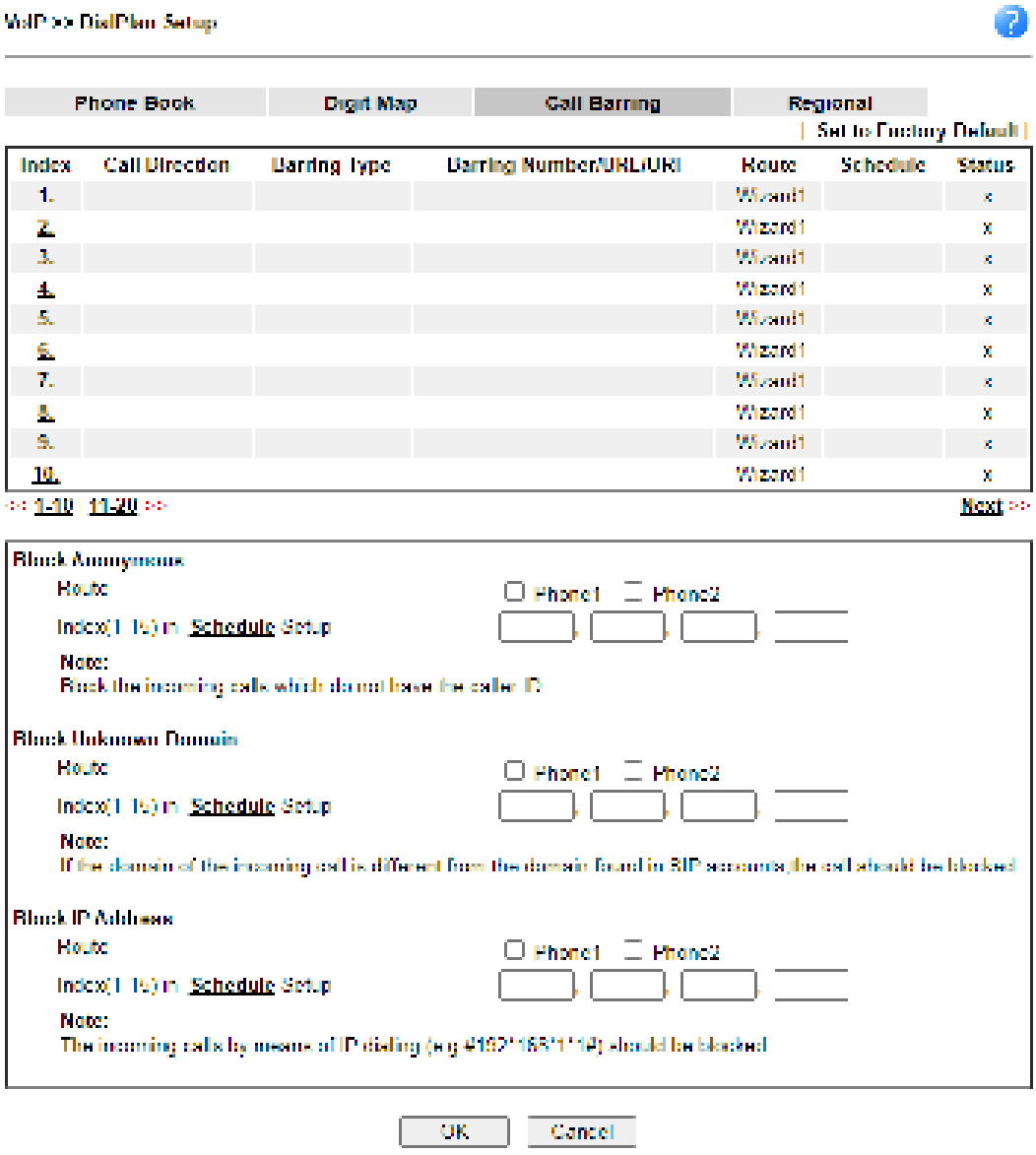
Item	Description
Enable	Check this box to invoke this setting.
Match Prefix	It is used to match with the number you dialed and may be modified by the action (add, strip or replace) with the **OP Number**.
Mode	**None** - No action. **Add** - When you choose this mode, the OP number will be added before the match prefix number for calling out through the specific route. **Strip** - When you choose this mode, the partial or whole match prefix number will be deleted according to the OP number. Take the above picture (Prefix Table Setup web page) as an example, the OP number of *886* will be deleted completely for the match prefix number is set with *886*. **Replace** - When you choose this mode, the OP number will be replaced by the prefix number for calling out through the specific VoIP interface. Take the above picture (Prefix Table Setup web page) as an example, the prefix number of 03 will be replaced by 8863. For example: dial number of "031111111" will be changed to "88631111111" and sent to SIP server.

OP Number	The front number you type here is the first part of the account number that you want to execute special function (according to the chosen mode) by using the prefix number.
Min Len	Set the minimal length of the dial number for applying the prefix number settings. Take the above picture (Prefix Table Setup web page) as an example, if the dial number is between 7 and 9, that number can apply the prefix number settings here.
Max Len	Set the maximum length of the dial number for applying the prefix number settings.
Route	Choose the one that you want to enable the prefix number settings from the saved SIP accounts. Please set up one SIP account first to make this interface available. This item will be changed according to the port settings configured in **VoIP>> Phone Settings**.
Move UP / **Move Down**	Click the link to move the selected entry up or down.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

IV-1-4-3 Call Barring

Call barring is used to block phone calls coming from the one that is not welcomed.



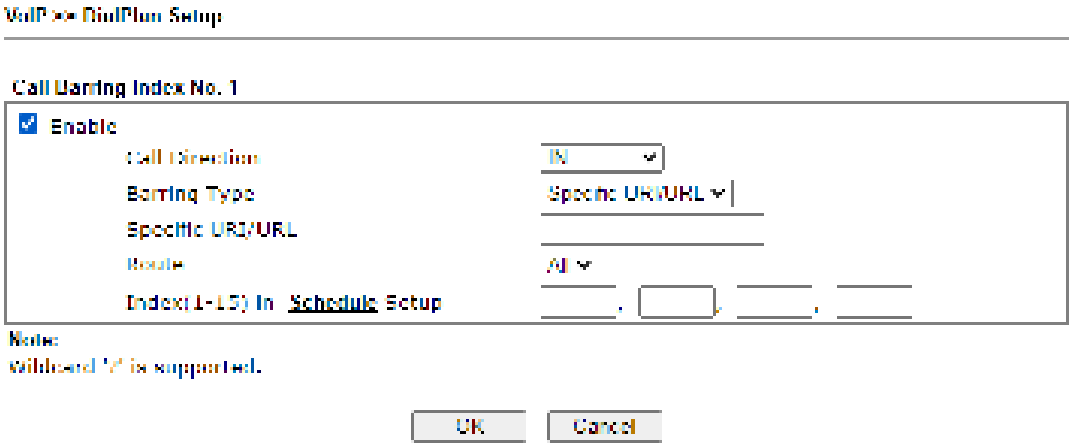
Additionally, you can set advanced settings for call barring such as **Block Anonymous**, **Block Unknown Domain** or **Block IP Address**.

For **Block Anonymous**—this function can block the incoming calls without caller ID on the interface (Phone port) specified in the following window. Such control also can be done based on preconfigured schedules.

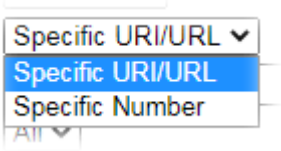
For **Block Unknown Domain**—this function can block incoming calls (through Phone port) from unrecognized domain that is not specified in SIP accounts. Such control also can be done based on preconfigured schedules.

For **Block IP Address**—this function can block incoming calls (through Phone port) coming from IP address. Such control also can be done based on preconfigured schedules.

Click any index number to display the call barring setup page.

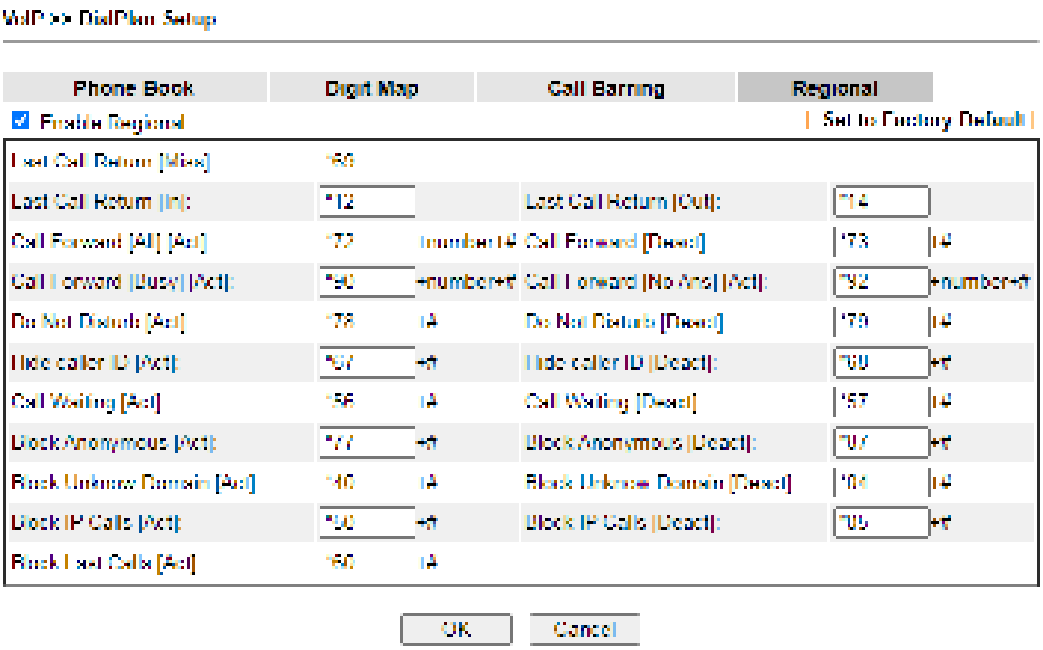


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Check it to enable this entry.
Call Direction	Determine the direction for the phone call, IN - incoming call, OUT-outgoing call, IN & OUT - both incoming and outgoing calls.
Barring Type	Determine the type of the VoIP phone call, URI/URL or number. 
Specific URI/URL or Specific Number	This field will be changed based on the type you selected for barring Type.
Route	**All** means all the phone calls will be blocked with such mechanism.
Index (1-15) in Schedule	Enter the index of schedule profiles to control the call barring according to the preconfigured schedules. Refer to section **Applications>>Schedule** for detailed configuration.

IV-1-4-4 Regional

This page allows you to process incoming or outgoing phone calls by regional. Default values (common used in most areas) will be shown on this web page. You ***can change*** the number based on the region that the router is placed.



Available settings are explained as follows:

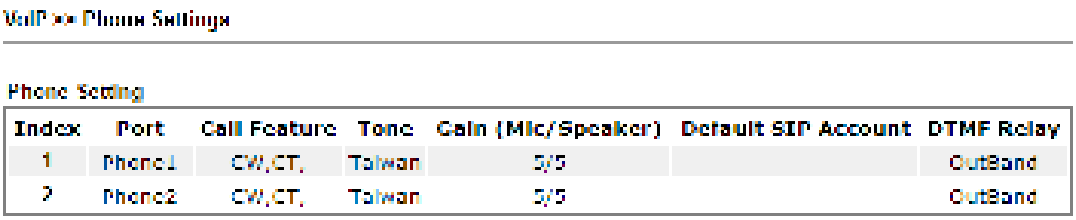
Item	Description
Enable Regional	Check this box to enable this function.
Last Call Return [Miss]	Sometimes, people might miss some phone calls. Please dial number typed in this field to know where the last phone call comes from and call back to that one.
Last Call Return [In]	You have finished an incoming phone call, however you want to call back again for some reason. Please dial number typed in this field to call back to that one.
Last Call Return [Out]	Dial the number typed in this field to call the previous outgoing phone call again.
Call Forward [All][Act]	Dial the number typed in this field to forward all the incoming calls to the specified place.
Call Forward [Deact]	Dial the number typed in this field to release the call forward function.
Call Forward [Busy][Act]	Dial the number typed in this field to forward all the incoming calls to the specified place while the phone is busy.
Call Forward [No Ans][Act]	Dial the number typed in this field to forward all the incoming calls to the specified place while there is no answer of the connected phone.
Do Not Disturb [Act]	Dial the number typed in this field to invoke the function of DND.
Do Not Distrub [Deact]	Dial the number typed in this field to release the DND function.

Hide caller ID [Act]	Dial the number typed in this field to make your phone number (ID) not displayed on the display panel of remote end.
Hide caller ID [Deact]	Dial the number typed in this field to release this function.
Call Waiting [Act]	Dial the number typed in this field to make all the incoming calls waiting for your answer.
Call Waiting [Deact]	Dial the number typed in this field to release this function.
Block Anonymous[Act]	Dial the number typed in this field to block all the incoming calls with unknown ID.
Block Anonymous[Deact]	Dial the number typed in this field to release this function.
Block Unknown Domain [Act]	Dial the number typed in this field to block all the incoming calls from unknown domain.
Block Unknown Domain [Deact]	Dial the number typed in this field to release this function.
Block IP Calls [Act]	Dial the number typed in this filed to block all the incoming calls from IP address.
Block IP Calls [Deact]	Dial the number typed in this field to release this function.
Block Last Calls [Act]	Dial the number typed in this field to block the last incoming phone call.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

IV-1-5 Phone Settings

This page allows user to set phone settings for Phone 1 and Phone 2 respectively. However, it changes slightly according to different model you have.



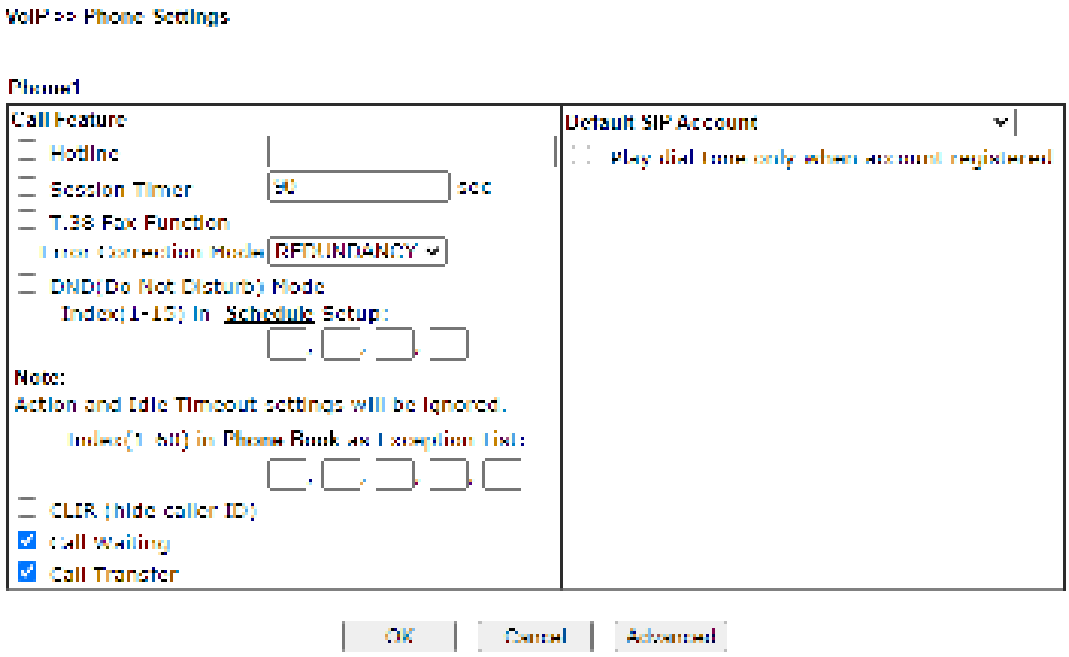
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Phone Setting	**Index –** there are two phone ports provided here for you to configure. **Port -** Display phone1 and phone2. **Call Feature** – A brief description for call feature will be shown in this field for your reference. **Tone** - Display the tone settings that configured in the advanced settings page of Phone Index. **Gain** - Display the volume gain settings for Mic/Speaker that configured in the advanced settings page of Phone Index. **Default SIP Account** – "draytel_1" is the default SIP account. You can click the number below the Index field to change SIP account for each phone port. **DTMF Relay** – Display DTMF mode that configured in the advanced settings page of Phone Index.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

Detailed Settings for Phone Port

Click the index number link for Phone port, you can access into the following page for configuring Phone settings.

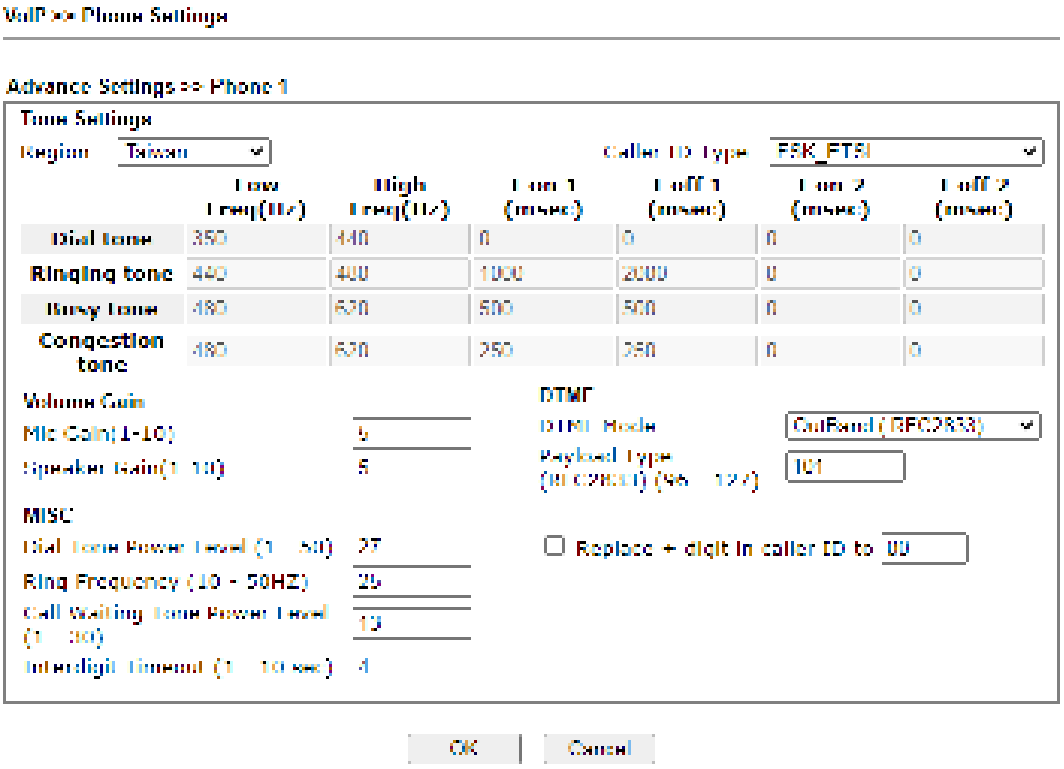


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Hotline	Check the box to enable it. Type in the SIP URL in the field for dialing automatically when you pick up the phone set.
Session Timer	Check the box to enable the function. In the limited time that you set in this field, if there is no response, the connecting call will be closed automatically.
T.38 Fax Function	Check the box to enable T.38 fax function. **Error Correction Mode** – choose a mode for error correction.
DND (Do Not Disturb) mode	Set a period of peace time without disturbing by VoIP phone call. During the period, the one who dial in will listen busy tone, yet the local user will not listen any ring tone. **Index (1-15) in Schedule -** Enter the index of schedule profiles to control when the phone will ring and when will not according to the preconfigured schedules. Refer to section **Application >>Schedule** for detailed configuration. **Index (1-60) in Phone Book -** Enter the index of phone book profiles. Refer to section **DialPlan – Phone Book** for detailed configuration.
CLIR (hide caller ID)	Check this box to hide the caller ID on the display panel of the phone set.
Call Waiting	Check this box to invoke this function. A notice sound will appear to tell the user new phone call is waiting for your response. Click hook flash to pick up the waiting phone call.
Call Transfer	Check this box to invoke this function. Click hook flash to initiate another phone call. When the phone call connection succeeds, hang up the phone. The other two sides can communicate, then.

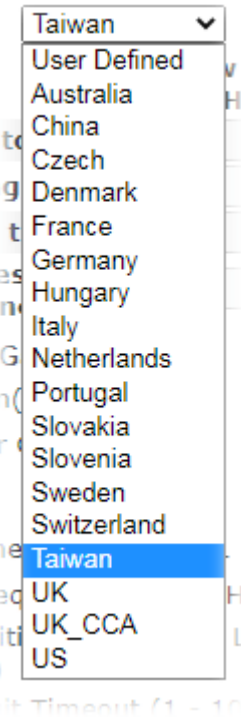
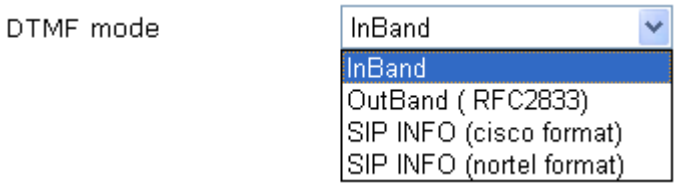
Default SIP Account	You can set SIP accounts (up to six groups) on SIP Account page. Use the drop down list to choose one of the profile names for the accounts as the default one for this phone setting. **Play dial tone only when account registered -** Check this box to invoke the function.

In addition, you can press the **Advanced** button to configure tone settings, volume gain, MISC and DTMF mode. **Advanced** setting is provided for fitting the telecommunication custom for the local area of the router installed. Wrong tone settings might cause inconvenience for users. To set the sound pattern of the phone set, simply choose a proper region to let the system find out the preset tone settings and caller ID type automatically. Or you can adjust tone settings manually if you choose User Defined. TOn1, TOff1, TOn2 and TOff2 mean the cadence of the tone pattern. TOn1 and TOn2 represent sound-on; TOff1 and TOff2 represent the sound-off.



Available settings are explained as follows:

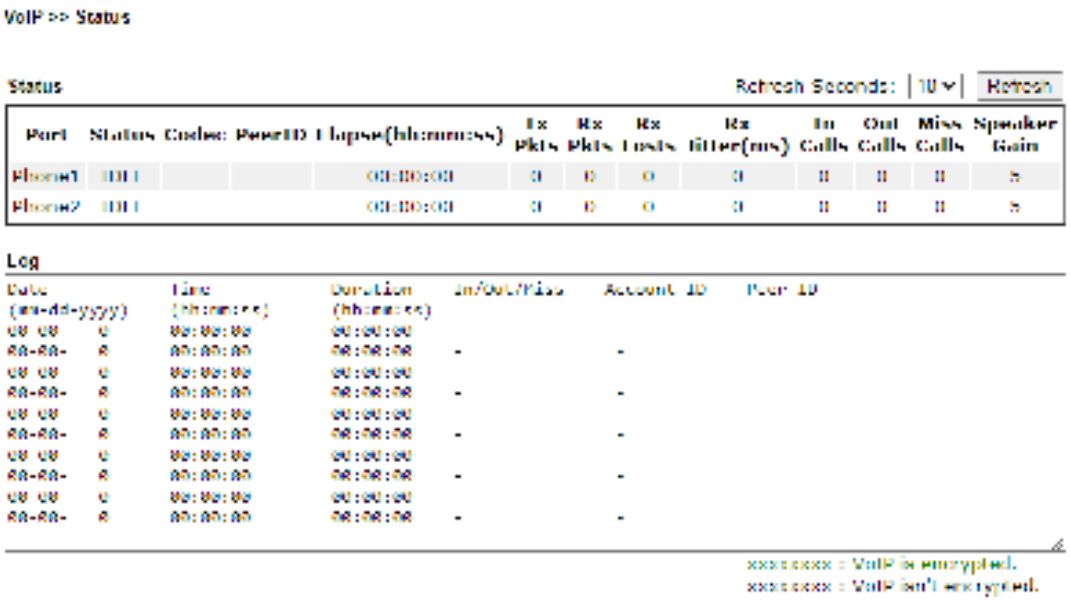
Item	Description
Region	Select the proper region which you are located. The common settings of **Caller ID Type**, **Dial tone**, **Ringing tone**, **Busy tone** and **Congestion tone** will be shown automatically on the page. If you cannot find out a suitable one, please choose **User Defined** and fill out the corresponding values for dial tone, ringing tone, busy tone, congestion tone by yourself for VoIP phone.

	 Also, you can specify each field for your necessity. It is recommended for you to use the default settings for VoIP communication.
Volume Gain	**Mic Gain (1-10)**/**Speaker Gain (1-10)** - Adjust the volume of microphone and speaker by entering number from 1- 10. The larger of the number, the louder the volume is.
MISC	**Dial Tone Power Level** - This setting is used to adjust the loudness of the dial tone. The smaller the number is, the louder the dial tone is. It is recommended for you to use the default setting. **Ring Frequency** - This setting is used to drive the frequency of the ring tone. It is recommended for you to use the default setting. **Call Waiting Tone Power Level** - This setting is used to adjust the loudness of the call waiting tone. The smaller the number is, the louder the tone is. It is recommended for you to use the default setting. **Interdigit Timeout** -Type a value in this field to specify time limit for interdigit.
DTMF	**DTMF Mode –**There are four DTMF modes for you to choose.  ● ***InBand*** **-** Choose this one then the Vigor will send the DTMF tone as audio directly when you press the keypad on the phone. ● ***OutBand*** **-** Choose this one then the Vigor will capture the keypad number you pressed and transform it to digital form then send to the other side; the receiver will generate the tone according to the digital form it

	receive. This function is very useful when the network traffic congestion occurs and it still can remain the accuracy of DTMF tone. ● ***SIP INFO***- Choose this one then the Vigor will capture the DTMF tone and transfer it into SIP form. Then it will be sent to the remote end with SIP message. **Payload Type (rfc2833)** - Type a number from 96 to 127, the default value was 101. This setting is available for the OutBand (RFC2833) mode. **Replace + digit in caller ID to** - For international phone call, the phone number could add a '+' sign, for example, +8865972727. However, the caller ID (DTMF type especially) can not display '+' at all. Therefore, this function can be enabled to give another number to replace the plus sign, for example, “+” can be replaced by “00”. Then the above phone number will become 008865972727. When the callee receives such number, he can use re-dial function to dial back to the caller.

IV-1-6 Status

From this page, you can find codec, connection and other important call status for each port.



Available settings are explained as follows:

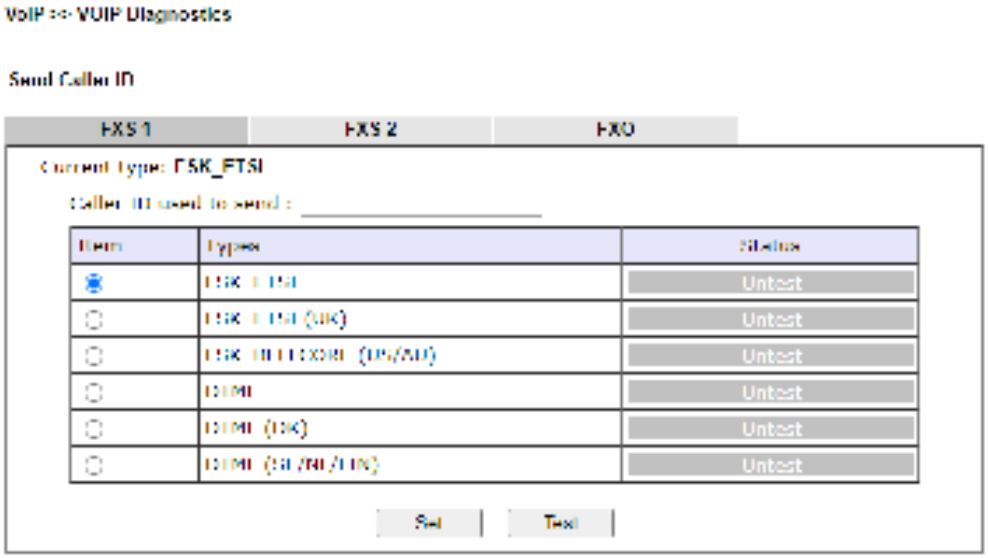
Item	Description
Refresh Seconds	Specify the interval (5, 10 or 30) of refresh time to obtain the latest VoIP calling information. The information will update immediately when the Refresh button is clicked.
Port	It shows current connection status for Phone(s) ports.
Status	It shows the VoIP connection status. **IDLE -** Indicates that the VoIP function is idle. **HANG_UP -** Indicates that the connection is not established

	(busy tone). **CONNECTING -** Indicates that the user is calling out. **WAIT_ANS -** Indicates that a connection is launched and waiting for remote user's answer. **ALERTING -** Indicates that a call is coming. **ACTIVE-**Indicates that the VoIP connection is launched.
Codec	Indicates the voice codec employed by present channel.
PeerID	The present in-call or out-call peer ID (the format may be IP or Domain).
Elapse(hh:mm:ss)	The format is represented as hours:minutes:seconds.
Tx Pkts	Total number of transmitted voice packets during this connection session.
Rx Pkts	Total number of received voice packets during this connection session.
Rx Losts	Total number of lost packets during this connection session.
Rx Jitter	The jitter of received voice packets.
In Calls	Accumulation for the times of in call.
Out Calls	Accumulation for the times of out call.
Miss Calls	Accumulation for the times of missing call.
Speaker Gain	The volume of present call.
Log	Display logs of VoIP calls.

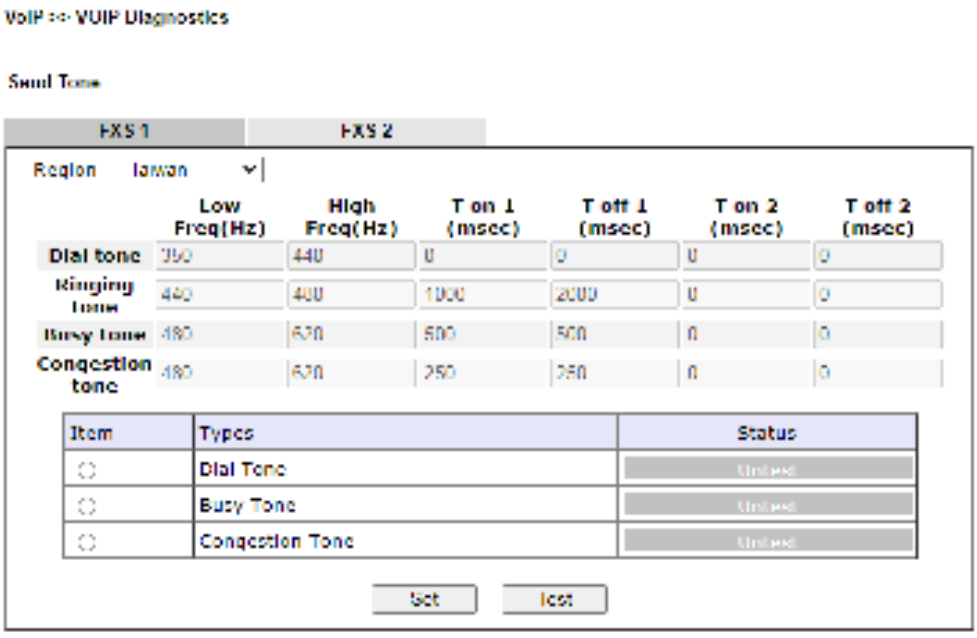
IV-1-7 Diagnostics

VoIP Diagnostics is used for diagnosing if VoIP phone failure is caused by different tone or caller ID.

IV-1-7-1 Caller ID



IV-1-7-2 Tone



This page is left blank.

Part V VPN

A Virtual Private Network (VPN) is the extension of a private network that encompasses links across shared or public networks like the Internet. In short, by VPN technology, you can send data between two computers across a shared or public network in a manner that emulates the properties of a point-to-point private link.

It is a form of VPN that can be used with a standard Web browser.

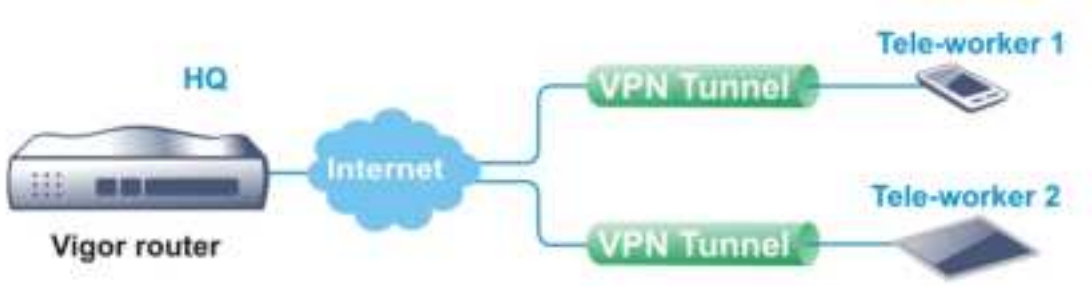
A digital certificate works as an electronic ID, which is issued by a certification authority (CA). It contains information such as your name, a serial number, expiration dates etc., and the digital signature of the certificate-issuing authority so that a recipient can verify that the certificate is real. Here Vigor router support digital certificates conforming to standard X.509.

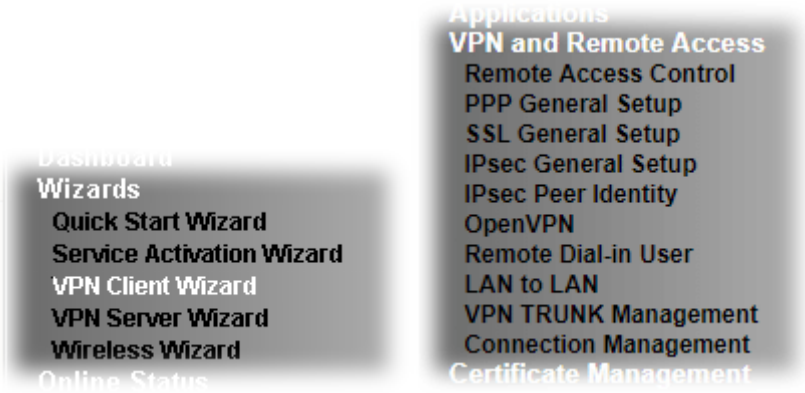
V-1 VPN and Remote Access

A Virtual Private Network (VPN) is an extension of a private network that allows users to access network resources that available on the private network across shared or public networks such as the Internet, as if users are directly connected to the private network.

Here are some uses of VPNs:

- Communication between home office and customer.
- Secure connection between Teleworker, staff on business trip and main office.
- Exchange data between remote office and main office.
- POS between chain store and headquarters.
- Circumvention of Internet censorship that filters websites or contents.
- Circumvention of geolocation techniques employed by service providers or vendors to block or restrict services to users.
- Secure communications over public access points

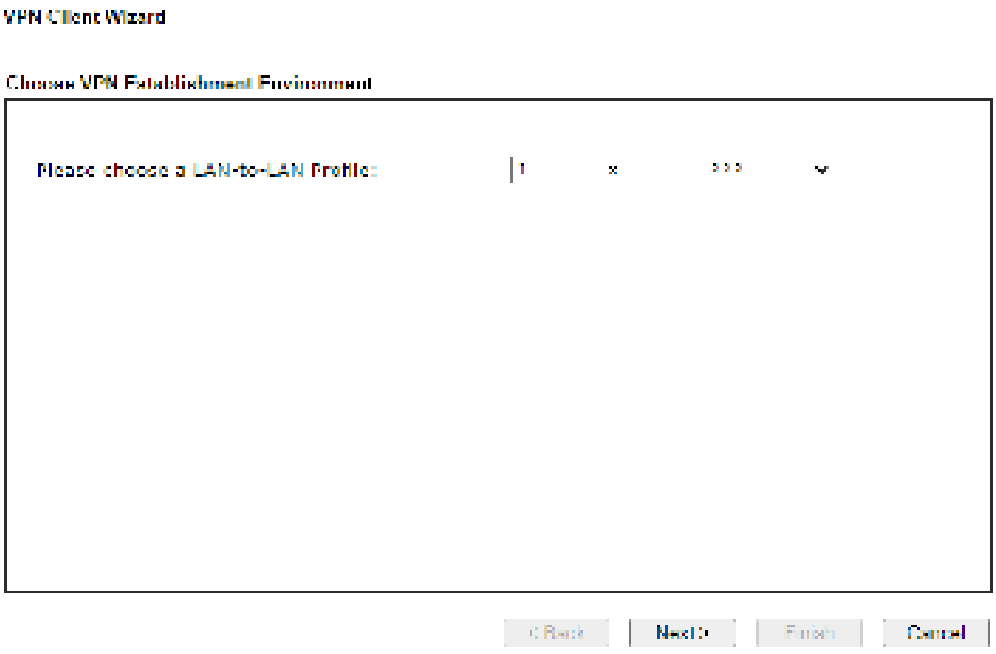




V-1-1 VPN Client Wizard

The VPN Client Wizard will configure the router as a ***client*** to connect to a remote VPN server using a LAN-to-LAN VPN tunnel. The wizard will guide you through the setup process.

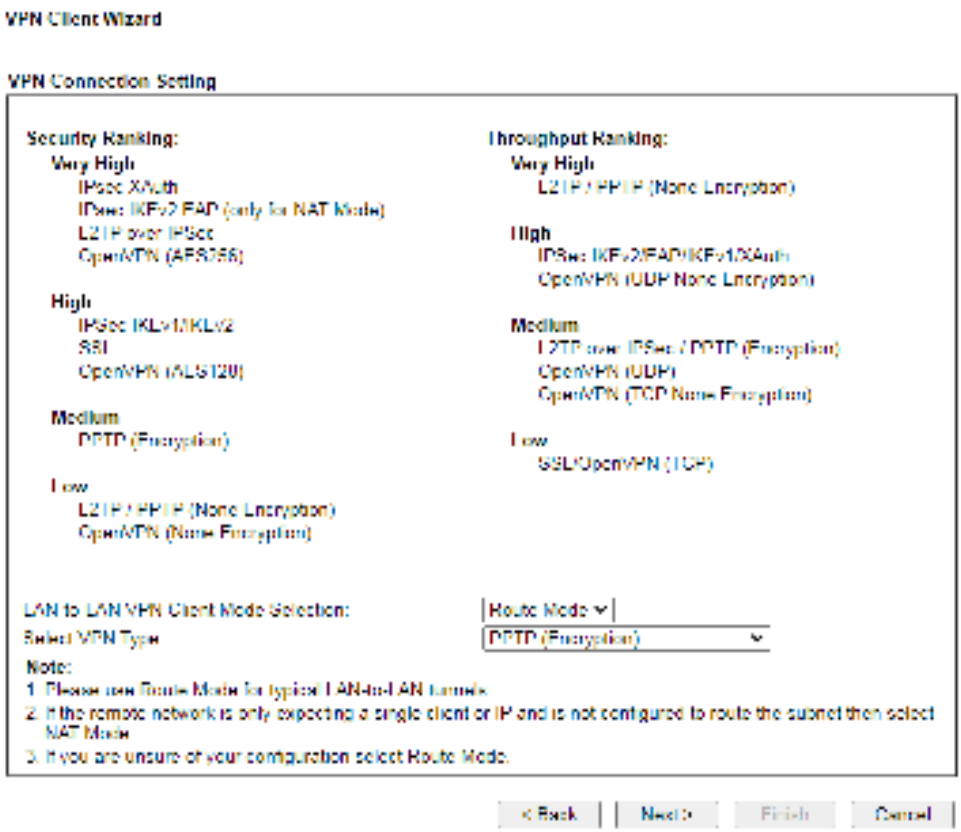
1. On the menu bar, click on **Wizards**, and then **VPN Client Wizard**.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Please choose a LAN-to-LAN Profile	The profile used to store this tunnel configuration. Selecting an index that has already been setup previously will result in the existing setup getting overwritten by the wizard.

2. When you finish the mode and profile selection, please click **Next** to open the following page.

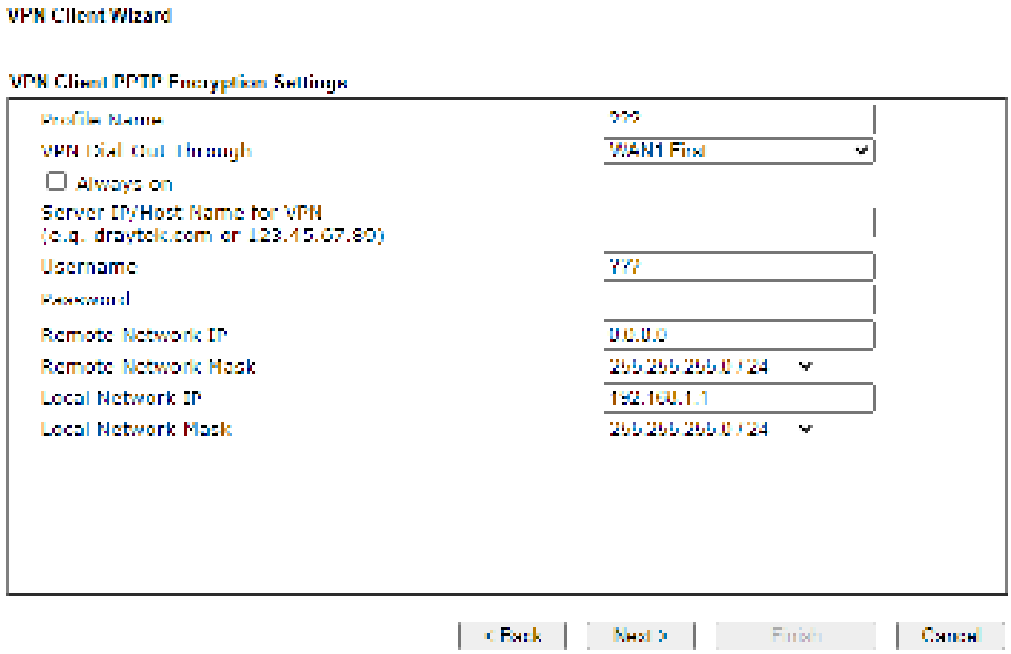


Available settings are explained as follows:

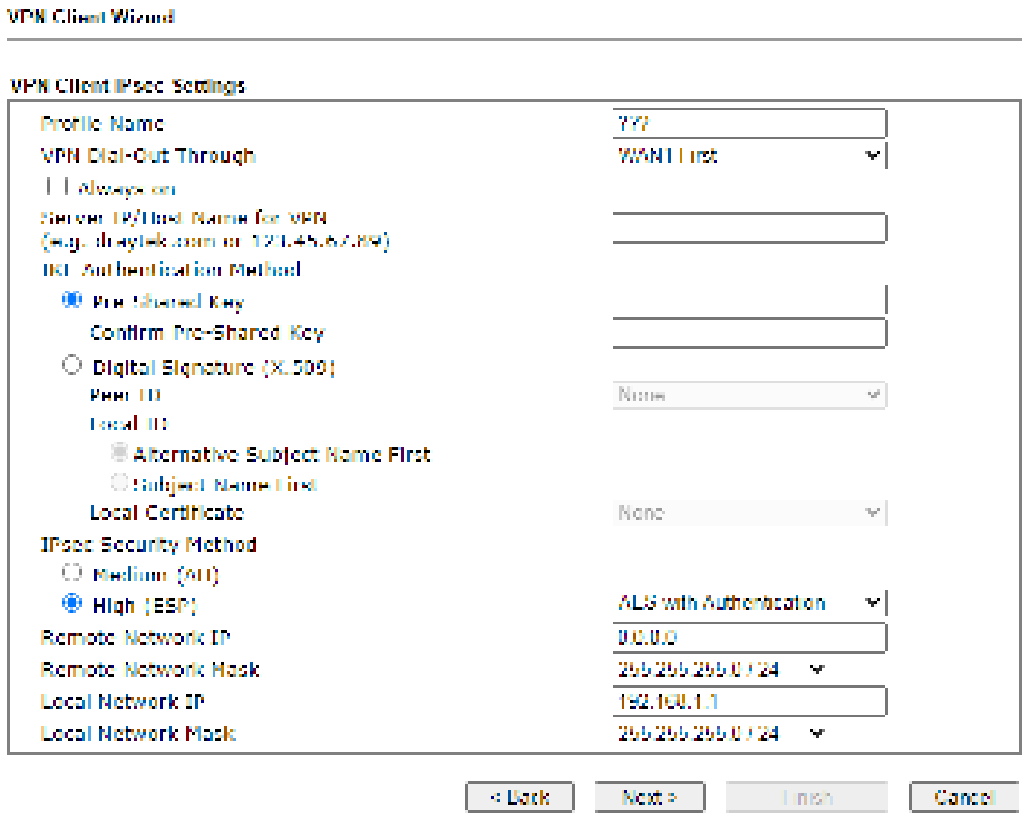
Item	Description
LAN-to-LAN Client Mode Selection	**Route Mode** – All traffic between the local network and the remote network bear the originating IP addresses. Select this if the VPN server can establish routes to handle inter-LAN traffic routing. **NAT Mode** – The VPN client (local router) uses a single IP address assigned by the VPN server (remote router) and uses NAT to keep track of the connections. Select this if the VPN server expects only one IP address on the local network to communicate with the remote network.
Select VPN Type	Select a VPN protocol for the LAN-to-LAN tunnel. Different VPN protocols offer different levels or security and performance.

Info	The following descriptions for VPN Type are based on the **Route Mode** specified in LAN-to-LAN Client Mode Selection.

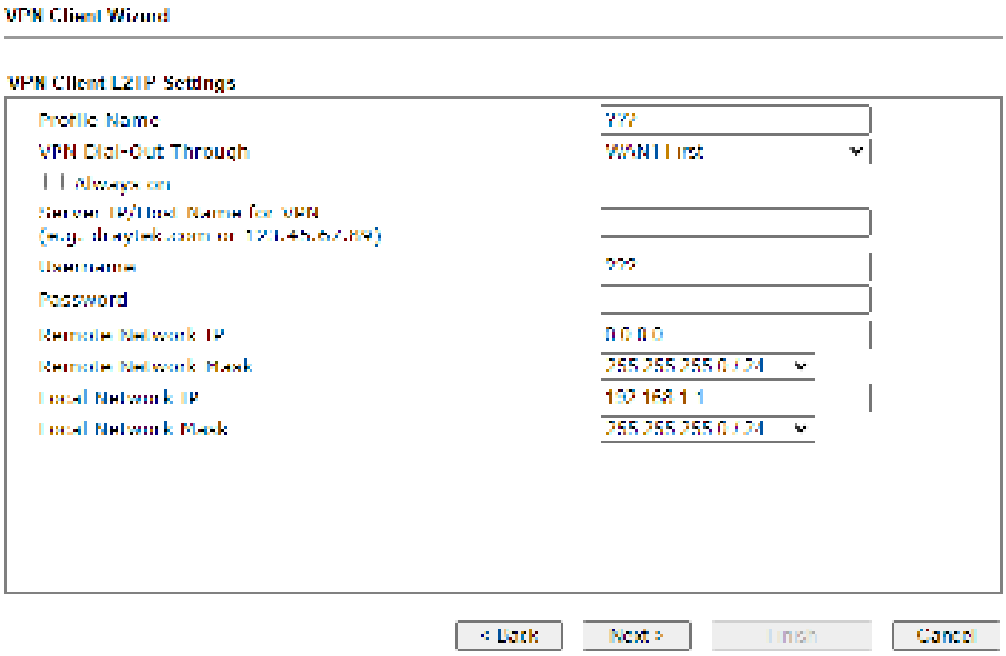
If you have selected **PPTP (None Encryption)** or **PPTP (Encryption)**, the following configuration screen appears.



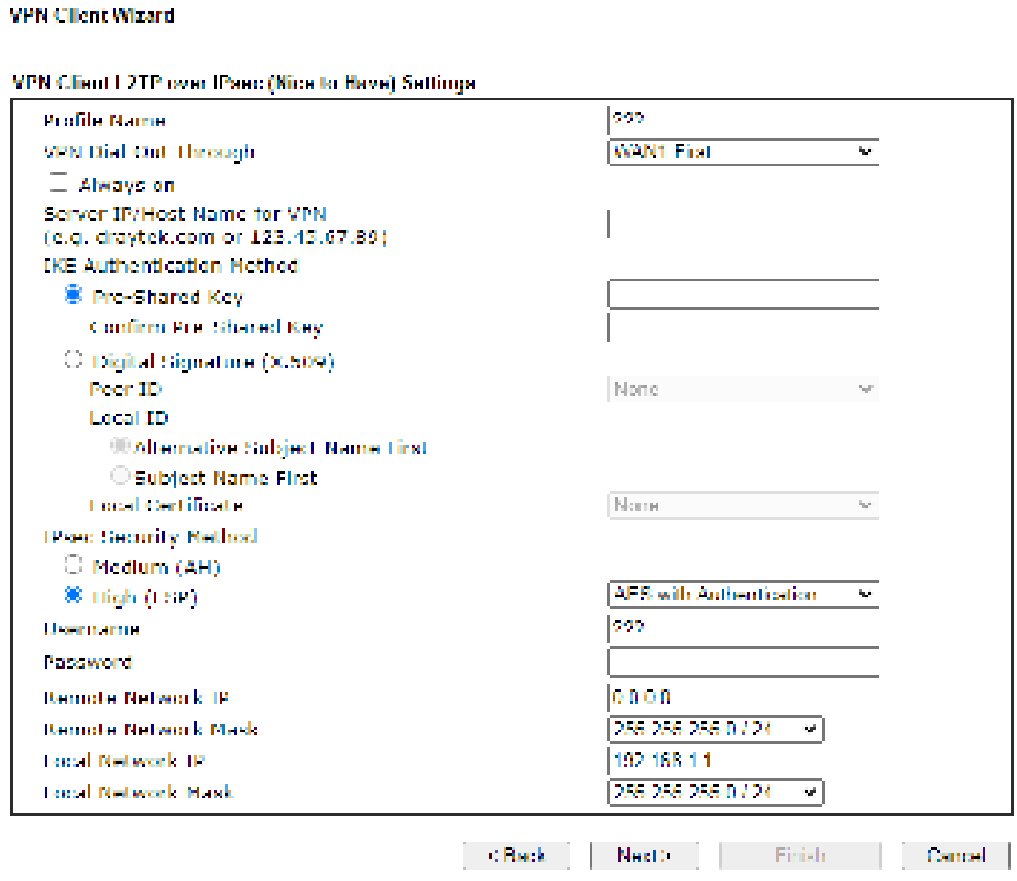
If you have selected **IPsec**, the following configuration screen appears.



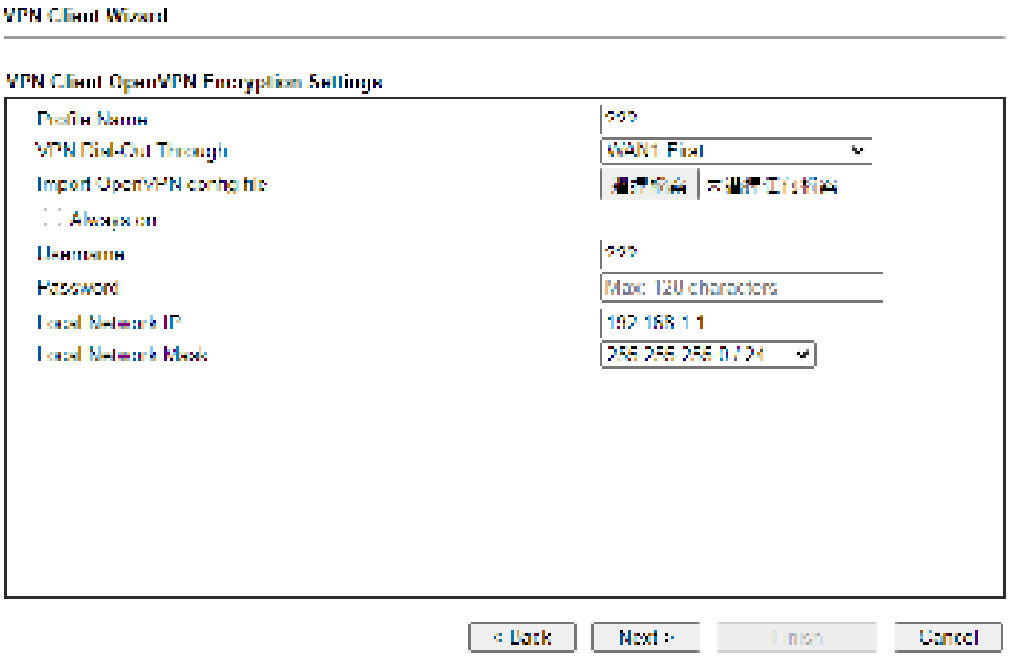
If you have selected **SSL/L2TP**, the following configuration screen appears.



If you have selected **L2TP over IPsec (Nice to Have)** or **L2TP over IPsec (Must)**, the following configuration screen appears.



If you have selected **OpenVPN**, the following configuration screen appears.

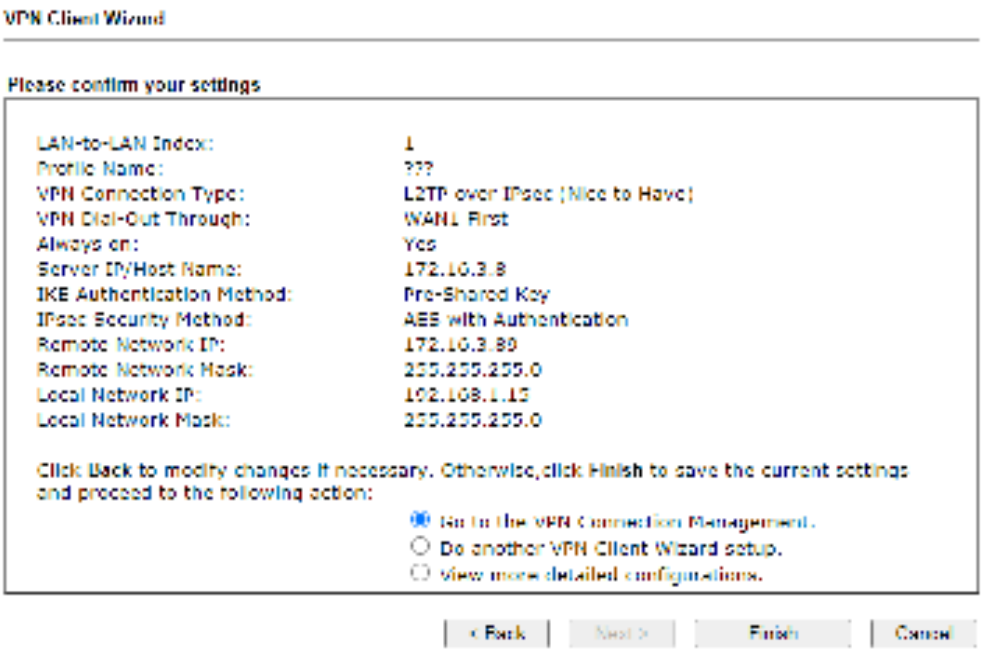


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Name	Name that identifies this profile. The maximum length of the Profile Name is 10 characters.
VPN Dial-Out Through	The WAN interface to be used for dialing out to establish the VPN tunnel. **WANx First (or LTE First)** - The Router first attempts to establish the VPN tunnel using this WAN interface. When that is unsuccessful, it will attempt to use other WAN interfaces. **WANx Only (or LTE Only)** - The Router will establish the VPN tunnel using this WAN interface only. **WANx Only: Only establish VPN if WANy down** - The Router will establish the VPN tunnel using this WAN interface if the other WAN interface is offline.
Always On	If selected, the router will maintain the VPN connection.
Server IP/Host Name for VPN	Enter the IP address or hostname of the server of the remote VPN server.
IKE Authentication Method	IKE Authentication Method to be used. Choose between **Pre-shared Key** and **Digital Signature (X.509)**. **Pre-shared Key** ● **Pre-Shared Key-** Specify a key for IKE authentication. ● **Confirm Pre-Shared Key-**Confirm the pre-shared key. **Digital Signature (X.509)** ● **Peer ID** – Select Peer ID from the dropdown list. Peer IDs are managed using VPN and Remote Access >> IPsec Peer Identity. ● **Local ID** – Select **Alternative Subject Name First** or **Subject Name First**. ● **Local Certificate** – Select a certificate from the dropdown list. Local certificates are managed using **Certificate Management >> Local Certificate.**

IPsec Security Method	**Medium** - Authentication Header (AH) means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is active. **High** - Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. You may select encryption algorithm from Data Encryption Standard (DES), Triple DES (3DES), and AES.
Import OpenVPN config file	Select to import an OpenVPN configuration file from a specified OpenVPN server (e.g., Vigor router, PC, other VPN provider and etc.) onto to Vigor router. Later, as a VPN client, this router can access into VPN server via the username and password.
Username	This field is used to authenticate for connection when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the user name is limited to 11 characters.
Password	This field is used to authenticate for connection when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the password is limited to 11 characters.
Remote Network IP	Please enter one LAN IP address (according to the real location of the remote host) for building VPN connection.
Remote Network Mask	Please enter the network mask (according to the real location of the remote host) for building VPN connection.
Local Network IP	Enter the local network IP for TCP / IP configuration.
Local Network Mask	Enter the local network mask for TCP / IP configuration.

3. After you have entered all the required information, click **Next** to proceed to the confirmation page. The confirmation page shows a summary of all the settings. If you need to make adjustments to the settings, click **Back** to return to the previous page. Otherwise, select one of the following actions and click **Finish** to save the changes to the LAN-to-LAN VPN profile.



Available settings are explained as follows:

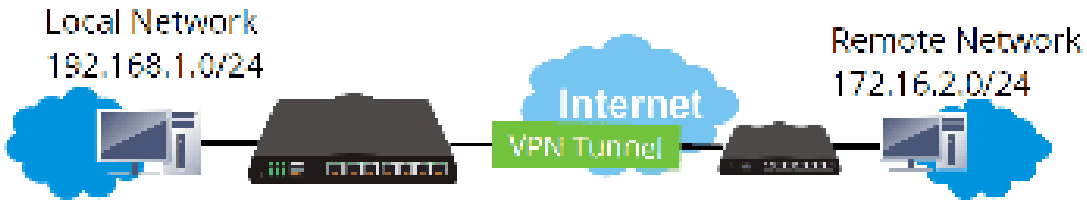
Item	Description
Go to the VPN Connection Management	Proceed to **VPN and Remote Access>>Connection Management** to manage VPN sessions.
Do another VPN Client Wizard Setup	Rerun the VPN Client Wizard to configure another LAN-to-LAN VPN profile.
View more detailed configuration	Open this profile in **VPN and Remote Access>>LAN to LAN** to make additional configuration changes.

V-1-2 VPN Server Wizard

The VPN Server Wizard can be used to set the router up as a ***server*** that accepts inbound VPN connections from a VPN server using a LAN-to-LAN VPN tunnel.

Site-to-Site (LAN-to-LAN)

- A connection between two router's LAN networks.
- Allows employees in branch offices and head office to share the same network resources.

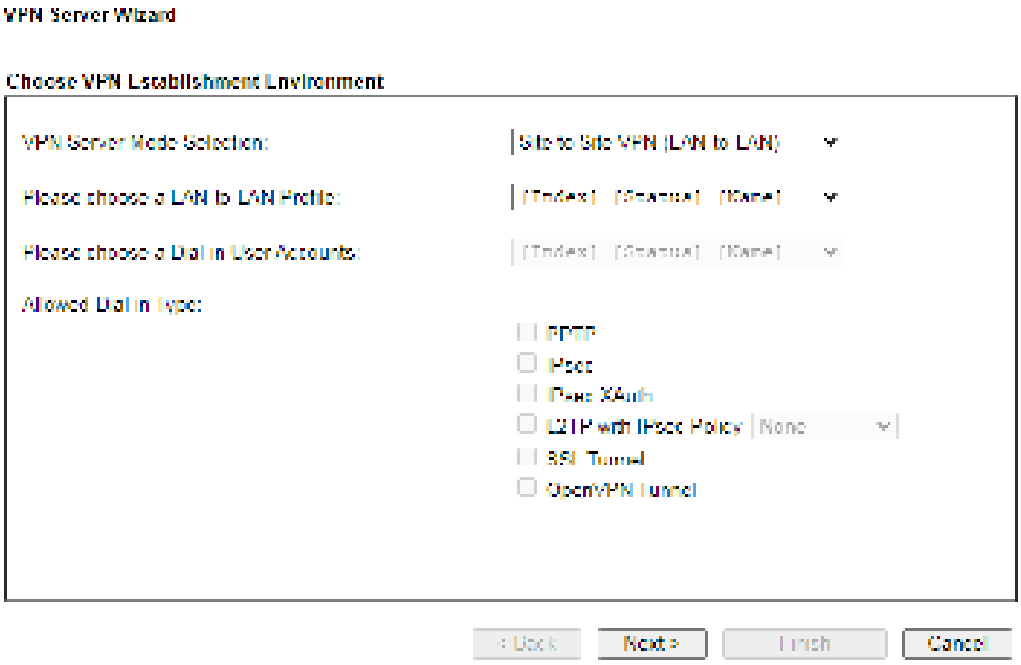


Remote Access (Remote Dial-in)

- A connection between the remote host and router's LAN network. The host will use an IP address in the local subnet.
- Allows employees to access the company's internal resources when they are traveling.

The wizard will guide you step by step through the setup process.

1. On the menu bar, click on **Wizards**, and then **VPN Server Wizard**.

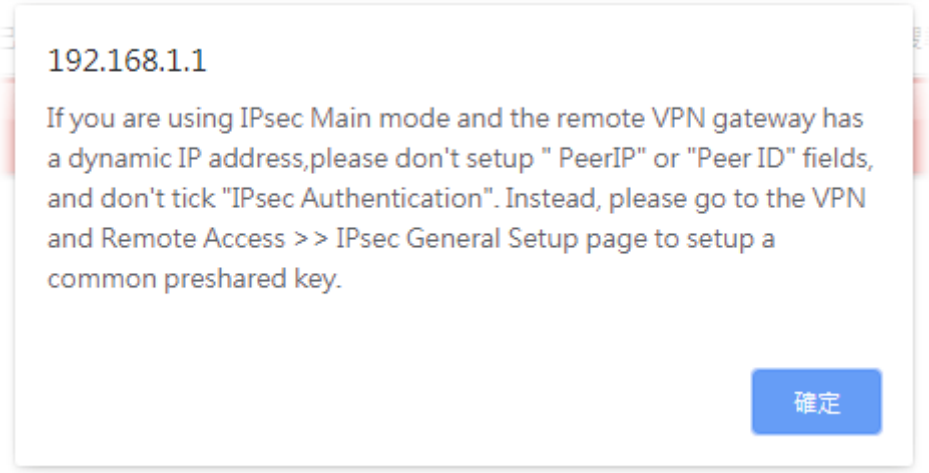


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
VPN Server Mode Selection	Type of VPN Server to be configured. **Site to Site VPN (LAN-to-LAN)** - Configures the VPN server for inbound connections from other routers. **Remote Dial-in User (Teleworker)** - Configures VPN server for inbound connections from remote users.
Please choose a LAN-to-LAN Profile	If the VPN Server Mode selected was **Site to Site VPN (LAN-to-LAN)**, choose a LAN-to-LAN profile to store this configuration.
Please choose a Dial-in User Accounts	If the VPN Server Mode selected was **Remote Dial-in User (Teleworker)**, choose a Dial-in user profile to store this configuration.
Allowed Dial-in Type	Select all VPN protocols that are allowed for this LAN-to-LAN Profile or Dial-in User Account. Different Dial-in Type will lead to different configuration page. In addition, adjustable items for each dial-in type will be changed according to the VPN Server Mode (**Site to Site VPN** and **Remote Dial-in User**) selected.

2. After making the choices for the server profile, please click **Next**.

3. The following dialog box appears, reminding you to not configure IPsec fields if the remote location has a dynamic IP address.

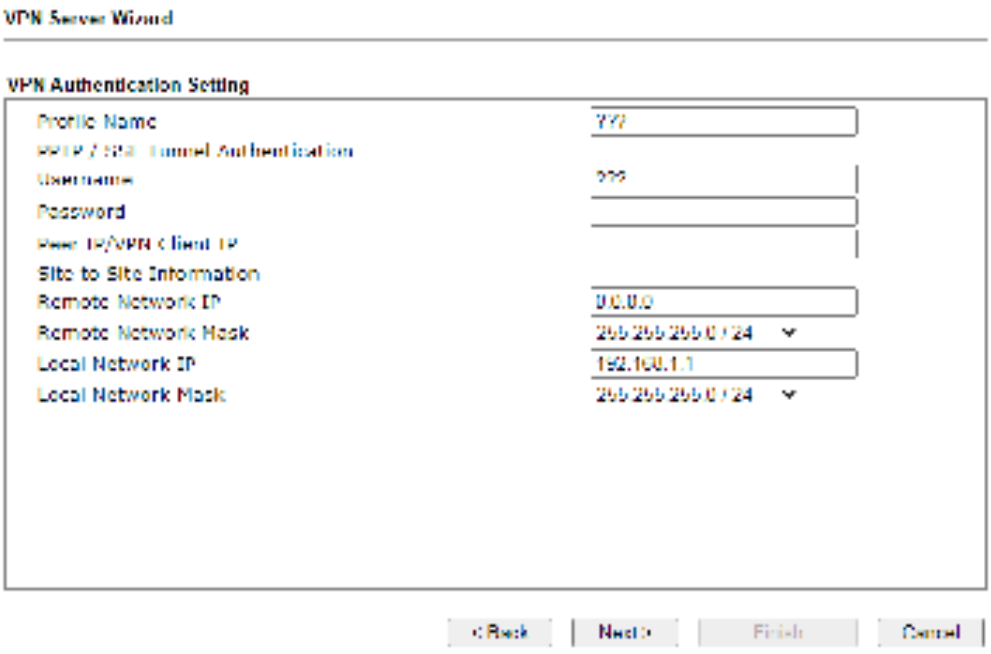


Click **OK** to dismiss the dialog box and proceed to the next page.

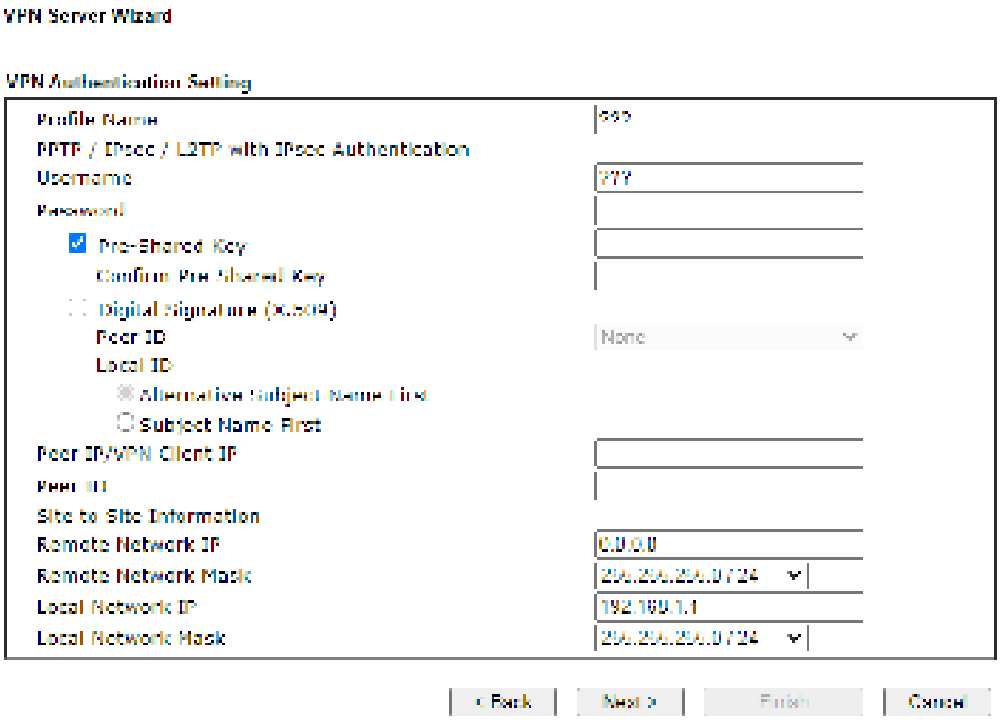
If you have chosen to configure a LAN-to-LAN VPN profile, proceed to step 4.

If you have chosen to configure a Remote Dial-in User VPN profile, proceed to step 5.

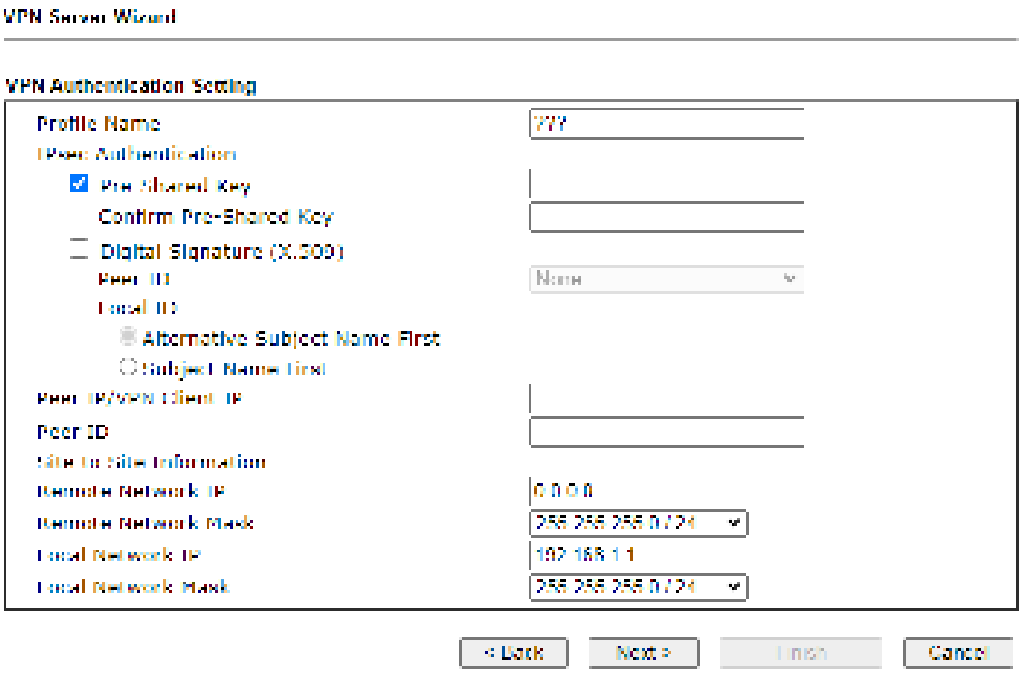
4. The **Site to Site VPN (LAN-to-LAN)** configuration page appears as follows if you have selected **PPTP/SSL**.



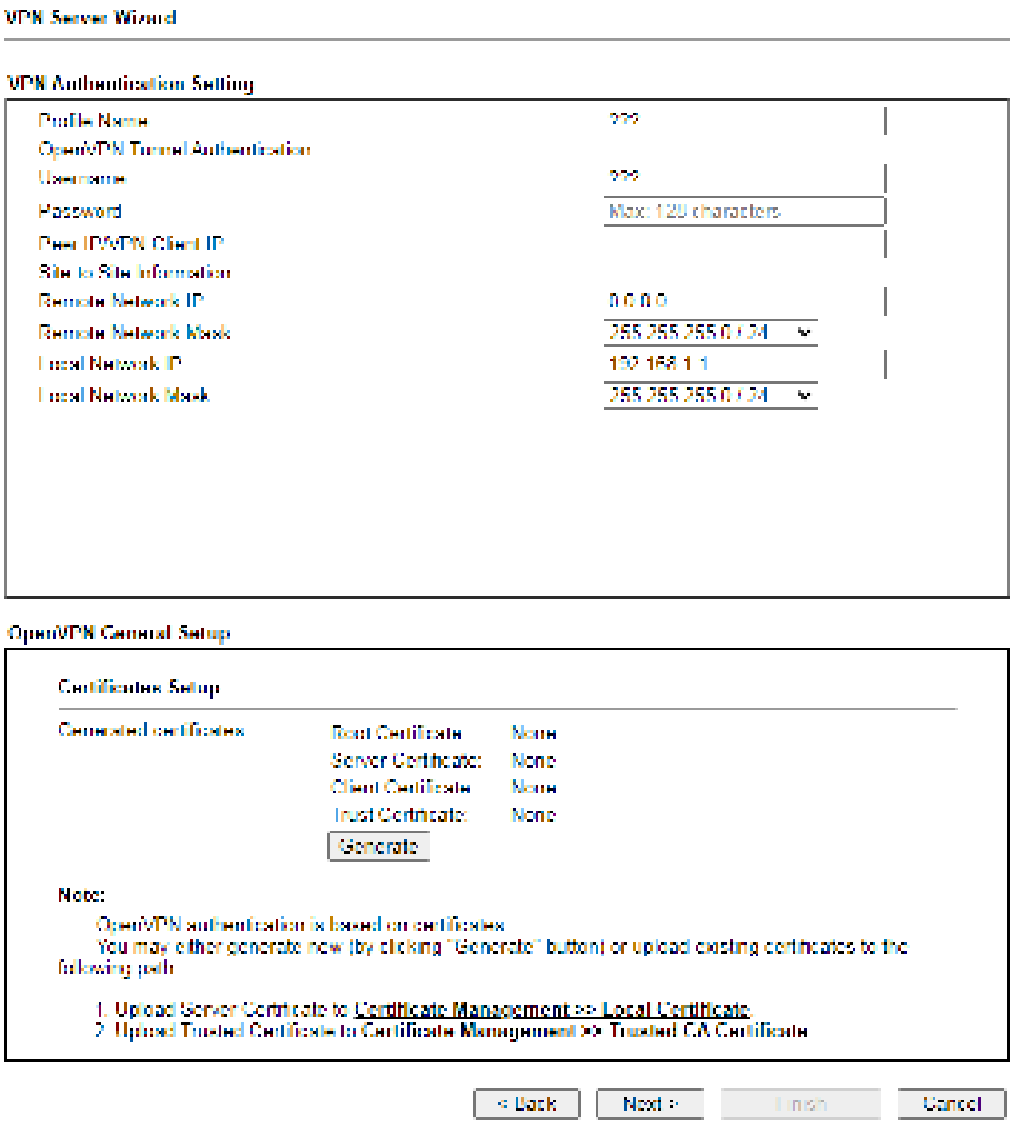
If you have selected **PPTP & IPsec & L2TP** (three types) or **PPTP & IPsec** (two types) or **L2TP with Policy (Nice to Have/Must)**, the following configuration screen appears.



If you have selected **IPsec**, the following configuration screen appears.



If you have selected **OpenVPN**, the following configuration screen appears.

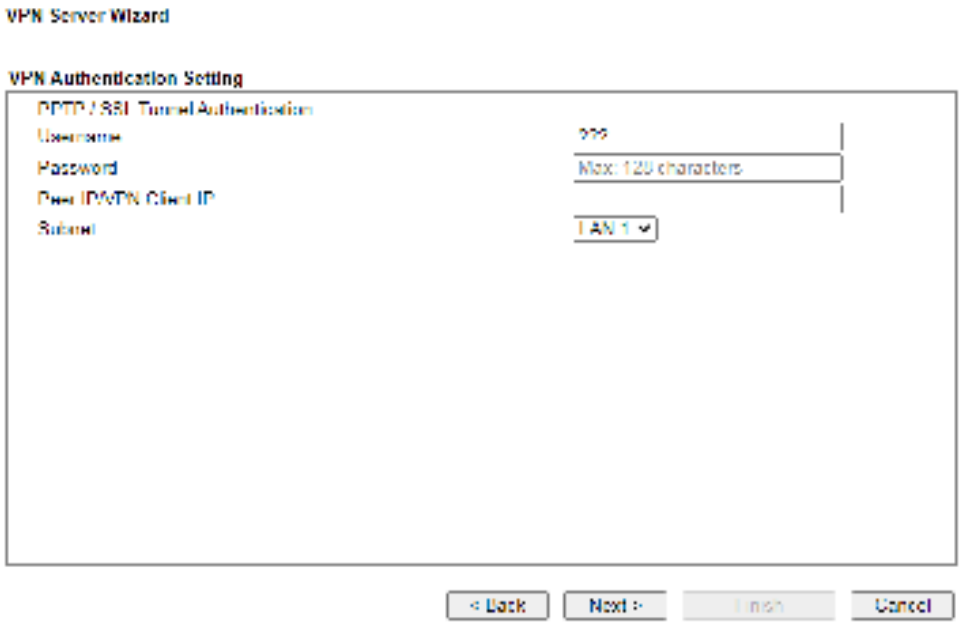


Available settings are explained as follows:

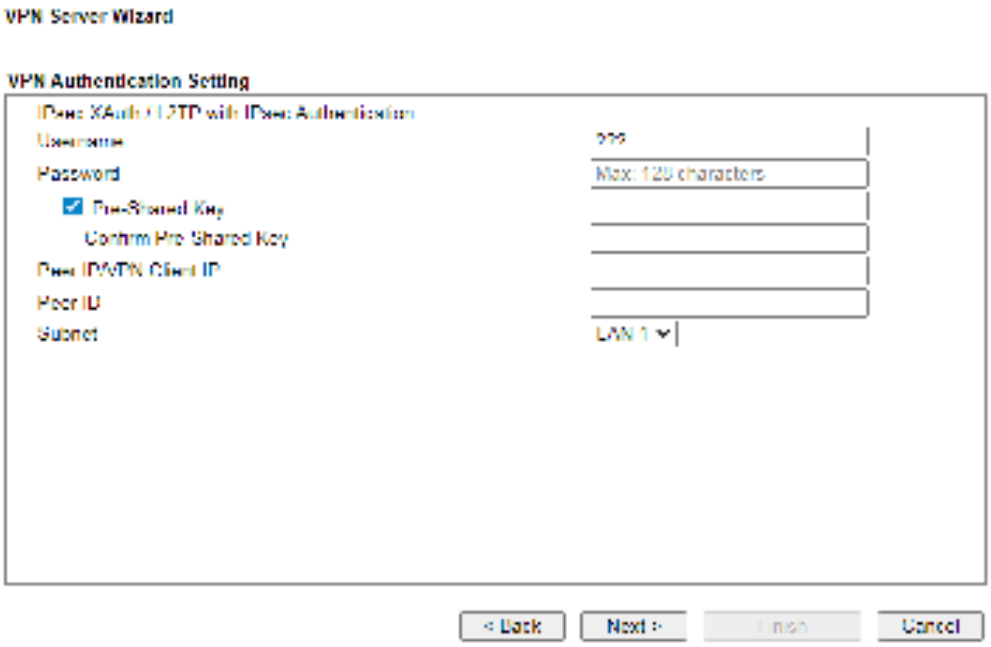
Item	Description
Profile Name	Name to identify this VPN profile.
User Name	Used by the remote LAN to establish a VPN connection. The length of the user name is limited to 11 characters.
Password	Used by the remote LAN to establish a VPN connection. The length of the password is limited to 11 characters.
IPsec / IPsec XAuth / L2TP with IPsec / SSL Tunnel Authentication	
Pre-Shared Key	For PPTP / IPsec / IPsec XAuth / L2TP with IPsec / SSL Tunnel authentication, you have to configure a pre-shared key and/or digital signature. Note that, if the remote client has a dynamic IP address, do not enable any of the settings (PSK / Digital Signature) in this section. Instead, configure the global IPsec settings by using VPN and Remote Access>>IPsec General Setup. **Pre-Shared Key** - Select to enter an IPsec Pre-shared Key specific to this profile. The length of the PSK is limited to 64 characters.

	Confirm Pre-Shared Key - Re-enter the Pre-shared Key again to confirm.
Digital Signature (X.509)	**Digital Signature (X.509) -** Select to enable X.509 digital signature. **Peer ID** – Select a predefined X.509 digital signature as the Peer ID. Peer IDs must be configured first using VPN and Remote Access>>IPsec Peer Identity. **Local ID** – Specifies whether the Subject Name or the Alternative Subject Name of the X.509 Peer ID is to be checked first. Select either **Alternative Subject Name First** or **Subject Name First**.
Peer IP/VPN Client IP	Enter the WAN IP address or VPN client IP address for the remote client. If values are specified, only connections coming from the specified IP address and/or having the specified Peer ID will be accepted.
Peer ID	Enter the ID name for the remote client. The maximum length of the peer ID is 47 characters. If the values are specified, only connections coming from the specified IP address and/or having the specified Peer ID will be accepted.
Site to Site Information	
Remote Network IP	Enter the IP address of the remote network.
Remote Network Mask	Enter the subnet mask of the remote network.
Local Network IP	Enter the local network IP for TCP / IP configuration.
Local Network Mask	Enter the local network mask for TCP / IP configuration.
OpenVPN General Setup	**Generate** - Click to generate certificate for OpenVPN authentication. Or upload an existing certificate from **Local Certificate** or **Trusted CA Certificate** page.

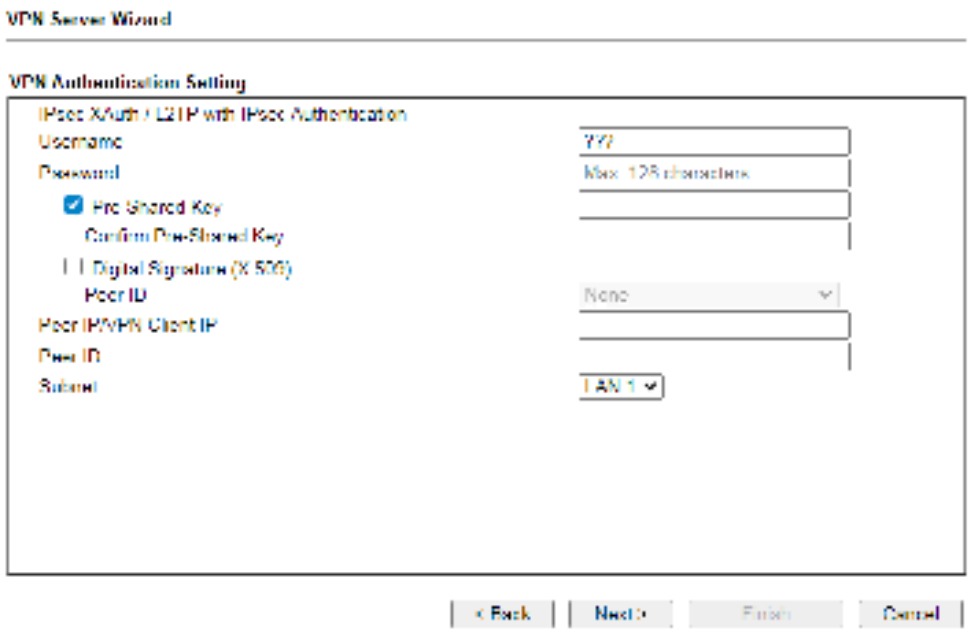
5. The Remote Dial-in User (Teleworker) VPN configuration page appears as follows if you have selected **PPTP**/**SSL**.



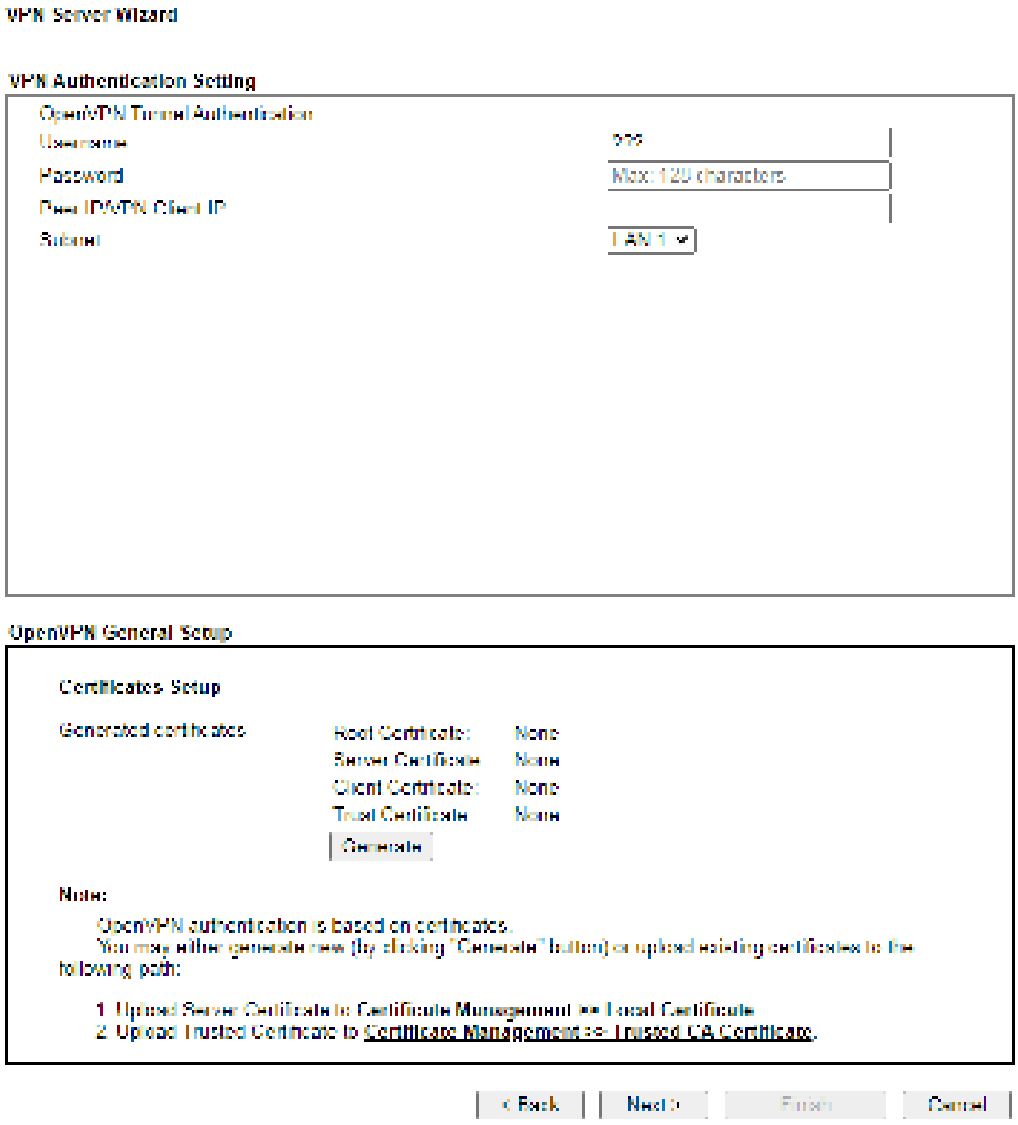
If you have selected **IPsec XAuth/L2TP with IPsec Policy (None)**, the following configuration screen appears.



If you have selected **IPsec XAuth/L2TP with IPsec Policy (Nice to Have)/L2TP with IPsec Policy (Must)**, the following configuration screen appears.



If you have selected **OpenVPN Tunnel**, the following configuration screen appears.

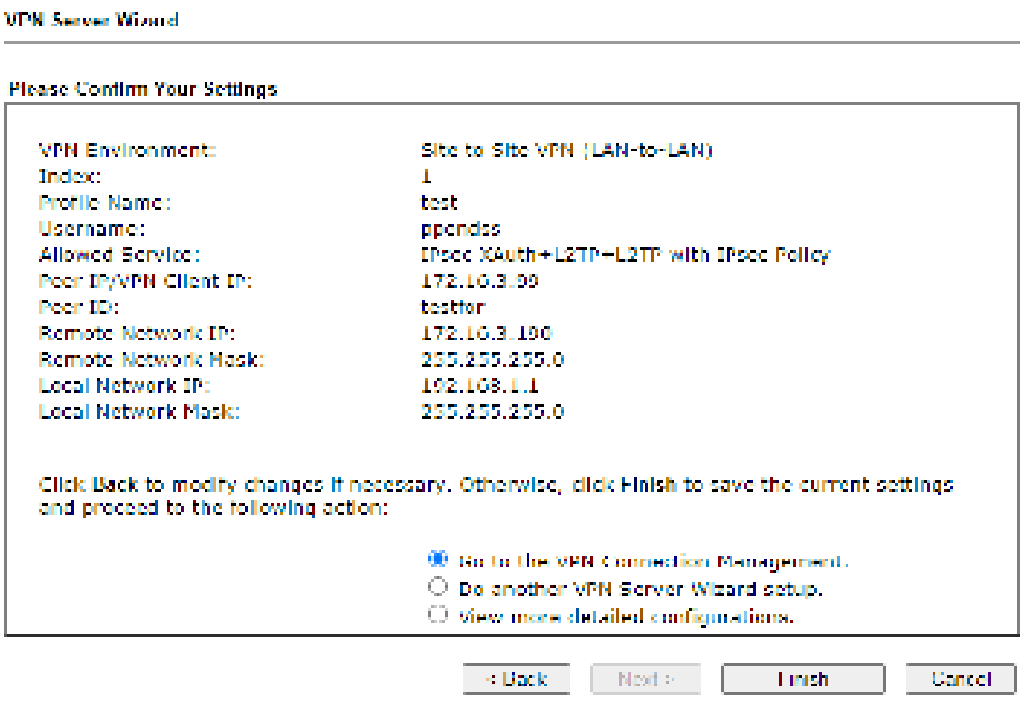


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
User Name	Used by the remote LAN to establish a VPN connection. The length of the user name is limited to 11 characters.
Password	Used by the remote LAN to establish a VPN connection. The length of the password is limited to 11 characters.
IKEv1/IKEv2 / IPsec XAuth / L2TP with IPsec /SSL Tunnel Authentication	
Pre-Shared Key	For IKEv1/IKEv2 / IPsec / IPsec XAuth / L2TP with IPsec / SSL Tunnel authentication, you have to configure a pre-shared key and/or digital signature. Note that, if the remote client has a dynamic IP address, do not enable any of the settings (PSK / Digital Signature) in this section. Instead, configure the global IPsec settings by using VPN and Remote Access>>IPsec General Setup. **Pre-Shared Key** - Select to enter an IPsec Pre-shared Key specific to this profile. The length of the PSK is limited to 64

	characters. **Confirm Pre-Shared Key** - Re-enter the Pre-shared Key again to confirm.
Digital Signature (X.509)	**Digital Signature (X.509) -** Select to enable X.509 digital signature. **Peer ID** – Select a predefined X.509 digital signature as the Peer ID. Peer IDs must be configured first using VPN and Remote Access>>IPsec Peer Identity.
Peer IP/VPN Client IP	Enter the WAN IP address or VPN client IP address for the remote client. If values are specified, only connections coming from the specified IP address and/or having the specified Peer ID will be accepted.
Peer ID	Enter the ID name for the remote client. The maximum length of the peer ID is 47 characters. If the values are specified, only connections coming from the specified IP address and/or having the specified Peer ID will be accepted.
Subnet	Select an interface.
OpenVPN General Setup	**Generate** - Click to generate certificate for OpenVPN authentication. Or upload existing certificates from **Local Certificate** or **Trusted CA Certificate** page.

6. After finishing the configuration, click **Next** to proceed to the confirmation page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Go to the VPN Connection	Proceed to **VPN and Remote Access>>Connection Management** to manage VPN sessions.

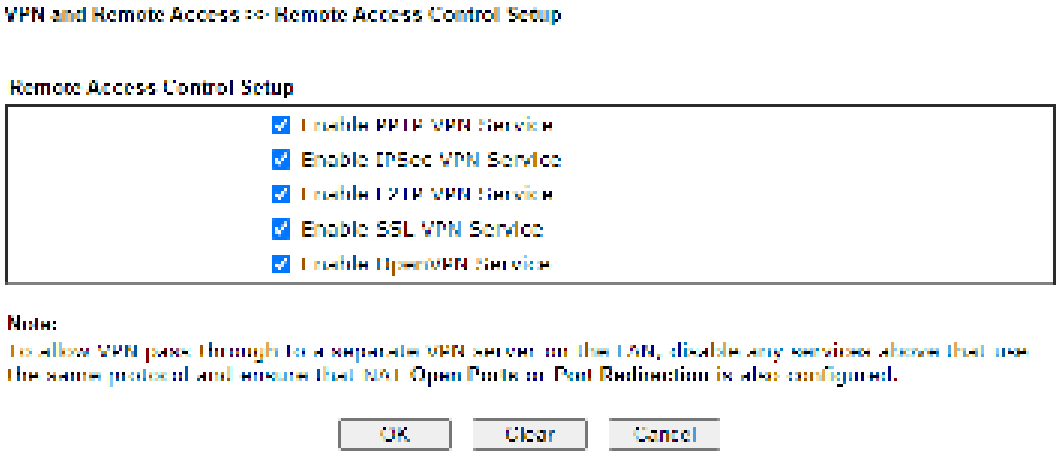
Management	
Do another VPN Server Wizard Setup	Rerun the VPN Server Wizard to configure another LAN-to-LAN VPN profile.
View more detailed configuration	Open this profile in **VPN and Remote Access>>LAN to LAN** to make additional configuration changes.

7. Click **Finish** to save the profile, or **Back** to make changes, or **Cancel** to exit the wizard without saving.

V-1-3 Remote Access Control

The Vigor router supports several protocols for VPNs, all of which can be enabled or disabled independently of one another.

If you intend to run a VPN server inside your LAN, you should disable the VPN service of Vigor Router to allow VPN tunnel pass through, as well as the appropriate NAT settings, such as DMZ or open port. Open **VPN and Remote Access>>Remote Access Control**.

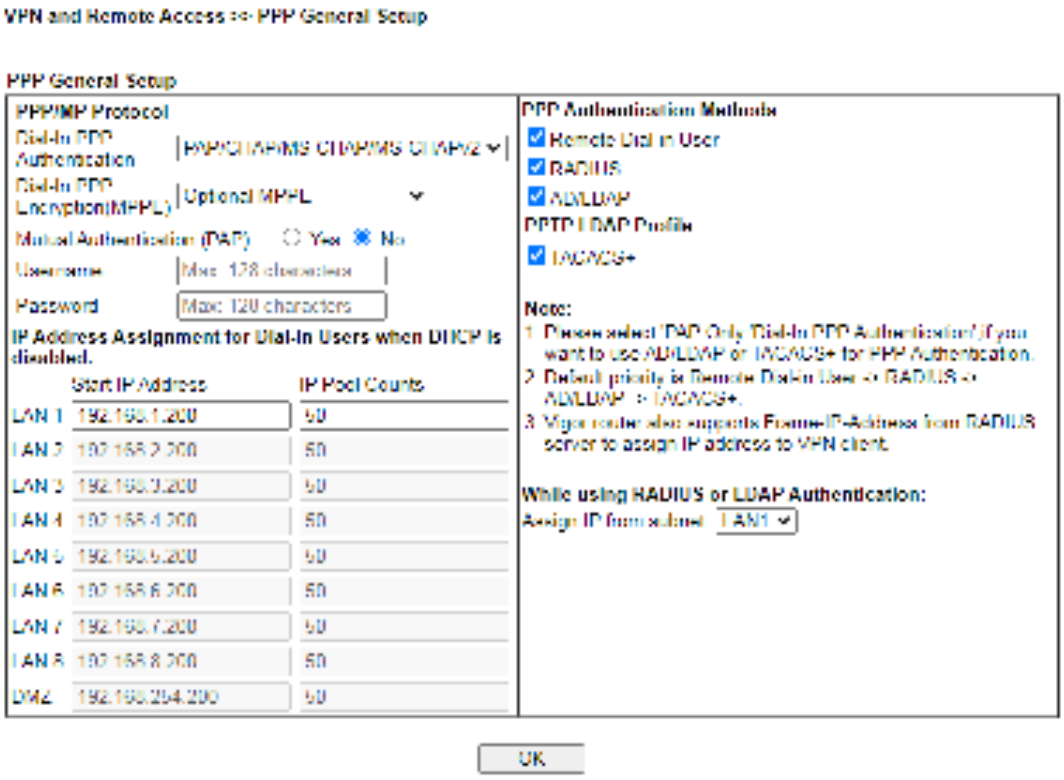


Item	Description
Enable PPTP VPN Service	This is the one of the earliest VPN protocols and is natively supported by all Microsoft Windows versions since Windows 95, all Android devices, iOS devices before version 10, and Mac OS X before version 10.12. It is easy to set up, has low overhead, and moderately secure.
Enable IPSec VPN Service	This is a network protocol that encrypts traffic between two network locations. Windows, by means of Windows Firewall, natively supports IPsec tunnels between endpoints with static IP addresses. For computers with dynamically-assigned IP addresses, DrayTek provides the SmartVPN client .
Enable L2TP VPN Service	This is a tunneling protocol used in VPNs. It does not encrypt network traffic unless used in conjunction with IPsec.
Enable SSL VPN Service	This type of VPN uses Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) and Transport Layer Security (TLS), which are also used to encrypt traffic to and from websites. Since SSL and TLS work on top of TCP and UDP, which are the most common internet protocols, they are less likely to be have issues with firewalls and gateways.
Enable OpenVPN Service	This type of VPN offers a convenient way for users to build VPN between local end and remote end.

To save changes on the page, select **OK**; to discard changes, select **Cancel**; to clear settings on this page and revert to default settings, select **Clear**.

V-1-4 PPP General Setup

This page allows configuration of Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP) used by PPTP and L2TP VPN connections. From the Main Menu select **VPN and Remote Access >> PPP General Setup** to bring up the following configuration page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Dial-In PPP Authentication	**PAP Only** - Authenticate dial-in users using the PAP protocol only. **PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP/MS-CHAPv2** - Attempt to authenticate dial-in users using various CHAP protocols, and if the remote VPN client fails to authenticate, fall back to PAP.
Dial-In PPP Encryption (MPPE)	Specifies if PPP encryption (MPPE) is to be used for dial-in VPN connections. **Optional MPPE** - MPPE is optional. If the VPN client supports MPPE, PPP data will be encrypted. **Require MPPE (40/128bits) -** Require PPP encryption for dial-in VPN connections. Both 40- and 128-bit encryption schemes are allowed. The remote dial-in user will use 40-bit to perform encryption prior to using 128-bit for encryption. In other words, if 128-bit MPPE encryption method is not available, then 40-bit encryption scheme will be applied to encrypt the data. **Maximum MPPE -** Require 128-bit PPP encryption for all dial-in VPN connections.
Mutual Authentication (PAP)	Specifies if mutual authentication is to be used. Some VPN peers (e.g., certain Cisco routers) require bi-directional

	authentication used for providing stronger security. When mutual authentication is enabled, Username and Password fields should also be populated using values from the VPN peer. The maximum lengths of these fields are 23 and 19 characters, respectively. **Yes** – Enable mutual authentication. **No** – Disable mutual authentication.
IP Address Assignment for Dial-In Users when DHCP is disabled	**LAN1** - When the router's DHCP server is disabled, the router will assign IP addresses to dial-in VPN users starting with the IP address specified in Start IP Address. The total number of dial-in VPN IP addresses to be given out is specified in IP Pool Counts. LAN2 ~ LAN8 and DMZ will be available if it is enabled. Refer to LAN>>General Setup for enabling the LAN interface.
PPP Authentication Methods	The credentials to be used for PPP authentication will be obtained from the selected sources, in the following order: **Remote Dial-in User** – The usernames and passwords in VPN and Remote Access >> Remote Dial-in User section will be used. **RADIUS** – An external RADIUS server is to be used for authentication. Please be sure to set up the RADIUS server in Applications >> RADIUS/TACACS+ section. **AD/LDAP** – An Active Directory/LDAP server is to be used for authentication. Please be sure to configure AD and LDAP settings in Applications >> Active Directory/LDAP. **TACACS+** – A TACACS+ server is to be used for authentication. Please be sure to set up the RADIUS server in Applications >> RADIUS/TACACS+ section.
PPTP LDAP Profile	Configured LDAP profiles will be listed under such item. Simply check the one you want to enable the PPP authentication by LDAP server profiles. However, if there is no profile listed, simply click the link of **PPTP LDAP Profile** to create/add some new LDAP profiles you want.
While using Radius or LDAP Authentication	When the dial-in VPN user is authenticated using credentials from the Remote Dial-in User section, an IP address from the LAN specified in the user profile will be assigned. When the user is authenticated using credentials from other sources (RADIUS, AD, TACACS+), the assigned IP address will be drawn from the address pool of the LAN specified here.

To save changes on the page, select **OK**.

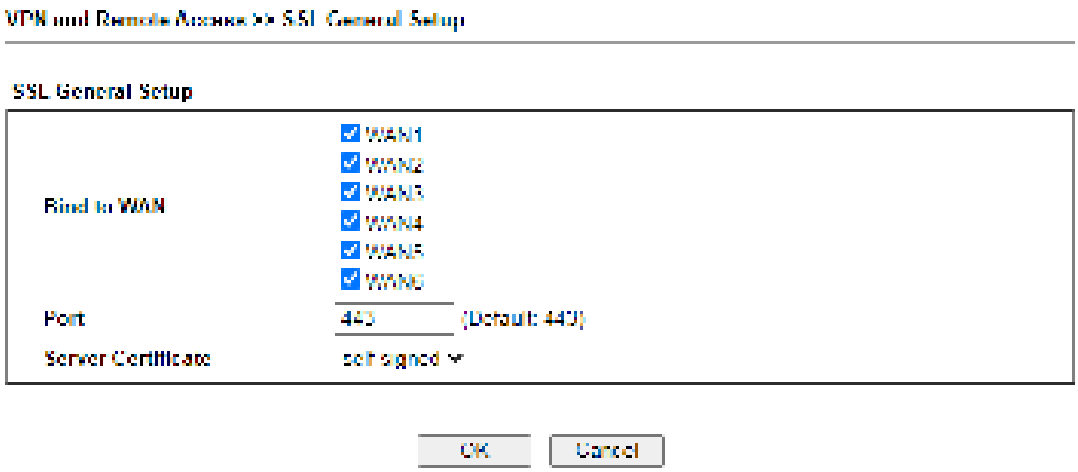
V-1-5 SSL General Setup

SSL VPN (Secure Sockets Layer virtual private network) is a form of VPN that encrypts traffic using SSL, which is the same technology used on secured websites. Because of SSL's prominence as an encryption protocol on the Internet, most networks have few restrictions on SSL traffic, and as a result SSL VPN is more likely to work when other VPN technologies experience difficulties due to obstacles such as firewalls and Network Address Translation (NAT).

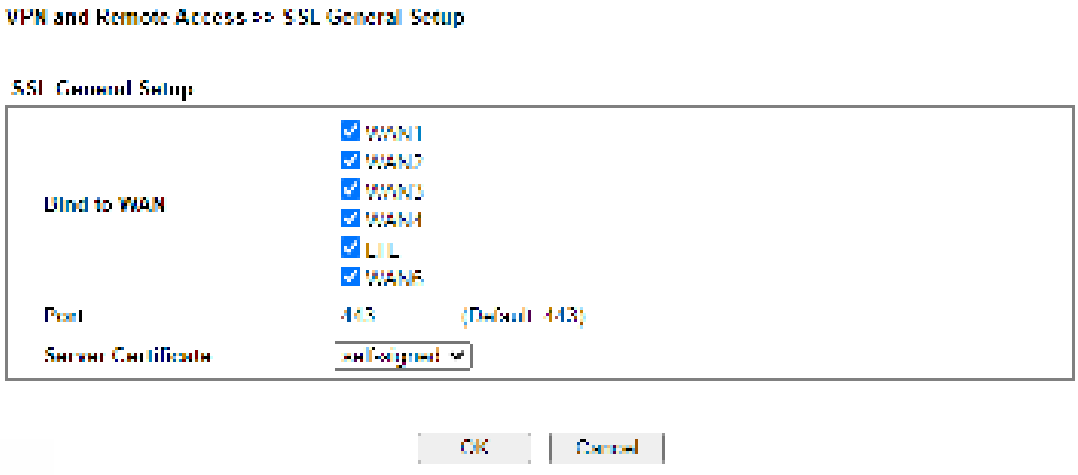
In short,

- It is not necessary for users to preinstall VPN client software for executing SSL VPN connection.
- There are less restrictions for the data encrypted through SSL VPN in comparing with traditional VPN.

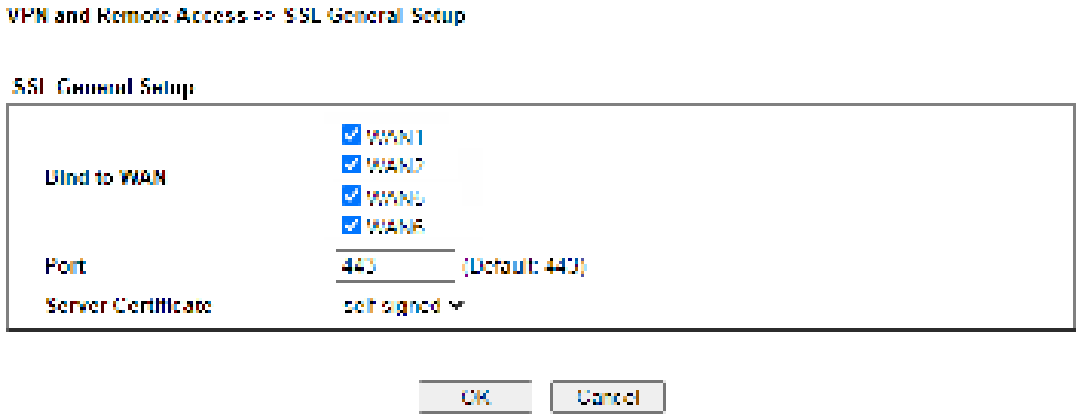
This page determines the general configuration for SSL VPN Server and SSL Tunnel.



or



Or



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Bind to WAN	Select the WAN interfaces to accept inbound SSL VPN connections.
Port	The port to be used for SSL VPN server. This is separate from the management port (HTTPS Port) which is configured in **System Maintenance>>Management**. The default setting is 443.
Server Certificate	Specify the certificate to be used for SSL connections. Select a certificate from imported or generated certificates on the router, or choose Self-signed to use the router's built-in default certificate. The selected certificate can be used in SSL VPN server and HTTPS Web Proxy.

To save changes on this page, select **OK**; to discard changes, select **Cancel**.

V-1-6 IPsec General Setup

In **IPsec General Setup**, there are two major parts of configuration.

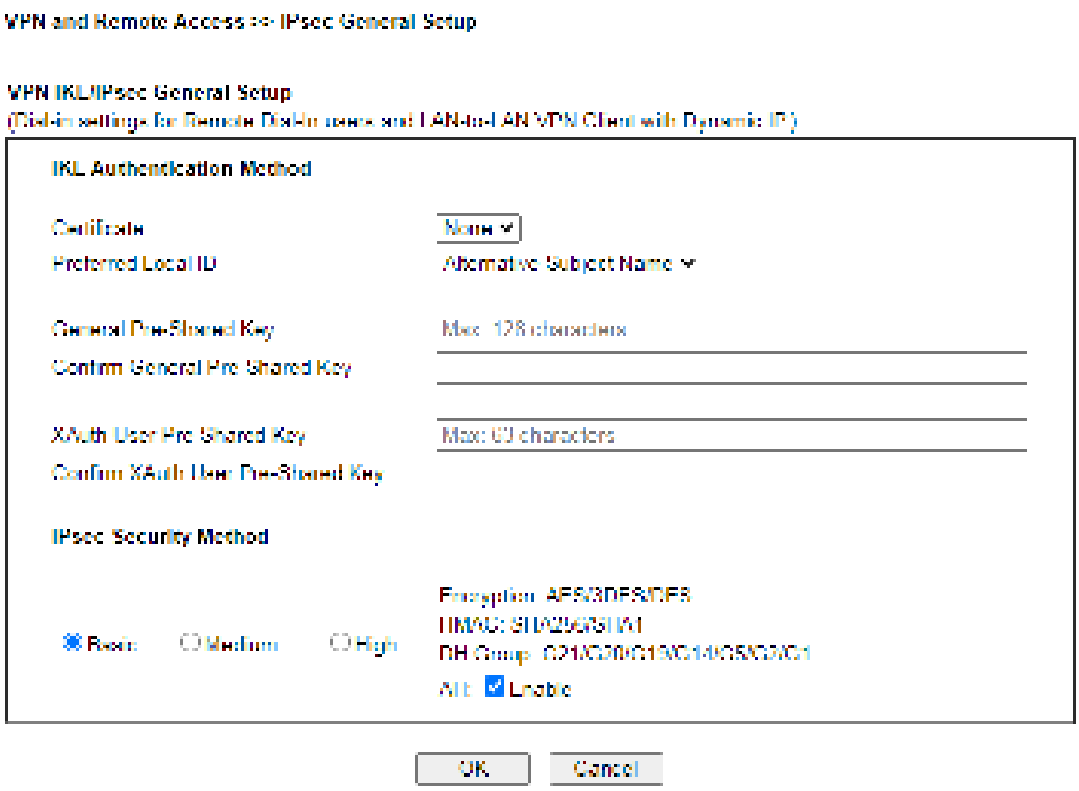
There are two phases of IPsec.

- Phase 1: negotiation of IKE parameters including encryption, hash, Diffie-Hellman parameter values, and lifetime to protect the following IKE exchange, authentication of both peers using either a Pre-Shared Key or Digital Signature (x.509). The peer that starts the negotiation proposes all its policies to the remote peer and then remote peer tries to find a highest-priority match with its policies. Eventually to set up a secure tunnel for IKE Phase 2.
- Phase 2: negotiation IPsec security methods including Authentication Header (AH) or Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) for the following IKE exchange and mutual examination of the secure tunnel establishment.

There are two encapsulation methods used in IPsec, **Transport** and **Tunnel**. The **Transport** mode will add the AH/ESP payload and use original IP header to encapsulate the data payload only. It can just apply to local packet, e.g., L2TP over IPsec. The **Tunnel** mode will not only add the AH/ESP payload but also use a new IP header (Tunneled IP header) to encapsulate the whole original IP packet.

AH (Authentication Header) provides data authentication and integrity for IP packets passed between VPN peers. This is achieved by a keyed one-way hash function to the packet to create a message digest. This digest will be put in the AH and transmitted along with packets. On the receiving side, the peer will perform the same one-way hash on the packet and compare the value with the one in the AH it receives.

ESP (Encapsulating Security Payload) is a security protocol that provides data confidentiality and protection with optional authentication and replay detection service.



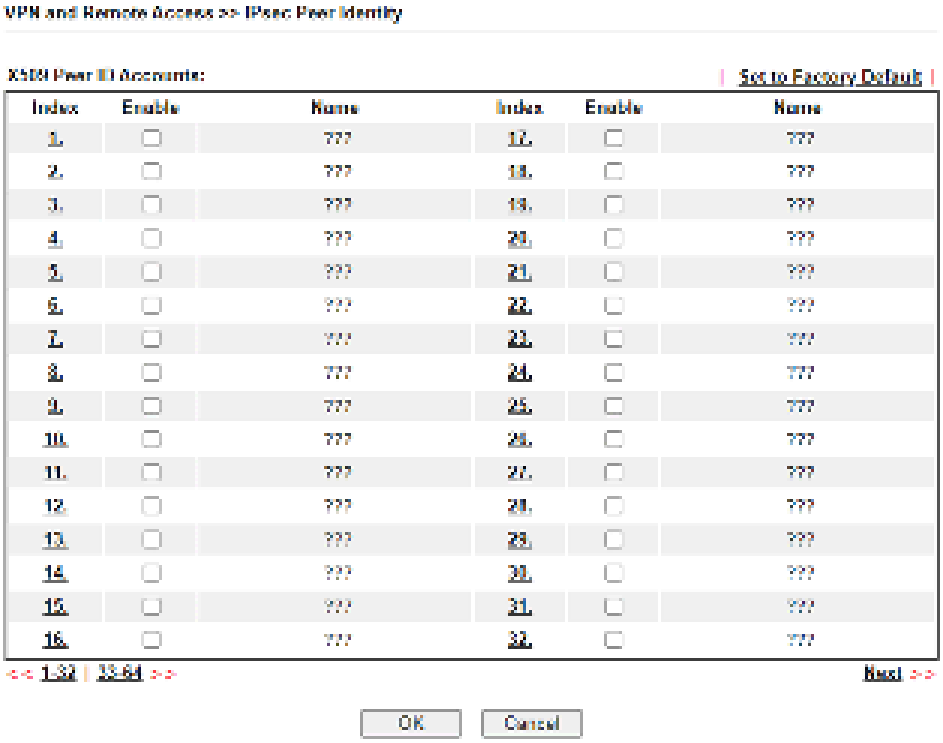
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
IKE Authentication Method	This usually applies to those are remote dial-in user or node (LAN-to-LAN) which uses dynamic IP address and IPsec-related VPN connections such as L2TP over IPsec and IPsec tunnel. There are two methods offered by Vigor router for you to authenticate the incoming data coming from remote dial-in user, **Certificate (X.509)** and **Pre-Shared Key**. **Certificate** – X.509 certificates can be used for IKE authentication. To set up certificates on the router, go to the Certificate Management section. **Preferred Local ID** - Specify the preferred local ID information (**Alternative Subject Name First** or **Subject Name First**) for IPsec authentication while the client is using the general setting (without a specific Peer IP or ID in the VPN profile). **General Pre-Shared Key-** Define the PSK key for general authentication. **Confirm General Pre-Shared Key-** Re-enter the characters to confirm the pre-shared key. **XAuth User Pre-Shared Key -** Define the PSK key for IPsec XAuth authentication. **Confirm XAuth User Pre-Shared Key-** Re-enter the characters to confirm the pre-shared key for IPsec XAuth authentication. **Note**: Any packets from the remote dial-in user which does not match the rule defined in **VPN and Remote Access>>Remote Dial-In User** will be applied with the method specified here.
IPsec Security Method	Available mthods include **Basic**, **Medium** and **High**. Each method offers different encryption, HMAC and DH Group. **Basic -** Authentication Header (AH) means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is active. **Medium -** When this option is selected, the Authentication Header (AH) protocol can be used to provide authentication to IPsec traffic. **High** - When this option is selected, the Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) protocol can be used to provide authentication and encryption to IPsec traffic. Three encryption standards are supported for ESP: DES, 3DES and AES, in ascending order of security.

To save changes on the page, select **OK**; to discard changes, select **Cancel**.

V-1-7 IPsec Peer Identity

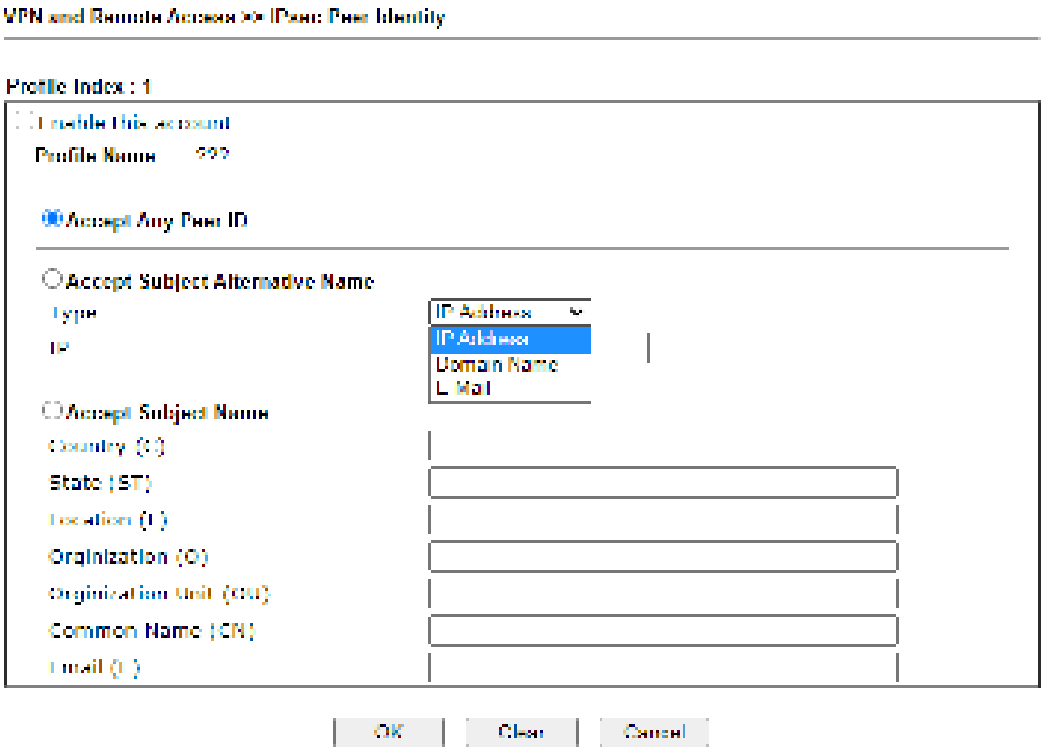
This screen allows creating profiles of subject alternative names (SANs) and distinguished names/subject names that can be used for IPsec peer authentication in LAN-to-LAN or remote user dial-in VPN connections.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Click it to clear all indexes.
Index	Click the index number of the profile the view or edit its settings.
Enable	Check to enable the profile.
Name	User-entered name that identifies the profile.

The following setup screen is shown after a profile index has been clicked.



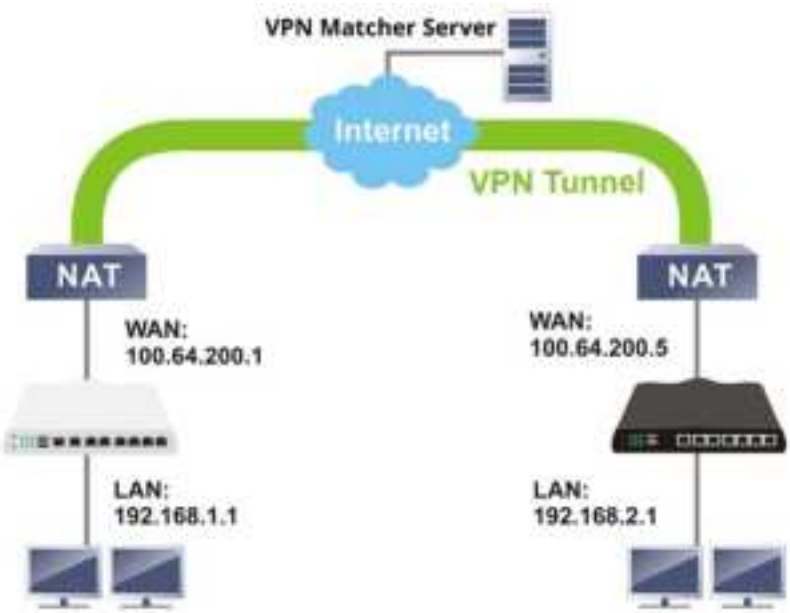
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable this account	Check to enable such account profile.
Profile Name	A name that allows you to identify this profile. The maximum length of the name you can set is 32 characters.
Accept Any Peer ID	When this option is selected, the router accepts any subject alternative name or subject name as valid, regardless of the type and value.
Accept Subject Alternative Name	When this option is selected, the router accepts the type and value of the specified subject alternative name as valid authentication. Supported subject alternative types are **IP Address**, **Domain Name** and **E-Mail**.
Accept Subject Name	When this option is selected, the router performs peer authentication by matching the values of the different subject name fields. These fields include **Country (C)**, **State (ST)**, **Location (L)**, **Organization (O)**, **Organization Unit (OU)**, **Common Name (CN)**, and **Email (E)**.

To save changes on the page, select **OK**; to discard changes, select **Cancel**; to clear settings on this page and revert to default settings, select **Clear**.

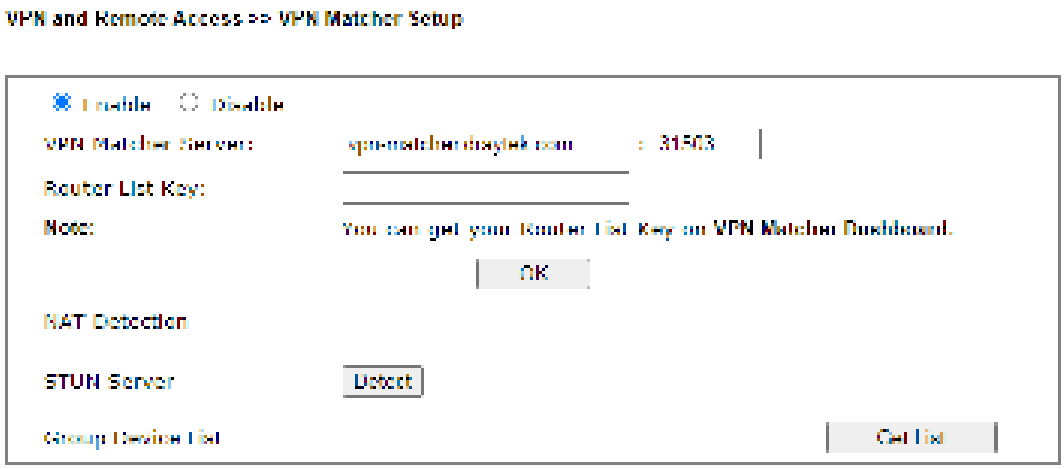
V-1-8 VPN Matcher Setup

Normally, to establish VPN connection, at least one peer must have a public IP address. The VPN Matcher server can help two Draytek routers behind NAT establish a secure VPN tunnel for data transmission between each other. Refer to the following figure.



There is one limitation for the VPN connection. Both routers must be behind a cone NAT, but not symmetric NAT.

Go to **VPN and Remote Access>>VPN Matcher Setup** to open the following page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable / Disable	Click to enable / disable the function of VPN Matcher Setup.
VPN Matcher Server	The IP address of the DrayTek VPN Matcher server is defined as "vpn-matcher.draytek.com" with the port number "31503".
Router List Key	Enter the authentication key for finding a Vigor router with the same group of this device from the VPN matcher server. Then set a VPN link between Vigor routers on both ends via

	VPN wizard.
OK	Click to save the settings.
STUN Server	**Detect** - Click to check if the NAT used by Vigor router is core NAT or not. If not, no VPN can be established.
Group Device List	**Get List** - After entering the Authkey above, click to get available Vigor router which is within the same group as this device.

V-1-9 OpenVPN

The OpenVPN protocol utilizes public keys, certificates, and usernames and passwords to authenticate the client. Traffic is carried over secure channels built upon industry-standard SSL/TLS encryption protocols.

With integrating of OpenVPN, Vigor router can help users to achieve more robust, reliable and secure private connections for business needs.

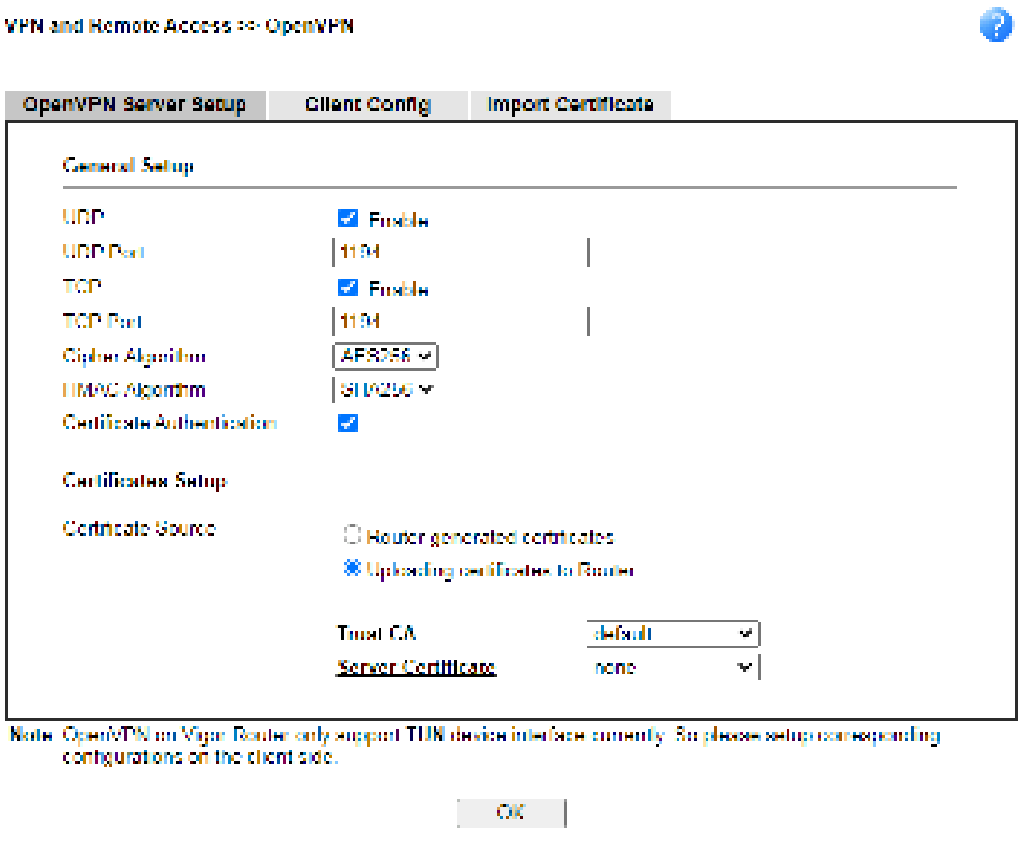
OpenVPN offers a convenient way for users to build a VPN between the local end and the remote end. There are two advantages of OpenVPN:

- It can be operated on different systems such as Windows, Linux, and MacOS.
- Based on the standard protocol of SSL encryption, OpenVPN can provide you with a scalable client/server mode, permitting multi-client to connect to a single OpenVPN Server process over a single TCP or UDP port.

In terms of credentials, the administrator can choose to let the router generate the certificates, or import certificates issued by third-party certificate authorities (CAs). When the router generates the certificates, it acts as the root CA to issue the trusted CA certificates (stored under Certificate Management >> Trusted CA Certificate), which are used to generate the server and client certificates used by OpenVPN (stored under Certificate Management >> Local Certificate). If, however, a certificate issued by a third-party CA is used, both the CA's certificate and the issued certificate need to be imported to the router in the Trusted CA Certificate and Local Certificate sections, respectively.

V-1-9-1 OpenVPN Server Setup

OpenVPN requires the use of certificates. Before establishing OpenVPN connection, general settings for OpenVPN service shall be configured first.



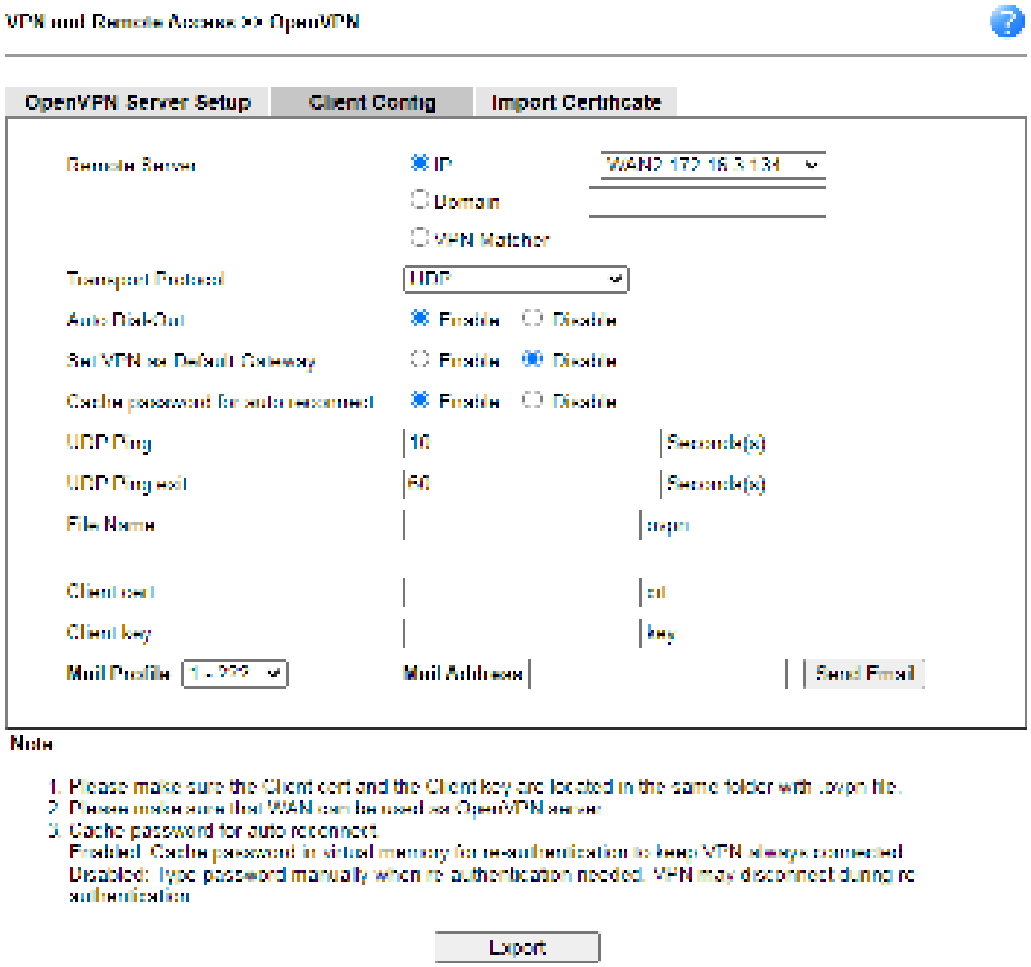
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
General Setup	
UDP	**Enable -** Select checkbox to enable UDP protocol for OpenVPN connections. **UDP Port** – Enter the UDP port number.
TCP	**Enable -** Select checkbox to enable TCP protocol for OpenVPN connections. **TCP Port** – Enter the TCP port number.
Cipher Algorithm	Select the desired cipher algorithm. Two encryption algorithms are supported: AES128 and AES256. AES256 is more secure than AES128 but may result in lower performance because it incurs higher computational overhead.
HMAC Algorithm	HMAC stands for Hash-based Message Authentication Code. It is used to validate the data integrity and authenticity of the VPN data. Select the desired HMAC hash algorithm. Two hash algorithms, SHA1 and SHA256, are supported. SHA256 is preferred as it is more robust and reliable than SHA1.
Certificate Authentication	Select this checkbox if you would like to validate that the client certificate was issued by a trusted CA.
Certificate Setup	
Certificate Source	Select a source for the certificate to be used for OpenVPN. **Router generated certificates** - Router-generated certificates that will be used for OpenVPN. ● **GENERATE** - Click to generate a certificate. ● **Delete all certificates** - Click to remove all certificates generated by the router. **Uploading certificates to Router** - Third-party certificates will be used for OpenVPN. ● **Trust CA** - Use the dropdown list to select a trusted CA certificate that has already been uploaded to the router. To upload Trusted CA certificates to the router, click the Trust CA link and you will be taken to the **Certificate Management >> Trusted CA Certificate** page to perform the operation. ● **Server Certificate** - Use the dropdown list to select a server certificate that has already been uploaded to the router. To upload server certificates to the router, click the Server Certificate link and you will be taken to the **Certificate Management >> Local Certificate** page to perform the operation.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

V-1-9-2 Client Config

On this page, you can create and export the configuration required for a remote OpenVPN client to connect to the router.



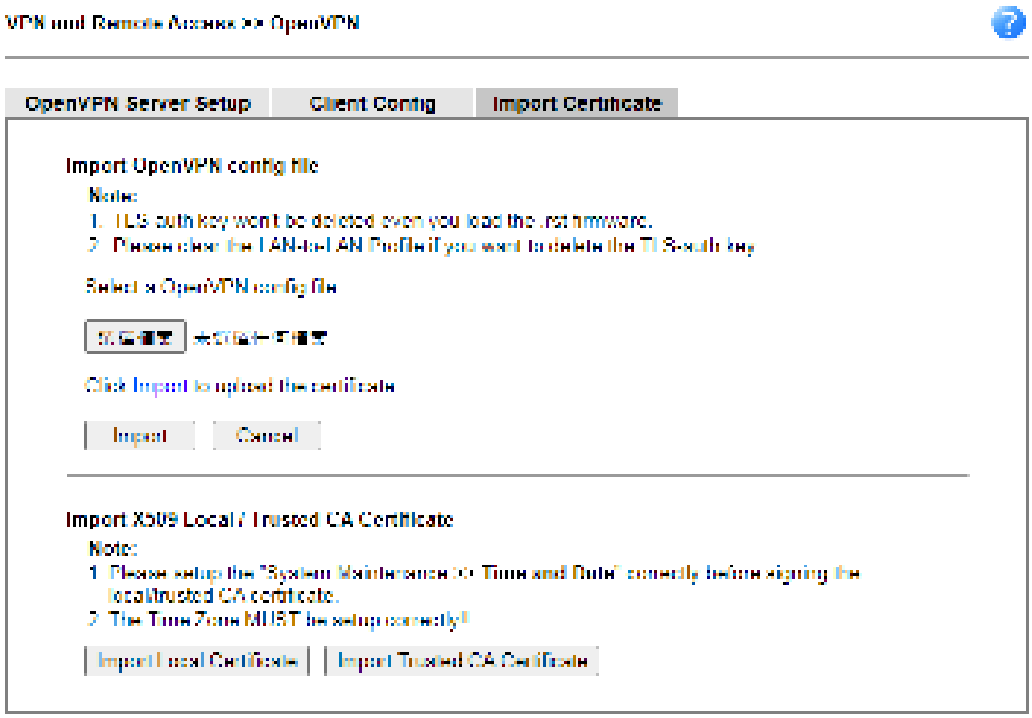
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Remote Server	The OpenVPN client will use the IP address or domain name to connect to the router. Select either IP or Domain. **IP** – The OpenVPN configuration file will use the numeric IP address as the server address. **Domain** – The OpenVPN configuration file will use the domain as the server address. You need to ensure that the domain resolves to the IP address of a router WAN port. **VPN matcher** - The OpenVPN configuration file will use the VPN matcher as the server address.
Transport Protocol	Select UDP or TCP for the protocol to be used by the OpenVPN client to connect to the router.
Auto Dial-Out	**Enable** - If selected, the remote client can auto-dial to this Vigor router to build an OpenVPN tunnel. **Disable** - Select to disable the function.
Set VPN as Default Gateway	**Enable** - If selected, the Vigor router will be treated as a "default" gateway for OpenVPN clients. The OpenVPN client will redirect all the traffic to the Vigor router via the

	OpenVPN tunnel. **Disable** - Select to disable the function.
Cache password for auto reconnect	**Enable** - OpenVPN will reconnect per hour. While reconnecting, the password is required. If the function is enabled, the password for OpenVPN connection will be kept and used by the Vigor system for reconnection every time. **Disable** - Select to disable the function.
UDP Ping	Ping remote device over the UDP control channel, if no packets have been sent for the number of seconds configured here.
UDP Ping exit	Let OpenVPN exit after the seconds set here if no reception of a ping or other packet from the remote device.
File Name	Enter the filename of the configuration file to be downloaded from the router.
Client cert	Enter the filename of the client certificate obtained from 3rd party provider.
Client key	Enter the filename of the private key obtained from the 3rd party provider.
Mail Profile	Use the drop down list to specify a mail profile. **Mail Address** - Enter the mail address to receive the notification mail. **Send Email** - Click to send out the mail.
Export	Click this button to download the settings on this page as a file, which can be imported into a VPN client to establish OpenVPN connections.

V-1-9-3 Import Certificate

On this page, you can import the certificate from other places for a remote OpenVPN client to connect to the router.



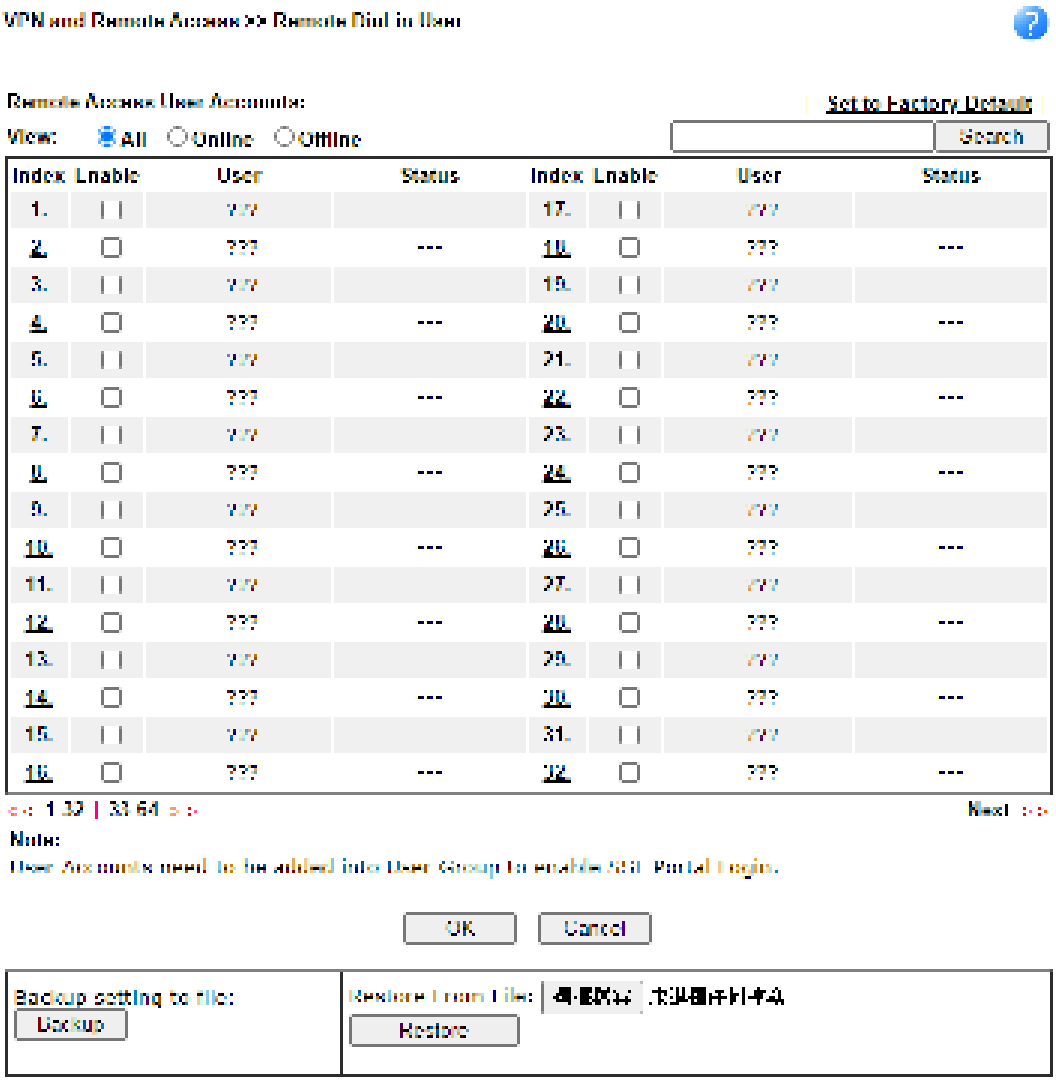
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Import OpenVPN config	
Select an OpenVPN config file	**Browse** - Click to select a file. **Import** - Click to import a configuration file.
Import X509 Local/Trusted CA Certificate	
Import Local Certificate	Click to access into Local Certificate page for importing a certificate.
Import Trusted CA Certificate	Click to access into Trusted CA Certificate page for importing a certificate.

V-1-10 Remote Dial-in User

You can manage remote access by maintaining a table of remote user profiles, so that users can be authenticated via VPN connection.

Remote dial-in user profiles can be set up on this screen.



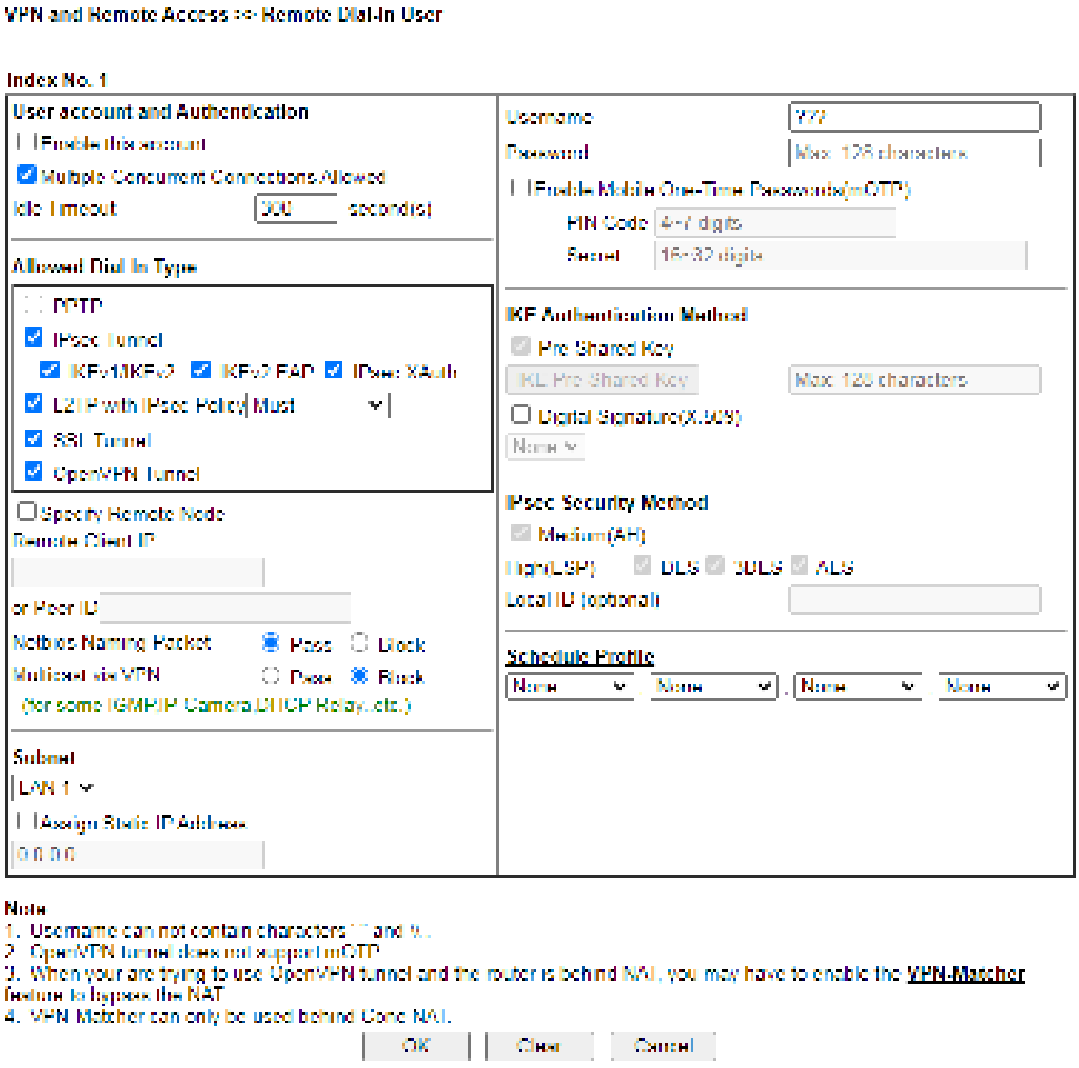
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Click to clear all remote-dial-in user profiles.
Index	Click the index number of the profile the view or edit its settings.
Enable	Check to enable the user profile.
User	Display the username for the specific dial-in user of the LAN-to-LAN profile. The symbol **???** represents that the profile is empty.
Status	Shows the LAN subnet and IP address assignment method. Example: LAN1-DHCP means that the IP address of the VPN

	connection will be drawn from the DHCP pool of the LAN1 subnet. The color of the status indicates the current state of the profile: Green – Profile is being used by a dial-in VPN connection. Red – Profile is not being used. Black – Profile is disabled.
Backup	Click **Backup** to save the configuration.
Restore	Click **Select** to choose a configuration file. Then click **Restore** to apply the file.

To save changes on the page, select **OK**; to discard changes, select **Cancel**.

The following setup screen is shown after a profile index has been clicked.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
User account and Authentication	**Enable this account** - Select to enable this profile to be used by remote dial-in users. **Multiple Concurrent Connections Allowed** - Select to make multiple VPN clients connecting to Vigor device with the

	same username/password. **Idle Timeout** - Allowed idle time before the router disconnects the VPN connection. Default timeout value is 300 seconds.
Allowed Dial-In Type	Select all VPN protocols allowed for this profile. For L2TP, specify how IPsec should be applied. Options are: ● **None** – IPsec cannot be used with L2TP connections. ● **Nice to Have** – IPsec is preferred but not mandatory for L2TP connections. ● **Must** – IPsec is required when establish L2TP connections. **Specify Remote Node** - The IP address of the remote VPN client (Remote Client IP) or the Peer ID (used in IKE aggressive mode) can be optionally specified. The router will reject the connection if either of these values are entered in the profile but the remote client does not pass the value, or passes the wrong value. **Netbios Naming Packet -** Specifies whether to allow NetBIOS naming packets to traverse through the VPN tunnel. ● **Pass** – Click it to have an inquiry for data transmission between the hosts located on both sides of VPN Tunnel while connecting. ● **Block** – When there is conflict occurred between the hosts on both sides of VPN Tunnel in connecting, such function can block data transmission of Netbios Naming Packet inside the tunnel. **Multicast via VPN** - Specifies whether to allow multicast packets to traverse through the VPN tunnel. ● **Pass** – Click this button to let multicast packets pass through the router. ● **Block** – This is default setting. Click this button to let multicast packets be blocked by the router.
Subnet	The VPN client will receive an IP address from the DHCP pool or IP address range specified in IP Address Assignment for Dial-In Users for the selected LAN subnet. **Assign Static IP Address** – Alternatively, a static IP address can be set by selecting the Assign Static IP Address checkbox. **User Name** - Used for PPTP, L2TP or SSL Tunnel dial-in type. The length of the name is limited to 23 characters. **Password** - Used for PPTP, L2TP or SSL Tunnel dial-in type. The length of the password is limited to 19 characters. **Enable Mobile One-Time Passwords (mOTP) -** Select to enable one-time passwords (Mobile-OTP). Enter the PIN Code and Secret. DrayTek's SmartVPN client has built-in support for mOTP. Third-party mOTP clients can be used to generate passwords when using other VPN clients. For more information on mOTP, visit Mobile-OTP's homepage. ● **PIN Code** – Enter the code for authentication (e.g, 1234). ● **Secret** – Use the 32 digit-secret number generated by mOTP in the mobile phone (e.g., e759bb6f0e94c7ab4fe6).
IKE Authentication Method	**Pre-Shared Key** - This checkbox is available when Remote Client IP or Peer ID is specified. Check the checkbox and

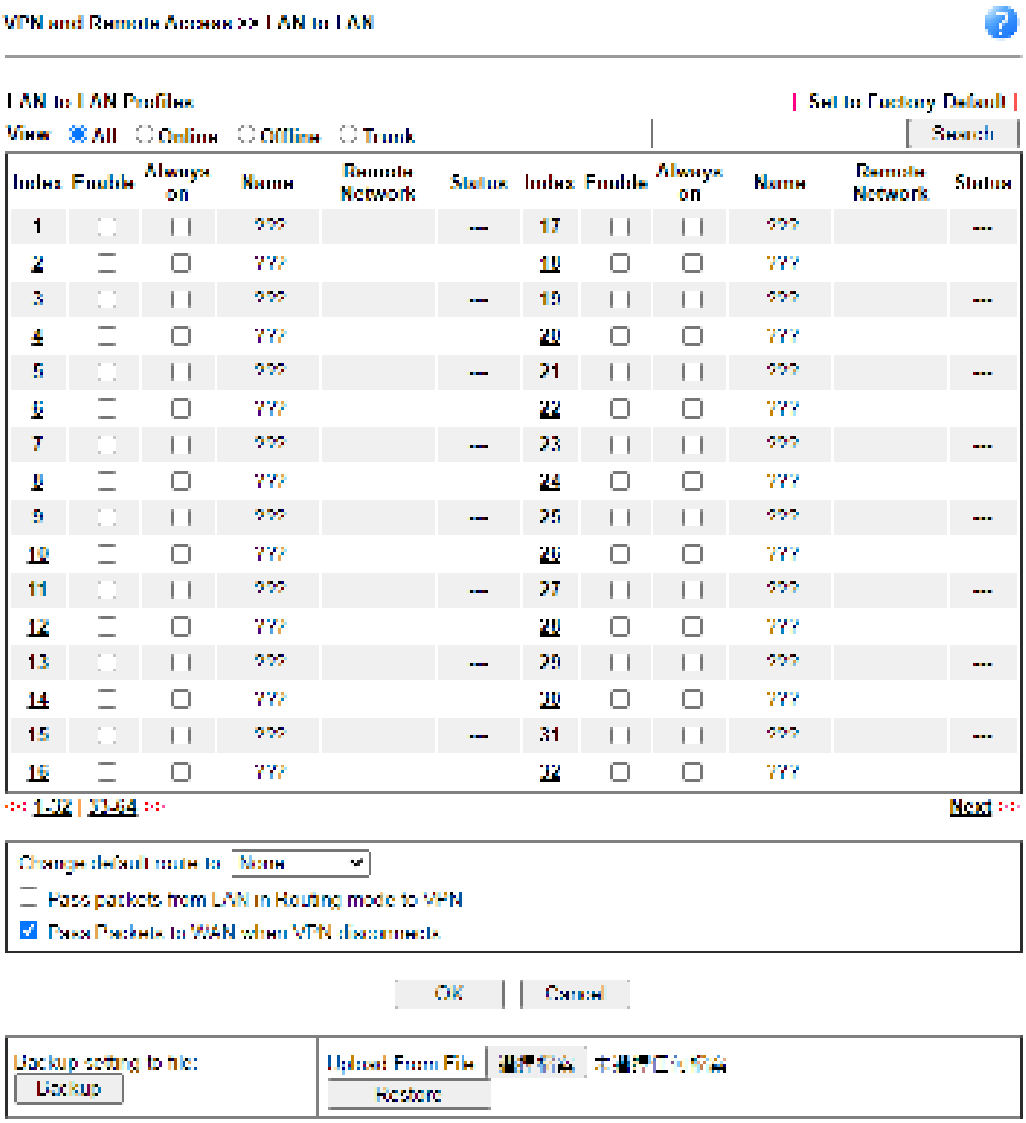
	click IKE Pre-shared Key to enter an IKE PSK (1~63 characters) that will be used only for this profile. **Digital Signature (X.509)** – To enable authentication using X.509 Peer IDs, check the checkbox then select an X.509 profile. X.509 profiles can be configured in **VPN and Remote Access >> IPsec Peer Identity**.
IPsec Security Method	Select all the IPsec protocols that are allowed to be used for this profile. **Medium-Authentication Header (AH)** means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is invoked. You can uncheck it to disable it. **High (ESP) -** High-Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. You may select encryption algorithm from Data Encryption Standard (DES), Triple DES (3DES), and AES. **Local ID (Optional)-** Specify a local ID to be used when establishing a LAN-to-LAN VPN connection using IKE aggressive mode.
Schedule Profile	Up to four schedule profiles can be set.

To save changes on the page, select **OK**; to discard changes, select **Cancel**; to clear settings on this page and revert to default settings, select **Clear**.

V-1-11 LAN to LAN

This section allows you to configure up to 64 LAN-to-LAN VPN connections. LAN-to-LAN connections can be configured to allow dial-in only, dial-out only, or both dial-in and dial-out.

The following figure shows the summary table according to the item (All/Trunk) selected for **View**.

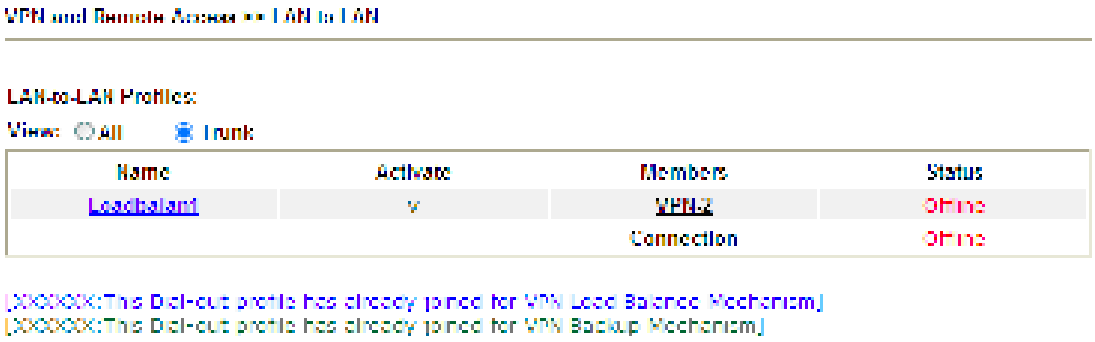


Available settings are explained as follows:

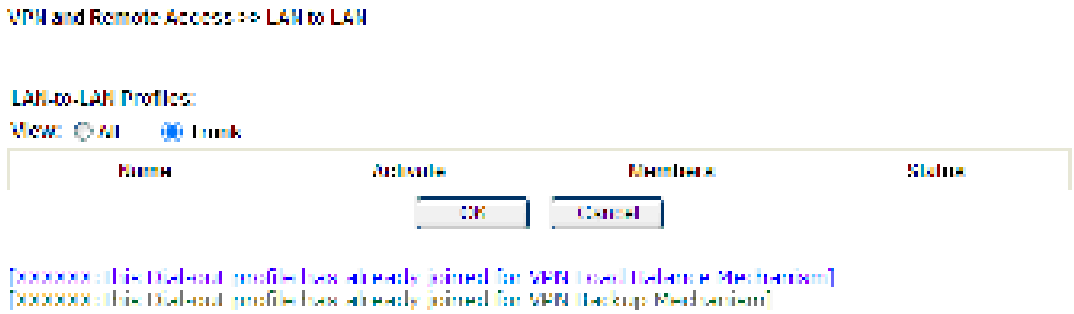
Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Click to clear all indexes.
View	**All** – Shows all LAN-to-LAN VPN profiles. **Trunk** – Shows all Trunk profiles (see VPN and Remote Access >> VPN TRUNK Management).
Index	Click the index number of the profile to view or edit its settings.
Enable	Check to enable the LAN-to-LAN VPN profile.
Always on	Check the box to enalbe the LAN-to-LAN VPN Dial-Out

	profile.
Name	Display the name of the LAN-to-LAN profile. The symbol **???** represents that the profile is empty.
Remote Network	Display the name of the remote network.
Status	Shows the status of the profile. Online - LAN-to-LAN VPN is connected. Offline - LAN-to-LAN VPN is disconnected. --- - Profile is disabled.
Change default route to	Change the default route to the selected VPN tunnel.
Pass packets from LAN in Routing mode to VPN	If enabled, the packets from routing LAN will pass through the VPN tunnel.
Pass Packets to WAN when VPN disconnects	If enabled, the packets can pass through via WAN when the VPN disconnects.
Backup	Click **Backup** to save the configuration.
Restore	Click **Select** to choose a configuration file. Then click **Restore** to apply the file.

The following figure shows profiles joined into VPN Load Balance and VPN Backup mechanism.

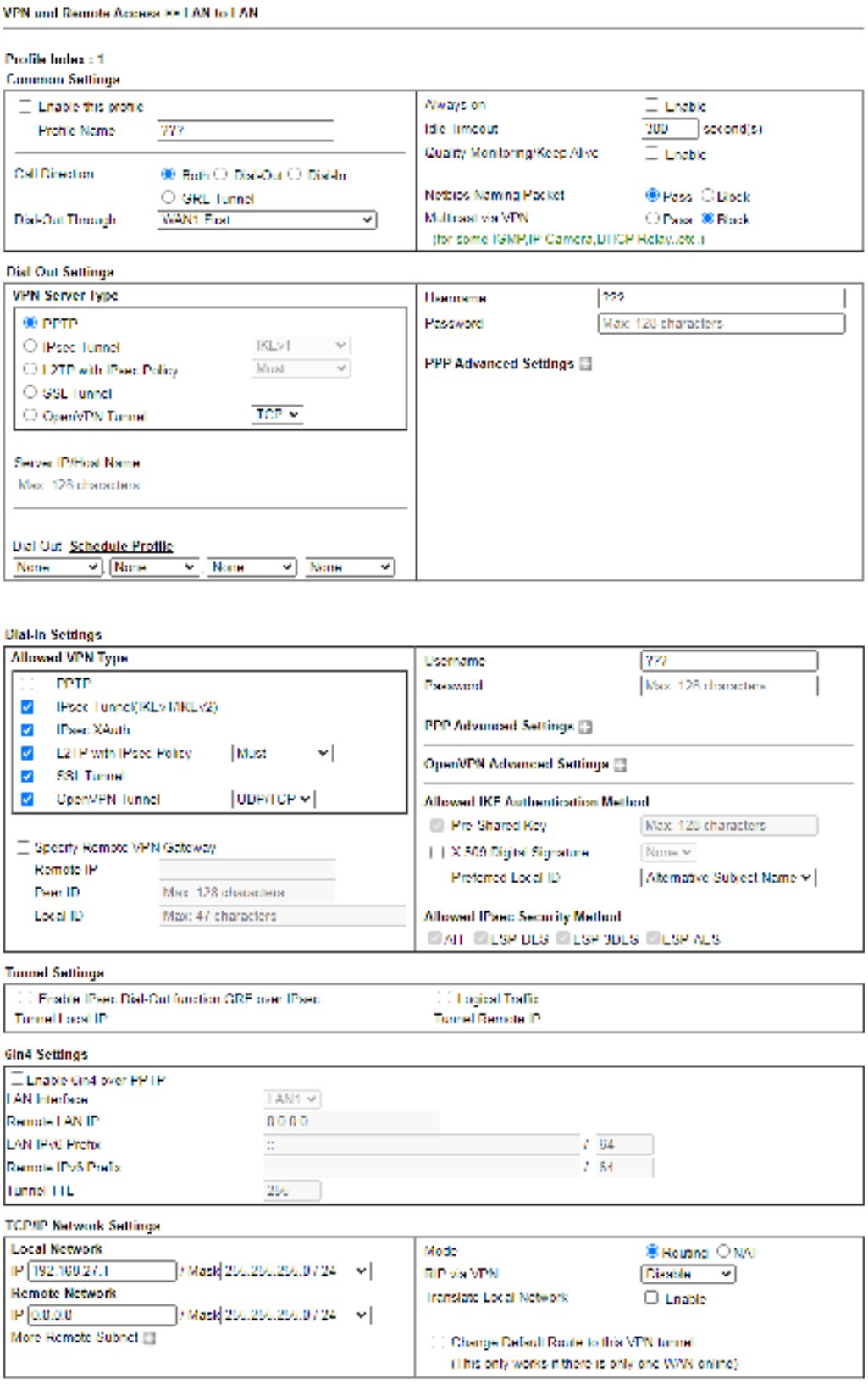


If there is no profile joined yet, this page will be shown as follows:



To edit each profile, click each index to edit each profile.

1. The setup screen is shown after a profile index has been clicked. There are 6 sections: Common Settings, Dial-Out Settings, Dial-In Settings, Tunnel Settings, 6in4 Settings and TCP/IP Network Settings.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Common Settings	
Enable this profile	Select to enable the profile.

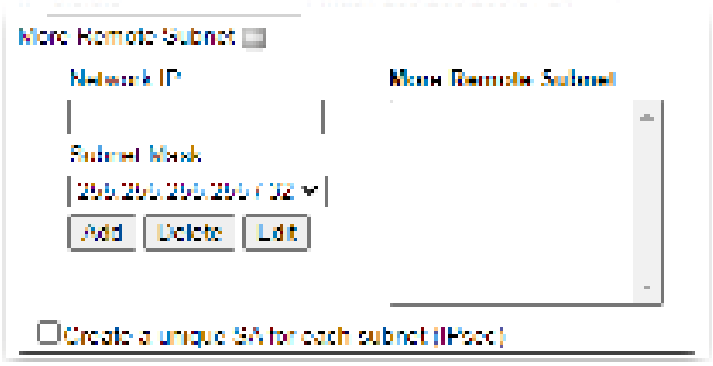
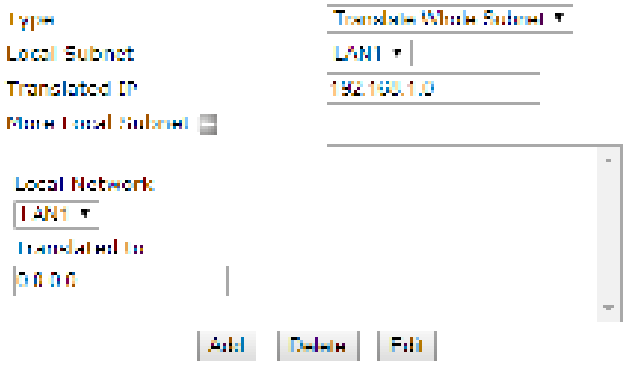
	Profile Name – Specify a name that allows you to identify this profile. **Call Direction -** Specify the allowed call direction of this LAN-to-LAN profile. Four choices are available for connection mode: ● **Both** – Profile is to be used to initiate (dial out) or accept (dial in) connections. ● **Dial-Out** – Profile is to be used to initiate outgoing connections. ● **Dial-In** – Profile is to be used to accept incoming connections. ● **GRE Tunnel** – Connection is by means of a GRE tunnel. **Dial-Out Through -** Select the WAN connection for connections made using this profile. This setting is useful for dial-out only. ● **WANx First** - While connecting, the router will use WANx or LTE as the first channel for VPN connection. If WANx or LTE fails, the router will use another WAN interface instead. ● **WANx Only or LTE Only** - While connecting, the router will use WANx or LTE as the only channel for VPN connection. ● **WAN1 Only: Only establish VPN if WAN2 down** - If WAN2 failed, the router will use WAN1 for VPN connection. ● **WAN2 Only: Only establish VPN if WAN1 down** - If WAN1 failed, the router will use WAN2 for VPN connection. **Always On** - Select this option to maintain an always on dial-out connection. **Idle Timeout** - The router will close connection if no activity is observed in the VPN connection for this many seconds. Default value is 300 seconds. **Quality Monitoring/Keep Alive** - Select this option to keep the VPN connection for the feature of SD-WAN quality monitoring. **Netbios Naming Packet** - Specifies whether to allow NetBIOS naming packets to traverse through the VPN tunnel. ● **Pass** – click it to have an inquiry for data transmission between the hosts located on both sides of VPN Tunnel while connecting. ● **Block** – When there is conflict occurred between the hosts on both sides of VPN Tunnel in connecting, such function can block data transmission of Netbios Naming Packet inside the tunnel. **Multicast via VPN -** Specifies whether to allow multicast packets to traverse through the VPN tunnel. ● **Pass** – Click this button to let multicast packets pass through the router. ● **Block** – This is default setting. Click this button to let multicast packets be blocked by the router.
Dial-Out Settings	
VPN Server Type	Select the VPN protocol to be used.
Server IP/Host Name	IP address or DNS host name of remote VPN host.

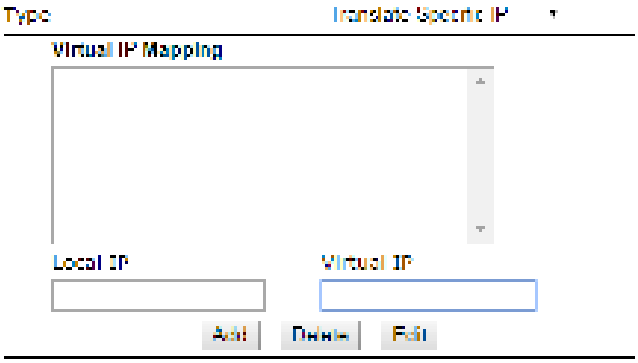
Dial-Out Schedule Profile	Connect and disconnect according to schedule profiles. The default setting of this field is blank and the function will always work.
User Name	Enter a username for establishing VPN connection.
Password	Enter the password for establishing VPN connection.
If PPTP / **L2TP with IPsec Policy** / **SSL Tunnel** / **is selected as VPN Server Type**	**PPP Advanced Settings** - Click it to expand the advanced settings for PPP. ● **PPP Authentication -** PAP Only – Authenticate dial-in users using the PAP protocol only. PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP/MS-CHAPv2 – Attempt to authenticate dial-in users using various CHAP protocols, and if the remote VPN client fails to authenticate, fall back to PAP. ● **VJ compression -** Specifies whether to enable Van Jacobson (VJ) header compression, which improves throughput on slow connections. ● **Request IP Address** - Enter the IP address.
If IPsec/ L2TP with IPsec Policy is is selected as VPN Server Type	**IKE Phase 1 Settings -** Select from **Main** mode and **Aggressive** mode. The ultimate outcome is to exchange security proposals to create a protected secure channel. **Main** mode is more secure than **Aggressive** mode since more exchanges are done in a secure channel to set up the IPsec session. However, the **Aggressive** mode is faster. The default value in Vigor router is Main mode. ● **Authentication - Digital Signature(X.509)** ■ **Peer ID -** Select one of the predefined Profiles set in **VPN and Remote Access >>IPsec Peer Identity**. ■ **Local ID -** Use **Alternative Subject Name** or **Subject Name** of local certiicate as local ID. ■ **Local Certificate -** Select one of the profiles set in **Certificate Management>>Local Certificate**. ● **Authentication - Pre-Shared Key** ■ **Pre-Shared Key -** Input 1-128 characters as pre-shared key. ■ **Local ID -** Enter local IKE identity to send in the exchange to establish IPsec connection. ● **proposal Encryption -** Use Auto/AES/3DES/DES for packet encryption. ● **proposal ECDH Group -** Specify a group if Auto is not selected as proposal Encryption. ● **proposal Authentication -** Select SHA256 or SHA1 for packet authentication. ● **Force UDP Encapsulation -** Select to make UDP encapsulation forcefully. All IPsec packets will be encapsulated with UDP header. **IKE Phase 2 Settings -** Specify the security protocol, proposal encryption and proposal authentication. ● **Security Protocol** - AH (Medium) means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is active. ESP (High) means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. ● **Proposal Encryption** - Use AES/3DES encryption algorithm and apply MD5 or SHA-1 authentication

	algorithm. ● **Proposal Authentication** - Select All, SHA or None. **IKE Advanced Settings -** Specify the key life of each IKE phase, network ID, etc. ● **IKE phase 1 key lifetime-** For security reason, the lifetime of key should be defined. The default value is 28800 seconds. You may specify a value in between 900 and 86400 seconds. ● **IKE phase 2 key lifetime-** For security reason, the lifetime of key should be defined. The default value is 3600 seconds. You may specify a value in between 600 and 86400 seconds. ● **Phase 2 Network ID -** This is optional. Change the source IP address of VPN traffic to the specified IP address for NAT mode selected on TCP/IP Network Settings field. ● **Enable Perfect Forward Secret (PFS) -** The IKE Phase 1 key will be reused to avoid the computation complexity in phase 2. The default value is inactive this function. **Ping to Keep Alive -** Select to enable the function of PING to keep alive. **PING Target IP -** Enter the IP address to keep alive.
If OpenVPN Tunnel with IPsec Policy is is selected as VPN Server Type	**OpenVPN Advanced Settings - C**lick to set the advanced settings for OpenVPN. ● **Cipher Algorithm -** Select an algorithm for encrypting the packets via OpenVPN. ● **HMAC Algorithm -** Select an algorithm for authenticating the packets via OpenVPN. ● **Client Certificate -** Select a client certificate or self-signed a new certificate or DrayDDNS certificate. ● **Trust CA -** Select a trust CA certificate. ● **Compress -** Select a method to compress the packets to reduce the bandwidth usage while transferring the compressed packets. ● **TLS - auth -** Select **On** to use the TLS authentication method. Related key information can be checked by clicking **View**. **Import OpenVPN config file -** An OpenVPN config file from other Vigor router can be imported and apply to this router. ● **Select File -** Select a file from your hard disk. ● **Import -** Click to upload the selected config file to this Vigor router.
Dial-In Settings	
Allowed VPN Type	Select permissible VPN protocols for dial-in connections. ● **PPTP -** Allow the remote dial-in user to make a PPTP VPN connection through the Internet. You should set the User Name and Password of remote dial-in user below. ● **IPsec Tunnel(IKEv1/IKEv2)-** Allow the remote dial-in user to trigger an IPsec VPN connection through Internet. ● **IPsec XAuth** ● **L2TP with IPsec Policy -** Allow the remote dial-in user to make a L2TP VPN connection through the Internet.

	You can select to use L2TP alone or with IPsec. Select from below: ■ **None -** Do not apply the IPsec policy. Accordingly, the VPN connection employed the L2TP without IPsec policy can be viewed as one pure L2TP connection. ■ **Nice to Have** - Apply the IPsec policy first, if it is applicable during negotiation. Otherwise, the dial-in VPN connection becomes one pure L2TP connection. ■ **Must -** Specify the IPsec policy to be definitely applied on the L2TP connection. ● **SSL Tunnel-** Allow the remote dial-in user to trigger an SSL VPN connection through Internet. ● **OpenVPN Tunnel**
Specify Remote VPN Gateway	You can specify the IP address of the remote dial-in user or peer ID (should be the same with the ID setting in dial-in type) by checking the box. Also, you should further specify the corresponding security methods on the right side. If you uncheck the checkbox, the connection type you select above will apply the authentication methods and security methods in the general settings. **Username -** This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the name is limited to 11 characters. **Password -** This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPsec policy above. The length of the password is limited to 11 characters.
PPP Advanced Settings	Click it to expand the advanced settings for PPP. **VJ Compression -** Specifies whether to enable Van Jacobson header compression, which improves throughput on slow connections. **Assign Peer IP Address** - Enter the IP address of the peer.
OpenVPN Advanced Settings	**Cipher Algorithm -** Select an algorithm for encrypting the packets via OpenVPN. **HMAC Algorithm -** Select an algorithm for authenticating the packets via OpenVPN.
Allowed IKE Authentication Method	This section is available when IPsec tunnel is selected as the dial-out protocol. Available options are IKE Pre-shared key and X.509 digital signature. **Pre-Shared Key** - To use a pre-shared key, select this radio-button and then click the IKE Pre-Shared Key button to enter the PSK. **X.509 Digital Signature** - To use an X.509 digital signature, select this radio button and then select an X.509 IPsec Peer Identity profile. To enable authentication using X.509 Peer IDs. X.509 profiles can be configured in **VPN and Remote Access >> IPsec Peer Identity**. ● **Local ID** – Select whether to first match Subject Alternative Name or Subject Name during authentication. **-Alternative Subject Name** – The alternative subject name (configured in **Certificate Management>>Local Certificate**) will be inspected first.

	-Subject Name – The subject name (configured in **Certificate Management>>Local Certificate**) will be inspected first.
Allowed IPsec Security Method	This setting is available when IPsec Tunnel is selected as the dial-out protocol. ● **AH-** Authentication Header (AH) means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. Select to use Authentication Header protocol. By default, this option is active. ● **ESP-DES/ESP-3DES/ESP-AES -** Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. You may select encryption algorithm from Data Encryption Standard (DES), Triple DES (3DES), and AES.
Tunnel Settings	
Enable IPsec Dial-Out function GRE over IPsec	Check this box to verify data and transmit data in encryption with GRE over IPsec packet after configuring IPsec Dial-Out setting. Both ends must match for each other by setting same virtual IP address for communication.
Logical Traffic	Such technique comes from RFC2890. Define logical traffic for data transmission between both sides of VPN tunnel by using the characteristic of GRE. Even hacker can decipher IPsec encryption, he/she still cannot ask LAN site to do data transmission with any information. Such function can ensure the data transmitted on VPN tunnel is really sent out from both sides. This is an optional function. However, if one side wants to use it, the peer must enable it, too.
Tunnel Local IP	Enter the virtual IP for router itself for verified by peer.
Tunnel Remote IP	Enter the virtual IP of peer host for verified by router.
6in4 Settings	
Enable 6in4 over PPTP	Transmit the IPv6 packets from the local site to the remote site via IPv4 VPN tunnel with the encapsulation technology, 6in4. Check to enable the function. The IPv6 packets can pass through WAN PPTP VPN tunnel to the remote site.
LAN Interface	Specify a LAN interface for transmitting the packets.
Remote LAN IP	Specify the IP address of the remote site.
LAN IPv6 Prefix	Specify the prefix (with length) of the local site.
Remote IPv6 Prefix	Specify the prefix (with length) of the remote site.
Tunnel TTL	Enter a value.
TCP/IP Network Settings	
Local Network	The default value is 0.0.0.0, which means the Vigor router will get a PPP IP address from the remote router during the IPCP negotiation phase. If the PPP IP address is fixed by remote side, specify the fixed IP address here. Do not change

	the default value if you do not select PPTP or L2TP. **IP / Mask -** Display the local network IP and mask for TCP / IP configuration. You can modify the settings if required.
Remote Network	The default value is 0.0.0.0, which means the Vigor router will get a remote Gateway PPP IP address from the remote router during the IPCP negotiation phase. If the PPP IP address is fixed by remote side, specify the fixed IP address here. Do not change the default value if you do not select PPTP or L2TP. **IP/ Mask -** Add a static route to direct all traffic destined to this Remote Network IP Address/Remote Network Mask through the VPN connection. For IPsec, this is the destination clients IDs of phase 2 quick mode.
More Remote Subnet	Click to bring up a dialog box to enter additional static routes for subnets destined for the remote network. 
Mode	If the remote network only allows one IP address for the local network, select **NAT**; otherwise, select **Route**.
When the Mode is set to Routing	When **Routing** is selected, the available fields in the TCP/IP Network Settings section will be shown as: **Translate Local Network** - Check the box to enable the function. Add a static route to direct all traffic destined to more Remote Network IP Addresses/ Remote Network Mask through the VPN connection. This is usually used when you find there are several subnets behind the remote VPN router. ● **Type** - There are two types (**Translate Whole Subnet**, **Translate Specific IP**) for you to choose. When **Translate Whole Subnet** is selected as **Type**, available settings are listed as below:  - **Local Subnet** - Select the LAN whose IP addresses are to be translated. - **Translated IP** - Specify an IP address. - **More Local Subnet** - Click it to add more subnets.

	When **Translate Specific IP** is selected as **Type**, available settings are listed as below:  - **Virtual IP Mapping** – A pop up dialog will appear for you to specify the local IP address and the mapping virtual IP address.
When the Mode is set to NAT	When **NAT** is selected, the available fields in the TCP/IP Network Settings section will be shown as: **RIP via VPN -** Specifies the direction of Routing Information Protocol (RIP) packets. Available options are: ● TX/RX Both – can transmit or receive RIP packets ● TX Only – can only transmit but not receive RIP packets ● RX Only – can only receive but not transmit RIP packets ● Disable – RIP is disabled. **Change Default Route to this VPN tunnel -** Select this option to direct all traffic that is not LAN-bound to this VPN tunnel. This option is functional when there is only one active WAN.

2. To save changes on the LAN to LAN profile page, select **OK**; to reset the entire page to blank, select **Clear**; to discard changes, select **Cancel**.

V-1-12 VPN Trunk Management

A VPN Trunk combines TWO LAN-to-LAN VPN tunnels to provide VPN Backup or VPN Load Balance functionalities.

VPN Backup

VPN Backup provides redundant, uninterrupted VPN connectivity by constantly monitoring the health of a VPN tunnel, and fails over to the secondary VPN tunnel when the primary tunnel fails.

In a Backup VPN Trunk, only one of the two LAN-to-LAN VPN tunnels is connected at any given time. When one tunnel fails, the router will automatically start up and direct all VPN traffic destined for the trunk to the other tunnel.

VPN Load Balance

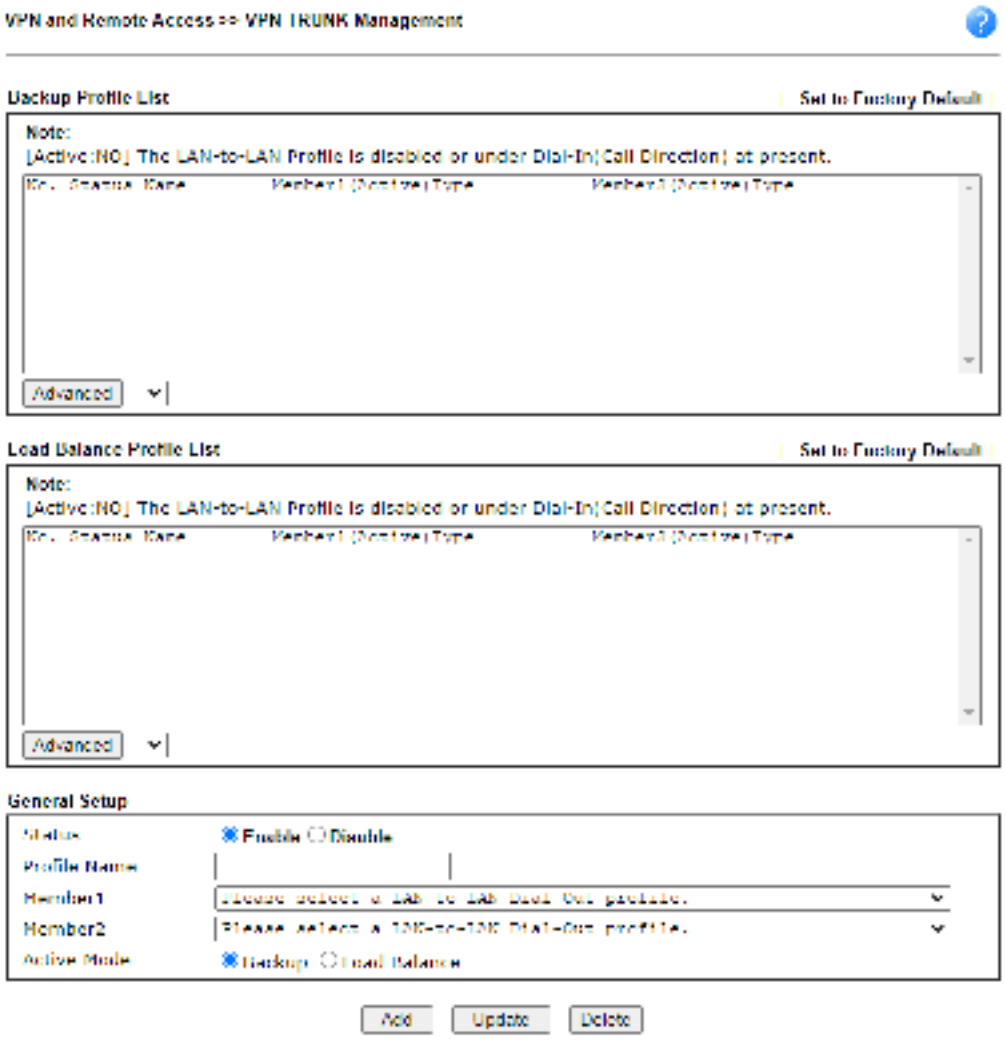
VPN Load Balance increases the bandwidth of a LAN-to-LAN connection by combining and load balancing two tunnels, with the option to direct traffic to specific tunnels by originating address, destination address or port.

In a Load Balance VPN Trunk, both LAN-to-LAN VPN tunnels are simultaneously connected. The router first attempts to match the traffic to a load balance policy rule and send it down the tunnel specified in the matching rule. Traffic not matched to any policy will be load balanced in a round-robin fashion, and the traffic ratio between the two tunnels is either determined automatically by the router or specified by the user.

In order to set up a VPN Trunk, 2 LAN-to-LAN VPN profiles must have been configured first. For details on the configuration of LAN-to-LAN VPN tunnels, see section V-1-10 LAN to LAN. When the 2 LAN-to-LAN VPN profiles are ready, follow the steps below to set up a VPN Trunk.

Creating a VPN Trunk

To create a new VPN Trunk, configure the General Setup section first.



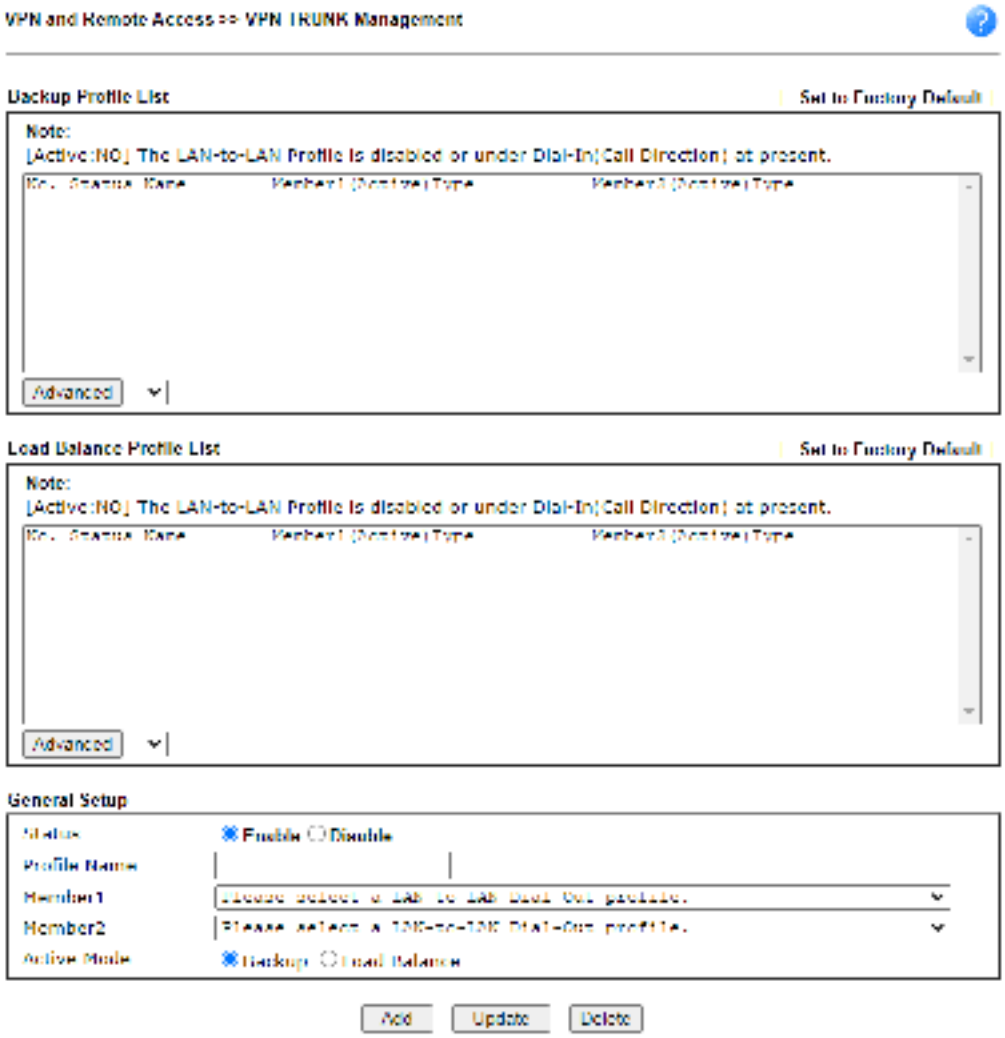
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
General Setup	**Status** - Enable or disable the VPN Trunk. ● **Enable** – Select this to enable this VPN trunk. ● **Disable** - Select this to disable this VPN trunk. **Profile Name** - Enter a name to identify this VPN Trunk profile. **Member 1**/**Member2** - Select LAN-to-LAN VPN profiles to be the first and second members of this VPN Trunk. **Active Mode** - Select the operation mode of the VPN Trunk. **Backup** / **Load Balance** – Select this to set up a Backup / Load Balance VPN Trunk. **Add** - Select it to add a VPN Trunk Profile using the entered information. **Update -** Select it to save the changes to the **Status** (Enable or Disable), profile name, member1 or member2. **Delete -** Select it to delete the selected VPN TRUNK profile. The corresponding members (LAN-to-LAN profiles) grouped

	in the deleted VPN TRUNK profile will be released and that profiles in LAN-to-LAN will be displayed in black.

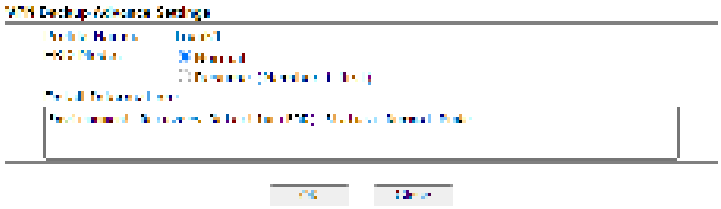
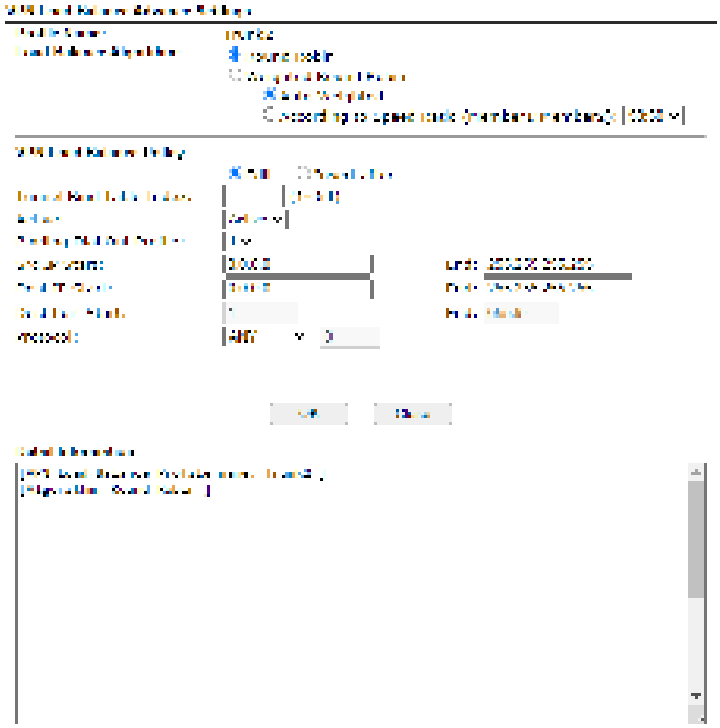
Configuring, Modifying or Deleting a VPN Trunk

To configure or modify a VPN Trunk, go to the Profile List section that corresponds to the type of the VPN trunk (Backup or Load Balance).



Available settings are explained as follows:

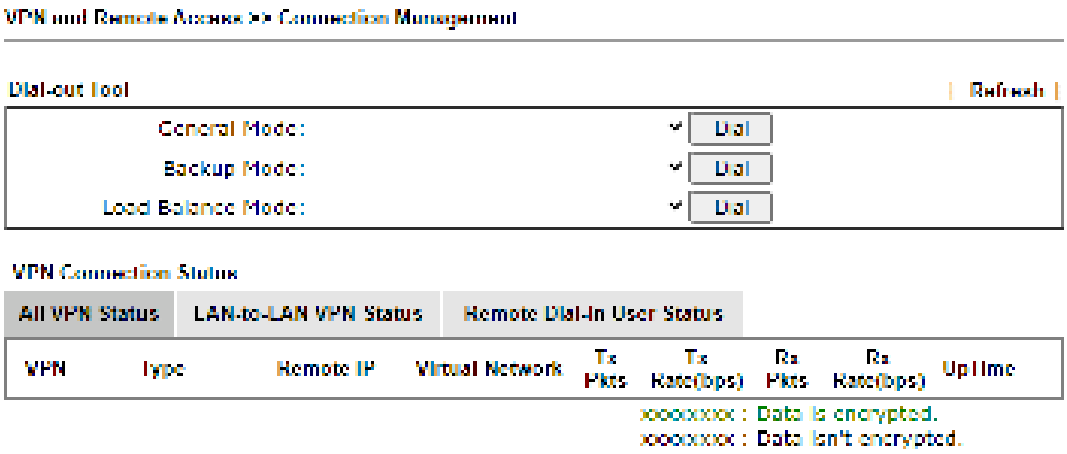
Item	Description
Backup Profile List **and** **Load Balance Profile List**	**Set to Factory Default -** Removes all VPN Trunk profiles in the Profile List. **No. –**The index number of VPN profile. **Status** - Shows whether the VPN Trunk is enabled or disabled. ● v – VPN Trunk is enabled. ● x – VPN Trunk is disabled. **Name -** The user-entered name that identifies the trunk profile. **Member1 (Active) Type** / **Member2 (Active) Type -** Shows the profile index, whether it is enabled or disabled, and the VPN protocol of the 2 LAN-to-LAN VPN profiles. Example: 1(YES)PPTP – the trunk member is set to use the

	first profile which is currently enabled and uses the PPTP protocol. **Advanced** - To configure advanced settings of a VPN Trunk profile, select its name from the dropdown list and click Advanced.
Advanced for Backup Profile List	If a Backup Profile was selected, the following Advanced Settings screen appears:  **Profile Name** - User-defined name that identifies this profile. **ERD Mode** - Sets the Environment Recovery Detection (ERD) mode. ● **Normal** – Both VPN tunnels have equivalent priority. ● **Resume** – Member 1 and Member 2 VPN tunnels are primary and secondary connections, respectively. The router will always attempt to use Member 1 first, and only fail over to Member 2 if Member 1 is down. **Detail Information** - Provides a detailed explanation of the ERD mode. To save Advanced Settings for the profile, select **OK**; to close without saving changes, select **Close**.
Advanced for Load Balance Profile List	If a Load Balance Profile was selected, the following Advanced Settings screen appears:  **Profile Name** - User-defined name that identifies this profile. **Load Balance Algorithm** - Configures how load balancing is performed.

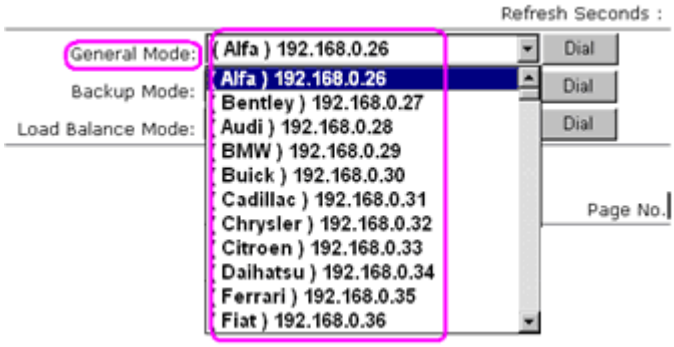
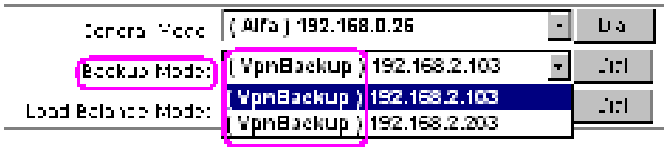
	• **Round Robin** – All outgoing connections that do not match to any load balance policy are evenly distributed between the tunnels. • **Weighted Round Robin** -- All outgoing connections that do not match to any load balance policy are distributed between the tunnels based on a ratio that is either automatically determined by the router (Auto Weighted), or specified by the user (According to Speed Ratio). **VPN Load Balance Policy** - This section allows the modification or addition of load balance policy profiles. **Edit** / **Insert After** - Select Edit to modify the existing load balance profile with index specified in Tunnel Bind Table Index, or Insert After to insert a new load balance profile immediately after the index position specified in Tunnel Bind Table Index. **Tunnel Bind Table Index**- 64 Binding tunnel tables are provided by this device. In Edit mode, the profile that matches this index will be updated. In Insert After mode, a new profile will be inserted immediately after the policy having this index. **Active** – Includes Active and Clear. In which, • **Active** - All information will be saved into a load balance profile. • **Clear** – The profile with index matching Tunnel Bind Table Index will be deleted. **Binding Dial Out Profile** – The LAN-to-LAN VPN tunnel to which traffic matching this policy will be sent. **Scr IP Start** /**End**– Specify source IP addresses as starting point and ending point. **Dest IP Start**/**End** – Specify the target IP addresses as starting point and ending point. **Dest Port Start** /**End**– Specify the target port range if the protocol is TCP or UDP. **Protocol** – Specify the protocol of the traffic. **Detail Information** - Shows all the information about the Load Balance profile. To save Advanced Settings for the profile, select **OK**; to close without saving changes, select **Close**.
Add	Select it to add a VPN Trunk Profile using the entered information.
Update	Make modifications as necessary in the General Setup section. Select it to save the changes to the Status (Enable or Disable), profile name, member1 or member2.
Delete	Select it to remove the VPN TRUNK profile. The corresponding members (LAN-to-LAN profiles) grouped in the deleted VPN TRUNK profile will be released and that profiles in LAN-to-LAN will be displayed in black.

V-1-13 Connection Management

You can initiate outbound LAN-to-LAN VPN sessions, and view and disconnect all current LAN-to-LAN and dial-up VPN sessions.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Refresh	Click to manually reload the page to refresh VPN connection information.
Dial-out Tool	The Dial-out Tool section can be used to initiate outgoing LAN-to-LAN VPN sessions. **General Mode -** It lists all LAN-to-LAN VPN profiles that do not belong to enabled VPN Trunk profiles. To manually dial a LAN-to-LAN VPN profile, select it from the combo box, and click the **Dial** button to the right. The VPN connection built by General Mode does not support VPN backup function.  **Backup Mode -** It lists all Backup VPN Trunk profiles. To manually dial a Backup VPN Trunk profile, select it from the combo box, and click the **Dial** button to the right. The VPN connection built by Backup Mode supports VPN backup function. 

	Load Balance Mode - It lists all Load Balance VPN Trunk profiles. To manually dial a Load Balance VPN Trunk profile, select it from the combo box, and click the **Dial** button to the right. **Dial -** Click this button to execute dial out function. If the connect is successfully made, it will show up in the VPN Connection Status section below.
VPN Connection Status	**VPN** - Displays the VPN profile number and the profile name. **Type** - Displays the VPN protocol used for the connection **Remote IP** - Displays the remote IP address of the VPN connection. **Virtual Network** - Displays the IP subnet used by the VPN connection. **Tx Pkts** - Displays the number of packets that have been transmitted through the VPN connection. **Tx Rate(Bps)** - Displays the current upstream speed of the VPN connection. **Rx Pkts** - Displays the number of packets that have been received through the VPN connection. **Rx Rate(Bps)** - Displays the current downstream speed of the VPN connection. **UpTime** - Displays the elapsed time of the VPN connection. **Drop** - Click this button to disconnect this VPN connection.

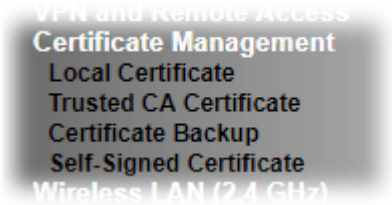
V-2 Certificate Management

A digital certificate is an electronic document issued by a certification authority (CA) to an entity to prove ownership of a public key. It contains identifying information including the issued-to party's name, a serial number, expiration dates etc., and the digital signature of the certificate-issuing authority so that a recipient can verify that the certificate is real. Vigor router supports digital certificates that conform to the X.509 standard.

In this section, you can generate and manage local digital certificates, and import trusted CA certificates. Be sure that the system time is correct on the router so that certificates will not be erroneously considered to be invalid because of an incorrect system time falling outside of the certificate's valid time period. The easiest way to accomplish this is by periodically synchronizing the system time to a Network Time Protocol (NTP) server.

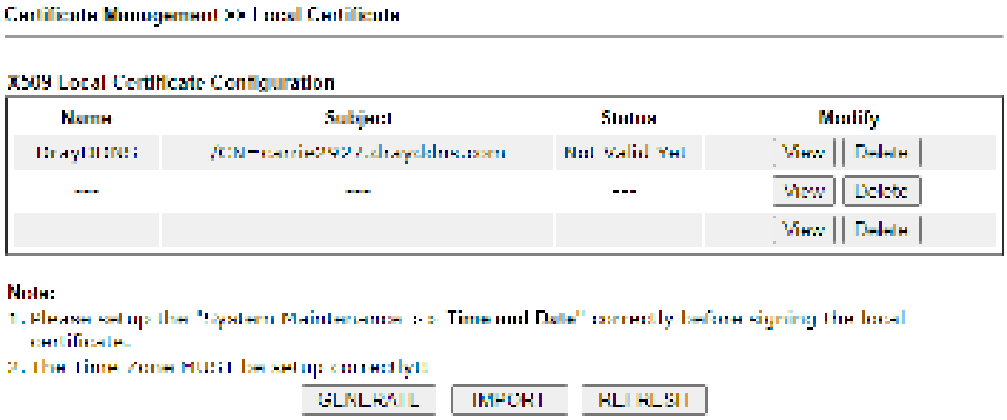
The image below shows the menu items for Certificate Management.

Web User Interface



V-2-1 Local Certificate

You can generate, import or view local certificates on this page.



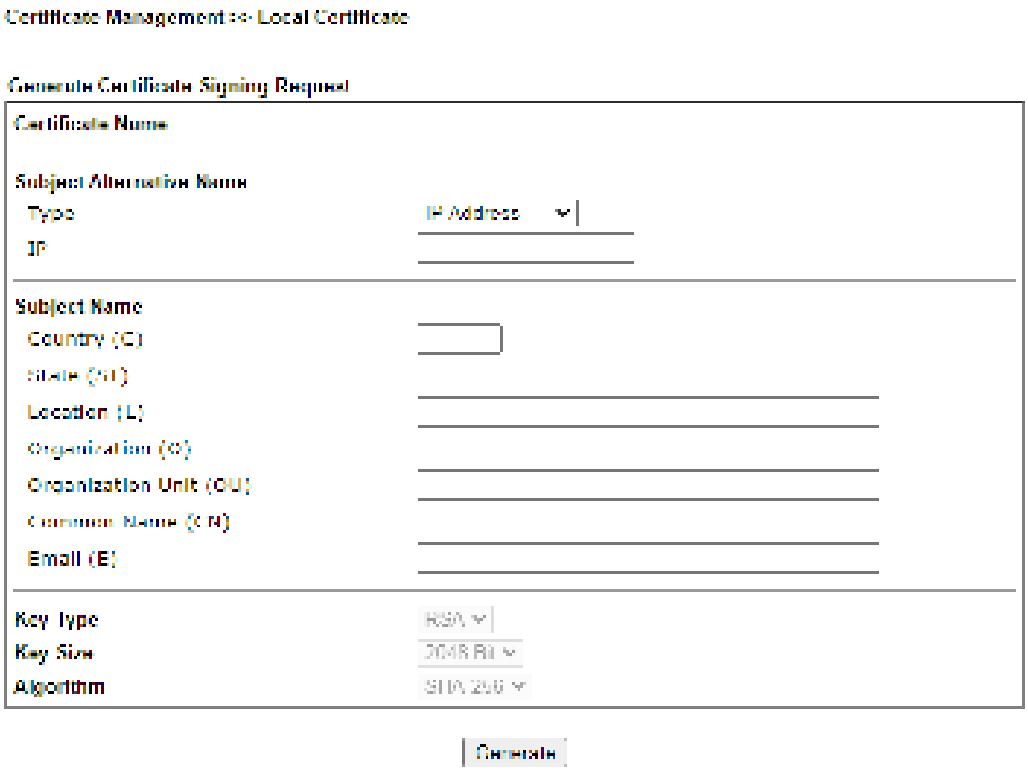
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Name	Displays the Name that identifies the certificate.
Subject	Displays the Subject Name entries of the certificate.
Status	Displays the status of the certificate.
Modify	**View** – Click to view details about the certificate. A screen that looks like the following will be displayed, showing the Subject Name, Subject Alternative Name, and the certificate content. **Delete** – Click to remove the certificate.

Generate	Click to fill out details about a certificate, and start the generation process.
Import	Click to update an existing certificate.
Refresh	Click to refresh the page to display the latest certificate information.

GENERATE

Use this screen to submit a request to your root CA to generate a certificate.

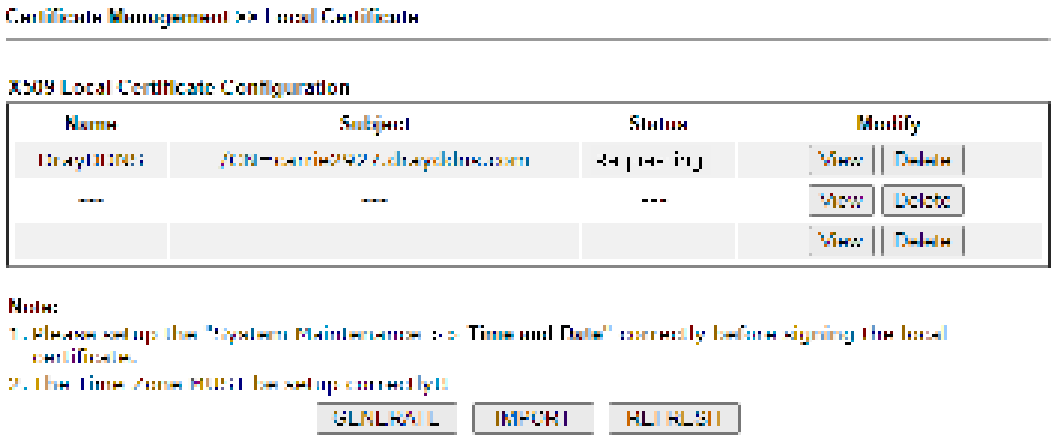


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Certificate Name	Name that identifies the certificate.
Type	Select the type (IP address, Domain name, E-mail or None) of Subject Alternative Name and enter its value.
Country (C)	Country in which your organization is located.
State (ST)	State or province where your organization is located.
Location (L)	City where your organization is located.
Organization (O)	Legal name of your organization.
Organization Unit (OU)	Department within your organization that you wish to be associated with this certificate.
Common Name (CN)	Fully-qualified domain name / WAN IP that will be used to reach your server.
Email (E)	Email address of the entry.
Key Type	Key type is hard set to RSA.

Key Size	Choose between 1024 and 2048 bit.
Algorithm	Choose between SHA-1 and SHA-256.
Generate	Click to submit generate request to the CA server.

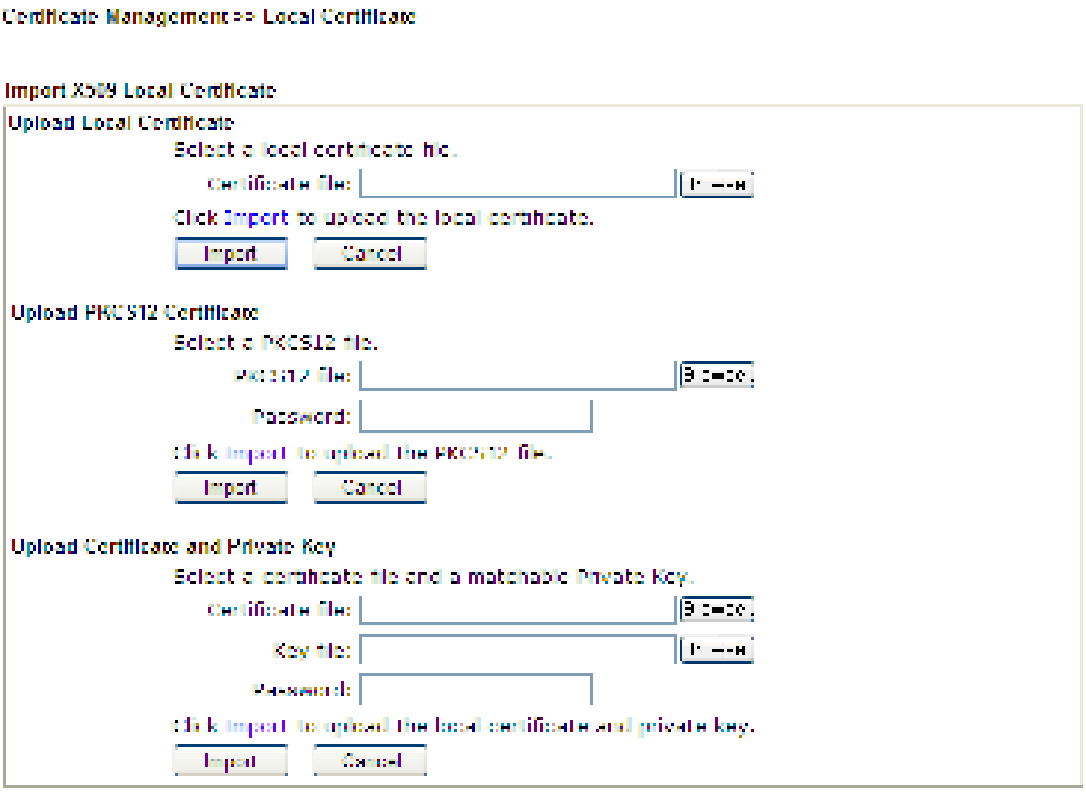
After clicking the **Generate** button, you will be taken back to the main Local Certificate screen, showing the certificate request in progress:



IMPORT

Vigor router allows you to generate a certificate request and submit it the CA server, then import it as “Local Certificate”. If you have already gotten a certificate from a third party, you may import it directly. The supported types are PKCS12 Certificate and Certificate with a private key.

Click this button to import a saved file as the certification information. There are three types of local certificate supported by Vigor router.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Upload Local Certificate	**Certificate file -** Click **Browse** to select a local certificate file. **Import -** Click to import selected certificate file to router. **Cancel -** Click to return to the main Local Certificate screen. If you have done well in certificate generation, the Status of the certificate will be shown as "**OK**".
Upload PKCS12 Certificate	It allows users to import the certificate whose extensions are usually .pfx or .p12. And these certificates usually need passwords. Note that PKCS12 is a standard for storing private keys and certificates securely. It is used in (among other things) Netscape and Microsoft Internet Explorer with their import and export options. **PKCS12 file** - Click **Browse** to select a PKCS12 certificate file. **Password** - Enter the password associated with the certificate and key files. **Import** - Click to import selected certificate file to router. **Cancel** - Click to return to the main Local Certificate screen.
Upload Certificate and Private Key	It is useful when users have separated certificates and private keys. And the password is needed if the private key is encrypted. **Certificate file -** Click **Browse** to select a local certificate file. **Key file** - Click **Browse** to select a key file. **Password** - Enter the password associated with the certificate and key files. **Import -** Click to import selected certificate file to router. **Cancel -** Click to return to the main Local Certificate screen.

V-2-2 Trusted CA Certificate

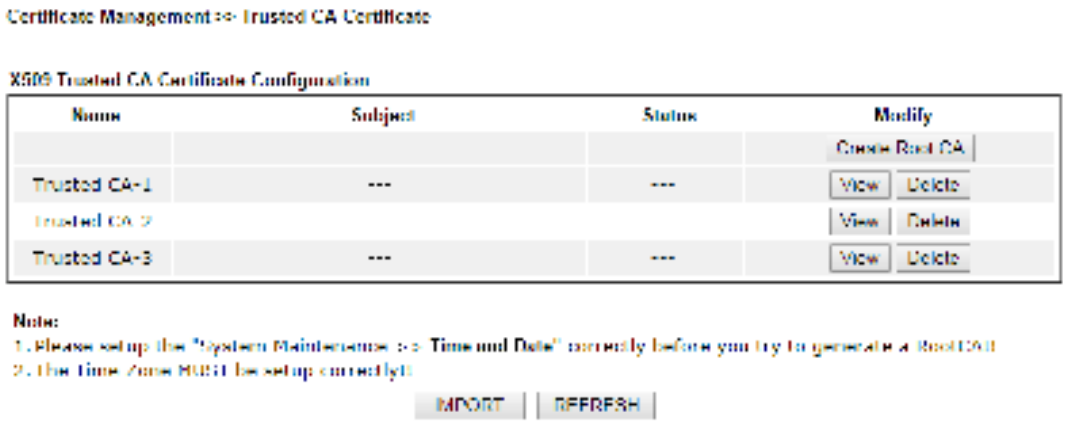
Trusted CA certificate lists three sets of trusted CA certificate. In addition, you can build a RootCA certificate if required.

When the local client and remote client are required to make certificate authentication (e.g., IPsec X.509) for data passing through SSL tunnel and avoiding the attack of MITM, a trusted root certificate authority (Root CA) will be used to authenticate the digital certificates offered by both ends.

However, the procedure of applying digital certificate from a trusted root certificate authority is complicated and time-consuming. Therefore, Vigor router offers a mechanism which allows you to generate root CA to save time and provide convenience for general user. Later, such root CA generated by DrayTek server can perform the issuing of local certificate.

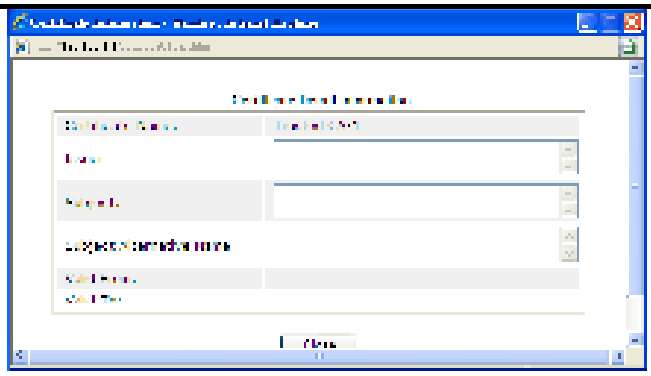
Info	Root CA can be deleted but not edited. If you want to modify the settings for a Root CA, please delete the one and create another one by clicking Create Root CA.

You can create, import and view root and trusted certificate authority certificates on this screen.



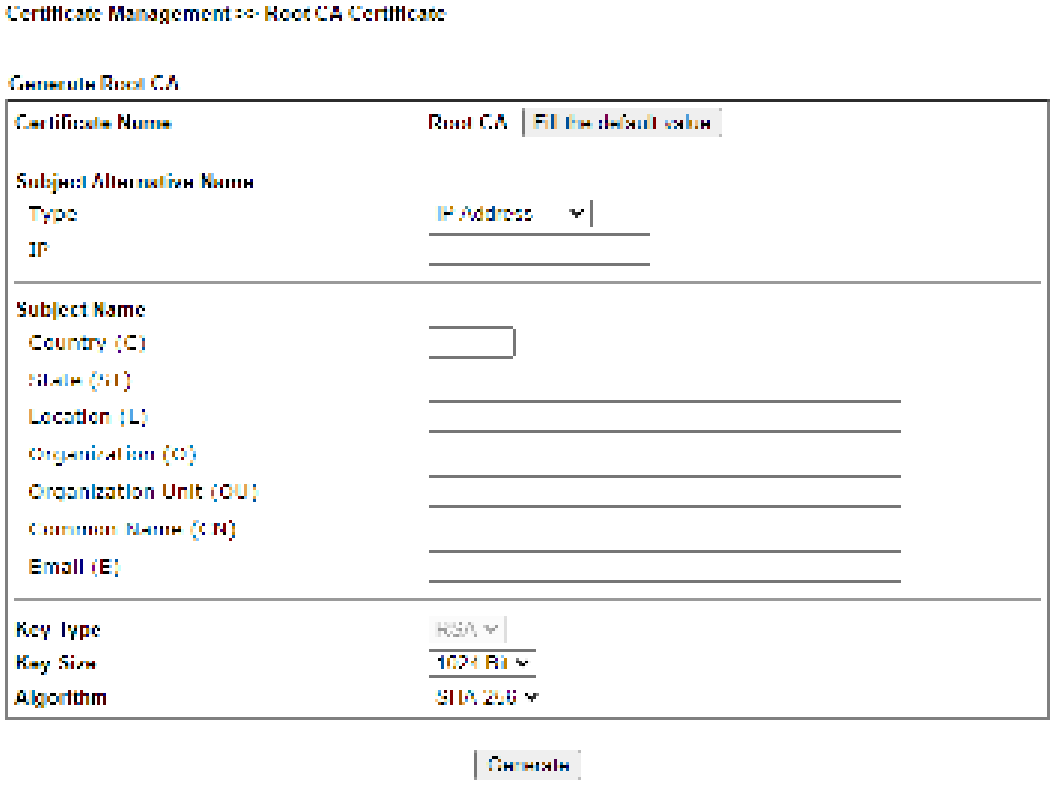
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Create Root CA	Click to create a new root CA.
Name	Name that identifies the certificate.
Subject	Shows the Subject Name of the certificate.
Status	Displays the status of the certificate.
Modify	**Create Root CA** – Click to fill out details about a certificate, and start the generation process. **View** – Click to view details of the certificate.

	 **Delete** – Click to delete the certificate.
Import	Click to import an existing certificate.
Refresh	Click to refresh the page to display the latest certificate information.

Creating a Root CA

Click **Create Root CA** to open the following page.



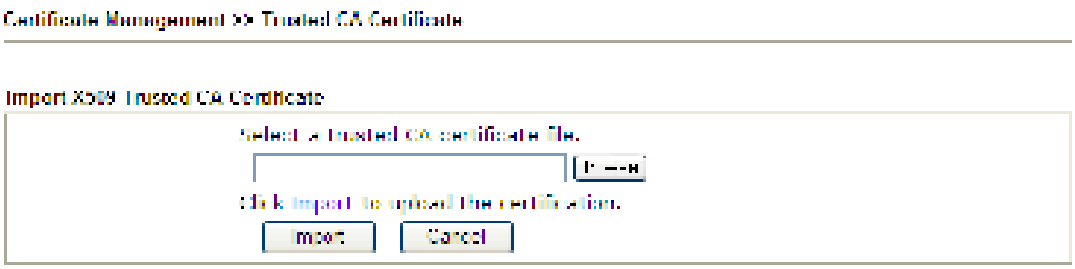
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Certificate Name	Display the name of root CA. **Fill the default value** - Click to enter the default value for this Root CA.
Type	Select the type of Subject Alternative Name and enter its value.
Country (C)	Country in which your organization is located.
State (ST)	State or province where your organization is located.

Location (L)	City where your organization is located.
Organization (O)	Legal name of your organization.
Organization Unit (OU)	Department within your organization that you wish to be associated with this certificate.
Common Name (CN)	Fully-qualified domain name / WAN IP that will be used to reach your server.
Email (E)	Email address of the entry.
Key Type	Key type is hard set to RSA.
Key Size	Choose between 1024 and 2048 bit.
Algorithm	Choose between SHA-1 and SHA-256.
Generate	Click to submit generate request to the CA server.

Importing a Trusted CA

To import a pre-saved trusted CA certificate, please click **IMPORT** to open the following window.

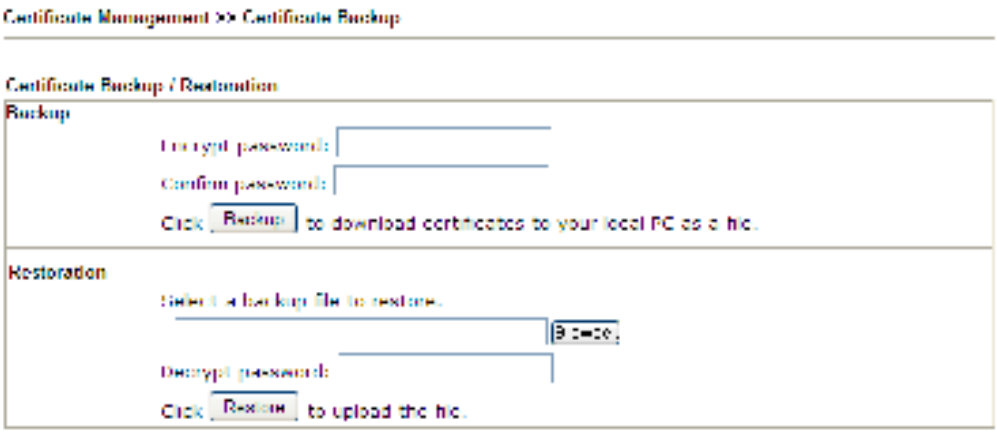


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Browse	Click Browse to select a CA certificate file.
Import	Click to import selected certificate file to router. The one you imported will be listed on the Trusted CA Certificate window.
Cancel	Click to return to the main Trusted CA Certificate screen.

V-2-3 Certificate Backup

You can back up Local and Trusted CA certificates on the router to a file.



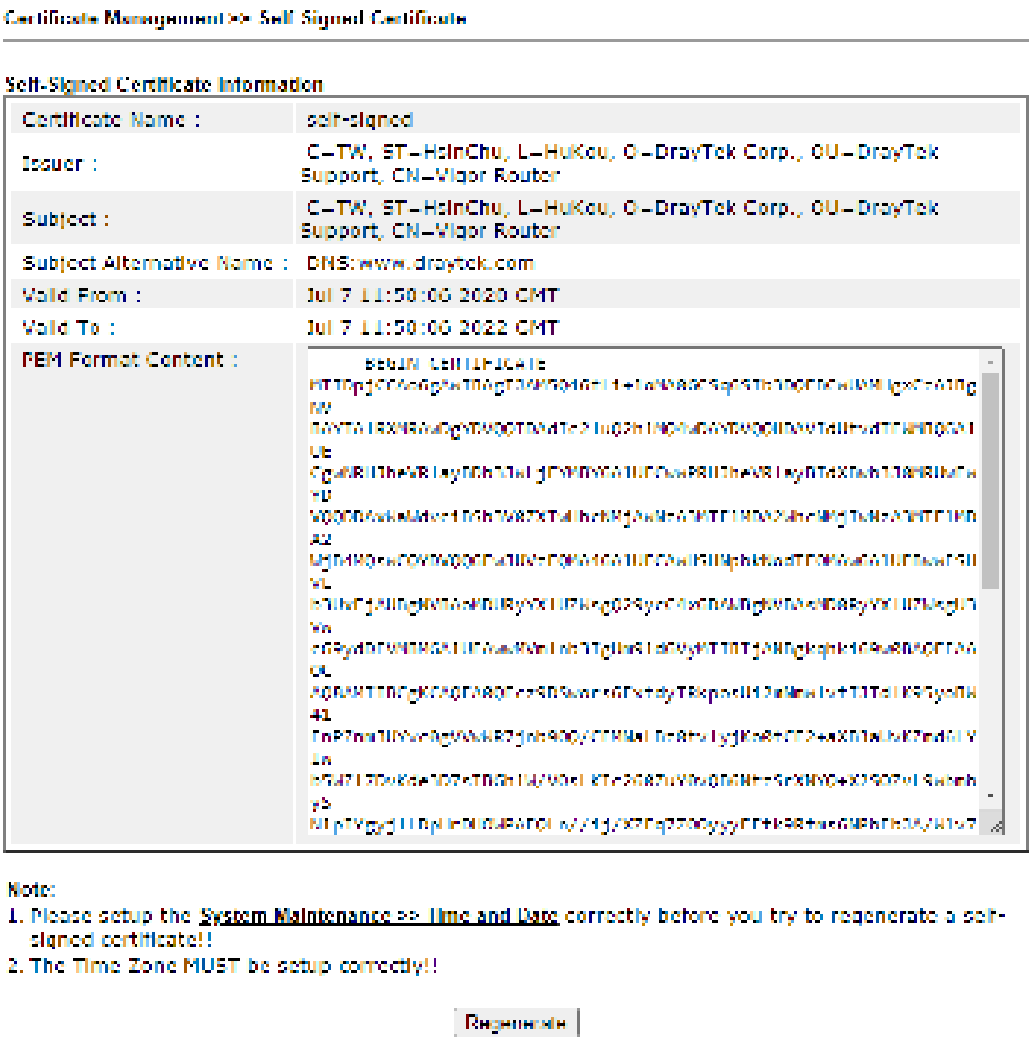
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Backup	
Encrypt password/Confirm password	Enter the password with which you wish to encrypt the certificate.
Backup	Click to download the certificate.
Restoration	
Select a backup file to restore	Click Browse to select the backup file you wish to restore.
Decrypt password	Enter the password that was used to encrypt the certificates.
Restore	Click to retrieve the certificate.

V-2-4 Self-Signed Certificate

A self-signed certificate is a *unique* identification for the device (e.g., Vigor router) which generates the certificate by itself to ensure the router security. Such self-signed certificate is signed with its own private key.

The self-signed certificate will be applied in SSL VPN, HTTPS, and so on. In addition, it can be created for free by using a wide variety of tools.



Click **Regenerate** to open the Regenerate Self-Signed Certificate window. Enter all requested information including certificate name (used to differentiate different certificates), subject alternative name type and relational settings for subject name. Then click GENERATE.

Part VI Security

While the broadband users demand more bandwidth for multimedia, interactive applications, or distance learning, security has been always the most concerned. The firewall of the Vigor router helps to protect your local network against attack from unauthorized outsiders. It also restricts users in the local network from accessing the Internet.

CSM is an abbreviation of Central Security Management which is used to control IM/P2P usage, filter the web content and URL content to reach a goal of security management.

VI-1 Firewall

Basic

A network firewall monitors traffic travelling between networks, with the ability to selectively allow or block traffic using a predefined set of security rules. This helps to maintain the integrity of networks by stopping unauthorized access and the exchange of sensitive information.

Firewall Facilities

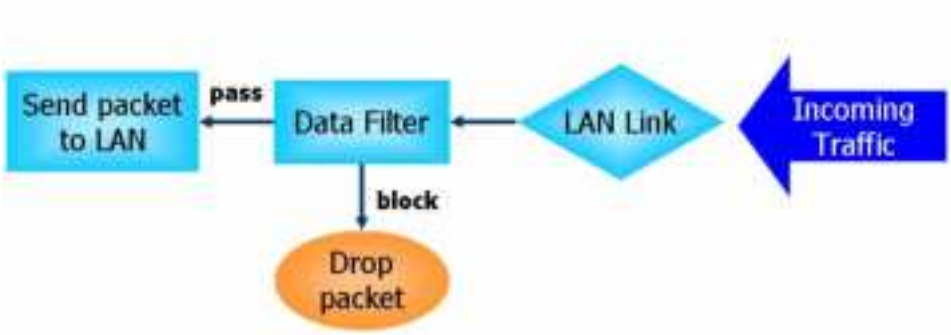
LAN users are provided with secured protection by the following firewall facilities:

- User-configurable IP filter (Data Filter).
- Stateful Packet Inspection (SPI): tracks packets and denies unsolicited incoming data
- Selectable Denial of Service (DoS) /Distributed DoS (DDoS) attacks protection

Data Filter

All traffic, both incoming and outgoing, that does not trigger a PPP connection attempt (either because a PPP connection is not necessary, or the required PPP connection has already been established) is checked against the Data Filter, and will be allowed or blocked according to the rules configured within.

The following flowcharts show how the router treats incoming traffic and outgoing traffic respectively.



Stateful Packet Inspection (SPI)

Stateful inspection is a firewall architecture that works at the network layer. Unlike legacy static packet filtering, which examines a packet based on the information in its header, stateful inspection builds up a state machine to track each connection traversing all interfaces of the firewall and makes sure they are valid. The stateful firewall of Vigor router not only examines the header information also monitors the state of the connection.

Denial of Service (DoS) Defense

DoS attacks are categorized into two types: flooding-type attacks and vulnerability attacks. Flooding-type attacks attempts to exhaust system resources while vulnerability attacks attempts to paralyze the system by exploiting vulnerabilities of protocols or operation systems.

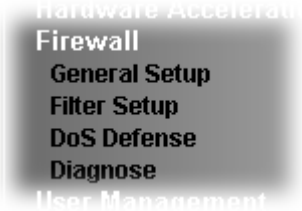
Vigor's DoS Defense functionality detects DoS attacks and mitigates their damage by inspecting every incoming packet, and malicious packets will be blocked. If Syslog is enabled, alert messages will also be sent. Abnormal traffic flow such as flood and port scan attacks that exceed allowable thresholds are also blocked.

The below shows the attack types that DoS/DDoS defense function can detect:

1. SYN flood attack
2. UDP flood attack
3. ICMP flood attack
4. Port Scan attack
5. IP options
6. Land attack
7. Smurf attack
8. Trace route
9. SYN fragment
10. Fraggle attack
11. TCP flag scan
12. Tear drop attack
13. Ping of Death attack
14. ICMP fragment
15. Unassigned Numbers

Web User Interface

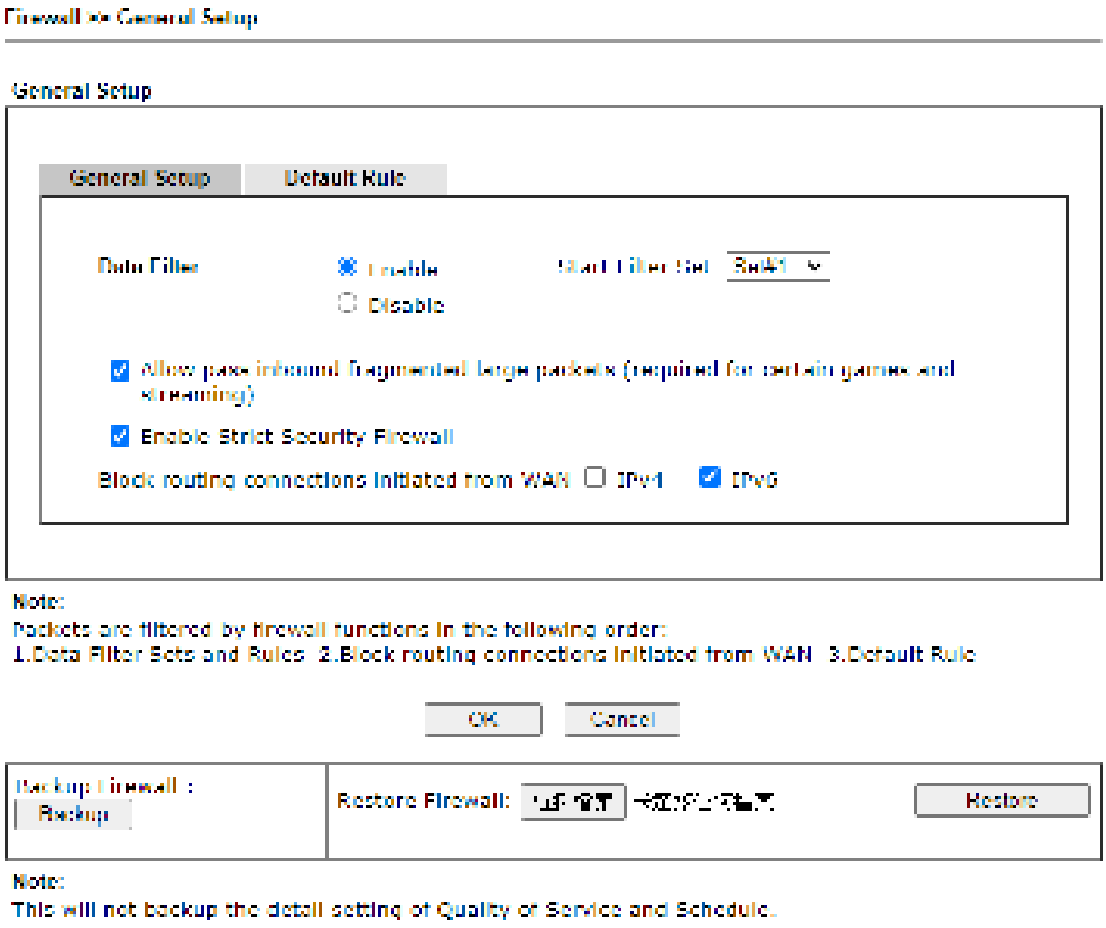
Below shows the menu items for Firewall.



VI-1-1 General Setup

General Setup Page

Such page allows you to enable / disable Data Filter, determine general rule for filtering the incoming and outgoing data.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Data Filter	Select **Enable** to activate the Data Filter function, and then choose a Start Filter Set.

Always pass inbound fragmented large packets	Certain games and video streaming service use fragmented UDP packets to transfer data. Enabling this option allows these applications to function properly. If this option is not enabled, the router will attempt to reassemble fragmented packets up to a certain value (e.g., 15xx~2102) kilobytes long. Packets larger than the certain value will be discarded. If this option is enabled, the router always passes fragmented packets without reassembling them, regardless of the size of the packet.
Enable Strict Security Firewall	If this option and the Web Content Filter (WCF) are both enabled, web traffic will be blocked if the WCF server fails to respond to lookup requests.
Block routing connections initiated from WAN	**IPv6** - IPv6 does not make use of Network Address Translation (NAT), so all LAN hosts receive public IPv6 IP addresses that are exposed to the WAN. Enable this option to block WAN hosts from connecting to LAN hosts using IPv6. **IPv4** - For LAN hosts receiving WAN IPv4 addresses using the IP routed subnet, enable this option to prevent WAN hosts from connecting to LAN hosts. This option has no effect on LAN hosts on private LAN subnets.
Backup Firewall	Click **Backup** to save the firewall configuration.
Restore Firewall	Click **Select** to choose a firewall configuration file. Then click **Restore** to apply the file.

To save changes on the page, click **OK**. To discard changes, click **Cancel**.

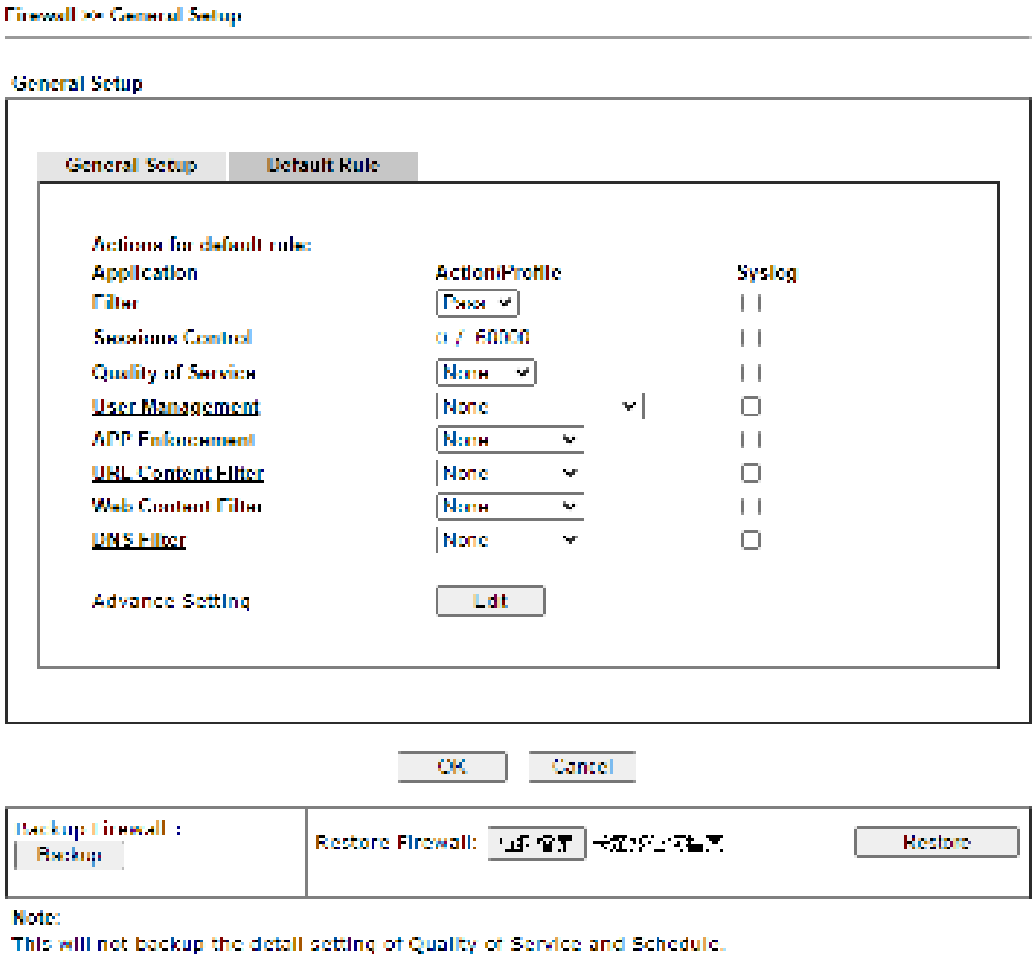
Traffic is filtered by firewall functions in the following order:

1. Data Filter Sets and Rules
2. Block connections initiated from WAN
3. Default Rule

Default Rule Page

Such page allows you to choose filtering profiles including QoS, Load-Balance policy, WCF, APP Enforcement, URL Content Filter, for data transmission via Vigor router.

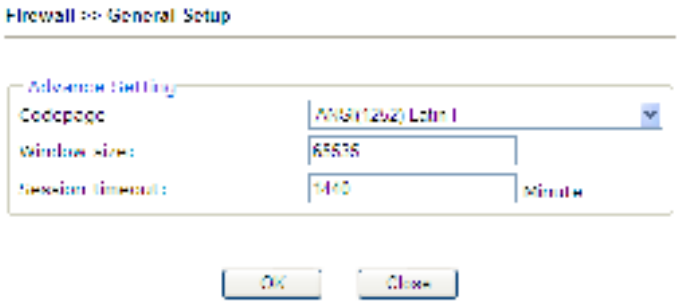
The default rule applies to all traffic that is not constrained by other filters or rules.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Filter	Select **Pass** or **Block** for the packets that do not match with the filter rules. When the setting is Block, all other fields on the page are disabled because they are not applicable.
Sessions Control	The current number of sessions is shown before the slash, followed by the maximum number of concurrent sessions allowed, which is configurable. The default maximum is 60000, which is also the upper limit of the value.
Quality of Service	Choose one of the QoS rules to be applied as firewall rule. For detailed information of setting QoS, please refer to the related section later.
User Management	This setting is only available when **Rule-Based** is selected in **User Management>>General Setup**. The default firewall rule will be applied to the selected user or user group. Refer to the chapter on User Management for more details on the feature. ● **None**: User Management does not apply to the default

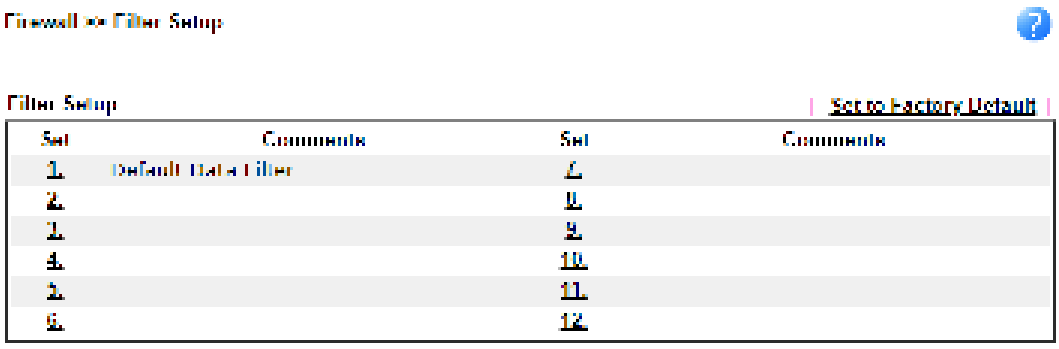
	rule. ● **User Object**: The default rule only applies to the selected user. ● [**Create New User**]: Select this to create a new user. ● User Group: The default rule only applies to the selected User Group. ● [**Create New Group**]: Select this to create a new user group. ● **ALL**: The default rule applies to all defined users. ● **Create New User** or **Create New Group** item will appear for you to click to create a new one if there is no user profile or group profile existed. **Syslog** - Select to allow User Management to log messages in Syslog.
APP Enforcement	Select an APP Enforcement profile for application blocking, or None to disable APP Enforcement for the Default Rule. Select **[Create New]** from the dropdown list to create a new profile. Refer to the chapter on APP Enforcement for more details on the feature. **Syslog** - Select to allow APP Enforcement to log messages in Syslog.
URL Content Filter	Select a URL Content Filter profile to be used, or None to disable URL Content Filter for the Default Rule. Select **[Create New]** from the dropdown list to create a new profile. Refer to the chapter on URL Content Filter for more details on the feature. **Syslog** - Select to allow URL Content Filter to log messages in Syslog. Logging action is configured at the profile level in CSM>>URL Content Filter Profile, Log.
Web Content Filter	Select a Web Content Filter profile to be used, or None to disable Web Content Filter for the Default Rule. Select **[Create New]** from the dropdown list to create a new profile. **Syslog** - Select to allow Web Content Filter to log messages in Syslog. Logging action is configured at the profile level in the Web Content Filter Profile Table section in CSM>>Web Content Filter Profile, Log.
DNS Filter	Select the DNS Filter profile to be used, or None to disable DNS Filter for the Default Rule. Select **[Create New]** from the dropdown list to create a new profile. **Syslog** - Select to allow DNS Filter to log messages in Syslog. Logging action is configured at the profile level in the DNS Filter Profile Table section in CSM>>DNS Filter Profile, SysLog.
Advance Setting	Click **Edit** to open the configuration window for Advanced Settings. However, it is **recommended** to use the default settings.

	 **Codepage** – Sets the codepage used by the URL content filter to match URLs against keywords in profiles. Choosing the appropriate codepage can increase the accuracy of the URL Content Filter. The default value is ANSI 1252 Latin I. If the setting is None, no decoding of URL will be performed. If you are unsure of which codepage to use, please start the Syslog application, and the recommended codepage will be shown in the Codepage Information tab in the Setup dialog box. **Window size** – Sets the TCP window size as described in RFC 1323. Valid values are from 0 to 65535. The more the value is, the better the performance will be. However, if the network is not stable, small value will be proper. **Session timeout** – Sets the timeout sessions are allowed to idle before they are removed from the system.
Backup Firewall	Click **Backup** to save the firewall configuration.
Restore Firewall	Click **Select** to choose a firewall configuration file. Then click **Restore** to apply the file.

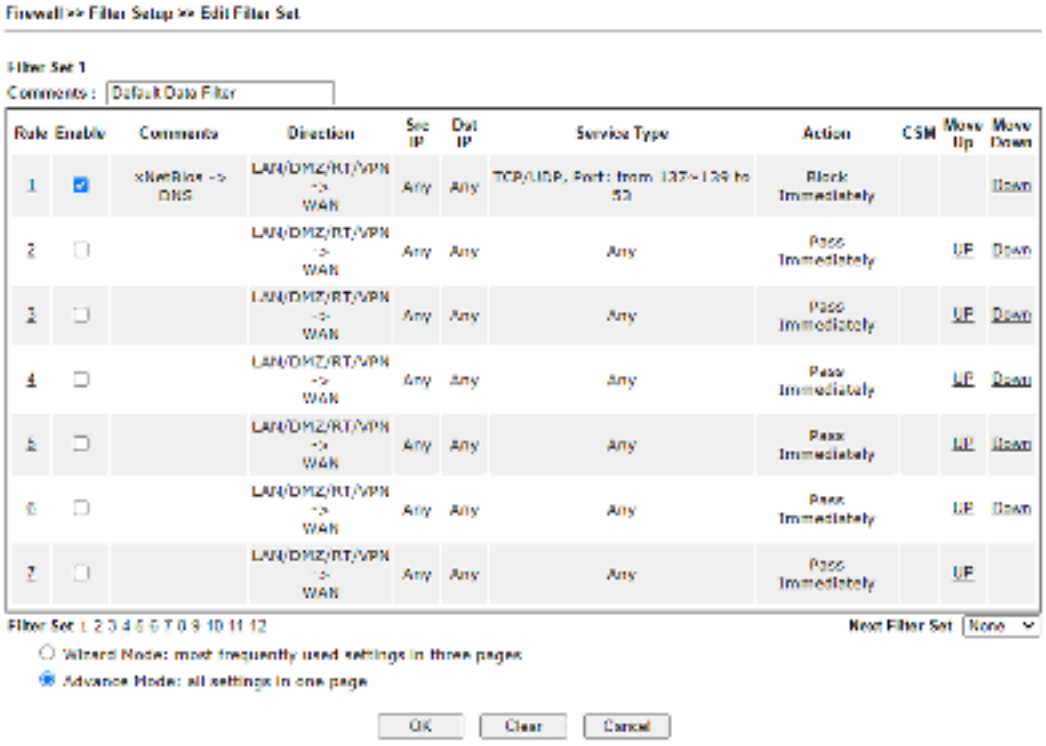
After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

VI-1-2 Filter Setup

Click **Firewall** and click **Filter Setup** to bring up the setup page.



To edit a filter set, click on its set number. The following Filter Set page will be shown. Each filter set contains up to 7 rules.



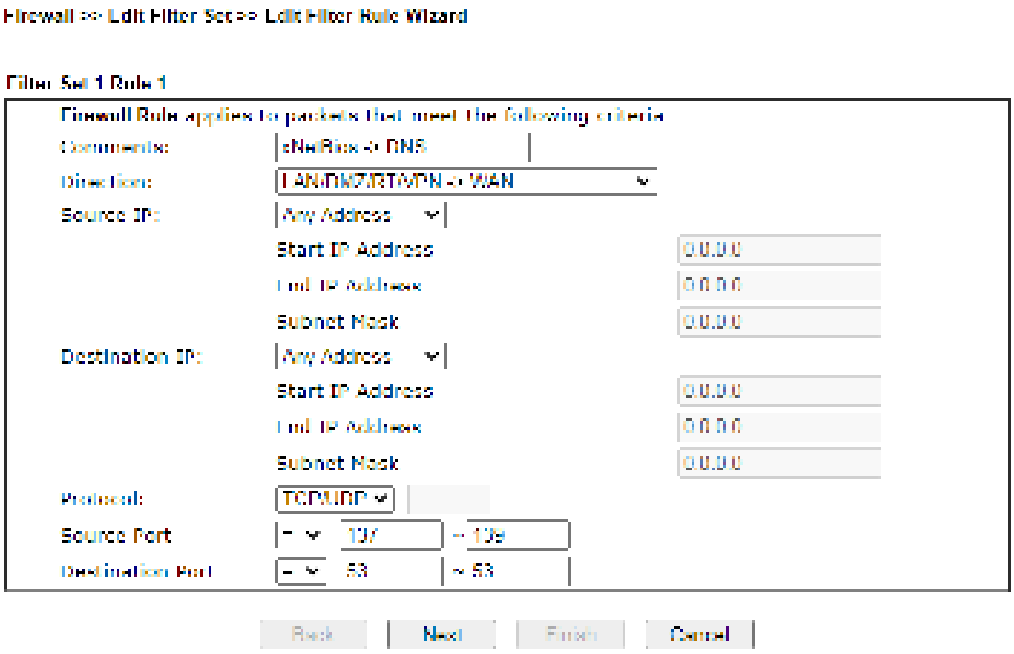
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Filter Rule	To edit the filter rule, click the filter rule number to bring up the Edit Filter Rule page. See the following section for details on the Edit Filter Rule page.
Enable	Select to enable the filter rule.
Comments	Optional comment entered in the settings page to identify the rule.
Direction	Displays the direction of packet.
Src IP / Dst IP	Displays the IP address of source /destination.
Service Type	Displays the type and port number of the packet.

Action	Displays the packets to be passed /blocked.
CSM	Displays the content security managed
Move Up/Down	Use **Up** or **Down** link to change the order of the filter rules.
Next Filter Set	Select the filter set for the firewall to process after the current filter set, or None if the current filter set is the last one to be processed. Be careful not to create a loop when setting next filter sets.
Wizard Mode	Allow to configure frequently used settings for filter rule via several setting pages.
Advance Mode	Allow to configure detailed settings of filter rule.

To use Wizard Mode, simple do the following steps:

1. Click the **Wizard Mode** radio button.
2. Click **Index 1**. The setting page will appear as follows:

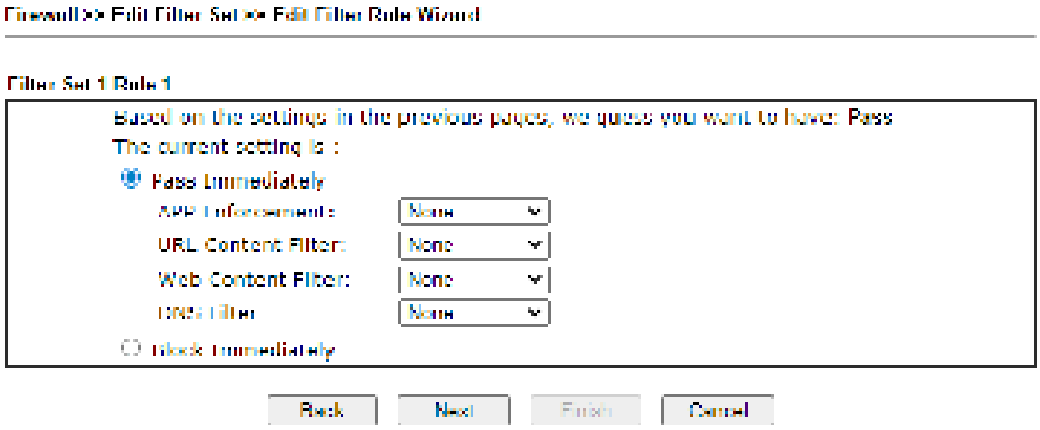


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Comments	Enter filter set comments/description. Maximum length is 14- character long.
Direction	Set the direction of packet flow. **Note:** RT means routing domain for 2nd subnet or other LAN.
Source/Destination IP	To set the IP address manually, please choose **Any Address**/**Single Address**/**Range Address**/**Subnet Address** as the Address Type and Enter them in this dialog.
Protocol	Specify the protocol(s) which this filter rule will apply to.

Source Port / Destination Port	***(=)*** – when the first and last value are the same, it indicates one port; when the first and last values are different, it indicates a range for the port and available for this service type. ***(!=)*** – when the first and last value are the same, it indicates all the ports except the port defined here; when the first and last values are different, it indicates that all the ports except the range defined here are available for this service type. ***(>)*** – the port number greater than this value is available. ***(<)*** – the port number less than this value is available for this profile.

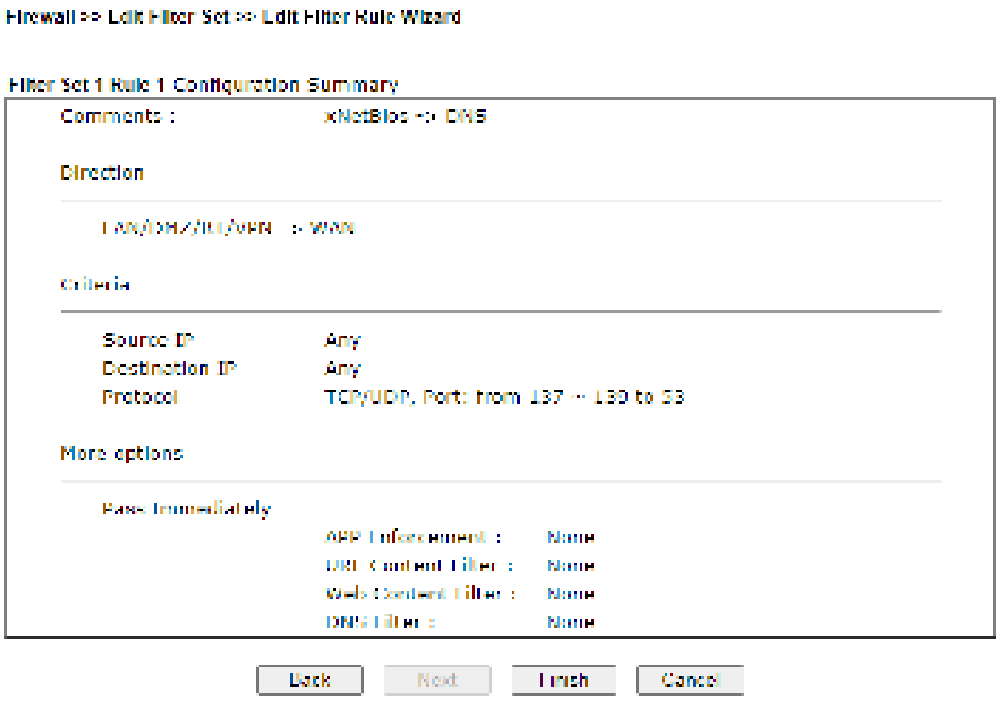
3. Click **Next** to get the following page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Pass Immediately	Packets matching the rule will be passed immediately. **APP Enforcement -** Select an APP Enforcement profile for application blocking, or None to disable APP Enforcement for the Default Rule. Select **[Create New]** from the dropdown list to create a new profile. Refer to the chapter on APP Enforcement for more details on the feature. **URL Content Filter -** Select a URL Content Filter profile to be used, or None to disable URL Content Filter for the Default Rule. Select **[Create New]** from the dropdown list to create a new profile. Refer to the chapter on URL Content Filter for more details on the feature. **Web Content Filter -** Select a Web Content Filter profile to be used, or None to disable Web Content Filter for the Default Rule. Select **[Create New]** from the dropdown list to create a new profile. **DNS Filter -** Select the DNS Filter profile to be used, or None to disable DNS Filter for the Default Rule. Select **[Create New]** from the dropdown list to create a new profile.
Block Immediately	Packets matching the rule will be dropped immediately.

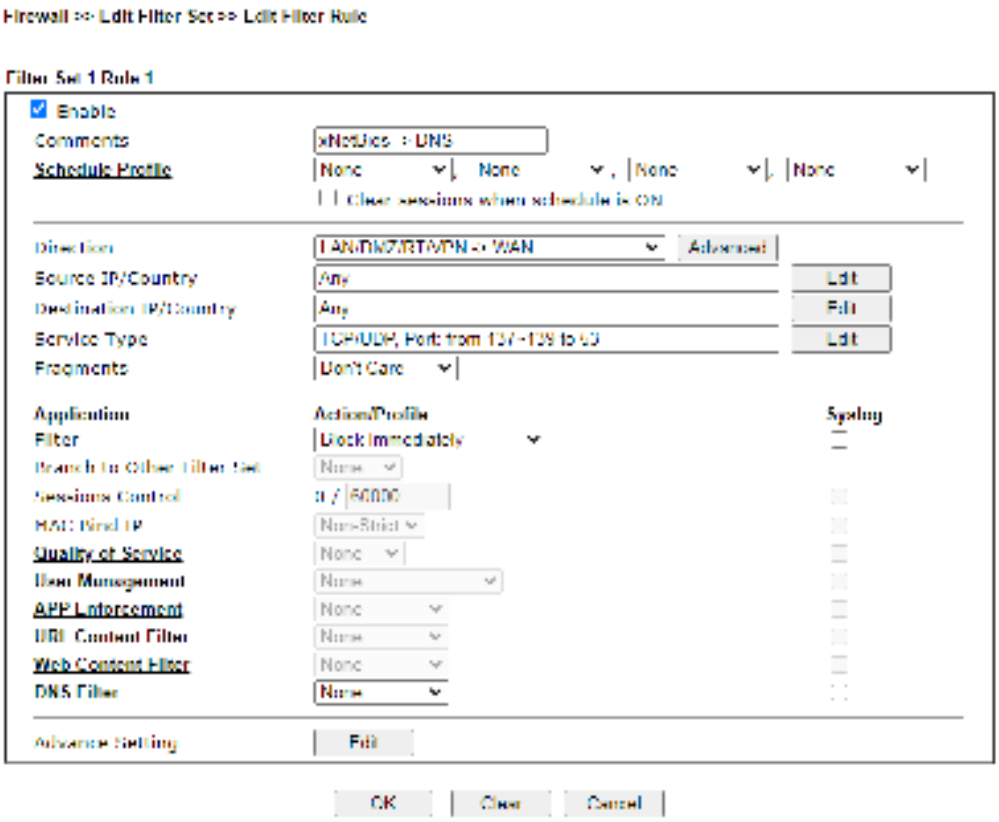
4. After choosing the mechanism, click **Next** to get the summary page for reference.



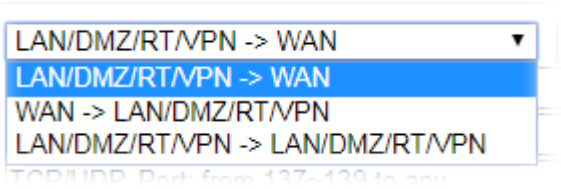
5. If there is no error, click **Finish** to complete wizard setting.

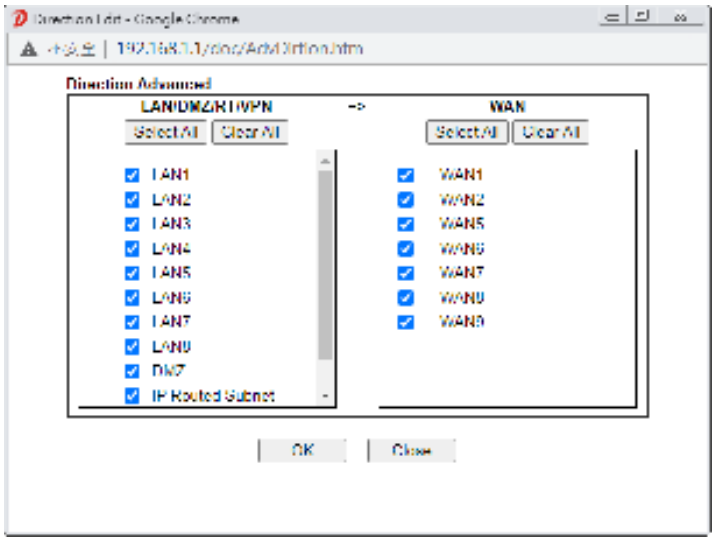
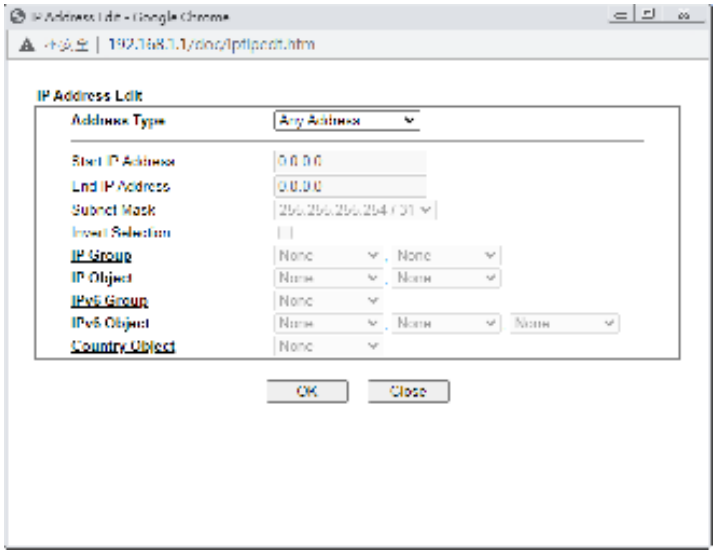
To use **Advance** Mode, do the following steps:

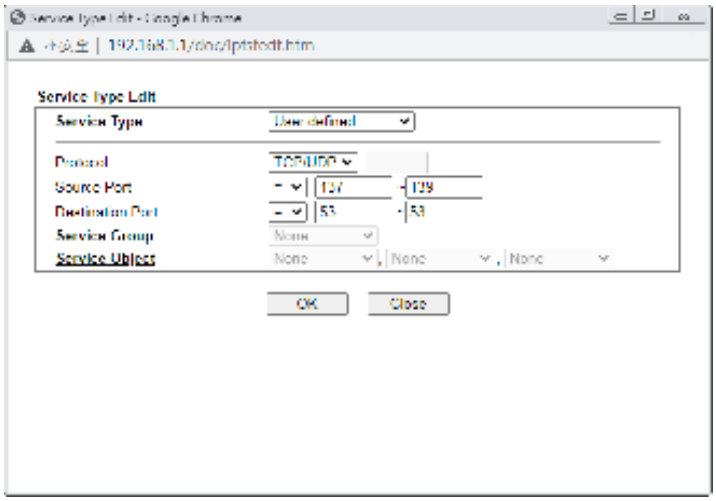
1. Click the **Advance Mode** radio button.
2. Click **Index 1** to access into the following page.



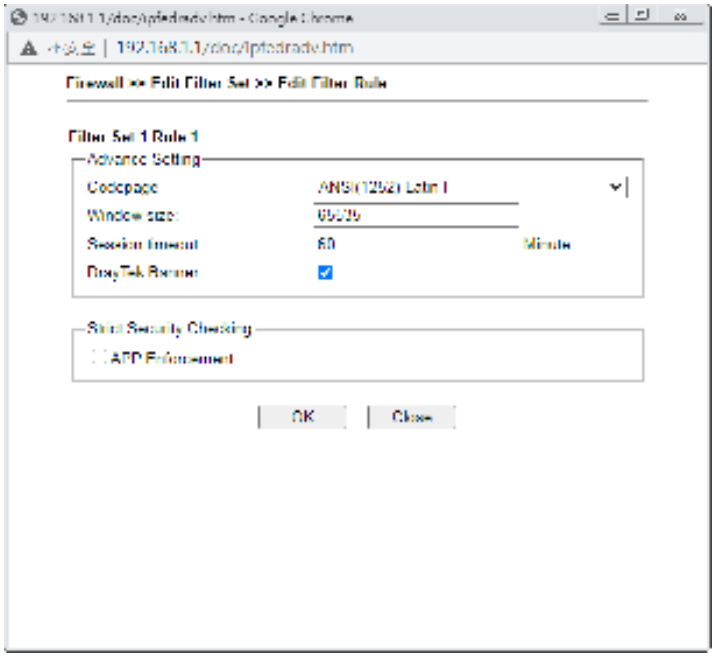
Available settings are explained as follows:

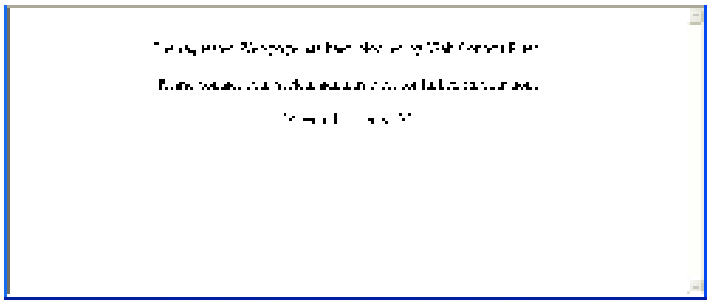
Item	Description
Enable	Check this box to enable the filter rule.
Comments	Enter filter set comments/description. Maximum length is 14- character long.
Schedule Profile	Select Schedule indexes to allow the rule to be enabled at specific times. You may choose up to 4 out of the 15 schedules in Applications >> Schedule. The rule is always enabled when no indexes have been selected.
Clear sessions when schedule ON	Select this option to clear existing sessions when the rule is changes is enabled by a schedule profile. All connections will be reset.
Direction	Specify the direction of traffic flow to which this filter rule applies.  **Note:** RT stands for the routing domain for 2nd subnet or other LAN.

	Advanced - After choosing the direction, click the Advanced button to specify interfaces for traffic flow. 
Source IP/ Country and Destination IP / Country	Click **Edit** to bring up the following dialog box to configure the source and destination IP addresses or country objects.  To set the IP address manually, please choose an Address Type and enter required information. **Address Type** – Select from one of the following: ● **Any Address** – All IP addresses ● **Single Address** – Enter one IP address in Start IP address ● **Range Address** – Enter the Start and End IP Addresses ● **Subnet Address** – Enter the Start IP Address and the Subnet Mask. Example: Start IP Address 192.168.1.1 and Subnet Mask 255.255.255.128 means is the same as having the Start IP Address as 192.168.1.1 and the End IP Address as 192.168.1.127. ● **Group and Objects** – Allows selection of predefined IP Groups and IP Objects. For details on IP Groups and Objects, see the chapter on Objects Setting. ● **Country Object** - Allows selection of predefined country objects.
Service Type	Click **Edit** to bring up the following dialog box to configure

	the Service Type.  **Service Type** - To set the service type manually, please choose **User defined** as the Service Type. ● **User defined** – Configure the protocol, source and destination ports manually. ● **Group and Objects** – Select preconfigured Service Groups or Objects. **Protocol -** Specify the protocol(s) which this filter rule will apply to. **Source/Destination Port –** ● (=) – any port that falls within the specified range ● (!=) – any port that falls outside of the specified range ● (>) – a port whose number is greater than the specified value ● (<) – a port whose number is smaller than the specified value **Service Group/Object** - Use the drop down list to select the desired Service Groups or Objects.
Fragments	Action to be taken for fragmented packets. This option is valid for **Data Filter** rules only. ● **Don't care** –No action will be taken towards fragmented packets. ● **Unfragmented** –Apply the rule to unfragmented packets. ● **Fragmented** – Apply the rule to fragmented packets. ● **Too Short** – Apply the rule only to packets that are too short to contain a complete header.
Filter	Action to be taken when packets match the rule. **Block Immediately** – Packets matching the rule will be dropped immediately. **Pass Immediately** – Packets matching the rule will be passed immediately. **Block If No Further Match** – Block the packet if this the last matching rule for this packet in the filter. **Pass If No Further Match** – Pass the packet if this is the last matching rule for this packet in the filter.
Branch to other Filter Set	If the packet matches the filter rule, and the Filter action is **Block If No Further Match** or **Pass If No Further Match**, you

	can specify the next filter set to be applied, thus skipping the rest of the rules in the current filter set.
Sessions Control	The current number of sessions is shown before the slash, followed by the maximum number of concurrent sessions allowed, which is configurable. The default maximum is 60000, which is also the upper limit of the value.
MAC Bind IP	**Strict** – Ensure that both the MAC address and the IP address of the source and/or destination clients. **Non-Strict** – Do not check the IP address when processing IP Objects that specify MAC addresses.
Quality of Service	Choose one of the QoS rules to be applied as firewall rule. For detailed information of setting QoS, please refer to the related section later.
User Management	This setting is only available when **Rule-Based** is selected in **User Management>>General Setup**. The default firewall rule will be applied to the selected user or user group. Refer to the chapter on User Management for more details on the feature. ● **None**: User Management does not apply to the default rule. ● **User Object**: The default rule only applies to the selected user. ● [**Create New User**]: Select this to create a new user. ● User Group: The default rule only applies to the selected User Group. ● [**Create New Group**]: Select this to create a new user group. ● **ALL**: The default rule applies to all defined users. ● **Create New User** or **Create New Group** item will appear for you to click to create a new one if there is no user profile or group profile existed. **Syslog** - Select to allow User Management to log messages in Syslog.
APP Enforcement	Select an APP Enforcement profile for application blocking, or None to disable APP Enforcement for the Default Rule. Select **[Create New]** from the dropdown list to create a new profile. Refer to the chapter on APP Enforcement for more details on the feature. **Syslog** - Select to allow APP Enforcement to log messages in Syslog.
URL Content Filter	Select a URL Content Filter profile to be used, or None to disable URL Content Filter for the Default Rule. Select **[Create New]** from the dropdown list to create a new profile. Refer to the chapter on URL Content Filter for more details on the feature. **Syslog** - Select to allow URL Content Filter to log messages in Syslog. Logging action is configured at the profile level in CSM>>URL Content Filter Profile, Log.
Web Content Filter	Select a Web Content Filter profile to be used, or None to disable Web Content Filter for the Default Rule. Select **[Create New]** from the dropdown list to create a new profile. **Syslog** - Select to allow Web Content Filter to log messages in Syslog. Logging action is configured at the profile level in

	the Web Content Filter Profile Table section in CSM>>Web Content Filter Profile, Log.
DNS Filter	Select the DNS Filter profile to be used, or None to disable DNS Filter for the Default Rule. Select **[Create New]** from the dropdown list to create a new profile. **Syslog** - Select to allow DNS Filter to log messages in Syslog. Logging action is configured at the profile level in the DNS Filter Profile Table section in CSM>>DNS Filter Profile, SysLog.
Advance Setting	Click **Edit** to open the configuration window for Advanced Settings. However, it is recommended to use the default settings.  **Codepage** – Sets the codepage used by the URL content filter to match URLs against keywords in profiles. Choosing the appropriate codepage can increase the accuracy of the URL Content Filter. The default value is ANSI 1252 Latin I. If the setting is None, no decoding of URL will be performed. If you are unsure of which codepage to use, please start the Syslog application, and the recommended codepage will be shown in the Codepage Information tab in the Setup dialog box. **Window size** – Sets the TCP window size as described in RFC 1323. Valid values are from 0 to 65535. The more the

	value is, the better the performance will be. However, if the network is not stable, small value will be proper. **Session timeout** – Sets the timeout sessions are allowed to idle before they are removed from the system. **DrayTek Banner** – Select to display the following screen for web pages that are blocked by the Firewall. The default setting is Enabled.  **Strict Security Checking** **APP Enforcement** – If this option is selected, when the router cannot identify the application that generated the outbound traffic due to limited system resources, the session will be blocked; if this option is not selected, the session will be allowed.

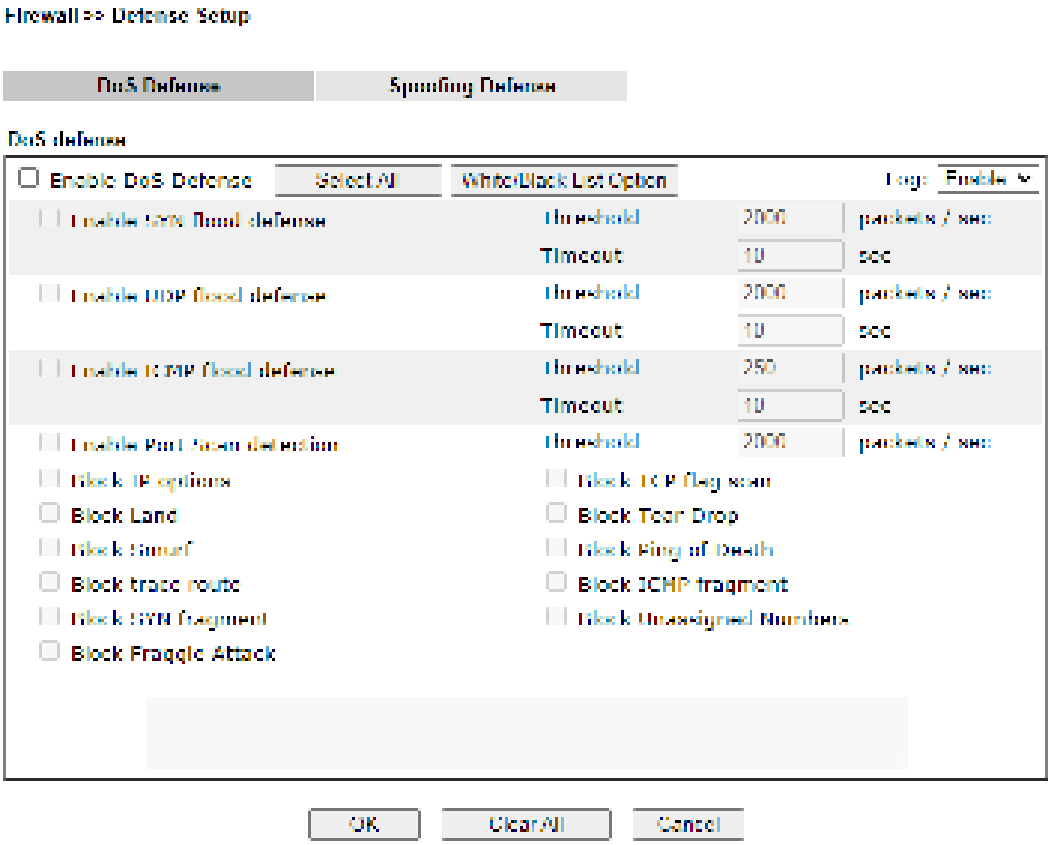
3. When you finish the configuration, please click **OK** to save and exit this page.

VI-1-3 Defense Setup

As a sub-functionality of IP Filter/Firewall, there are 15 types of detect/ defense function in the **DoS Defense** setup. The DoS Defense functionality is disabled for default.

VI-1-3-1 DoS Defense

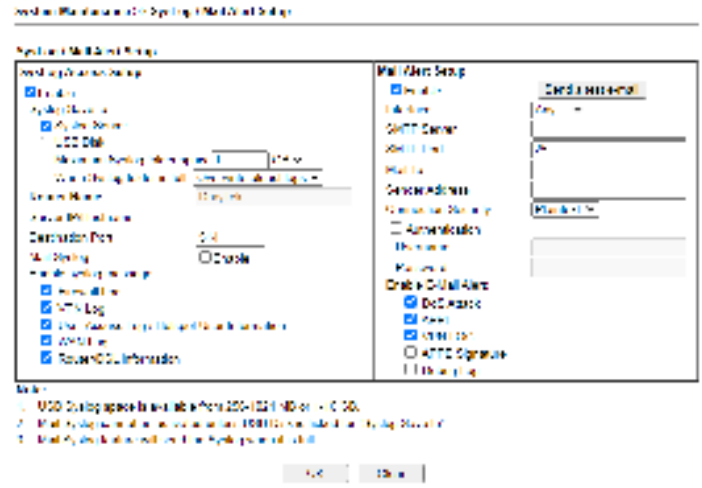
To configure DoS Defense, select DoS Defense under the Firewall menu item on the Web UI menu bar.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable Dos Defense	Select to enable DoS Defense. **Select All -** Click to select all DoS Defense options. **White/Black List Option** – Set white/black list of IPv4/IPv6 address.
Enable SYN flood defense	Select to enable SYN flood defense. When the arrival rate of SYN packets exceeds the Threshold value, the router will start to randomly discard TCP SYN packets for a period of time as defined in Timeout. This is to prevent TCP SYN packets from exhausting router resources. The default values of threshold and timeout are 2000 packets per second and 10 seconds, respectively.
Enable UDP flood defense	Select to enable UDP flood defense. When the arrival rate of UDP packets exceeds the Threshold value, the router will start to randomly discard TCP SYN packets for a period of time as defined in Timeout.

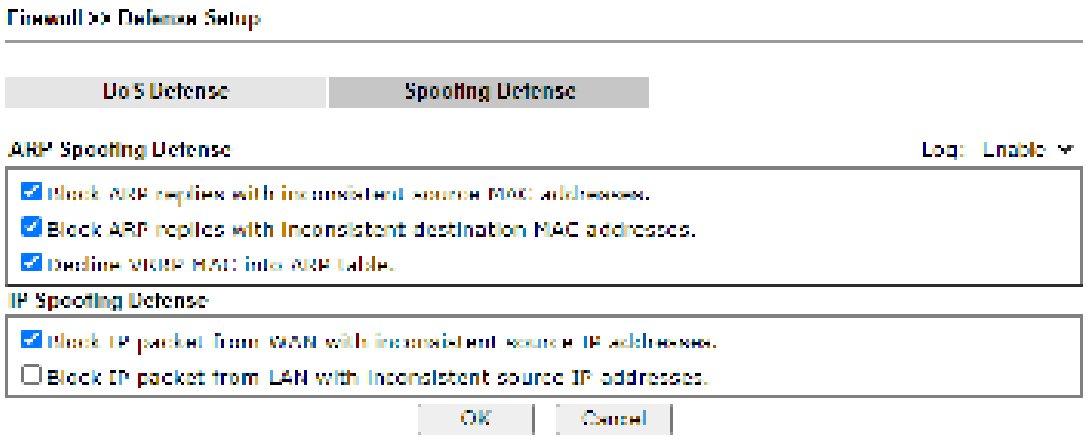
	The default values of threshold and timeout are 2000 packets per second and 10 seconds, respectively.
Enable ICMP flood defense	Select to enable ICMP flood defense. When the arrival rate of ICMP packets exceeds the Threshold value, the router will start to randomly discard TCP SYN packets for a period of time as defined in Timeout. The default values of threshold and timeout are 250 packets per second and 10 seconds, respectively.
Enable Port Scan detection	Select to enable Port Scan detection. Port Scans attack your network by sending packets to a range of ports in an attempt to find services that would respond. When Port Scan detection is enabled, the router sends warning messages when it detects port scanning activities that exceed the Threshold rate. The default threshold is 2000 packets per second.
Block IP options	Select to enable Block IP options. The Vigor router will ignore IP packets with IP option field set in the datagram header. IP options are rarely used and could be abused by attackers as they carry information about the private network otherwise not available to the external network, such as security, TCC (closed user group) parameters, a series of Internet addresses, routing messages, etc, which external eavesdroppers can use to discover details about the private network.
Block Land	Select to Block LAND attacks. LAND attacks happen when an attacker sends spoofed SYN packets with both source and destination addresses set to that of the target system, which causes the target to reply to itself continuously.
Block Smurf	Select to Block Smurf attacks. The router will ignore any broadcasting ICMP echo request.
Block trace route	Select to Block traceroutes. The router will not forward traceroute packets.
Block SYN fragment	Select to Block SYN packet fragments. The router will drop any packets having both the SYN and more-fragments bits set.
Block Fraggle Attack	Select to Block Fraggle Attacks. Broadcast UDP packets received from the Internet are blocked. Activating this feature might block some legitimate packets. Since all broadcast UDP packets coming from the Internet are blocked, RIP packets from the Internet could also be dropped.
Block TCP flag scan	Select to Block TCP Flag Scans. TCP packets with abnormal flag settings will be dropped. TCP flag scanning activities that are blocked include no flag scan, FIN without ACK scan, SYN FIN scan, Xmas scan and full Xmas scan.
Block Tear Drop	Select to Block Tear Drop attacks. Some clients may crash when they receive ICMP datagrams (packets) that exceed the maximum length. The router discards any fragmented ICMP packets having lengths greater than 1024 octets.
Block Ping of Death	Select to Block Ping of Death, where fragmented ping packets are sent to target hosts so that those hosts could crash as they reassemble the malformed ping packets.
Block ICMP Fragment	Select to Block ICMP Fragments. ICMP packets with the

	more-fragments bit set are dropped.
Block Unassigned Numbers	Select to Block Unassigned Protocol Numbers, and the router will block packets having unassigned protocol numbers. Individual IP packet has a protocol field in the datagram header to indicate the protocol type running over the upper layer. However, the protocol types greater than 100 are reserved and undefined at this time. Therefore, the router should have ability to detect and reject this kind of packets.
Warning Messages	We provide Syslog function for user to retrieve message from Vigor router. The user, as a Syslog Server, shall receive the report sending from Vigor router which is a Syslog Client. All the warning messages related to **DoS Defense** will be sent to user and user can review it through Syslog daemon. Look for the keyword **DoS** in the message, followed by a name to indicate what kind of attacks is detected. 

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

VI-1-3-2 Spoofing Defense

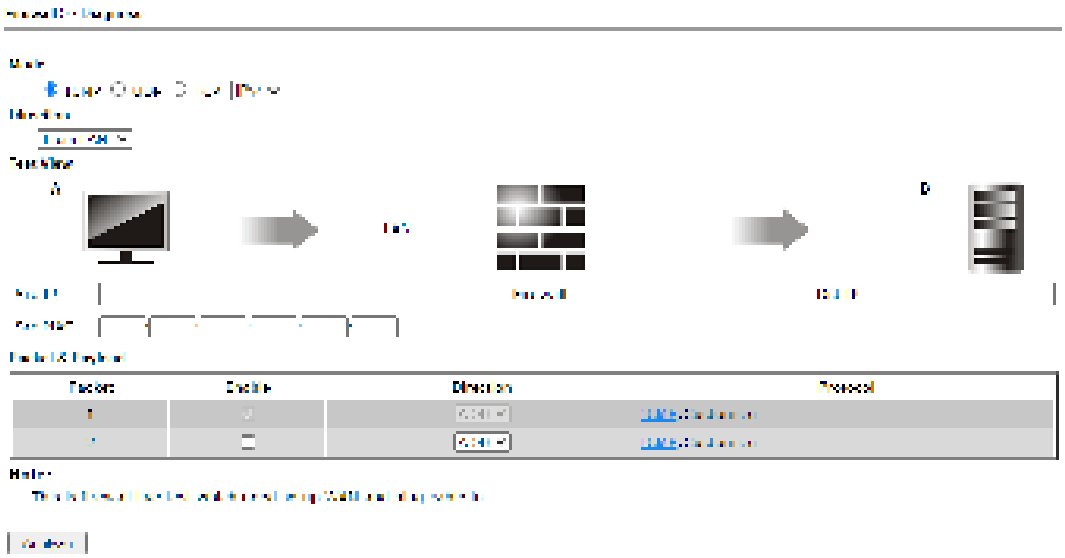
Click the **Spoofing Defense** tab to open the setup page.



VI-1-4 Diagnose

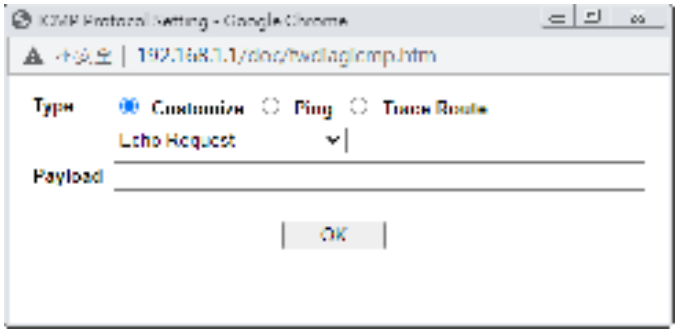
The purpose of this function is to test when the router receiving incoming packet, which firewall rule will be applied to that packet. The test result, including firewall rule profile, IP address translation in packet transmission, state of the firewall fuctions and etc., also will be shown on this page.

Info	The result obtained by using Diagnose is offered for RD debug. It will be different according to actual state such as netework connection, LAN/WAN settings and so on.

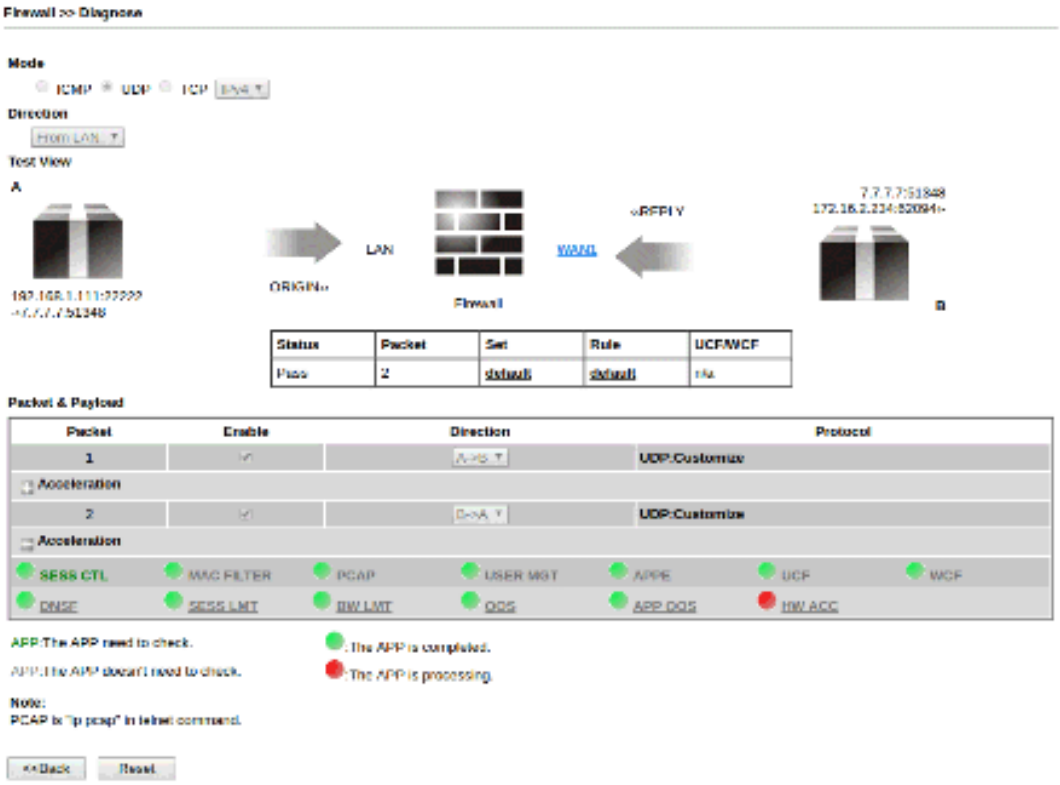


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Mode	To have a firewall rule test, specify the service type (ICMP, UDP, TCP) of the packet and type of the IP address (IPv4/IPv6).
Direction	Set the way (from WAN or from LAN) that Vigor router receives the first packet for test. Different way means the firewall will process the connection initiated from LAN or from WAN.
Test View	This is a dynamic display page. According to the direction specified, test view will display the figure to guide you typing IP address, port number, and MAC address. Later, after clicking the Analyze button, the information for the firewall rule profile and address translation will be shown on this page.
Src IP	Enter the IPv4/IPv6 address of the packet's source.
Src Port	Enter the port number of the packet's source.
Src MAC	Enter the MAC address of the packet's source.
Dst IP	Enter the IPv4/IPv6 address of the packet's destination.

Dst Port	Enter the port number of the packet's destination.
Packet & Payload	In firewall diagnose, two packets belong to one connection. In general, two packets are enough for Vigor router to perform this test. **Enable** – Check the box to send out the test packet. **Direction** – The first packet of the firewall test will follow the direction specified above. However, the direction for the second packet might be different. Simply choose the direction (from Computer A to B or from the B to A) for the second packet. **Protocol** – It displays the mode selected above and the state. If required, click the mode link to configure advanced setting. The common service type (Customize, Ping, Trace Route / Customize, DNS, Trace Route / Customize, Http(GET) related to that mode (ICMP / UDP / TCP) will be shown on the following dialog box.  ● **Type** – Choose Customize, Ping, Trace Route / Customize, DNS, Trace Route / Customize, Http (GET). ● **Payload** – It is available when Customize is selected. Simply type 16 HEX characters which represent certain packet (e.g., DNS packet) if you want to set the data transfered with protocol (ICMP/UDP/TCP) which is different to Type setting.
Analyze	Execute the test and analyze the result.

The following figure shows the test result after clicking **Analyze**. Processing state for the fuctions (MAC Filter, QoS, User management, etc.,) related to the firewall will be displayed by green or red LED.



VI-2 Central Security Management (CSM)

Content Security Management (CSM) allows the network administrator to restrict Internet traffic based on the content type, thus ensuring appropriate use of network resources and also reducing the likelihood of threats from malicious network content.

APP Enforcement Filter

The APP Enforcement Filter can be used to prevent users from using undesirable or inappropriate network applications such as online chat and peer-to-peer programs. The filter works by detecting and blocking network traffic of applications by means of traffic patterns.

URL Content Filter

The URL Content Filter scans URL strings in HTTP requests for predefined keywords to restrict browsing activities.

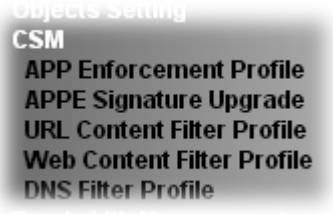
Web Content Filter

Users can also be prevented from browsing certain types of websites by using the Web Content Filter. This filter classifies website domain names into different categories, which can be selectively blocked.

Filter profiles must first be created before these CSM Filters can be enabled. Once profiles have been configured, they can be applied to the Default Rule under Firewall>>General Setup, or Filter Rules in Filter Sets under Firewall>>Filter Setup.

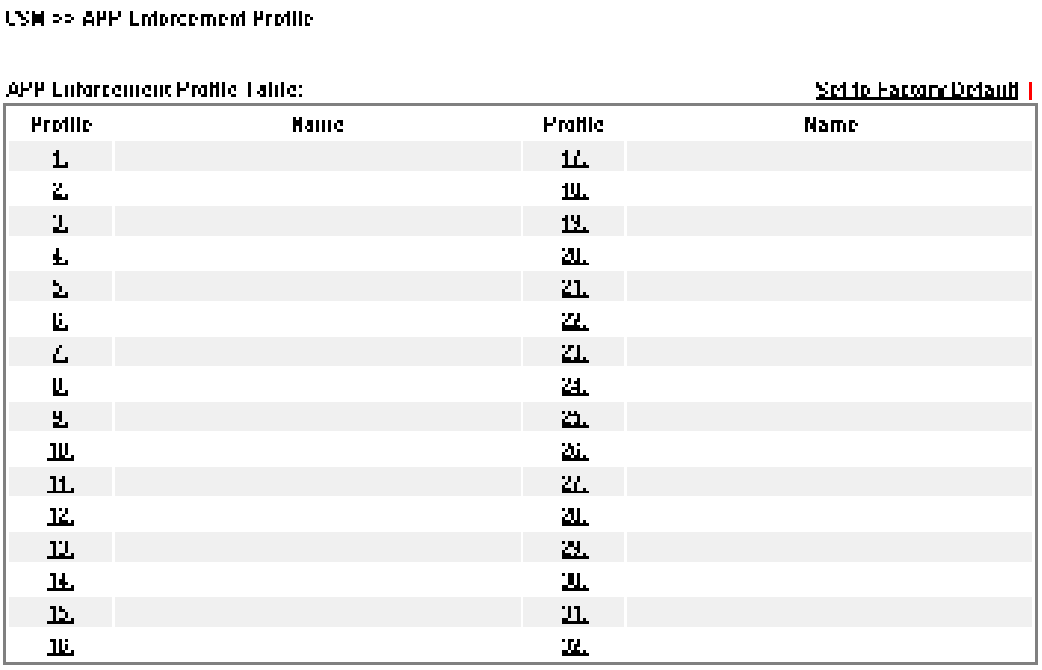
Info	The priority of URL Content Filter is higher than Web Content Filter.

Web User Interface



VI-2-1 APP Enforcement Profile

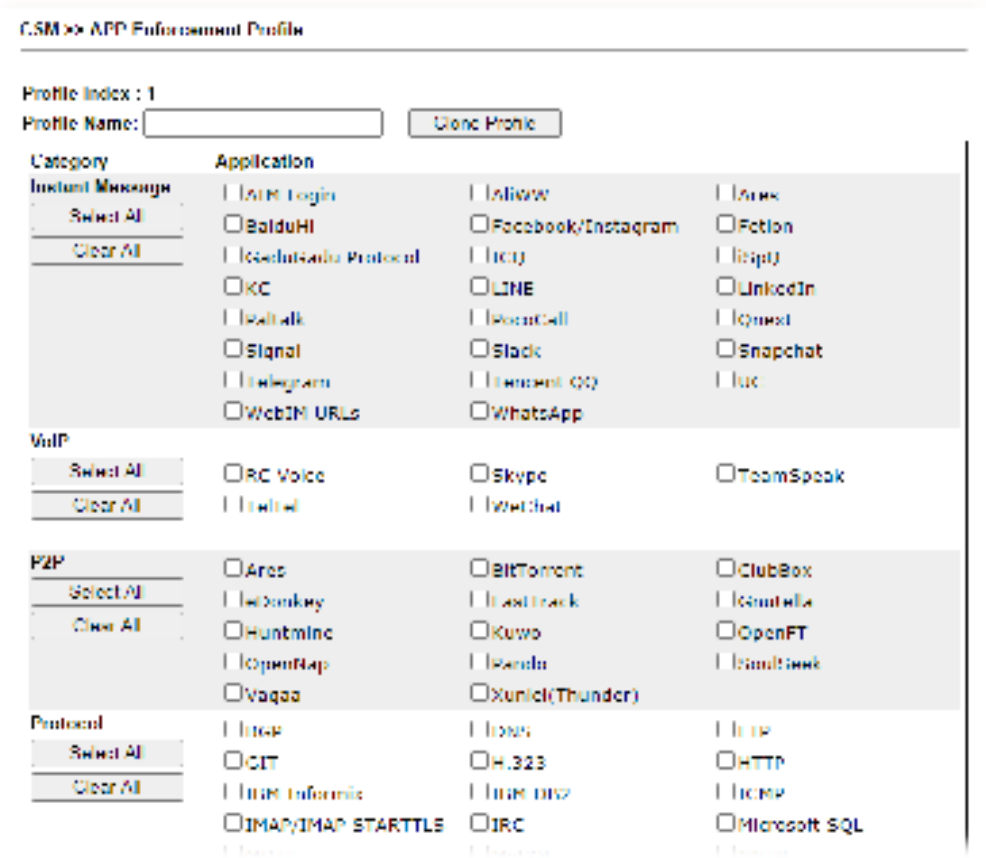
Up to 32 policy profiles for APP Enforcement can be configured.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profile settings.
Profile	Index of the profile. Click to bring up the configuration page of the profile.
Name	Name of the profile.

To configure a profile, click on its profile number, and the following profile configuration page will appear:



Available settings are explained as follows:

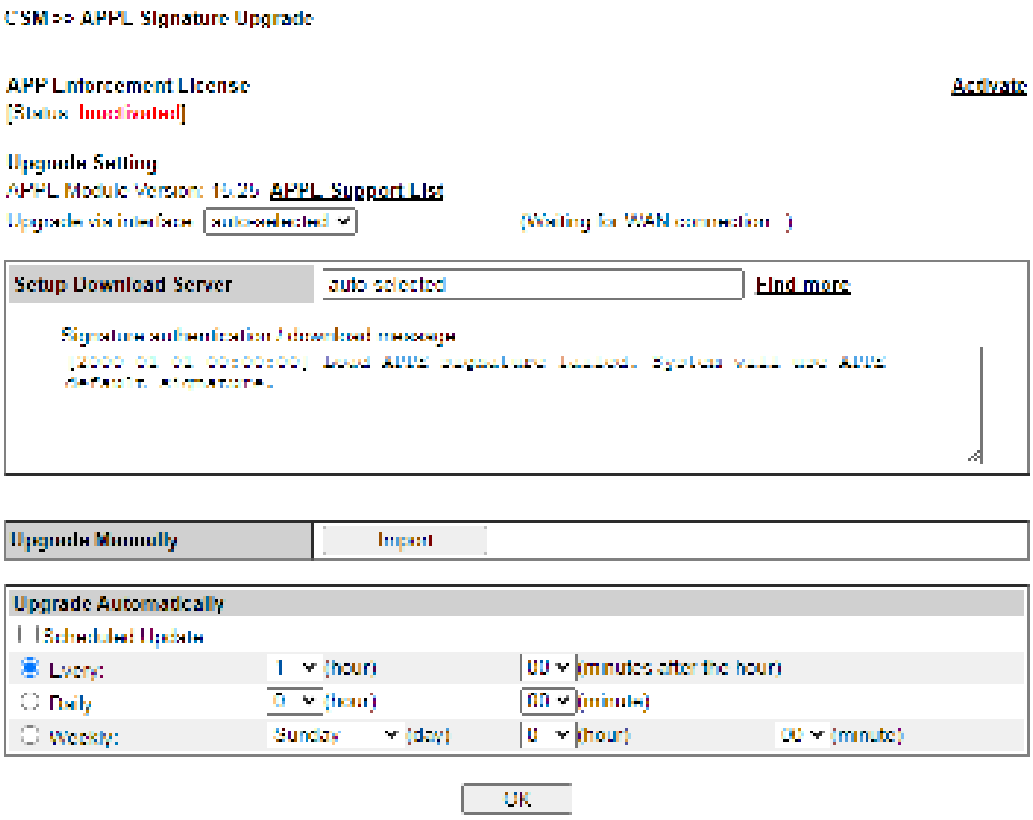
Item	Description
Profile Name	Name that identifies this profile. Maximum length is 15 characters.
Category	Apps are classified into several categories. Each category contains several apps to be blocked.
Clone Profile	Click it to clone settings configured by an existed profile.
Select All	Click to select all of the items on this page.
Clear All	Click to deselect all selected items.
☐	Select this checkbox to block the app.

To save changes on the page, click **OK**. To discard changes, click **Cancel**.

VI-2-2 APPE Signature Upgrade

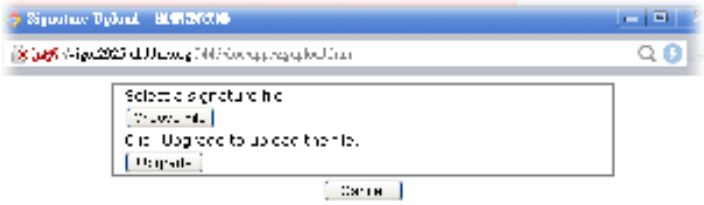
The APP Enforcement Profile feature identifies applications by matching their network traffic to signatures. DrayTek periodically releases APPE signature upgrades to ensure that new applications or new versions can be detected.

Upgrade checks can be performed manually or automatically.



Available settings are explained as follows:

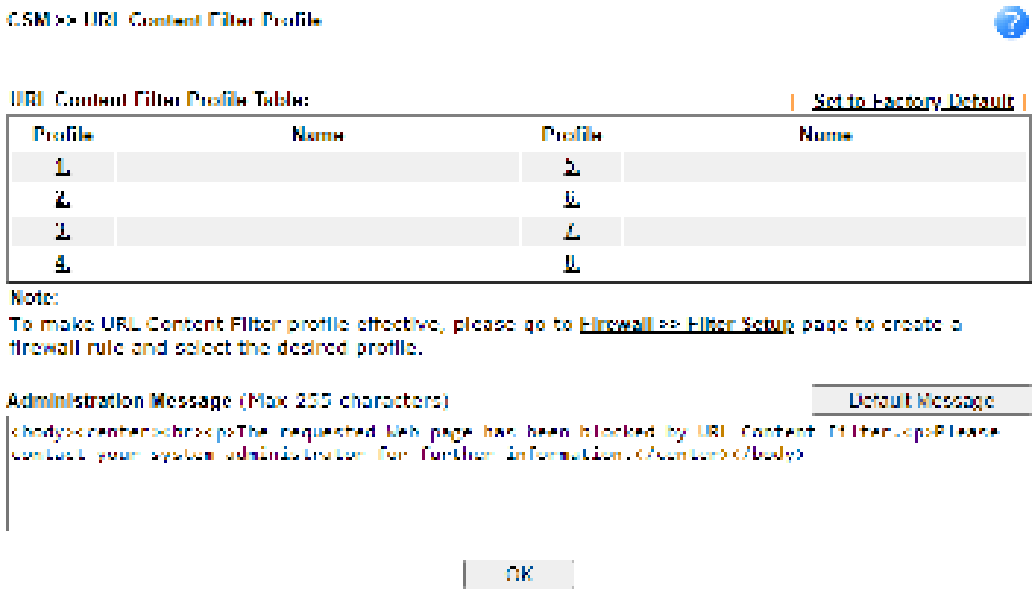
Item	Description
APP Enforcement License	**Status -** Display current license status.
Upgrade Setting	**APPE Module Version** – Shows the current version of the APPE signature. **New version from the Internet** – The **Download** button is enabled only when there is a newer version of APPE signature than the one present on the router. After clicking on the Download button, a dialog box will appear, displaying the release information of the new version. Click **OK** in the dialog box to proceed with the download. **Upgrade via interface** – Select a WAN interface to download the new APPE signature.
Setup Download Server	Specify a download server by typing its URL of the server. Click the Find more for a list of download servers. When the default value auto-selected is used, the server is determined automatically by looking up the geolocation of the WAN IP address. **Signature authentication/download message** –Displays download status messages.

Upgrade Manually	Use this functionality if you wish to upgrade using a previously-downloaded signature file. **Import** – Clicking the button brings up the following page.  Click **Choose File** to select the signature file. Click **Upgrade** to initiate the upgrade process.
Upgrade Automatically	**Scheduled Update -** Select to enable automatic periodic checking for signature updates.

Click **OK** to save changes on the page.

VI-2-3 URL Content Filter Profile

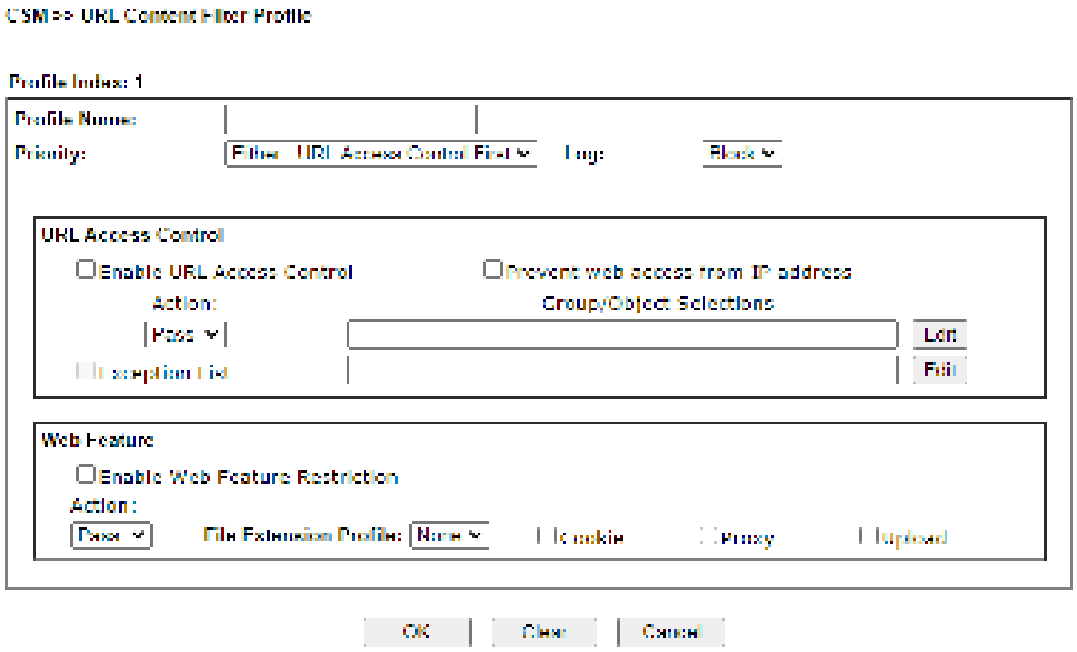
To set up URL Content Filter Profiles, click **CSM** on the Main Menu bar, and then click **URL Content Filter Profile** to open the profile setting page.



Each item is explained as follows:

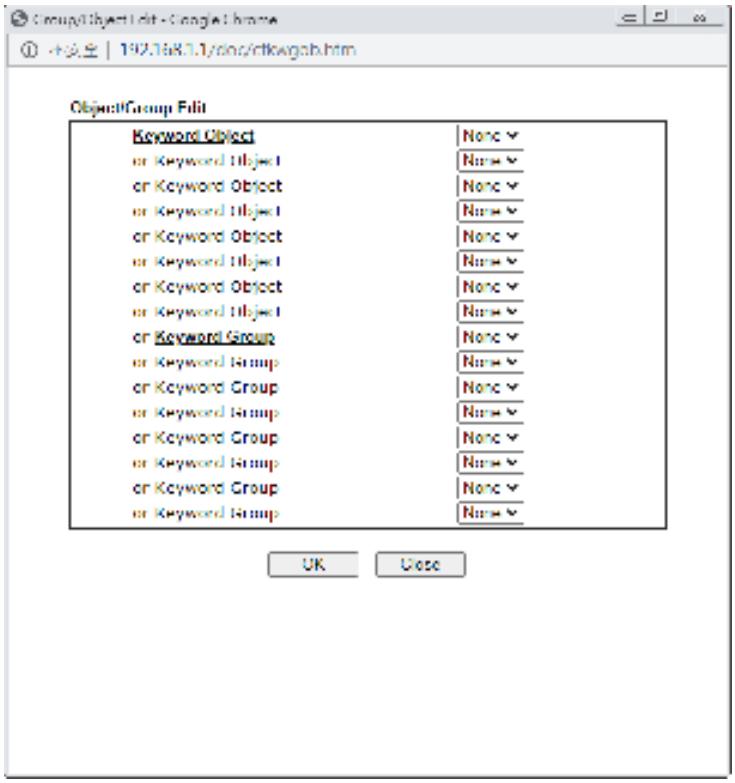
Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profile settings.
Profile	Index number of the profile.
Name	Name that identifies the profile.
Administration Message	The message to be displayed in the browser when access to a URL has been blocked. A custom message can be entered with HTML formatting in the text box. **Default Message** - Click to reset the administration message to the factory default.

To set up a profile, click the profile number under Index column to bring up the configuration page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Name	Name that identifies the URL Content Filter profile. The maximum length of the Profile Name is 15 characters.
Priority	The order of evaluation of URL Access Control and Web Feature below: **Both: Pass** - Router will allow access only to web resources that match conditions specified in both URL Access Control and Web Feature. The Action setting of both URL Access Control and Web Feature will be disabled and the values set to Pass. **Both:Block** - Router will block access to web resources that match conditions specified in both URL Access Control and Web Feature. The Action setting of both URL Access Control and Web Feature will be disabled and the values set to Block. **Either: URL Access Control First** - Router will block or allow access to web resources that match conditions specified in either URL Access Control or Web Feature. URL Access Control is applied first, followed by Web Feature. **Either: Web Feature First** - Router will block or allow access to web resources that match conditions specified in either URL Access Control or Web Feature. Web Feature is applied first, followed by URL Access Control.
Log	**None** - No log file will be created for this profile. **Pass** - Only passed access attempts will be recorded in Syslog. **Block** - Only blocked access attempts will be recorded in Syslog. **All** - Both passed and blocked access attempts will be recorded in Syslog.
URL Access Control	**Enable URL Access Control** - Select to activate URL Access

	Control. **Prevent web access from IP address** - URLs containing IP addresses (e.g., 192.168.1.1) will be blocked. Only URLs with domain addresses (e.g., www.draytek.com) will be allowed. This is to prevent users from circumventing URL Access Control. **Action** – This setting is enabled only when Priority is set to Either: URL Access Control First or Either: Web Feature First. ● **Pass** – Allows access to web pages with URLs containing keywords that are in the selected keyword groups or objects. Access to other URLs is blocked. ● **Block** – Blocks access to web pages with URLs containing keywords that are in the selected keyword groups or objects. Access to other URLs is allowed. **Exception List** – Specify the object profile(s) as the exception list which will be processed in an opposite manner to the action selected above. **Group/Object Selections** – Shows the Keyword Groups and/or Objects selected for this URL Content Filter Profile. To add or remove Keyword Groups and Objects to the selection, click the **Edit** button to bring up the following screen.  Up to 8 Keyword Objects and 8 Keyword Groups can be selected. To add, remove or modify Groups or Objects, click the Keyword Object or Keyword Group hyperlinks to bring up the **Objects Setting >> Keyword Object** or **Objects Setting >> Keyword Group** pages.
Web Feature	**Enable Restrict Web Feature -** Check to enable the web feature restriction. **Action -** This setting is enabled only when Priority is set to **Either: URL Access Control First** or **Either: Web Feature**

	First. ● **Pass** – Allows access to web pages with URLs containing keywords that are in the selected keyword groups or objects. Access to other URLs is blocked. ● **Block** – Blocks access to web pages with URLs containing keywords that are in the selected keyword groups or objects. Access to other URLs is allowed. **File Extension Profile** – Choose one of the profiles that you configured in **Object Setting>> File Extension Objects** previously for passing or blocking the file downloading. **Cookie** - Select to block cookies from Internet websites. **Proxy** - Select to block web proxy servers that relay HTTP traffic. **Upload** – Select to block HTTP uploads from the LAN to the Internet.

To save changes on the page, click **OK**. To discard changes, click **Cancel**. To clear all settings, click **Clear**.

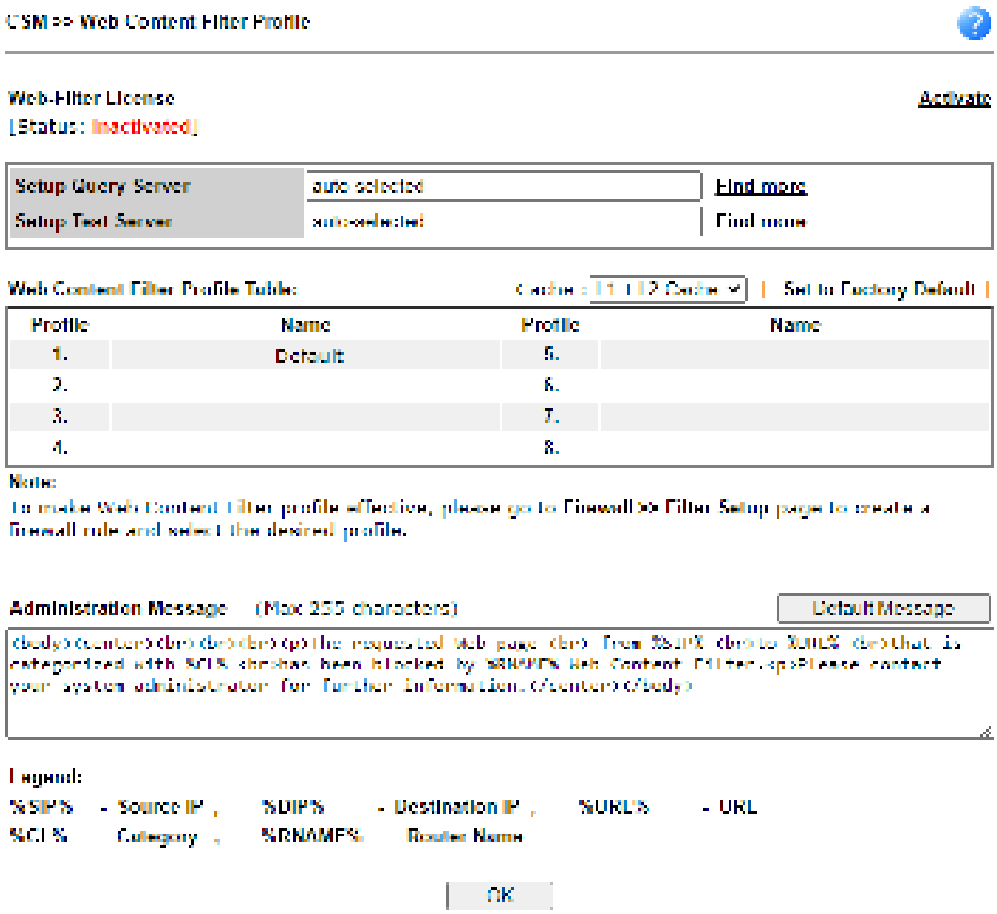
VI-2-4 Web Content Filter Profile

Trial WCF service can be activated using the **Service Activation Wizard**.

If you wish to continue using WCF beyond the trial period, you can obtain a full WCF subscription by contacting your local DrayTek channel partner or dealer. WCF subscriptions can be activated using the **Activate** link on **CSM >> Web Content Filter Profile** (described in this section) or **System Maintenance**.

From the main menu, click **CSM**, followed by **Web Content Filter Profile** to load the profile configuration page.

Info 1	Web Content Filter (WCF) is not a built-in service of Vigor router but a service powered by Commtouch. If you want to use such service (trial or formal edition), you have to perform the procedure of activation first. For the service of formal edition, please contact with your dealer/distributor for detailed information.
Info 2	Commtouch is merged by Cyren, and GlobalView services will be continued to deliver powerful cloud-based information security solutions! Refer to: http://www.prnewswire.com/news-releases/commtouch-is-now-cyren-239025151.html



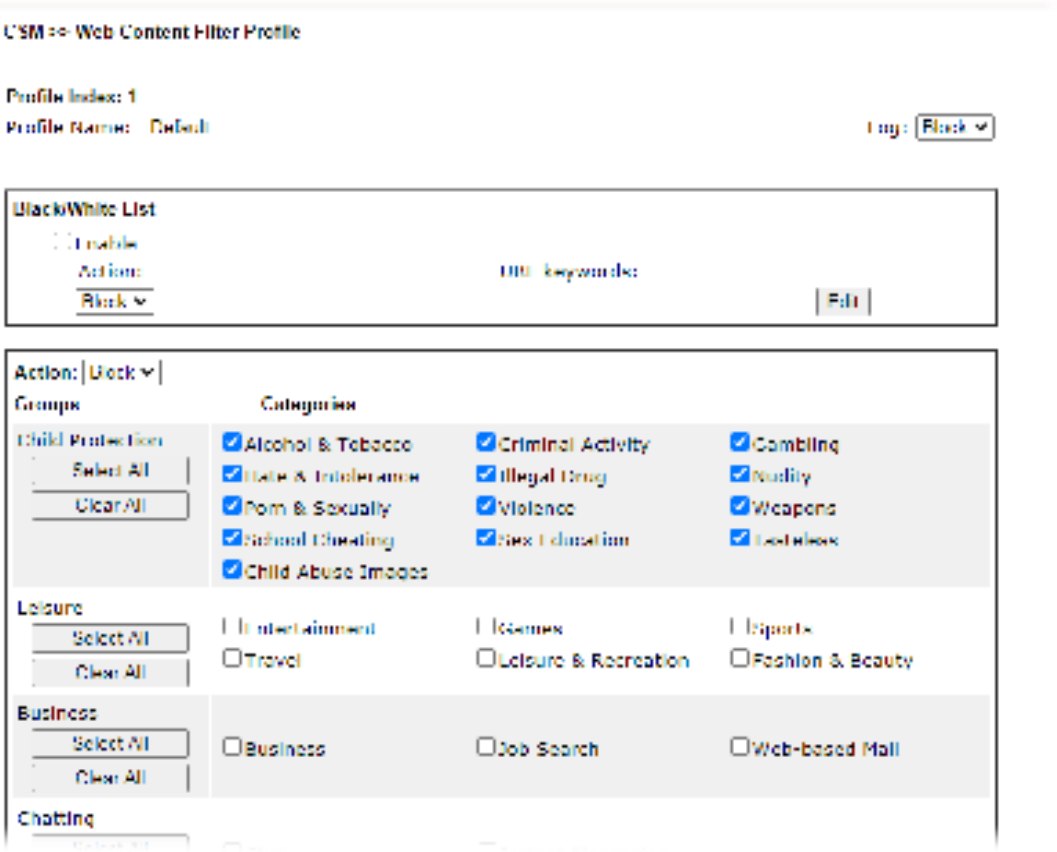
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description

Activate	Click to visit the MyVigor webnsite to activate WCF service. You will need to log in to your MyVigor account to proceed with the activation process. If you do not already have a MyVigor account, you can create one at this time.
Setup Query Server	Specify a WCF query server by typing address of the server. Click the Find more for a list of query servers. When the default value auto-selected is used, the server is determined automatically by looking up the geolocation of the WAN IP address. It is recommended that the default setting auto-selected be used.
Setup Test Server	Specify a WCF test server by typing address of the server. Click the Find more for a list of test servers. When the default value auto-selected is used, the server is determined automatically by looking up the geolocation of the WAN IP address. It is recommended that the default setting auto-selected be used.
Cache	**None** – The router verifies every HTTP URL requested by communicating with the WCF server on the Internet. This mode provides the most precise URL matching but has the lowest performance. **L1** – The router caches the HTTP URLs that have been checked against the WCF server. URLs will be looked up in the L1 cache before reaching out to the WCF server. When the cache is full, the oldest entry will be deleted to accommodate new URLs. **L2** – After a URL has been checked and found to pass WCF, the source and destination IPs are cached for about 1 second in the L2 cache. This is to allow a webpage to be loaded without further verifying the same URLs against the L1 cache or the WCF server. **L1+L2 Cache** – The router will utilize both L1 and L2 caches.
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profile settings.
Profile	Index number of the profile.
Name	Name that identifies the profile.
Administration Message	The message to be displayed in the browser when access to a website has been blocked. A custom message can be entered with HTML formatting in the text box. You can embed the following variables in the message: %SIP% – The source IP address that attempted the HTTP access. %DIP% – The destination IP address to which access was attempted. %URL% – The URL of the destination website. %CL% – The category to which the URL belongs. %RNAME% – The name of the router. **Default Message** - Click to reset the administration message to the factory default.

Up to 8 WCF profiles can be set up. To configure a profile, click its profile number to bring up its configuration page. Filter profile settings are specific to WCF providers. If you already

have an active WCF subscription, activating a WCF subscription to a provider that is different from your current provider will clear all existing profile configuration.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Name	Name that identifies the WCF profile. The maximum length of the Profile Name is 15 characters.
Log	**Pass** – Only passed access attempts will be recorded in Syslog. **Block** – Only blocked access attempts will be recorded in Syslog. **All** – Both passed and blocked access attempts will be recorded in Syslog.
Black/White List	Keyword objects and groups can be applied to the URL to override WCF category filtering. **Enable** – Select to enable blacklisting or whitelisting. **Action** - Action to take when a URL matches keyword group and object selections. ● **Pass** – Allow access to the URL. ● **Block** – Disallow access to the URL. **URL Keywords** – Displays selected keyword group and objects. Click the **Edit** button to modify keyword selections.
Groups and Categories	Select categories to be included in the filter. **Action** - Action to take when a URL matches keyword group and object selections. ● **Pass** – allow access to the URL. ● **Block** – disallow access to the URL.

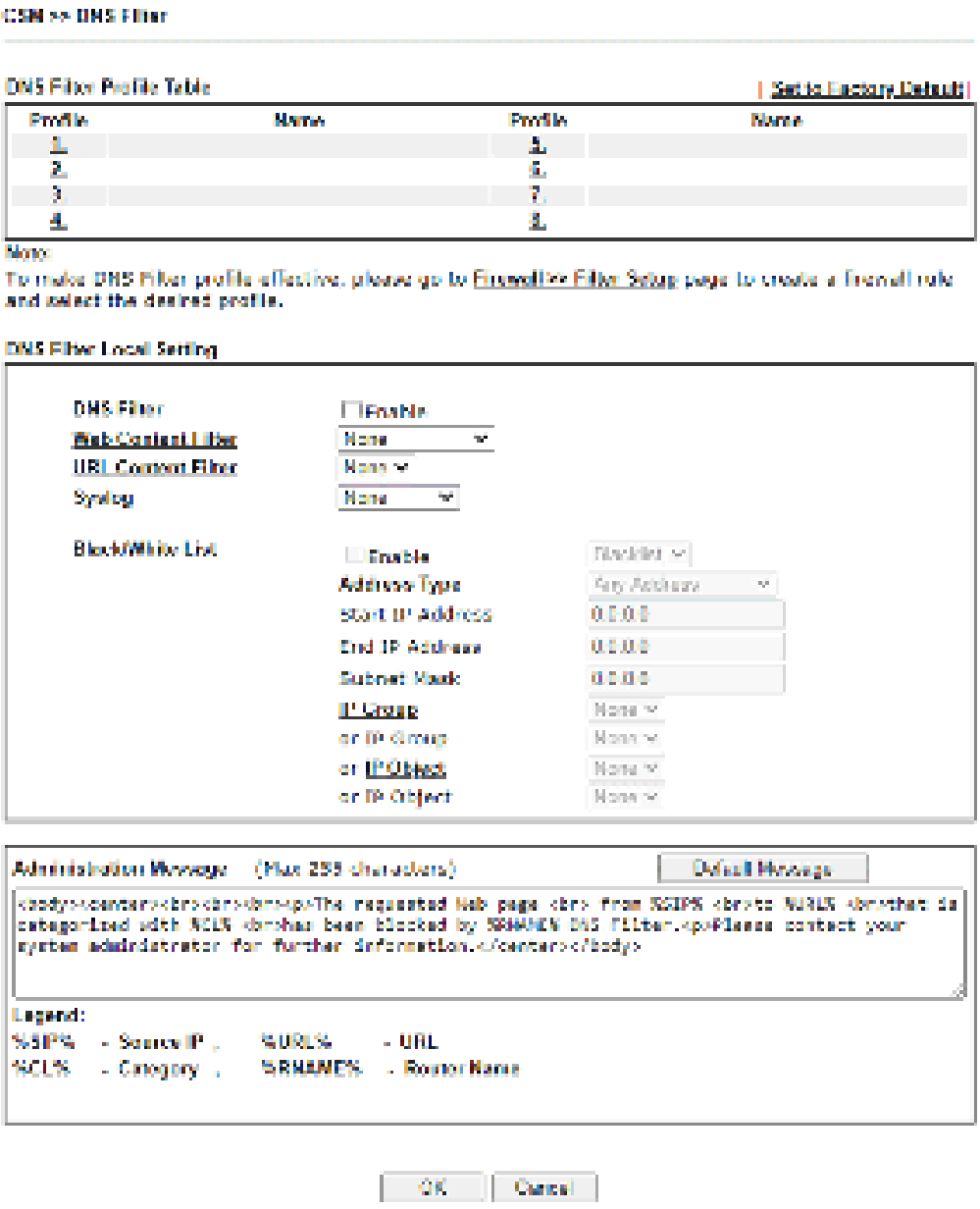
	Select All - Click to select all categories within the group. **Clear All -** Click to deselect all categories within the group.

To save changes on the page, click **OK**. To discard changes, click **Cancel**.

VI-2-5 DNS Filter Profile

DNS Filter blocks or allows traffic to the WAN by intercepting DNS queries, and applying UCF and WCF rules to hostnames. DNS filtering is especially useful when you wish to restrict access of protocols other than HTTP, such as HTTPS. Note that a WCF license must have already been activated before WCF rules could be used.

To configure DNS Filter Profiles, select **CSM >> Web Content Filter Profile** from the main menu.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
DNS Filter Profile Table	DNS Filter Profiles take effect when DNS servers on the WAN are used for DNS queries. The router intercepts all outgoing DNS queries on UDP port 53 and applies WCF and UCF rules on the domain names before passing the queries to the DNS servers. IP addresses of the domains are then blocked or

	allowed as per applicable WCF and UCF rules. DNS Filter Profiles can be applied by selecting from Firewall filter rules. **Profile -** Index number of the profile. Click to bring up the configuration page for the profile entry. **Name -** Name that identifies the profile.
Set to Factory Default	Clear all DNS Filter profile settings.
DNS Filter Local Setting	By setting the IP address of the DNS lookup server to the router's address, the router serves as a DNS lookup proxy server. When DNS Filter Local Setting is enabled, all DNS queries sent to the router will have WCF and UCF rules applied to the hostnames, and access to the resolved IP addresses will be allowed or blocked as configured in the rules. **DNS Filter -** Select to enable DNS Filter Local Setting. **Web Content Filter -** Select a WCF profile. **URL Content Filter** - Select a UCF profile. **Syslog -** The filtering result can be recorded according to the setting selected for Syslog. ● **None** – No log file will be created for this profile. ● **Pass Only** – Only passed access attempts will be recorded in Syslog. ● **Block Only**– Only blocked access attempts will be recorded in Syslog. ● **Both** – Both passed and blocked access attempts will be recorded in Syslog. **Black/White List** – Specify IP address, subnet mask, IP object, or IP group as a black list or white list for DNS packets passing through or blocked by Vigor router.
Administration Message	The message to be displayed in the browser when access to a website has been blocked. A custom message can be entered with HTML formatting in the text box. You can embed the following variables in the message: ● %SIP% – The source IP address that attempted the HTTP access. ● %DIP% – The destination IP address to which access was attempted. ● %URL% – The URL of the destination website. ● %CL% – The category to which the URL belongs. ● %RNAME% – The name of the router. **Default Message** - Click to reset the administration message to the factory default.

To save changes on the page, click **OK**. To discard changes, click **Cancel**.

Application Notes

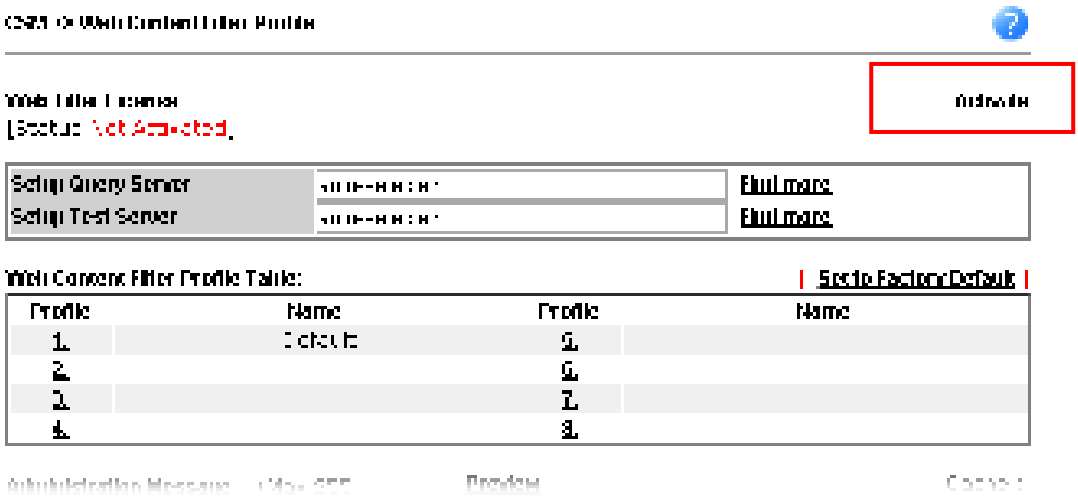
A-1 How to Create an Account for MyVigor

The website of MyVigor (a server located on http://myvigor.draytek.com) provides several useful services (such as Anti-Spam, Web Content Filter, Anti-Intrusion, and etc.) to filtering the web pages for the sake of protecting your system.

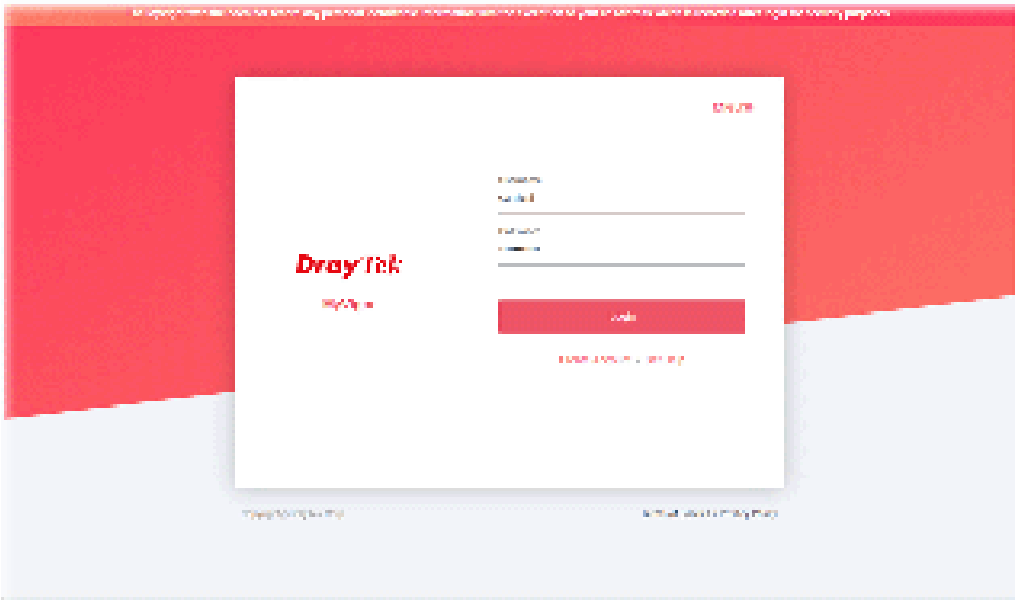
To access into MyVigor for getting more information, please create an account for MyVigor.

Create an Account via Vigor Router

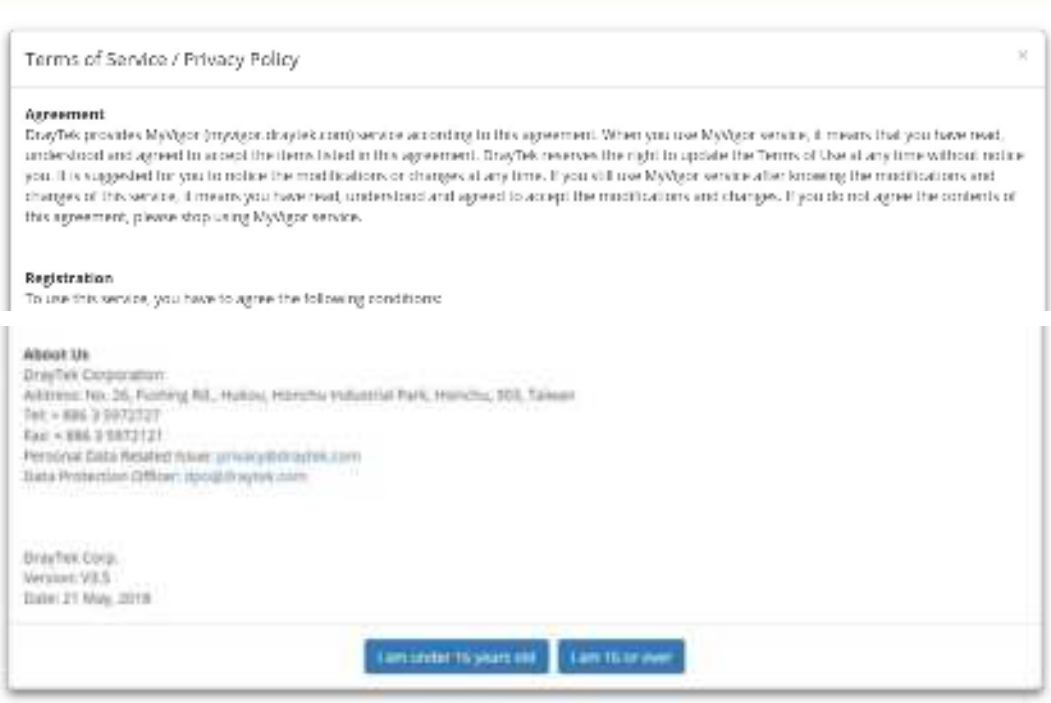
1. Click **CSM>> Web Content Filter Profile**. The following page will appear.



2. Click the **Activate** link. A login page for MyVigor web site will pop up automatically.



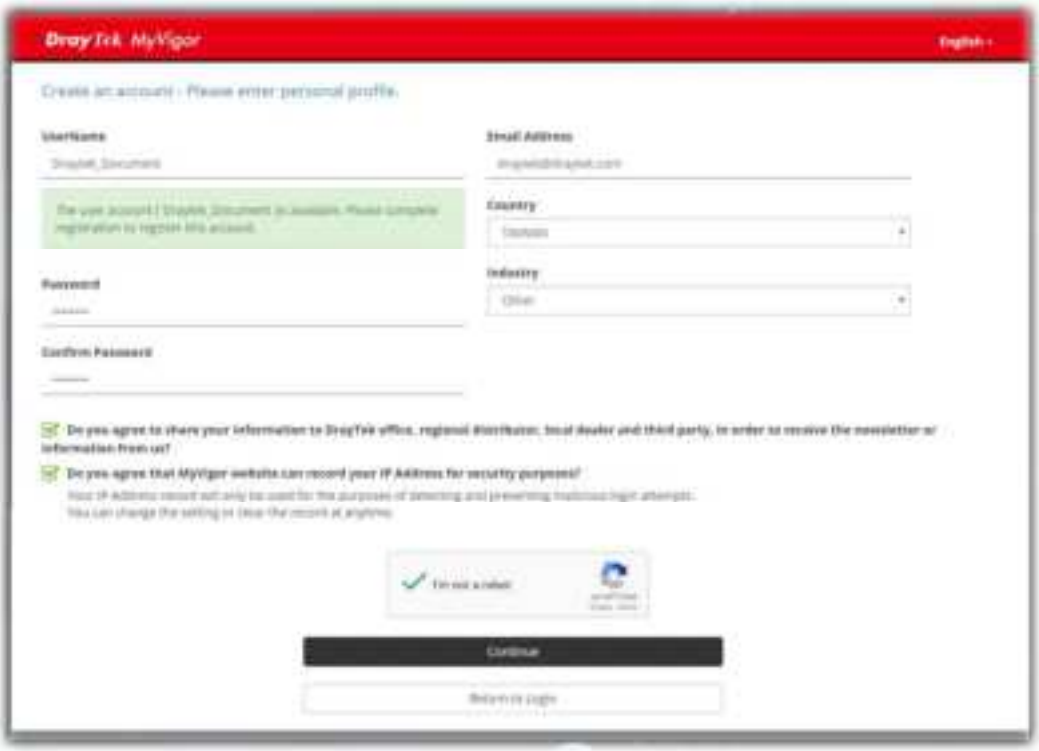
3. Click the link of **Create Account**.
4. The system will ask if you are 16 years old or over.
   - If yes, click **I am 16 or over**.



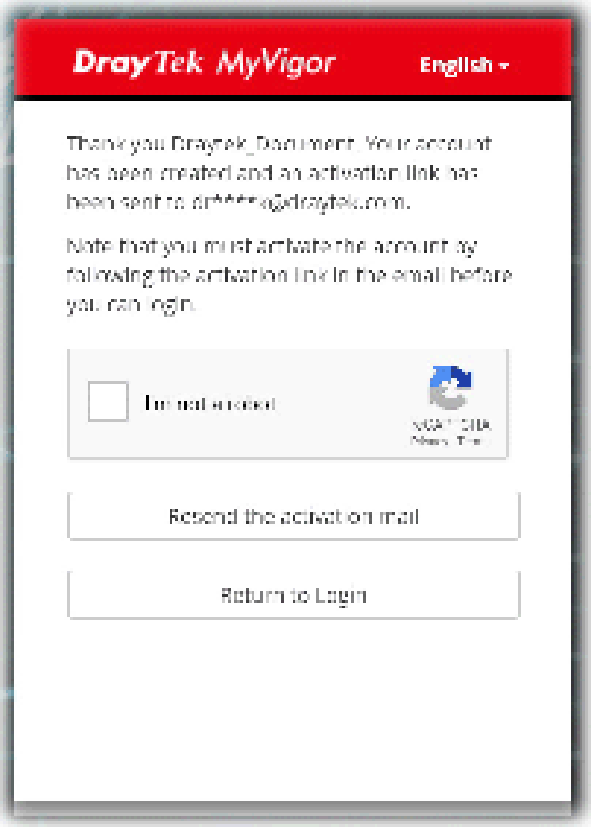
- If not, click **I am under 16 years old** to get the following page. Then, click **I and my legal guardian agree.**

5. After reading the terms of service/privacy policy, click **Agree.**

6. In the following page, enter your personal information in this page and then click **Continue.**



7. Choose proper selection for your computer and click **Continue**.



8. Now you have created an account successfully.
9. Check to see the confirmation ***email*** with the title of **New Account Confirmation Letter from myvigor.draytek.com**.

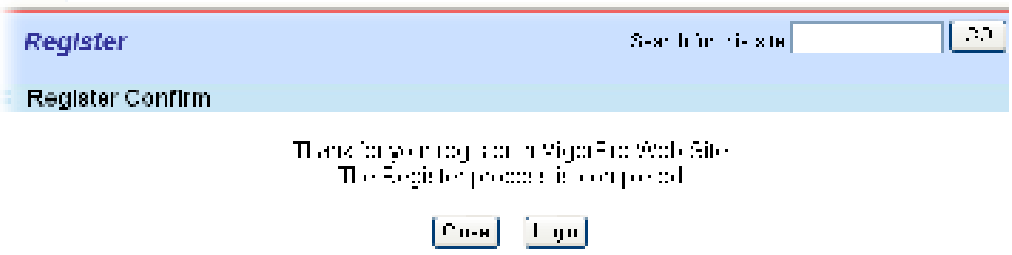
****** This is an automated message from myvigor.draytek.com.******

Thank you (**Mary**) for creating an account.

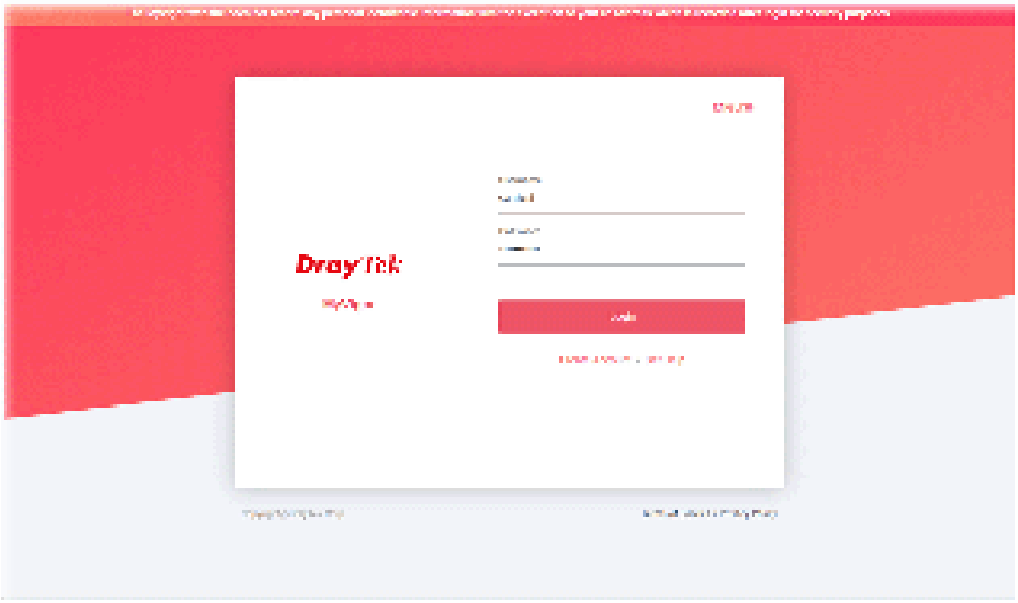
Please click on the activation link below to activate your account

Link : Activate my Account

10. Click the **Activate my Account** link to enable the account that you created. The following screen will be shown to verify the register process is finished. Please click **Login**.



11. When you see the following page, please Enter the account and password (that you just created) in the fields of **Username** and **Password**.



12. Now, click **Login**. Your account has been activated. You can access into MyVigor server to activate the service (e.g., WCF) that you want.

A-2 How to Block Facebook Service Accessed by the Users via Web Content Filter / URL Content Filter

There are two ways to block the facebook service, Web Content Filter and URL Content Filter.

Web Content Filter,

Benefits: Easily and quickly implement the category/website that you want to block.

Note: License is required.

URL Content Filter,

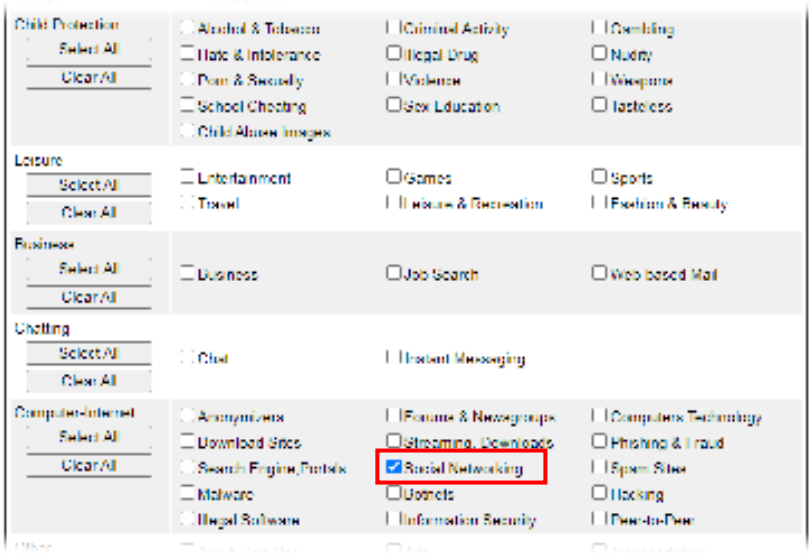
Benefits: Free, flexible for customize webpage.

Note: Manual setting (e.g., one keyword for one website.)

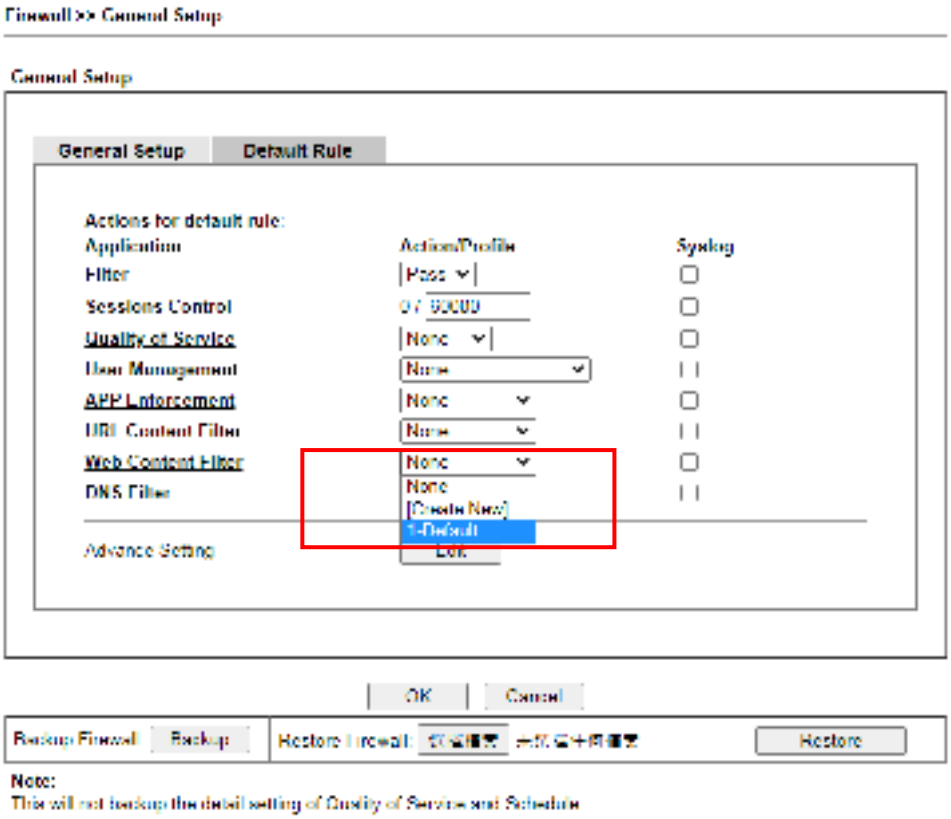
I. Via Web Content Filter

1. Make sure the Web Content Filter license is valid.

2. Open **CSM >> Web Content Filter Profile** to create a WCF profile. Check **Social Networking** with Action, **Block**.



3. Enable this profile in **Firewall>>General Setup>>Default Rule**.

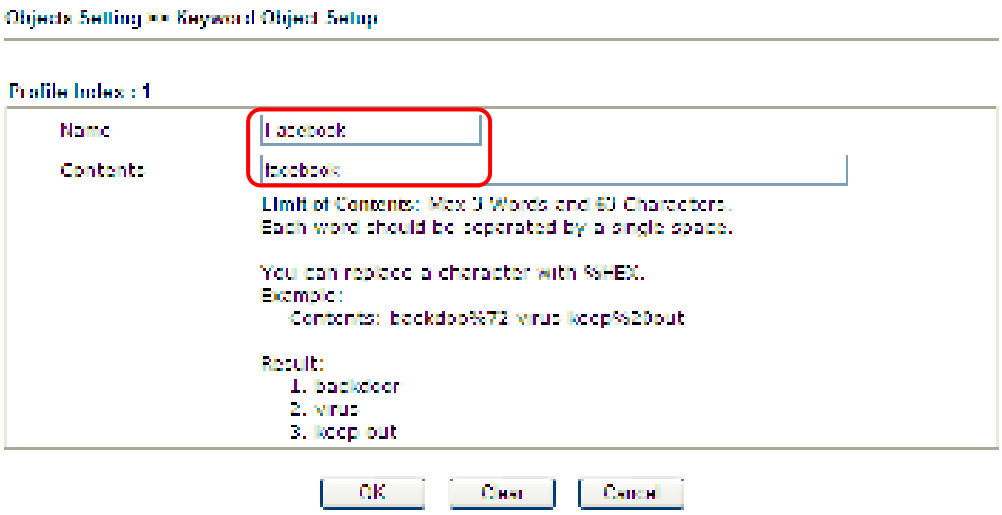


4. Next time when someone accesses facebook via this router, the web page would be blocked and the following message would be displayed instead.

II. Via URL Content Filter

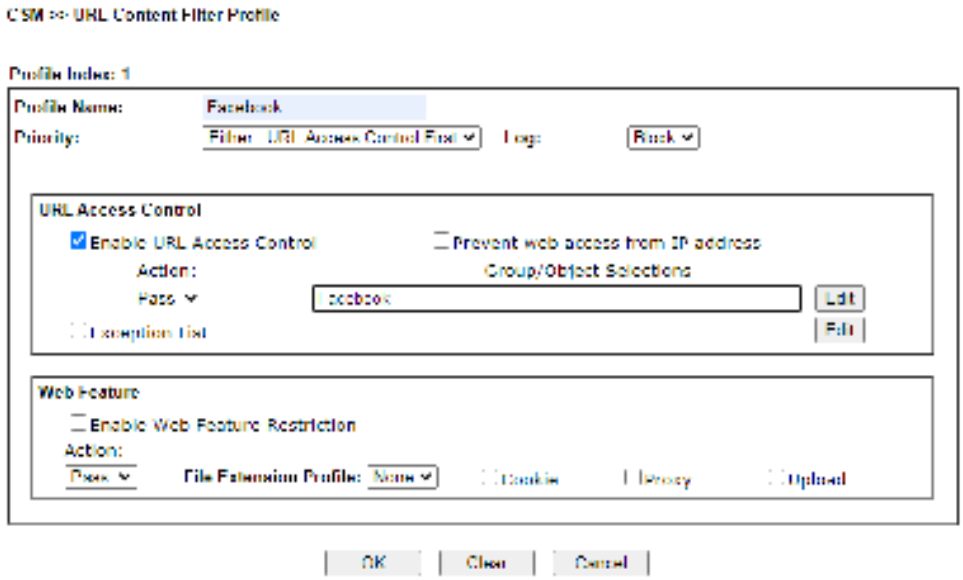
A. Block the web page containing the word of "Facebook"

1. Open **Object Settings>>Keyword Object**. Click an index number to open the setting page.
2. In the field of **Contents**, please type *facebook*. Configure the settings as the following figure.



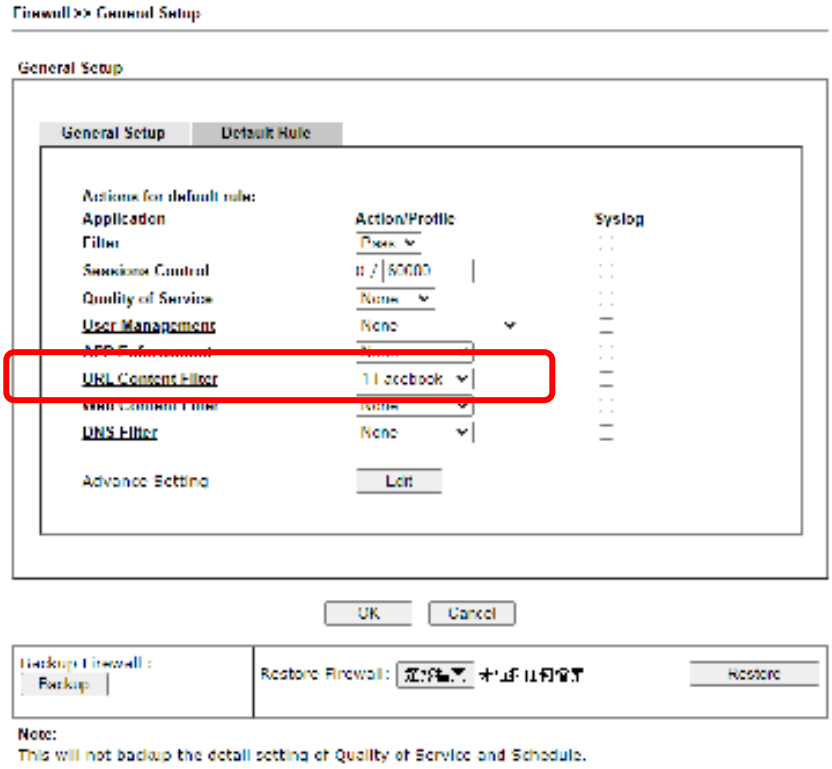
3. Open **CSM>>URL Content Filter Profile**. Click an index number to open the setting page.

4. Configure the settings as the following figure.



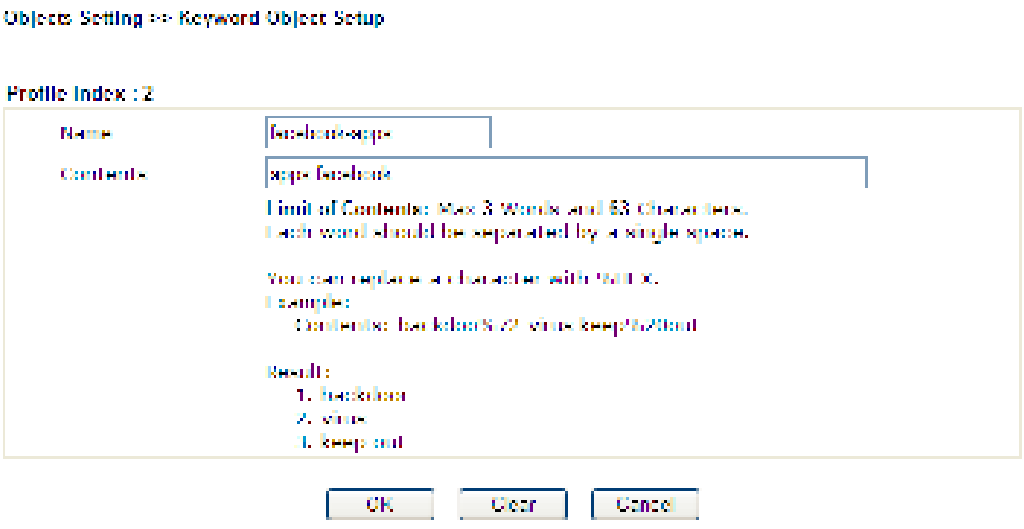
5. When you finished the above steps, click **OK**. Then, open **Firewall>>General Setup**.

6. Click the **Default Rule** tab. Choose the profile just configured from the drop down list in the field of **URL Content Filter**. Now, users cannot open any web page with the word “facebook” inside.



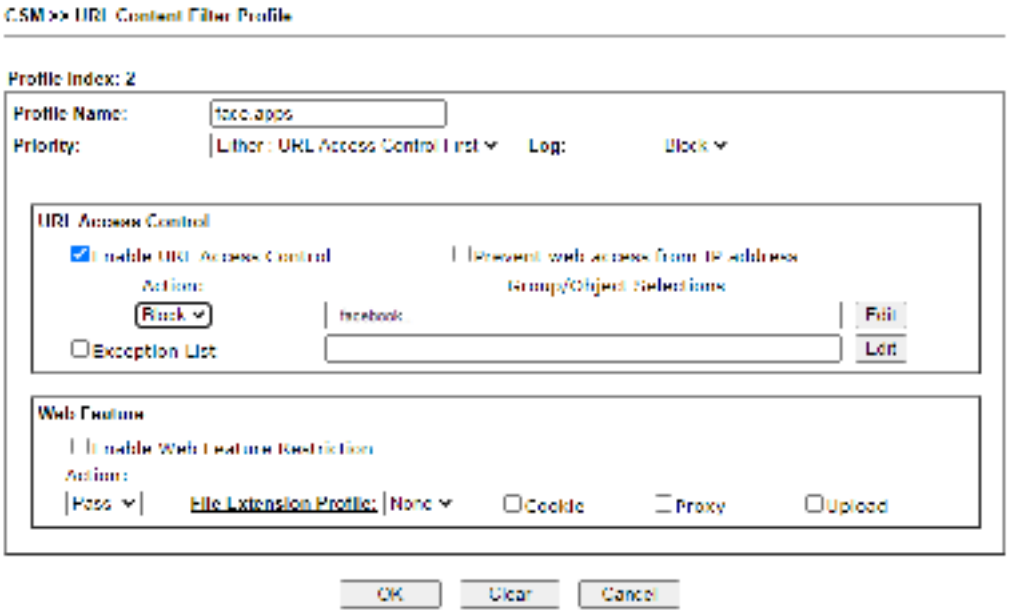
B. Disallow users to play games on Facebook

1. Open **Object Settings>>Keyword Object**. Click an index number to open the setting page.
2. In the field of **Contents**, please type *apps.facebook*. Configure the settings as the following figure.



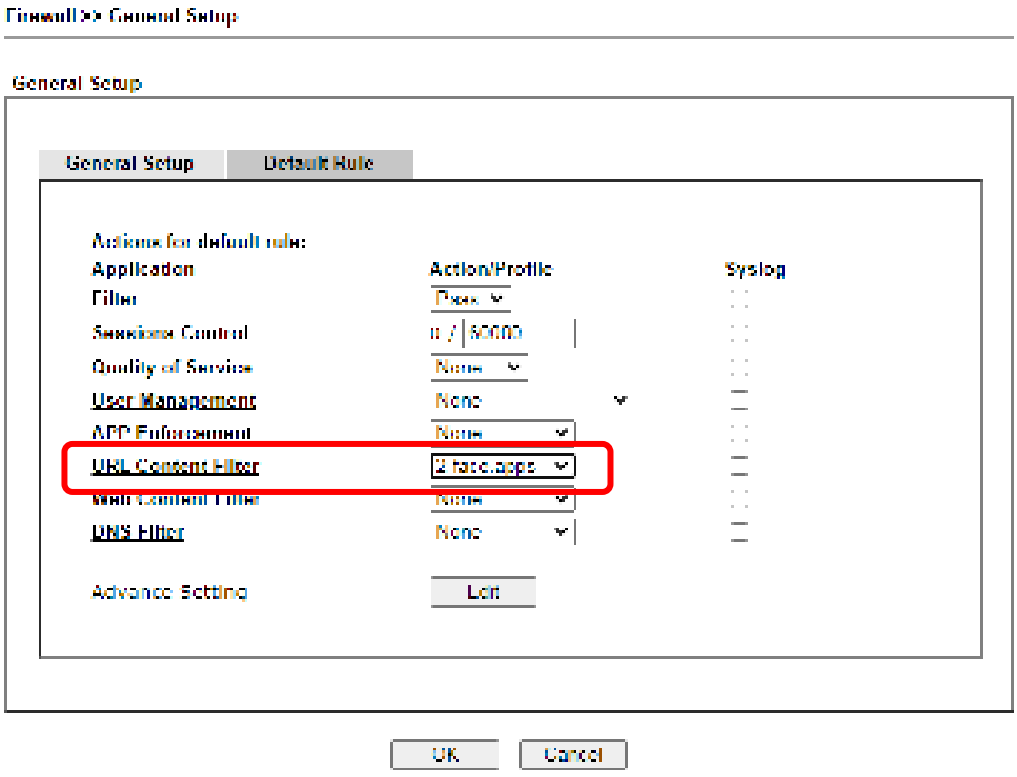
3. Open **CSM>>URL Content Filter Profile**. Click an index number to open the setting page.

4. Configure the settings as the following figure.



5. When you finished the above steps, please open **Firewall>>General Setup**.

6. Click the **Default Rule** tab. Choose the profile just configured from the drop down list in the field of URL Content Filter. Now, users cannot open any web page with the word “facebook” inside.



Part VII Management

There are several items offered for the Vigor router system setup: System Status, TR-069, Administrator Password, User Password, Login Page Greeting, Configuration Backup, Syslog /Mail Alert, Time and Date, Management, Reboot System, Firmware Upgrade and Activation.

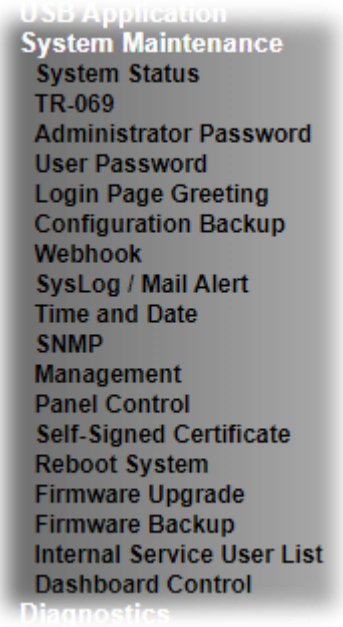
It is used to control the bandwith of data transmission through configuration of Sessions Limit, Bandwidth Limit, and Quality of Servie (QoS).

It is a security feature which disallows any IP traffic (except DHCP-related packets) from a particular host until that host has correctly supplied a valid username and password.

VII-1 System Maintenance

For the system setup, there are several items that you have to know the way of configuration: System Status, TR-069, Administrator Password, User Password, Login Page Greeting, Configuration Backup, Webhook, Syslog /Mail Alert, Time and Date, SNMP, Management, Panel Control, Self-Signed Certificate, Reboot System, Firmware Upgrade, Firmware Backup, Internal Service User List and Dashboard Control.

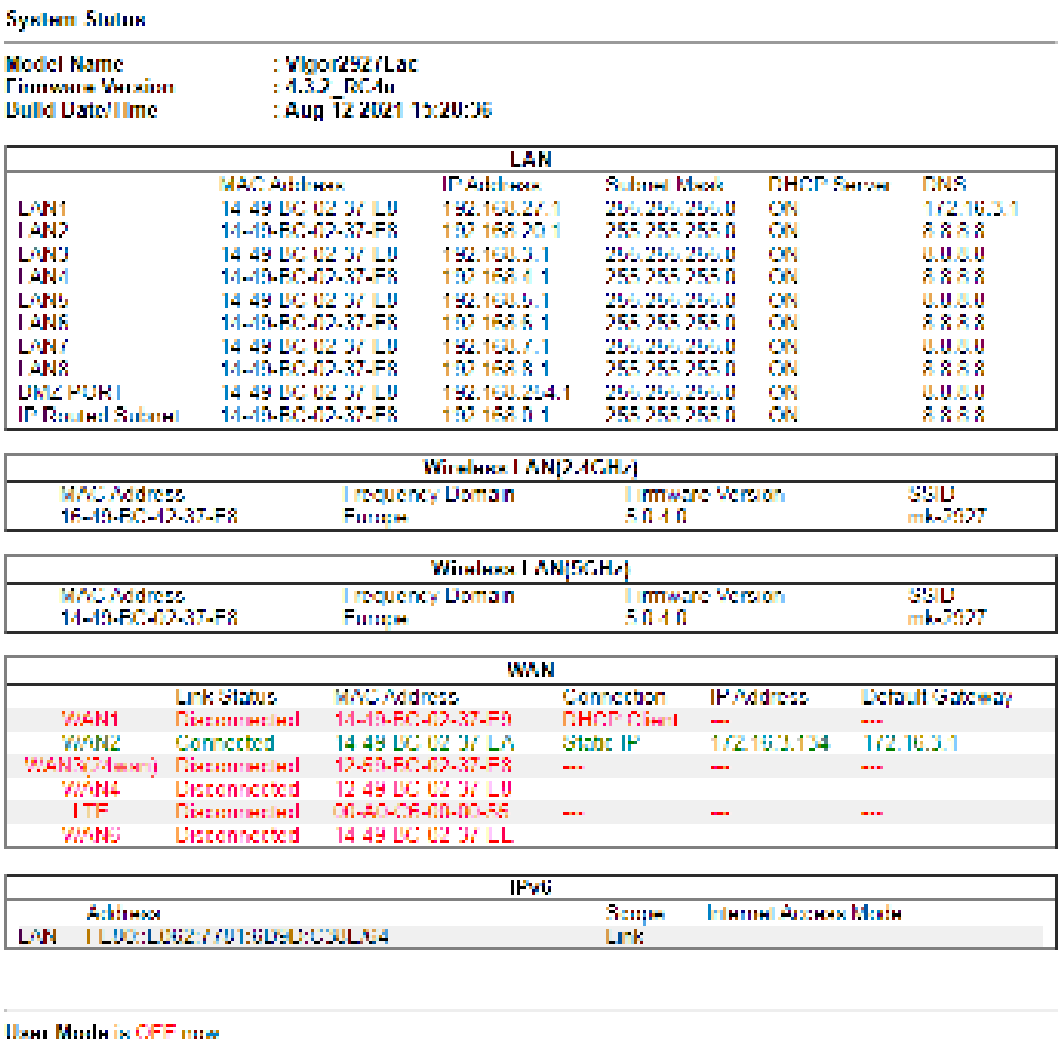
Below shows the menu items for System Maintenance.



Web User Interface

VII-1-1 System Status

The **System Status** displays basic network information of Vigor router including LAN and WAN interface status. Also available is the current firmware version and firmware related information.



Available settings are explained as follows:

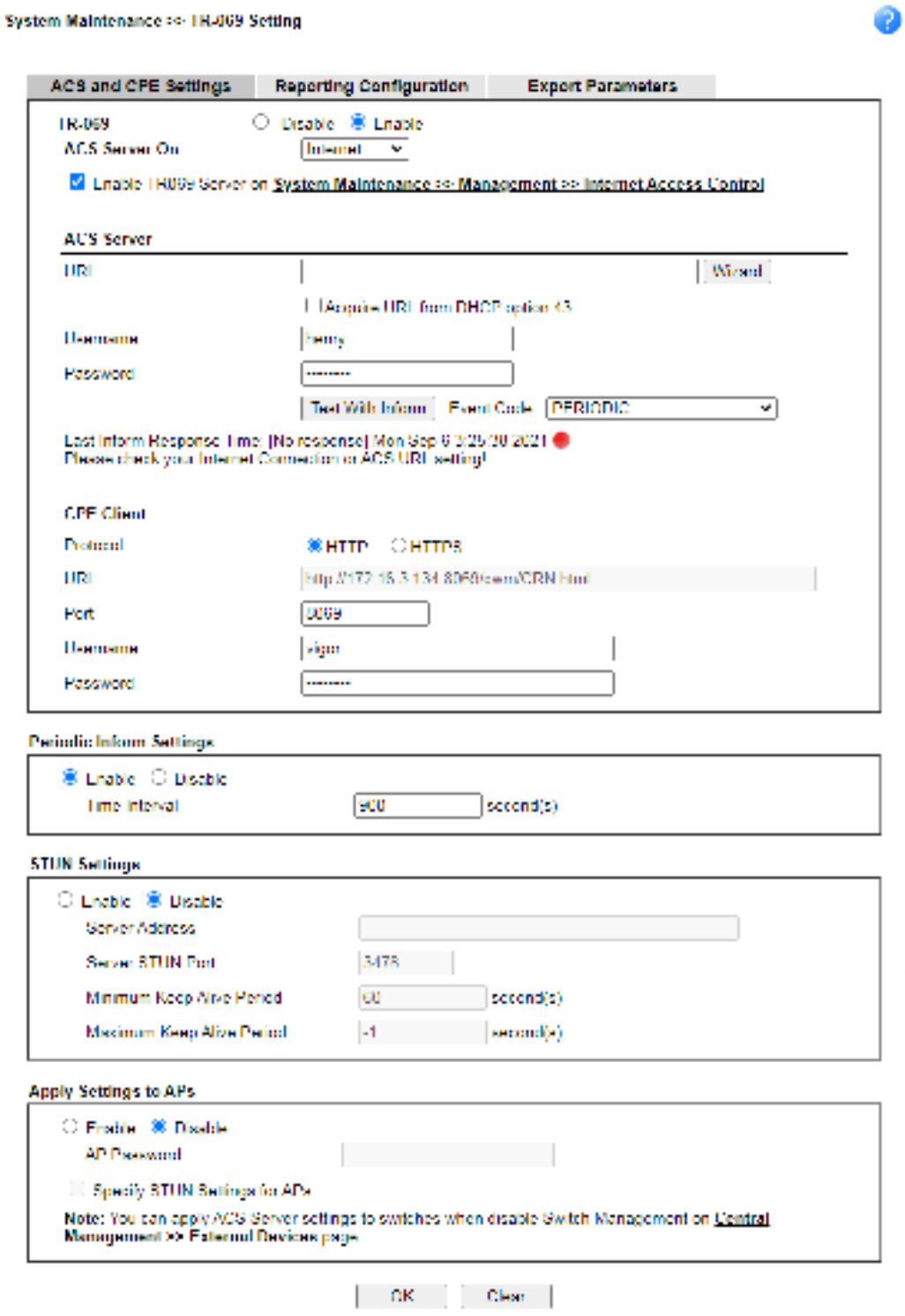
Item	Description
Model Name	Displays the model name of the router.
Firmware Version	Displays the firmware version of the router.
Build Date/Time	Displays the date and time of the current firmware build.
LAN	**MAC Address** - Displays the MAC address of the LAN Interface. **IP Address** - Displays the IP address of the LAN interface. **Subnet Mask**

	- Displays the subnet mask address of the LAN interface. **DHCP Server** - Displays the current status of DHCP server of the LAN interface. **DNS** - Displays the assigned IP address of the primary DNS.
Wireless LAN	**MAC Address** - Displays the MAC address of the LAN Interface. **Frequency Domain** - Displays the frequency domain. **Firmware Version** - Displays the firmware version. **SSID** - Displays the name of the SSID.
WAN	**Link Status** - Displays current connection status of the WAN interface. **MAC Address** - Displays the MAC address of the WAN Interface. **Connection** - Displays the connection type of the WAN interface.. **IP Address** - Displays the IP address of the WAN interface. **Default Gateway** - Display the assigned IP address of the default gateway.
IPv6	**Address -** Displays the IPv6 address for LAN. **Scope -** Displays the scope of IPv6 address. For example, **IPv6 Link Local** is non-routable and can only be used for local connections. **Internet Access Mode** –Displays the connection mode of the WAN interface.

VII-1-2 TR-069

This device supports the TR-069 standard for remote management of customer-premises equipment (CPE) through an Auto Configuration Server, such as VigorACS.

VII-1-2-1 ACS and CPE Settings



Available settings are explained as follows:

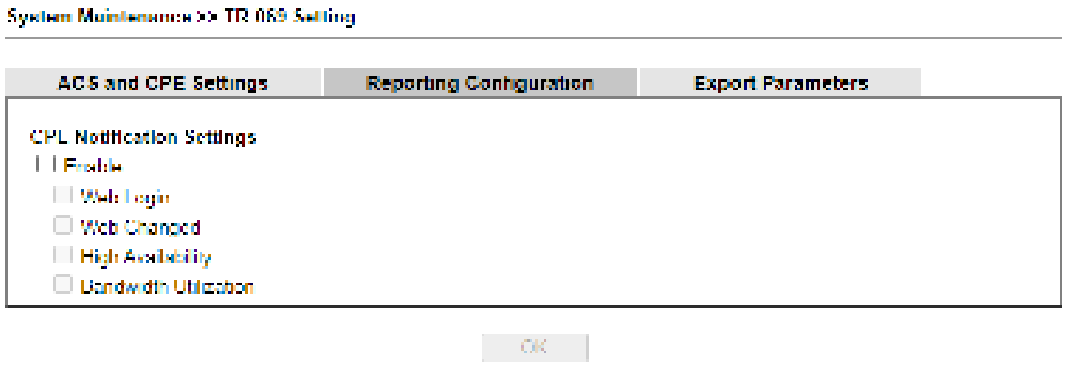
Item	Description
TR-069	Enables or disables TR-069 functionality.
ACS Server On	Choose the interface for connecting the router to the Auto Configuration Server.
Enable TR069 Server on....	After enabling TR-069 feature in this page, it is necessary to check this box for enabling the TR-069 server on System Maintenance>>Management>>Internect Access Control, in order to make Vigor router and VigorACS communicate each other. If the TR-069 Server not enabled, VigorACS can not manage the Vigor rotuer remotely.
ACS Server	This section specifies the settings of the ACS Server. **URL** – Enter the URL for connecting to the ACS. Please refer to the Auto Configuration Server user's manual for detailed information. ● **Wizard** – Click it to enter the IP address of VigorACS server, port number and the handler. ● **Acquire URL form DHCP option 43** – Select to acquire the ACS URL from DHCP option 43. **Username**/**Password** – Enter the credentials required to connect to the ACS server. ● **Test With Inform** – Click to send an inform message using the selected Event Code to test if the CPE is able to communicate with the VigorACS server. ● **Event Code** – Select an event for the inform test. **Last Inform Response Time** – Displays the time of the most recent Inform Response message received from the VigorACS.
CPE Client	This section specifies the settings of the CPE Client. **Protocol** – Select Https if the connection is encrypted; otherwise select Http. **Port** – In the event of port conflicts, change the port number of the CPE. **Username** and **Password** – Enter the username and password that the VigorACS will use to connect to the CPE.
Periodic Inform Settings	**Enable** – The default setting is Enable, which means the CPE Client will periodically connect to the ACS Server to update its connection parameters at intervals specified in the Interval Time field. ● **Time Interval** - Set interval time or schedule time for the router to send notification to CPE. **Disable** - Select **Disable** to turn off periodic notifications.
STUN Settings	STUN allows the ACS Server to connect to the CPE Client even when the client is behind a network address translator (NAT). **Disable** - The default setting is Disable. **Enable** - Please Enter the relational settings listed below: ● **Server Address** – Enter the IP address of the STUN server. ● **Server Port** – Enter the port number of the STUN server. ● **Minimum Keep Alive Period** – If STUN is enabled, the

	CPE must periodically transmit binding requests to the server for the purpose of maintaining the binding with the Gateway. Enter the minimum interval between keep-alive messages that the CPE client sends to the ACS server. The default setting is 60 seconds. ● **Maximum Keep Alive Period** – If STUN is enabled, the CPE must send binding request to the server for the purpose of maintaining the binding with the Gateway. Enter the maximum interval between keep-alive messages that the CPE client sends to the ACS server. A value of -1 indicates that no maximum period is specified.
Apply Settings to APs	This feature is able to apply TR-069 settings (including STUN and ACS server settings) to all of APs managed by Vigor2927 at the same time. **Disable** – TR-069 and Related settings will not be applied to VigorAPs. **Enable** – TR-069 settings will be applied to VigorAPs after clicking **OK**. The VigorAP password must be specified. ● **AP Password** – Enter the password of the VigorAP that you want to apply Vigor2927's TR-069 settings. **Specify STUN Settings for APs** – After clicking the **Enable** radio button for Apply Settings to APs, if you want to apply specific STUN settings (i.e., different from the Vigor2927 STUN settings) to VigorAPs to meet specific requirements, check this box and enter the server IP address, server port, and minimum and maxmum keep alive periods respectively.

Select **OK** to save changes on the page, or **Clear** to reset all settings to factory defaults.

VII-1-2-2 Reporting Configuration

Information related to the router's health are divided into several categories and listed in this field. After checking the item(s), Vigor router will arrange and send corresponding data to VigorACS as a reference for the system administrator.



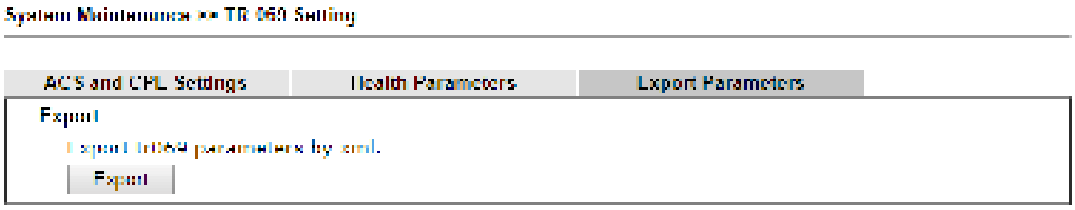
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
CPE Notification Settings	**Enable** - Check the box to select the notification item(s). Vigor router will send the utilization status to VigorACS.

Click **OK** to save changes on the page.

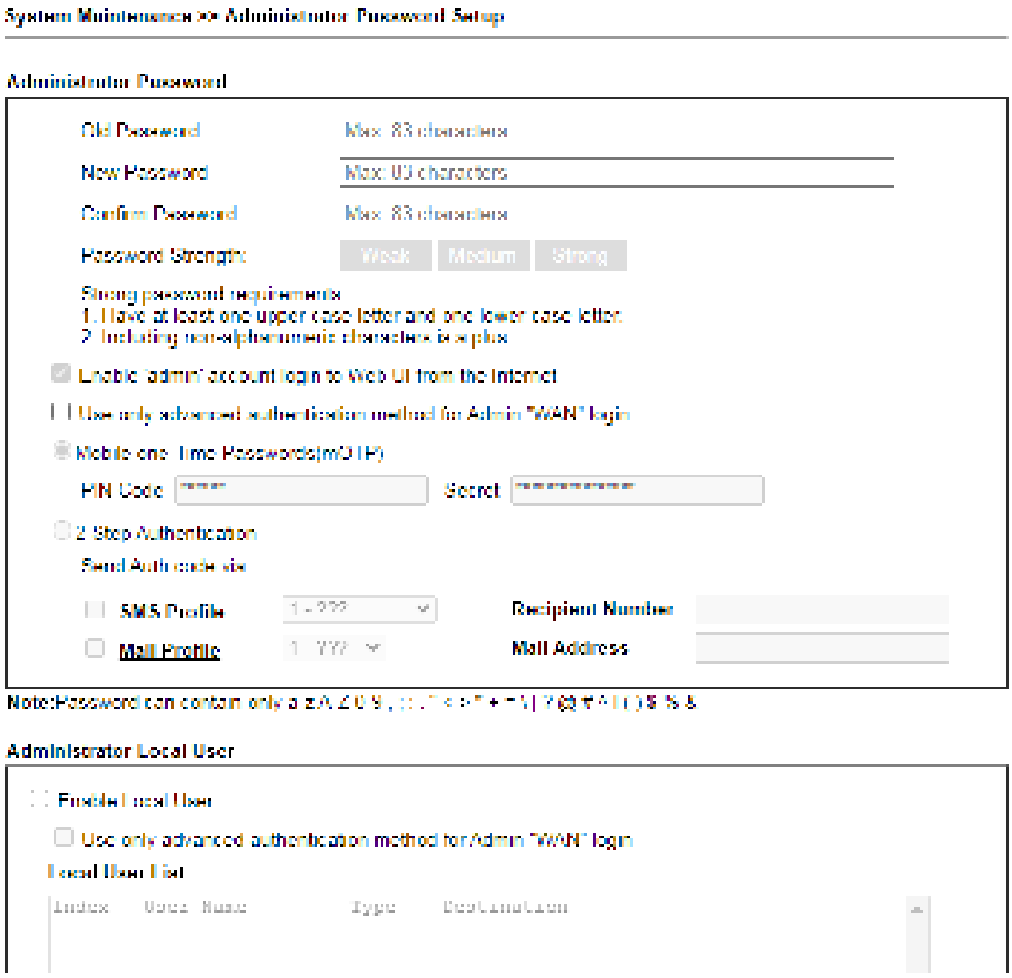
VII-1-2-3 Export Parameters

Click **Export** to save the TR-069 parameter settings as an ".xml".



VII-1-3 Administrator Password

This page allows you to set or change the administrator password.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Administrator Password	The administrator can login web user interface of Vigor router to modify all of the settings to fit the requirements. **Old Password** - Enter the current password. The factory default is "admin". **New Password** - Enter the new password. The maximum length of the password is 23 characters. **Confirm Password** - Enter the new password again for confirmation. **Password Strength** - Shows the security strength of the password specified above. **Enable 'admin' account login to Web UI from the Internet** - Select to allow the administrator to log in from the Internet. This option is enabled when Administrator Local User is enabled (see below). **Use only advanced authentication method for Admin "WAN" login** - Advanced authentication method can offer a **more secure** network connection. Select to require TOTP, mOTP or 2-step authentication when logging in from the WAN.

	• **Time-based One-time Password (TOTP) -** Please make sure the time zone of your router is correct. Then, install Google Authenticator APP on your cell phone. Open the APP to scan the QR code on this page. A one-time password will be shown on your phone. In the filed of **Validation Code**, enter the one-time password and click **Verify**. Now, the configuration is finished. You will be asked to enter the 2FA code on the after passing the username and password authentication. • **Mobile one-Time Password (mOTP)** – Select to allow the use of mOTP passwords. Enter the PIN Code and Secret settings for getting one-time passwords. • **2-Step Auth code via SMS Profile and/or Mail Profile –** Select the SMS and/or Mail profiles and the destination SMS number and/or email address for transmitting the password.
Administrator Local User	Usually, the system administrator has the highest privilege to modify the settings on the web user interface of the Vigor router. However, in some cases, it might be necessary to have other users in LAN to access into the web user interface of Vigor router. This feature allows you to add more administrators who can then log in to the web interface, with the same privileges as the administrator. **Enable Local User** – Check the box to allow other users to administer the router. **Specific User –** Create the new user account as the local user. Then specify the authentication method (dividing into Basic and Advanced) for the user account. • **User Name** – Enter a user name. • **Password** – Enter the password for the local user. • **Confirm Password** - Enter the new password again for

confirmation.

- **User Name and Password only** - If selected, you need to enter a user name and password.
- **Time-based One-time Password (TOTP) -** Please make sure the time zone of your router is correct. Then, install Google Authenticator APP on your cell phone. Open the APP to scan the QR code on this page. A one-time password will be shown on your phone.

In the filed of **Validation Code**, enter the one-time password and click **Verify**.

Now, the configuration is finished. You will be asked to enter the 2FA code on the after passing the username and password authentication.

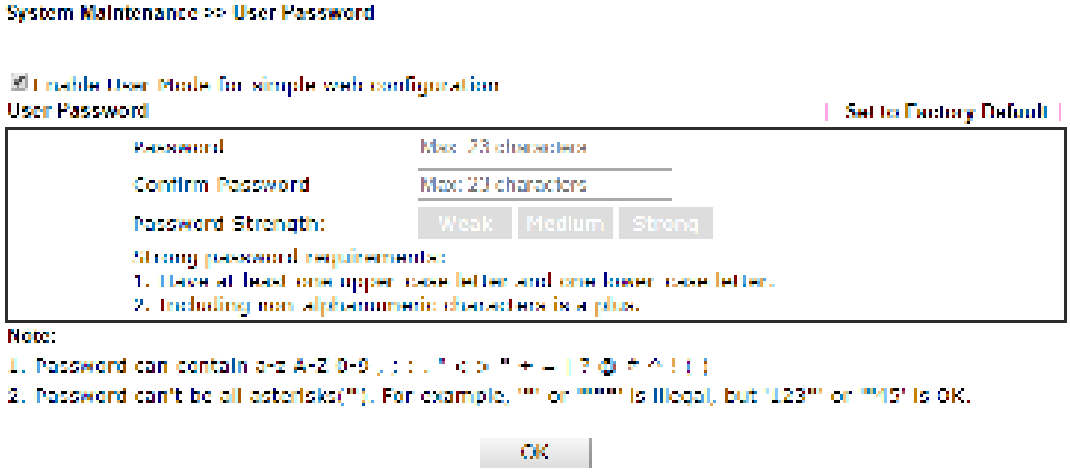
- **Mobile one-Time Password (mOTP)** – Select to allow the use of mOTP passwords. Enter the mOTP PIN Code and Secret that will be used to generate the one-time passwords.
- **2-Step Authentication via SMS Profile and/or Mail Profile** –Select the SMS and/or Mail profiles and the destination SMS number and/or email address for transmitting the password.
- **Enable Advanced Authentication method when login from "WAN"**– Advanced authentication method can offer a **more secure** network connection. Select to require mOTP or TOTP or 2-step authentication when logging in from the WAN.
- **Add** – After entering the user name and password above, click this button to create a new local user. The new user will be shown on the Local User List immediately.
- **Edit** – If you wish to change a user in the Local User List, select it, perform the necessary modifications, and click this button to update the user.
- **Delete** – If you wish to delete a user in the Local User List, select it and click this button to remove it.

	• **Local User List** – Shows all the users that are set up to administer the router.
Administrator LDAP Setting	**Enable LDAP/AD login for admin users** – Select to allow authentication using an LDAP/Active Directory Server. **LDAP Server Profiles Setup** – Click to set up the LDAP/Active Directory server.

Click **OK** to save changes on the page, and you will be directed to the login screen. Please log in with the new password.

VII-1-4 User Password

This page allows you to set new password for user operation.



Available settings are explained as follows:

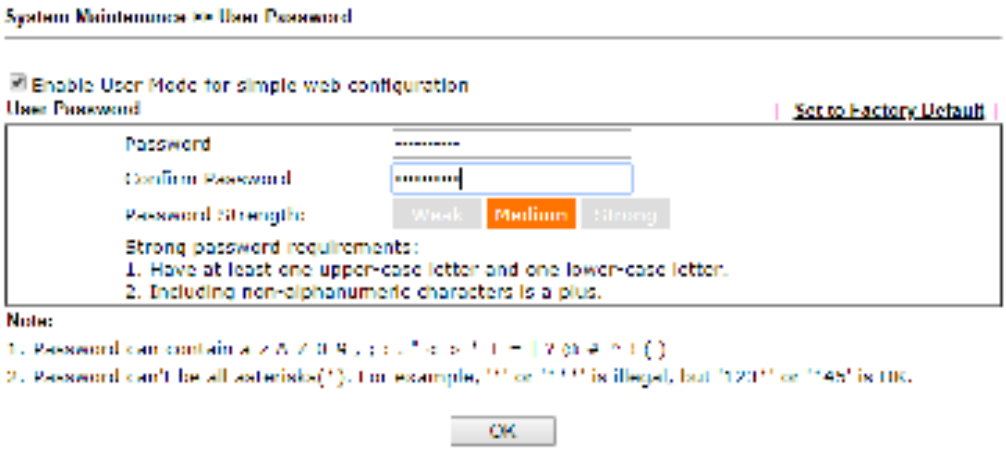
Item	Description
Enable User Mode for simple web configuration	Check this box to enable User Mode for web user interface with the password typed here for simple web configuration. The simple web user interface settings differ from those on the full web user interface seen when logged in using the administrator password.
Password	Enter the password. The maximum length of the password is 31 characters.
Confirm Password	Enter the password again for verification.
Password Strength	Shows the security strength of the password specified above.
Set to Factory Default	Click to return to the factory default setting.

Click **OK** to save changes on the page, and you will be directed to the login screen. Please window will appear. Please log in with the new password.

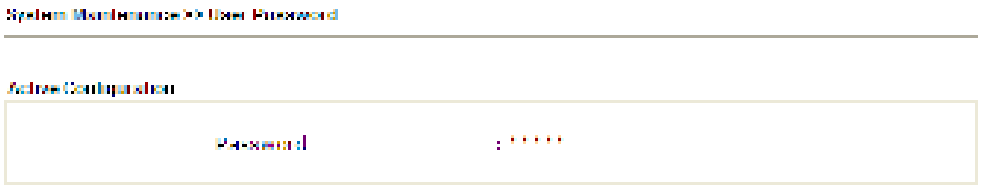
Here are the steps involved in setting up the router for User Mode Access:

1. Navigate to **System Maintenance>>User Password** in the web user interface.

2. Check the box of **Enable User Mode for simple web configuratio**n to enable user mode operation. Enter a new password in the Password field and click OK.

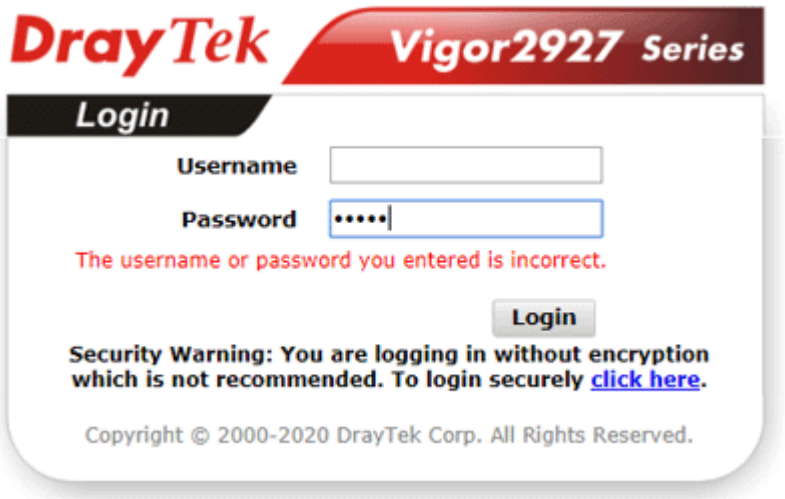


3. The following screen will appear. Click **OK**.



4. Log out the Vigor router web user interface by clicking the Logout button.

5. The following window will be shown. Enter the new user password in the **Password** field and click **Login**.



6. The main screen with User Mode will be shown:

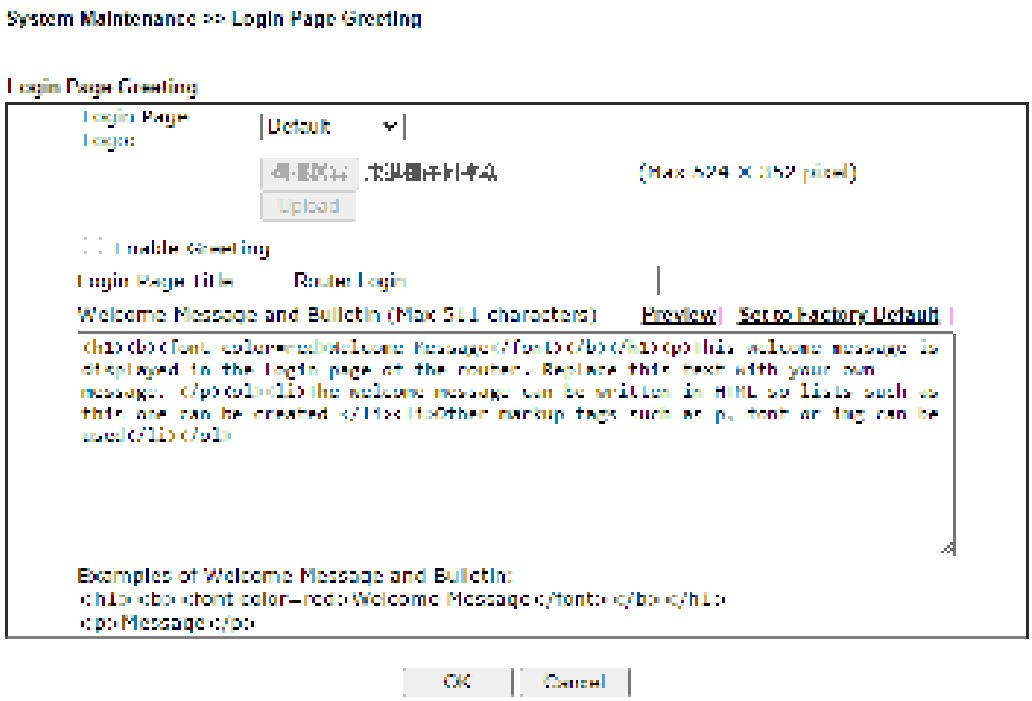
Only basic settings are available in User Mode. These are a subset of the Admin Mode settings.

Info	Setting in User Mode can be configured as same as in Admin Mode.

VII-1-5 Login Page Greeting

When you want to access into the web user interface of Vigor router, the system will ask you to offer username and password first. At that moment, the background of the web page is blank and no heading will be displayed on the Login window. This page allows you to specify login URL and the heading on the Login window if you have such requirement.

This section allows you to customize the login page by adding a message and/or setting the page title.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Login Page Logo	Set an image which will be shown above the log in window. **Default -** The **Enable Greeting** feature is available to set the login page title. **Blank -** No image / no greeting. **Upload a file -** Choose an image file and click Upload. Later the selected image will be shown on the log in window.
Enable Greeting	Check this box to enable the login customization function.
Login Page Title	Enter a brief description (e.g., Welcome to DrayTek) which will be shown on the heading of the login dialog.
Welcome Message and Bulletin	Enter words or sentences here. It will be displayed for bulletin message. In addition, it can be displayed on the login dialog at the bottom. Note that do not enter URL redirect link here.
Preview	Click to preview the customized login window based on the settings entered on this page.
Set to Factory Default	Click to return to the factory default setting.

Below shows an example of a customized login page with the values entered in the **Login Page Title** and **Welcome Message and Bulletin** fields.

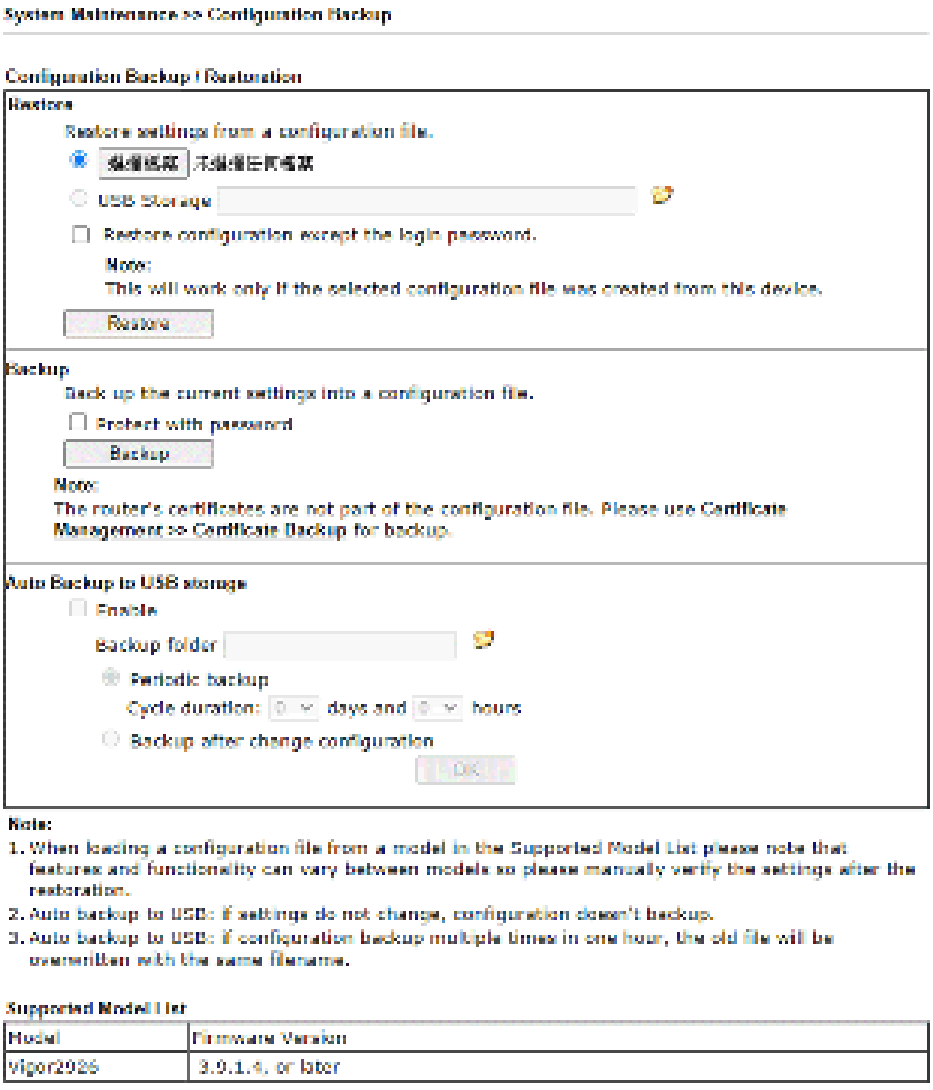
VII-1-6 Configuration Backup

This function allows the backup and restoration of router settings. In addition to restoring Vigor2927's own configuration backup, it is possible to restore backups from certain DrayTek routers such as Vigor2820, Vigor2830 and Vigor2850 series on the Vigor2927.

Backing up the Configuration

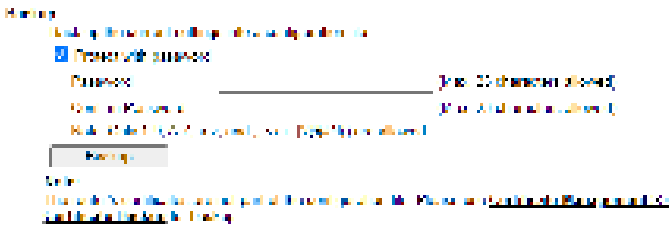
Follow the steps below to backup your configuration.

1. Go to **System Maintenance** >> **Configuration Backup**. The following page will be shown.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Restore	**Restore settings from a configuration file** – Click the **Select File** button to specify a file to be restored or click **USB Storage** (if a USB storage disk connected) to choose the configuration file. **Restore configuration except the login password** – Select to exclude the password from getting restored from the backup. **Restore** - Click to initiate restoration of configuration. If the

	backup file is encrypted, you will be asked to enter the password.
Backup	Click it to perform the configuration backup of this router. **Protect with password-** Select to encrypt the backup with a password. You will be prompted to enter the password as shown below:  ● **Password** – Enter a new password for encrypting the configuration file. ● **Confirm Password** – Enter the new password again for confirmation. **Backup** - Click to initiate the backup process.
Auto Backup to USB storage	The configuration can be stored to a USB connecting to Vigor router as a backup. **Enable** - Check the box to enable the function. **Backup folder** – Set the path for downloading. **Periodic backup** – Set the circle duration for backup. **Backup after change configuration** – Backup will be executed whenever the configuration is changed.

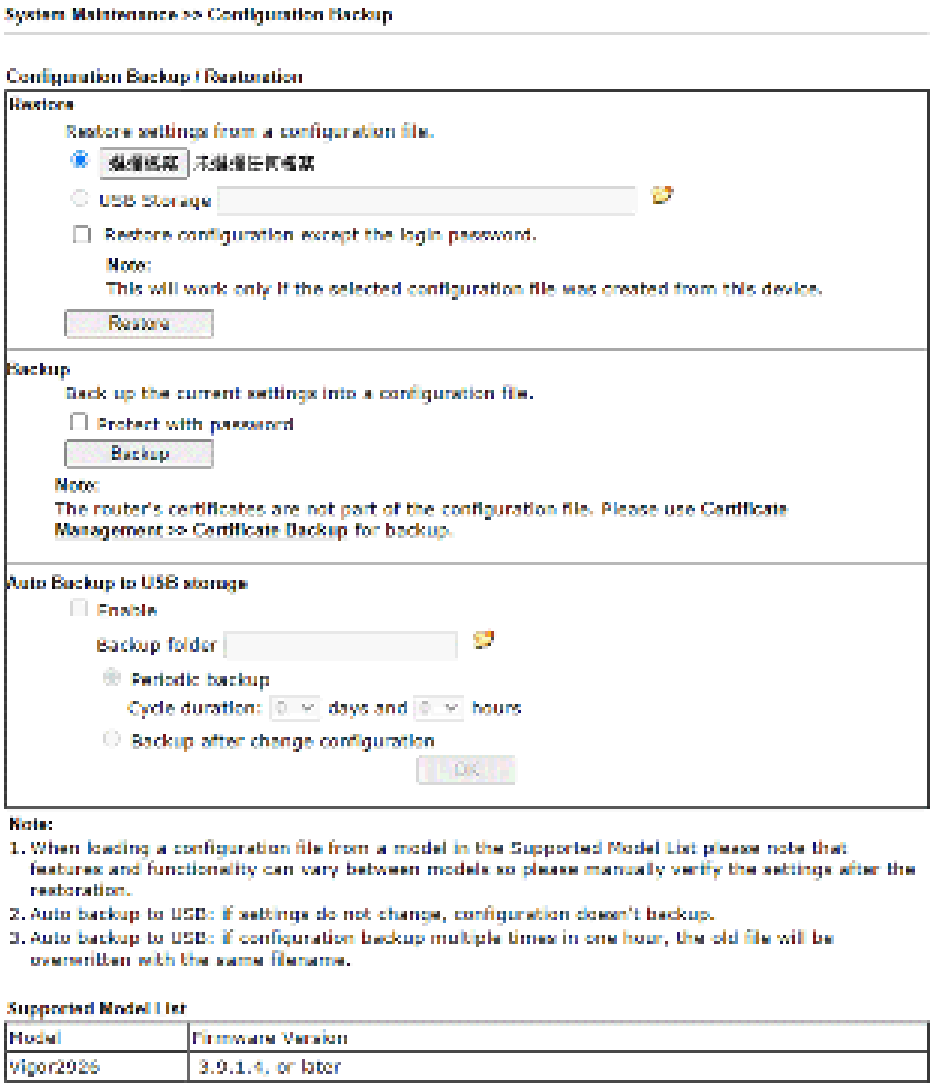
2. Click the **Backup** button, and the File Download dialog will be shown. Depending on your browser, you may be prompted to select a location to save the file, or the file may be saved in the default download location of your browser. The configuration will download automatically to your computer as a file named **config.cfg**.

The above example is using **Windows** platform for demonstrating examples. The **Mac** or **Linux** platform will appear different windows, but the backup function is still available.

Info	Configuration Backup does not include certificates stored on the router. Please back up certificates separately by going to **Certificate Management >> Certificate Backup**.

Restoring the Configuration

1. Go to **System Maintenance** >> **Configuration Backup**. The following windows will be shown.

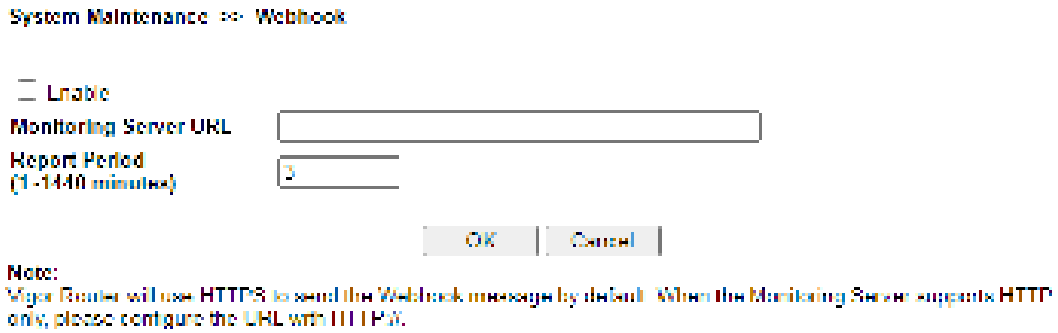


2. Click the **Choose File** button under **Backup** to bring up the open file dialog box to select the configuration file to be uploaded and restored.

3. Click the **Restore** button and wait for few seconds.

VII-1-7 Webhook

Vigor router will send a report (webhook message) including WAN up, down, CPU usage, memory usage and etc. to a monitoring server periodically.



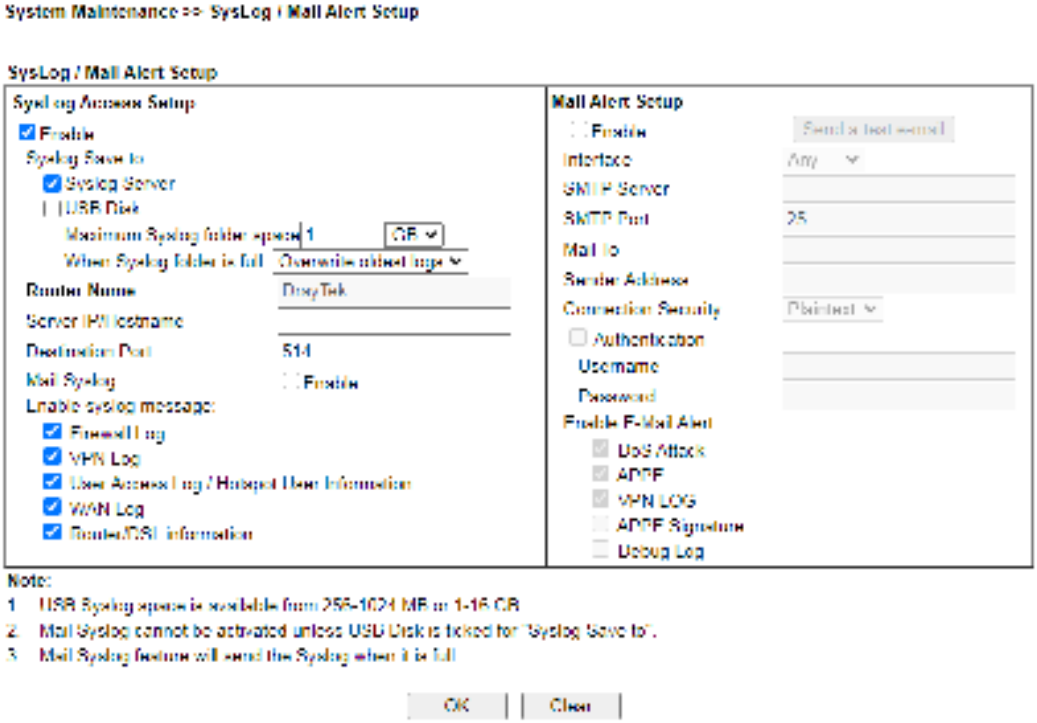
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Select it to enable this function.
Monitoring Server URL	Enter the URL of a server.
Report Period	Define the interval time for each report to be sent.

Select **OK** to save changes on the page.

VII-1-8 Syslog/Mail Alert

SysLog function is provided for users to monitor router.



Available settings are explained as follows:

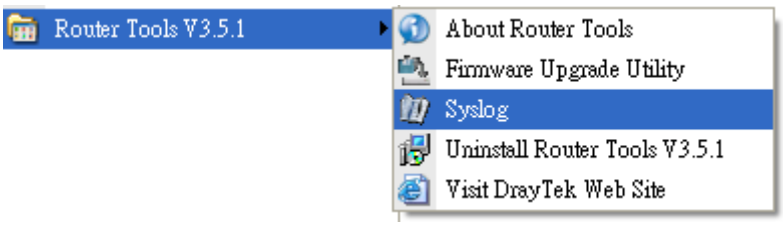
Item	Description
SysLog Access Setup	**Enable** - Select to enable the Syslog function. **Syslog Save to** - Check Syslog Server and / or USB Disk. ● **Syslog Server** - Events will be sent to a Syslog server. ● **USB Disk** - Events will be saved to a USB storage device connected to the router. ● **Maximum Syslog folder space** - Set a space (unit GB/MB) to store event logs. ● **When Syslog folder is full** - Specify the action (overwrite the olderest logs or stop logging) to be executed.
Router Name	Shows the name of the router set in **System Maintenance >> Management**. This name will be used to identify the router in the Syslog entries. To set or modify the router name, click the hyperlink and you will be taken to **System Maintenance >> Management** where you can enter the value. **Server IP Address / Hostname -** Enter the IP address / hostname of the Syslog server. **Destination Port -** Enter the port for the Syslog server. **Mail Syslog –** Select to enable sending Syslog messages by

	email. **Enable syslog message -** Select the events to be recorded by syslog.
Mail Alert Setup	**Enable** - Select to enable the Mail Alert. **Send a test e-mail -** Click to send a test email message using the settings below. **Interface** - Specify the WAN interface for a mail passing through. **SMTP Server** - Enter the address of the SMTP server used to send email. **SMTP Port -** Enter the port of the SMTP server. Default setting is 25. **Mail To -** Enter the email address of the recipient. **Sender Address -** Enter the email address of the sender. **Connection Security** - Select a method (Plaintext, SSL or StartTLS) to ensure the connection security. SSL means to use port 465 for SMTP server for some e-mail server uses https as the transmission method. ● Accept using plain text if StartTLS connection failed. ● Force StartTLS. Stop if StartTLS connection failed. **Authentication -** Select this checkbox and enter the username and password if the SMTP server requires authentication. ● **User Name -** Enter the user name for authentication. ● **Password -** Enter the password for authentication. **Enable E-mail Alert -** Select the event types that will trigger email alerts.

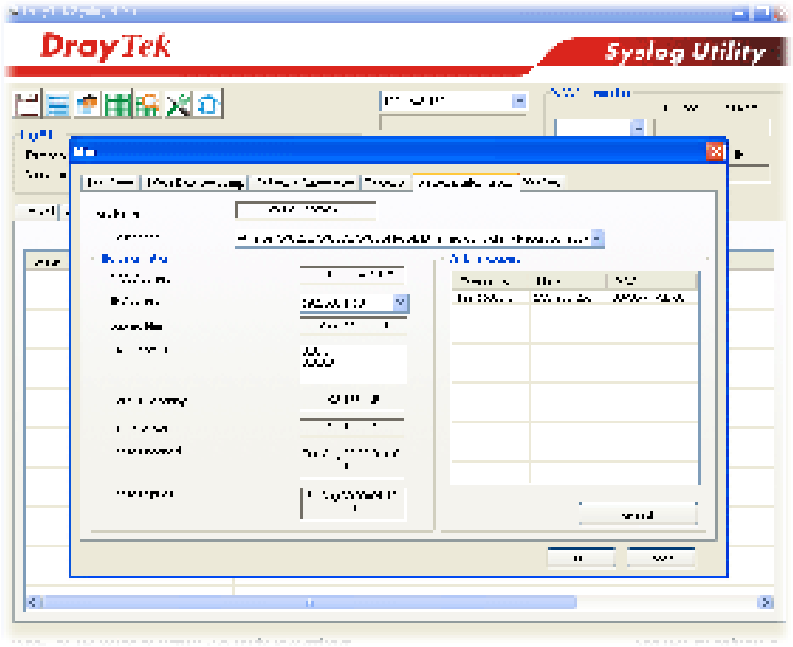
Select **OK** to save changes on the page, or **Clear** to reset all settings to factory defaults.

To view the Syslog message, please follow the steps below:

1. On the **Syslog / Mail Alert Setup** screen, enter the monitor PC's IP address in the **Server IP Address** field.
2. Install the Router Tools from DrayTek web site. After installation, start Syslog by clicking on **Router Tools>>Syslog** in the Windows Start Menu.

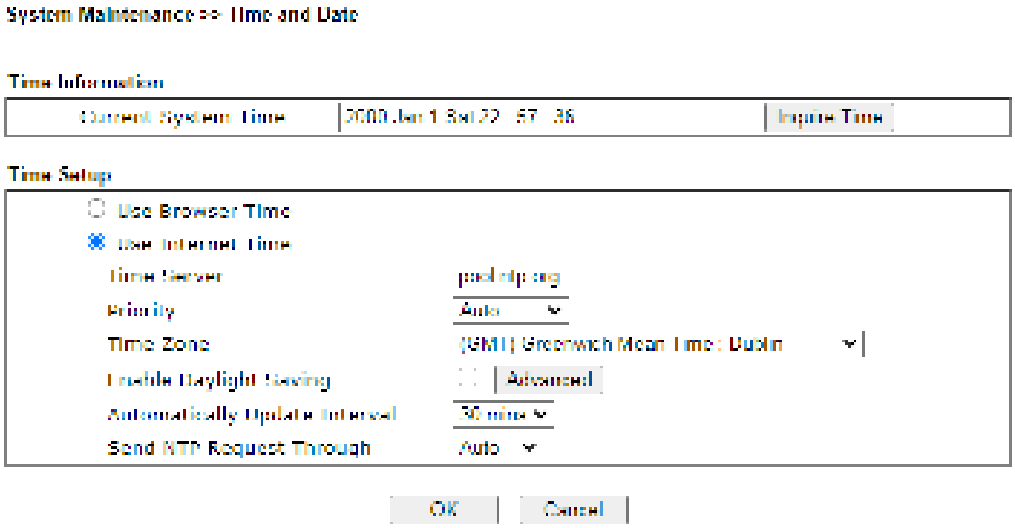


3. In the Syslog application, select the router you wish to monitor. Rember to select the network adapter to be used to connect to the router under Network Information, or else Syslog traffic cannot be received from the router.

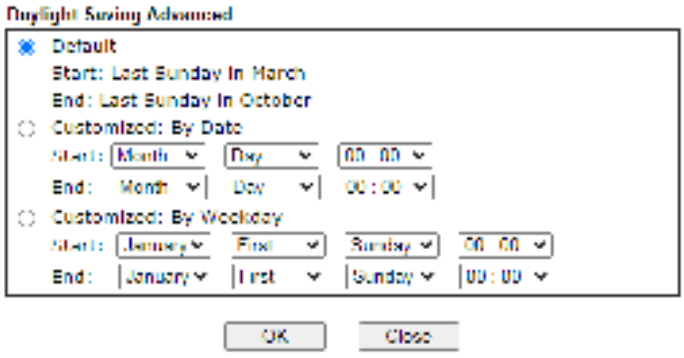


VII-1-9 Time and Date

This section allows you to configure settings related to the system date and time.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Current System Time	Click **Inquire Time** to retrieve the current time from the time server.
Use Browser Time	Select this option to let the router set its system time using the time reported by the web browser.
Use Internet Time	Select this option to let the browser set its system time by retrieving time information from the specified network time server using the Network Time Protocol (NTP).
Time Server	Enter the address of the time server.
Priority	Select **Auto** or **IPv6 First** as the priority.
Time Zone	Select the time zone where the router is located.
Enable Daylight Saving	Check the box to enable Daylight Saving Time (DST) if it is applicable to your location. **Advanced** - Click to enter a custom schedule to enable DST.  Use the default time setting or set user defined time for your requirement. **Default** - Uses the default DST schedule for the time zone.

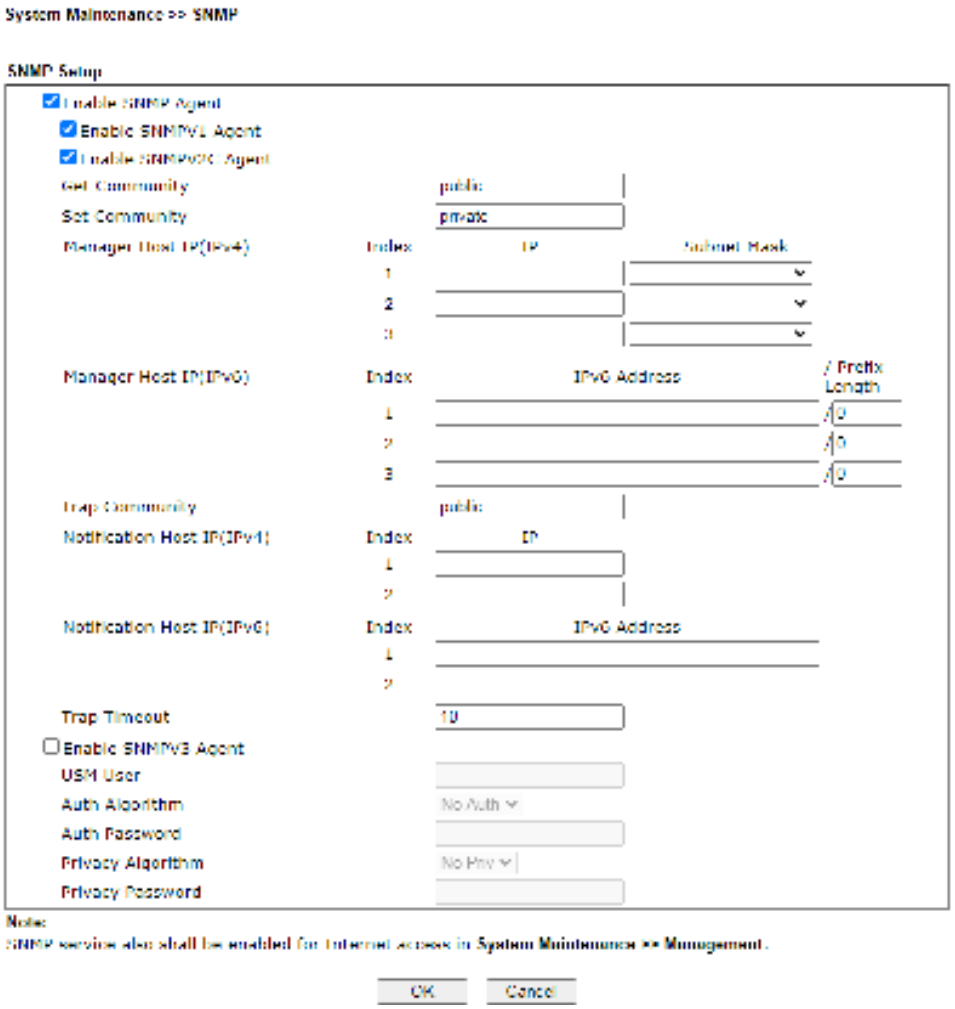
	Date Range – Select this option if DST starts and ends on fixed dates. **Yearly** – Select this option if DST starts and ends on certain days of the week.
Automatically Update Interval	Select the time interval at which the router updates the system time.
Send NTP Request Through	Specify a WAN interface to send NTP request for time synchronization.

Select **OK** to save changes on the page, or **Cancel** to discard changes without saving.

VII-1-10 SNMP

This section allows you to configure settings for SNMP and SNMPv3 services.

The SNMPv3 is more secure than SNMP through the use of encryption (supports AES and DES) and authentication (supports MD5 and SHA) for the management needs.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable SNMP Agent	Check to enable SNMP function. Then, enable SNMPV1 agent/SNMPV2C agent.
Get Community	Enter the Get Community string. The default setting is **public**. Devices that send requests to retrieve information

	using get commands must pass the correct Get Community string. The maximum allowed length is 23 characters.
Set Community	Enter the Set Community string. The default setting is **private**. Devices that send requests to change settings using set commands must pass the correct Set Community string. The maximum length of the text is 23 characters.
Manager Host IP (IPv4)	Enter the IPv4 address of hosts that are allowed to issue SNMP commands. If this field is left blank, any IPv4 LAN host is allowed to issue SNMP commands.
Manager Host IP (IPv6)	Enter the IPv6 address of hosts that are allowed to issue SNMP commands. If this field is left blank, any IPv6 LAN host is allowed to issue SNMP commands.
Trap Community	Enter the Trap Community string. The default setting is public. Devices that send unsolicited messages to the SNMP console must pass the correct Trap Community string. The maximum length of the text is 23 characters.
Notification Host IP (IPv4)	Enter the IPv4 address of hosts that are allowed to be sent SNMP traps.
Notification Host IP (IPv6)	Enter the IPv6 address of hosts that are allowed to be sent SNMP traps.
Trap Timeout	The default setting is 10 seconds.
Enable SNMPV3 Agent	Check to enable SNMPV3 function.
USM User	USM means user-based security mode. Enter the username to be used for authentication. The maximum allowed length is 23 characters.
Auth Algorithm	Choose one of the hashing methods to be used with the authentication algorithm.
Auth Password	Enter a password for authentication. The maximum allowed length is 23 characters.
Privacy Algorithm	Choose an encryption method as the privacy algorithm.
Privacy Password	Enter a password for privacy. The maximum allowed length is 23 characters.

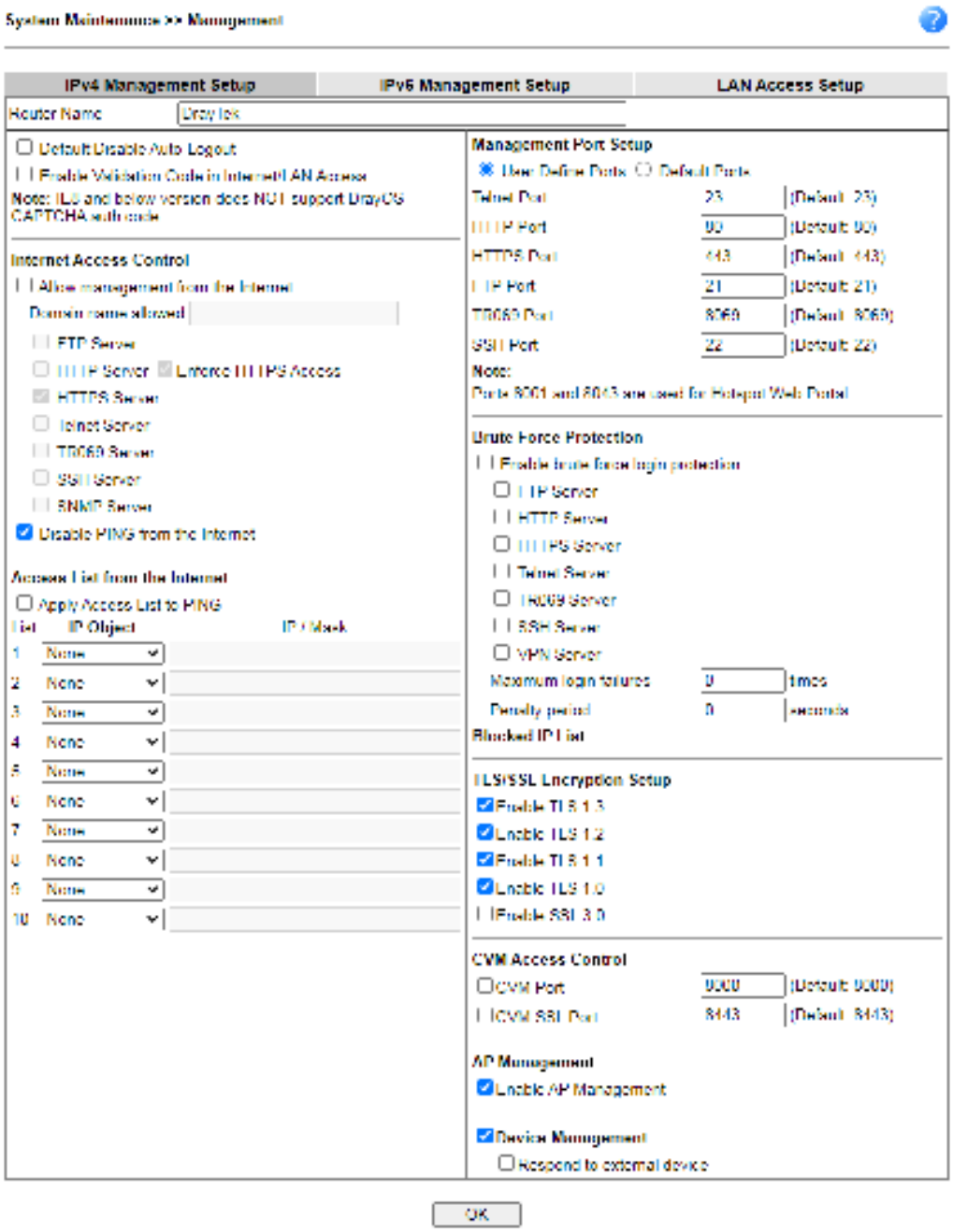
Select **OK** to save changes on the page, or **Cancel** to discard changes without saving.

VII-1-11 Management

This page allows you to manage the settings for Internet/LAN Access Control, Access List from Internet, Management Port Setup, TLS/SSL Encryption Setup, CVM Access Control and Device Management.

Management setup for IPv4 and IPv6 are on separate tab pages.

IPv4 Management Setup



Available settings are explained as follows:

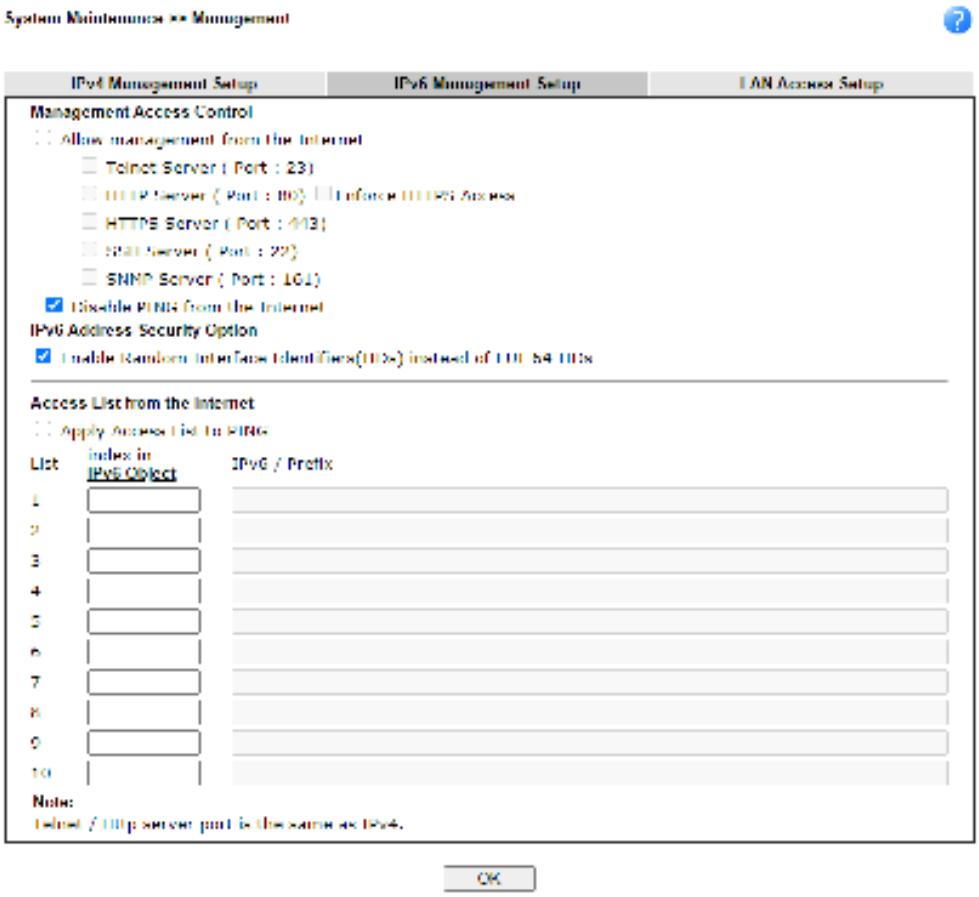
Item	Description
Router Name	Enter the router name as provided by ISP.

Default: Disable Auto-Logout	If enabled, the auto-logout function for web user interface will be disabled. The web user interface will not terminate until you manually click the Logout icon.
Enable Validation Code in Internet/LAN Access	If enabled, Vigor router will require users to enter a validation code as shown in an image when they log in.
Internet Access Control	**Allow management from the Internet** - Enable the checkbox to allow system administrators to login from the Internet, and then select the specific services that are allowed to be remotely administered. **Domain name allowed** – This setting is only available if DNS filtering is enabled, applying DNS filter profile in firewall rules, or enabling DNS Filter Local Setting. The router will only allow connections to the WebUI using domain addresses configured in either DDNS profiles or this section. If DNS filtering is disabled, this setting will be disabled, and any domain address that resolves to the router's WAN IP address can be used to connect to the WebUI. **Disable PING from the Internet -** Select to reject all PING packets from the Internet. For increased security, this setting is enabled by default.
Access List from the Internet	The ability of system administrators to log into the router can be restricted to up to 10 specific hosts or networks. **Apply Access List to PING** – When this option is checked and **Disable PING from the Internet** is unchecked, pings originating from the Internet will be accepted only if they are from one of the IP addresses and/or subnet masks specified below. This option has no effect if **Disable PING from the Internet** is checked, which blocks all pings from the Internet. **Type** - Select **IP Object**. **Index** - Select the index number of a configured IP object. **Description** - Shows a brief comment for the selected IP object (with subnet mask).
Management Port Setup	**User Define Ports -** Check to specify user-defined port numbers for the Telnet, HTTP, HTTPS, FTP, TR-069 and SSH servers. **Default Ports -** Check to use standard port numbers for the servers.
Brute Force Protection	Any client trying to access into Internet via Vigor router will be asked for passing through user authentication. Such feature can prevent Vigor router from attacks when a hacker

	tries every possible combination of letters, numbers and symbols until find out the correct combination of password. **Enable brute force login protection** – Select to enable detection of brute force login attempts. **Maximum login failure** – Specify the maximum number of failed login attempts before further login is blocked. **Penalty period** – Set the lockout time after maximum number of login attempts has been exceeded. The user will be unable to attempt to log in until the specified time has passed. **Blocked IP List** – Display, in a new browser window, IP addresses that are currently blocked from logging into the router.
TLS/SSL Encryption Setup	**Enable SSL 3.0/1.0/1.1/1.2/1.3** – Check the box to enable SSL 3.0/1.0/1.1/1.2/1.3 encryption protocols. For improved security, the HTTPS and SSL VPN servers that are built into the router have been upgraded to TLS 1.x protocol. If you are using an old web browser (eg. IE 6.0) or an old version of the SmartVPN Client, you may need to enable SSL 3.0 to connect to the router. However, it is recommended that you instead upgrade your web browser or SmartVPN client to a version that supports TLS protocols that are far more secure than SSL.
CVM Access Control	**CVM Port** – Check the box to enable Central VPN Management port setting. **CVM SSL Port** – Check the box to enable Central VPN Management SSL port setting.
AP Management	**Enable AP Management** – Check to enable the access point management function. If not, menu items related to **Central Management>>AP** will be hidden.
Device Management	Check to enable the device management function. **Respond to external device** – If selected, Vigor2927 will function as a slave device. When an external device (master device) sends packets to the Vigor2927 to attempt to manage it, the Vigor2927 will respond to the request coming from the external device which is able to manage Vigor2927.

Select **OK** to save changes on the page.

IPv6 Management Setup

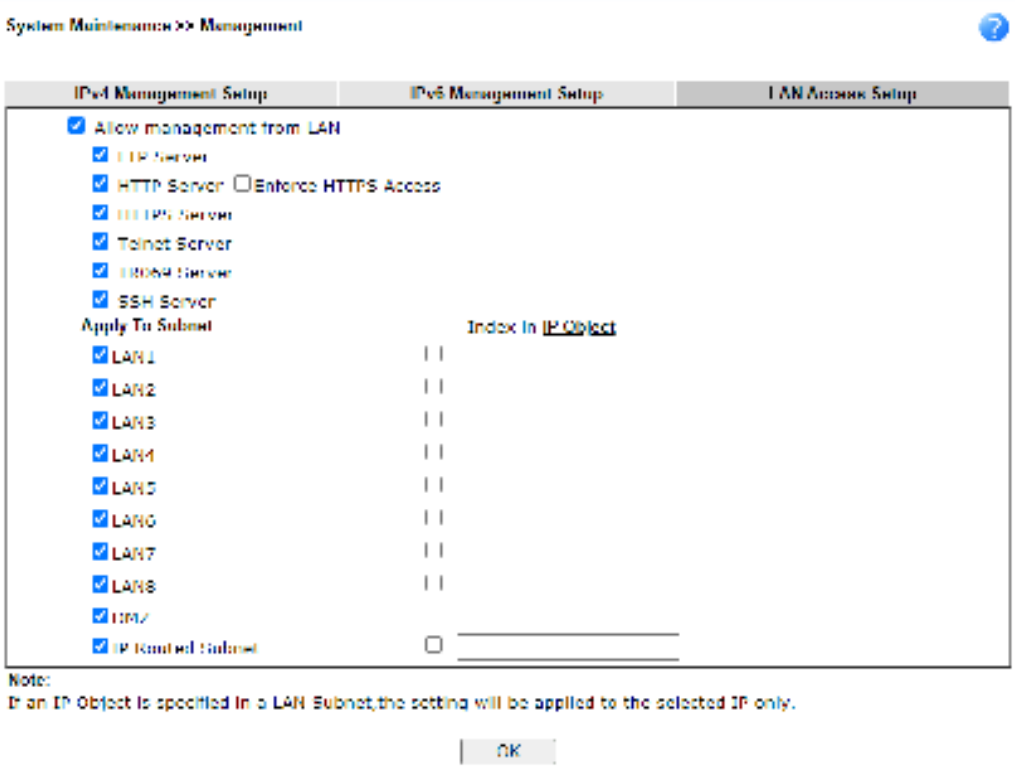


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Management Access Control	**Allow management from the Internet** - Check to enable the function. Select the servers that system administrators are allowed to manage from the Internet. **Disable PING from the Internet** - Check to reject all PING packets from the Internet. For increased security, this setting is enabled by default.
IPv6 Address Security Option	**Enable Random Interface Identifiers (IIDs)... -** The IPv6 address will be generated randomly but not using LAN/WAN MAC to prevent the attack from the hacker.
Access List from the Inernet	You could specify that the system administrator can only login from up to 10 designated hosts or networks defined in the list. **Index in IPv6 Object**- Enter the index number of the IPv6 object profile. Related IP address will appear automatically.

Select **OK** to save changes on the page.

LAN Access Setup



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Allow management from LAN	Enable the checkbox to allow system administrators to login from LAN interface. There are several servers provided by the system which allow you to manage the router from LAN interface. Check the box(es) to specify.
Apply To Subnet	Check the LAN interface for the administrator to use for accessing into web user interface of Vigor router. **Index in IP Object**- Check the box and enter the index number of the IP object profile. Note that the Address Type selected for that IP object must not be Any Address.

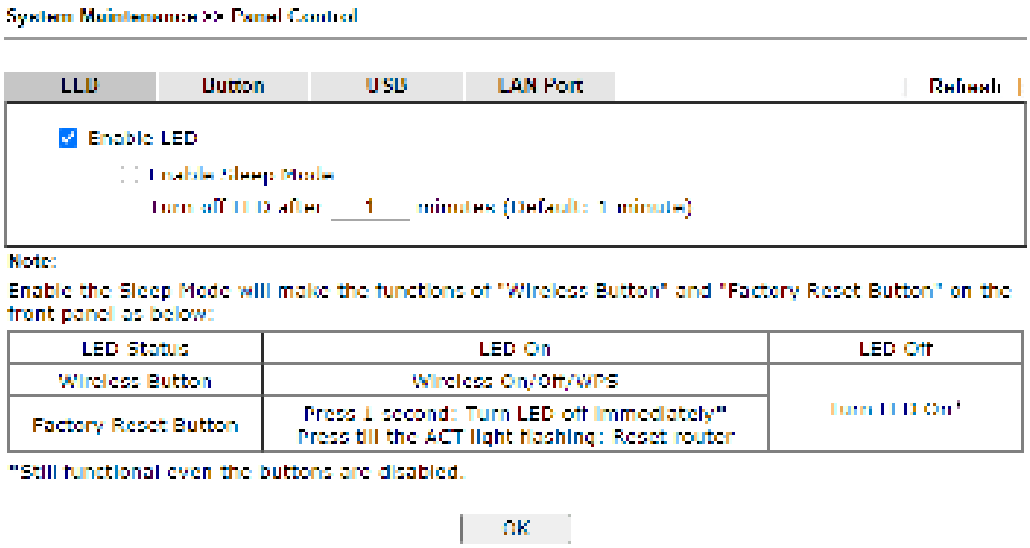
Select **OK** to save changes on the page.

VII-1-12 Panel Control

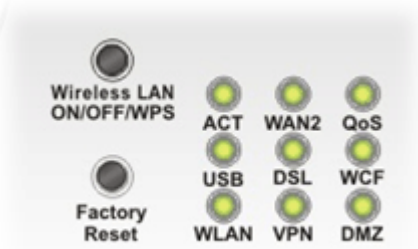
You may customize the behavior of the LEDs, buttons, WLAN, USB and LAN ports on the front panel.

For LED

By default, LEDs on the front panel illuminate or blink during operation to show the status of the various functions on the router. However, you may configure them to remain off at all times, or remain off until a button is pressed to wake them up.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Refresh	Click to refresh the page to display the latest information.
Enable LED	Select to enable the LEDs to function according to the configured settings. Deselect to disable LEDs entirely.
Enable Sleep Mode	Select to let the system turn off the LEDs after the specified number of minutes has elapsed. When Sleep Mode is enabled, the LEDs can be woken up by pressing one of the following buttons: ● Wireless LAN ON/OFF/WPS on the front panel ● Factory Reset on the front panel ● Wake up LED on this configuration page 
Status	Shows the status of the LEDs. When the following is shown, the LEDs are in sleep mode. **Status :** Sleep Wake up LED To wake them up, do one of the following actions: ● press the **Wake up LED** button on this page ● press the **Wireless On/Off/WPS** button on the front panel

	● press the **Factory Reset** button on the front panel. When the following is shown, the LEDs are awake. To put them to sleep immediately, perform one of the following actions: ● press the **LED sleep immediately** button on this page ● press the Factory Reset button on the front panel
Wake up LED	Click to resume operation of the LED after they have gone to sleep.

Select **OK** to save changes on the page.

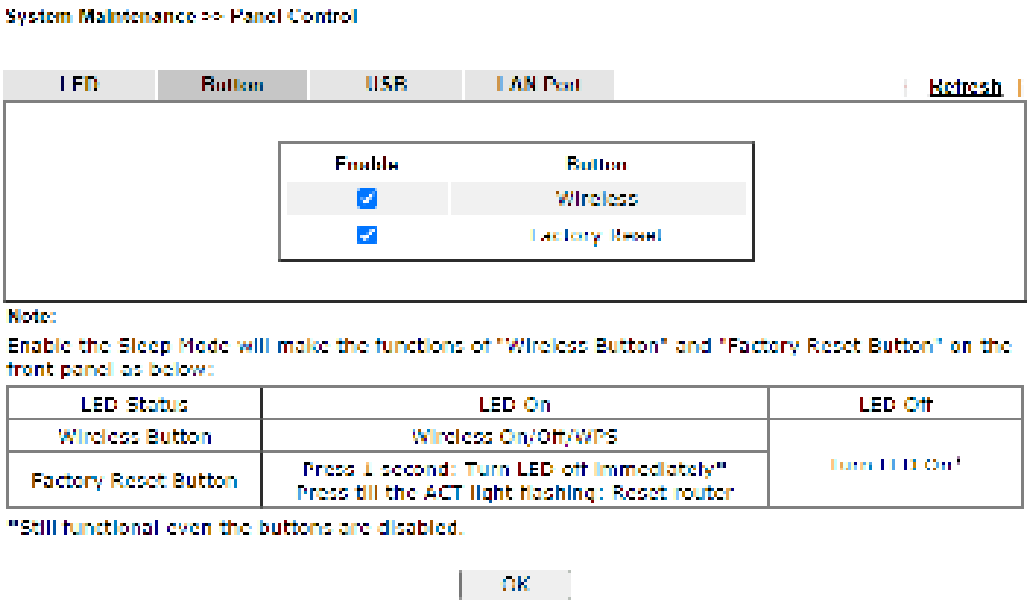
For Button

The primary functions of the **Factory Reset** and **Wireless ON/OFF/WPS** front-panel buttons (reset to factory defaults and wireless control, respectively) are enabled by default, but they can be enabled or disabled as needed.

When the **Factory Reset** button is set to **Disabled**, the router cannot be reset during normal operation. Other functions of the reset button (such as starting up the TFTP server to upload firmware during power on, and controlling the illumination of the front panel LEDs when LED sleep mode is enabled) can still be used.

When the **Wireless ON/OFF/WPS** button is set to **Disabled**, the button cannot be used to turn on or off the wireless network, nor can it be used to start the WPS pairing process. However, the front panel LEDs can be woken up when LED sleep mode is enabled.

Click the **Button** tab to get the following page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

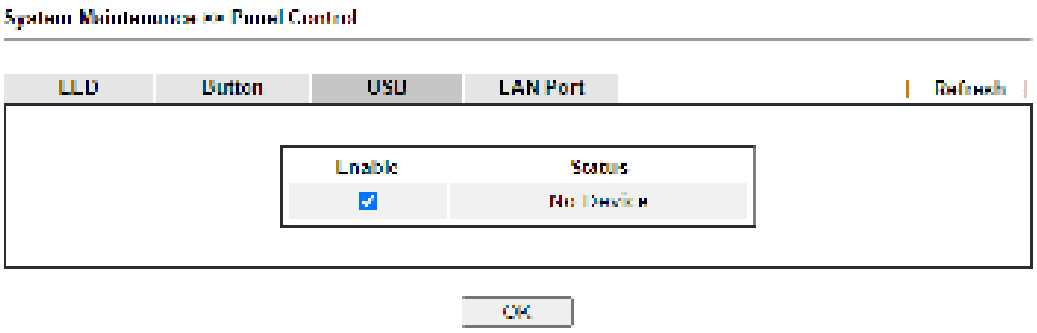
Item	Description
Refresh	Click to refresh the page to display the latest information.

Enable Factory Reset Button	The default value is **Enabled**. Deselect to disable the reset function of the factory reset button. Disabling the Factory Reset button only prevents it from being used to reboot Vigor router with default settings. It can still be used to wake up the LEDs when LED sleep mode is enabled.
Enable Wireless Button	The default value is **Enabled**. Deselect to disable the ability of the Wireless button to control WLAN and WPS functions. Disabling the wireless button only prevents it from being used to control WLAN functions. It can still be used to wake up the LEDs when LED sleep mode is enabled.

Select **OK** to save changes on the page.

For USB

The USB ports can be individually enabled or disabled. When a USB port is disabled, attached devices will not be recognized by the router.



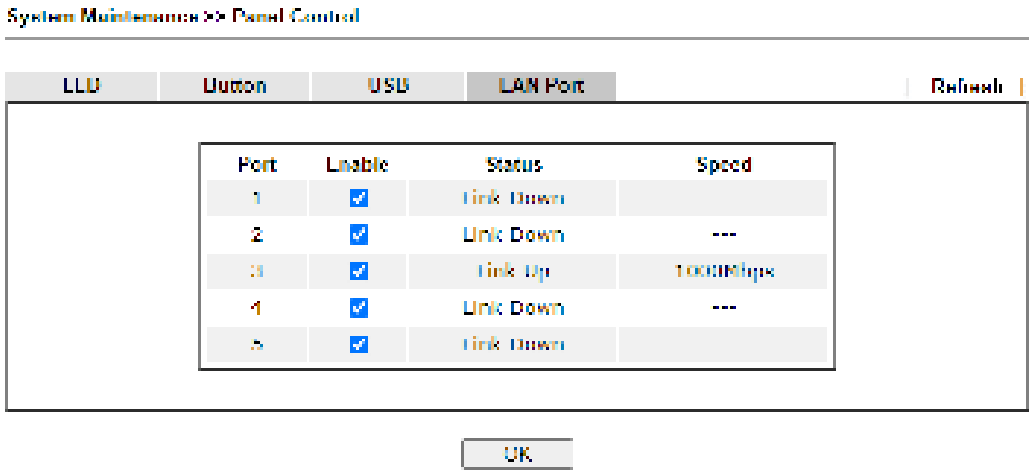
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Refresh	Click to refresh the page to display the latest information.
Port	The number corresponds to the USB port number shown on the front panel.
Enable	Deselect to disable the USB port. The default value is enabled.
Status	Shows the status of the USB port. **No device** – no USB device is connected to the port. **Connected** – a USB device is connected to the port. **---** – the USB port is disabled.

Select **OK** to save changes on the page.

For LAN Port

The 5 LAN ports can be individually enabled or disabled. When a LAN port is disabled, attached devices will not be recognized by the router.



Available settings are explained as follows:

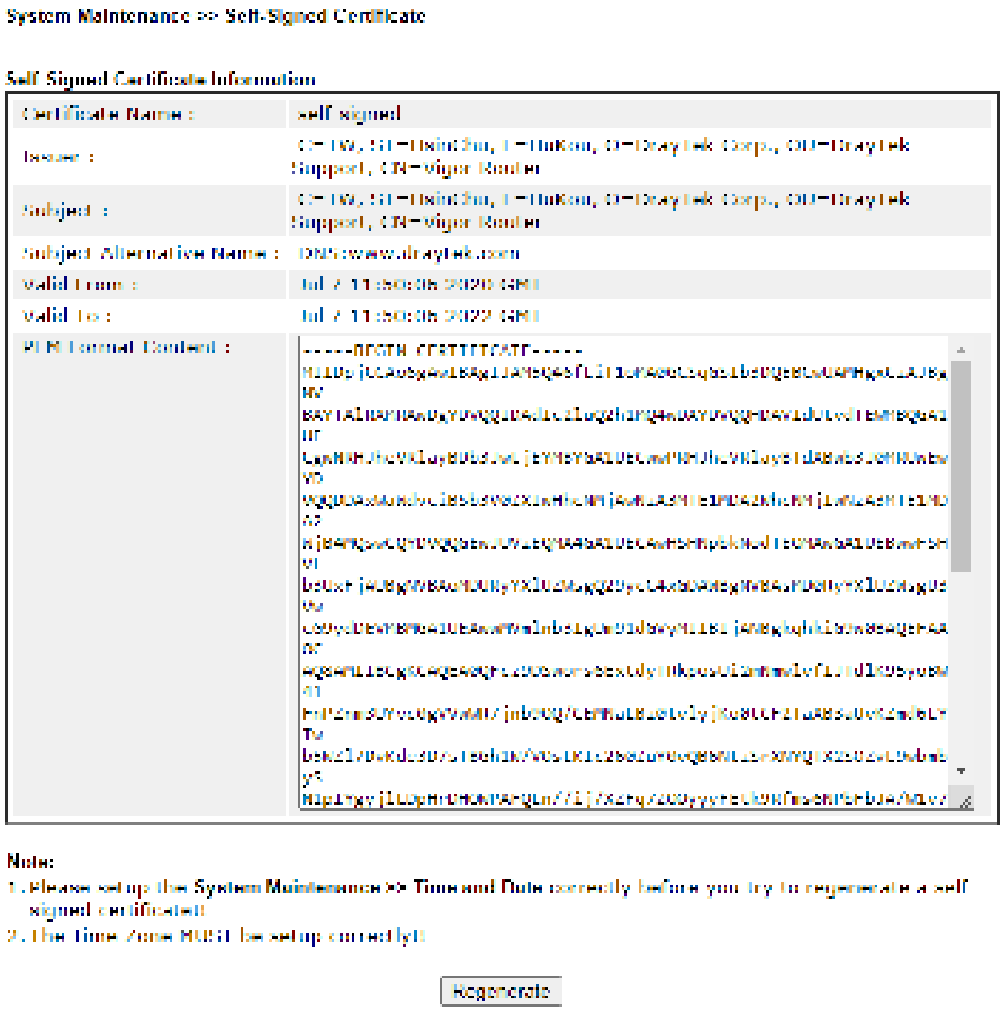
Item	Description
Refresh	Click to refresh the page to display the latest information.
Port	The number corresponds to the LAN port number shown on the front panel.
Enable	Deselect to disable the LAN port. The default value is enabled.
Status	Shows the status of the USB port. **Link Up** – An active Ethernet device is connected to the port. **Link Down** – No active Ethernet device is detected. **---** – The LAN port is disabled.
Speed	Shows the negotiated speed of the LAN port. **1000Mbps** – Negotiated speed of the LAN port is 1000 Mbps. **100Mbps** – Negotiated speed of the LAN port is 100 Mbps. **10Mpbs** – Negotiated speed of the LAN port is 10 Mbps. **---** – The LAN port is disabled or there is no active device connected.

Select **OK** to save changes on the page.

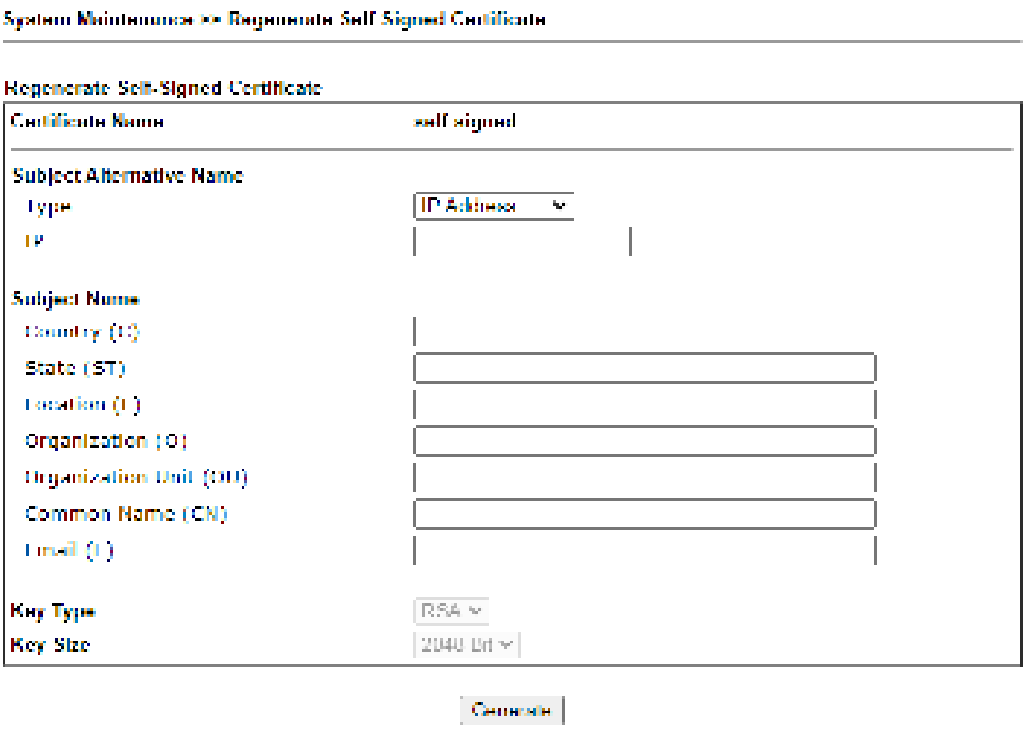
VII-1-13 Self-Signed Certificate

A self-signed certificate is a *unique* identification for the device (e.g., Vigor router) which generates the certificate by itself to ensure the router security. Such self-signed certificate is signed with its own private key.

The self-signed certificate can be used for services such as SSL VPN and HTTPS. In addition, it can be created for free by using a wide variety of tools.



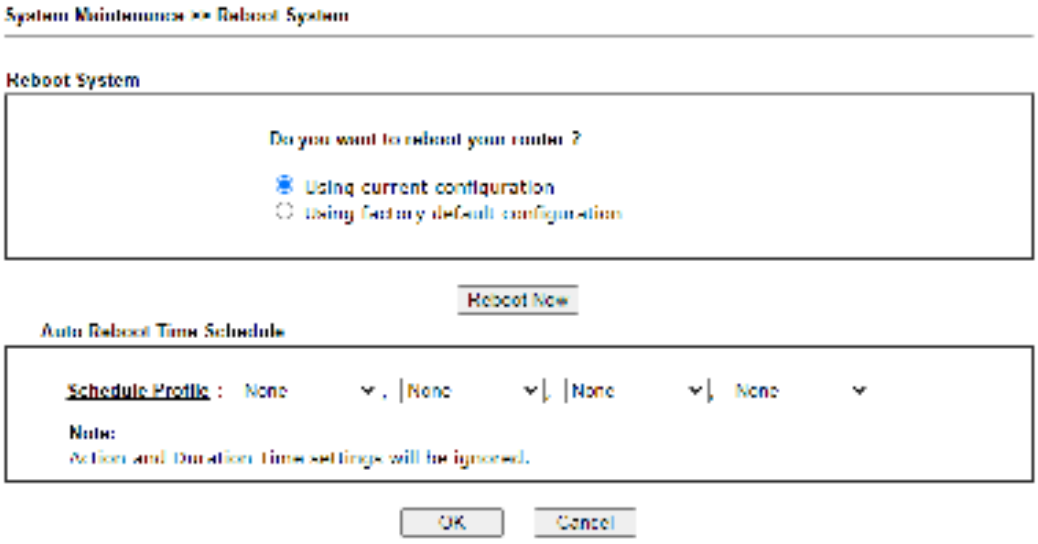
Click **Regeneration** to open **Regenerate Self-Signed Certificate** window.



Enter all requested information including certificate name (used to differentiate different certificates), subject alternative name type and relational settings for subject name. Then click **GENERATE**.

VII-1-14 Reboot System

The Web user interface may be used to restart your router. Click **Reboot System** from **System Maintenance** to bring up the following page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

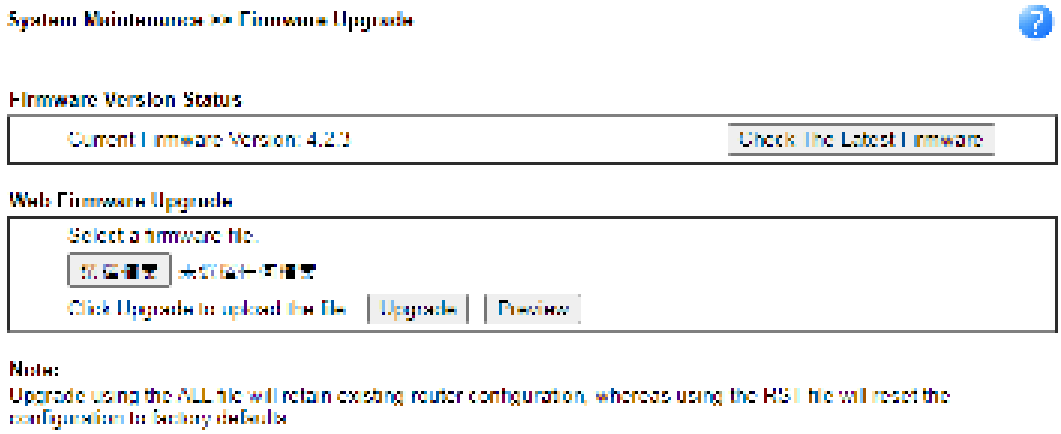
Item	Description
Reboot System	Select one of the following options, and press the **Reboot Now** button to reboot the router. **Using current configuration** – Select this option to reboot the router using the current configuration. **Using factory default configuration** – Select this option to reset the router's configuration to the factory defaults before rebooting.
Auto Reboot Time Schedule	**Schedule Profile** - Select up to 4 user-configured schedules to reboot the router on a scheduled basis.

Select **OK** to save changes on the page, or **Cancel** to discard changes without saving.

Info	When the system pops up Reboot System web page after you configure web settings, please click Reboot Now to reboot your router for ensuring normal operation and preventing unexpected errors of the router in the future.

VII-1-15 Firmware Upgrade

Click **System Maintenance>> Firmware Upgrade** to upgrade firmware upgrade.

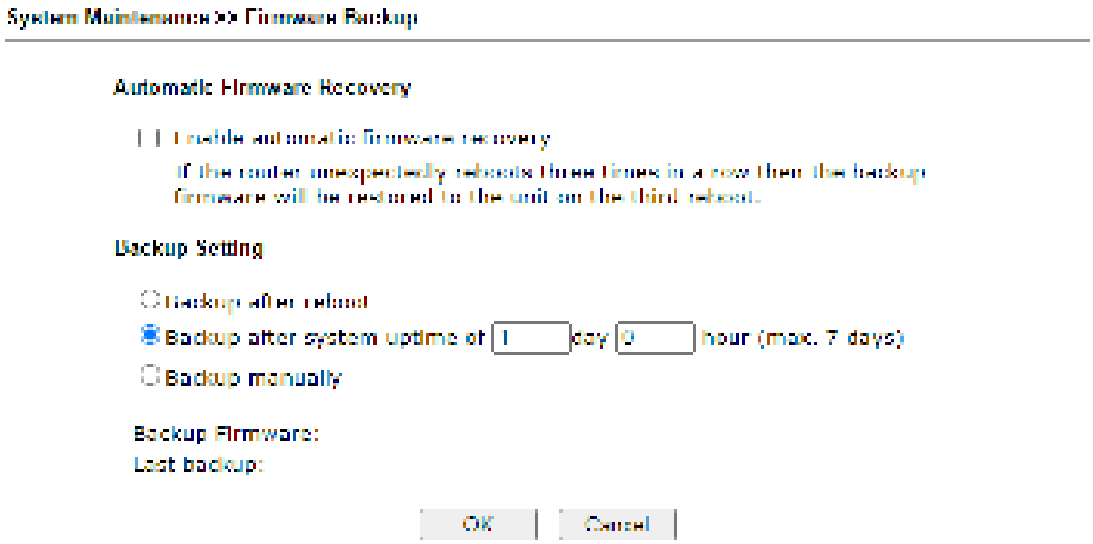


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Firmware Version Status	**Check The Latest Firmware** – Click to check for updated firmware. Any available new firmware files will be displayed and you can download any one of them by clicking **Download**. After the file has been downloaded, click Select followed by Upgrade to perform the firmware upgrade.
Web Firmware Upgrade	Click **Browse...** to select the firmware file, followed by **Upgrade** to start the upgrade process, or **Preview** to display detailed information about the selected firmware file:

VII-1-16 Firmware Backup

The firmware for Vigor router can be saved on the host as a backup firmware. After that, if the router crashes due to the firmware error, the backup firmware will be applied to make the router run normally.



Available settings are explained as follows:

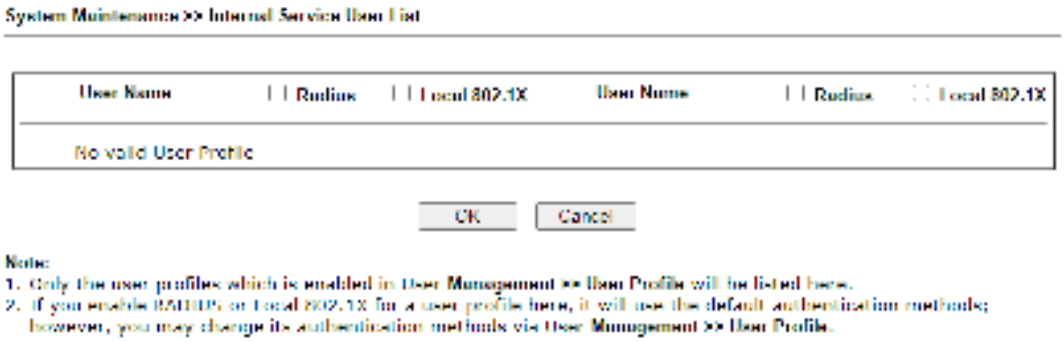
Item	Description
Automatic Firmware Recovery	**Enable automatic firmware recovery**- If this option is enabled, the router will restore the most recently backed-up firmware after the router reboots unexpectedly three times.
Backup Setting	This option controls the backup behavior of the router. ● **Backup after reboot -** The router makes a copy of the current firmware immediately after it reboots ● **Backup after system uptime... -** The router makes a copy of the current firmware after it has run for the specified length of time after boot-up. ● **Backup manually -** the router will not automatically create a backup copy of the firmware. Click this option and click OK, firmware backup will be performed immediately. **Backup Firmware** - Displays recent firmware backup version. **Last backup** - Displays the time of recent firmware backup.

Select **OK** to save changes on the page, or **Cancel** to discard changes without saving.

VII-1-17 Internal Service User List

User profiles (clients) defined and enabled in **User Management>>User Profile** will be displayed in this page.

Such page allows you to turn on or turn off security authentication service (offered by internal RADIUS and/or Local 802.1X) for each user profile without accessing into the User Management configuration page.



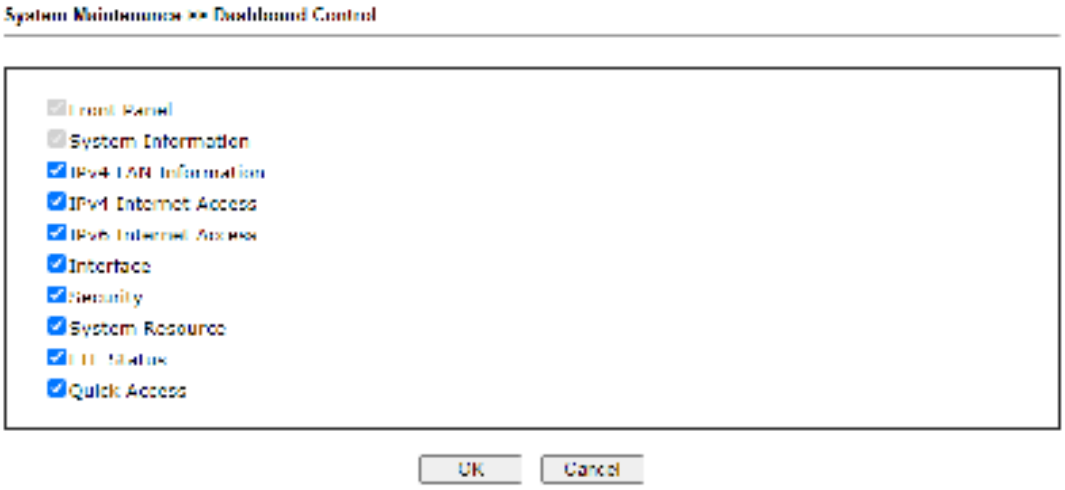
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
User Name	Display the name of the existed user profile. To modify the detailed settings, simply click the user name link to access into the web page for modification.
Radius	Check the box to turn on the security authentication service offered by internal RADIUS server for the user profile. Uncheck the box to turn off ecurity authentication service offered by internal RADIUS server for the user profile. If you check the box next to such item, all of the user profiles listed in this page will be enabled with RADIUS service enabled vice versa.
Local 802.1X	Check the box to turn on the security authentication service offered by Local 802.1X server for the user profile. Uncheck the box to turn off ecurity authentication service offered by Local 802.1X server for the user profile. If you check the box next to such item, all of the user profiles listed in this page will be enabled with Local 802.1X service enabled; vice versa.

Info	For the detailed setting (such as IP address, port number) configuration of internal RADIUS, refer to **Applications>>RADIUS/TACACS+**. For the detailed setting (such as IP address, port number) configuration of Local 802.1X, refer to **LAN>>Wired 802.1X** and **Wireless LAN>>Security**.

VII-1-18 Dashboard Control

There are nine groups of setting information which can be displayed on Dashboard as a reference for administrator/user. Except for Front Panel and System Information, the settings information regarding to the groups listed on this page can be hidden if required.



VII-2 Bandwidth Management

Sessions Limit

When LAN clients share a common public IP address by means of Network Address Translation (NAT), the router must track NAT sessions so that traffic to and from the WAN can reach the intended destinations. There is a finite number of sessions that can be tracked by the router, and by setting session limits will ensure that the router does not run out of resources. This is especially important when P2P applications are used. P2P applications, such as BitTorrent, that attempt to simultaneously establish connections to as many WAN hosts as possible.

Bandwidth Limit

Bandwidth Limit ensures LAN clients get their fair share of network bandwidth by placing restrictions on upstream and downstream network speeds.

Quality of Service (QoS)

QoS (Quality of Service) ensures that all LAN clients receive their fair share of bandwidth that is required for applications to function properly and efficiently.

Without QoS, it is possible that certain applications may consume excessive network resources that they degrade performance of more important applications, especially ones that are less tolerant of jitter (delay variation) or lost or delayed packets. Additionally, at times of network congestion, QoS is able to prioritize different types of traffic according to their predefined priority, thus ensuring traffic of higher importance gets processed first.

A typical QoS deployment consists of two components:

- Classification: Identifying low-latency or crucial applications and marking them for high-priority service level enforcement throughout the network.
- Scheduling: Prioritizing packets by assigning them to different queues and service types according to service levels.

APP QoS

APP QoS allows QoS to be applied to select protocols and applications.

Protocols and applications fall into two categories: Traceable and Untraceable. Traceable applications are those whose traffic can be 100% traced, and can be assigned a specific QoS class. Untraceable applications, on the other hand, are detected when they attempt to establish connections to remote hosts, and all traffic between the remote hosts and the local network will be placed under QoS, within the same QoS class.

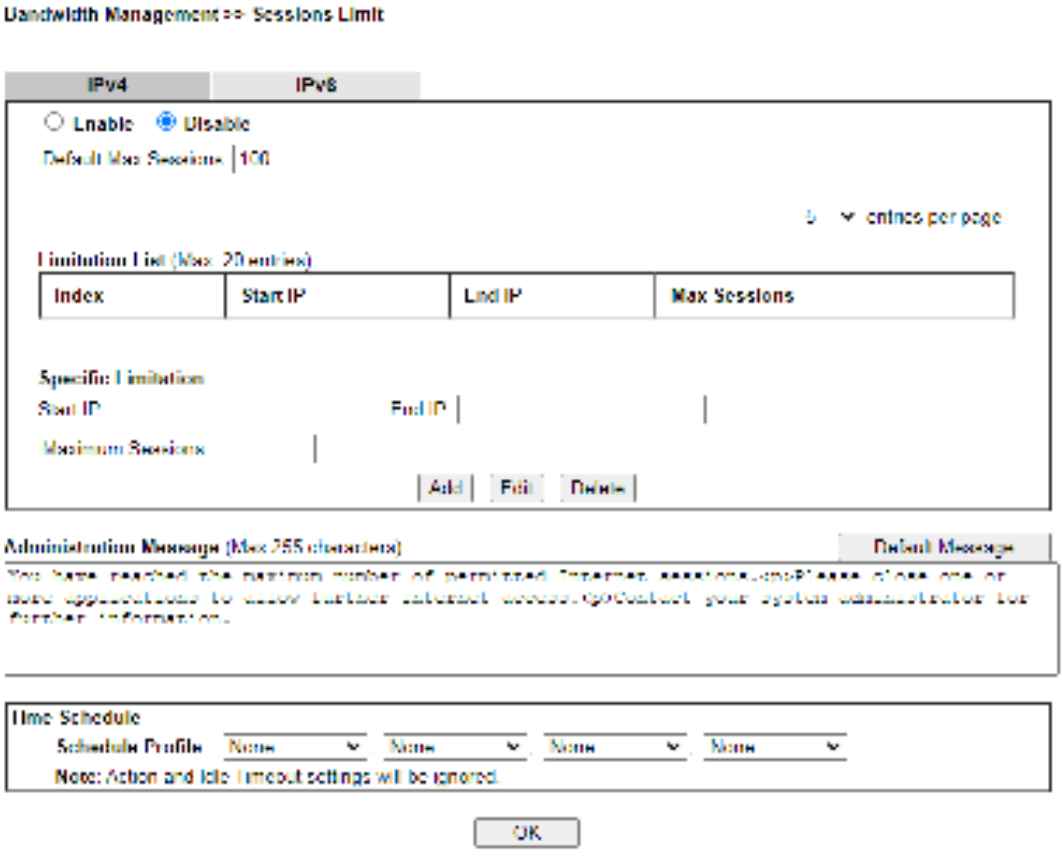
Web User Interface

Bandwidth management ensures efficient allocation of network bandwidth for various applications.

To set up Bandwidth Management, from the Main Menu, select **Bandwidth Management**.

VII-2-1 Sessions Limit

To configure Sessions Limit, from the **Bandwidth Management** menu, select **Sessions Limit** to open the setup page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

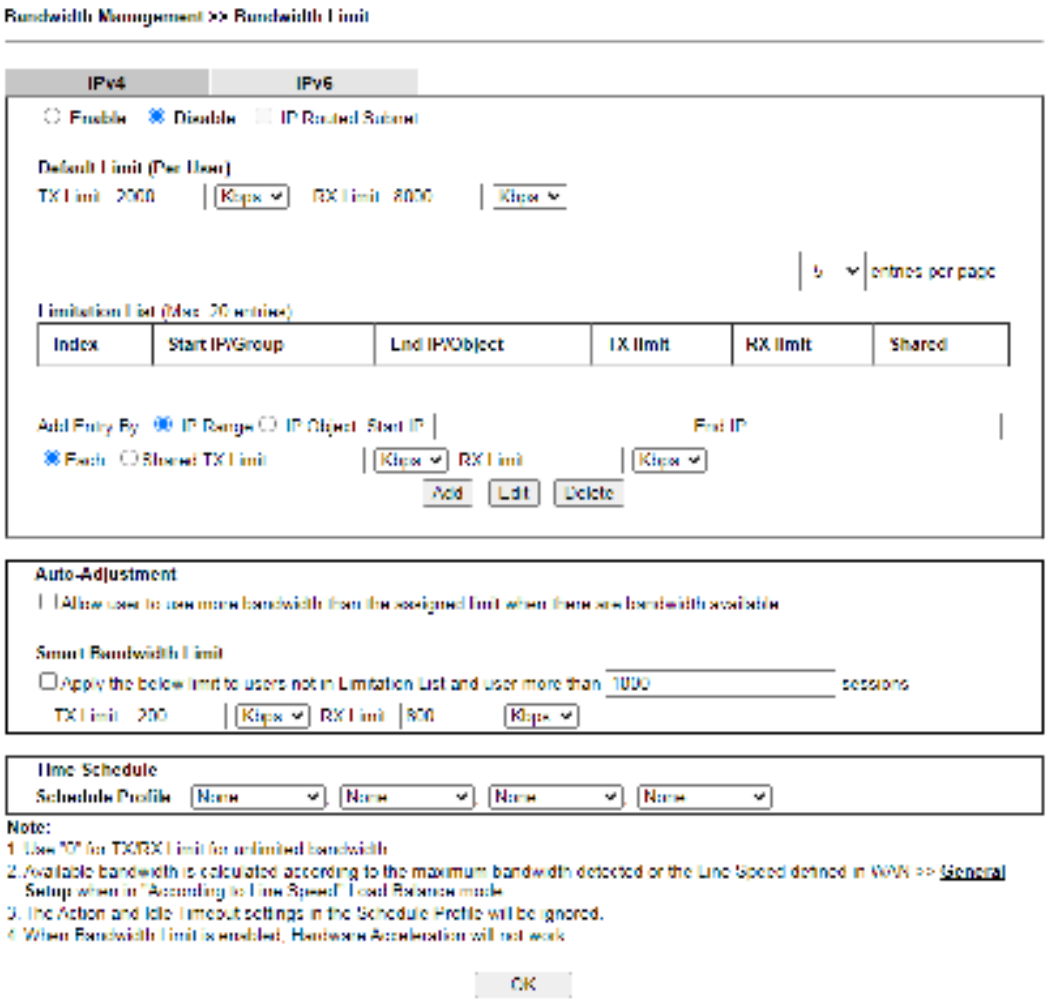
Item	Description
Enable / Disable	**Enable -** Select to activate session limit function. **Disable -** Select to deactivate session limit function. **Default Max Session -** The default maximum number of sessions allowed per LAN client, unless overridden by specifying a different number in the Limitation List.

Limitation List	Displays specific limitation entries.
Specific Limitation	**Start IP -** The beginning IP address for this limit entry. **End IP -** The ending IP address for limit entry. **Maximum Sessions -** The maximum number of NAT sessions allowed per LAN client. If no value is entered, the Default Max Sessions value is used. **Add -** Creates a new limit entry using the above Specific Limitation values. **Edit -** To edit an existing entry, select the entry from the Limitation List, make the appropriate changes in Specific Limitation, then click Edit. **Delete -** To delete an entry, select it from the Limitation List, then click the Delete button.
Administration Message	Message to be displayed in a web browser on the LAN client when the maximum number of NAT sessions has been reached. **Default Message** - Click to reset the administration message to the factory default.
Time Schedule	**Schedule Profile** - Specify up to 4 time schedule entries to enable or disable the WAN.

To save changes on the page, click **OK**.

VII-2-2 Bandwidth Limit

To configure the Bandwidth Limit feature, from the **Bandwidth Management** menu, select **Bandwidth Limit** to bring up the configuration page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

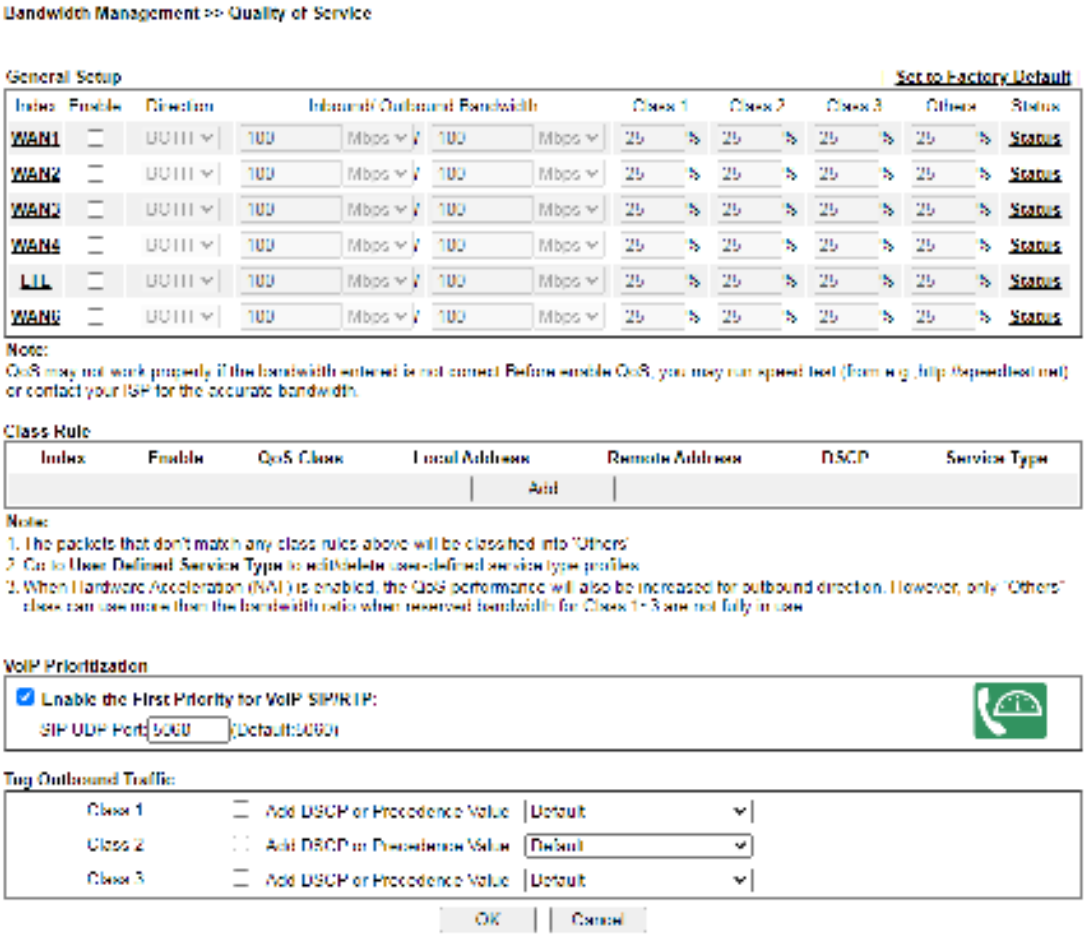
Item	Description
Enable / Disable	**Enable** - Select to activate bandwidth limit function. **Disable** - Select to deactivate bandwidth limit function. **Default Limit (Per User)** ● **TX LImit -** Default upstream speed limit for each LAN client. Unit can be either Kbps or Mbps. Value must be between 0 (unlimited) and 30000. ● **RX limit -** Default downstream speed limit for each LAN client. Unit can be either Kbps or Mbps. Value must be between 0 (unlimited and 30000).
Limitation List	Displays specific limitation entries.
Add Entry By	**IP Range -** All the IPs within the range defined will be restricted by bandwidth limit defined by TX Limit and RX Limit below. ● **Start IP -** The beginning IP address for this limit entry. ● **End IP -** The ending IP address for limit entry.

	IP Object - All the IPs specified by the selected IP object or IP group will be restricted by bandwith limit defined by TX Limit and RX Limit below. ● **IP Group** – Specify an IP group by using the drop down list. ● **IP Object -** Specify an IP object by using the drop down list. **Each** - The specified bandwidth is the limit per LAN client. **Shared -** The specified bandwidth limits are the total allowed for all LAN clients within the range of IP addresses. ● **TX limit -** The upstream limit. Unit can be either Kbps or Mbps. Value must be between 0 (unlimited) and 30000. ● **RX limit -** The downstream limit. Unit can be either Kbps or Mbps. Value must be between 0 (unlimited) and 30000. **Add -** Creates a new limit entry using the above Specific Limitation values. **Edit -** To edit an existing entry, select the entry from the Limitation List, make the appropriate changes in Specific Limitation, then click Edit. **Delete -** To delete an entry, select it from the Limitation List, then click the Delete button.
Auto-Adjustment	**Allow user to use more bandwidth ···-** Select to let the router automatically adjust the upstream and downstream limits based on available bandwidth.
Smart Bandwidth Limit	This option restricts the bandwidth of LAN clients that are not in the limitation list when the network sessions exceed a predefined threshold. **Apply the below limit to ...** - The number of sessions a LAN client is allowed to have before Smart Bandwidth Limit activates. ● **TX limit -** Upstream speed limit for each LAN client. Unit can be either Kbps or Mbps. Value must be between 0 (unlimited) and 30000. ● **RX limit -** Downstream speed limit for each LAN client. Unit can be either Kbps or Mbps. Value must be between 0 (unlimited and 30000).
Time Schedule	**Schedule Profile** - Specify up to 4 time schedule entries to enable or disable the WAN.

To save changes on the page, click **OK**.

VII-2-3 Quality of Service

To configure **Quality of Service**, from the main menu, select **Bandwidth Management** menu, then click **Quality of Service** to bring up the configuration page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

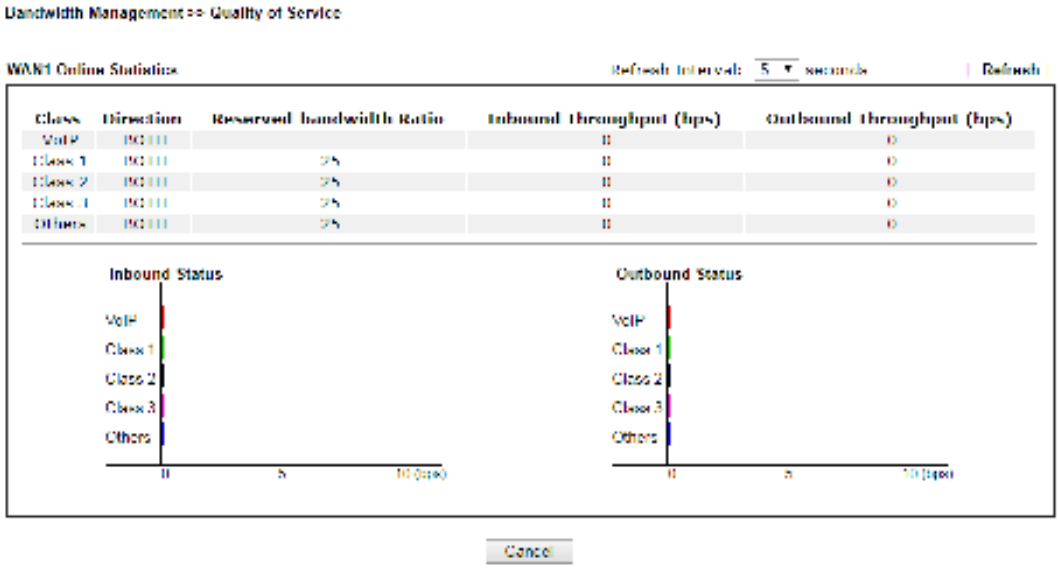
Item	Description
General Setup	**Index** – Link of WAN/LTE interface. **Enable** – Check the box to enable the QoS function for WAN/LTE interface. If it is enabled, you can configure general QoS setting for each WAN/LTE interface. ● **Direction** –Direction of traffic to which QoS is to be applied (Inbound, Outbound, or Both). - **IN -** Apply QoS to incoming traffic only. - **OUT -** Apply QoS to outgoing traffic only. - **BOTH -** Apply to both incoming and outgoing traffic. ● **Inbound/Outbound Bandwidth** – The inbound / outbound bandwidth of the WAN. ● **Class 1 ~ 3 / Others** – Percentage of bandwidth reserved for each class. **Status** – Click to bring up the Online Statistics page that shows snapshots of statistics for the given WAN interface.
Class Rule	Define and list the Class rules. **Index** – Display the class number that you can edit.

Item	Description
	Enable - Display the status of this class rule. **QoS Class** - Display the QoS class level. **Local Address** - Display the local IP address for the rule. **Remote Address** - Display the remote IP address for the rule. **DSCP** - Display the levels of the data for processing with QoS control. **Service Type** – Display detailed settings for the service type. **Add** - Click it to create a class rule for QoS.
VoIP Prioritization	**Enable the First Priority for VoIP SIP/RTP** - Select to allow VoIP traffic to receive the highest priority. **SIP UDP Port** –Port number to be monitored for SIP traffic. - Click this icon to display the VoIP QoS Status.
Tag Outbound Traffic	Tag the outgoing traffic with the DSCP or Precedence value. **Add DSCP or Precedence Value for Class 1 to Class 3** - Check to apply the DSCP or precedence value for each class.

To save changes, click **OK**; to discard changes, click **Cancel**.

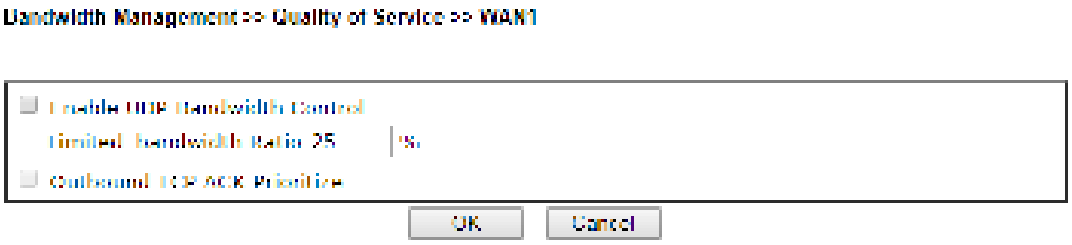
Online Statistics

Click the Status link in the General Setup section to show real-time online statistics of the WAN interface.



General Setup for WAN Interface

Click WAN/LTE interface number link to configure the limited bandwidth ratio for QoS of the WAN interface.



Available settings are explained as follows:

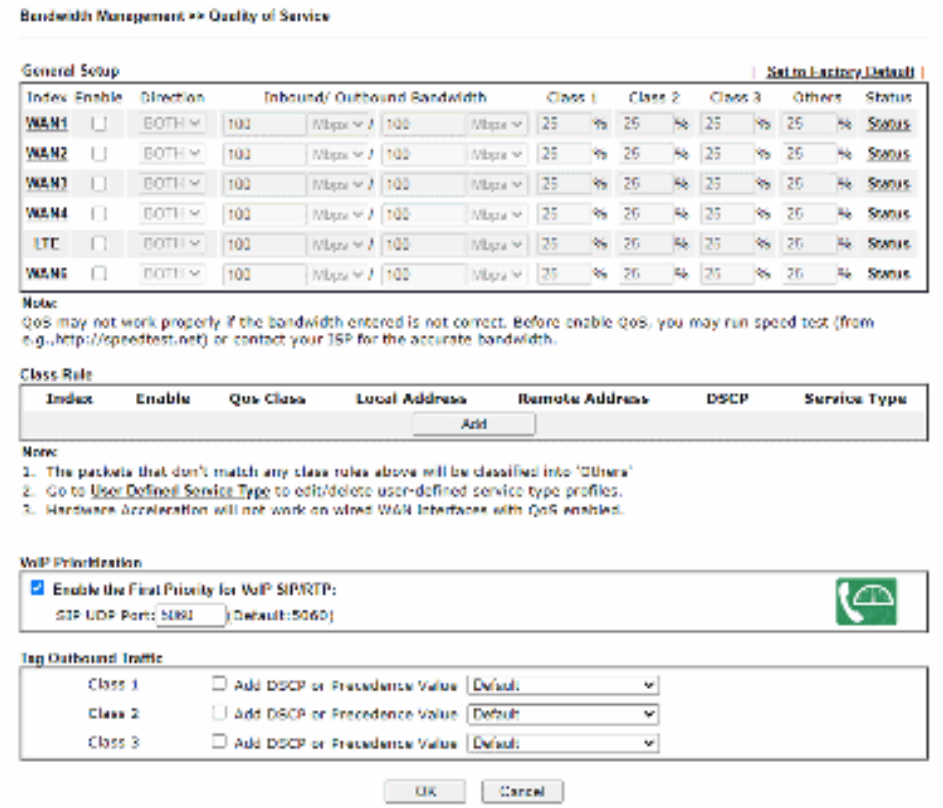
Item	Description
Enable UDP Bandwidth Control	Select to restrict the bandwidth available to UDP traffic. The **Limited_bandwidth Ratio** value is the maximum percentage of bandwidth that can be used by UDP traffic. ● **Limited_bandwidth Ratio -** Enter a percentage value.
Outbound TCP ACK Prioritize	Select to give outbound ACK packets priority over other packets to ensure traffic is not slowed down because the remote host is waiting for ACK packets before further traffic will be sent.

Info	The rate of outbound/inbound must be smaller than the real bandwidth to ensure correct calculation of QoS. It is suggested to set the bandwidth value for inbound/outbound as 80% - 85% of physical network speed provided by ISP to maximize the QoS performance.

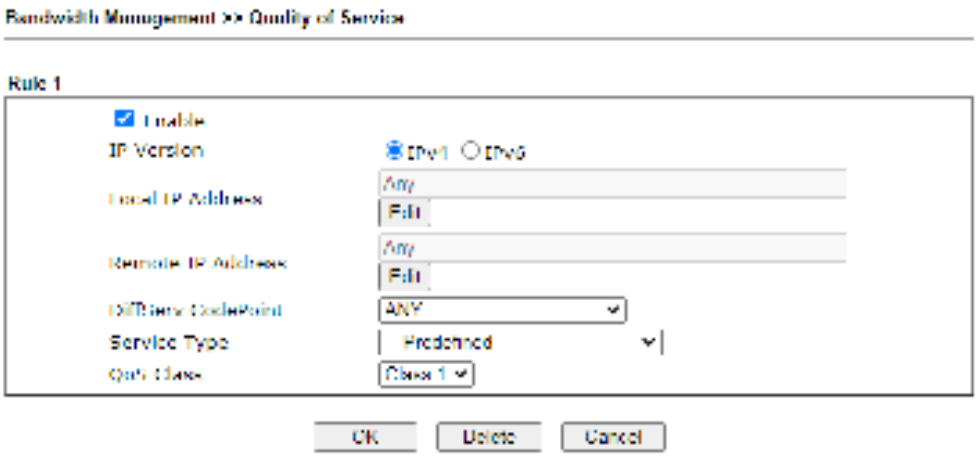
Add / edit a Class Rule for QoS

You can set up to 20 rules for one Class. If you want to edit an existed rule, please select the radio button of that one and click Edit to open the rule edit page for modification.

1. To add a rule, click **Add** to bring up the configuration page. To edit an existing rule, select the rule by clicking the radio button in front of the rule, and then click **Edit** to bring up the configuration page.

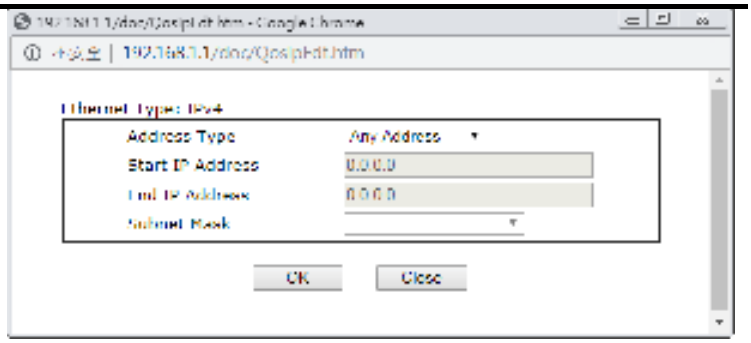


2. For adding a new rule, click **Add** to open the following page.

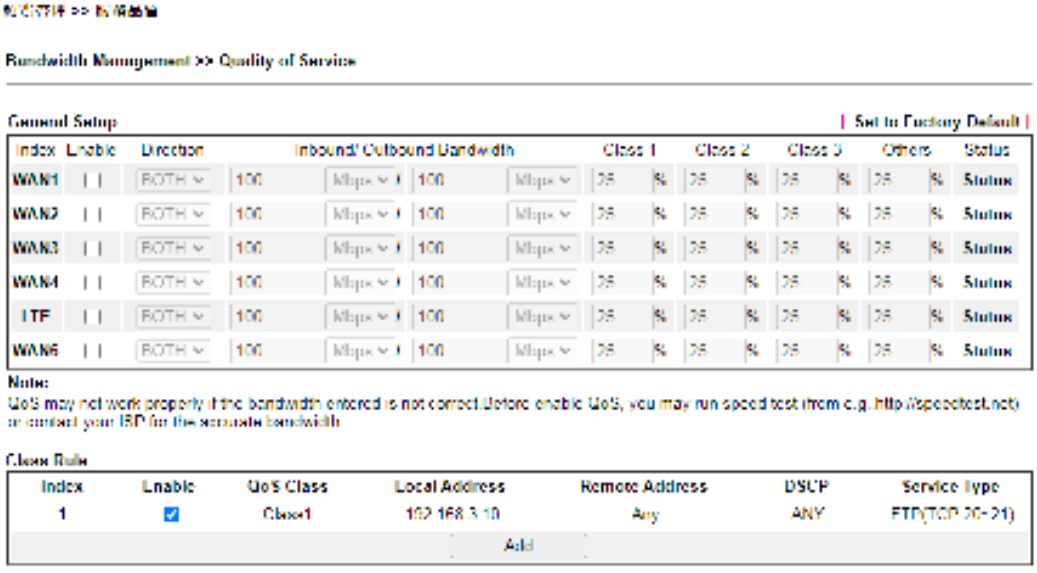


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable	Select to enable this rule.
IP Version	Protocol (IPv4 or IPv6) to which this rule applies.
Local IP Address	Click the **Edit** button to set the local (LAN) IP address or address range for the rule.
Remote IP Address	Click the **Edit** button to set the remote (WAN) IP address or address range for the rule.

	 **Address Type** – Type of address: Any Address, Single Address, Range Address, Subnet Address. ● **Single Address** - Specify IP address. ● **Range Address** - Specify Start IP Address and End IP Address. ● **Subnet Address** - Specify Start IP Address and Subnet Mask.
DiffServ CodePoint	DSCP or ToS precedence of packets to which this rule applies.
Service Type	Service Type to which this rule applies. Service is a predefined or user-defined type of traffic that uses certain protocols or ports. To set up a custom service, select User Defined to set the service name, the protocol, and port number.
QoS Class	Specify the QoS class (1, 2 or 3) for this rule.

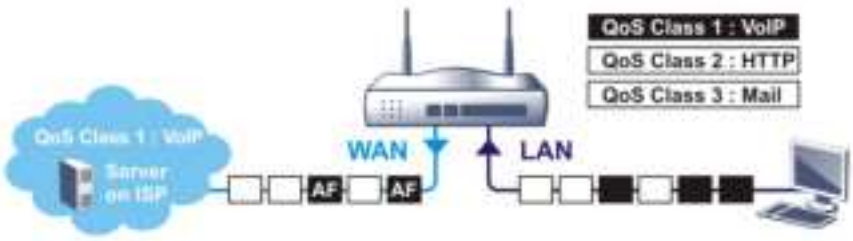
3. After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

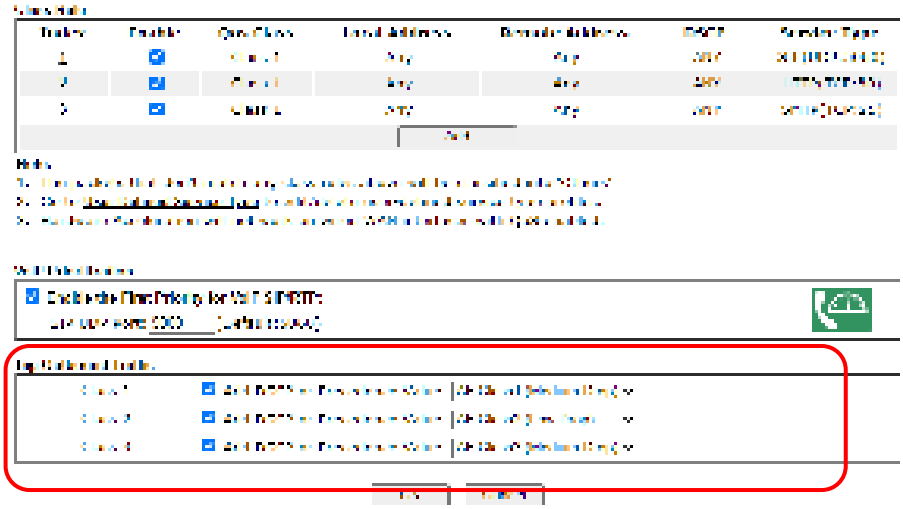


Retag the Packets for Identification

Packets originating from the LAN that are destined for the WAN can have the DS flag changed to a different value by enabling Tag Packet and specifying the DSCP or IP Precedence value.

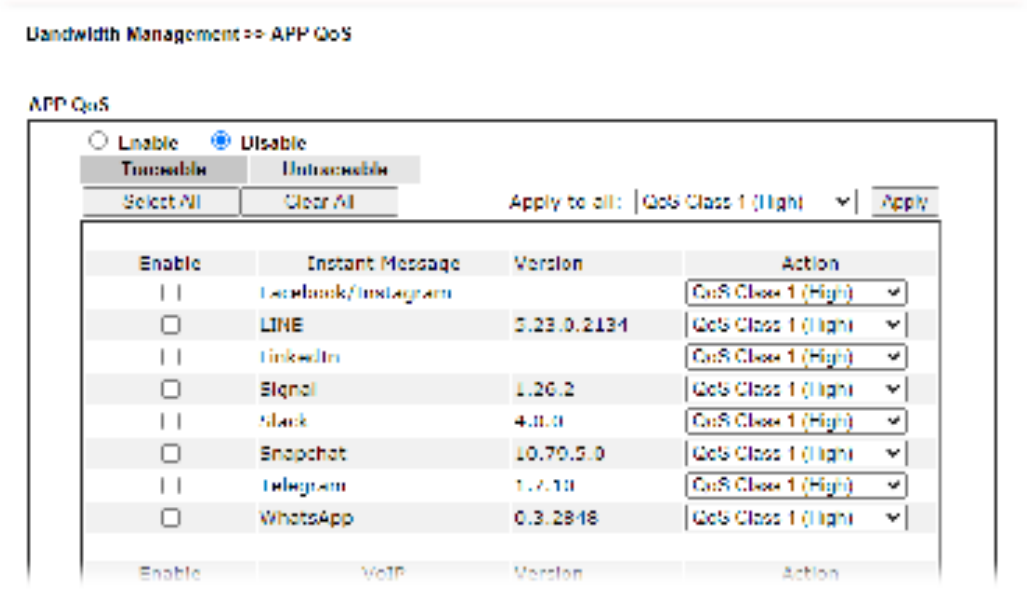
In the following illustration, outbound VoIP packets from the LAN arrive at the Vigor router with the QoS value unset. The router sets the DSCP value to AF before forwarding them to the ISP server via the WAN interface.


QoS Class 1 : VoIP
QoS Class 2 : HTTP
QoS Class 3 : Mail
QoS Class 1 : VoIP
Server on ISP
WAN
LAN
AF
AF



VII-2-4 APP QoS

To configure APP QoS, from the main menu, select **Bandwidth Management** menu, then click **APP QoS** to bring up the configuration page.



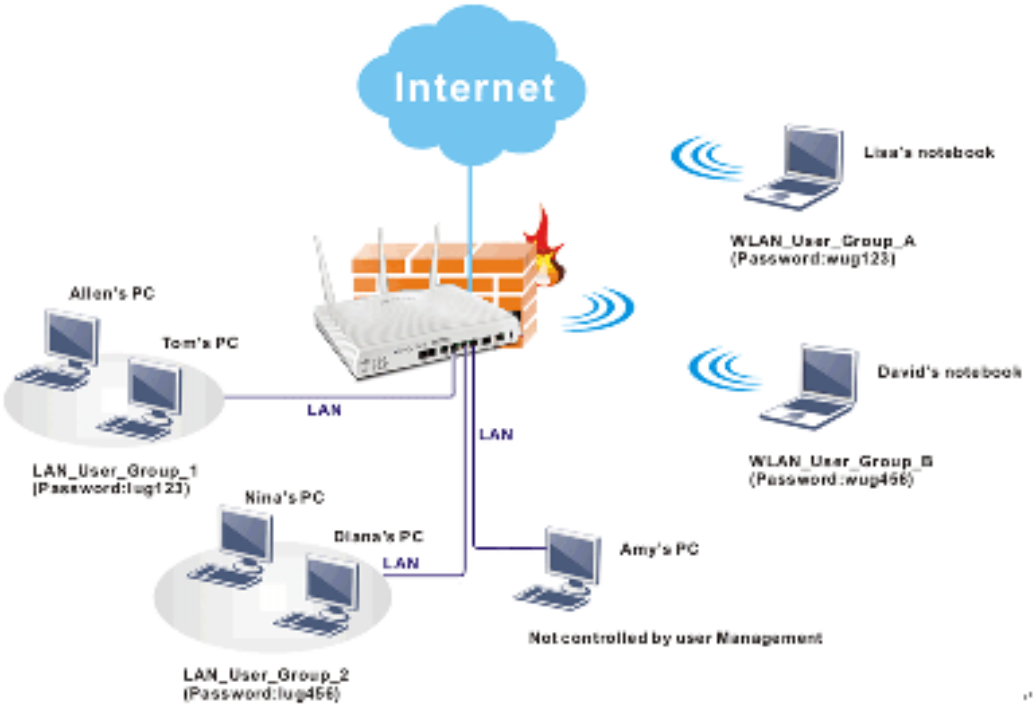
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable/Disable	Enables or disables the APP QoS feature.
Traceable	Traceable applications are those whose traffic can be 100% traced. All protocols under this tab can have a specific QoS class assigned. **Enable** - Select to enable OoS for the application. **Apply to all** - Select a QoS class to be applied to all protocols. You can override the QoS class for specific protocols using the Action dropdown listbox.
Untraceable	Untraceable applications are detected when they attempt to establish connections to remote hosts, and all traffic between the remote hosts and the local network will be placed under QoS, within the same QoS class. All protocols under this tab can have a specific QoS class assigned. **Enable** - Select to enable OoS for the application. **Action** - Select a QoS class to be applied to all applications.
Select All	Click to select all Enabled checkboxes.
Clear All	Click to deselect all Enabled checkboxes.

After changes have been made, click **OK** to save changes, or **Cancel** to discard.

VII-3 User Management

User Management allows the network administrator to manage Internet access at the user level. After a user has been authenticated by means of a username and password, he or she can be granted Internet access, and optional firewall rules and WAN access policies can be applied.



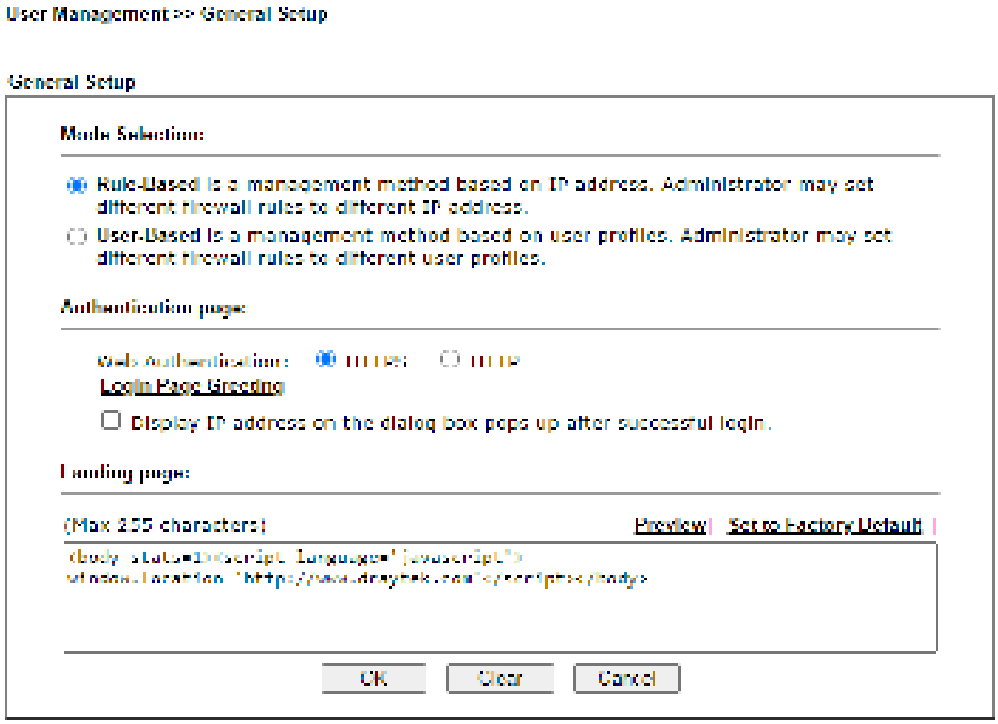
Info

In general, filter rules configured in the Firewall apply globally. However, in user management, the filter rules can be selectively applied to user profiles.

Web User Interface

VII-3-1 General Setup

Global settings for User Management can be configured in this section.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Mode Selection	The User Management Mode. **User-Based** – Router applies filter rules configured in **User Management>>User Profile**. **Rule-Based** – Router applies filter rules configured in **Firewall>>General Setup** and **Filter Rule**.
Authentication page	**Web Authentication** - Web protocol for the web authentication page. ● HTTP – Web page will be unencrypted. ● HTTPS – Web page will be encrypted. **Login Page Greeting** - Click to be redirected to **System Maintenance >> Login Page Greeting**, where you can configure the message that is shown to the user after a successful login.

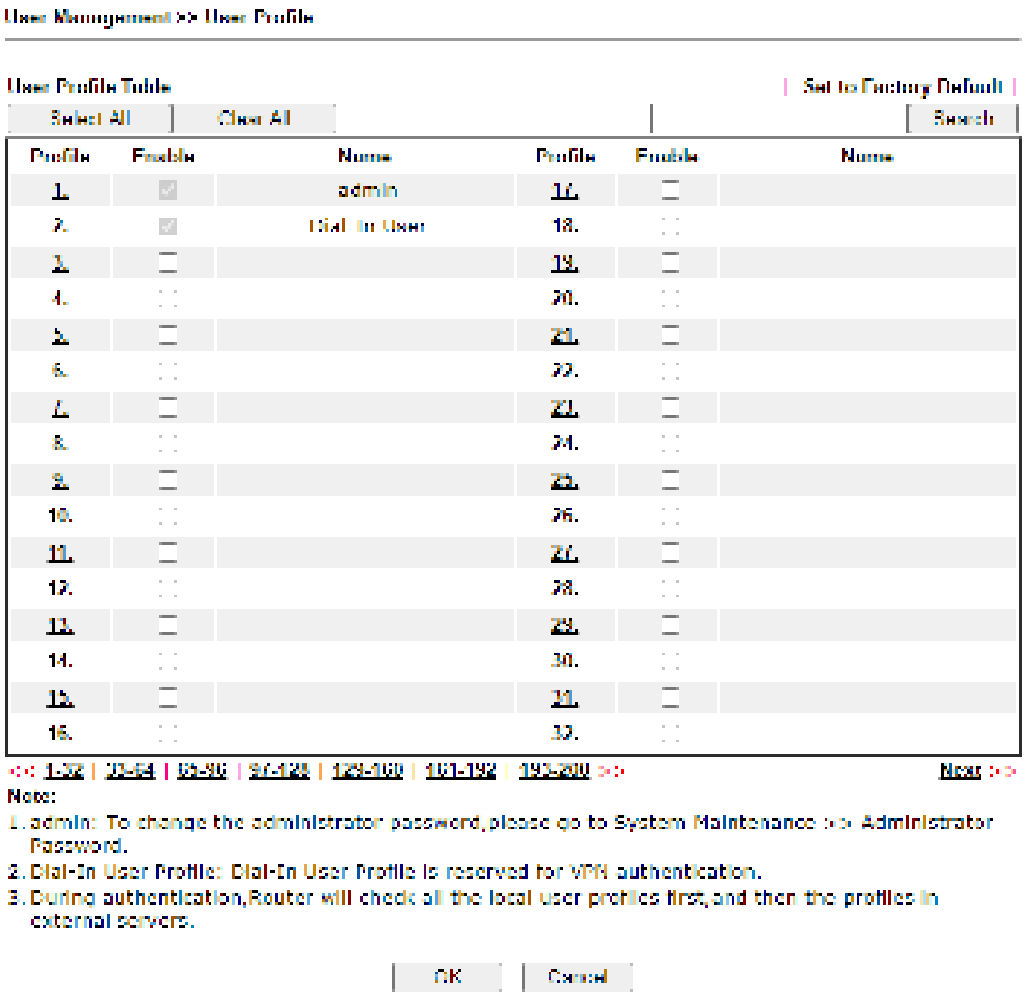
	Display IP Address on tracking window - Select to display the IP address of the client on the tracking window.
Landing Page	HTML code to be shown on the Login Page Greeting.

Click **OK** to save changes, **Clear** to restore settings to factory defaults, or **Cancel** to discard changes.

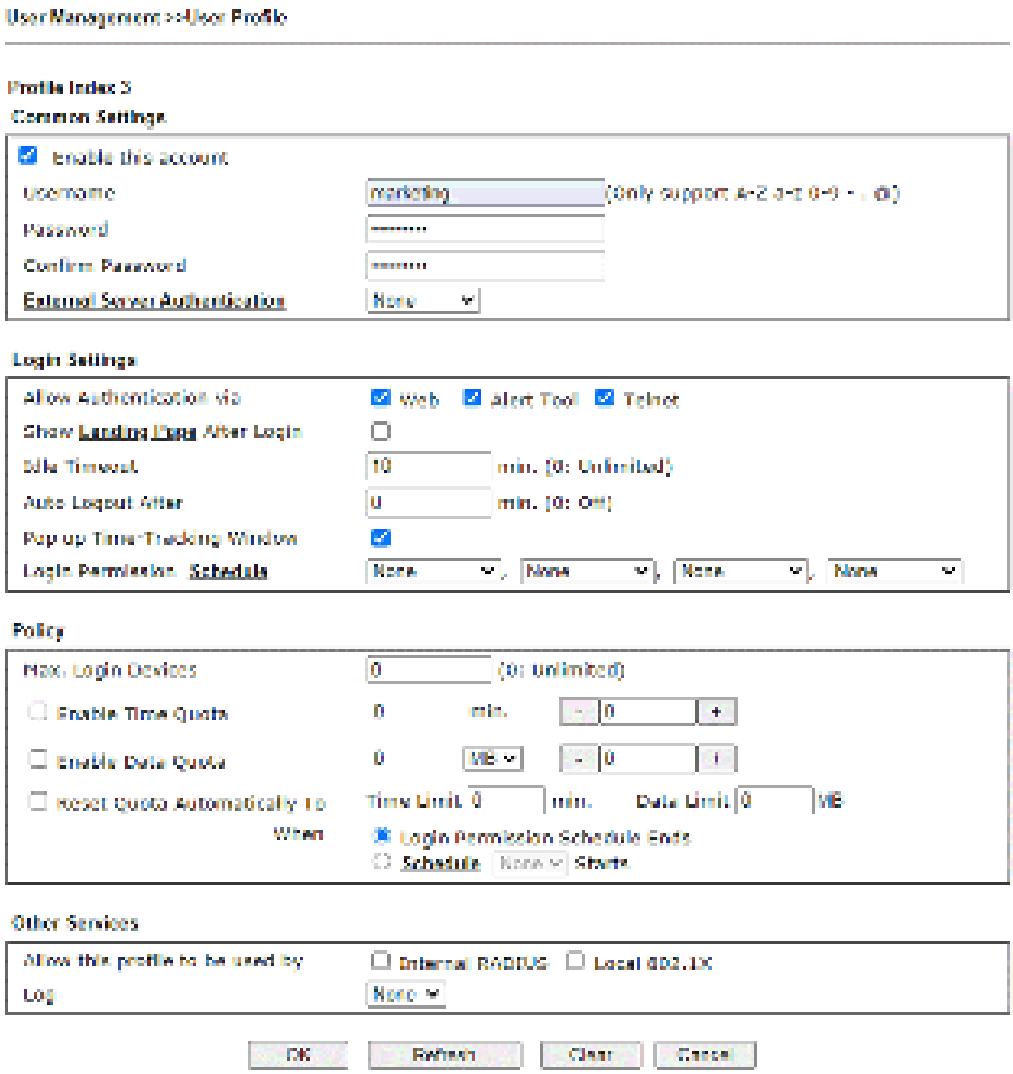
VII-3-2 User Profile

This page allows you to create up to 200 user profiles for use with User Management.

Select **User Management>>User Profile** from the menu bar, then click a profile number to configure.



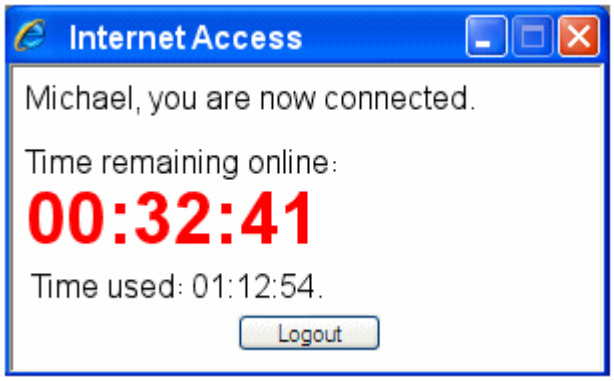
Profiles 1 (admin) and 2 (Dial-In User) are reserved profiles. The admin profile applies to the router administrator login, while the Dial-in User profile applies to all VPN dial-in users.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Common Settings	
Enable this account	Select to enable this user profile.
Username	Login name (e.g., *LAN_User_Group_1, WLAN_User_Group_A, WLAN_User_Group_B,* etc.) for this user profile. Maximum length is 24 characters.
Password	Password (e.g., *lug123, wug123,wug456,* etc.) for this user profile. Maximum length is 24 characters. When a user tries to access the Internet and User Management is enabled, he or she must supply a valid user name and password combination for authentication. The profile with matching user name and password will be applied to the session.
Confirm Password	Enter the password again for confirmation.
External Service Authentication	The router will authenticate dial-in users using either a built-in (None) or external service (LDAP, Radius or TACACS+). The Password setting is ignored when an external authentication service is used.
Login Settings	

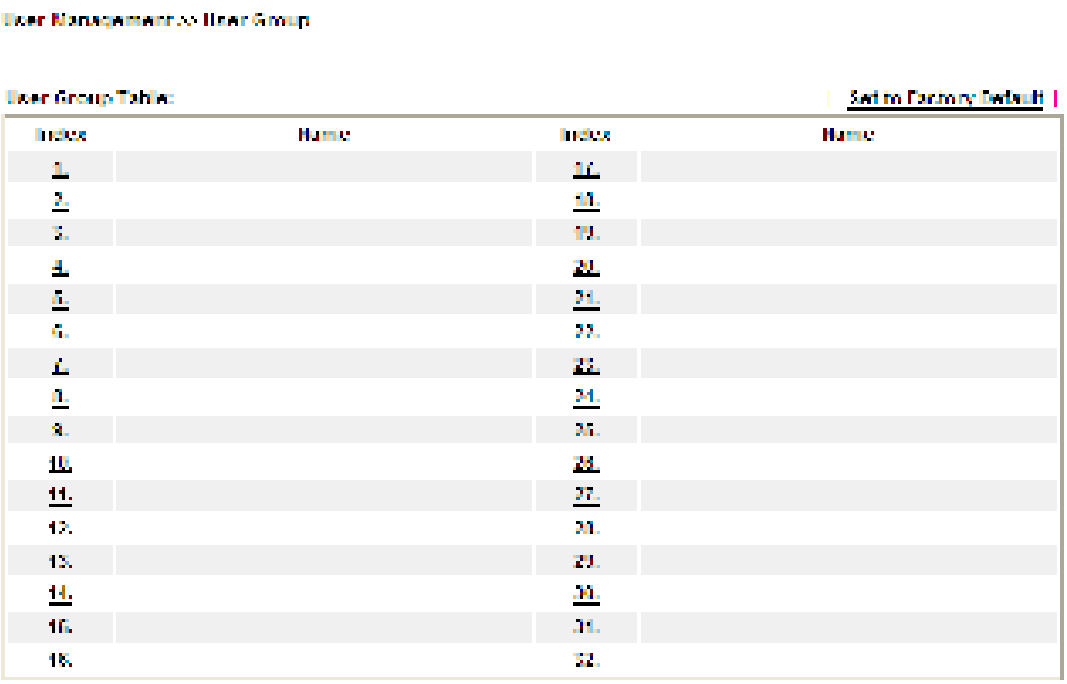
Allow Authentication via	The authentication methods allowed for this user. **Web** – If selected, user will need to authenticate by entering a username and password when attempting to access an external website for the first time. The user will be redirected to the external website after a successful authentication. **Alert Tool** – If selected, the user can enter the user name and password into the DrayTek Alert Tool. A window with remaining time of connection for such user will be displayed. The Alter Tool can be downloaded from the DrayTek website. **Telnet** – If selected, the user can authenticate by logging in to the router using telnet.
Show Landing Page After Login	When a user tries to access into the web user interface of Vigor router series with the user name and password specified in this profile, he/she will be lead into the web page configured in Landing Page field in **User Management>>General Setup**. Check this box to enable such function.
Idle Timeout	If there is no WAN traffic to and from the LAN client for the specified amount of time (in minutes), the WAN session is reset and the user will need to re-authenticate before Internet access is once again allowed. The default Idle Timeout value is 10 minutes.
Auto Logout After	Such account will be forced to logout after a certain time set here.
Pop up Time-Tracking Window	If enabled, a browser window will pop up showing the session time remaining. However, the system will update the time periodically to keep the connection always on. Thus, Idle Timeout will not interrupt the network connection.
Login Permission Schedule	You can enter four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in **Applications >> Schedule** web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.
Policy	
Max. Login Devices	The maximum number of concurrent logins allowed for this profile. The default setting is 0 which means no limit.
Enable Time Quota	If selected, the user is allowed Internet access for the specified amount of time after a successful authentication. The first value is the remaining time of the current login session, whereas the second value is the value to increment or decrement from the remaining time quota by clicking + /- buttons. Both values are in minutes. Click + / - to increase / decrease the time quota for such profile. **Note:** A dialog will be popped up showing the remaining time remained when the user after the user has successfully authenticated.

	 When the time is up, all Internet connections are terminated.
Enable Data Quota	If selected, the user is allowed to use the specified amount of data after a successful authentication. The first value is the remaining data quota of the current login session, whereas the second value is the value to increment or decrement from the remaining data quota by clicking +/ - buttons. The unit for both values can be set to either MB (megabytes) or GB (gigabytes) using the MB/GB dropdown box. Click + / - to increase / decrease the data quota for such profile.
Reset quota automatically	Select to enable this option. Reset the time and data quotas to the preset default values when a time schedule ends. **Time Limit** – Enter value for default time quota. **Data Limit** – Enter value for default data quota. **Login Permission Schedule Ends -** When the scheduling time is up, the router will reset the quota with user-defined time/data values automatically. **Schedule** – Specify a time schedule index number for this profile.
Other Services	
Allow this profile to be used by	This option is available for profiles with index number 3 to 200. **Internal RADIUS-** Check the box to enable security authenticated via internal RADIUS server. **Local 802.1X -** Check the box to enable security authenticated via internal 802.1X server.
Log	Activities of the user can be recorded by Syslog. **None** – Logging is disabled. **Login** – Login and logout activities are logged. **Event** – Allowed and blocked traffic are logged. **All** – Both Login and Event types are logged.

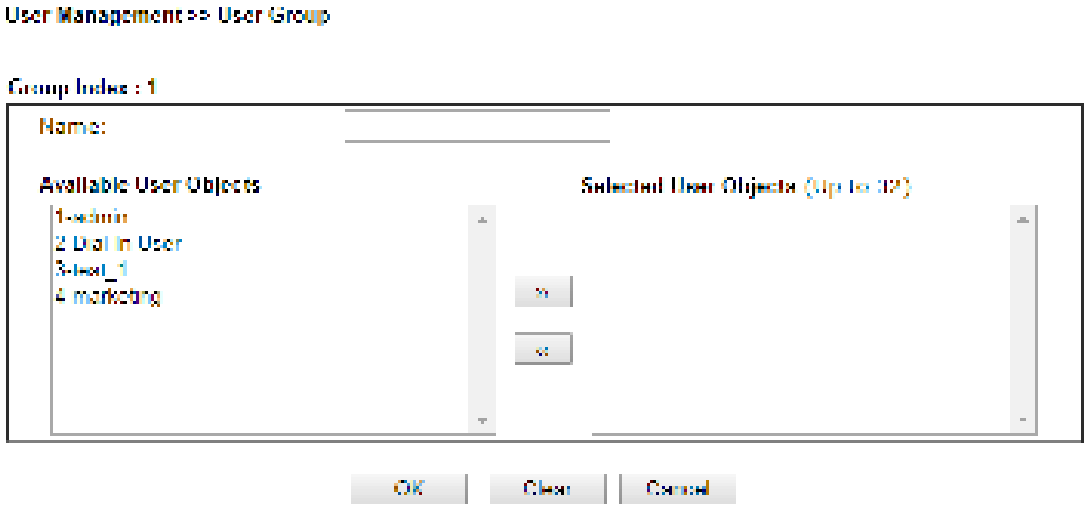
Click **OK** to save changes, **Clear** to restore settings to factory defaults, or **Cancel** to discard changes. Click **Refresh** to reload the page with the most recent data usage information (data and time quotas).

VII-3-3 User Group

This page allows you to place multiple user profiles into groups. These groups can be used to set up filter rules in **Firewall>>General Setup**.



Click an index number link to its setup page:



Available settings are explained as follows:

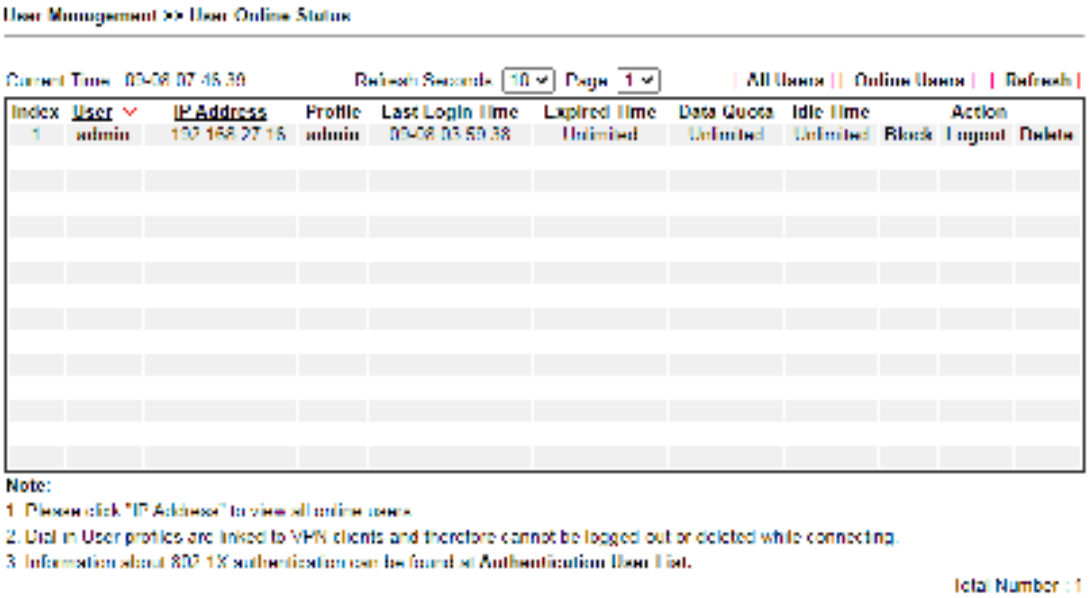
Item	Description
Name	Name that identifies this user group.
Available User Objects	Shows a list of User Objects that have not been placed into the current group.

>> <<	Click >> to move selected user objects in the Available User Objects on the left to the Selected User Objects on the right, thus adding them to the current group. Click << to move selected user objects in the Selected User Objects on the right to the Available User Objects on the left, thus removing them from the current group.
Selected Keyword Objects	Shows a list of User Objects that have been placed into the current group.

To save changes on the page, click **OK**. To discard changes, click **Cancel**. To remove all user objects from the current group, click **Clear**.

VII-3-4 User Online Status

This page displays the users that are currently logged into the router. The list refreshes periodically to show the most up-to-date information.



Available settings are explained as follows:

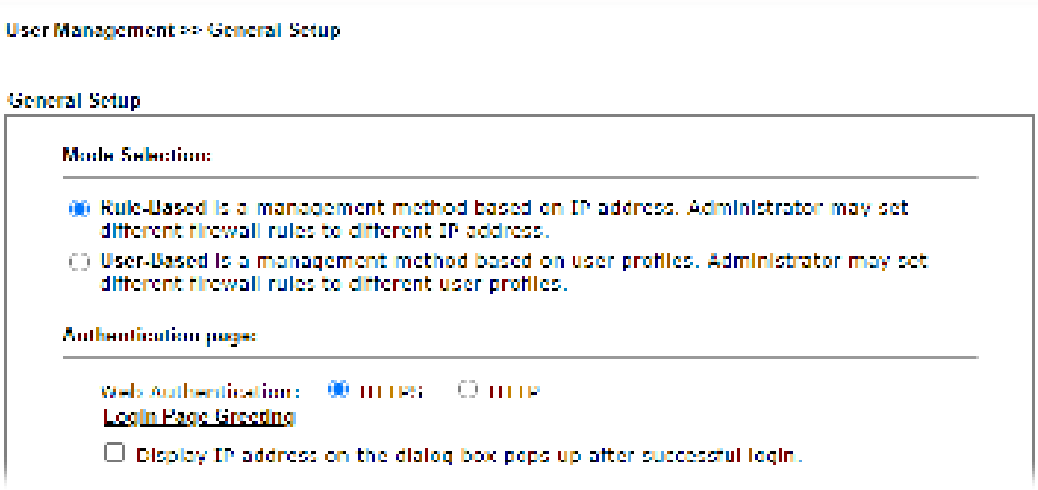
Item	Description
Refresh Seconds	The time interval between automatic screen refreshes, in seconds. Select one of 10, 15 and 30 seconds.
Refresh	Click to manually refresh the displayed data.
Index	Index of the user entry.
User	The name of the user that is logged on. Clicking this will bring up the following page which allows setting time and data quotas of the user. For details, refer to the description on the **Enable Time Quota** and **Enable Data Quota** items in the **User Profile** section.
IP Address	IP LAN address of the device that initiated the login.
Profile	Name of the user profile. If the logged-in user is a VPN user, Dial-in User will be displayed. Otherwise it will be the same as User.

Last Login Time	The most recent login time of the user.
Expired Time	The expiration time of the current login session.
Data Quota	Display the quota for data transmission. The remaining data quota of this login session.
Idle Time	Amount of time the session has been idled.
Action	**Block** – Stops user from accessing the Internet. **Unblock** –Resumes Internet access of a blocked user. **Logout** – Terminates the current login session. **Delete** – Removes the user entry from the User Online Status page.

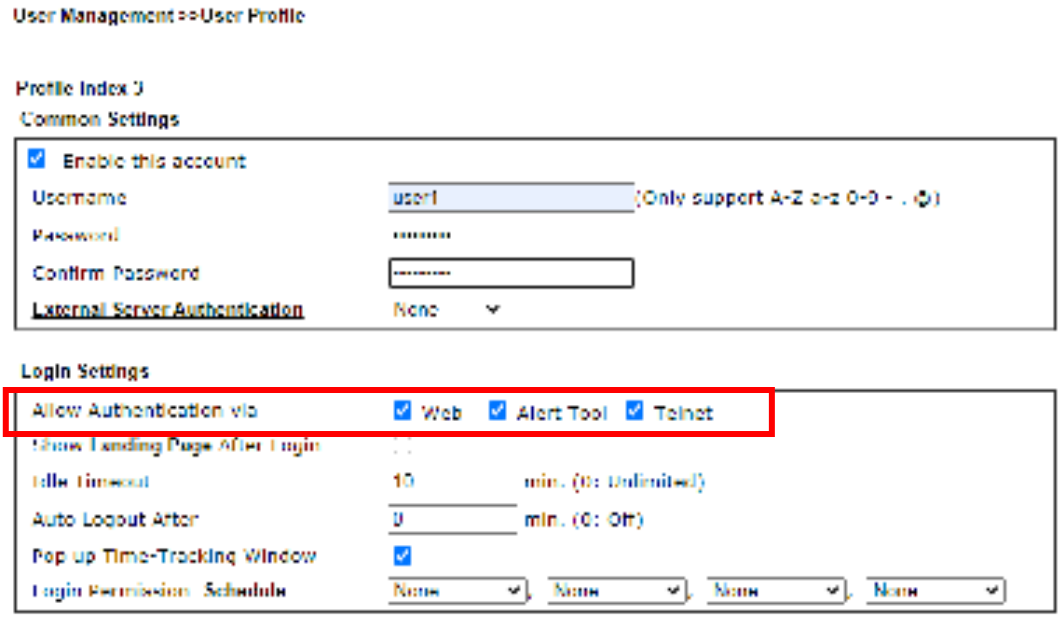
Application Notes

A-1 How to authenticate clients via User Management

Before using the function of User Management, please make sure **User-Based** has been selected as the **Mode** in the **User Management>>General Setup** page.

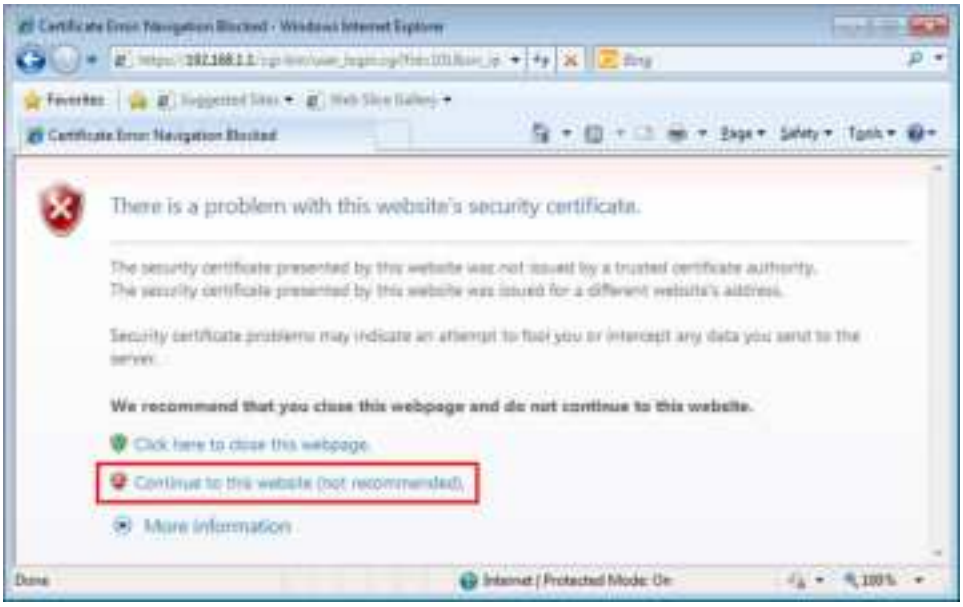


With **User Management** authentication function, before a valid username and password have been correctly supplied, a particular client will not be allowed to access Internet through the router. There are three ways for authentication: **Web**, **Telnet** and **Alert Tool**.

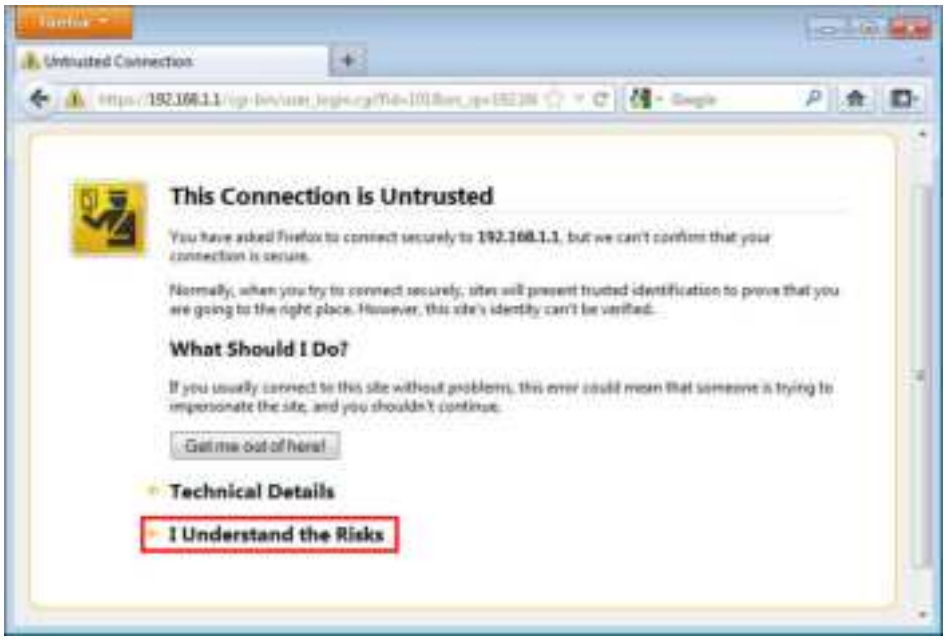


Authentication via Web

- If a LAN client who hasn't passed the authentication opens an external web site in his browser, he will be redirected to the router's Web authentication interface first. Then, the client is trying to access http://www.draytek.com and but brought to the Vigor router. Since this is an SSL connection, some web browsers will display warning messages.
  - With Microsoft Internet Explorer, you may get the following warning message. Please press **Continue to this website (not recommended)**.

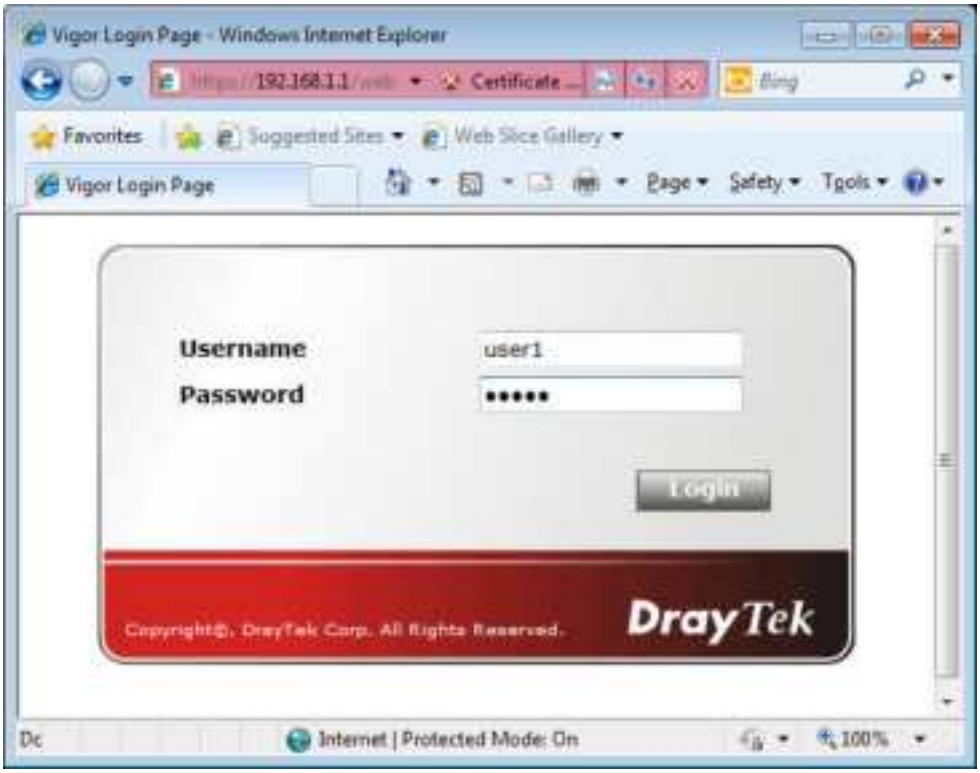


- With Mozilla Firefox, you may get the following warning message. Select **I Understand the Risks**.

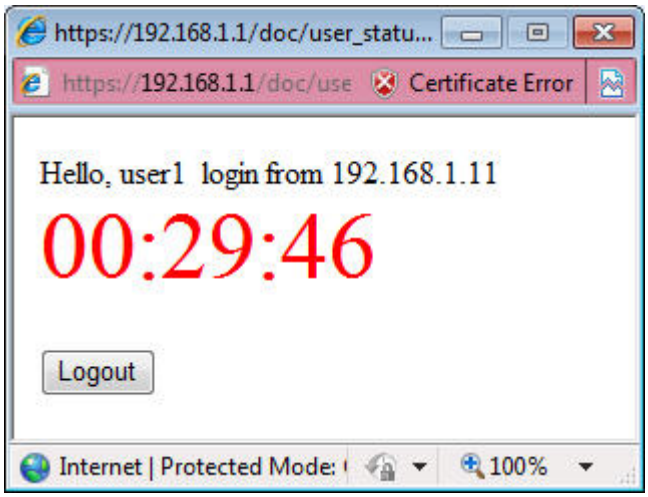


- With Chrome browser, you may get the following warning. Click **Proceed anyway**.

After that, the web authentication window will appear. Input the user name and the password for your account (defined in **User Management**) and click **Login**.

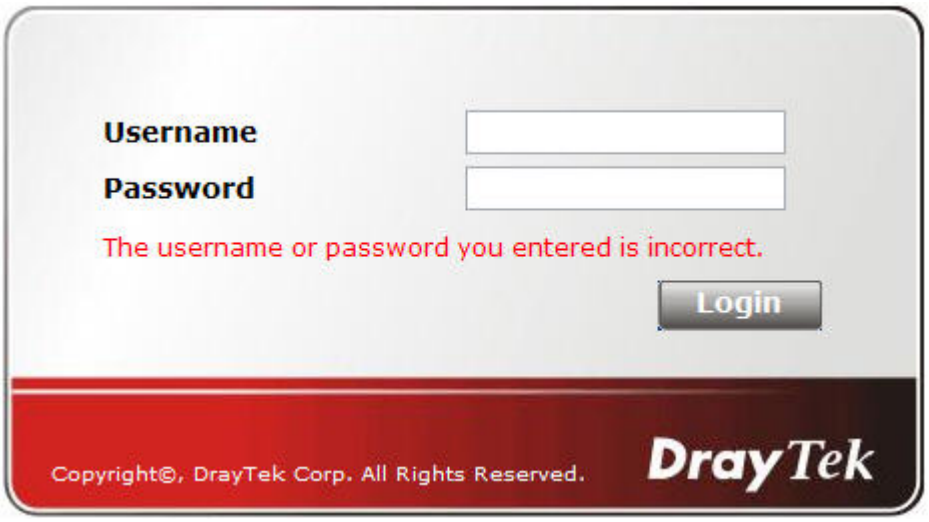


If the authentication is successful, the client will be redirected to the original web site that he tried to access. In this example, it is http://www.draytek.com . Furthermore, you will get a popped up window as the following. Then you can access the Internet.



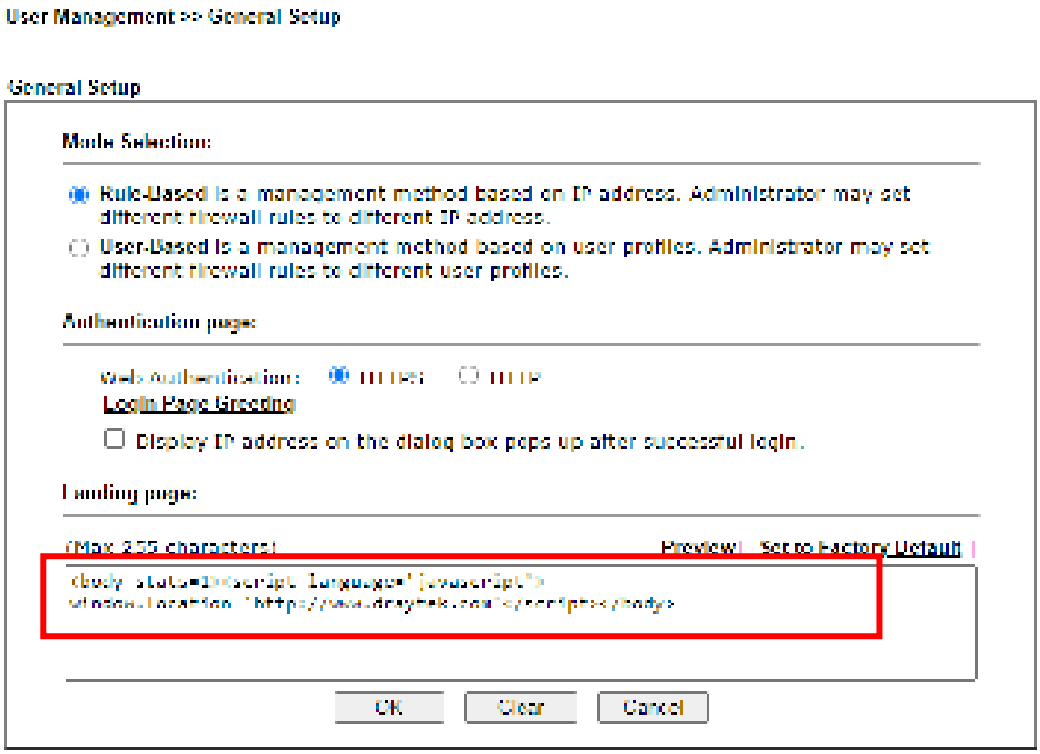
Note, if you block the web browser to pop up any window, you will not see such window.

If the authentication is failed, you will get the error message, **The username or password you entered is incorrect**. Please login again.

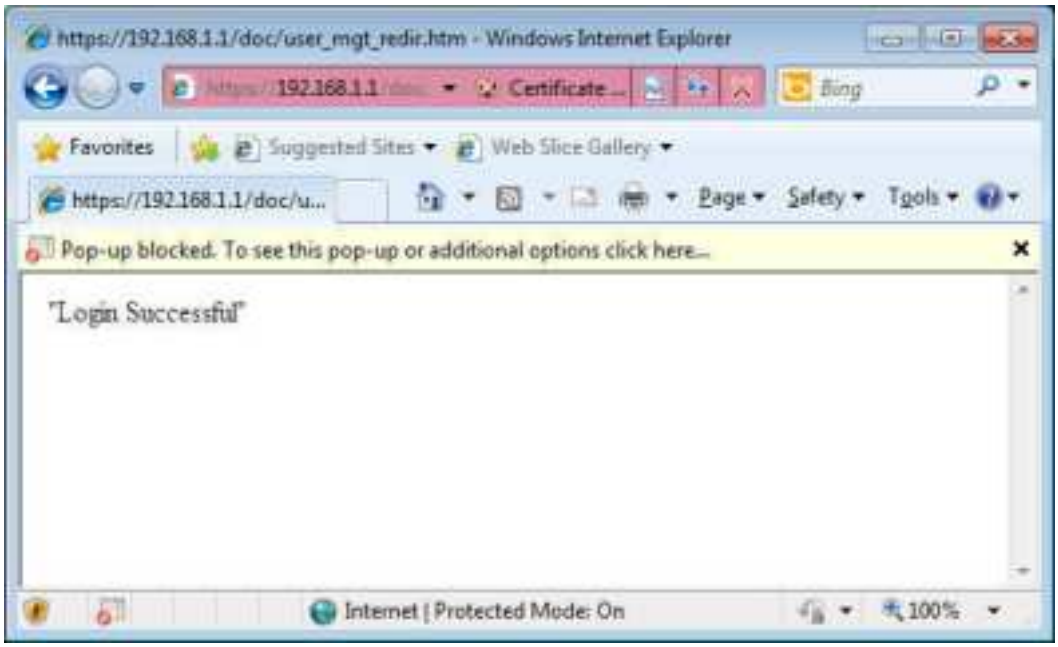


- In above description, you access an external web site to trigger the authentication. You may also directly access the router's Web UI for authentication. Both HTTP and HTTPS are supported, for example http://192.168.1.1 or https://192.168.1.1 . Replace 192.168.1.1 with your router's real IP address, and add the port number if the default management port has been modified.

  If the authentication is successful, you will get the **Welcome Message** that is set in the **User Management >> General Setup** page.



With the default setup **<body stats=1><script language='javascript'> window.location='http://www.draytek.com'</script></body>**, you will be redirected to http://www.draytek.com . You may change it if you want. For example, you will get the following welcome message if you enter **Login Successful** in the **Welcome Message** table.



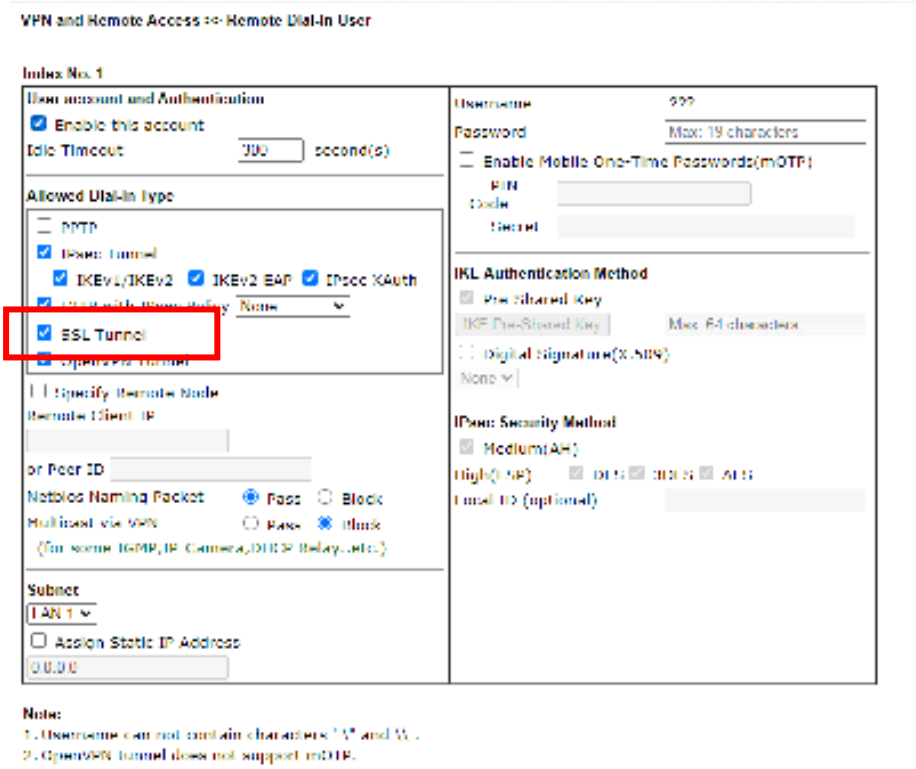
Also you will get a **Tracking Window** if you don't block the pop-up window.

- Don't setup a user profile in **User Management** and a VPN Remote Dial-in user profile with the same Username. Otherwise, you may get unexpected result. It is because the VPN Remote Dial-in User profiles can be extended to the User profiles in User Management for authentication.

  There are two different behaviors when a User Management account and a VPN profile share the same Username:

  - If **SSL Tunnel** or **SSL Web Proxy** is enabled in the VPN profile, the user profile in User Management will always be invalid for Web authentication. For example, if

you create a user profile in User Management with **chaochen**/**test** as username/password, while a VPN Remote Dial-in user profile with the same username “chaochen” but a different password “1234”, you will always get error message **The username or password you entered is incorrect** when you use **chaochen**/**test** via Web to do authentication.



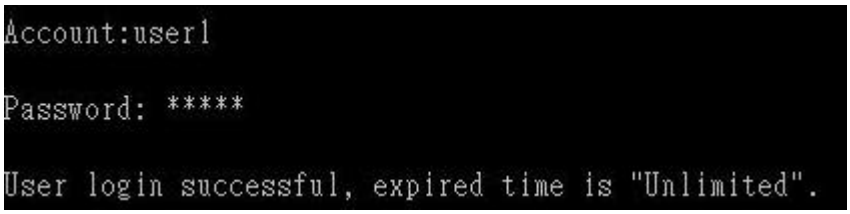
- If **SSL Tunnel** or **SSL Web Proxy** is disabled in the VPN profile, a User Management account and a remote dial-in VPN profile can use the same Username, even with different passwords. However, we recommend you to use different usernames for different user profiles in User Management and VPN profiles.

Authentication via Telnet

The LAN clients can also authenticate their accounts via telnet.

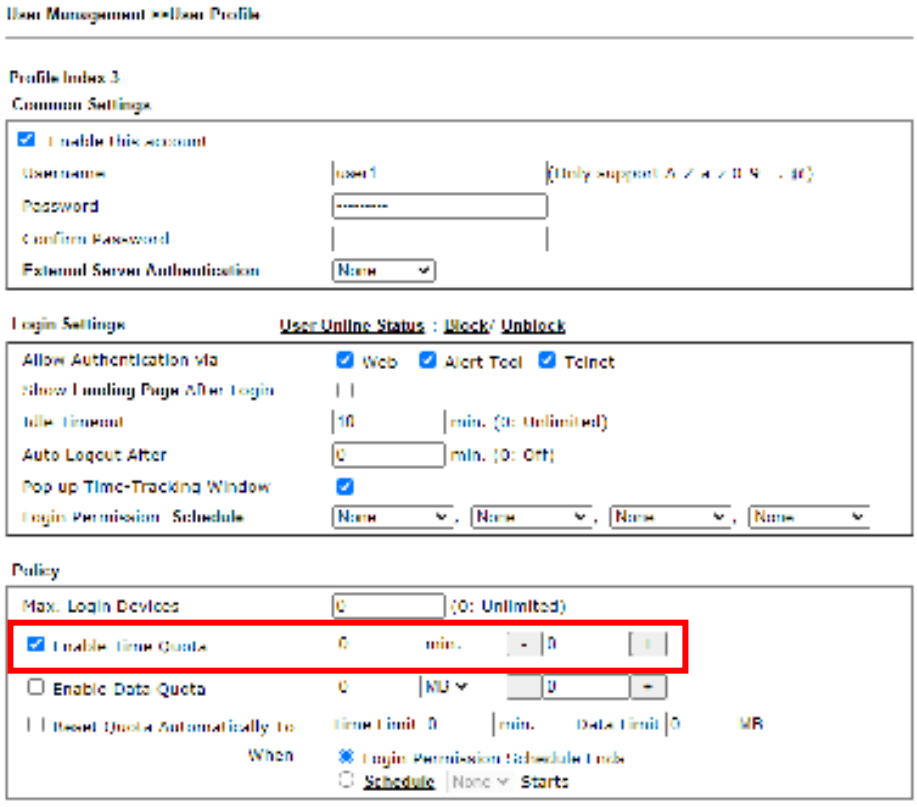
1. Telnet to the router's LAN IP address and input the account name for the authentication:

2. Enter the password for authentication and press **Enter**. The message **User login successful** will be displayed with the expired time (if configured).

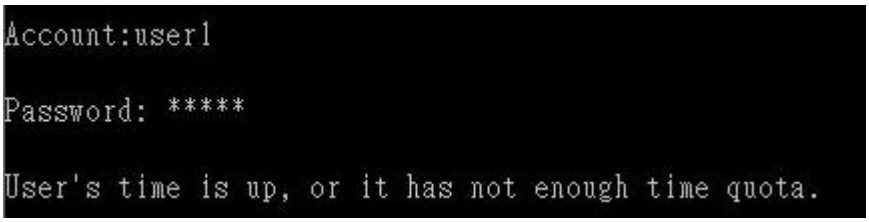


Info	Here expired time is "Unlimited" means the Time Quota function is not enabled for this account. After login, this account will not be expired until it is logout.

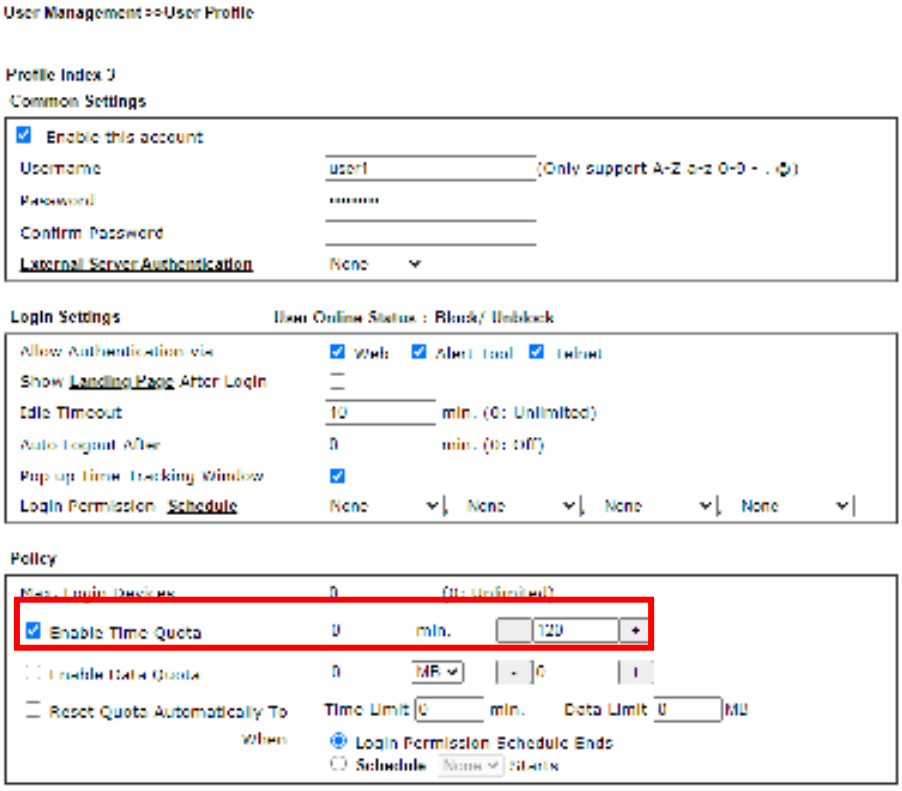
3. In the Web interface of router, the configuration page of **Time Quota** is shown as below.



4. If the Time Quota is set with “0” minute, you will get the following message which means this account has no time quota.



If the **Time Quota** is enabled and time is *not* 0 minute,



You will get the following message. The expired time is shown after you login.

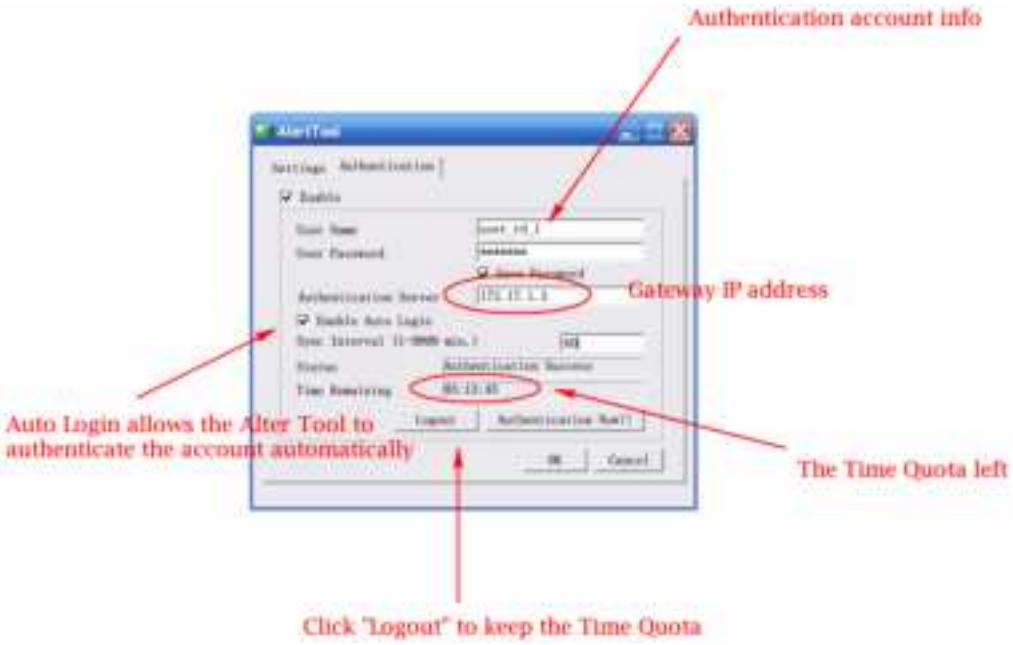
After you run out the available time, you can’t use this account any more until the administrator manually adds additional time for you.

Authentication via VigorPro Alert Notice Tool

Authentication via Web or Telnet is convenient for users; however, it has some limitations. The most advantage with VigorPro Alert Notice Tool to operate the authentication is the ability to do **auto login**. If the timeout value set on the router for the user account has been reached, the router will stop the client computer from accessing the Internet until it does an authentication again. Authentication via VigorPro Alert Notice Tool allows user to setup the re-authentication interval so that the utility will send authentication requests periodically. This will keep the client hosts from having to manually authenticate again and again.

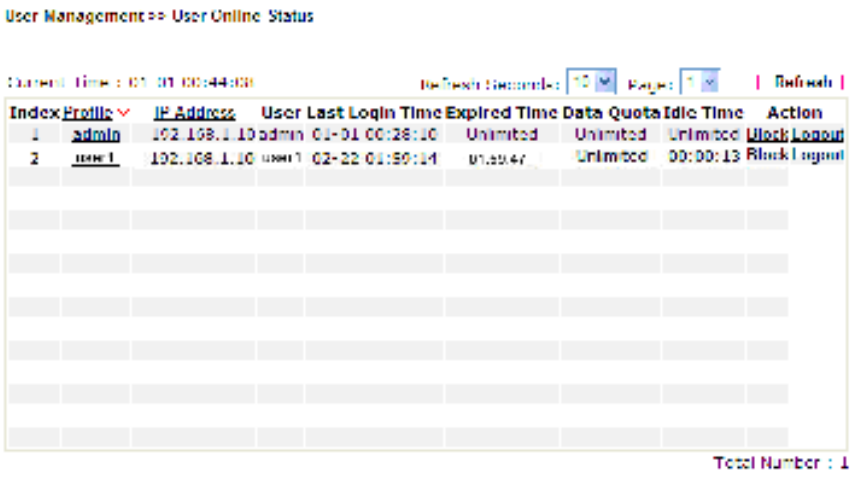
The configuration of the VigorPro Alert Notice Tool is as follows:

1. Click **Authenticate Now!!** to start the authentication immediately.



2. You may get the **VigorPro Alert Notice Tool** from the following link: http://www.draytek.com/user/SupportDLUtility.php

Info 1	Any modification to the Firewall policy will break down the connections of all current users. They all have to authenticate again for Internet access.
Info 2	The administrator may check the current users from **User Online Status** page.

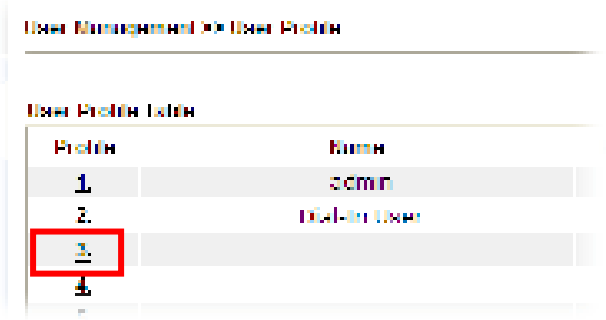


A-2 How to use Landing Page Feature

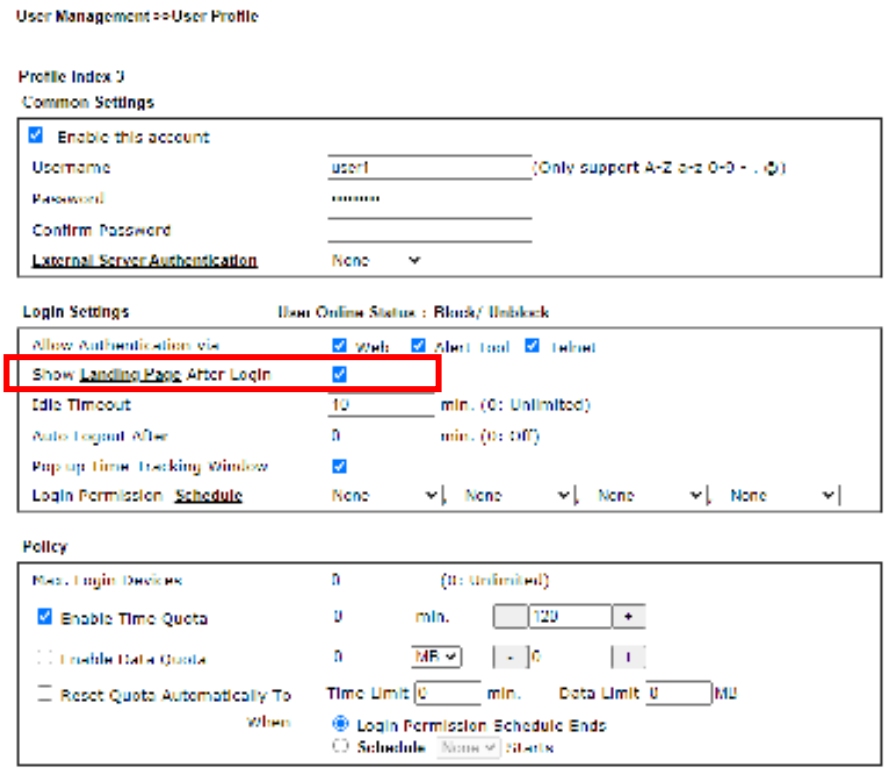
Landing Page is a special feature configured under **User Management**. It can specify the message, content to be seen or specify which website to be accessed into when users try to access into the Internet by passing the authentication. Here, we take Vigor2927 series router as an example.

Example 1 : Users can see the message for landing page after logging into Internet successfully

1. Open the web user interface of Vigor2927.
2. Open **User Management -> General Setup** to get the following page. In the field of **Landing Page**, please Enter the words of **"Login Success"**. Please note that the maximum number of characters to be typed here is 255.
3. Now you can enable the **Landing Page** function. Open **User Management -> User Profile** and click one of the index number (e.g., index number 3) links.



4. In the following page, check the box of **Landing page** and click **OK** to save the settings.



5. Open any browser (e.g., FireFox, Internet Explorer). The logging page will appear and asks for username and password. Please Enter the correct username and password.

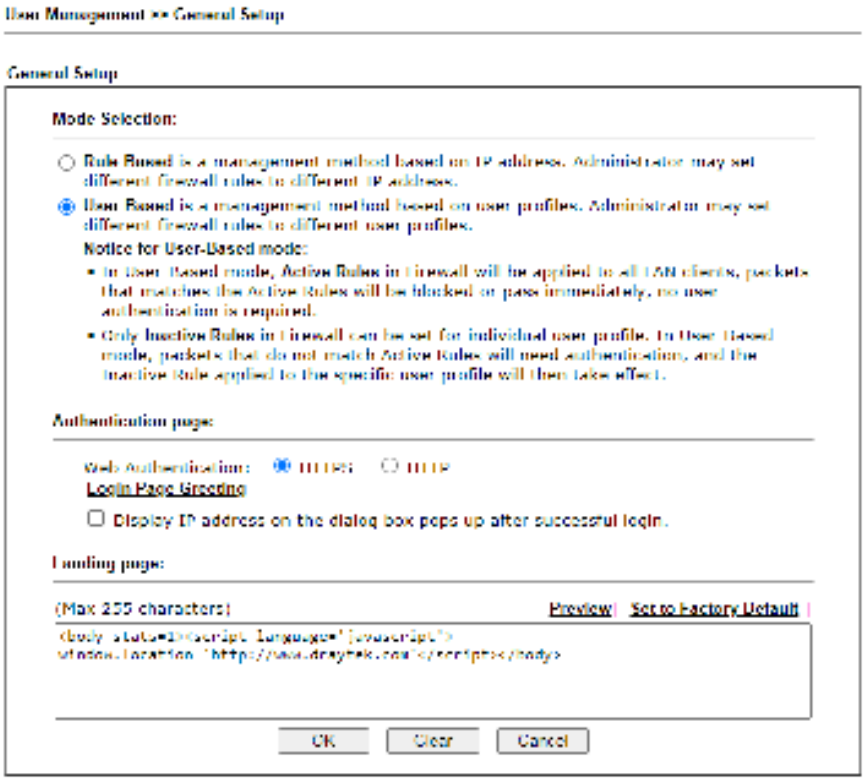
6. Click **Login**. If the logging is successful, you will see the message of Login Success from the browser you use.

Example 2：The system will connect to http://www.draytek.com automatically after logging into Internet successfully

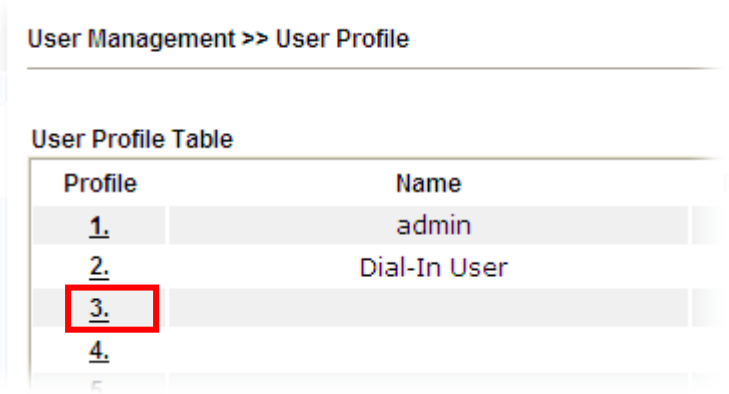
1. In the field of **Landing Page**, please Enter the words as below:

   “ **<body stats=1><script language='javascript'>**

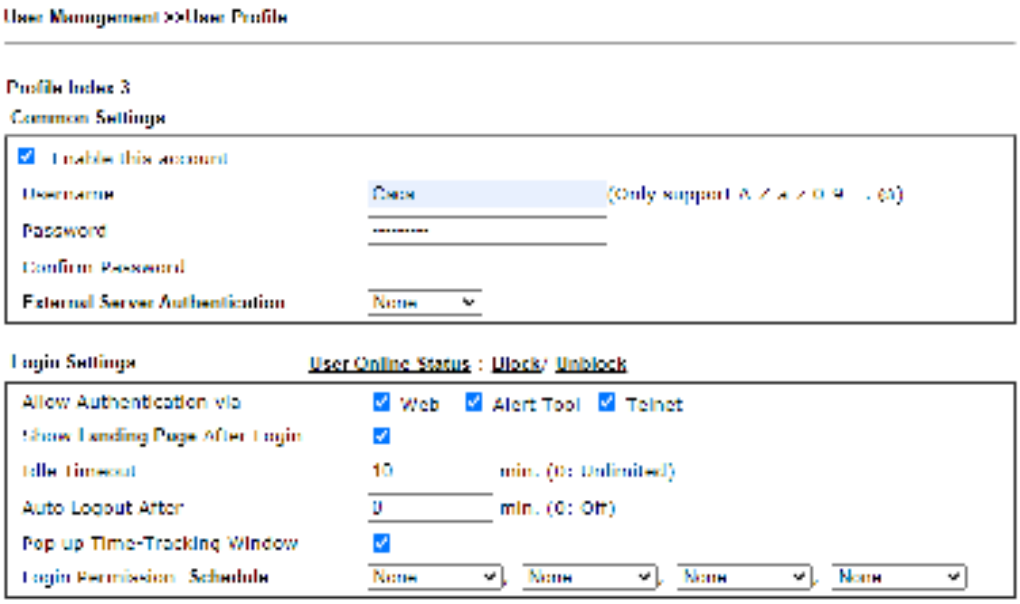
   window.location='http://www.draytek.com'</script></body>”



2. Next, enable the **Landing Page** function. Open **User Management -> User Profile** and click one of the index number (e.g., index number 3) links.

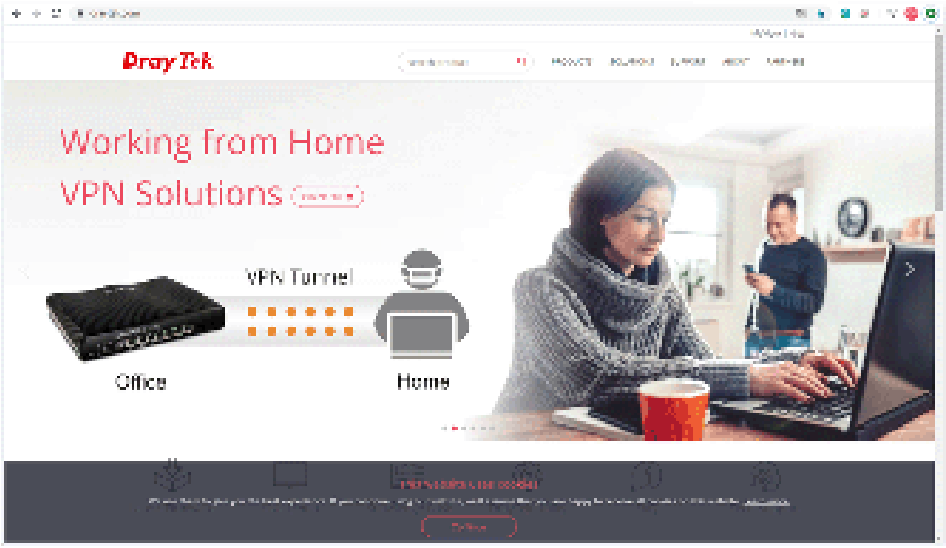


3. In the following page, check the box of **Landing page** and click **OK** to save the settings.



4. Open any browser (e.g., FireFox, Internet Explorer). The logging page will appear and asks for username and password. Please Enter the correct username and password.

5. Click **Login**. If the logging is successful, you will be directed into the website of www.draytek.com.



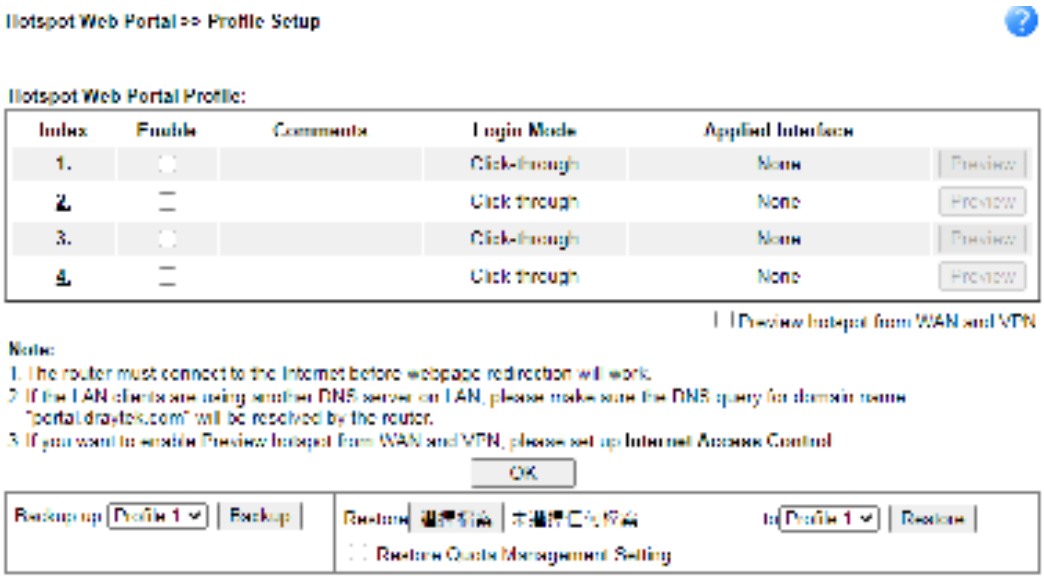
VII-4 Hotspot Web Portal

The Hotspot Web Portal feature allows you to set up profiles so that LAN users could either be redirected to specific URLs, or be shown messages when they first connect to the Internet through the router. Users could be required to read and agree to terms and conditions, or authenticate themselves, prior to gaining access to the Internet. Other potential uses include the serving of advertisements and promotional materials, and broadcast of public service announcements.

Web User Interface

VII-4-1 Profile Setup

Select **Profile Setup** to create or modify Portal profiles. Up to 4 profiles can be created to meet different requirements according to LAN subnets, WLAN SSIDs, origin and destination IP addresses, etc.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Index	Click the index number link to view or update the profile settings.
Enable	Check the box to enable the profile.
Comments	Shows the description of the profile.

Login Mode	Shows the login mode used by the profile. See the section *Login Mode* for details.
Applied Interface	Shows the interfaces to which this profile applies.
Preview	Click this button to preview the Hotspot Web Portal page that will be displayed to users.
Backup up	**Profile list** - Select a source profile. **Backup** - Click to save the configuration file based on the selected source profile.
Restore ...	**Select** - Click to choose a configuration file. **to**.. - Select a destination profile. It will be restored by the selected configuration file. **Restore** - Click to perform the restoration job. **Restore Quota Management Setting** - If selected, the quota management setting also will be restored onto the destination profile.

VII-4-1-1 Login Method

There are four login methods to choose from for authenticating network clients: **Skip Login**, **Click Through**, **Various Hotspot Login**, and **External Portal Server Login**. Each login mode will present a different web page to users when they connect to the network.

(A) Skip Login, landing page only

This mode does not perform any authentication. The user will be redirected to the landing page. The user can then leave the landing page to visit other websites.

(B) Click-through

The following page will be shown to the users when they first attempt to access the Internet through the router. After clicking **Accept** on the page, users will be directed to the landing page (defined in Captive Portal URL) and be granted access to the Internet.

(C) Various Hotspot Login

An authentication page will appear when users attempt to access the Internet for the first time via the router. After authenticating themselves using a Facebook account, Google account, PIN code, password for RADIUS server, they will be directed to the landing page and be granted access to the Internet.

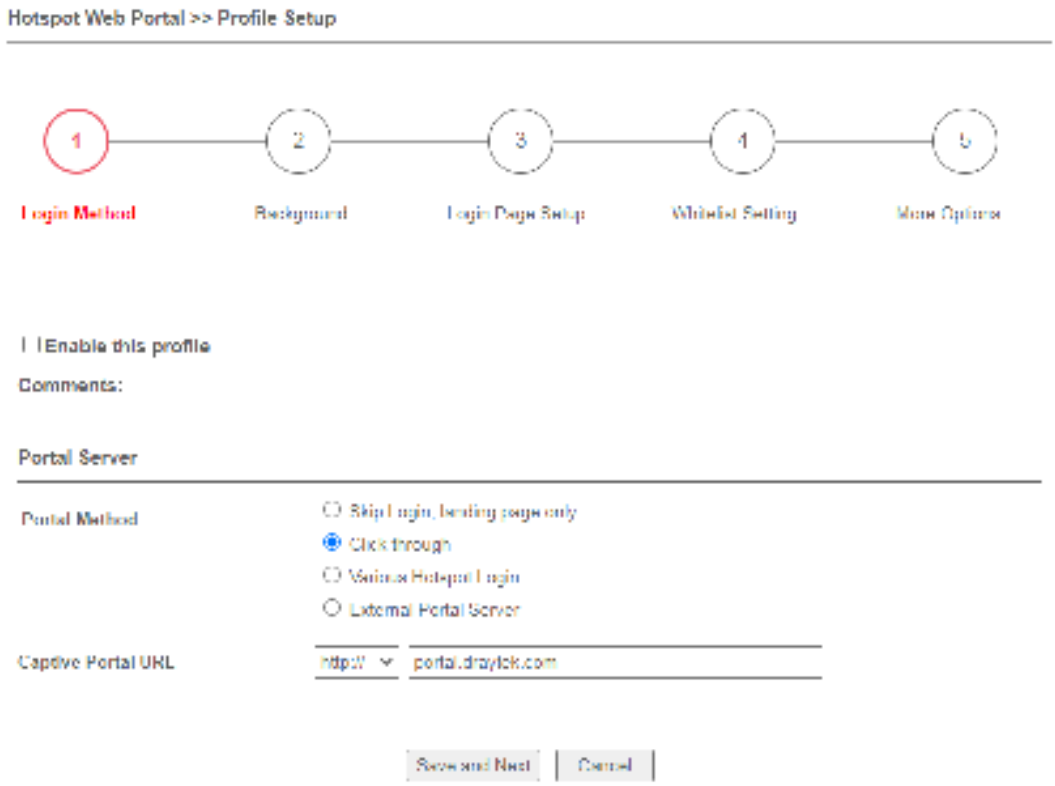
(D) External Portal Server

External RADIUS server will authenticate the users when they attempt to access the Internet for the first time via the router.

VII-4-1-2 Steps for Configuring a Web Portal Profile

1 Login Method

Click the index link (e.g., #1) of the selected profile to display the following page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable this profile	Check to enable this profile.
Comments	Enter a brief description to identify this profile.
Portal Server	
Portal Method	There are four methods to be selected as for portal server. ○ Skip Login, landing page only ◉ Click through ○ Various Hotspot Login ○ External Portal Server
*When **Skip Loging, landing page only** or **Click through** is selected as Portal Method*	
Captive Portal URL	Enter the captive portal URL.
*When **Various Hotspot Login** is selected as Portal Method*	
Captive Portal URL	Enter the captive portal URL.
Login Methods	This setting is available when **Various Hotspot Login** is selected as the portal method.

	Choose Login Method - Select one or more desired login methods. ● Login with Facebook ● Login with Google ● Receive PIN via SMS ● Receive PIN via Mail ● PIN with Voucher ● Login with RADIUS ● Leave Info Login
Facebook (Login with Facebook)	This setting is available when **Login with Facebook** is selected as the login method. **Facebook APP ID** - Enter a valid Facebook developer app ID. If you do not already have an app ID, refer to section A-1 *How to create a Facebook App ID for Web Portal Authentication* for instructions on obtaining an APP ID. **Facebook APP Secret** - Enter the secret configured for the APP ID entered above. Refer to section A-1 *How to create a Facebook App ID for Web Portal Authentication* for details.
Google (Login with Google)	This setting is available when **Login with Google** is selected as the login method. **Google App ID** - Enter a valid Google app ID. If you do not already have an app ID, refer to section A-2 *How to create a Google App ID for Web Portal Authentication* for instructions on obtaining an APP ID. **Google App Secret** - Enter the secret configured for the APP ID entered above. Refer to section A-2 *How to create a Google APP ID for Web Portal Authentication* for details.
SMS Provider (Receive PIN via SMS)	This setting is available when **Receive PIN via SMS** is selected as the login method. **Receiving PIN via SMS Provider** - Select the SMS Provider used to send PIN notifications. SMS providers are configured in **Objects Setting >> SMS / Mail Service Object**.
Mail Server (Receive PIN via Mail)	This setting is available when **Receive PIN via Mail** is selected as the login method. **Receiving PIN via Mail Server** - Select the mail server used to send PIN notifications. Mail servers are configured in **Objects Setting >> SMS / Mail Service Object**.
Radius Server (Login with RADIUS)	This setting is available when **Login with RADIUS** is selected as the login method. **Authentication Method** – Click link to configure the external RADIUS server for authenticating web portal clients. **RADIUS MAC Authentication** – Check **Enable** to activate user authentication by MAC address. **MAC Address Format** – Select the MAC address format that is used by the RADIUS server. **RADIUS NAS-Identifier** - Enter an ID.
*When **External Portal Server** is selected as Portal Method*	
Redirection URL	Enter the URL to which the client will be redirected.
RADIUS Server	**Authentication Method** - To configure the RADIUS server, click the External RADIUS Server link and you will be presented with the

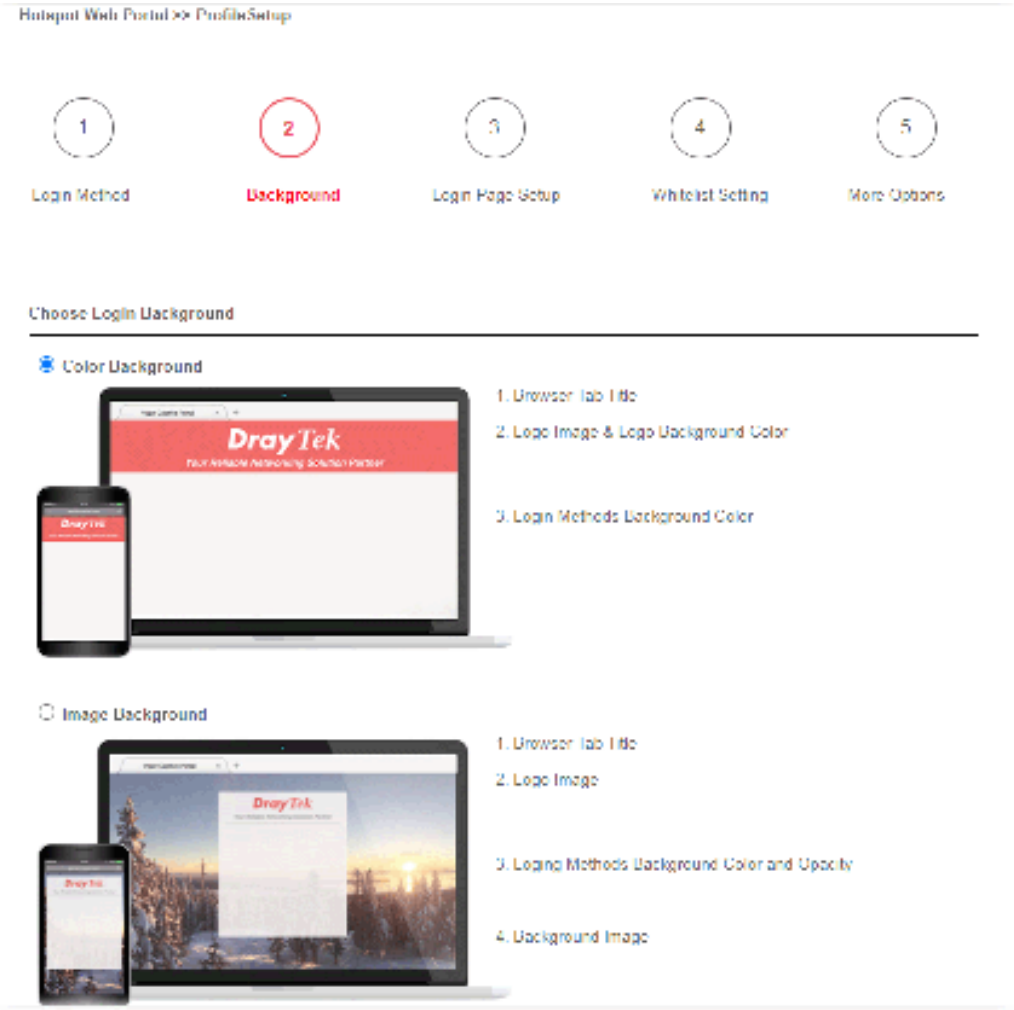
	configuration page. **RADIUS MAC Authentication** - If the RADIUS server supports authentication by MAC address, enable **RADIUS MAC Authentication** and select the MAC address format that is used by the RADIUS server. **MAC Address Format** - Select the MAC address format. **RADIUS NAS-Identifier** - Enter an ID.
Save and Next	Click to save the configuration on this page and proceed to the next page.
Cancel	Click to save the configuration on this page and proceed to the next page.

If you have chosen **Skip Login, landing page only** or **External Portal Server** as the portal method, skip to step 4 *Whitelisting* below.

Otherwise, proceed to configure the login page by following steps 2 and 3.

2 Background

If you have selected a Login Mode that requires authentication, select a background for the login page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Choose Login Background	Select either **Color Background** or **Image Background** as the login page background scheme.
Browser Tab Title	Enter the text to be shown as the webpage title in the browser.
Logo Image	The DrayTek Logo will be displayed by default. However, you can enter HTML text or upload an image to replace the default logo.
Logo Background Color	Select the background color of DrayTek Logo, or select **Customize Color** and enter the RGB value. Click **Preview** to preview the selected color.
Login Method Background Color	Select the background color of the login panel from the predefined color list, or select **Customize Color** and enter the RGB value. Click **Preview** to preview the selected color.
Opacity (10 ~ 100)	Available when **Image Background** is selected. Set the opacity of the background image.

Background Image	Available when **Image Background** is selected. Click **Browse...** to select an image file (.JPG or .PNG format), then click **Upload** to upload it to the router.
Save and Next	Click to save the configuration on this page and proceed to the next page.
Cancel	Click to abort the configuration process and return to the profile summary page.

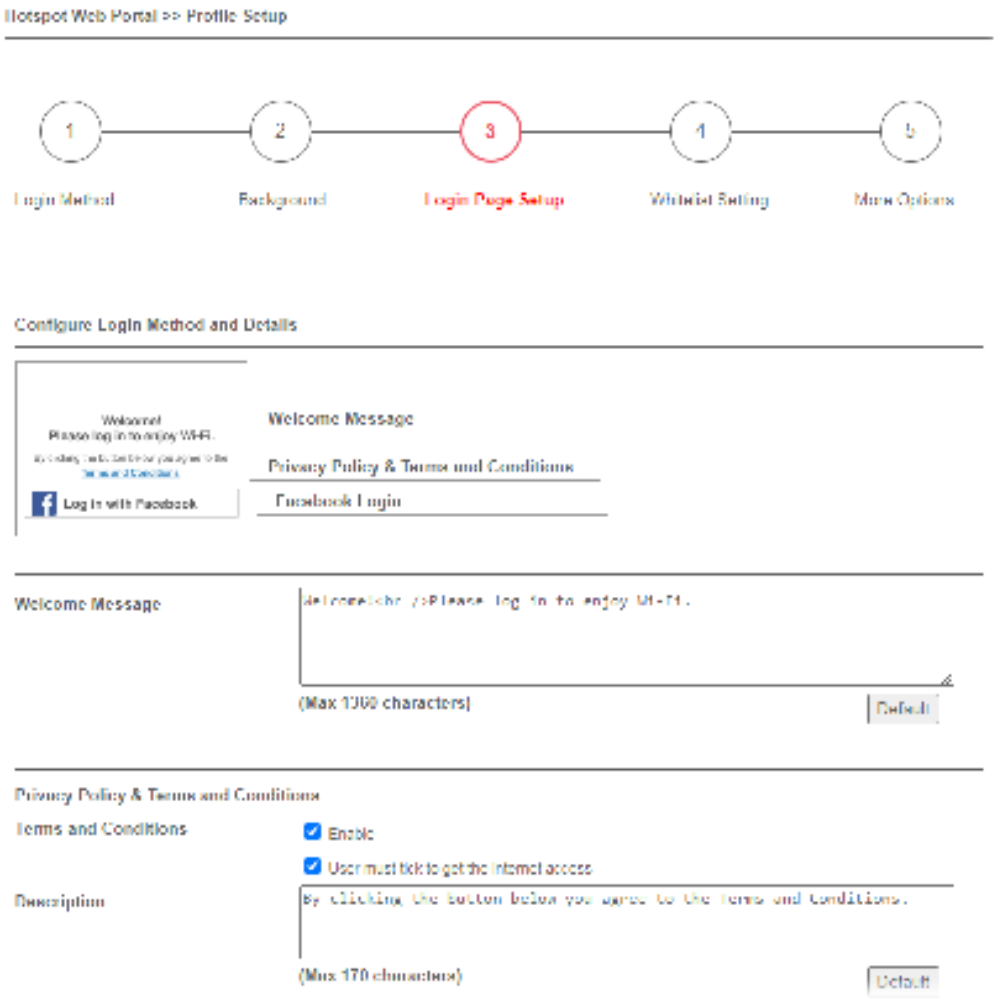
If you have selected **Skip Login, landing page only** or **External Portal Server** as the portal method, proceed to Step 4 *Whitelist Setting*; otherwise, continue to Step 3 *Login Page Setup.*

3 Login Page Setup

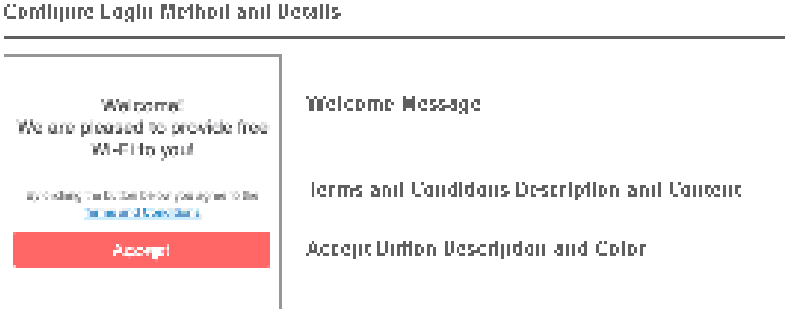
In this step you can configure settings for the login page.

Click Through

This section describes the Login Page setup if you have selected **Click Through** as the Login Method.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Login dialog will be shown as follows:  However, when **PIN with Voucher** is selected as the login method, Login dialog will be	

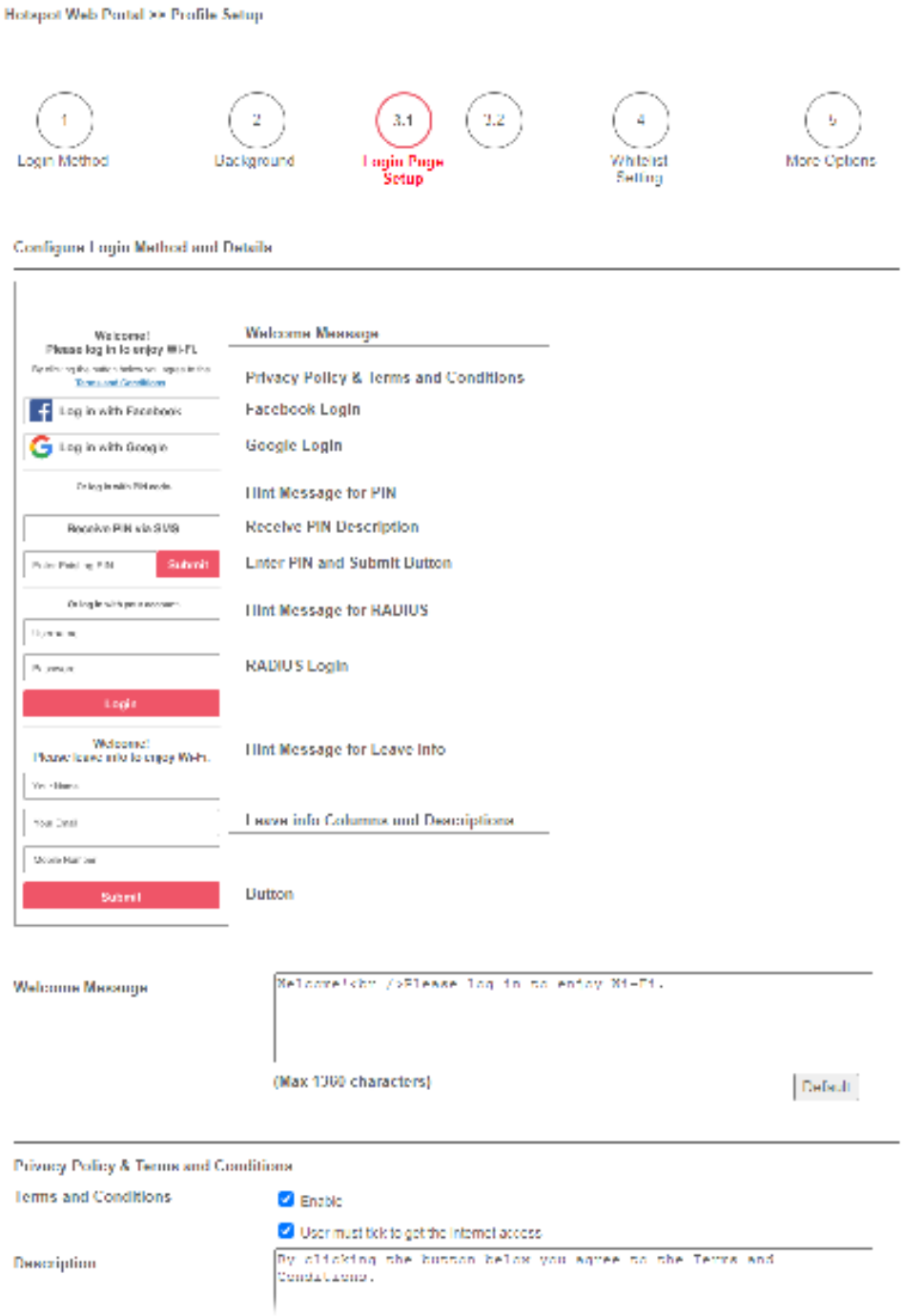
shown as follows:

Welcome Message	Enter the text to be displayed as the welcome message.
Privacy Policy & Terms and Conditions	
Terms and Conditions	**Enable** - Check the box to enable the option. **User must tick to get the internet access** - This check box is enabled in default if **Terms and Conditions** is enabled. **Description** - Enter the text to be displayed in the Terms and Conditions pop-up window. **Content -** It contains **Internal Content** and **External Content.** Choose Internal Content to enter the text to be displayed as the Terms and Conditions hyperlink text. Or choose External Content to enter an URL that will display the terms and conditions.
Data Collection for Marketing	**Enable** - Check the box to enable the option. **User must tick to get the internet access** - Check the box to enable the option. **Description** - Enter the text to inform the user.
Error message when the user does not tick	Enter the text to notify the user.
Accept Button Description	Enter the text to be displayed on the accept button.
Accept Button Color	Select the color of the accept button from the predefined color list, or select **Customize Color** and enter the RGB value. Click **Preview** to preview the selected color.
Save and Next	Click to save the configuration on this page and proceed to the next page.
Cancel	Click to abort the configuration process and return to the profile summary page.
When **PIN with Voucher** is selected as the login method,	
Hint Message for PIN	Enter a message to remind the PIN code.
Enter PIN Description	Enter the existing PIN code.
Submit Button Description	Enter the text to be displayed on the Submit button.
Submit Button Color	Select the color of the Submit button from the predefined color list, or select **Customize Color** and enter the RGB value. Click **Preview** to preview the selected color.
Save and Next	Click to save the configuration on this page and proceed to the next page.

Cancel	Click to abort the configuration process and return to the profile summary page.

Various Hotspot Login

This section describes the Login Page setup step if you have selected Various Hotspot Login the login method. You will see only settings that are relevant to the selected login method(s).



Settings that are common to Facebook, Google, PIN, and RADIUS authentication are:

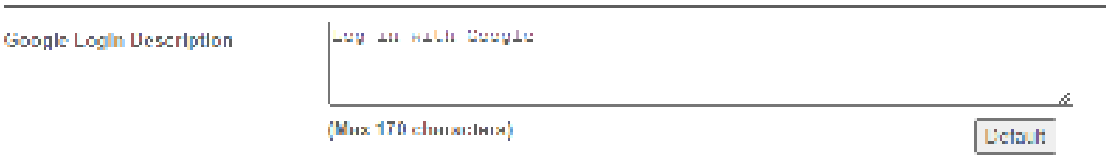
Item	Description
Welcome Message	Enter the text to be displayed as the welcome message.
Terms and Conditions	**Enable** - Check the box to enable the option. **User must tick to get the internet access** - This check box is

Description	enabled in default if **Terms and Conditions** is enabled. **Description** - Enter the text to be displayed in the Terms and Conditions pop-up window. **Content -** It contains **Internal Content** and **External Content.** Choose Internal Content to enter the text to be displayed as the Terms and Conditions hyperlink text. Or choose External Content to enter an URL that will display the terms and conditions.
Data Collection for Marketing	**Enable** - Check the box to enable the option. **User must tick to get the internet access** - Check the box to enable the option. **Description** - Enter the text to inform the user.
Error message when the user does not tick	Enter the text to notify the user.

If you have selected Facebook login, the setting will appear:

Item	Description
Facebook Login Description	Enter the text to be displayed on the Facebook login button.

If you have selected Google login, the setting will appear:



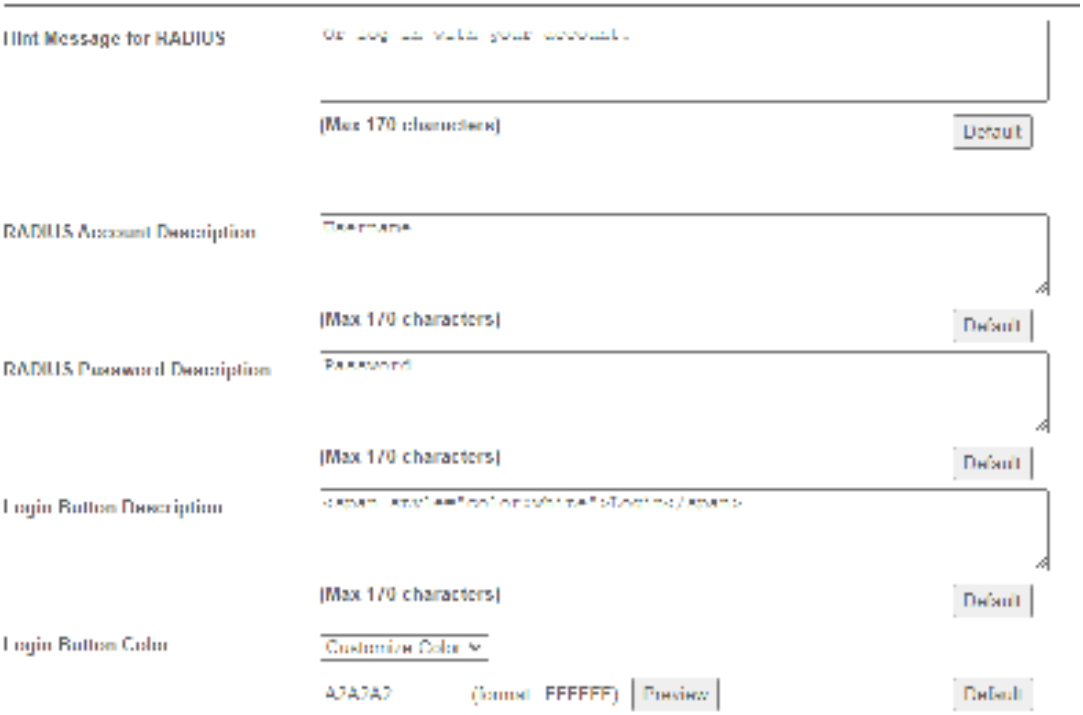
Item	Description
Google Login Description	Enter the text to be displayed on the Google login button.

If you have selected PIN login, these settings will appear:

Item	Description
Hint Message for PIN	Enter the text used to suggest users to choose SMS authentication.
Receiving PIN Description	Enter the text to be displayed on the button that the user clicks to receive an SMS PIN.
Receiving PIN via SMS Content	Enter the message to be sent by SMS to inform the user of the PIN. The PIN variable is specified by **<PIN>** within the message.
Receiving PIN via Mail Subject	Enter the subject of the mail to inform the user about the PIN code.
Receiving PIN via Mail Content	Enter the content of the mail to inform the user about the PIN code.
Enter PIN Description	Enter message to be displayed in the PIN textbox to prompt the user to enter the PIN.
Submit Button	Enter the text to be displayed on the submit PIN button

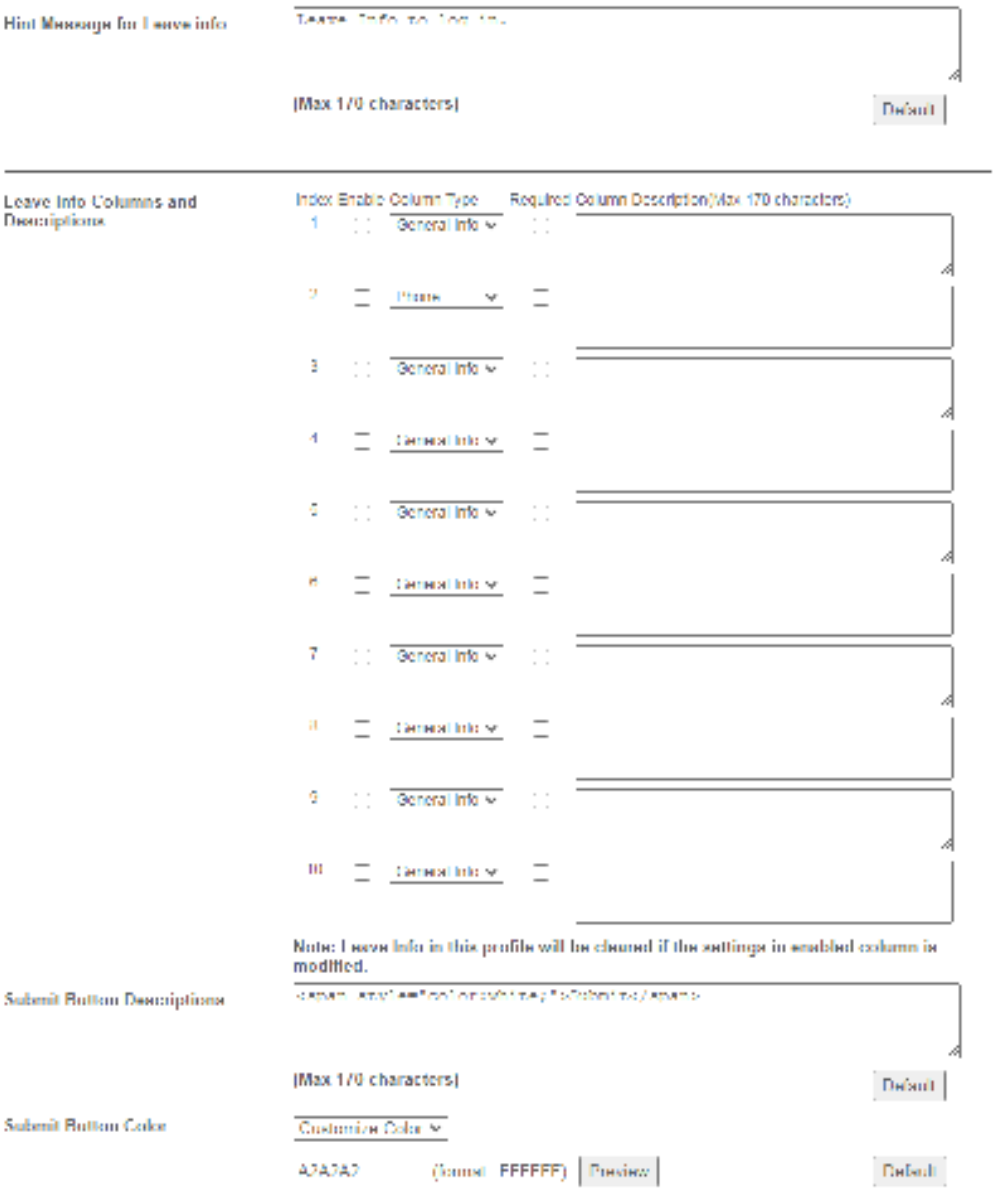
Description	
Submit Button Color	Select the color of the submit button from the predefined color list, or select **Customize Color** and enter the RGB value. Click **Preview** to preview the selected color.

If you have selected RADIUS account login, these settings will appear:



Item	Description
Hint Message for RADIUS	Enter the text used to prompt the user to login.
RADIUS Account Description	Enter the text to prompt the user to enter the username.
RADIUS Password Description	Enter the text to prompt the user to enter the password.
Login Button Description	Enter the text to be displayed on the login button.
Login Button Color	Select the color of the login button from the predefined color list, or select **Customize Color** and enter the RGB value. Click **Preview** to preview the selected color.

If you have selected Leave info login, these settings will appear:



Item	Description
Hint Message for Leave info	Enter a message to ask the user to leave personal information.
Leave info Columns and Descriptions	**Index** - There are ten entries can be modified. **Enable** - Check the box to enable the entry setting. **Column Type** - It contains General Info, Email, Phone and Checkbox. **Required** - Select to make this item be the required item. The client can not pass the server authentication if not offer the required information. **Column Description** - Information will be shown in watermark to prompt the user filling the information.
Submit Button Description	Enter the text to be displayed on the submit PIN button

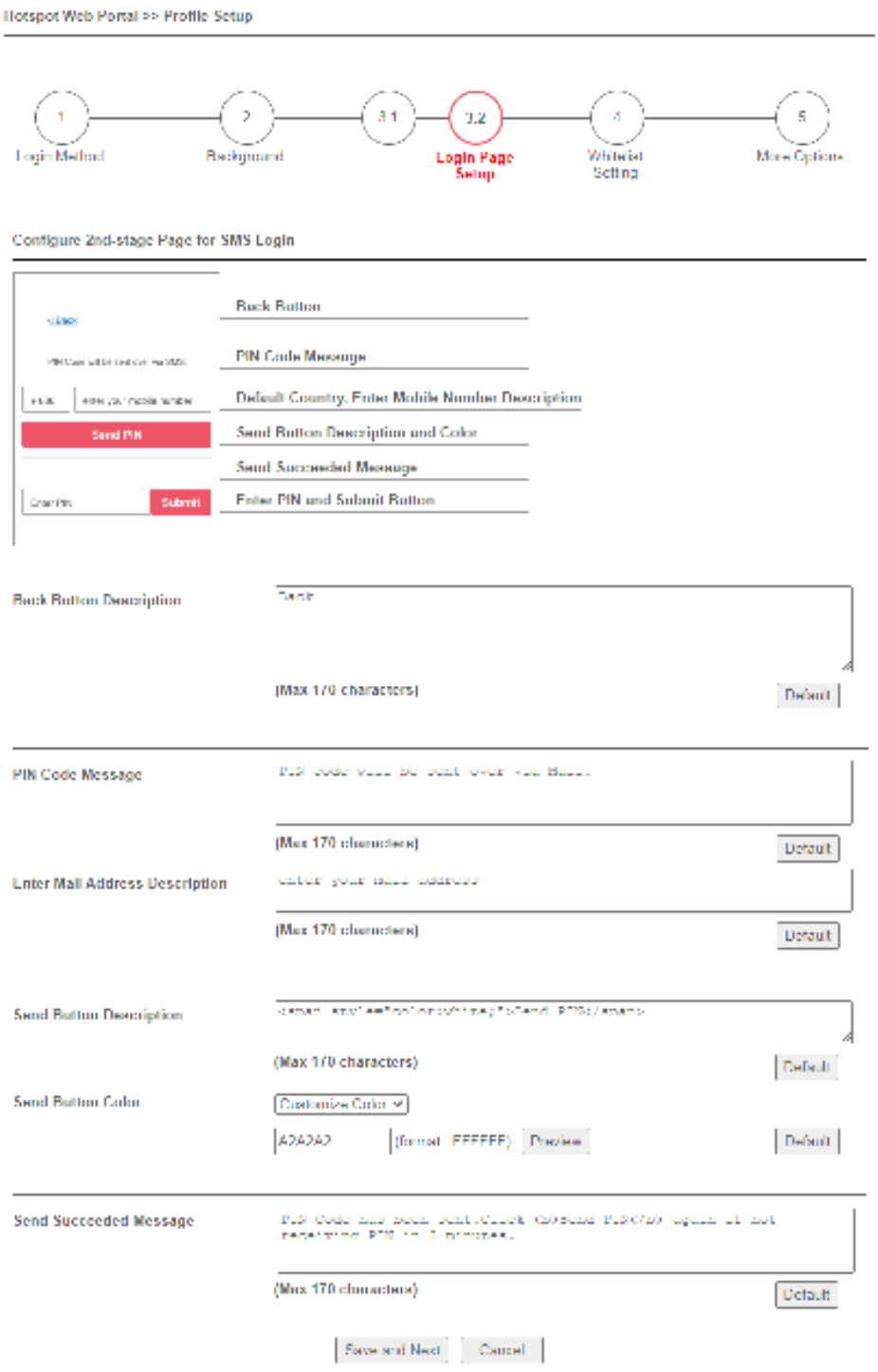
Submit Button Color	Select the color of the submit button from the predefined color list, or select **Customize Color** and enter the RGB value. Click **Preview** to preview the selected color.

And finally, the save and cancel buttons are always displayed.

Item	Description
Save and Next	Click to save the configuration on this page and proceed to the next page.
Cancel	Click to abort the configuration process and return to the profile summary page.

2nd-stage Page for PIN Login

If you have selected **PIN Login** as the login method, you will also need to configure the page that is displayed to users when they request a PIN.



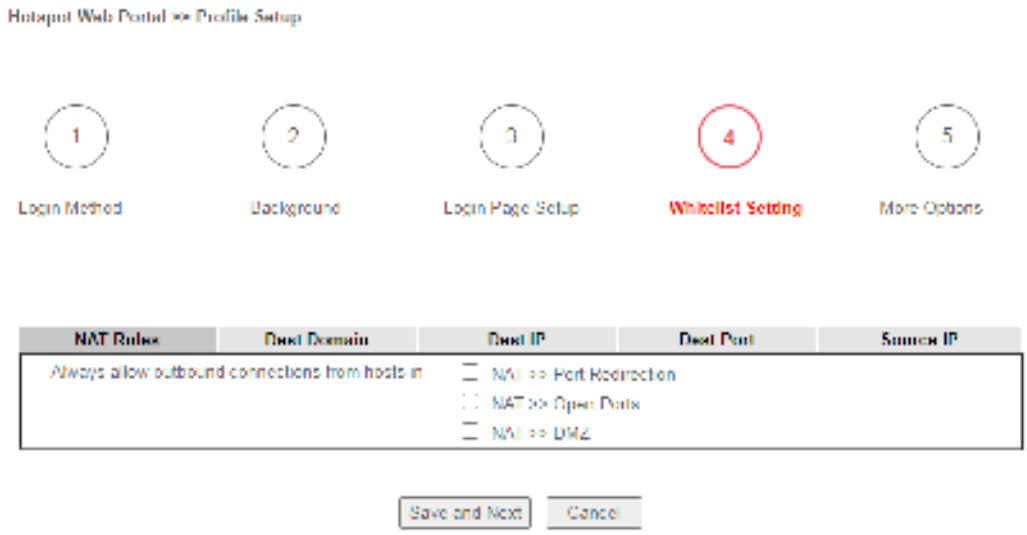
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Back Button Description	Enter text for the label of the hyperlink to return to the previous page.
PIN Code Message	Enter text to be displayed as the body text on the page.

Default Country Code	Select the default country code to be displayed using the dropdown menu.
Enter Mobile Number Description	Enter message to be displayed in the mobile number textbox to prompt the user to enter the mobile number.
Send Button Description	Enter the label text of the send button.
Send Button Color	Select the color of the send button from the predefined color list, or select **Customize Color** and enter the RGB value. Click **Preview** to preview the selected color.
Send Succeeded Message	Enter text to be displayed to notify the user after the PIN has been sent.
Save and Next	Click to save the configuration on this page and proceed to the next page.
Cancel	Click to abort the configuration process and return to the profile summary page.

4 Whitelist Setting

In this step you can configure the whitelist settings. Users are allowed to send and receive traffic that satisfies whitelist settings.

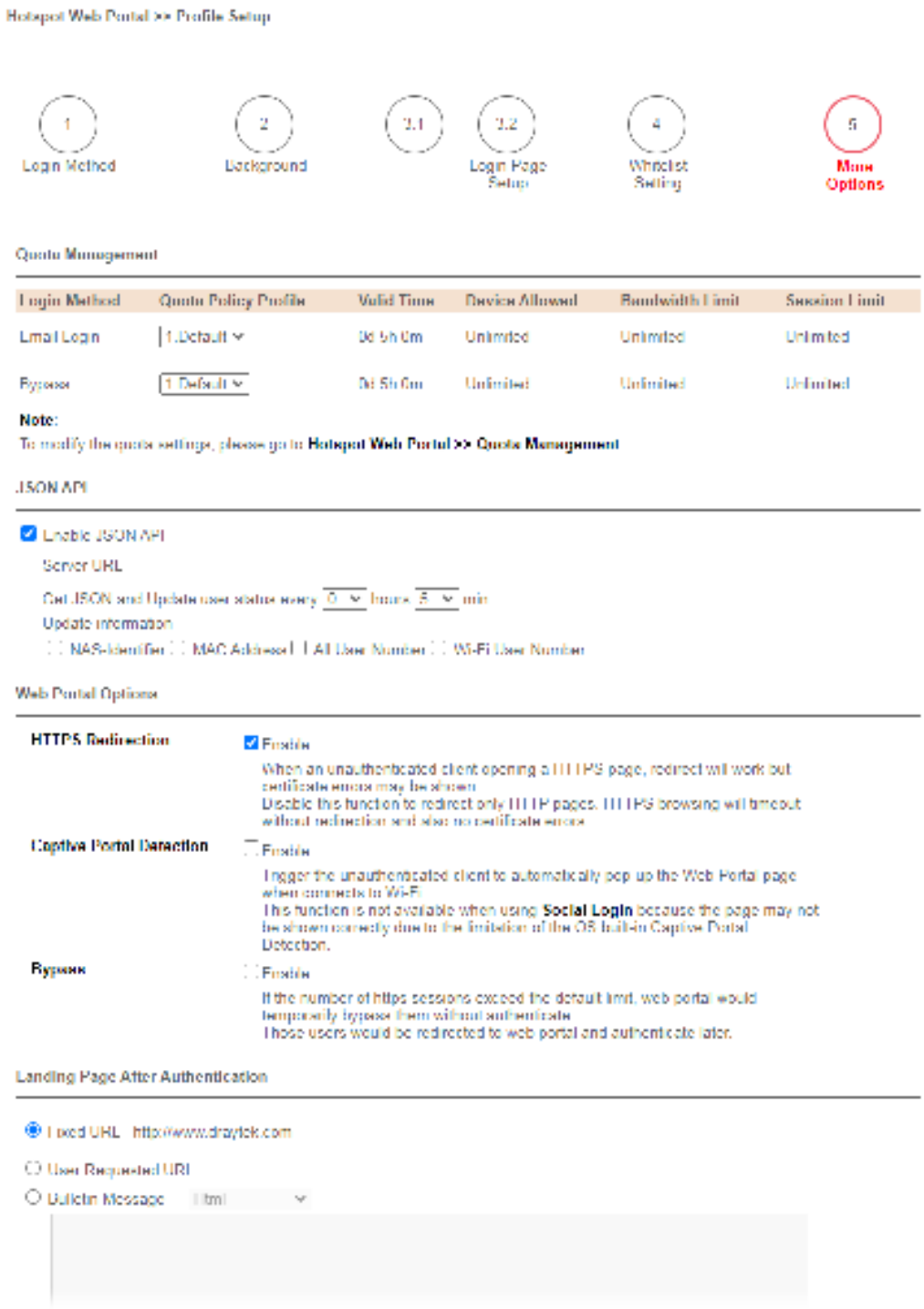


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
NAT Rules	To prevent web portal settings from conflicting with NAT rules resulting in unexpected behavior, select the NAT rules that are allowed to bypass the web portal. Hosts listed in selected NAT rules can always access the Internet without being intercepted by the web portal.
Dest Domain	Enter up to 30 destination domains that are allowed to be accessed.
Dest IP	Enter up to 30 destination IP addresses that are allowed to be accessed.
Dest Port	Enter up to 30 destination protocols and ports that are allowed through the router.
Source IP	Enter up to 30 source IP addresses that are allowed through the router.
Save and Next	Click to save the configuration on this page and proceed to the next page.
Cancel	Click to abort the configuration process and return to the profile summary page.

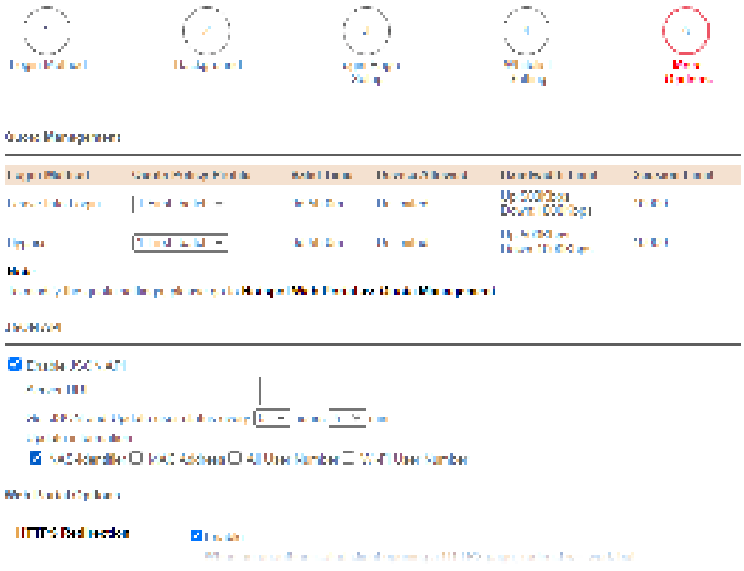
5 More Options

In this step you can configure advanced options for the Hotspot Web Portal.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Quota Management	
Quota Policy Profile	Choose a policy profile to apply to web portal clients.

JSON API	
Enable JSON API	Select to enable the JSON API format. A user can modify the hotspot settings and get the user information without accessing the WUI of the Vigor device. **Server URL** - Enter the IP address or the domain name of the remote server. The server will be used for editing the hotspot settings using the JSON API format. **Get JSON and Update user status every x hours x min** - Set the interval (hour and minute) for the router to get the JSON and user information. **Update information** - Select the items that will be updated by the remote server. 
Web Portal Options	
HTTPS Redirection	If this option is selected, unauthenticated clients accessing HTTPS websites will be redirected to the login page, but the browser may alert the user of certificate errors. If this option is not selected, attempts to access to HTTPS website will time out without redirection.
Captive Portal Detection	If this option is selected, the web portal page is triggered automatically when an unauthenticated client tries to access the Internet. This function is not available when the Login Mode is **Social Login**, as the web portal page may not be shown correctly due to the limitations of the operating system's built-in Captive Portal Detection.
Bypass	If the number of HTTPS sessions exceeds the default limit, the web portal would temporarily bypass them without authenticate. Those clients would be redirected to the web portal and authenticate later.
Landing Page After Authentication	
Fixed URL	Specifies the webpage that will be displayed after the user has successfully authenticated. The user will be redirected to the specified URL. This could be used for displaying advertisements to users, such as guests requesting wireless Internet access in a hotel.
User Requested URL	The user will be redirected to the URL they initially requested.

Bulletin Message	The message configured here will be briefly shown for a few seconds to the user. **Default Message** –This button is enabled when **Bulletin Message** is selected. Click to load the default text into the bulletin message textbox.
Applied Interfaces	
Subnet	The current Hotspot Web Portal profile will be in effect for the selected subnets.
WLAN	The current Hotspot Web Portal profile will be in effect for the selected WLAN SSIDs.
Finish	Click to complete the configuration.
Cancel	Click to abort the configuration process and return to the profile summary page.

VII-4-2 User Information

This page displays information of users accessing the Internet through the web portal. Clicking on a user link will open a new window that shows detailed information about that user.

VII-4-2-1 User Info

You may choose to limit the displayed user information by adding profile or login method filters.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Select Columns to Filter Users	Select the profiles and the login methods to filter the displayed users. This is useful when there are a lot of users and you want to manage only a subset of users based on their profiles and/or login methods.
User Table	Details of users accessing the Internet via Hotspot Web Portal will be displayed in this section.

Click the MAC address (or pincode, facebook/google name, RADIUS account) link for a particular user and detailed information on the selected device will be shown in the following page.

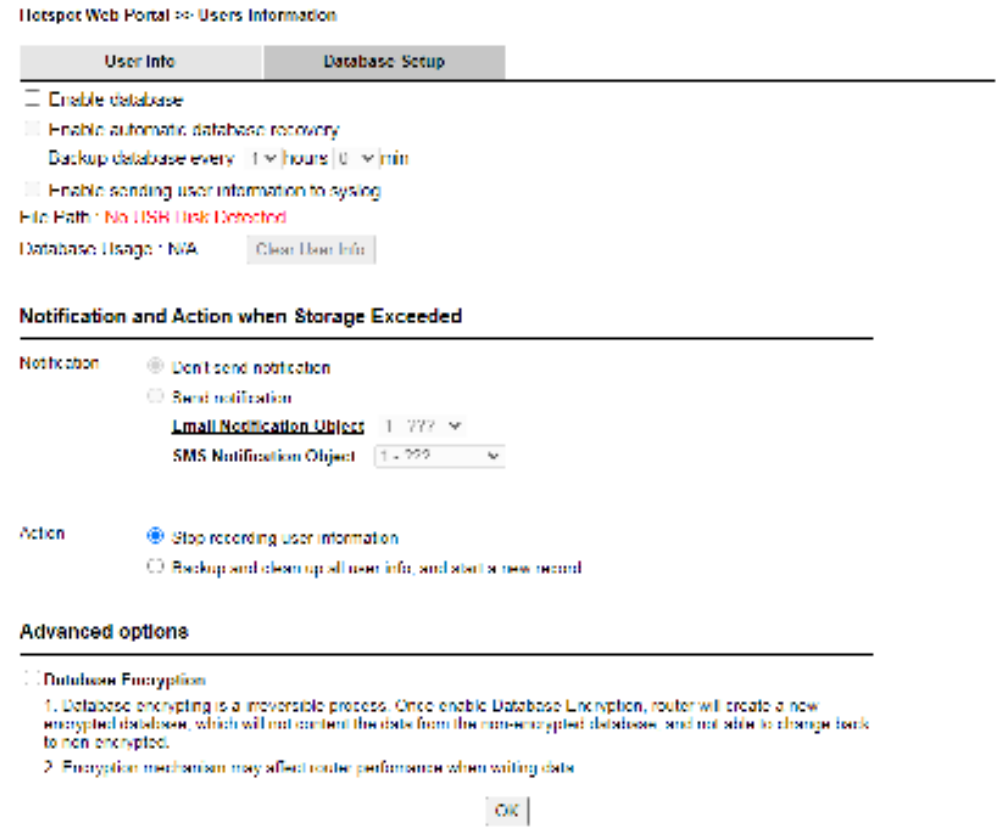
Information about the user is shown under the Login Info section.

Devices used by the user are shown under the Devices section. To forcibly log out a device, select the checkbox in front of the device and click the Log Out Device button.

The Login History section shows the 10 most recent login sessions of the user.

VII-4-2-2 Database Setup

This page allows the user to configure settings for database on USB disk.



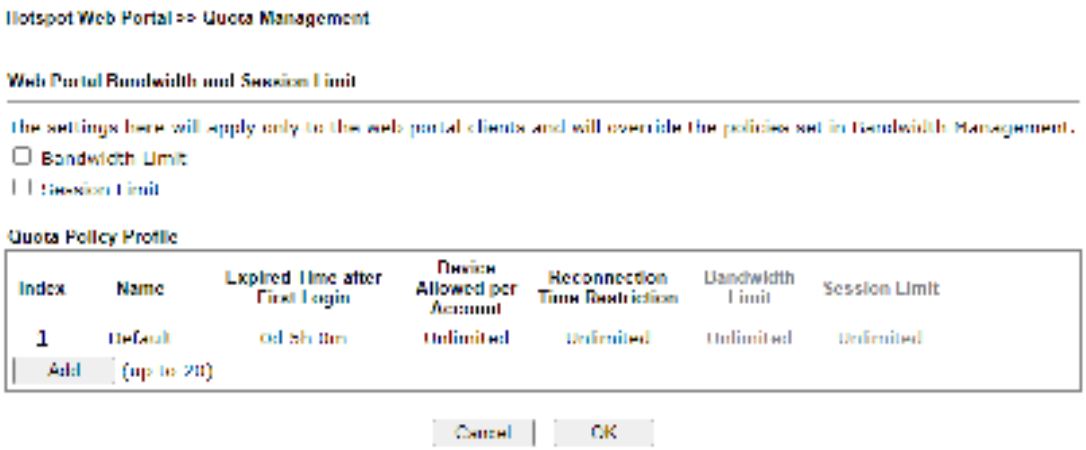
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable database	Check the box to record user information on router's database. Before checking this box, insert a USB disk with adequate storage space, first.
Enable automatic database recovery	Check the box to enable the functionality of the database recovery on the USB disk. **Backup database every**... - Set the interval to backup the database.
Enable sending user information to syslog	Check the box to send user information to syslog.
File Path	If a USB disk has been inserted into the USB port of Vigor router, the file path will be shown in this area.
Database Usage	Display the usage and remaining space on the database. **Clear User Info** – The user information will be displayed on the page of User Info. You can delete the information by clicking this button.
Notification and Action when Storage Exceeded	
Notification	**Don't send notification** – Vigor router system will not send any notification to any receipient. **Send notification** - Vigor router system will send a notification e-mail to specified receipient(s) that selected from **Email Notification Object** and **SMS Notification Object**.
Action	**Stop recording user information** – Vigor router system will stop to record the user information onto USB disk. **Backup and clean up all user info, and start a new record** – Vigor router system will backup all existed information on the USB disk onto the host and clean up the information from USB disk. Later, it will start a new record.
Advanced options	
Database Encryption	Select to have the router create a new encrypted database. Once this is done, you will not be able to revert to an unencrypted database.

VII-4-3 Quota Management

The system administrator can specify bandwidth and sessions quota which is only applicable to the web portal clients.

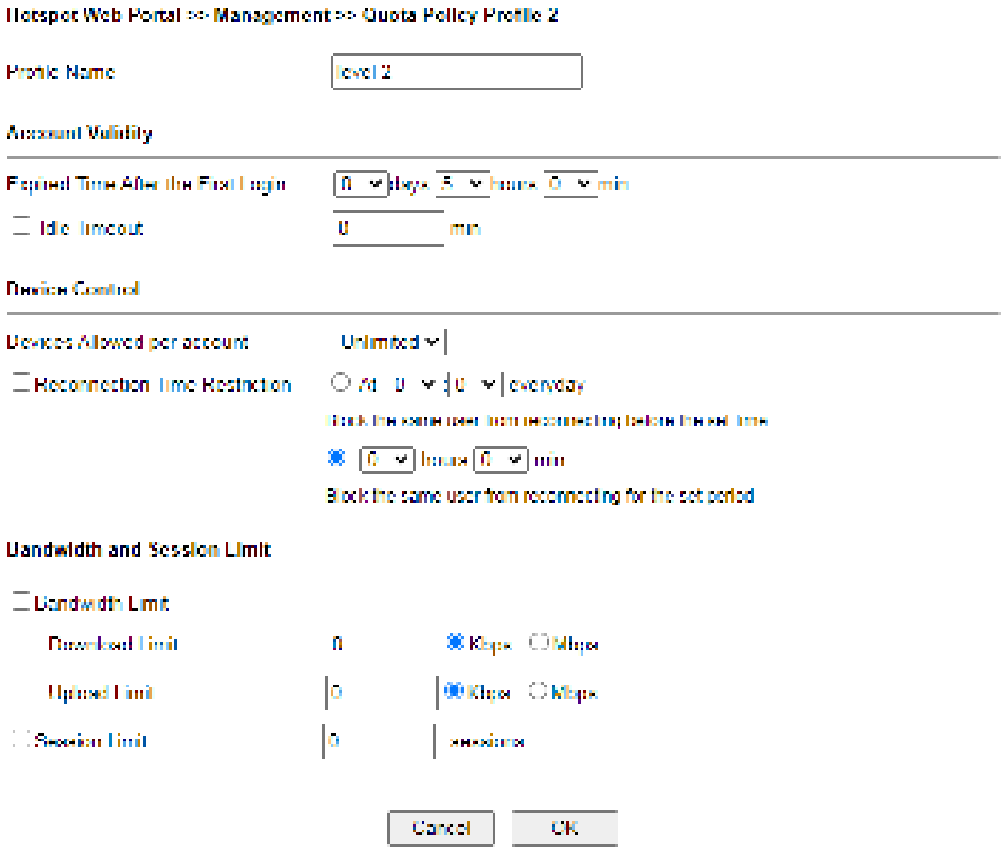
Settings configured in Quota Management will override the policies set in **Bandwidth Management>>Bandwidth Limit** and **Bandwidth Management>>Limit**.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Bandwidth Limit	Check the box to override the policy configured in **Bandwidth Management>>Bandwidth Limit.**
Session Limit	Check the box to override the policy configured in **Bandwidth Management>>Session Limit.**
Quota Policy Profile	**Add** - Create up to 20 policy profiles in such page.

To create a new quota policy profile, click **Add** to open the followining page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Name	Enter a name for a new profile.
Account Validity	Set the duration for which the login is valid. **Expired Time After the First Login** – Sets the days, hours, and minutes. After the login has expired, Vigor router will block the client from accessing the network/Internet. **Idle Timeout** – When this option is selected, Vigor router will terminate the network connection if the is no activity from the user after the specified idle time has passed.
Device Control	Set the maximum number of devices that can be connected for each account, and the time restriction for the client accessing Internet via the web portal. **Devices Allowed per account** – Use the drop-down list to select the maximum number of devices that can be connected to the network using the same account. **Reconnection Time Restriction** – Blocks the account from being used to connect devices to the network in one of two ways: ● **At ... Everyday** – After the login expires, the account cannot be used to connect devices to the network until the set time of day. ● **Hours.. min** – After the login expires, the account cannot be used to connect devices to the network for a set period of time.
Bandwidth and Session Limit	**Bandwidth Limit** – Check the box to configure bandwidth limit for web portal client.

	• **Download/Upload Limits** – Set the maximum upload and download speeds. **Session Limit**- Check the box to configure a maximum session limit for web portal clients.

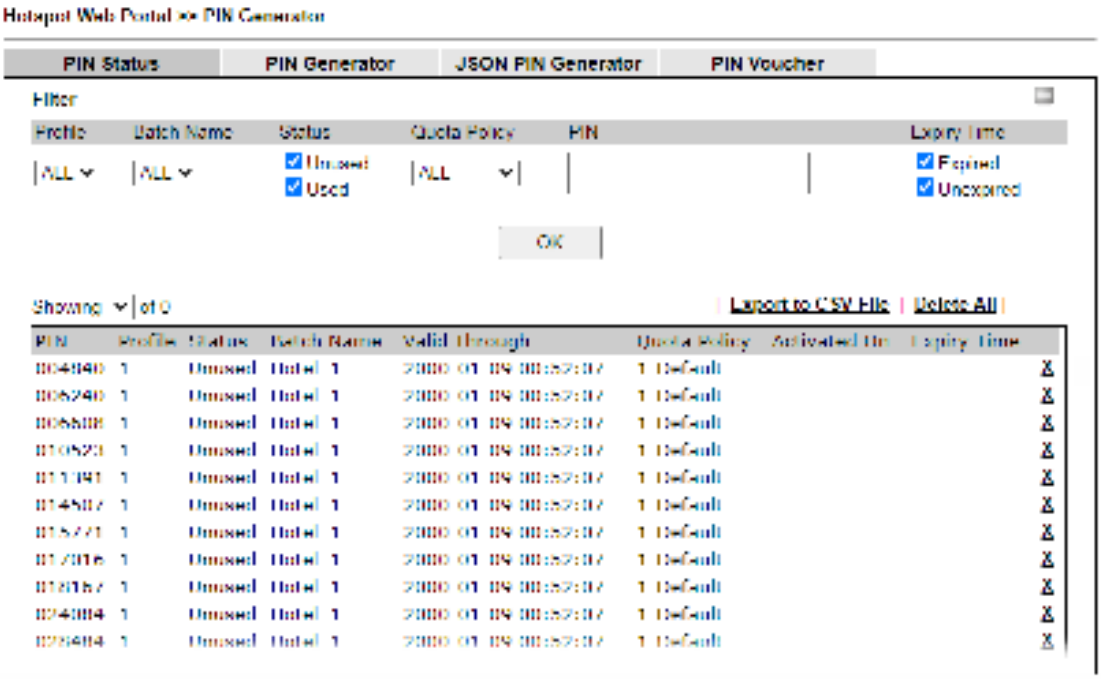
After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

VII-4-4 PIN Generator

The system administrator can generate multiple PIN codes for various usage. Before generating PIN codes, please make sure a **USB** has been inserted onto your Vigor device.

VII-4-4-1 PIN Status

This page displays the PIN codes generated by PIN Generator.

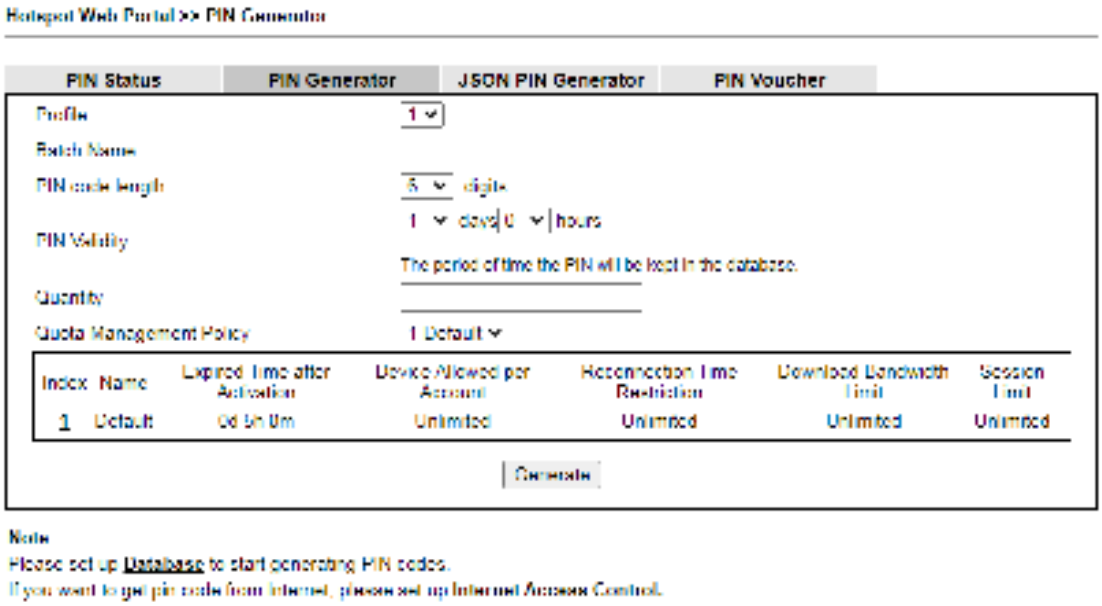


Available settings are explained as follows:

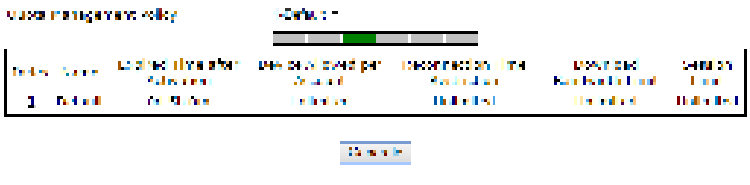
Item	Description
Profile	Use the drop down menu to choose an index number (1 to 4) for PIN generator profile.
Batch Name	Use the drop down menu to choose an existed PIN profile or choose ALL to display the PIN status.
Status	**Unused** - After checking the box, only the unused PIN codes will be shown on this page. **Used** - After checking the box, only the used PIN codes will be shown on this page.
Quota Policy	Use the drop down menu to choose a quota management policy to display related PIN codes.
PIN	Enter the PIN code to display related information on this page.
Expiry Time	**Expired** - After checking the box, only the expired PIN codes will be shown on this page. **Unexpired** - After checking the box, only the unexpired PIN codes will be shown on this page.
OK	Click it to display the PIN code according to the above filtering condition.
Export to CSV File	Click it to export the configuration of PIN code as a CSV file.

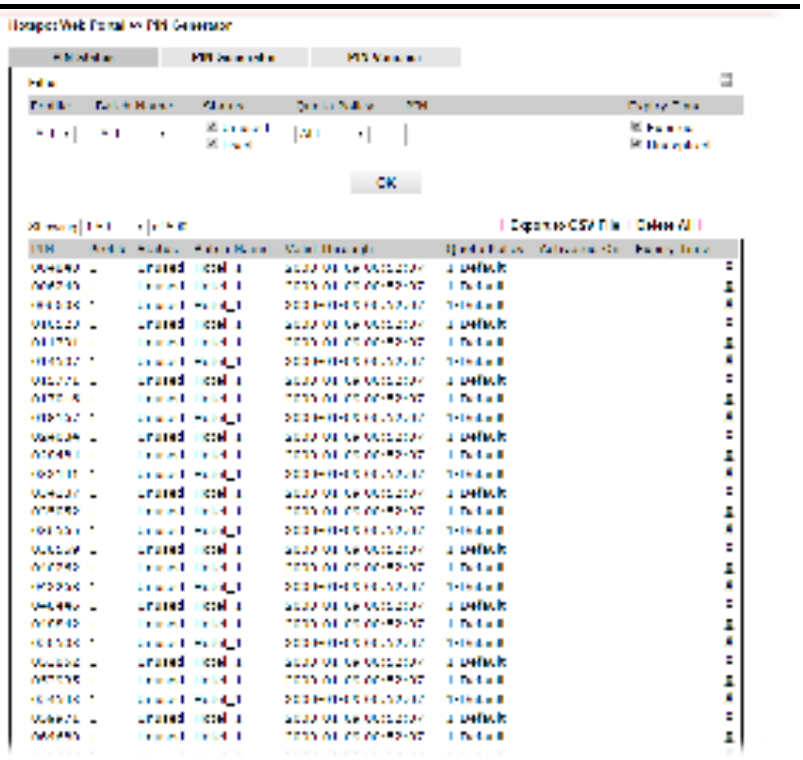
VII-4-4-2 PIN Generator

The system administrator can generate multiple PIN codes in response to the user's (e.g., enterprise) demand.



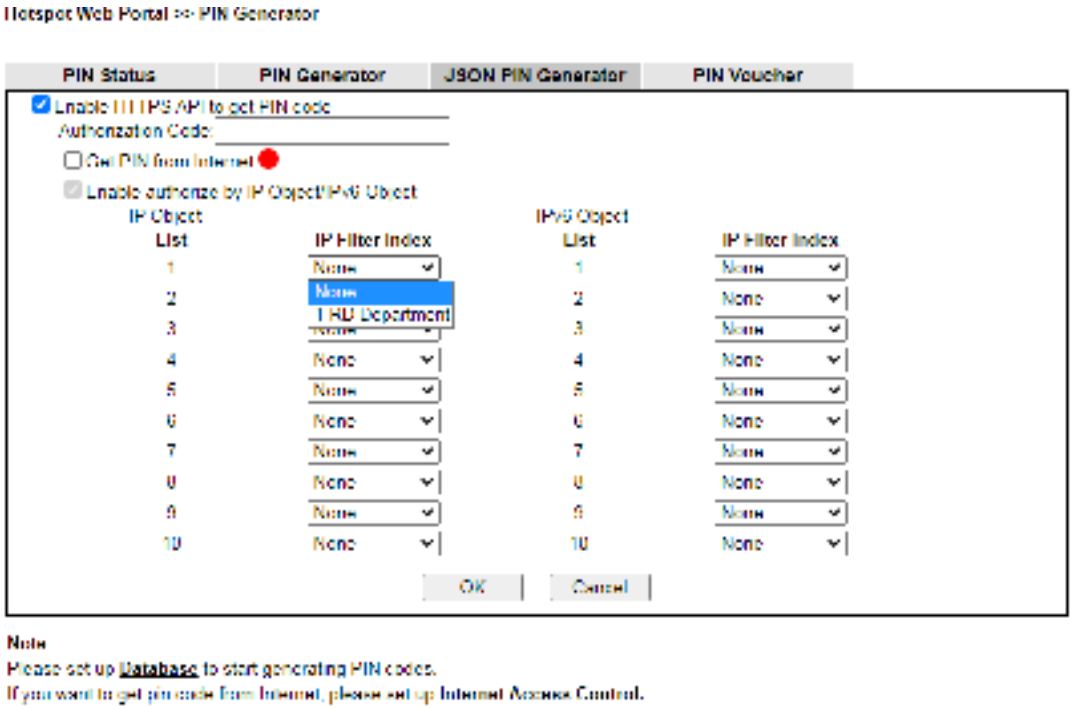
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile	Use the drop down menu to specify an index number (from 1 to 4).
Batch Name	Enter a string as a batch name.
PIN code length	Specify the length of PIN code.
PIN Validity	Set the period of time.
Quantity	Set the quantity of the PIN code.
Quota Management Policy	Use the drop down list to choose policy profile.
Generate	Click it to generate a PIN code as a voucher. The system will ask you to set up **Database** before executing the generation.  Later, available PIN code will be shown on PIN Status.



VII-4-4-3 JSON PIN Generator

The system administrator can generate JSON PIN codes in response to the user's (e.g., enterprise) demand.



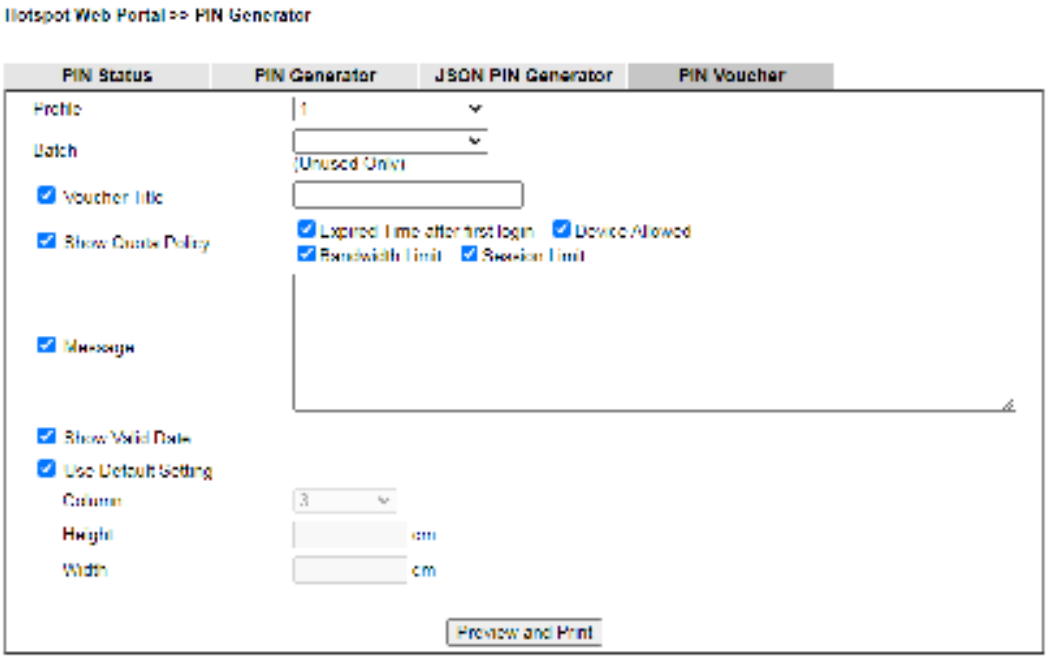
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable HTTPS API to get PIN code	Check the box to enable the HTTPS API.

Authorization Code	Enter a string as identity authentication.
Get PIN from Internet	Check the box to get the PIN code from the Internet. Before selecting, make sure the HTTPS Server option be enabled on **System Maintenance>>Management**.
Enable authorize by IP Object/IPv6 Object	Check the box to enable the authentication based on the IP/IPv6 object. **IP Filter Index** - Use the drop-down list to select IP filter (IP object/IPv6 object).

VII-4-4-4 PIN Voucher

This page allows to print out the PIN code list.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile	Use the drop down menu to specify an index number (from 1 to 4).
Batch	Use the drop down menu to specify an unused batch profile.
Voucher Title	Enter a string as a title which will be shown on a print out paper.
Show Quota Policy	Choose the item(s) to be shown on the print-out PIN code list.
Message	Enter a brief description that the client should know.
Show Valid Date	Check the box to display the valid date and time on the printed out list.
Use Default Setting	If enabled, the system will use the default setting of paper size for printing the label. If disabled, set the paper size for printing the vouchers on label printer. **Column** - Use the drop-down list to specify the column value. **Height** - Enter the value of the height. **Width** - Enter the value of the width.

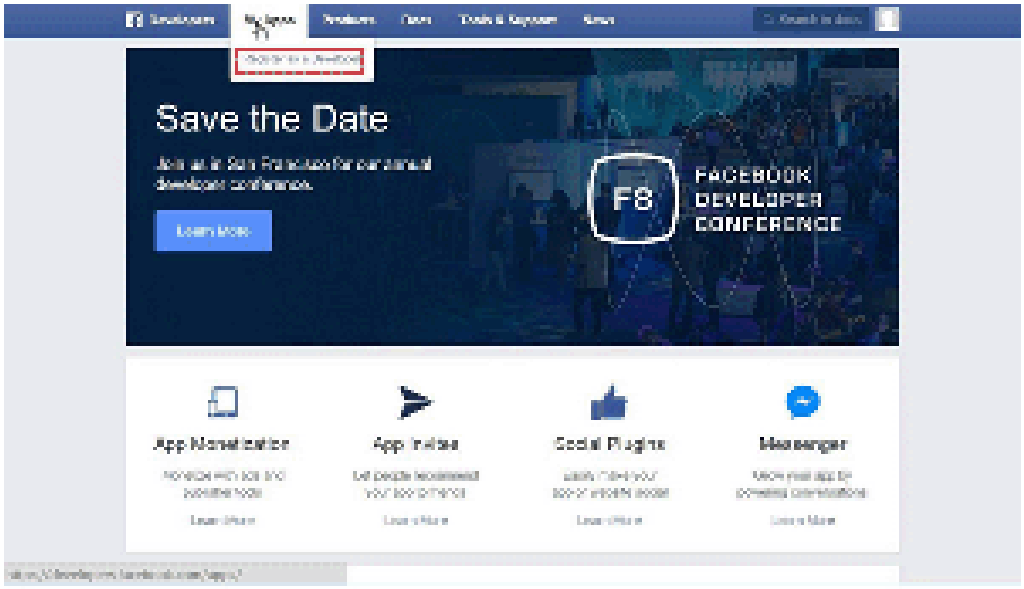
Preview and Print	Click it to display the PIN code list. This list can be printed out if required.

Application Notes

A-1 How to create Facebook APP for Web Portal Authentication?

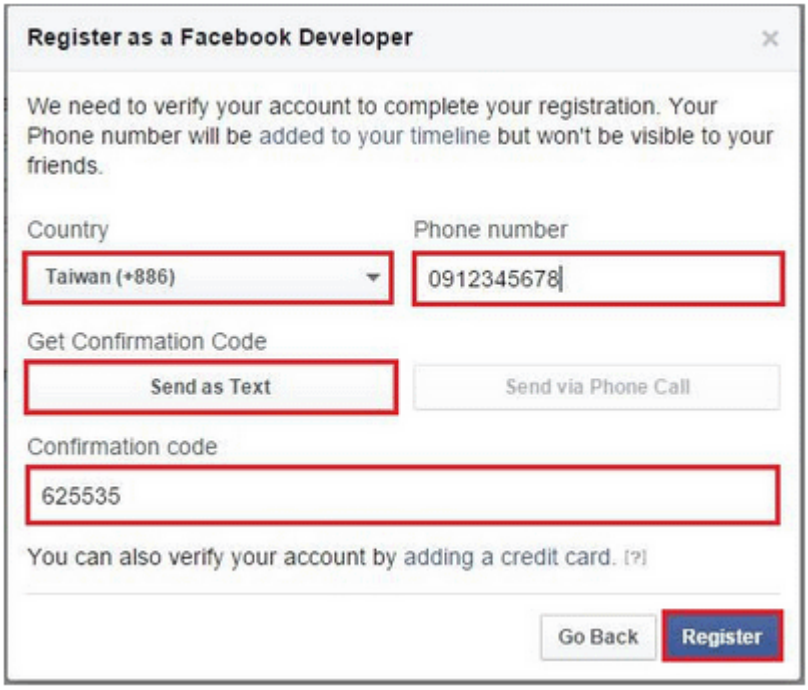
The new web portal feature support social login as authentication method, and allows network administrator to authenticate LAN clients by their Google or Facebook account. This document introduces how to create Facebook APP, and generate the APP ID and APP secret that can be used in Web Portal setup.

1. Register as FB Developer: Go to https://developers.facebook.com/ and login the FB account.
2. Register the Facebook account as a Developer (If the account has been verified previously, this step can be skipped.)
3. Click **My Apps** then choose **Register as Developer.**

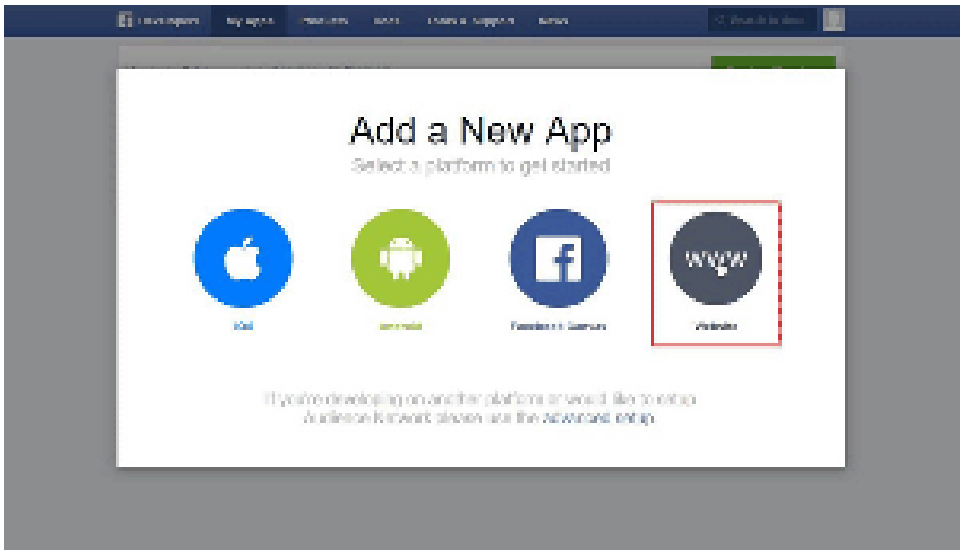


4. Switch to **YES** then click **Next** on pop-up window.

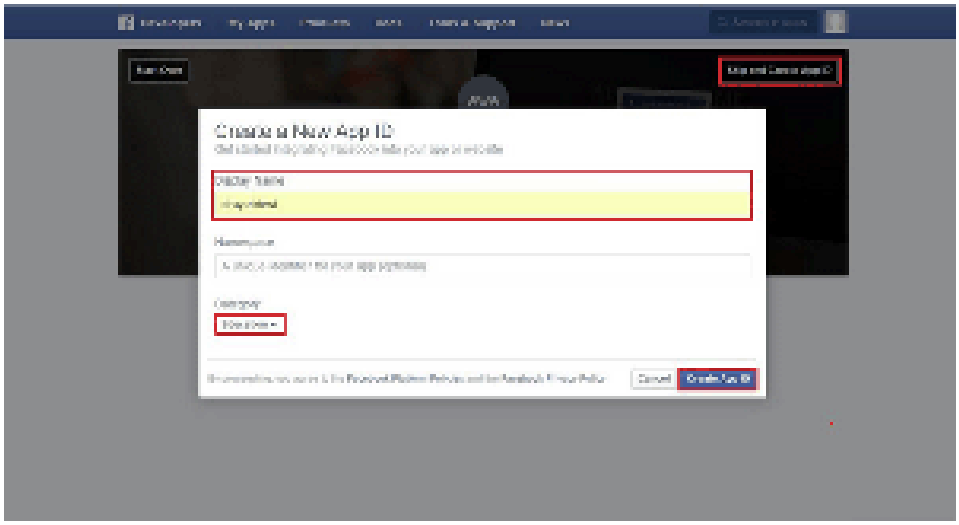
5. Choose **country** then type **phone number**, click **Send as Text** in Get Confirmation Code. Wait confirmation code message received then enter the **confirmation code.** Click **Register** to finish the register process.



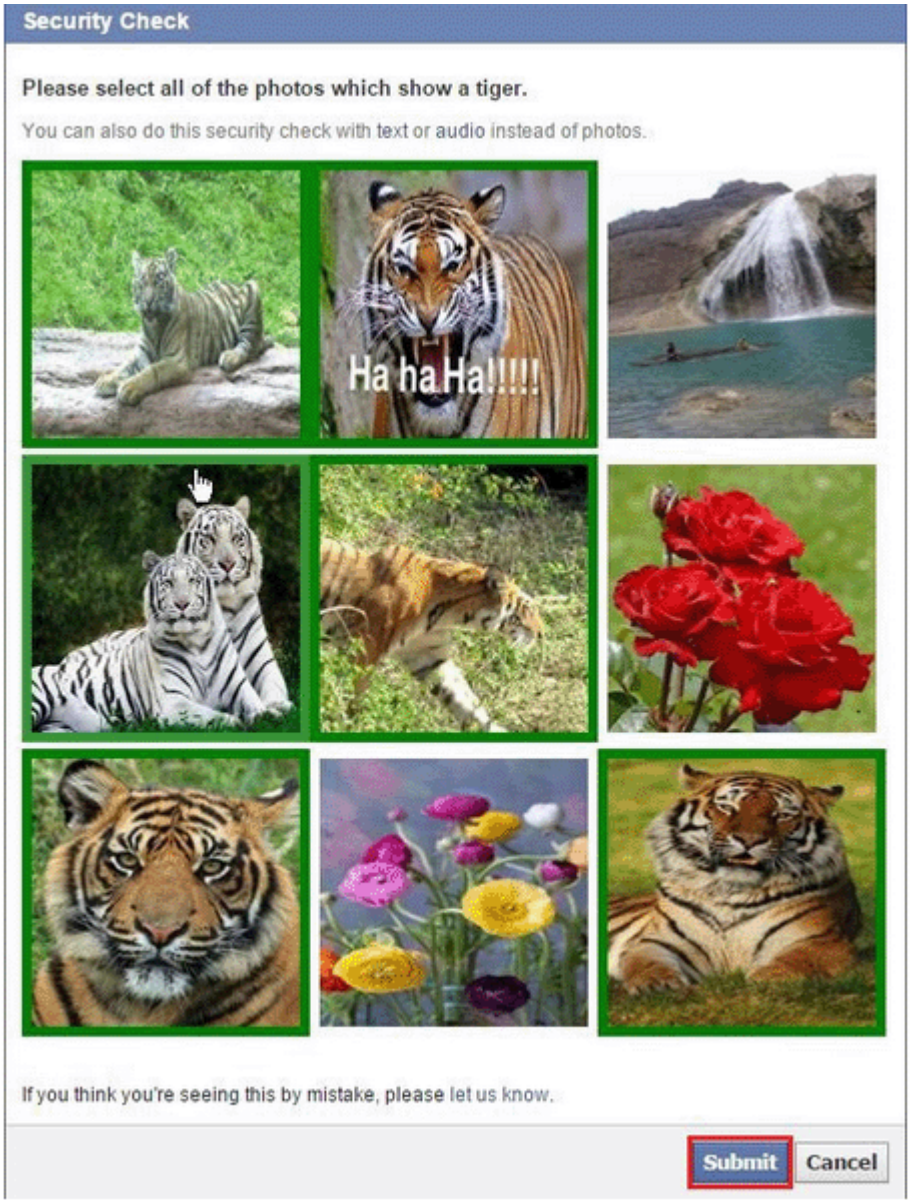
6. Add a New App. Click on **My Apps** > **Add a New App.** Choose **Website** platform.



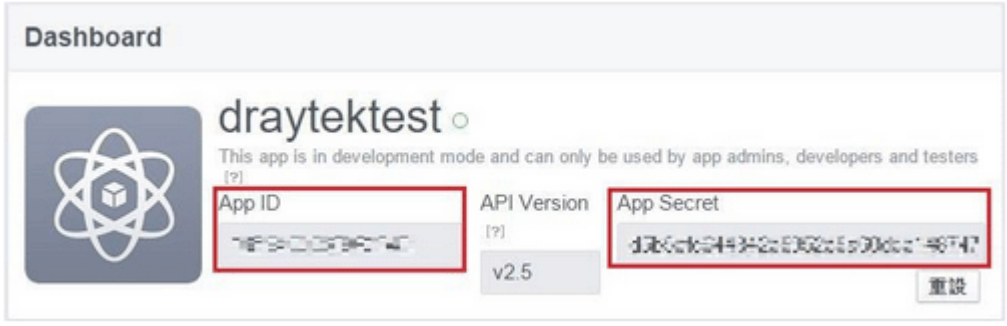
7. Click **Skip and Create App ID** on first use. Type **Display Name.** Choose **Category.** Click **Create App ID.**



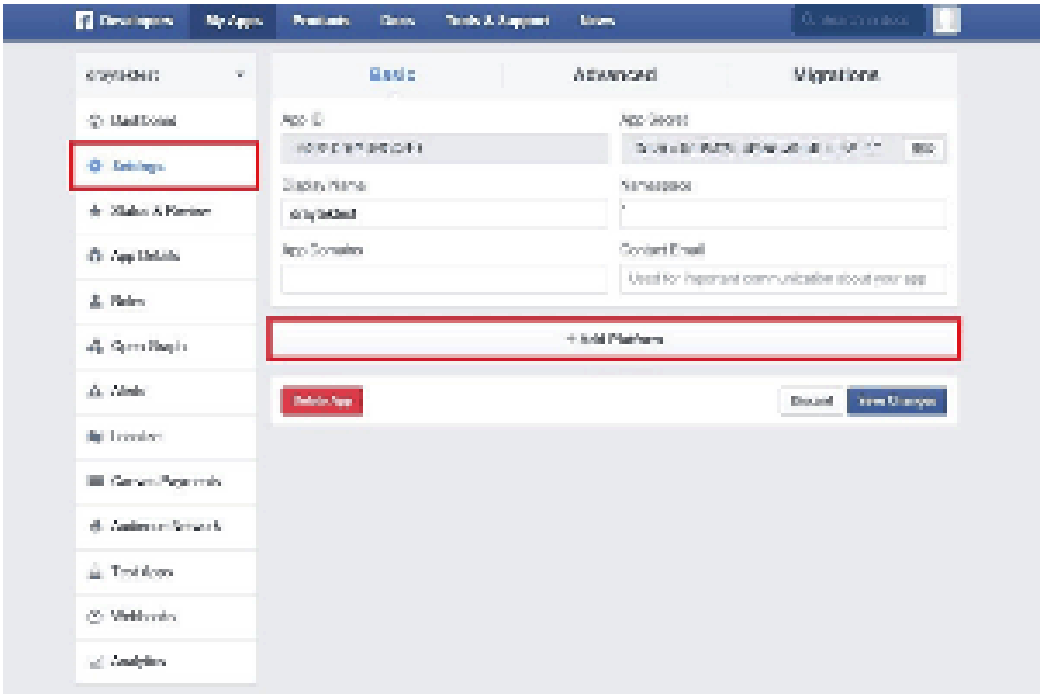
8. Pops up security check window, select the answer, and then click **Submit** to finish the process.



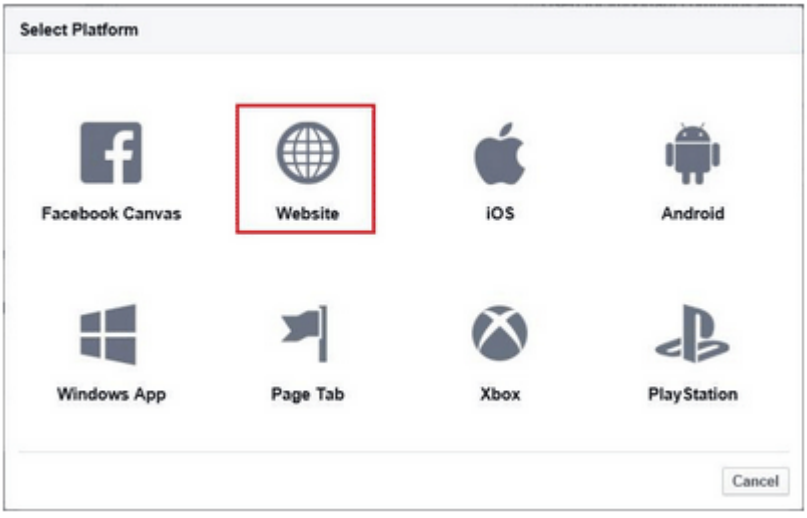
9. On Dashboard, user can get **App ID** and **App Secret**, these information will be used in Vigor Router's Web Portal Setup.



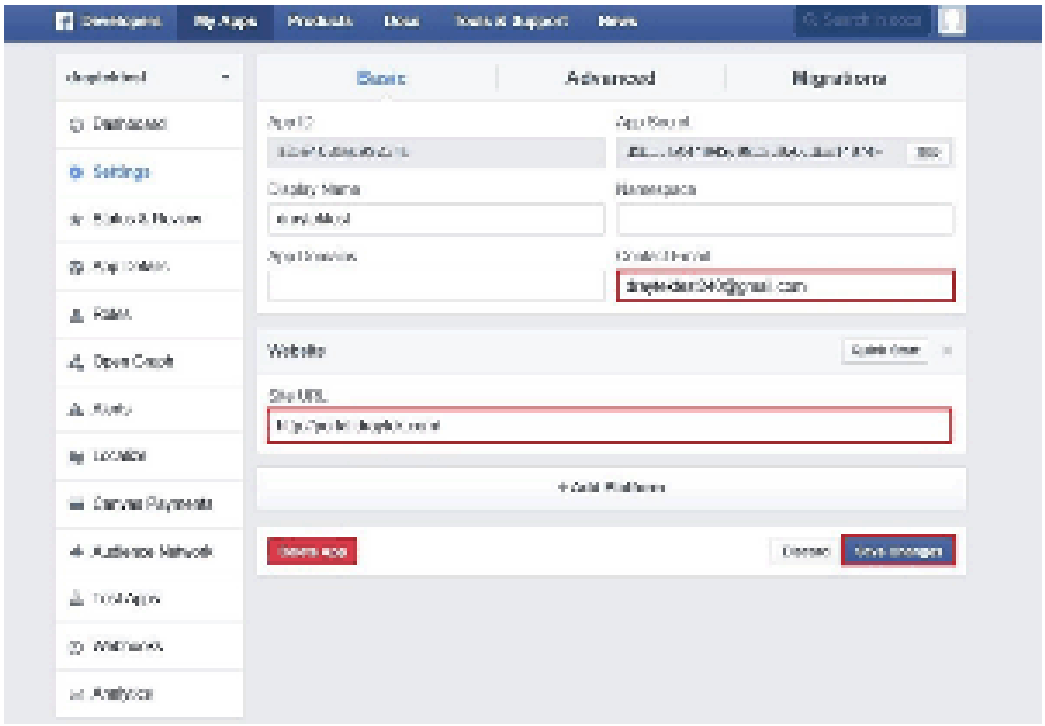
10. Add Platform on My Apps. Go to **Settings** then click **Add Platform.**



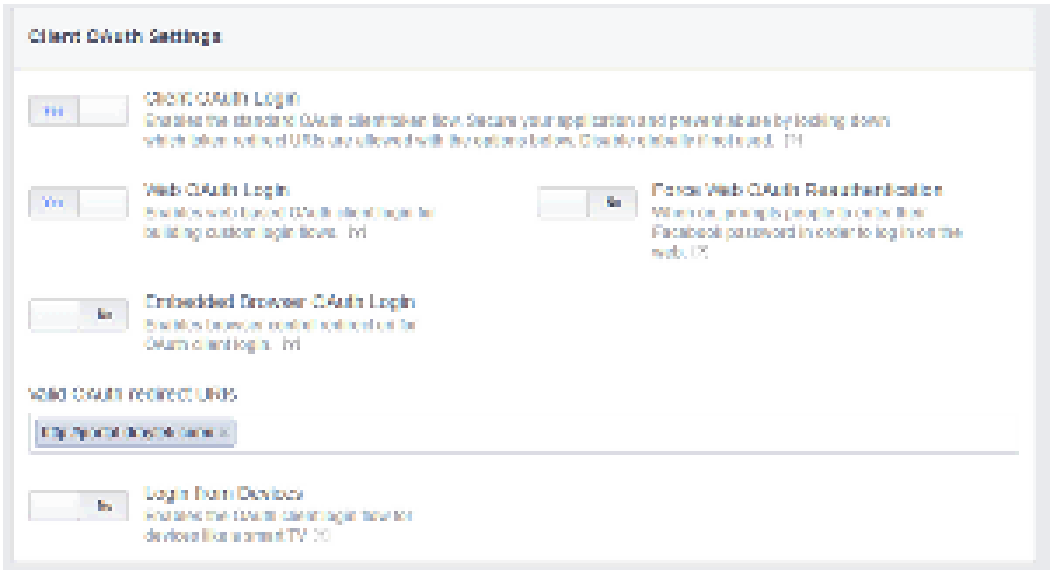
11. Choose **Website** in Select Platform window.



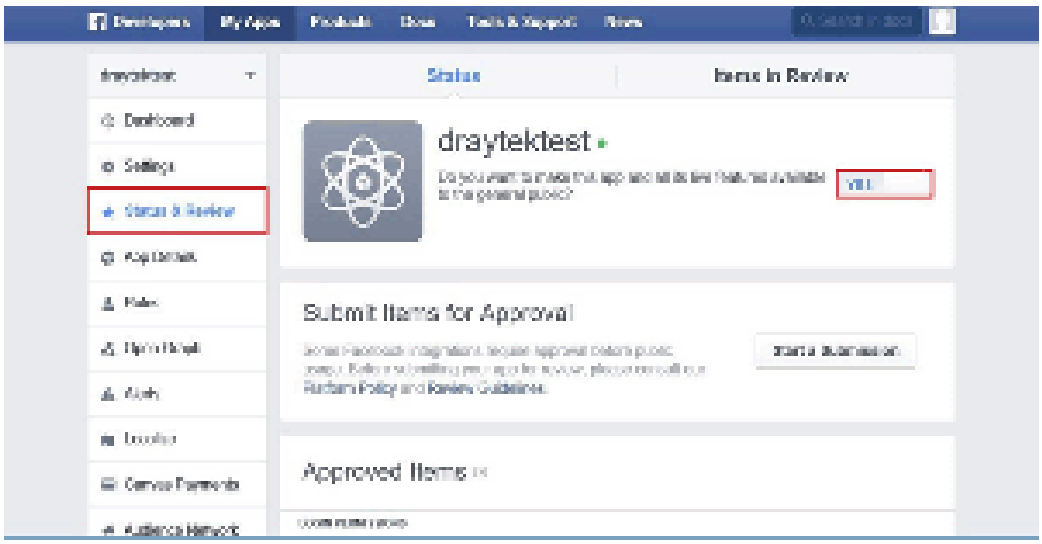
12. Enter the **Site URL** as http://portal.draytek.com. (*Note*: If you change http port in the vigor, please add http port in URLs. For example, we use 8080 as http port and we'll put http://portal.draytek.com:8080). Enter the **Contact Email.** And click **Save Change.**



13. Set up Client OAuth. Go to **Settings** >> **Advanced** >>**Client OAuth Settings**, enter "http://portal.draytek.com" in **Valid OAuth redirect URIs**, and save changes.



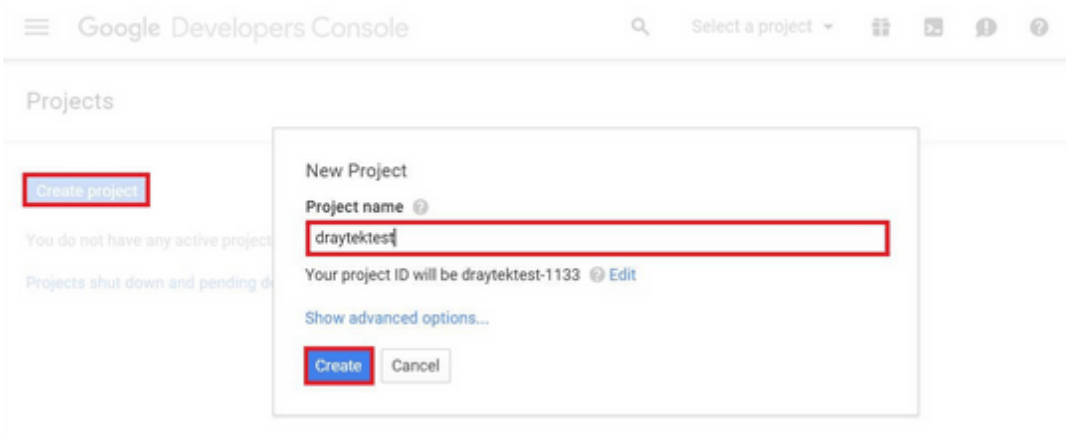
14. Go to **My Apps>>Status & Review**, and switch available status to **YES** to activate the APP.


Status
Items in Review
draytektest
Submit Items for Approval
Approved Items

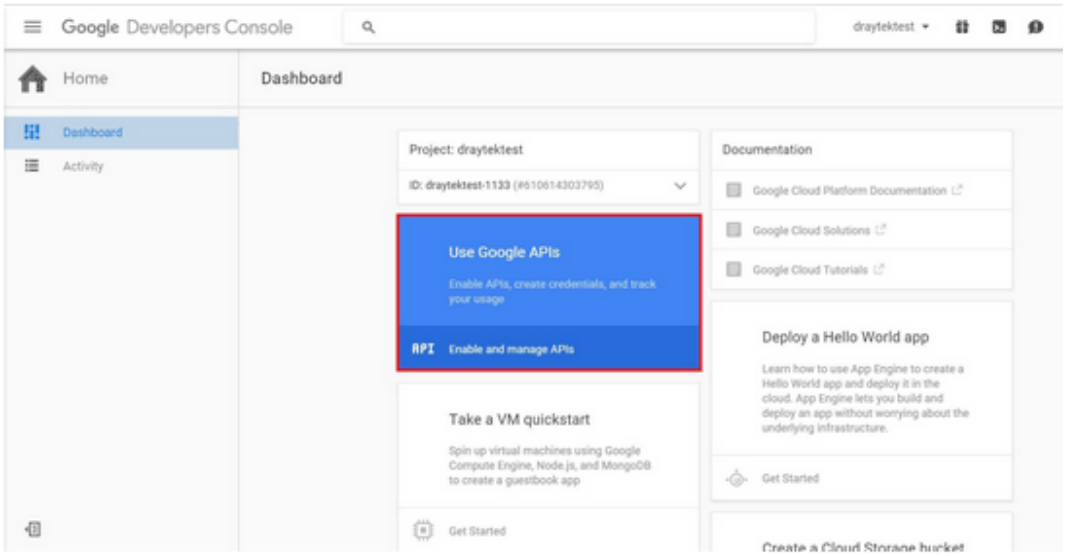
A-2 How to create Google APP for Web Portal Authentication?

The new web portal feature support social login as authentication method, and allows network administrator to authenticate LAN clients by their Google or Facebook account. This document introduces how to create Facebook APP, and generate the APP ID and APP secret that can be used in Web Portal setup.

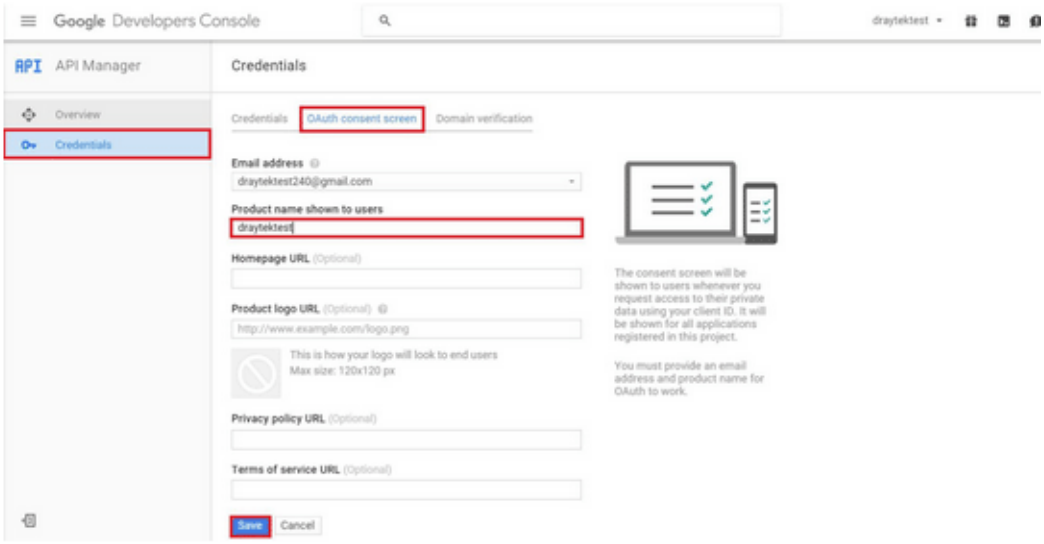
1. Create Developer project. Go to https://code.google.com/apis/console, login with a Google account then click **Create project.** Type **project name** then click **Create.**



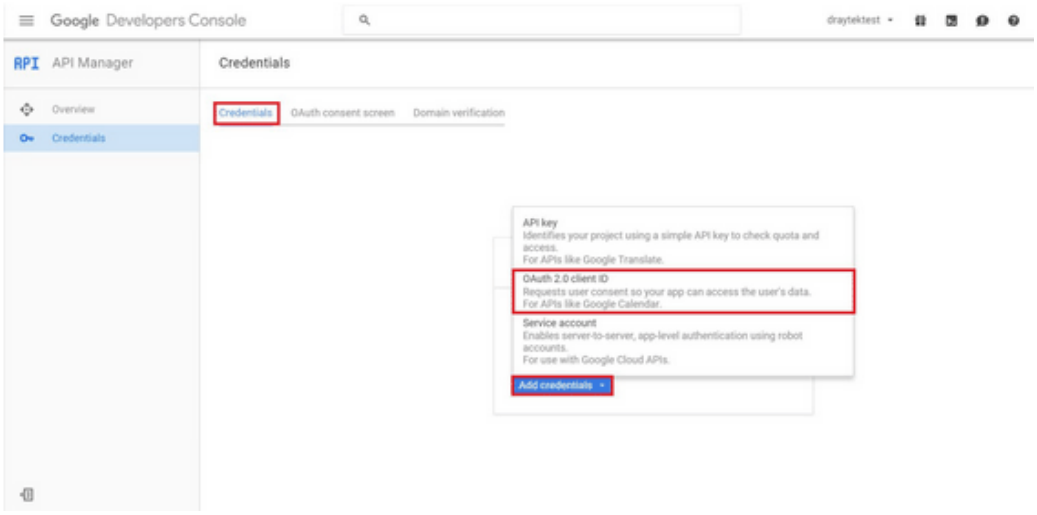
2. On Dashboard, choose **Use Google APIs.**



3. Edit Auth Consent screen. Go to **Credentials > Auth consent screen.** Enter your **email**, **product name** and other optional item then click on **Save.**



4. Create Client ID. Click **Credentials** and Click **Add credentials > OAuth2.0 client ID.**



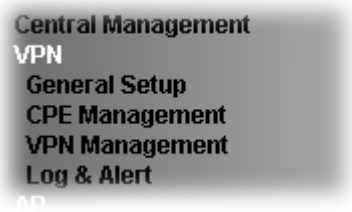
5. Choose **Web application** as Application Type, then enter **name**. Set **Authorized JavaScript origins** and **Authorized redirect URLs** as http://portal.draytek.com, and click **Create.** (*Note*: If you change http port in the vigor, please add http port in URLs. For example, we use 8080 as http port and we'll put http://portal.draytek.com:8080).
6. Get **client ID** and **client secret**. Such information will be used in Vigor Router's Web Portal Setup page.

VII-5 Central Management (VPN)

Vigor2927 can build virtual private network (VPN) between itself and any other TR-069 CPE by the function of central VPN management. In addition, it can be treated as a server (called CVM server) which can manage TR-069 CPE for periodical firmware upgrade, configuration backup and restoring configuration.

Web User Interface

Central VPN Management menu can manage the CPE connected through WAN only.

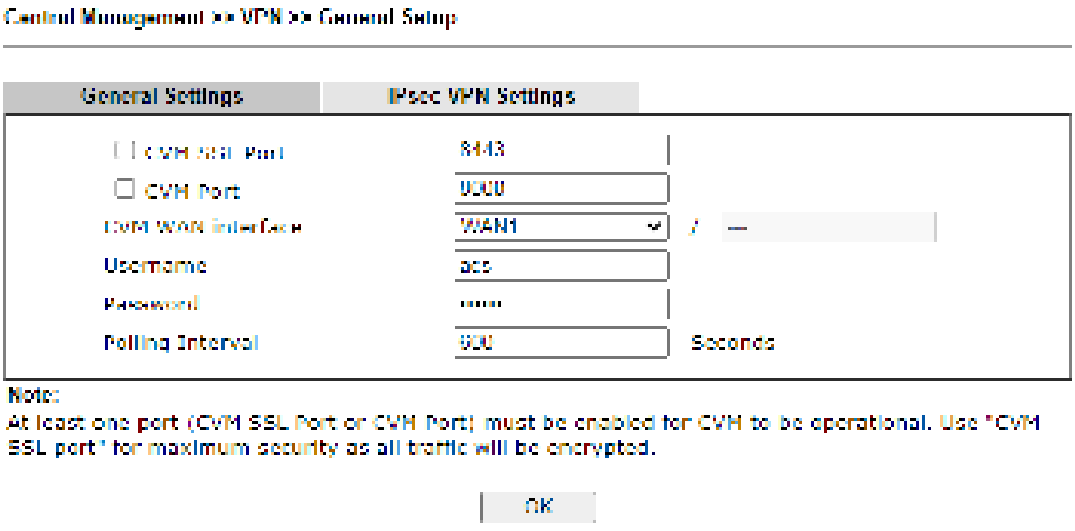


VII-5-1 General Setup

This page is used to configure settings which will be used by the clients to register to such Vigor router. Click **General Settings** and **IPsec VPN Settings** to configure the basic settings for CVM mechanism.

VII-5-1-1 General Settings

To enable the CVM feature, the first thing you have to do is enabling CVM port or CVM SSL Port.



Available settings are explained as follows:

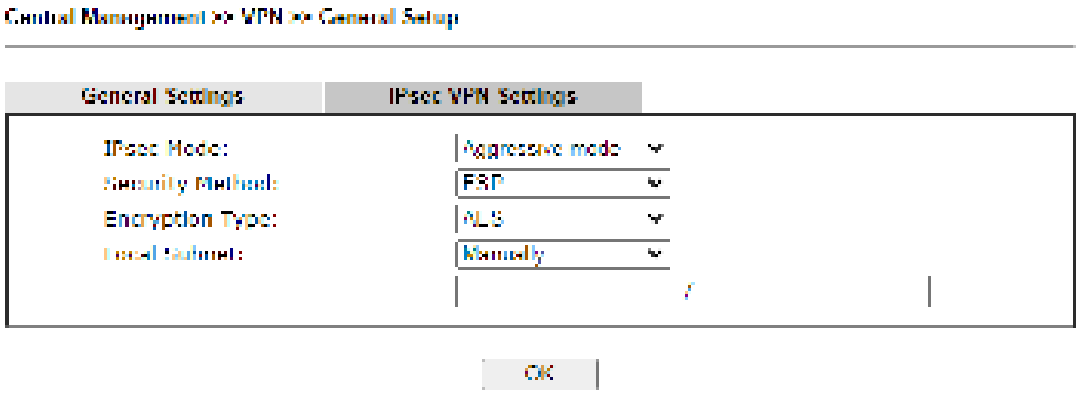
Item	Description
CVM SSL Port	Check the box to enable the port setting. Enter the port number in the box.
CVM Port	Check the box to enable the port setting. Enter the port number in the box.
CVM WAN interface	For Vigor router can manage only the client from WAN interface, therefore you have to specify which interface will be used for such function. If you choose MANUALLY, you have to specify WAN IP address.
Username	Type a username which will be used by any CPE trying to

	connect to Vigor router.
Password	Enter the password for the user.
Polling Interval	Enter the time value (unit is second). The range is from 60 ~ 86400.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

VII-5-1-2 IPsec VPN Settings

Central VPN management is operated through IPsec VPN connection.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
IPsec Mode	Choose **Aggressive** or **Main** as the IPsec Mode.
Security Method	Choose one of the following methods (AH or ESP) for the security of data transmission. For example, choose **AH** to specify the IPsec protocol for the Authentication Header protocol. The data will be authenticated but not be encrypted.
Encryption Type	Choose one of the selections as the encryption type.
Local Subnet	Enter the IP address and subnet mask of local host.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

VII-5-2 CPE Management

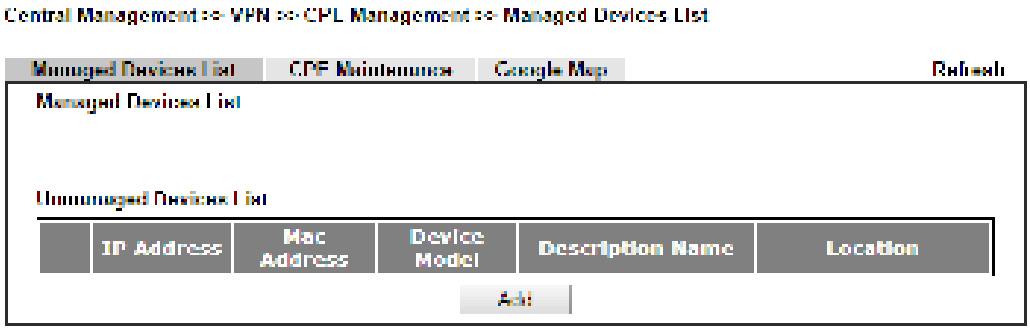
All the CPEs managed by Vigor2927 series can be seen with icons from this page.

Before using such feature, make sure the CVM port has been enabled and configured properly.

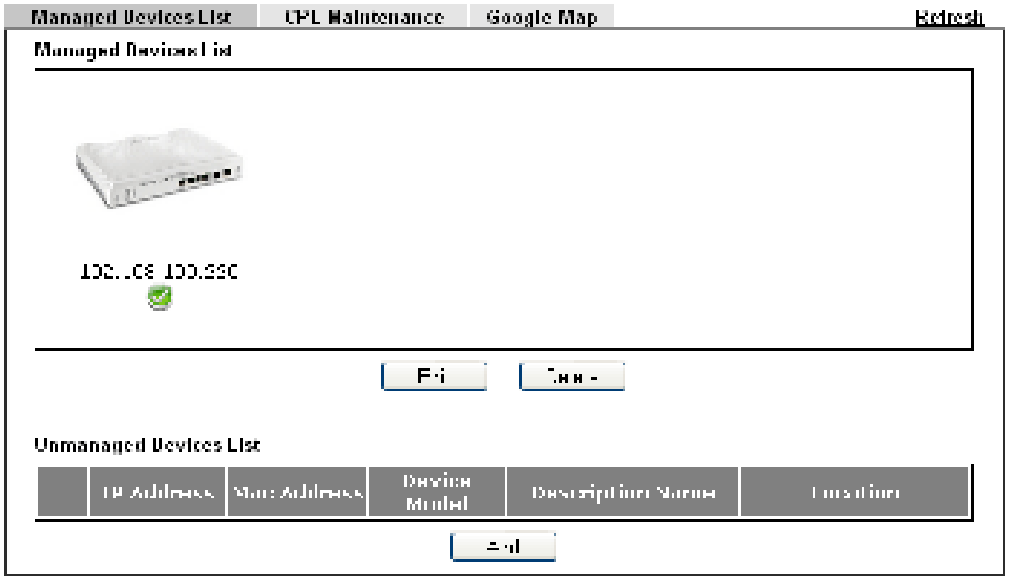
VII-5-2-1 Managed Device List

This page allows you to manage the CPEs connected to Vigor2927 series.

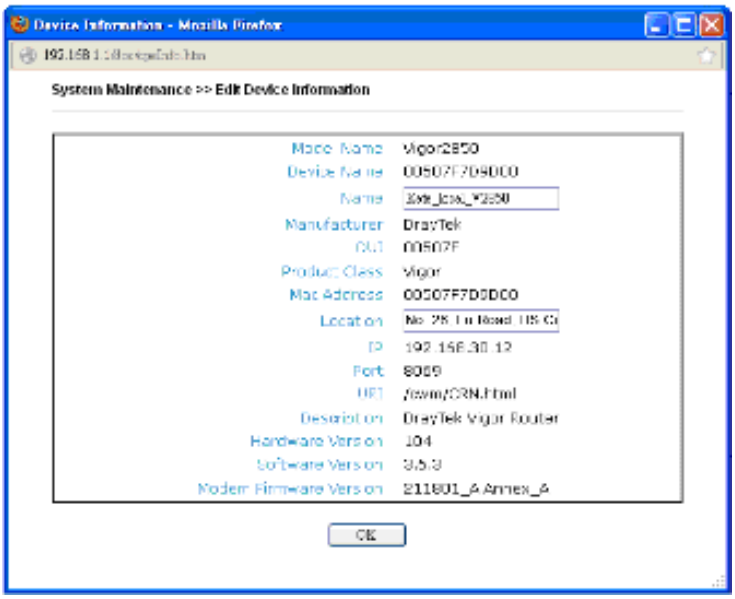
Page without CPE connected

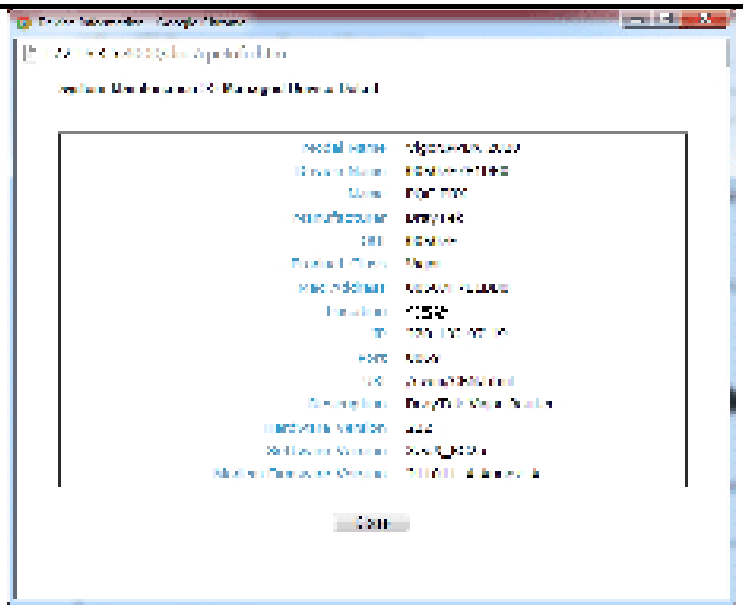


Page with CPE connected



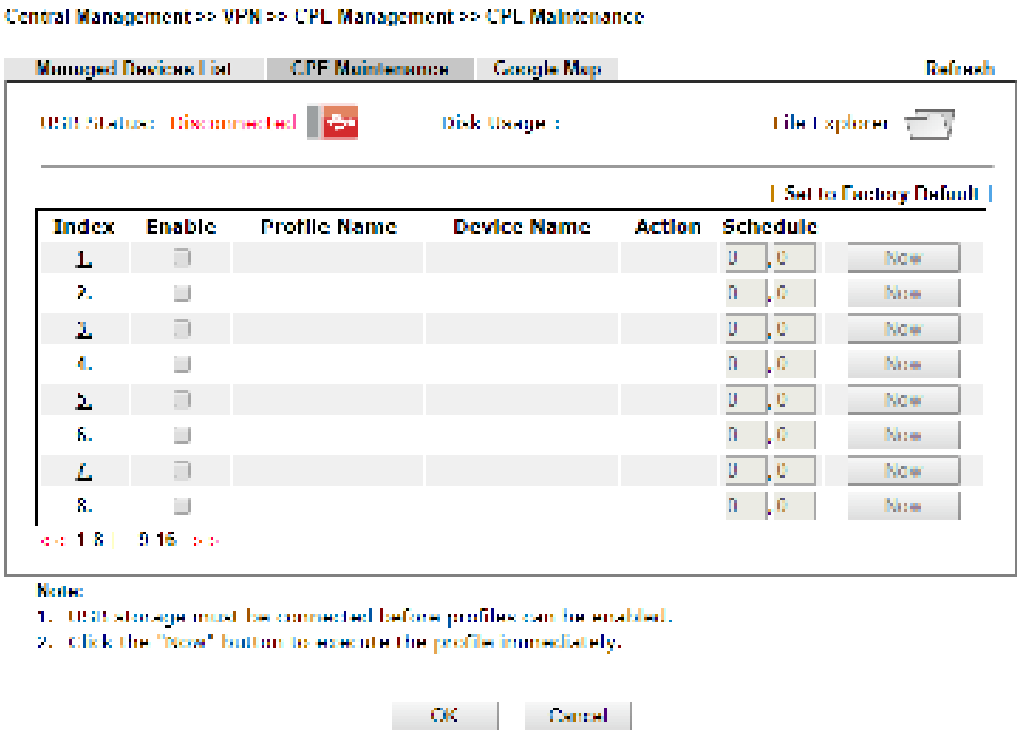
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Managed Devices List	This area displays device icons (up to 8) for the CPE managed by Vigor2927 series. **Edit** – To modify the name and location of specific CPE, click the one you want and click the **Edit** button. A pop up window will appear. Simply change the name and/or location manually.  **Delete** – To disconnect the management of any CPE, click the CPE icon you want and click the Delete button. Double-clicking the CPE icon also can pop up the Managed Device Detail window. However, you cannot modify any data on the window.

	
Unmanaged Devices List	Any device (CPE) which follows the standard of TR-069 can be configured and can be detected by Vigor2927 series automatically. Only eight remote devices can be managed by Vigor2927 at one time. Therefore, other remote devices detected by Vigor2927 series might not be displayed in such field. **Add** – Move the selected device from Unmanaged Devices List to Managed Devices List. **IP Address** – Display the IP address of the remote device. **Mac Address** – Display the MAC address of the remote device. **Device Model** – Display the model name of the remote device. **Description Name** – Define the name or Enter the additional description of CPE for identification in VPN management and CPE management. **Location** – Enter the location (address) of the CPE to be displayed by Google Map.
Refresh	Click it to refresh current web page.

VII-5-2-2 CPE Maintenance

This area displays all the profiles which are created for applying to the managed device. This page can help the administrator to do maintenance jobs like firmware upgrade, configuration backup, configuration restoration and etc.



Available settings are explained as follows:

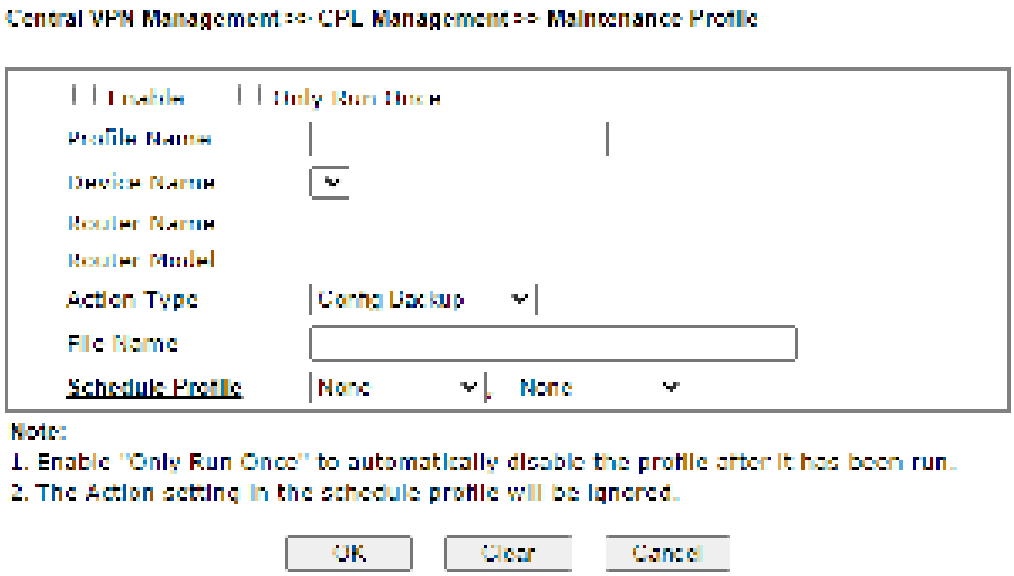
Item	Description
Refresh	Click it to refresh current page.
USB Disk	USB Disk : - It means a USB disk connecting to Vigor2927. USB Disk : - It means no USB disk connecting to Vigor2927.
Disk Usage	Disk Usage : 1084MB / 2009MB - When a USB disk connects to Vigor2927, the disk usage and the disk capacity will be displayed in such field. Disk Usage : USB Storage Disconnected - When there is no USB disk connecting to Vigor2927, such message will be displayed in this field.
	Click the icon to see the content inside the USB disk.
Set to Factory Default	Click to clear all indexes.
Index	Display the number of the profile that you can edit.
Enable	Check to enable the profile.
Profile Name	Display the name of the maintenance profile.

Device Name	Display the name of the managed CPE that the maintenance profile will apply to.
Action	Display the action that managed CPE shall accept.
Schedule	Display the schedule profiles selected for such profile.
Now	The action will be performed for the selected CPE immediately.

How to add a new Maintenance Profile

Follow the steps below to create a new maintenance profile.

1. Click any index number link, e.g., Index 1.
2. The Maintenance dialog appears.



Info

When restoring configuration to a CPE, make sure the configuration file you selected was backup from this CPE before. Because restoring from another device's configuration file may cause serious problem (e.g., Both devices have different ISP username/ password. Restoring configuration from one CPE to the other will cause Internet connection not being online).

Available parameters are listed as follows:

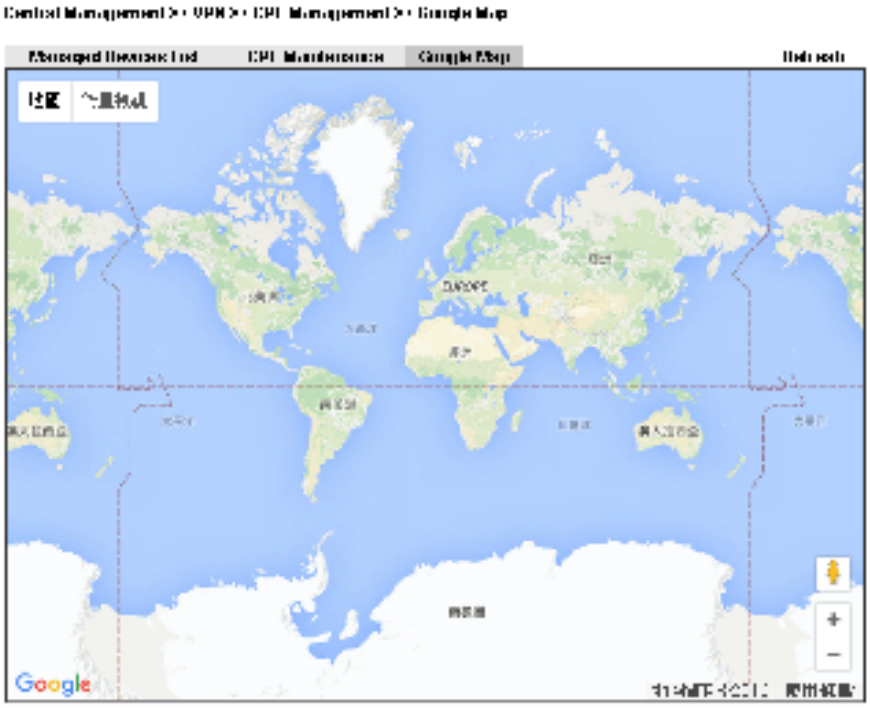
Item	Description
Enable	Check it to enable such profile.
Only Run Once	Check it to activate such profile running for once.
Profile Name	Enter the name of the maintenance profile.
Device Name	The drop down list will display all the CPE devices detected by Vigor2927 series. Choose the one which will be applied with such new created profile.
Router Name/ Router Model	It displays the name and model of Vigor router.
Action Type	There are three actions for you to choose for such profile.

	• **Config Backup** – It means such profile will be used for configuration backup of the selected CPE. • **Config Restore** – It means such profile will be used for restoring the configuration of the selected CPE. **Info** When restoring configuration to a CPE, make sure the configuration file you selected was backup from this CPE before. Because restoring from another device's configuration file may cause serious problem (e.g., Both devices have different ISP username/ password. Restoring configuration from one CPE to the other will cause Internet connection not being online). • **Firmware Upgrade** – It means such profile will be used for firmware upgrade.
File Path	When **Config Restore** is selected as **Action Type**, click **Select** to upload a configuration file from the connected USB disk. Later such file will be used for saving, restoring or firmware upgrade for CPE.
File Name	Specify a file name is this field to save the configuration file when **Config Backup** is selected as **Action Type**.
Schedule Profile	Vigor2927 series will perform the specified action to the selected CPE based on the schedule configured here. Specify one or two schedule profiles (represented by number) here.

3. Enter all the settings and click **OK**.
4. A new maintenance profile has been created.

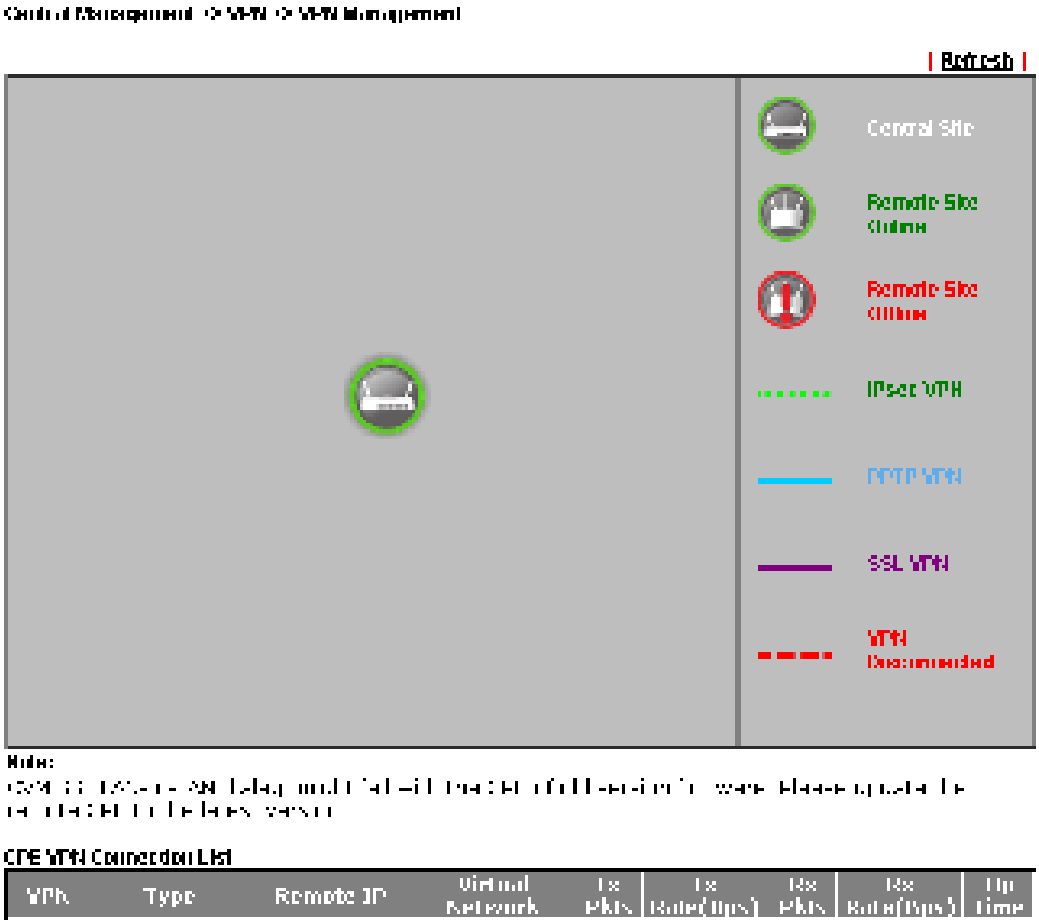
VII-5-2-3 Google Map

To display the **location** of the managed CPE with a bird's eye view, open **Central VPN Management>>CPE Management** and click the tab of **Google Map**.


Google

VII-5-3 VPN Management

An easy and quick method is offered to configure VPN settings for building VPN connection automatically between Vigor2927 series (treated as VPN server) and other Vigor router (treated as CPE device, i.e., VPN client).



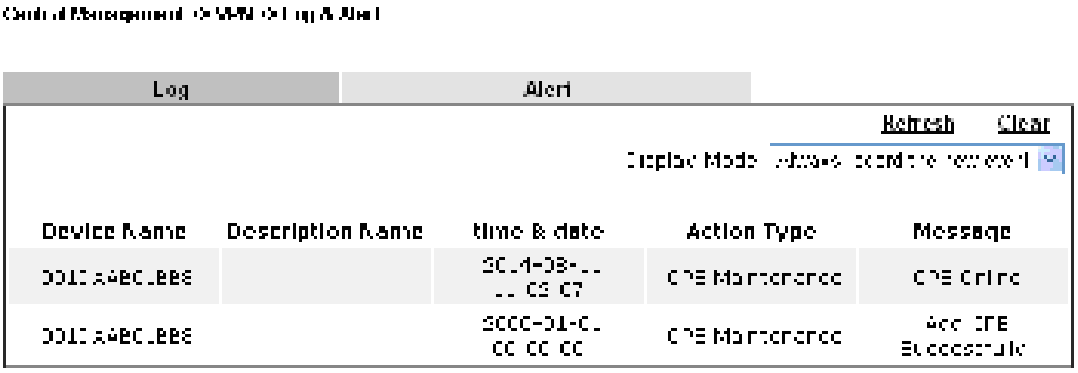
Available parameters are listed as follows:

Item	Description
CPE VPN Connection List	
VPN	Display the name of the LAN-to-LAN profile. It is generated automatically when you click the PPTP/IPsec/Advanced button to build the VPN connection between Vigor2927 and remote CPE.
Type	Display the dial-in type and the authentication method.
Remote IP	Display the IP address of the remote CPE and the interface.
Virtual Network	Display the IP address and subnet mask of Vigor2927 series.
Tx Pkts	Display the number of the transmitted packets.
Tx Rate(Bps)	Display the number of the transmitted rate.
Rx Pkts	Display the number of the received packets.
Rx Rate(Bps)	Display the number of the received rate.
Up Time	Display the connection time of such VPN.

Once the device is managed (controlled) by Vigor2927 series, it will be displayed on such screen automatically. If not, refer to sections "**How to manage the CPE (router) through Vigor2927?**" for more detailed information.

VII-5-4 Log & Alert

This page offers brief information to identify the CPE connected to Vigor2927 series.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Display Mode	Choose the mode you want to display the related information on the following table. ● **Stop record when fulls** – when the capacity of CVM log is full, the system will stop recording. ● **Always record the new event** – only the newest events will be recorded by the system.
Device Name	Display the name of the managed CPE.
Description Name	Display the brief explanation for the managed CPE.
Time & date	Display the time and date that the managed CPE scanned by Vigor2927 series.
Action Type	Display the action that Vigor2927 series will perform for the managed CPE.
Message	Display the information for each event.

The Alert page offers brief information to identify the CPE connected to Vigor2927 series.

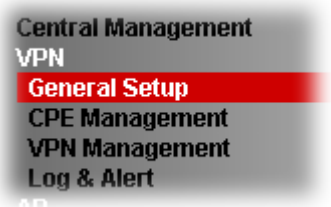
Application Notes

A-1 CVM Application - How to manage the CPE (router) through Vigor2927 series?

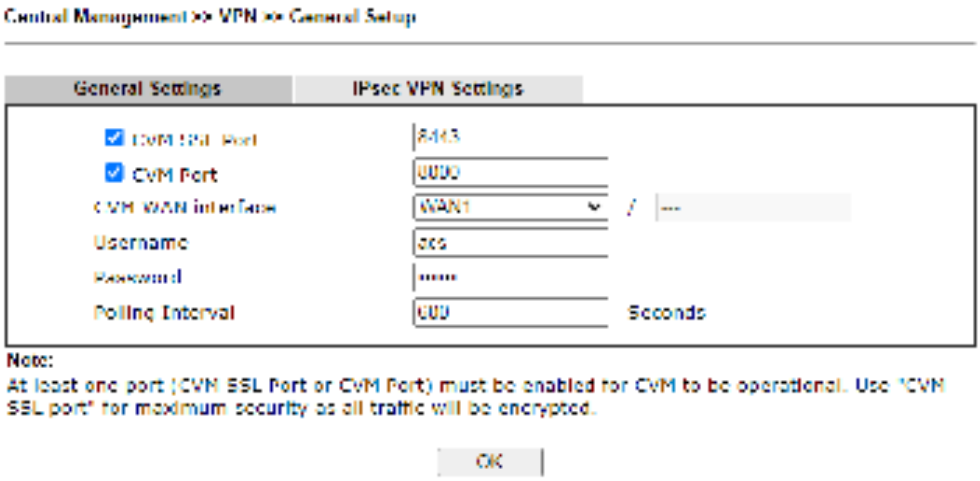
To manage CPEs through Vigor2927 series, you have to set URL on CPE first and set username and password for Vigor2927 series. For this section, we use Vigor2850 series as the example. All the CPE configuration will be done through Vigor2850 series.

Configure CVM Settings on Vigor2927 series

1. Access into the web user interface of Vigor2927 series.
2. Open **Central Management>> VPN >>General Setup.**



3. In the following page, check the boxes for CVM Port and CVM SSL Port to enable the port setting. Enter the values for **CVM Port**, **CVM SSL Port**, **Username**, and **Password** respectively. Remember the values configured in this page.

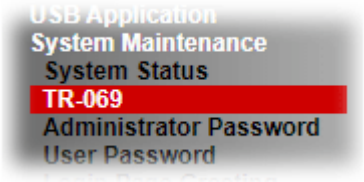


4. Click **OK** to save the settings.

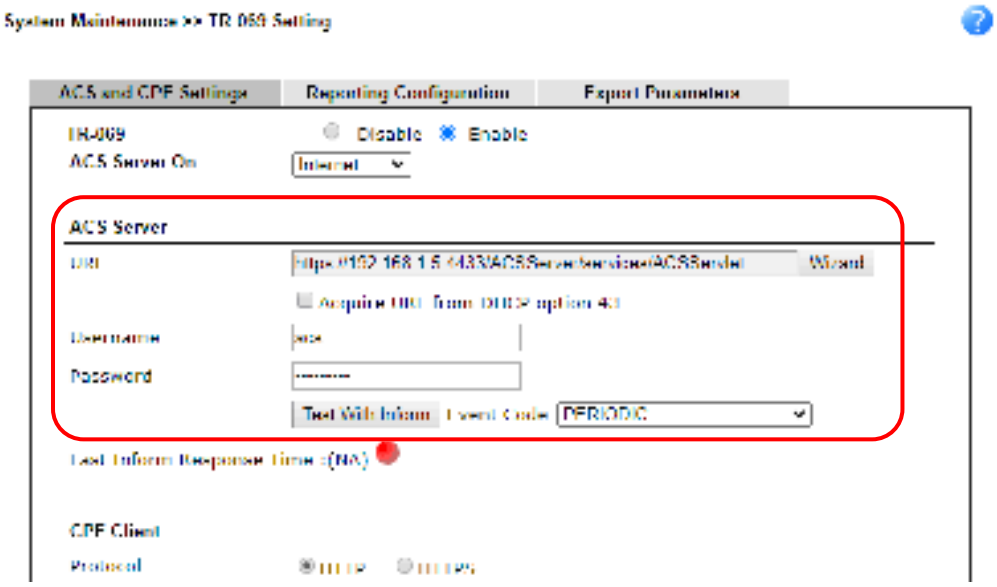
Configure Settings on CPE

1. In the end of the CPE, access into the web user interface of the CPE (e.g., Vigor2865 series). Open a web browser (for example, **IE**, **Mozilla Firefox** or **Netscape**) and type **http://192.168.1.1.**

2. Open **System Maintenance >> TR-069**.

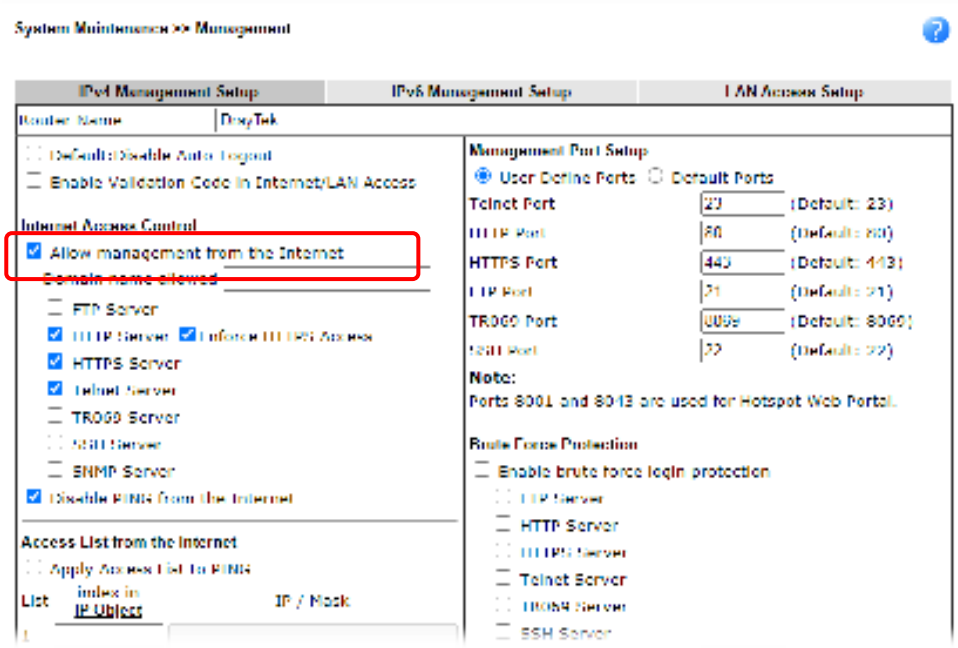


3. In the field of **ACS Server**, Enter the URL (IP address with port number) of Vigor2927 series and Enter the same Username and Password defined on the page of **Central VPN Management>>General Setup** in Vigor2927 series. Click **OK** to save the settings.



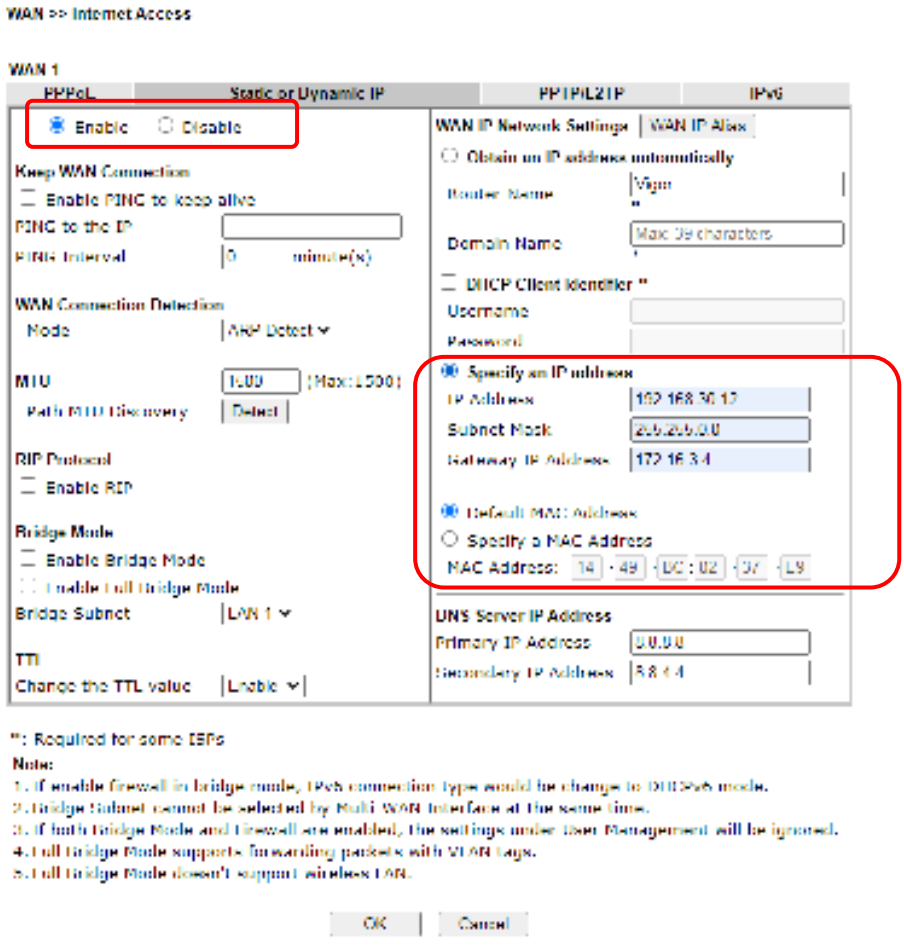
4. Open **System Maintenance>>Management Setup**.

5. Check **Allow management from the Internet** to set management access control and click **OK.**



6. Open **WAN>>Internet Access**. Use the drop down list of **Access Mode** on WAN1 to select **MPoA** (RFC1483/2684). Then, click **Details Page**.

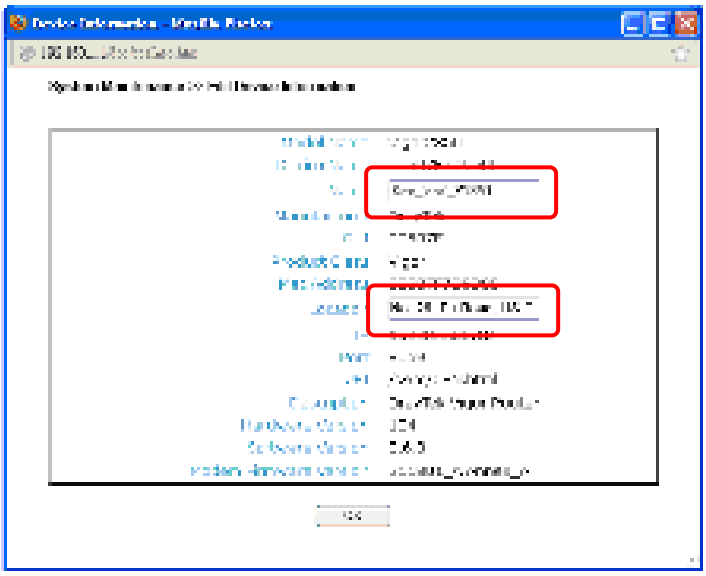
7. Click **Specify an IP address**. Type correct WAN IP address, subnet mask and gateway IP address for your CPE. Then click **OK**.



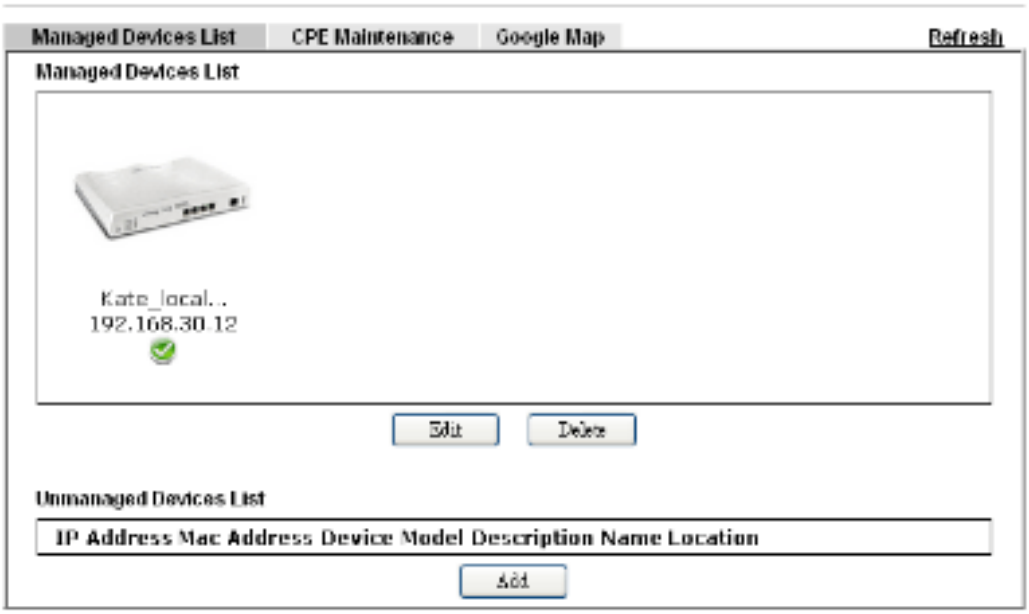
Info	Reboot the CPE device and re-log into Vigor2927 series. CPE which has registered to Vigor2927 series will be captured and displayed on the page of Central VPN Management>>CPE Management.

Check CPE Maintenance Page

1. Return to the web user interface of Vigor2927 series.
2. Open **Central Management>>VPN>>VPN Management**. Now there is one CPE displayed on the field of Unmanaged Devices List.
3. Choose the one (Vigor2927) from Unmanaged Devices List and click **Add**. The following dialog will be popped up. Enter the name and the location of the router respectively. Click **OK** to save the configuration.



4. The selected CPE will be moved and displayed on Managed Devices List which means it is controlled / managed by Vigor2927 series from now on.



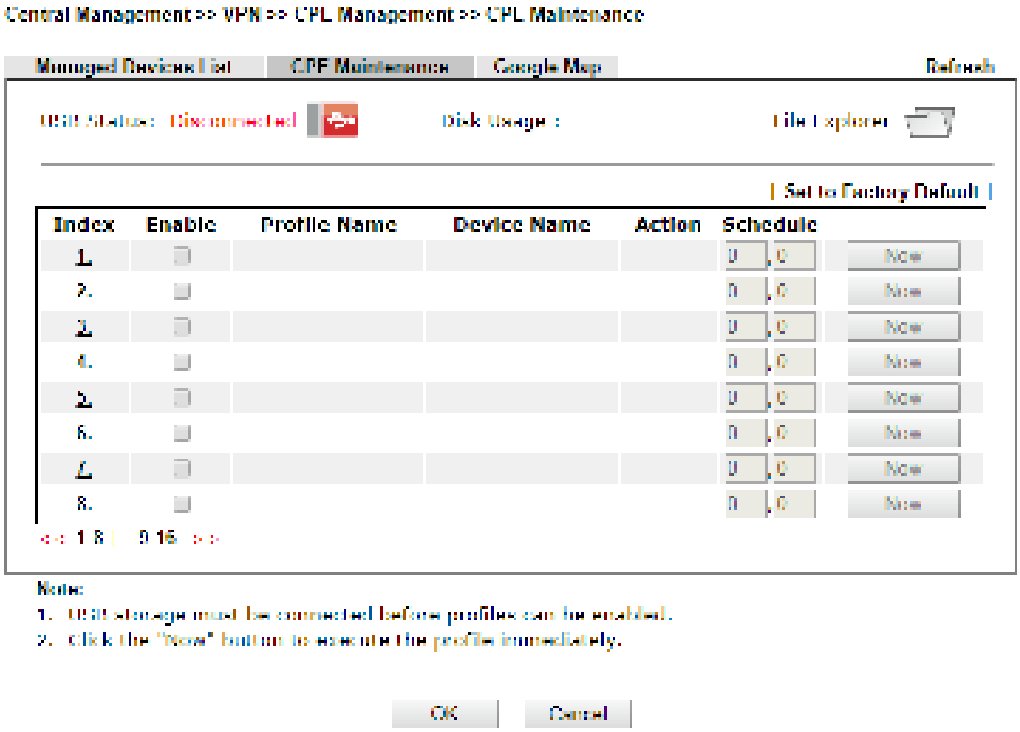
A-2 CVM Application - How to upgrade CPE firmware through Vigor2927 series?

Download the newest firmware from your Draytek website to USB Storage Disk for the device (e.g., Vigor2865) managed by Vigor2927 series.

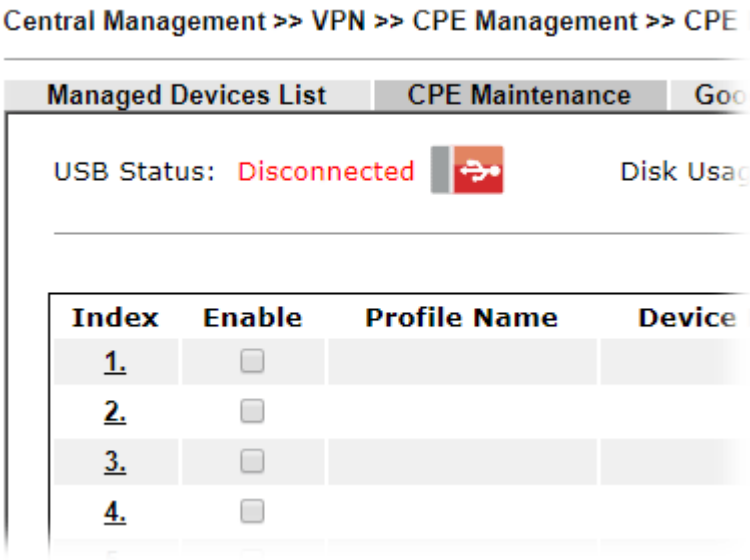
Vigor2865, as an example, is chosen for Vigor2927 to perform the CPE firmware upgrade remotely in this case.

1. Plug in USB storage disk onto Vigor2927 series via USB interface. Make sure the USB disk has been installed correctly, otherwise, the firmware upgrade will not be successful.

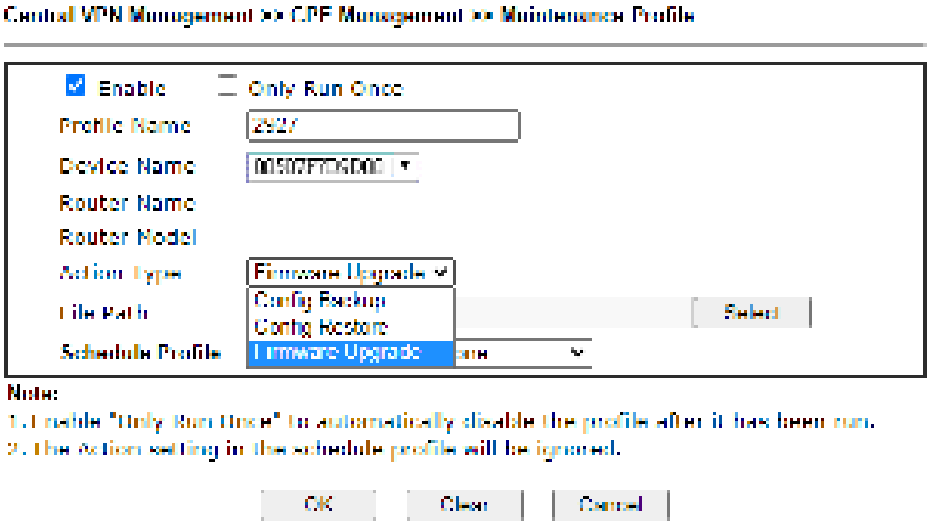
2. Access into web user interface of Vigor2927 series. Open Central **VPN Management>>CPE Management** and click the **CPE Maintenance** tab.



3. Click any index number link, e.g., Index 1.

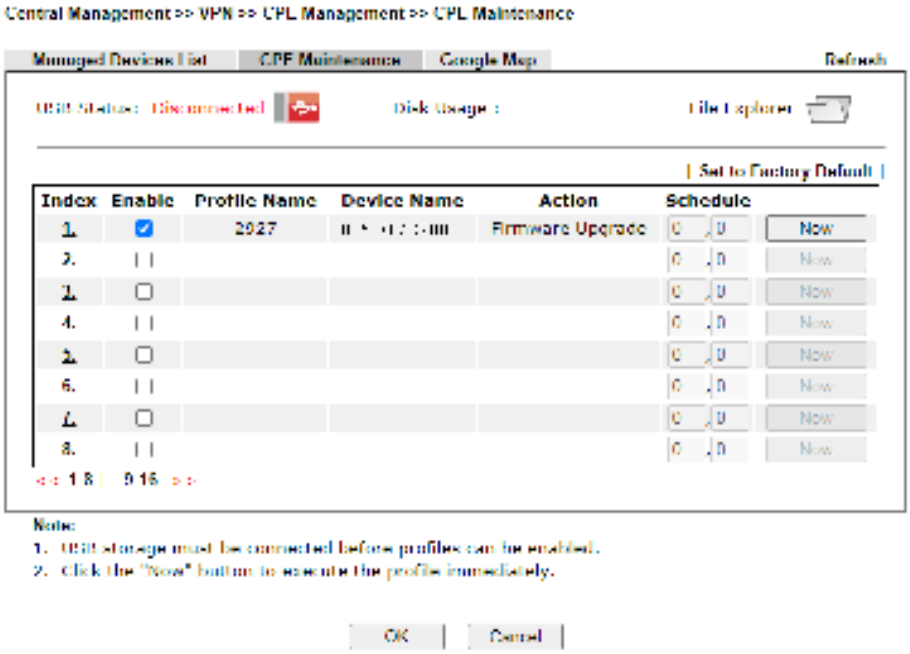


4. The Maintenance profile dialog appears.



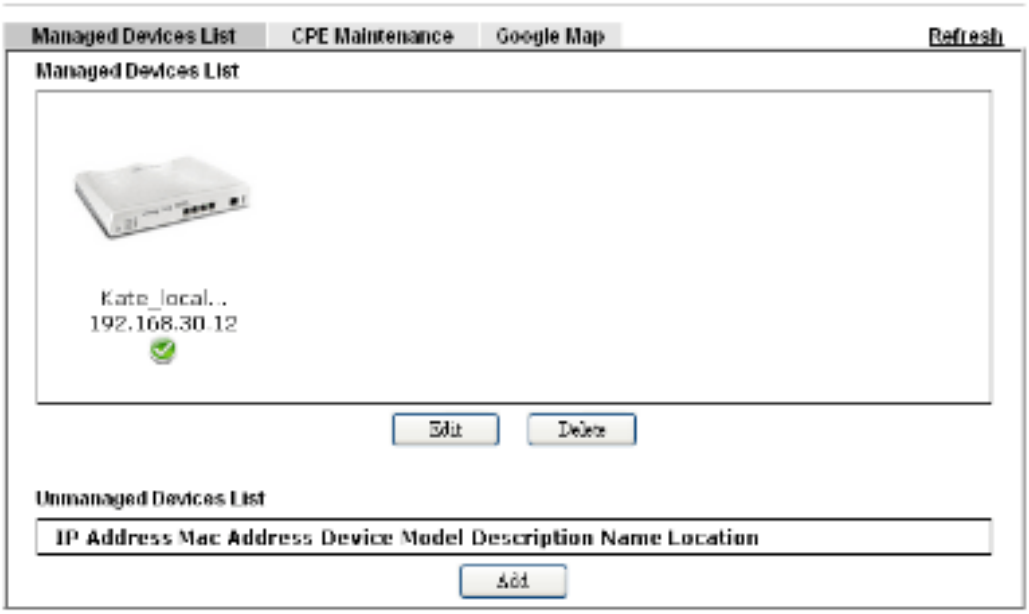
In the field of Profile Name, type a name for such maintenance profile; check Enable; and choose the one you want to perform firmware upgrade from Device Name drop down list. From the Action Type, choose Firmware Upgrade. Enter the file/path of the newest firmware or click Select to locate it. Specify the Schedule profile. At last, click **OK**.

5. Now, a new maintenance profile has been created.



6. Click **Now** to perform the firmware upgrade immediately for Vigor2927.
7. Wait for several minutes for firmware upgrade.

8. Then check the device information for the managed device if the firmware upgrade is successful or not. Click **Managed Devices List**.



Click the icon of Vigor2865 and click **Edit** and view the software version. Another way to check if the firmware upgrade is completed or not, simply open **Central VPN Management>>Log & Alert**.

VII-6 Central Management (AP)

Vigor2927 can manage the access points supporting AP management via Central AP Management.

AP Map

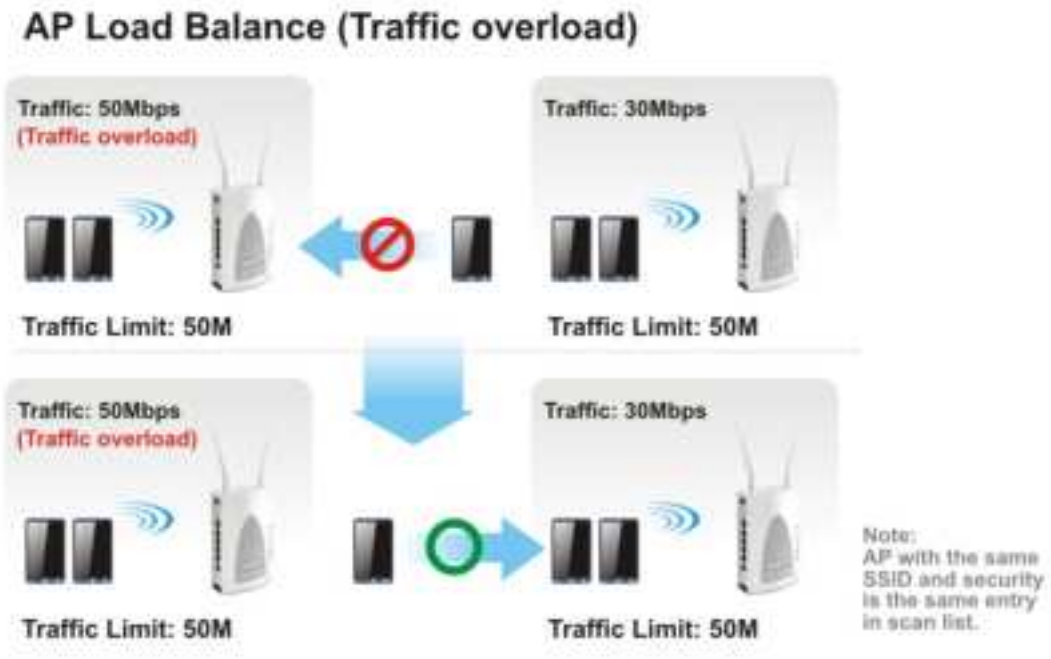
AP Map is helpful to determine the best location for VigorAP in a room. A floor plan of a room is required to be uploaded first. By dragging and dropping available VigorAP icon from the list to the floor plan, the placement with the best wireless coverage will be clearly indicated through simulated signal strength

AP Maintenance

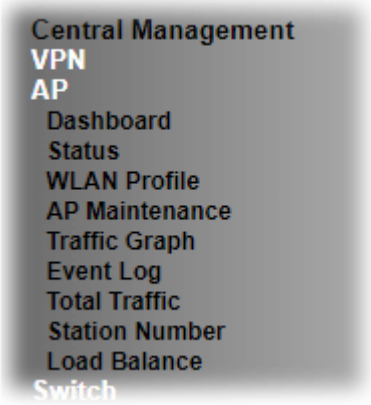
Vigor router can execute configuration backup, configuration restoration, firmware upgrade and remote reboot for the APs managed by the router. It is very convenient for the administrator to process maintenance without accessing into the web user interface of the access point.

Load Balance for AP

The parameters configured for Load Balance can help to distribute the traffic for all of the access points registered to Vigor router. Thus, the bandwidth will not be occupied by certain access points.



Web User Interface



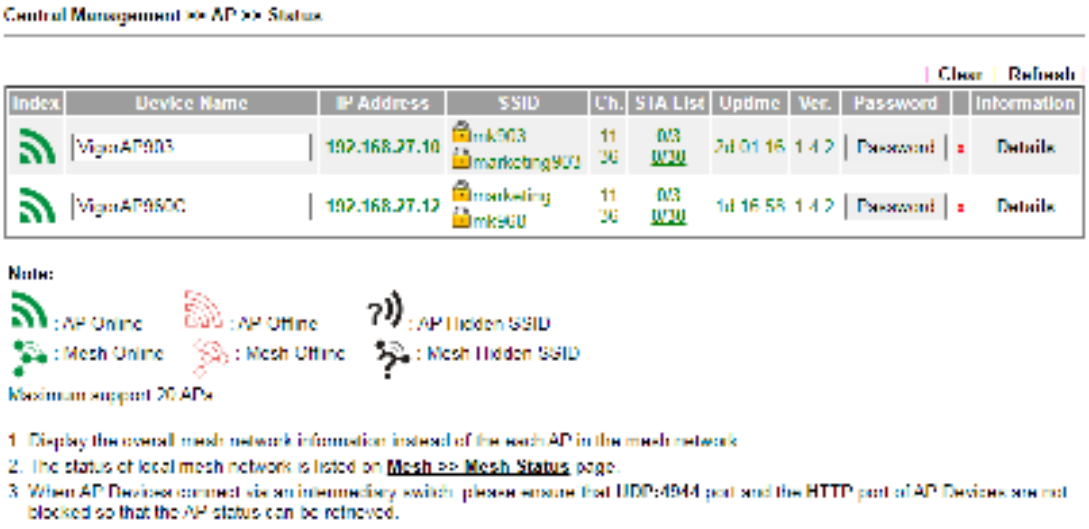
VII-6-1 Dashboard

This page shows VigorAP's information about **Status**, **Event Log**, **Total Traffic** or **Station Number** by displaying VigorAP icon, text and histogram. Just move and click your mouse cursor on **Status**, **Event Log**, **Total Traffic** or **Station Number**. Corresponding web pages will be open immediately.

To access into the web user interface of VigorAP, simply move your mouse cursor on the VigorAP icon and click it. The system will guide you to access into the web user interface of VigorAP.

VII-6-2 Status

This page displays current status (online, offline or SSID hidden, IP address, encryption, channel, version, password and etc.) of the access points managed by Vigor router. Please open **Central AP Management>>Function Support List** to check what AP Models are supported.

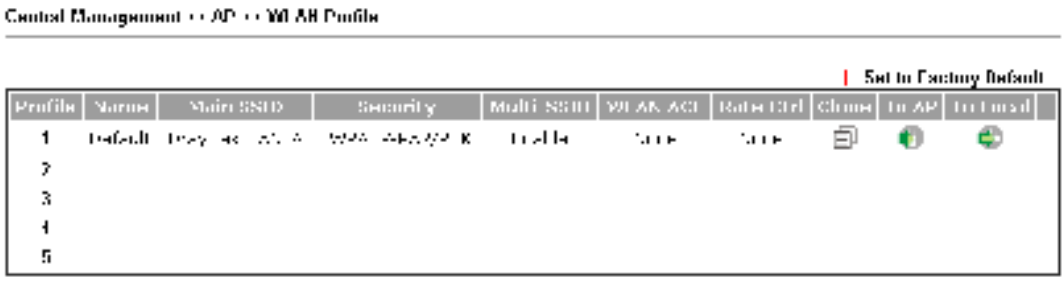


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Index	Click the index number link for viewing the settings summary of the access point.
Device Name	The name of the AP managed by Vigor router will be displayed here.
IP Address	Display the true IP address of the access point.
SSID	Display the SSID configured for the access point(s) connected to Vigor2927.
Ch.	Display the channel used by the access point.
STA List	Display the number of wireless clients (stations) connecting to the access point. In which, 0/64 means that up to 64 clients are allowed to connect to the access point. But, now no one connects to the access point. The number displayed on the left side means 2.4GHz; and the number displayed on the right side means 5GHz.
Uptime	Display the duration of the AP powered up.
Version	Display the firmware version used by the access point.
Password	Vigor2927 can get related information of the access point by accessing into the web user interface of the access point. This button is used to modify the logging password of the connected access point.
Details	Click to open a window of detailed information related to the selected VigorAP.

VII-6-3 WLAN Profile

WLAN profile is used to apply to a selected access point. It is very convenient for the administrator to configure the setting for access point without opening the web user interface of the access point.



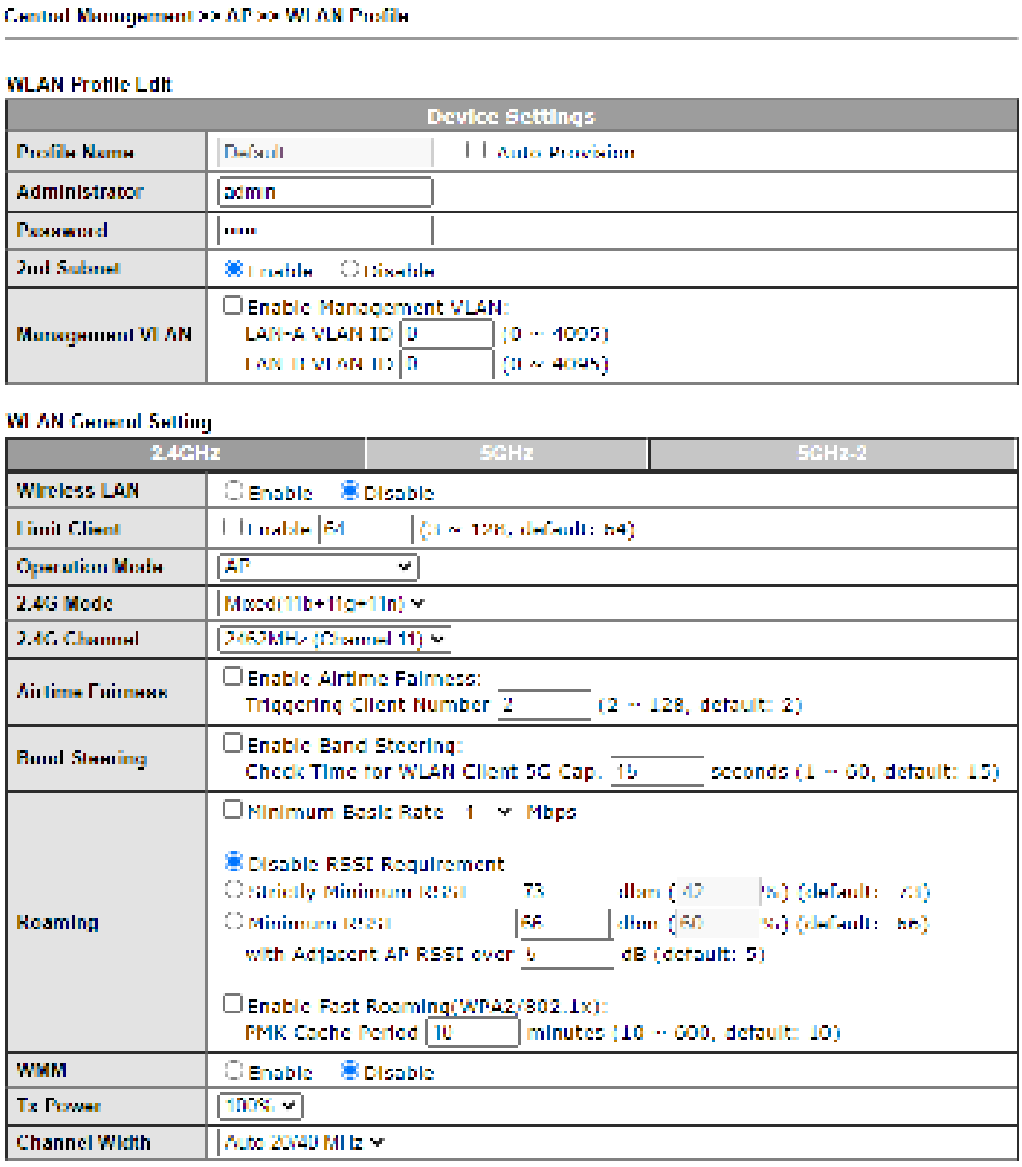
Click the number link of the selected profile to modify the content of the profile. Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile	There are five WLAN profiles offered to be configured. Simply click the index number link to open the modification page.
Name	Display the name of the profile. The default profile cannot be renamed.
Main SSID	Display the SSID configured by such wireless profile.
Security	Display the security mode selected by such wireless profile.
Multi-SSID	Enable means multiple SSIDs (more than one) are active. Disable means only SSID1 is active.
WLAN ACL	Display the name of the access control list.
Rate Ctrl	Display the upload and/or download transmission rate.
Clone	It can copy settings from an existing WLAN profile to another WLAN profile. First, you have to check the box of the existing profile as the original profile. Second, click **Clone**. The following dialog will appear. Third, choose the profile index to accept the settings from the original profile. Forth, type a new name in the field of **Renamed as**. Last, click **Apply** to save the settings on this dialog. The new profile has been created with the settings coming from the original profile.
To AP	Click it to apply the selected wireless profile to the specified Access Point.

	 Simply choose the device you want from **Existing Device** field. Click >> to move the device to **Selected Device** field. Then, click **OK**. The selected WLAN profile will be applied to the selected access point immediately. Later the access point will reboot.
To Local	WLAN Profile configured in this page is specified for VigorAP connected to Vigor router. If required, these settings also can be applied to Vigor router. Select and check one of wireless profiles and click this button to apply the settings onto the WI-Fi wireless settings configured for such Vigor router.

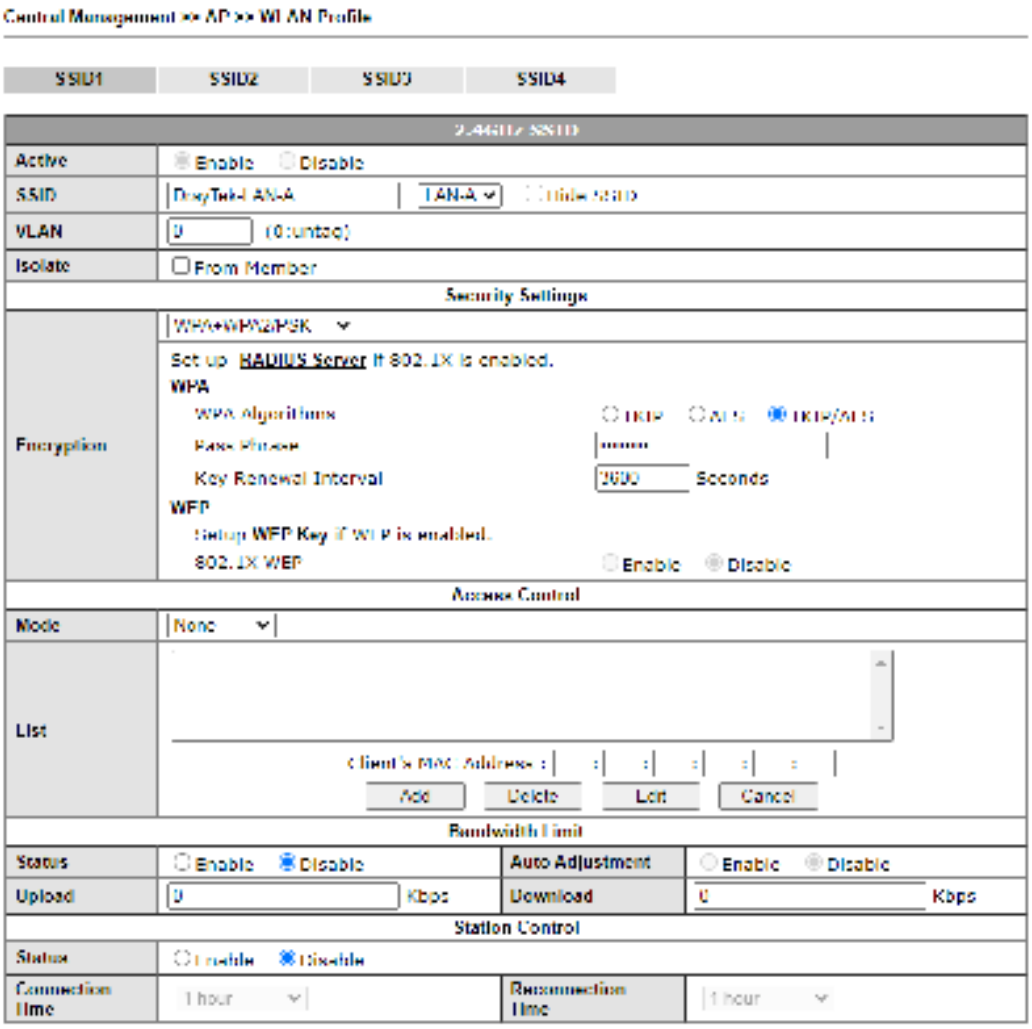
How to edit the wireless LAN profile?

1. Select the WLAN profile (index number 1 to 5) you want to edit.
2. Click the index number link to display the following page.

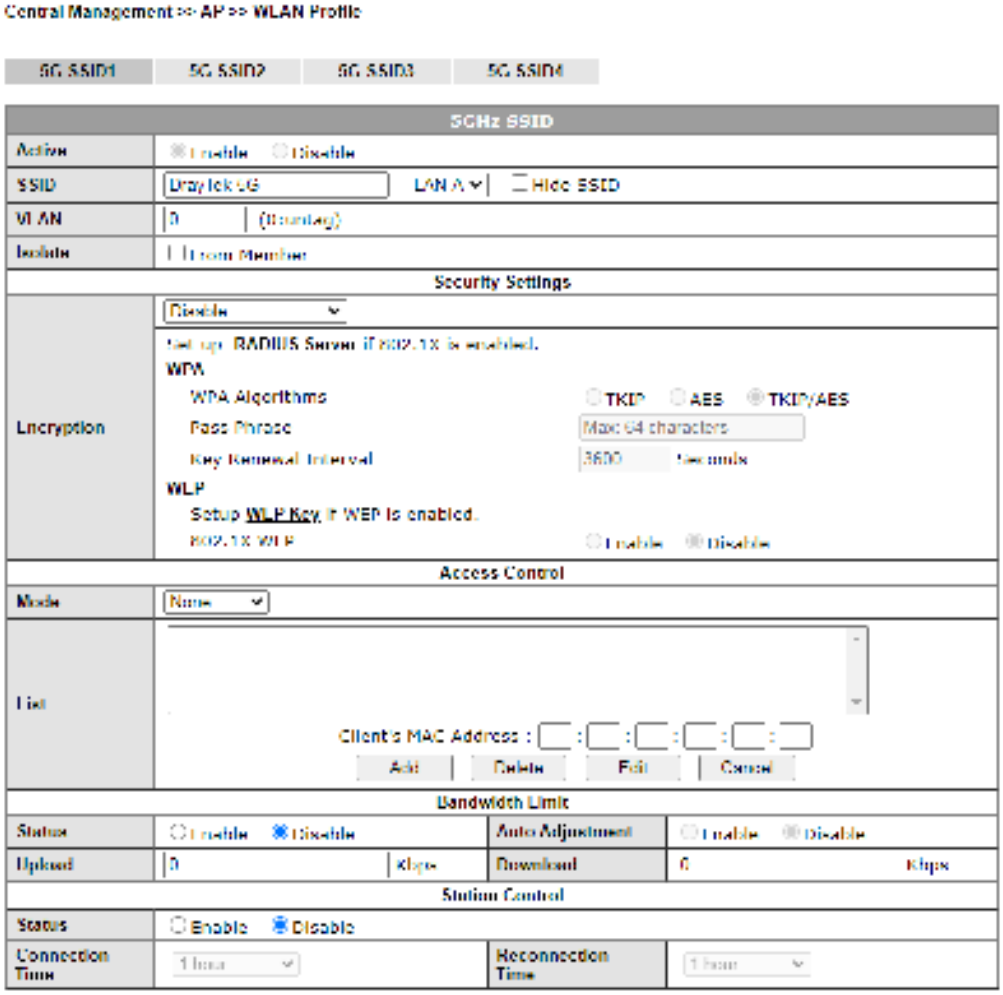


Info The function of Auto Provision is available for the default WLAN profile.

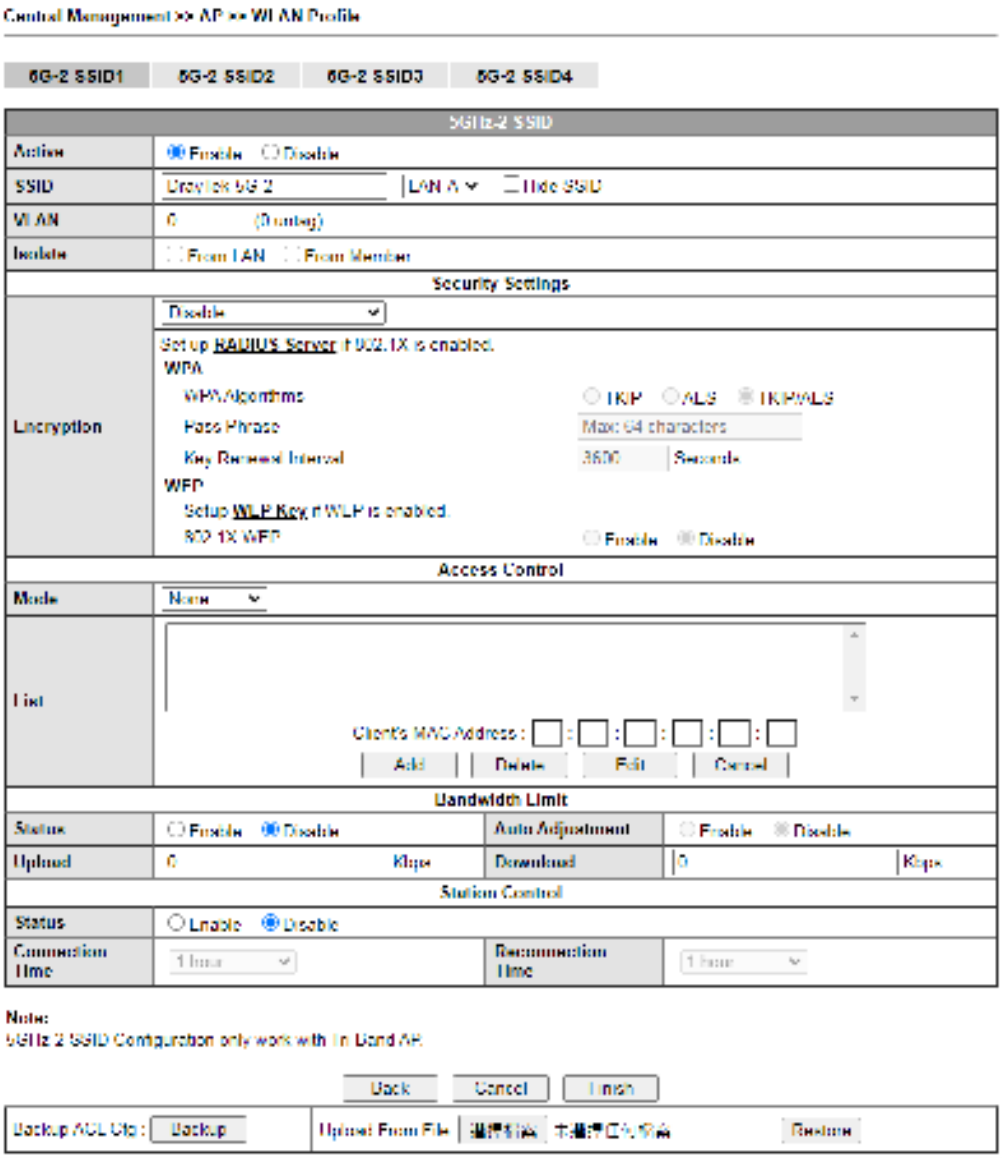
3. After finished the general settings configuration, click **Next** to open the following page for 2.4GHz wireless security settings.



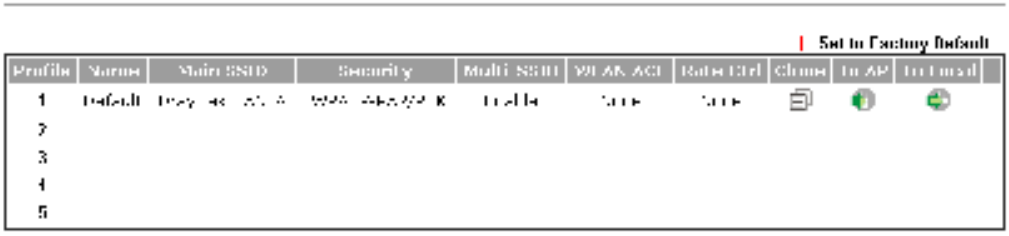
4. After finished the above web page configuration, click **Next** to open the following page for 5GHz wireless security settings.



and 5GHz-2 wireless security settings



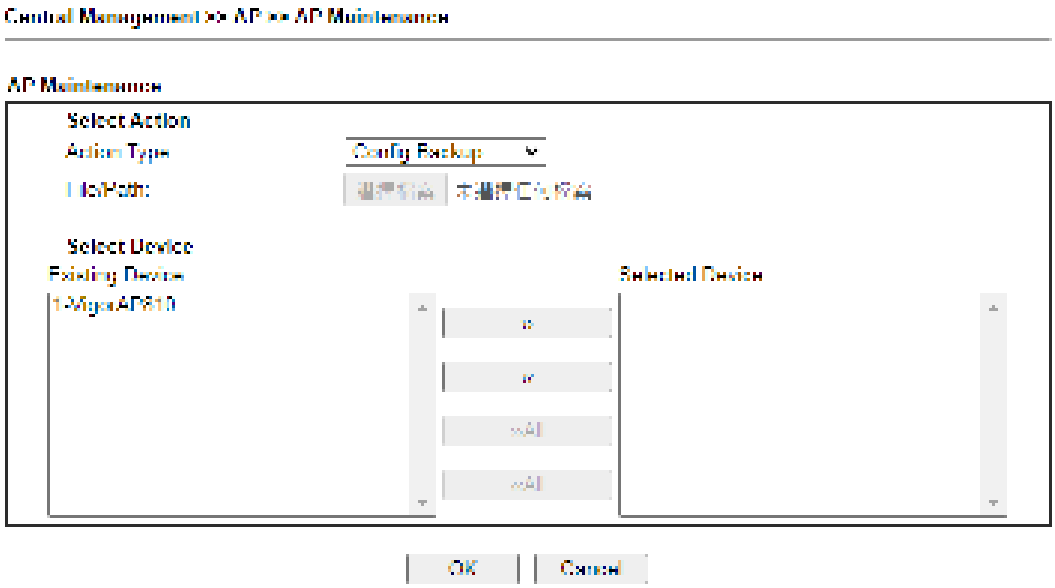
5. When you finished the above web page configuration, click **Finish** to exit and return to the first page. The modified WLAN profile will be shown on the web page.



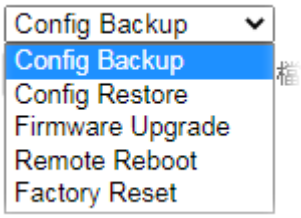
VII-6-4 AP Maintenance

Vigor router can execute configuration backup, configuration restoration, firmware upgrade and remote reboot for the APs managed by the router. It is very convenient for the administrator to process maintenance without accessing into the web user interface of the access point.

Info	Config Backup can be performed to one AP at one time. Others functions (e.g., Config Restore, Firmware Upgrade, Remote Reboot can be performed to more than one AP at one time by using Vigor2927.



Available settings are explained as follows:

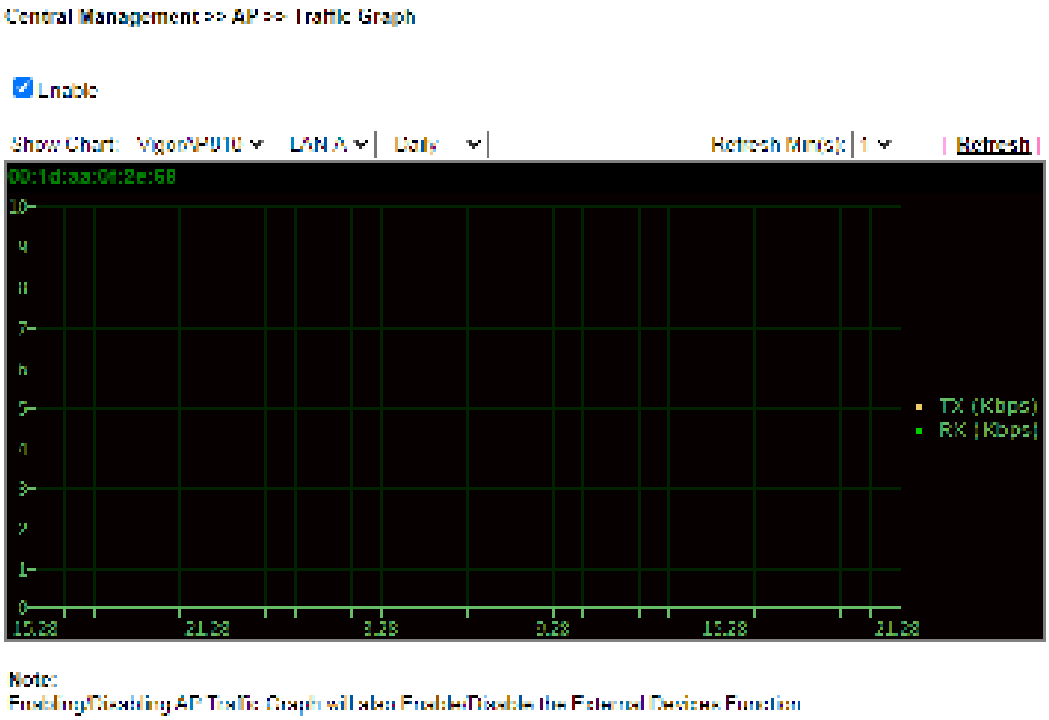
Item	Description
Action	There are four actions provided by Vigor router to manage the access points.  Vigor router can **backup** the configuration of the selected AP, **restore** the configuration for the selected AP, perform the **firmware upgrade** of the selected AP, **reboot** the selected AP remotely and perform the **factory reset** for the selected AP.
File/Path	Specify the file and the path which will be used to perform **Config Restore** or **Firmware Upgrade**.
Select Device	Display all the available access points managed by Vigor router. Simply click << or >> to move the device(s) between **Select Device** and **Selected Device** areas.

Selected Device	Display the access points that will be applied by such function after clicking OK.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to perform the action.

VII-6-5 Traffic Graph

Click **Traffic Graph** to open the web page. Choose one of the managed Access Points, LAN-A or LAN-B, daily or weekly for viewing data transmission chart. Click **Refresh** to renew the graph at any time.

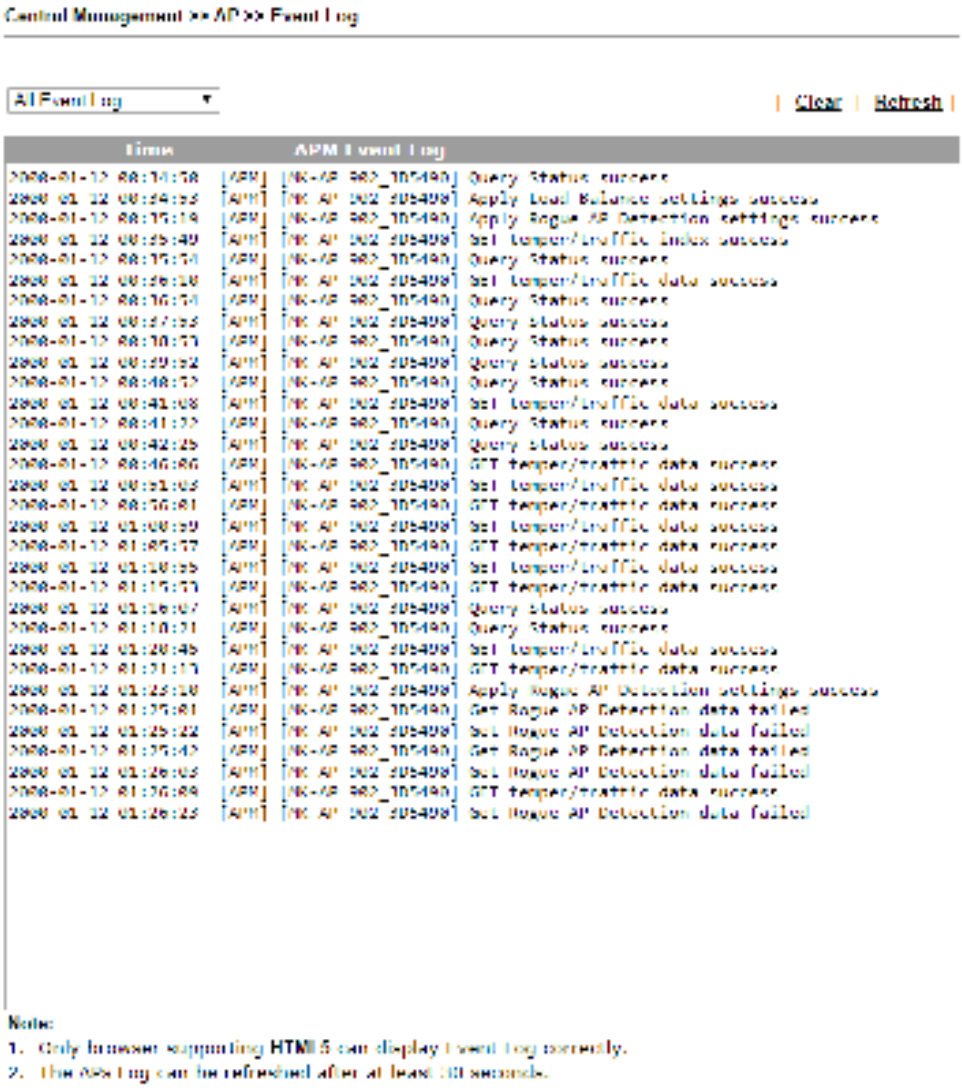


The horizontal axis represents time; the vertical axis represents the transmission rate (in kbps).

Info	Enabling/Disabling such function will also enable/disable the External Devices function.

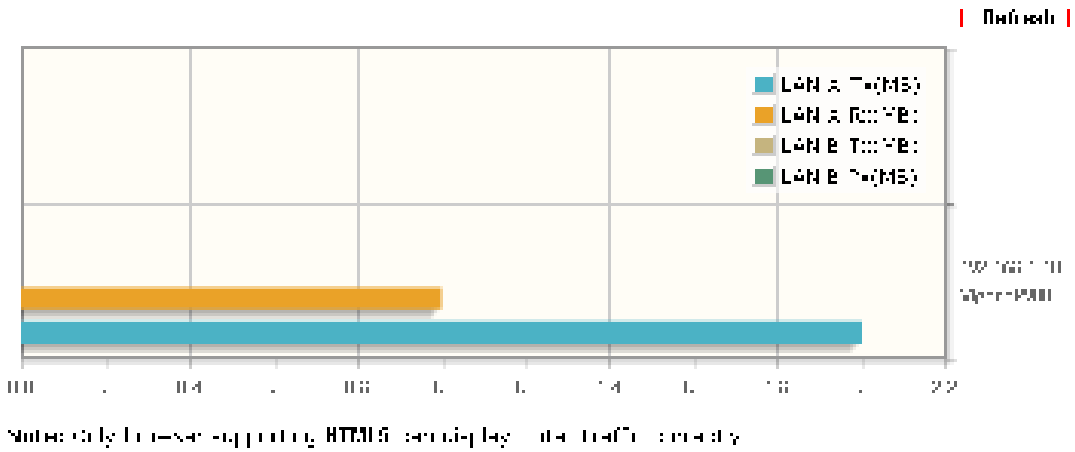
VII-6-6 Event Log

Time and event log for all of the APs managed by Vigor router will be shown on this page. It is userful for troubleshooting if required.



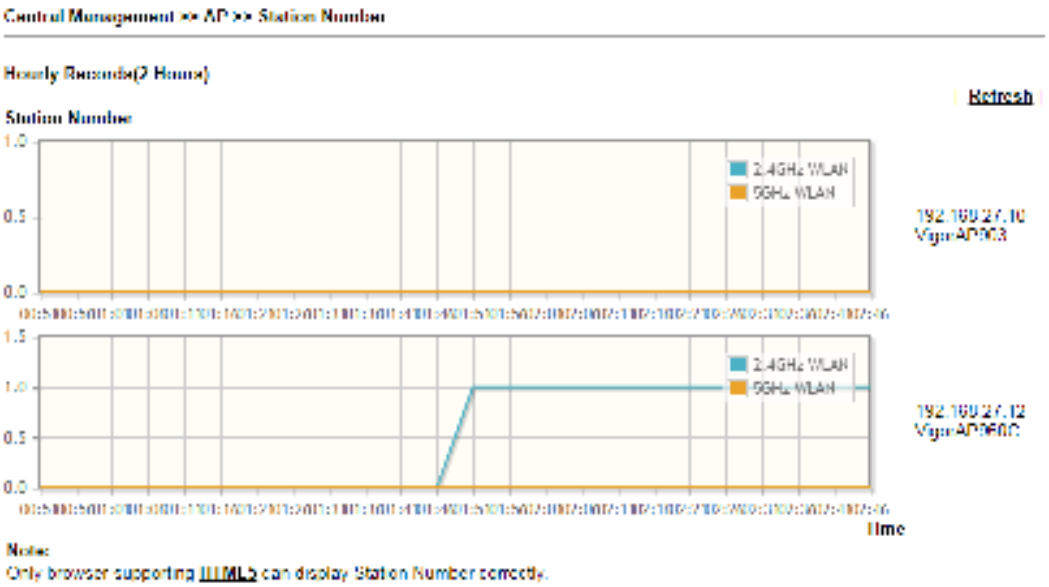
VII-6-7 Total Traffic

Such page will display the total traffic of data receiving and data transmitting for VigorAPs managed by Vigor router.



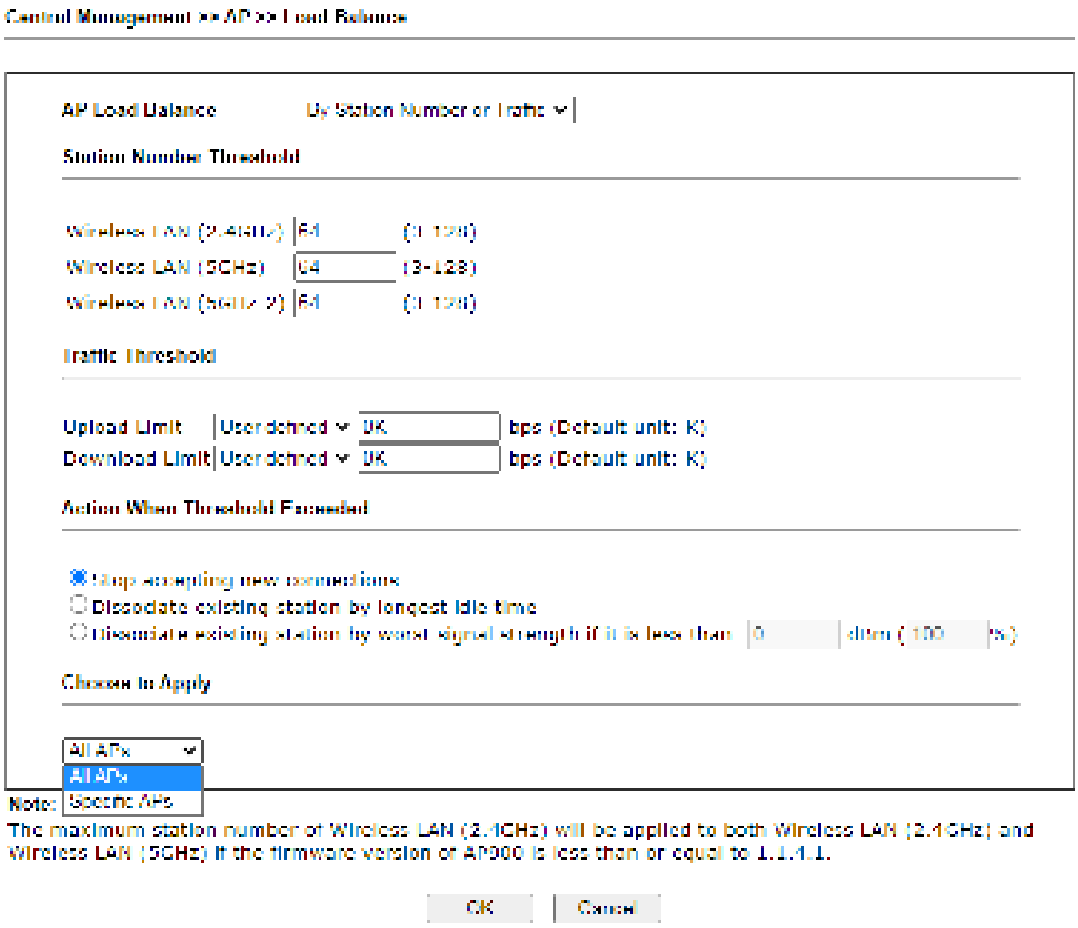
VII-6-8 Station Number

The total number of the wireless clients will be shown on this page, no matter what mode of wireless connection (2.4G WLAN or 5G WLAN) used by wireless clients to access into Internet through VigorAP.



VII-6-9 Load Balance

The parameters configured for Load Balance can help to distribute the traffic for all of the access points registered to Vigor router. Thus, the bandwidth will not be occupied by certain access points.



Available settings are explained as follows:

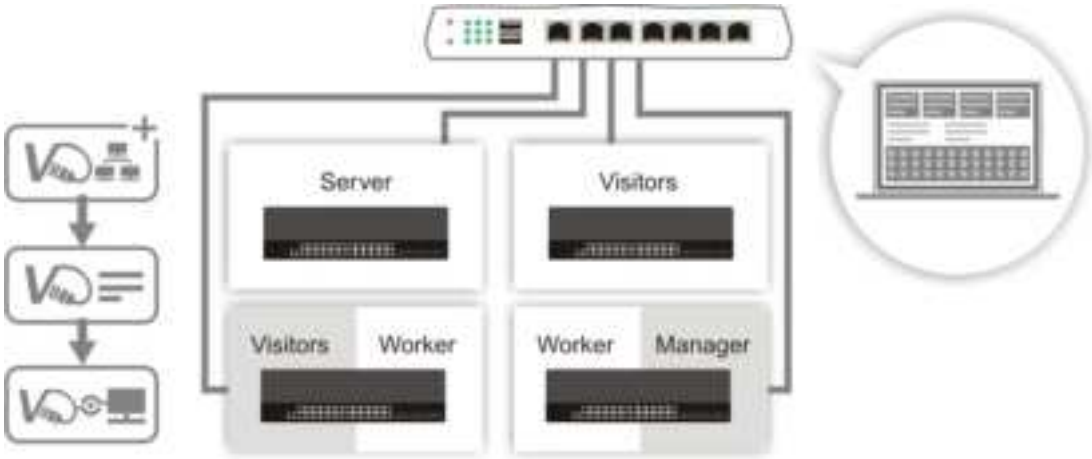
Item	Description
AP Load Balance	It is used to determine the operation mode when the system detects overload between access points. **Disable** – Disable the function of AP load balance. **By Station Number** –The operation of load balance will be executed based on the station number configured in this page. It is used to limit the allowed number for the station connecting to the access point. The purpose is to prevent lots of stations connecting to access point at the same time and causing traffic unbalanced. Please define the required station number for WLAN (2.4GHz) and WLAN (5GHz) separately. **By Traffic** – The operation of load balance will executed according to the traffic configuration in this page. **By Station Number or Traffic** - The operation of load balance will be executed based on the station number or the traffic configuration.
Station Number Threshold	Set the number of stations as a threshold to activate AP load balance.

Traffic Threshold	**Upload Limit** –Use the drop down list to specify the traffic limit for uploading. **Download Limit** – Use the drop down list to specify the traffic limit for downloading.
Action When Threshold Exceeded	**Stop accepting new connections** – When the number of stations or the traffic reaches the threshold defined in this web page, Vigor router will stop any new connection asked by other access point. **Dissociate existing station by longest idel time** - When the access point is overload (e.g., reaching the limit of station number or limit of network traffic), it will terminate the network connection of the client's station which is idle for a longest time. **Dissociate existing station by worst signal strength if it is less than** - When the access point is overload (e.g., reaching the limit of station number or limit of network traffic), it will terminate the network connection of the client's station with the weakest signal.
Choose to Apply	Determine which AP shall be applied with the load balance. **All APs** – All APs shall be applied with the load balance. **Specific APs** – The function of load balance will be applied to the AP specified in this field.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.

VII-7 Central Management (Switch)

Vigor router can manage lots of VigorSwitch devices connected to it. Through profile and group settings, the administrator can execute firmware/configuration backup, restore for VigorSwitch device, reboot the device or return to factory default settings of VigorSwitch at one time.

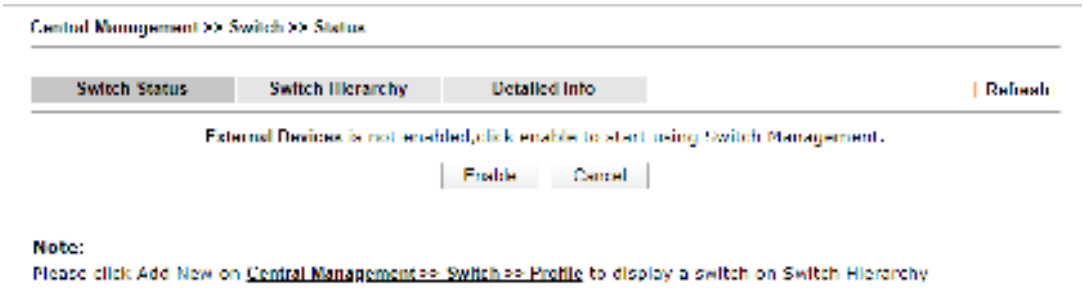


Web User Interface

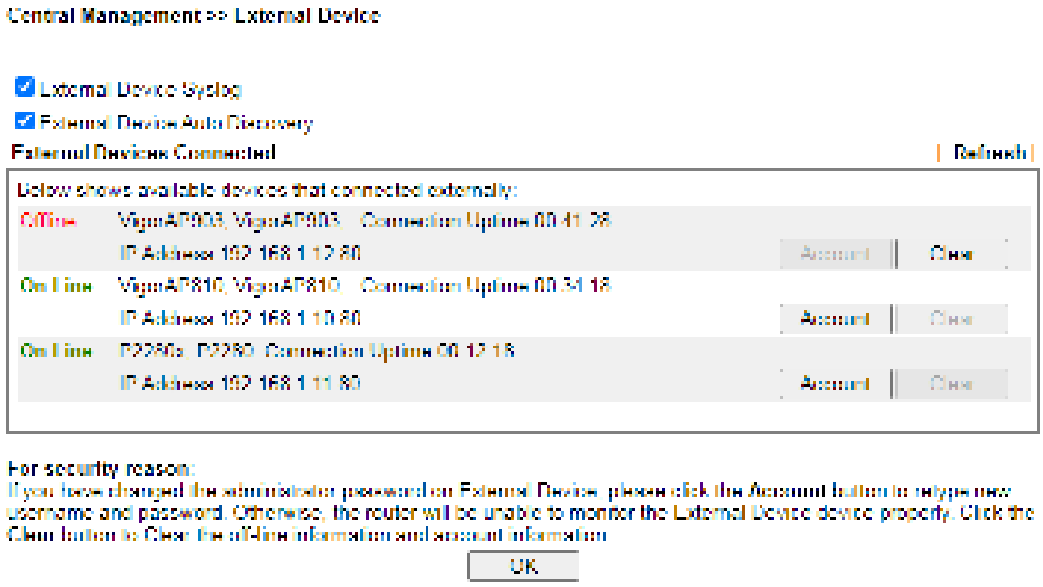
VII-7-1 Status

VII-7-1-1 Switch Status

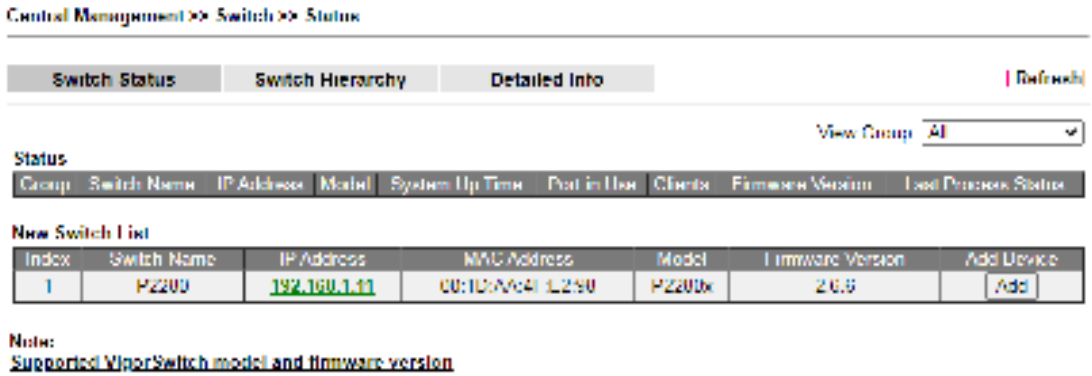
Such page displays information, including Group, Switch name, IP address, model, System Up Time, Port in Use, Clients, and Firmware Version of VigorSwitch **connected to** Vigor2927 series.



Before checking the switch status, go to **Central Management>>External Device** to enable **External Device Auto Discovery**. Wait for the system to display available device(s).

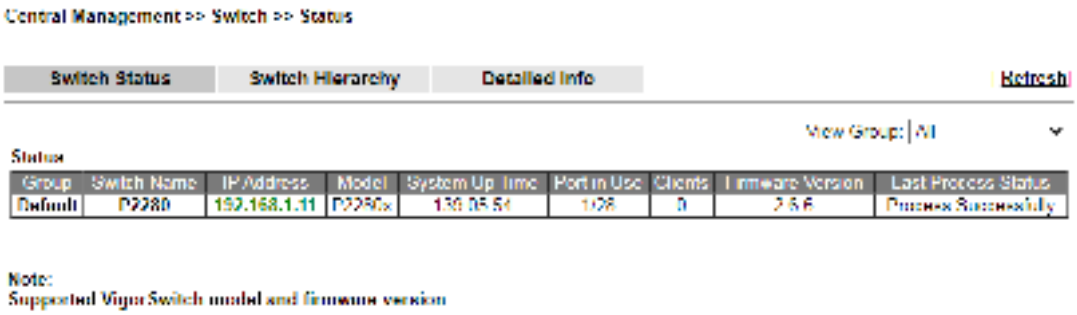


Later, open **Central Management>>Switch>>Status**. Available VigorSwitch to be managed by such router will be listed under the New Switch List.



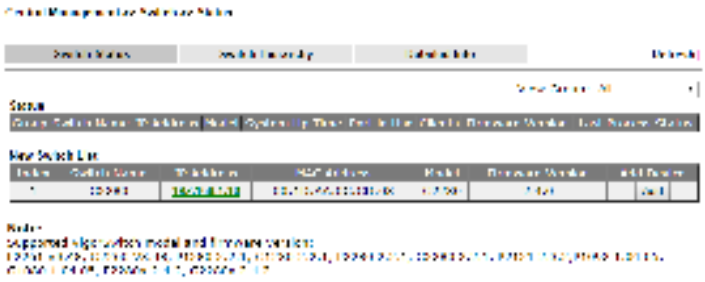
Info	VigorSwitch listed below Status means the switch is managed by Viogr router; VigorSwitch listed below New Switch List means it is not managed by Vigor2927 yet.

Click **Add** to make the selected VigorSwitch to be managed by Vigor router.



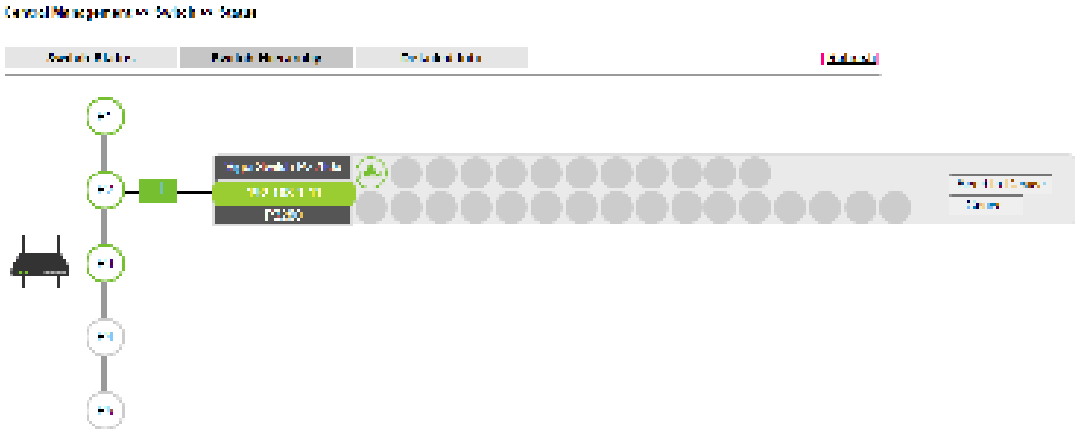
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Group	Display the name link of the group.

	You can click the link to modify the group settings if required.
Switch Name	Display the name link of VigorSwitch. You can click the name link to access into the switch profile.
IP Address	Display the IP address of VigorSwitch.
Model	Display the model name of VigorSwitch.
System Up Time	Display the time accumulated since this Vigorwitch is powered up.
Port in Use	Display how many devices connected to VigorSwitch.
Clients	Display the number of LAN ports used in VigorSwitch.
Firmware Version	Display the firmware version that VigorSwitch current used.
Add	Such button will appear only when there is more than one switch connected to Vigor2927. The one under New Switch List is allowed to be managed under current used group. Simply click **Add**.  It will be better to group VigorSwitch devices with the same model.

VII-7-1-2 Switch Hierarchy

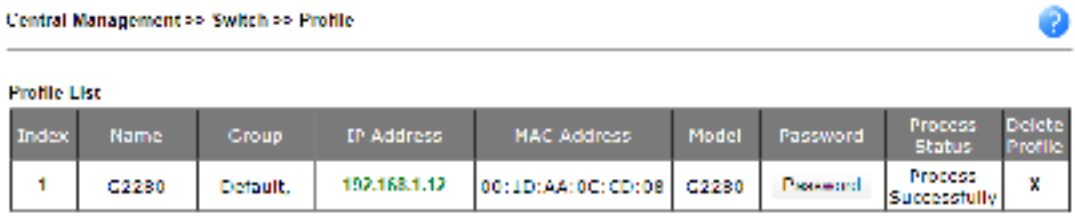
Such page displays the hierarchy of VigorSwitch(es) managed under Vigor2927.



Please note that, **Shutdown Port** is available for LAN port of VigorSwitch connects to a LAN device. When it is checked, after clicking **OK**, the network connection between that device and VigorSwitch will be terminated.

VII-7-2 Profile

This page will show general information, such as name, group, IP address, MAC address, model and password of VigorSwitch only when it connects to Vigor2927 series. By clicking the index number link, a profile setting page for that switch will be shown. Note that each profile represents one VigorSwitch.

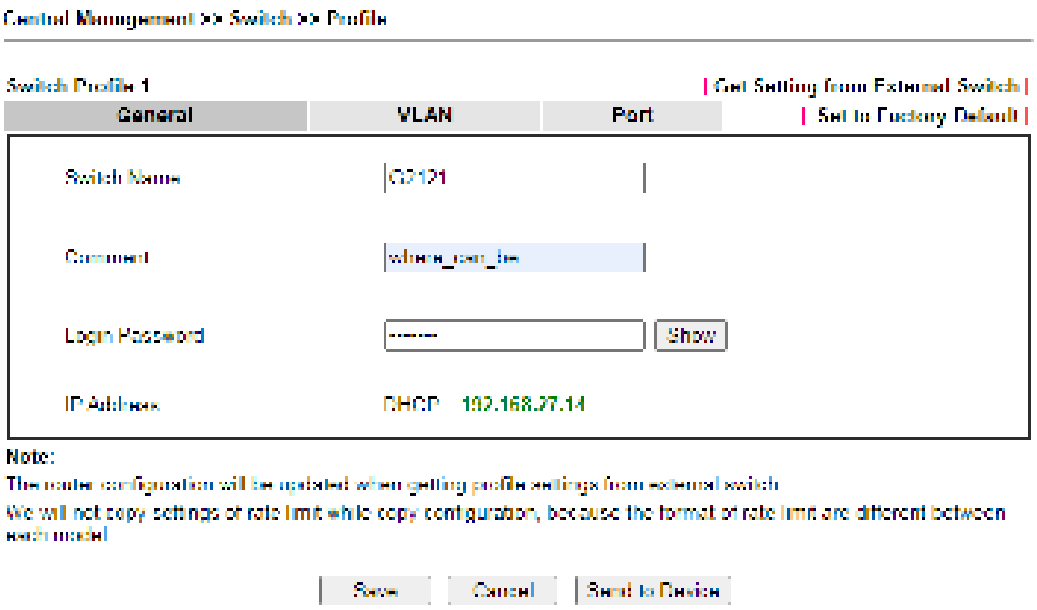


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Index	Click the number link to access into the switch profile. Note: Each connected VigorSwitch will have one setting profile. If there are many switches connected to Vigor2927, different index number will be used to represent different VigorSwitch.
Name	Display the user defined name of VigorSwitch.
Group	Display the group name of VigorSwitch(es).
IP Address	Display the IP address of VigorSwitch.
MAC Address	Display the MAC address of VigorSwitch.
Model	Display the model name of VigorSwitch.
Password	Click it to display the account information including username and password.
Delete Profile	Click the mark of “X” to delete the switch profile.

To edit profile for the selected switch:

1. Click index number link (e.g. #1) to open the following page.

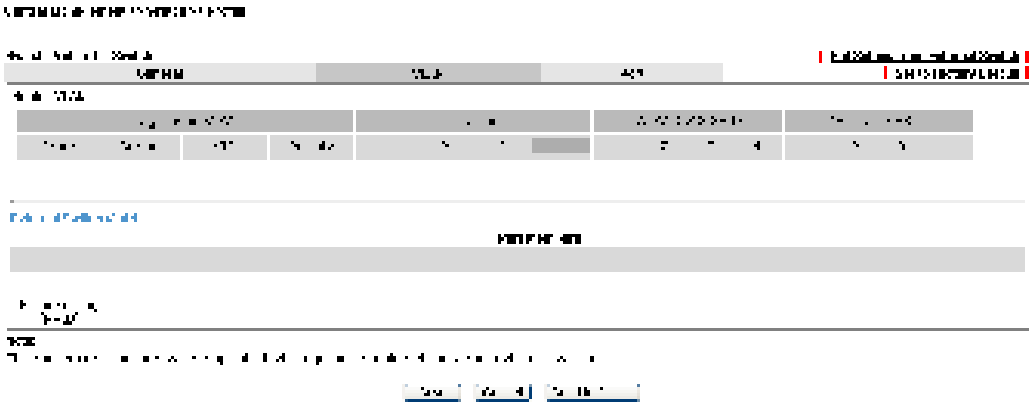


Available settings are explained as follows:

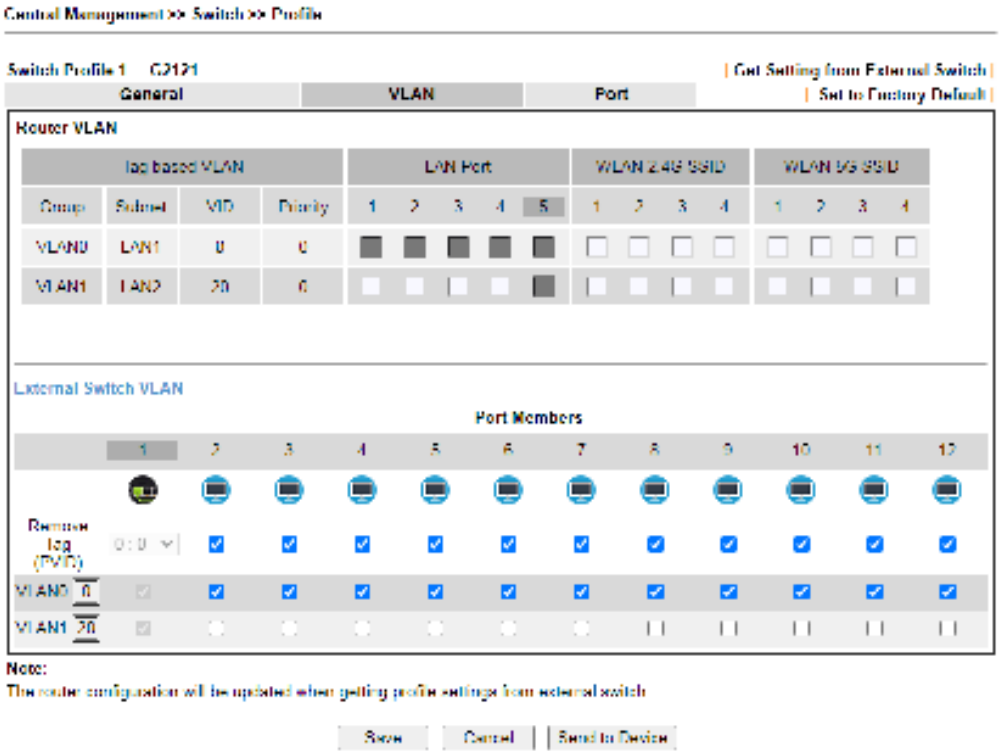
Item	Description
Switch Name	Type a name for the Switch. The purpose of name is used for identification. It is useful when there are many VigorSwitch (same modes) devices connecting to Vigor2927 seres.
Comment	Enter the text in such field if additional explanation for the switch is required.
Login Password	Display the original login password for the VigorSwitch. However, if Group Password (in **Central Management >>Switch>>Group**) is configured with other string, then such field is not allowed to type any other password. And only the group password will be shown, instead.
IP Address	Display the dynamic IP address (of the connected switch) assigned by Vigor2927.
Save	Click it to save the settings.
Cancel	Click it to return to previous web page without saving the setting changes.
Send to Device	Click it to transfer the configuration change (e.g, login password, switch name, etc.) to the VigorSwitch immediately.

2. After finished the settings, click **VLAN** tab to open following page.

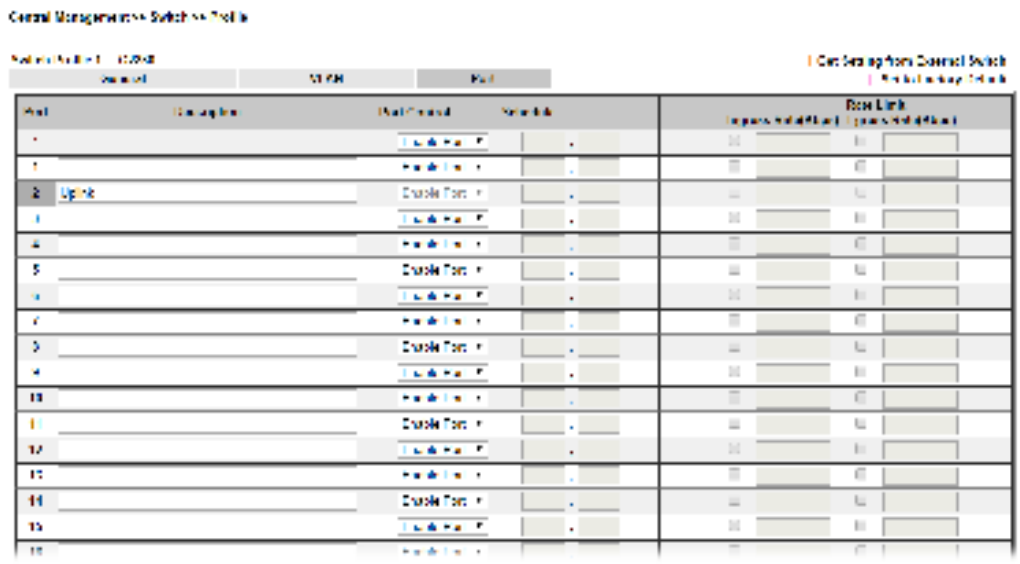
   Blank page due to LAN>>VLAN not configured previously:



Setting page with **LAN>>VLAN** configured previously:



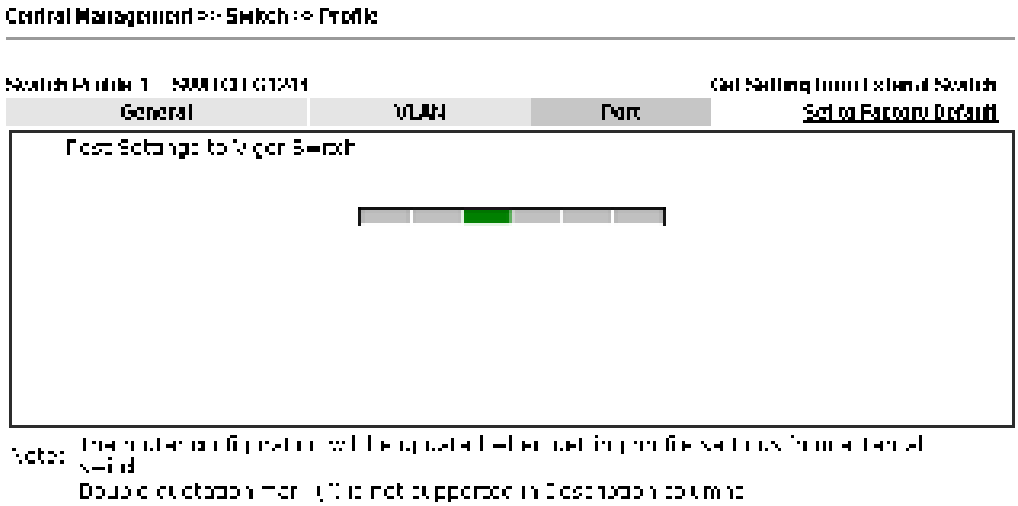
3. Click **Save** to save VLAN configuration. Then, click **Port** tab to access the following page:



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Description	If required, type a brief description to explain the device connected to VigorSwitch via the LAN port.
Port Control	**Disable Port** – The port (e.g, Port 2 in this case) which is used to connect VigorSwitch and Vigor2927 will not be shutdown by Vigor2927 series. Other LAN ports of VigorSwitch allow to connect to any LAN device. When it is checked, after clicking Save, the network connection between that device and VigorSwitch will be terminated. **Schedule** – Two sechule profiles can be specified here to force Vigor2927 executing specific action to VigorSwitch.
Rate Limit	Check the box for typing the ingress rate / egress rate for the selected VigorSwitch. After clicking **Save**, the value modified in this page will be written to VigorSwitch and enabled.

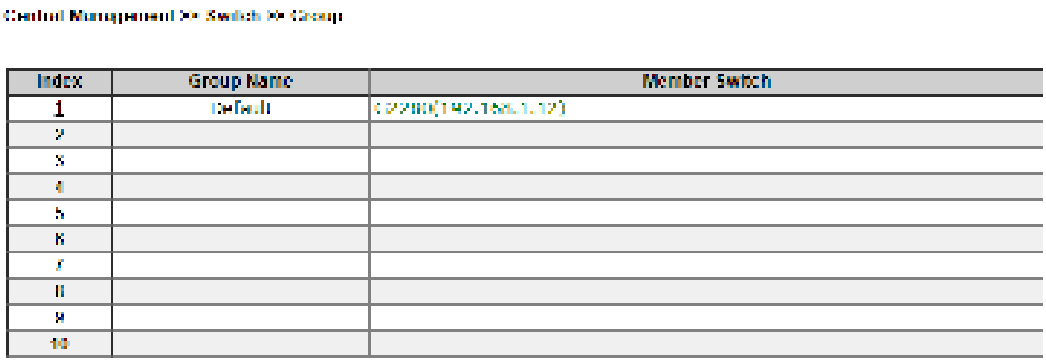
4. Click **Save** to save the changes and then click **Send to Device**. Settings will be sent to VigorSwitch immediately.



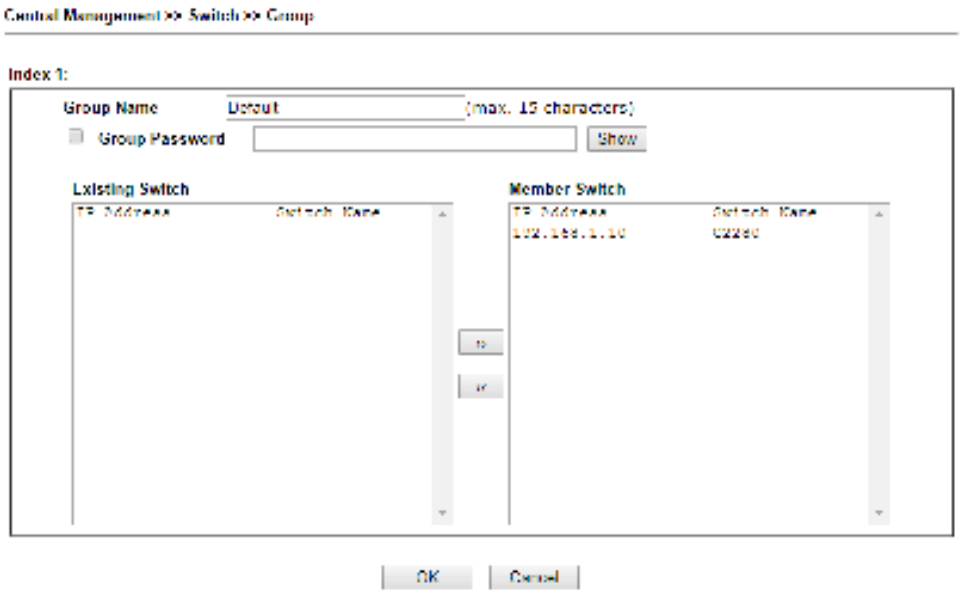
VII-7-3 Group

Different switches can be classified into different group(s). Specifc password for a group can be defined and applied to every switch uder that group.

Through the common password setting, it is not necessary for the system administrator to remember various login passwords to access into different VigorSwitch devices.



Click any index number link to create a new switch group.

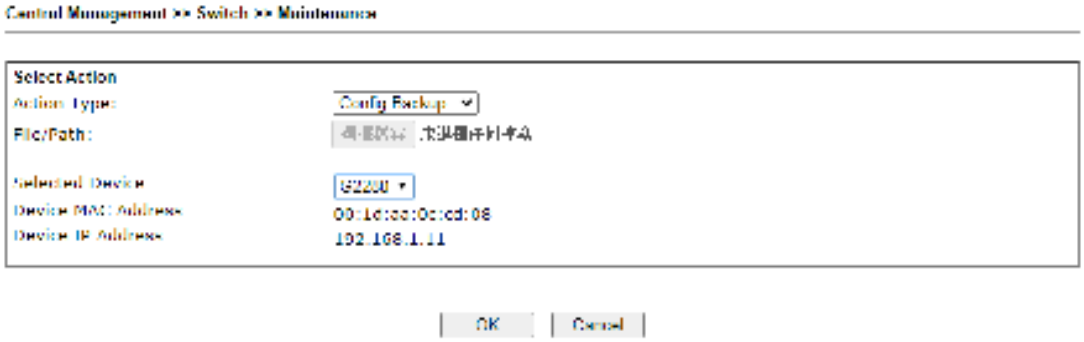


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Group Name	Type a name as the group name. Different switches can be classified within a group.
Group Password	Type a password that administrator can use to access into the managed VigorSwitch connecting to Vigor2927 series. All of the switches under the same group can be accessed into via such group password.
Existing Switch	Display all of the VigorSwitch devices connecting to Vigor2927.
Member Switch	Choose the switches you want to group and click the button “>>” to move the selected devices onto the field of Member Switch. Devices under Member Switch will be grouped under such group profile.
OK	Click it to save the configuration.
Cancel	Click it to exit the setting page without saving any change.

VII-7-4 Maintenance

Such feature can execute configuration backup, restore of selected VigorSwitch device(s) or reboot the VigorSwitch devices remotely or reset the VigorSwitch devices with factory default settings, without accessing into the web user interface of VigorSwitch respectively. It is convenient for system administrator to manage VigorSwitch devices.



Available settings are explained as follows:

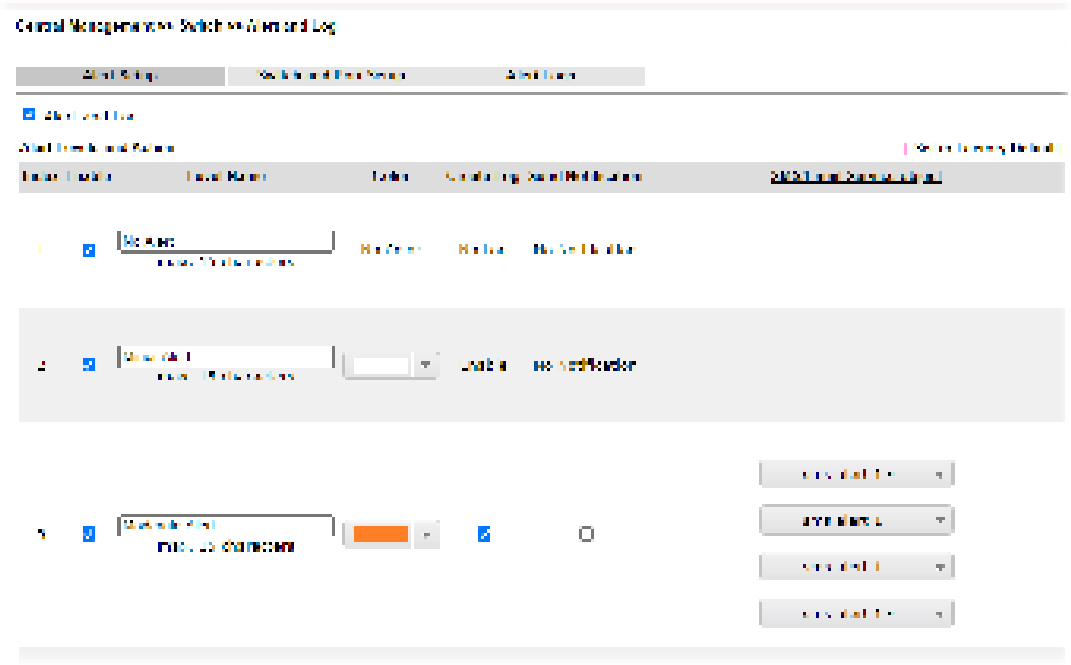
Item	Description
Select Action	**Action Type** – Four actions including configuration backup, configuration restore, remote reboot and factory reset are offered by Vigor2927 to perform on VigorSwitch. **File/Path** – Click the button to find out the required file.
Selected Device	Use the drop down list to specify a VigorSwitch. Then the MAC address and IP address related to the device will be displayed on this area.
OK	Click it to immediately perform the action (configuration backup, configuration restore, remote reboot and factory reset) on the device(s) listed in Selected Device.
Cancel	Click it to cancel the setting changes.

VII-7-5 Alert and Log

Alert and Log is helpful for the user to understand the abnormal situation occurred in VigorSwitch quickly. When the system detects an error, information of abnormal condition will be recorded to the database; or the system will send an alert to the specified device (via e-mail or SMS) to warn the user.

VII-7-5-1 Alert Setup

This page is used to define the name of alert, level of alert (in color), and determine to record the data in the database, or send a notification message to the user based on the level.

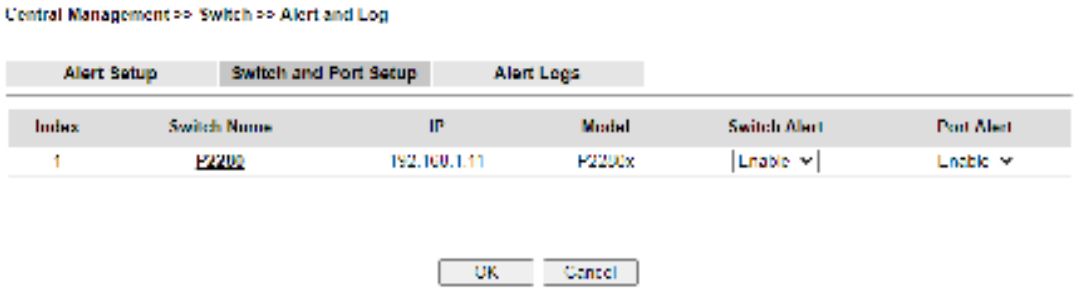


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Alert and Log	Check it to enable this feature.
Alert Levels and Action	**Level Name** – Define names for representing the severity of alert event. The default names for index 1 to index 4 will be shown on each setting box. Index 5 to index 8 are reserved for user-defined. **Color** – Define the color for each level of alert. However, the color of index 1 is No color and unable to be changed. **Create Log** – Check the box to create log of alert. Such log will be seen on Alert Logs page. Note that No Log for index 1; and log for index 2 is enabled in default. **Send Notification** – If it is checked, Vigor router's system will send notification to specified phone number via SMS. **SMS/Email Service Object** – Choose the SMS object which will get the SMS from Vigor router. Up to 4 objects can be selected at one time.

VII-7-5-2 Switch and Port Setup

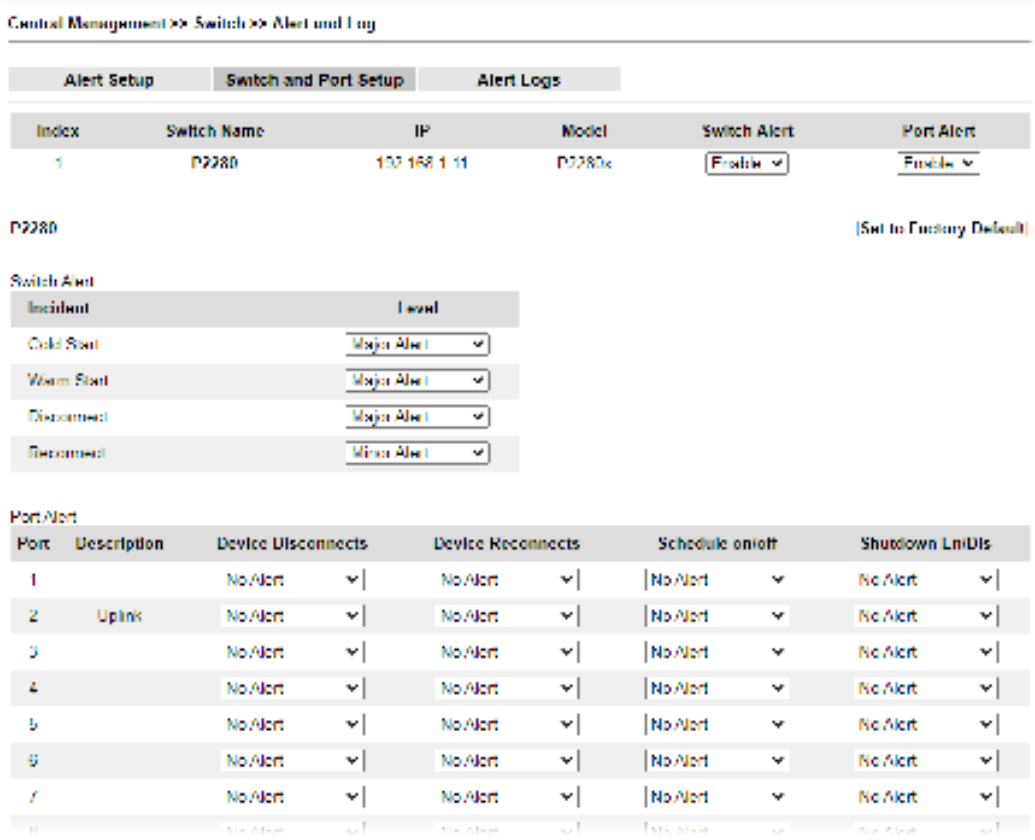
This page defines enabling switch alert and/or port alert for each switch.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Switch Alert	**Enable** – Check it to enable alert mechanism for VigorSwitch.
Port Alert	**Enable** - Check it to enable alert mechanism for each port of VigorSwitch.

Click the Switch Name link (e.g., P2280 in this case) to get detailed settings.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Switch Alert	When VigorSwitch encounters the following alert events, alert mechanism will perform corresponding actions based on the servity level of the incident encountererd. **Incident** – At present, **Cold Start**, **Warm Start**, **Disconnect and Reconnect** will be treated as alert events. **Level** – Specify the severity level for each incident. To

	defined more severity level for choosing in this page, simply open **Central Management>>Switch>>Alert and Log** and click **Alert Setup**.
Port Alert	**Port** – Available Ethernet ports for the selected VigorSwitch (e.g., G2280 in this case) will be shown on this page. Each port can be confgiured with different alert level for diffent alert event.

VII-7-5-3 Alert Logs

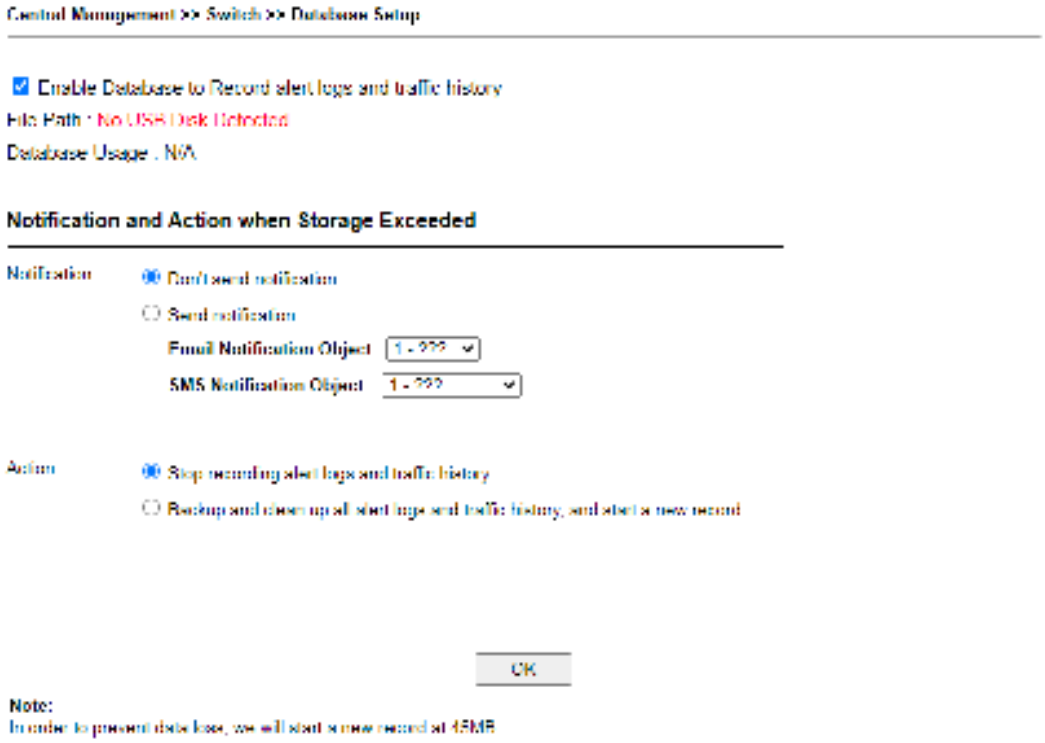
The user can get the information by filtering the collective information based on the conditions specified in this page.

Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Select Columns to Filter Logs	**Level** – The alert can be divided into several levels, Minor Alert, Moderate Alert and Major Alert. Check the one(s) you want to check in Alert Logs list. **Type** – Check the type (switch / port) of the log to be displayed in Alert Logs list. **Switch** – Switch(es) connecting to Vigor router will be shown in this area. Click the one you need. **OK** – Click it to save the configuration. Log related to the items selected above will be shown in Alert Logs list.
Alert Logs	This area displays logs (level name, time, type, switch, port, and incident) related to VigorSwitch managed by Vigor router.

VII-7-6 Database Setup

The database of switch can be used to record alert logs and traffic history. This page is used to determine if it is necessary for the user information to be recorded in the database of switch.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable Database to Record alert logs and traffic history	Check the box to make the database (in USB disk) record the alert logs and traffic history.
Notification and Action when Storage Exceeded	
Notification	**Don't send notification** – No notification will be sent out when there is no capacity for storage in USB. **Send notification** – A notification will be sent out when there is no capacity for storage in USB.
Action	**Stop recording alert logs and traffic history** – When the capacity of log is full, the system will stop recording. **Backup and clean up all alert logs and traffic history, and start a new record** - Only the newest events will be recorded by the system.

After finished the settings, click **OK** to save the configuration.

VII-7-7 Support List

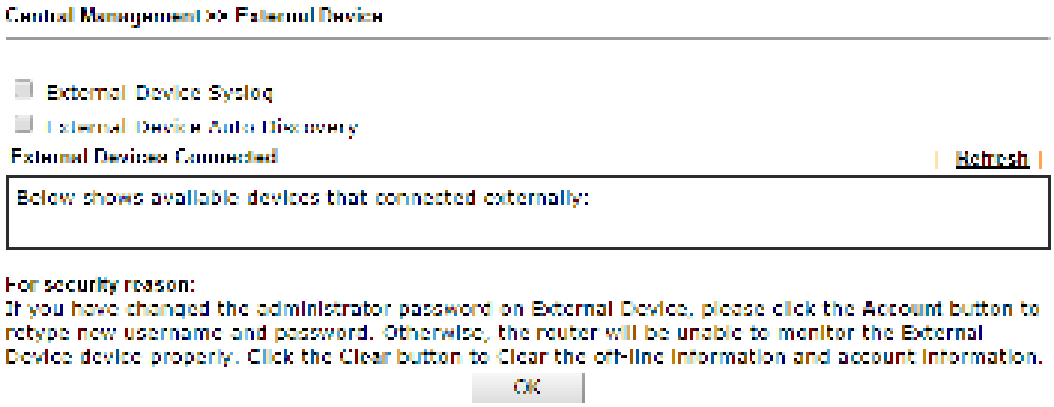
This page lists all models of VigorSwitch which can be managed by Vigor2927 via **Central Management>>Switch.**

Central Management >> Switch >> Support List

Model	Status	Firmware Version
Vigor Switch P2261	V	v3.48
Vigor Switch G2260	V	v3.48
Vigor Switch P1280	V	2.2.1
Vigor Switch G1280	V	2.2.1
Vigor Switch P2280	V	2.2.1
Vigor Switch G2280	V	2.2.1
Vigor Switch P2121	V	2.3.2
Vigor Switch G2121	V	2.4.3
Vigor Switch P1092	V	1.04.05
Vigor Switch G1080	V	1.04.05
Vigor Switch P2500	V	2.4.1
Vigor Switch G2500	V	2.4.1
Vigor Switch P2280x	V	2.4.2
Vigor Switch G2280x	V	2.4.2
Vigor Switch P1085	V	2.4.3
Vigor Switch G1085	V	2.4.3
Vigor Switch P2540x	V	2.6.0
Vigor Switch P2540xh	V	2.6.0
Vigor Switch G2540x	V	2.6.0
Vigor Switch P2100	V	2.6.4
Vigor Switch G2100	V	2.6.4

VII-8 Central Management (External Devices)

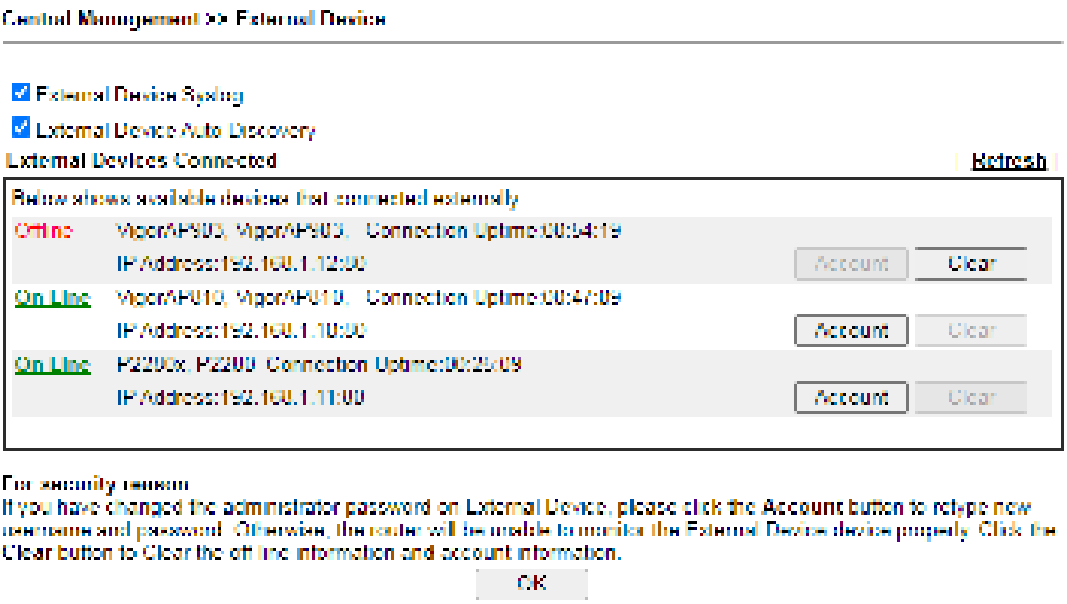
Vigor router can be used to connect with many types of external devices. In order to control or manage the external devices conveniently, open **External Devices** to make detailed configuration.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
External Device Syslog	Check this box to display information of the detected device on Syslog.
External Device Auto Discovery	Check this box to detect the external device automatically and display on this page.

From this web page, check the box of **External Device Auto Discovery** and click **OK**. Later, all the available devices will be displayed in this page with icons and corresponding information. You can change the device name if required or remove the information for off-line device whenever you want.



When you finished the configuration, click **OK** to save it.

Info	Only DrayTek products can be detected by this function.

Part VIII Others

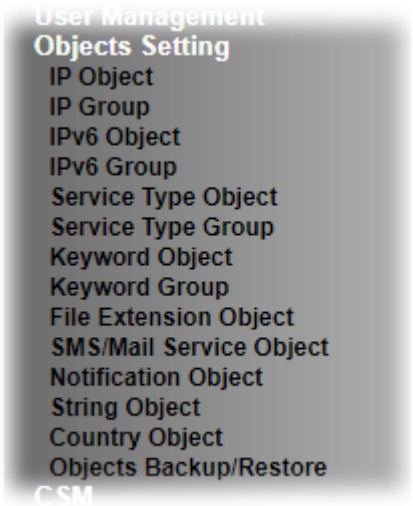
Define objects such as IP address, service type, keyword, file extension and others. These pre-defined objects can be applied in CSM.

USB device connected on Vigor router can be regarded as a server or WAN interface. By way of Vigor router, clients on LAN can access, write and read data stored in USB storage disk with different applications.

VIII-1 Objects Settings

This section allows the creation of objects and object groups from IP addresses, service types, keywords, file extensions, SMS and email recipients, and notification types. Once set up, these objects can be applied to firewall and content management rules.

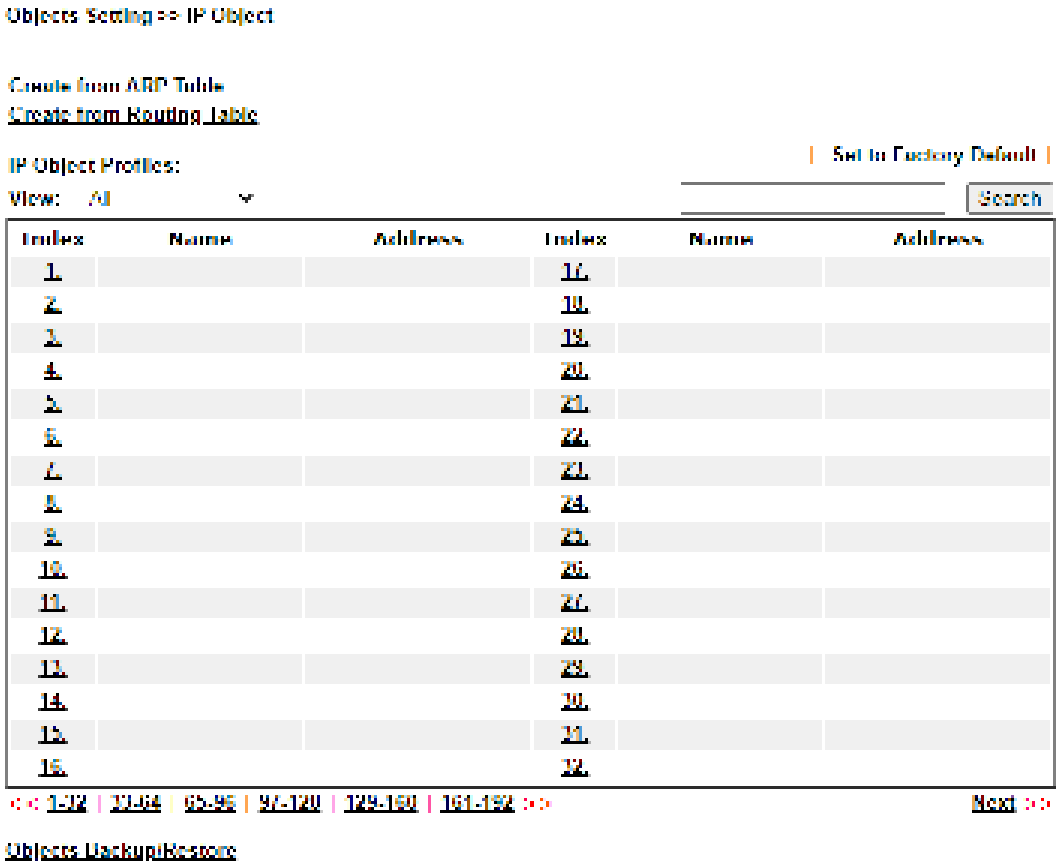
Web User Interface



VIII-1-1 IP Object

For IPs in a range and service ports in a limited range usually will be applied in configuring router's settings, therefore we can define them with ***objects*** and bind them with ***groups*** for using conveniently. Later, we can select that object/group for applying it. For example, all the IPs in the same department can be defined with an IP object (a range of IP address).

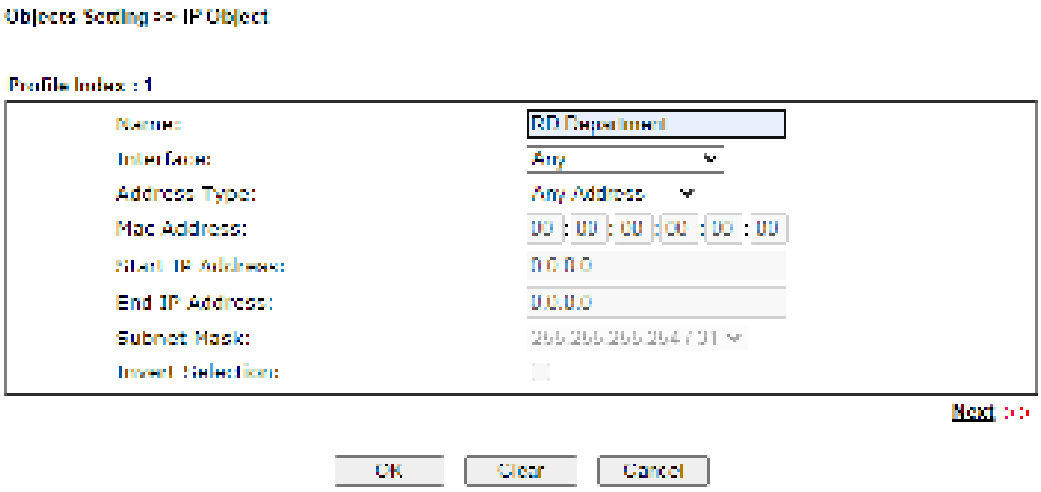
Up to 192 IP Objects can be created.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
View	Use the drop down list to choose a type (Single Address, Range Address, Subnet Address, Mac Address or all) that IP object with the selected type will be shown on this page.
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profile settings.
Search	Type a string of the IP object that you wan to search.
Index	Profile number of the IP object.
Name	Name of the object.
Address	Display the IP address configured for the object profile.
Objects Backup/Restore	Click it to backup or restore the IP object.

To set up a profile, click the profile number under Index column to bring up the configuration page.

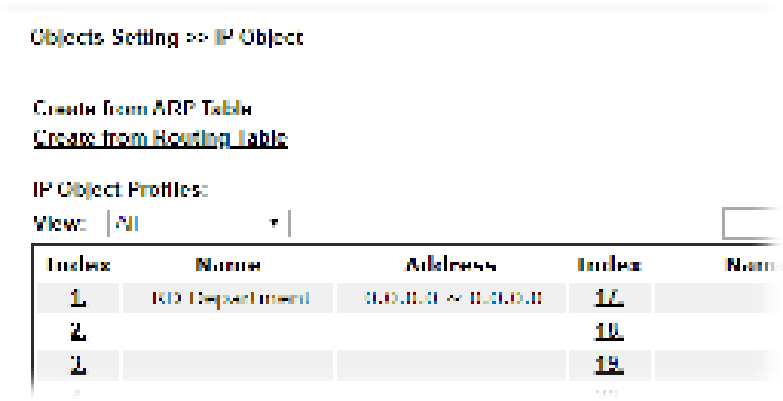


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Name	Name that identifies this profile. Maximum length is 15 characters.
Interface	The network interface on which the IP address or addresses are to be found. **Any** – All network interfaces. **LAN/DMZ/RT/VPN** – All network interfaces except WAN. **WAN** – Only WAN interfaces.
Address Type	Type of Addresses. **Any Address** – Object covers all IP addresses. **Single Address** – Object covers one IP address. **Range Address** – Object covers a range of IP addresses. **Subnet Address** – Object covers a range of IP addresses specified in subnet notation. **Mac Address** – Object contains a MAC address.
MAC Address	Enter MAC address of the network device, if Address Type is Mac Address.

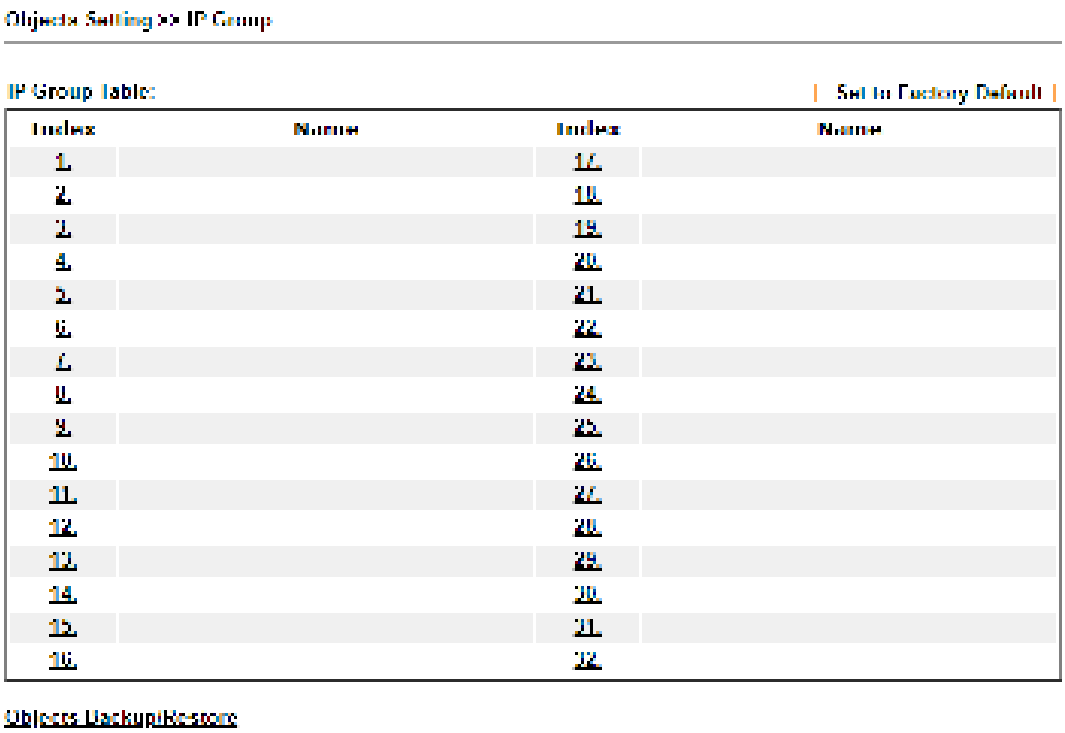
Start IP Address	Enter beginning IP address, if Address Type is one of Single Address, Range Address and Subnet Address.
End IP Address	Enter ending IP address, if Address type is one of Single Address, Range Address and Subnet Address.
Subnet Mask	Enter subnet mask, if Address type is Subnet Mask.
Invert Selection	If selected, all addresses except the ones entered above will be used.

To save changes on the page, click **OK**. To discard changes, click **Cancel**. To blank out all settings in the current IP object, click **Clear**.



VIII-1-2 IP Group

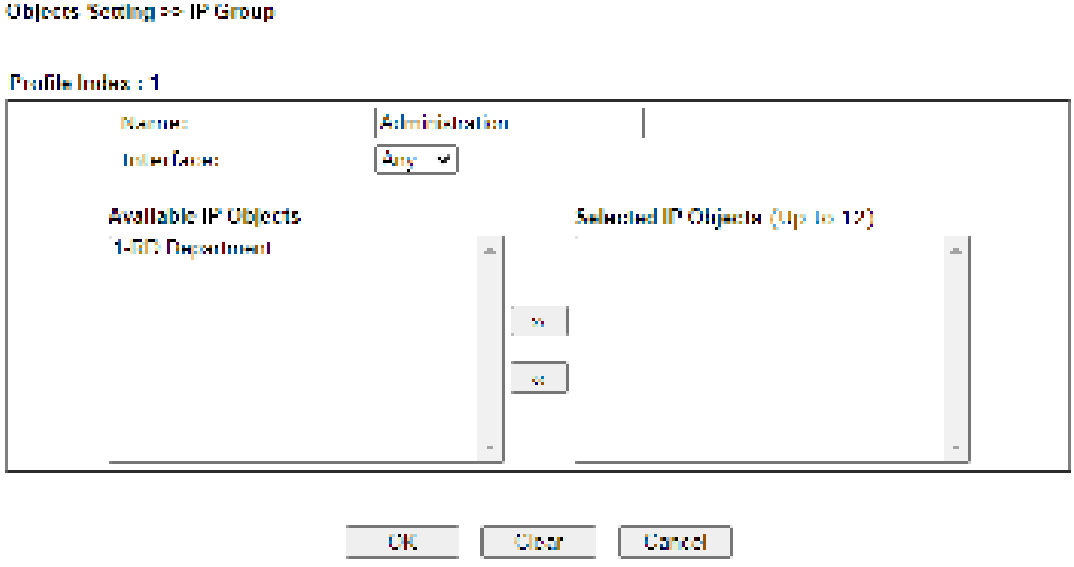
Multiple IP Objects can be placed into an IP Group.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profile settings.
Index	Index number of the profile.
Name	Name that identifies the profile.
Objects Backup/Restore	Click it to backup or restore the IP group object.

To set up a profile, click its index to bring up the configuration page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

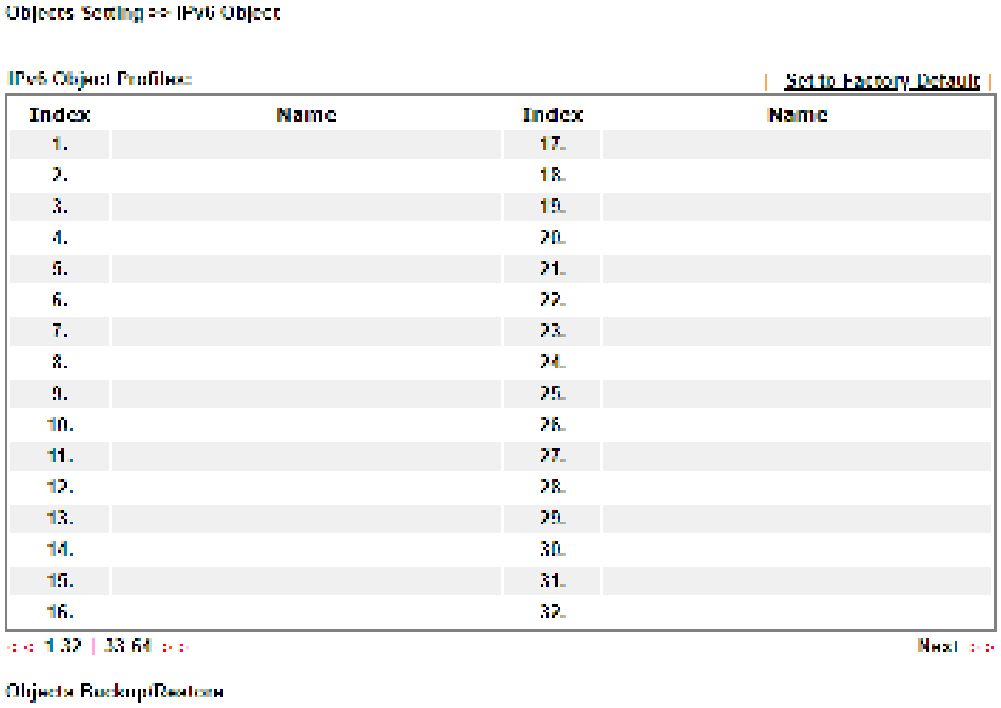
Item	Description
Name	Name that identifies this profile. Maximum length is 15 characters.
Interface	Select WAN, LAN or Any to filter IP objects.
Available IP Objects	All available IP objects that are associated with the selected interface.
Selected IP Objects	IP objects that have been added to this profile.

To add an IP object to the IP Group, select it under Available IP Objects, then click the **>>** button. To remove an IP object from the IP Group, select it under Selected IP Objects, then click the **<<** button.

To save changes on the page, click **OK**. To discard changes, click **Cancel**. To blank out all settings in the current IP group, click **Clear**.

VIII-1-3 IPv6 Object

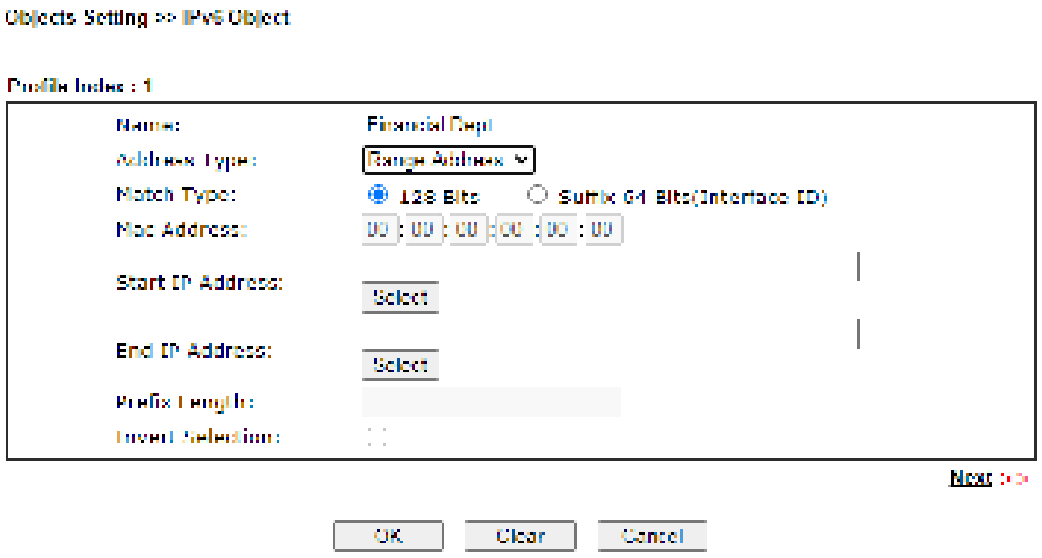
Up to 64 IPv6 Objects can be created.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profile settings.
Index	Index number of the profile.
Name	Name that identifies the profile.
Objects Backup/Restore	Click it to backup or restore the IPv6 object.

To set up a profile, click the profile number under Index column to bring up the configuration page.



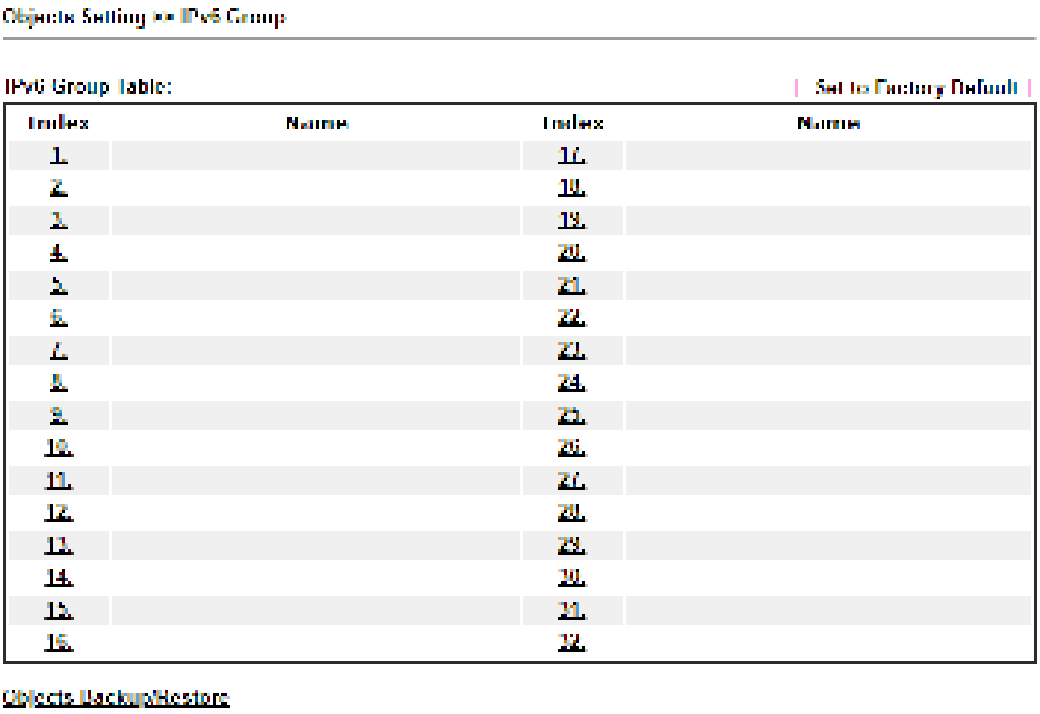
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Name	Name that identifies this profile. Maximum length is 15 characters.
Address Type	Type of Addresses. **Any Address** - Object covers all IPv6 addresses. **Single Address** - Object covers one IPv6 address. **Range Address** - Object covers a range of IPv6 addresses. **Subnet Address** - Object covers a range of IPv6 addresses specified in subnet notation. **Mac Address** - Object contains a MAC address.
Match Type	Specify the match type (128 Bits or Suffix 64 Bits) for the IPv6 address.
Mac Address	Enter MAC address of the network device, if Address Type is Mac Address.
Start IP Address	Enter beginning IP address, if Address Type is one of Single Address, Range Address and Subnet Address.
End IP Address	Enter ending IP address, if Address type is one of Single Address, Range Address and Subnet Address.
Prefix Length	Enter IPv6 prefix length, if Address type is Subnet Address.
Invert Selection	If selected, all addresses except the ones entered above will be used.

To save changes on the page, click **OK**. To discard changes, click **Cancel**. To blank out all settings in the IPv6 object, click **Clear**.

VIII-1-4 IPv6 Group

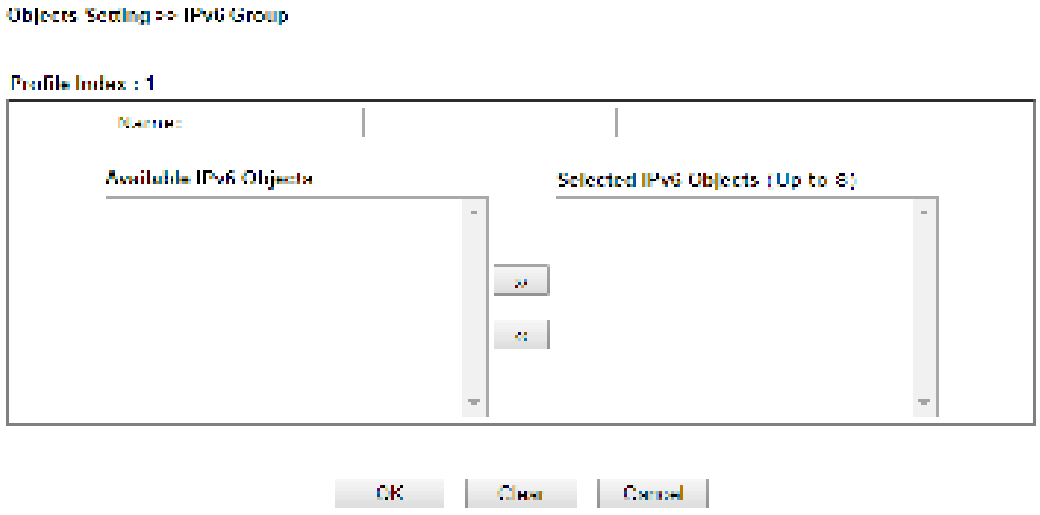
Multiple **IPv6 Objects** can be placed into an **IPv6 Group**.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profile settings.
Index	Index number of the profile.
Name	Name that identifies the profile.
Objects Backup/Restore	Click it to backup or restore the IPv6 group.

To set up a profile, click the profile number under Index column to bring up the configuration page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

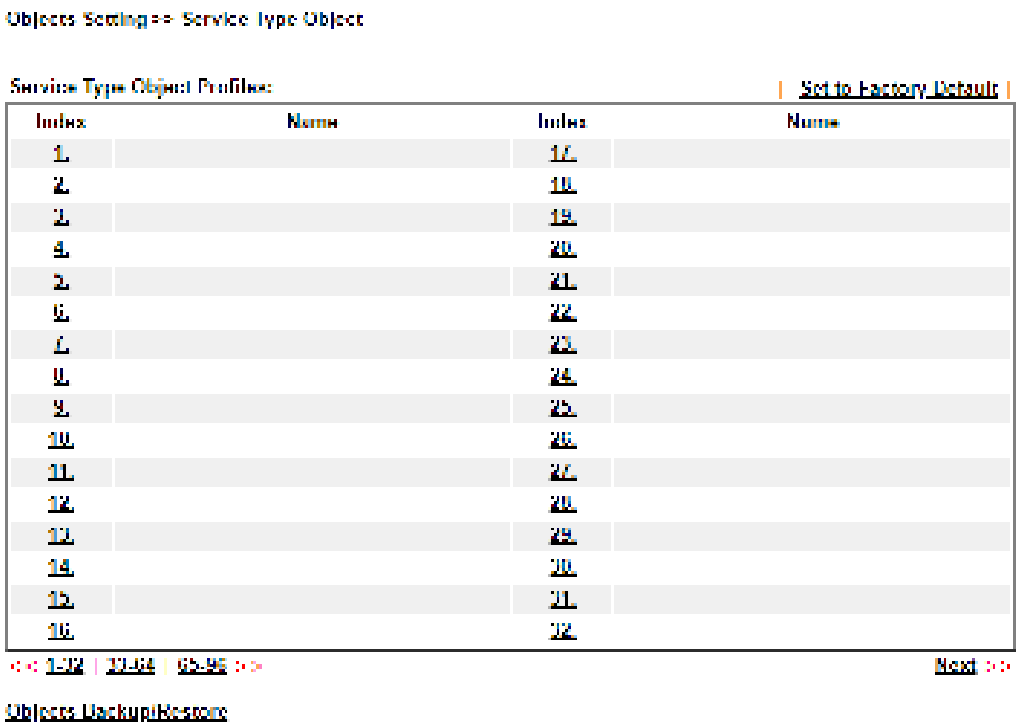
Item	Description
Name	Name that identifies this profile. Maximum length is 15 characters.
Available IPv6 Objects	All available IP objects that are associated with the selected interface.
Selected IPv6 Objects	IPv6 objects that have been added to this profile.

To add an IPv6 object to the IPv6 Group, select it under Available IPv6 Objects, then click the >> button. To remove an IPv6 object from the IPv6 Group, select it under Selected IPv6 Objects, then click the << button.

To save changes on the page, click **OK**. To discard changes, click **Cancel**. To blank out all settings in the current IPv6 group, click **Clear**.

VIII-1-5 Service Type Object

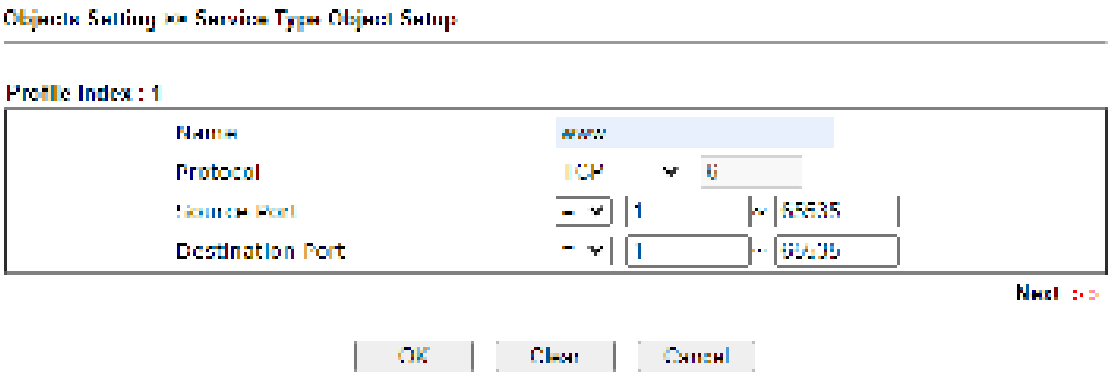
Up to 96 Service Type Objects can be created.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profile settings.
Index	Index number of the profile.
Name	Name that identifies the profile.
Objects Backup/Restore	Click it to backup or restore the service type object.

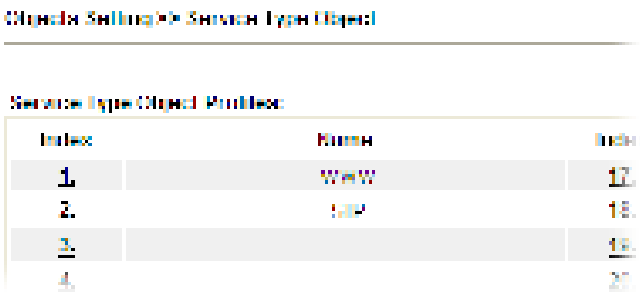
To set up a profile, click the profile number under Index column to bring up the configuration page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

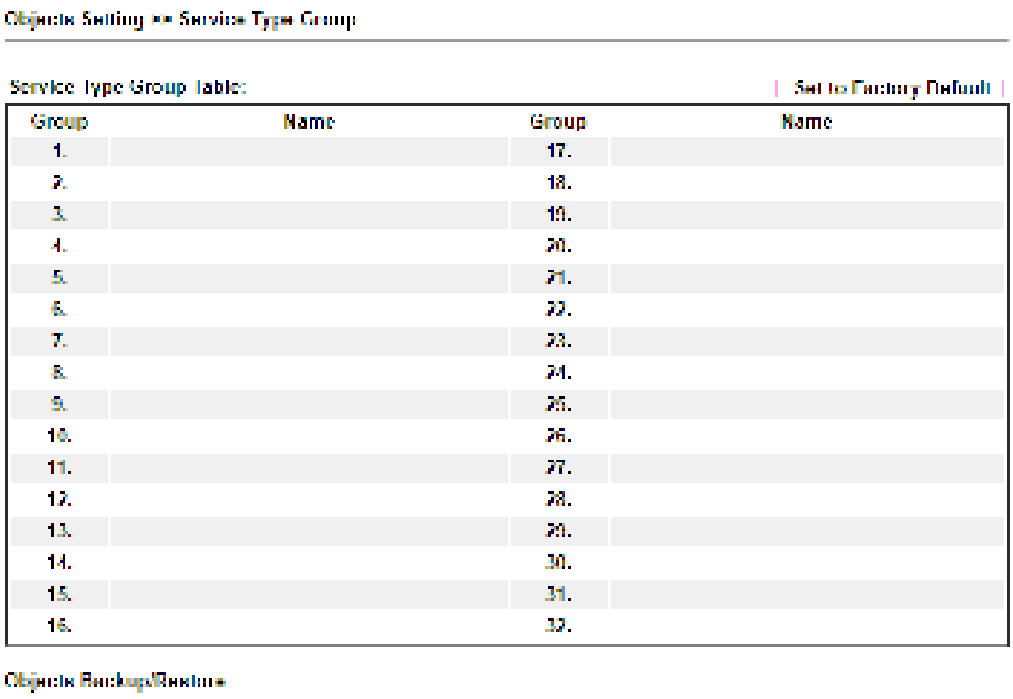
Item	Description
Name	Name that identifies this profile. Maximum length is 15 characters.
Protocol	Protocol(s) to which this profile applies. **Any** - All protocols. **ICMP** - Internet Control Message Protocol **IGMP** - Internet Group Management Protocol **TCP** - Transmission Control Protocol **UDP** - User Datagram Protocol **TCP/UDP** - Transmission Control Protocol and User Datagram Protocol **Other** - Other protocols not listed above. Enter protocol number in the textbox.
Source/Destination Port	When protocol selected includes TCP or UDP, the source and destination ports can be specified. = - any port that falls within the specified range. != - any port that falls outside of the specified range. - all port numbers that are greater than the specified value. < - all port numbers that are smaller than the specified value.

To save changes on the page, click **OK**. To discard changes, click **Cancel**. To blank out all settings in the current service type object, click **Clear**.



VIII-1-6 Service Type Group

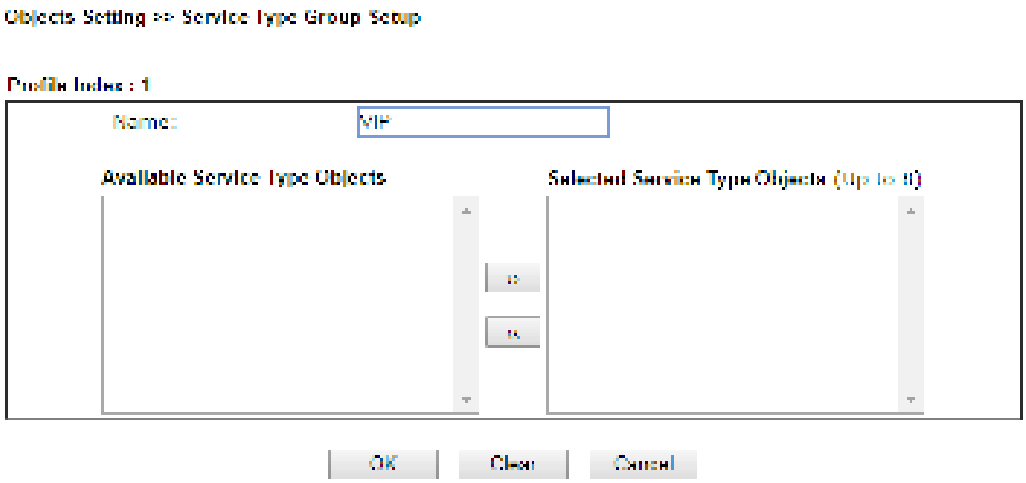
Multiple **Service Type Objects** can be placed into a **Service Type Group**.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profile settings.
Index	Index number of the profile.
Name	Name that identifies the profile.
Objects Backup/Restore	Click it to backup or restore the service type group object.

To set up a profile, click the profile number under Index column to bring up the configuration page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

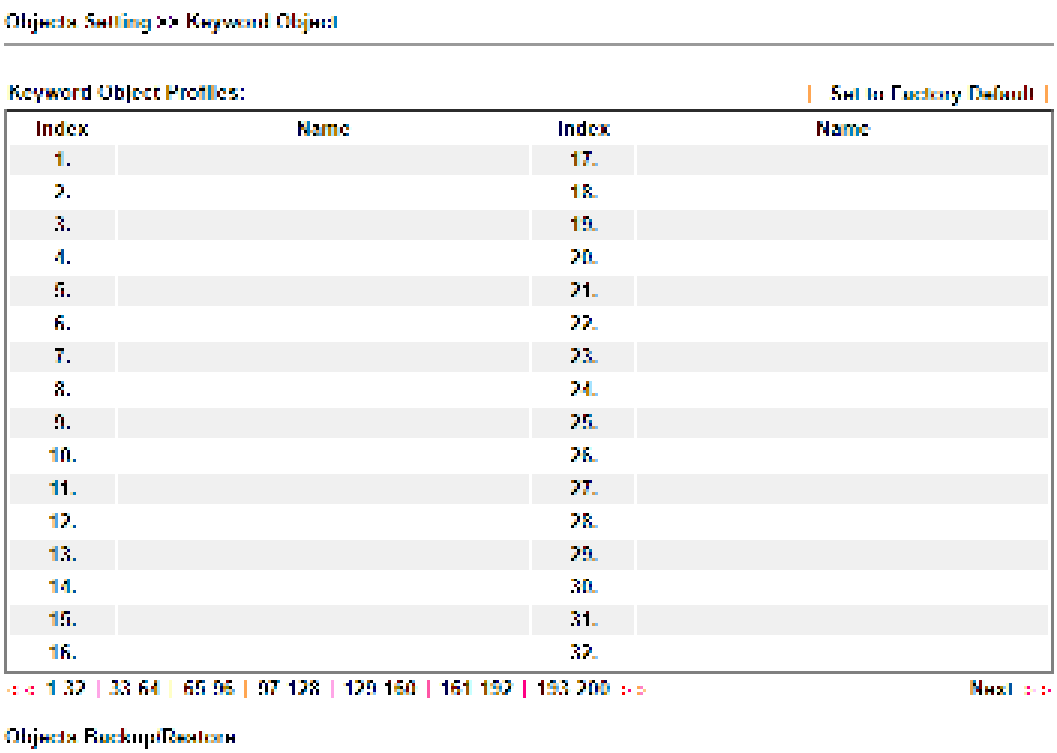
Item	Description
Name	Name that identifies this profile. Maximum length is 15 characters.
Available Service Type Objects	All available service type objects.
Selected Service Type Objects	Service type objects that have been added to this profile.

To add a Service Type Object to the Service Type Group, select it under **Available Service Type Objects**, then click the >> button. To remove a Service Type Object to the Service Type Group, select it under **Selected Service Type Objects**, then click the << button.

To save changes on the page, click **OK**. To discard changes, click **Cancel**. To blank out all settings in the current service type group, click **Clear**.

VIII-1-7 Keyword Object

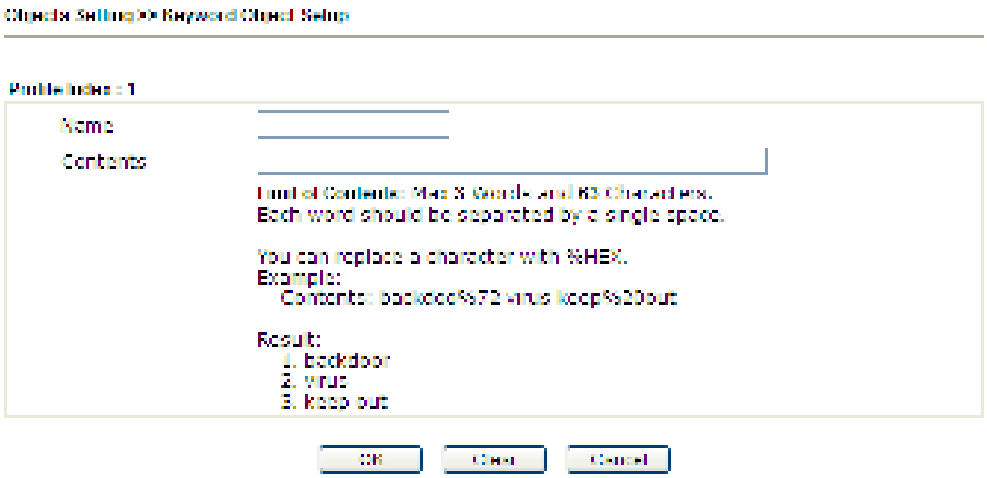
200 Keyword Object Profiles can be created for use as blacklists or white lists in **CSM >>URL Content Filter Profile** and **Web Content Filter Profile.**



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profile settings.
Index	Index number of the profile.
Name	Name that identifies the profile.
Objects Backup/Restore	Click it to backup or restore the keyword object.

To set up a profile, click its index to bring up the configuration page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

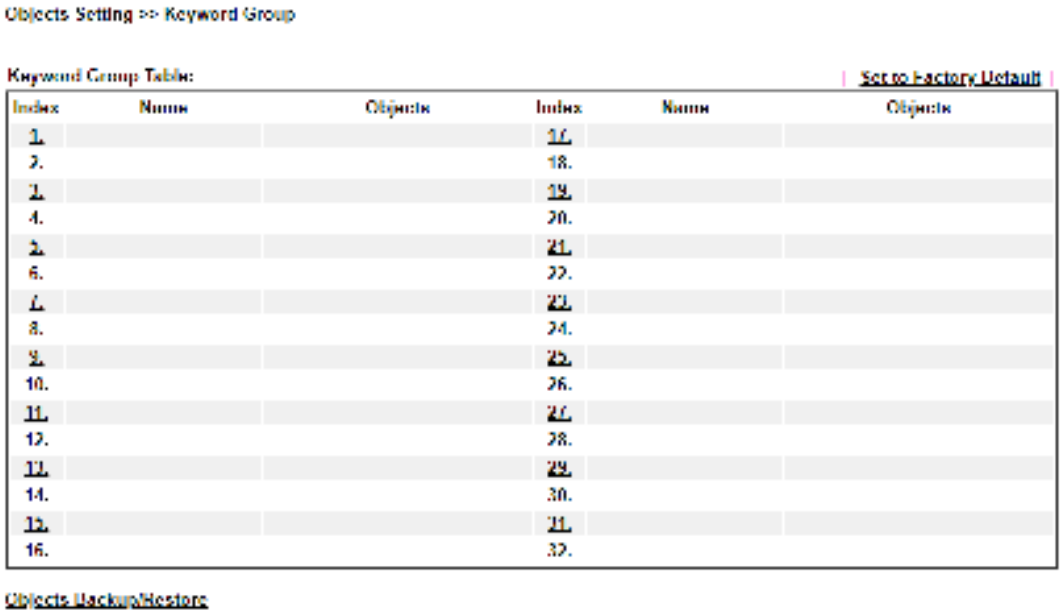
Item	Description
Name	Name that identifies this profile. Maximum length is 15 characters.
Contents	Keywords to be matched. Up to 3 key phrases, separated by spaces, for a total length of 63 characters can be entered. For key phrases that contain spaces, replace spaces with the sequence %20. For example, the phrase “keep out” is to be entered as “keep%20out”.

To save changes on the page, click **OK**. To discard changes, click **Cancel**. To blank out all settings in the current keyword object, click **Clear**.

VIII-1-8 Keyword Group

Multiple Keyword Objects can be placed into a Keyword Group.

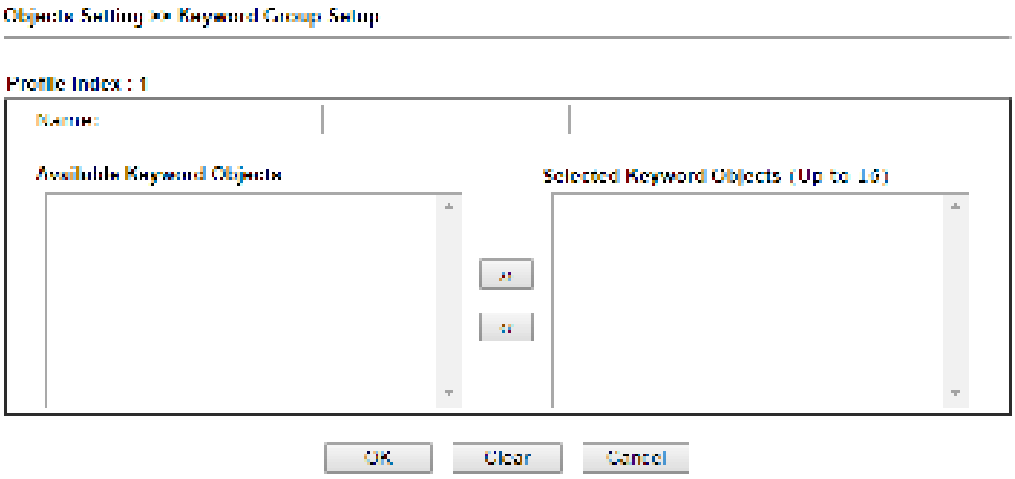
Keyword groups can be chosen as blacklists or white lists in **CSM >>URL /Web Content Filter Profile**.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profile settings.
Index	Index number of the profile.
Name	Name that identifies the profile.
Objects	Display the keyword objects under this group.
Objects Backup/Restore	Click it to backup or restore the keyword group.

To set up a profile, click its index to bring up the configuration page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

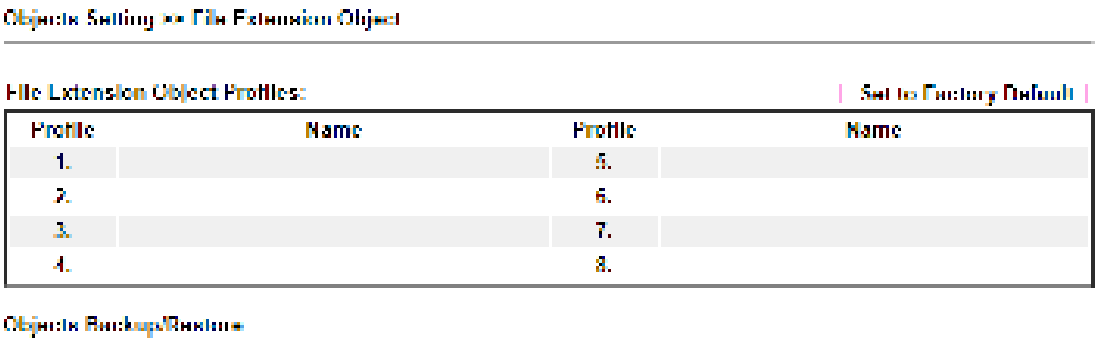
Item	Description
Name	Name that identifies this profile. Maximum length is 15 characters.
Available Keyword Objects	All keyword objects that have not been added to this profile.
Selected Keyword Objects	Keyword objects that have been added to this profile.

To add a Service Type Object to the Service Type Group, select it under **Available Service Type Objects**, then click the >> button. To remove a Service Type Object to the Service Type Group, select it under **Selected Service Type Objects**, then click the << button.

To save changes on the page, click **OK**. To discard changes, click **Cancel**. To blank out all settings in the current keyword group, click **Clear**.

VIII-1-9 File Extension Object

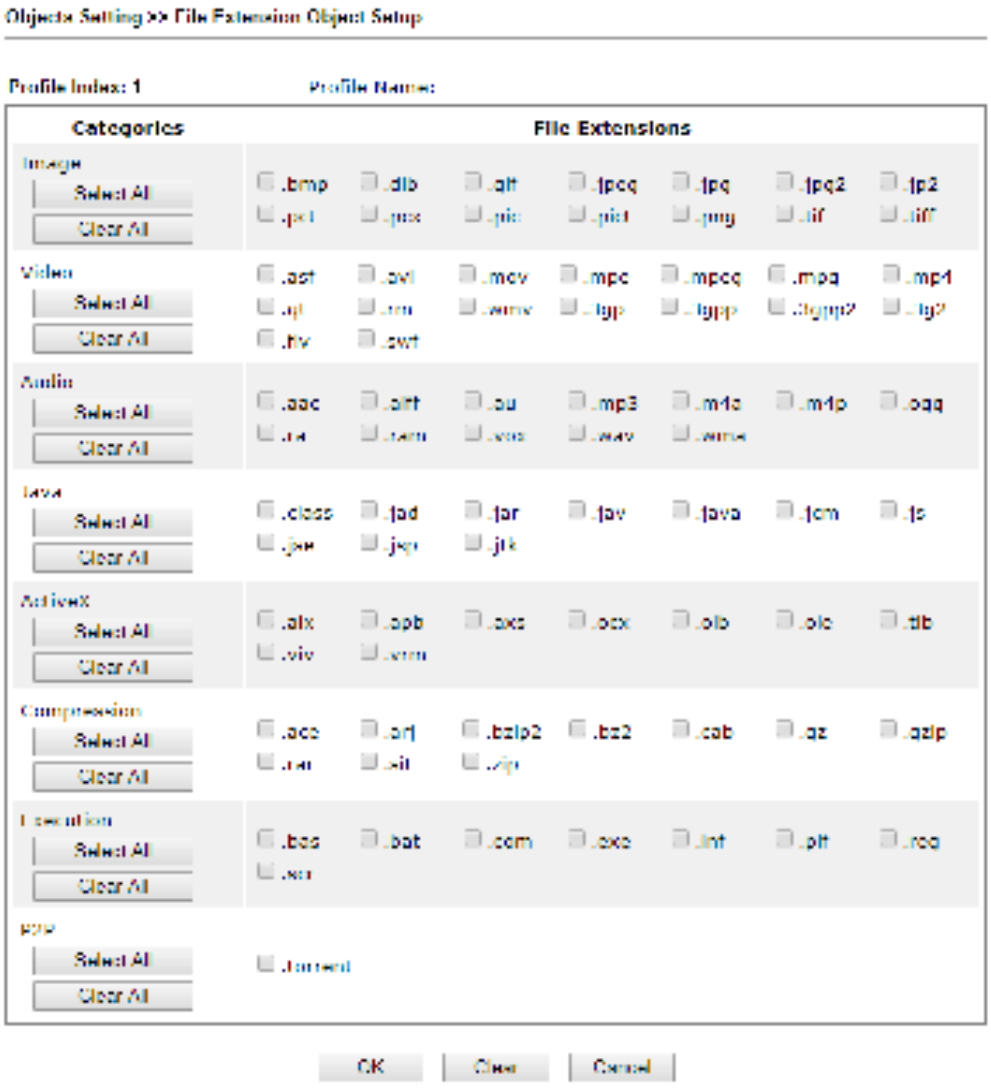
Up to 8 File Extension Objects can be set up for use with **CSM>>URL Content Filter**.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profile settings.
Index	Index number of the profile.
Name	Name that identifies the profile.
Objects Backup/Restore	Click it to backup or restore the file extension object.

To set up a profile, click its index to bring up the configuration page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

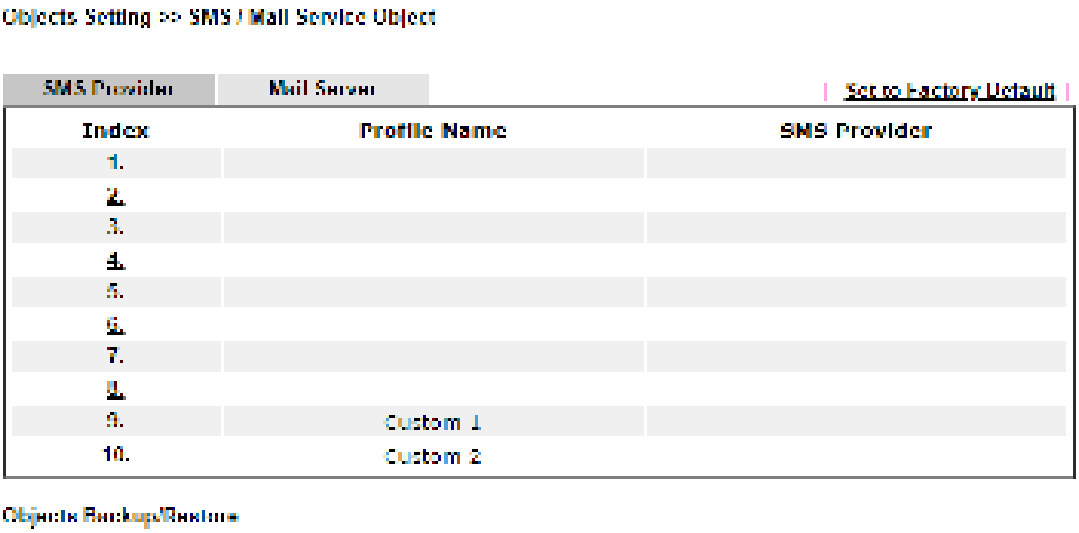
Item	Description
Profile Name	Name that identifies this profile. Maximum length is 7 characters.
Select All	Selects all file extensions for the category.
Clear All	Deselects all file extensions for the category.

Select the file extensions you wish to be included in the profile. To save changes on the page, click **OK**. To discard changes, click **Cancel**. To blank out all settings in the current file extension object, click **Clear**.

VIII-1-10 SMS/Mail Service Object

SMS Service Object

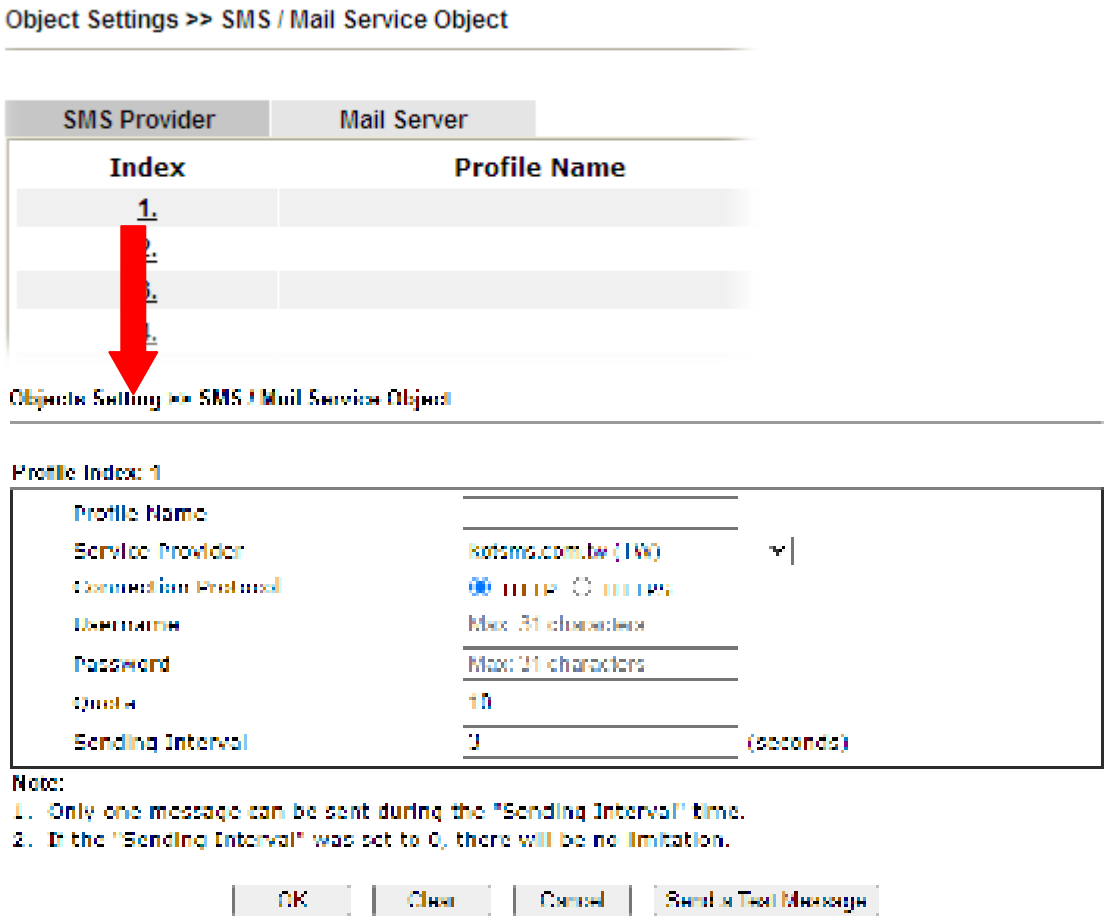
Up to 10 SMS Service Objects can be set up for use with **Application>>SMS Alert Service**.



Each item is explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profile settings.
Index	Index number of the profile.
Profile Name	Name that identifies the profile.
SMS Provider	The SMS provider selected for the profile.
Objects Backup/Restore	Click it to backup or restore the service object.

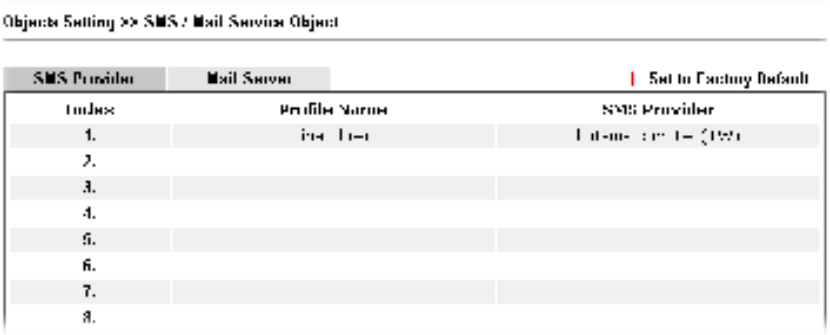
To set up a profile, click the **SMS Provider** tab, and then click its index to bring up the configuration page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

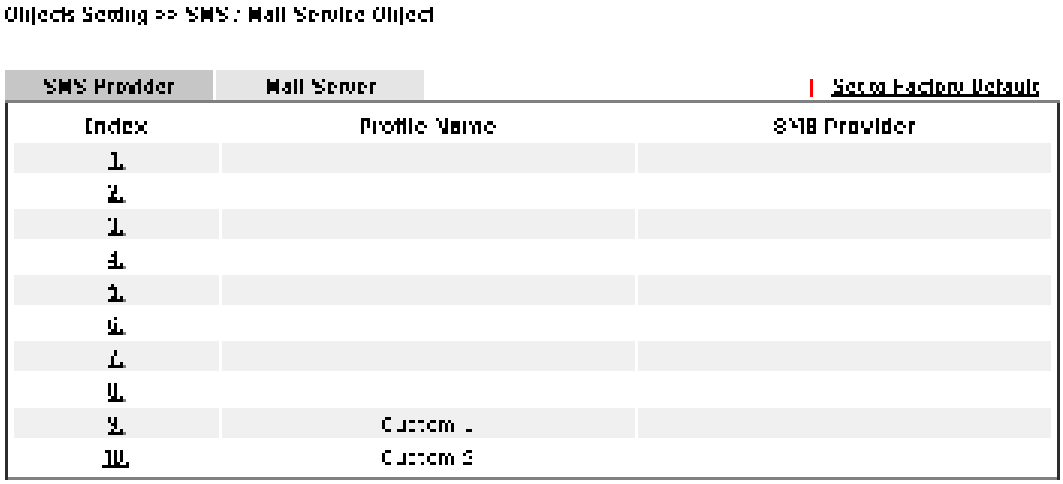
Item	Description
Profile Name	Name that identifies this profile. Maximum length is 31 characters.
Service Provider	Select a Service Provider from the dropdown list.
Connection Protocol	Specify HTTP or HTTPS.
Username	Username used to log in to the service. Maximum length is 31 characters.
Password	Password used to log in to the service. Maximum length is 31 characters.
Quota	Remaining number of text messages allowed to be sent. The quota value reduces by 1 every time the router sends an SMS message. When the quota reaches 0, no SMS will be sent until it is reset to greater than 0.
Sending Interval	Minimum amount of time, in seconds, to wait between sending SMS messages.
Send a Test Message	Click it to send a test e-mail according to above configuration.

To save changes on the page, click **OK**. To discard changes, click **Cancel**. To blank out all settings in the SMS service object, click **Clear**.

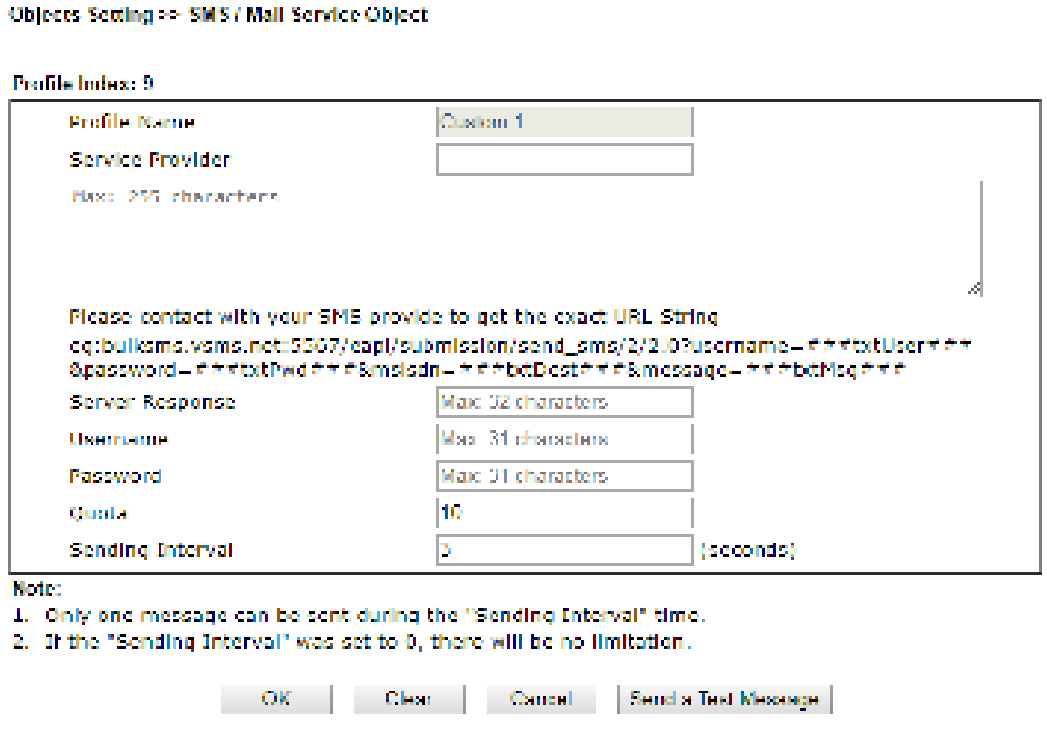


Customized SMS Service

The router offers an extensive list of preset SMS service providers for your convenience. However, if your service provider is not among the list of supported service providers, simply use Indexes 9 and 10 to create a customized SMS service profile.



To set up a customized profile, click the SMS Provider tab, and then click one of the 2 indexes (9 and 10) to bring up the configuration page.



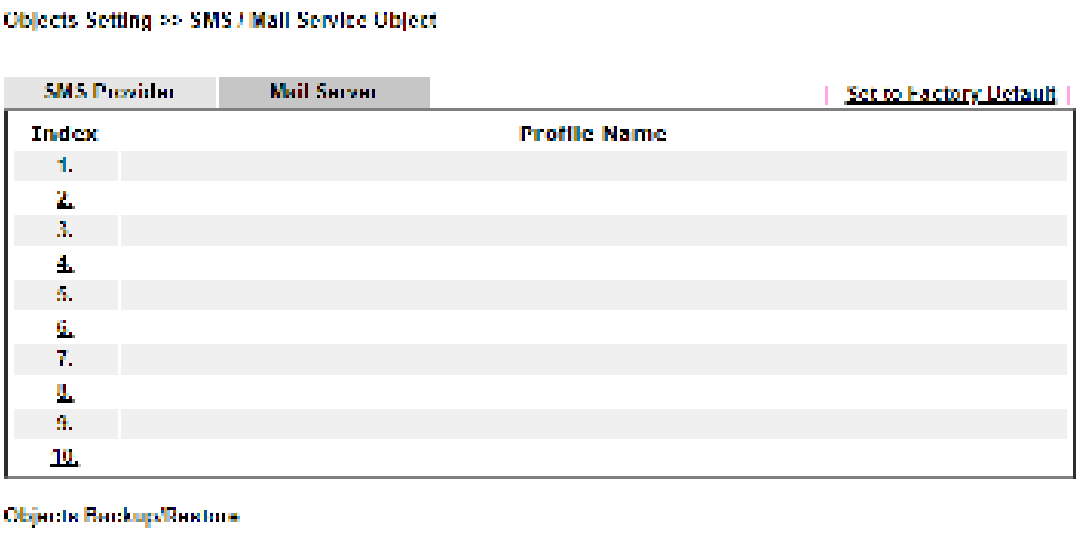
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Name	Display-only profile name, which is Custom 1 for Index 9 and Custom 2 for Index 10.
Service Provider	Enter an identifier for the service provider. Maximum length is 23 characters.
Entry box	Enter the URL for the SMS service. Maximum length is 255 characters. Contact the service provider for the appropriate URL to use.
Server Response	Enter the API text defined by the SMS provider. It allows Vigor router to acknowledge that the SMS server has received the request coming from the SMS server.
Username	Username used to log in to the service. Maximum length is 31 characters.
Password	Password used to log in to the service. Maximum length is 31 characters.
Quota	Remaining number of text messages allowed to be sent. The quota value reduces by 1 every time the router sends an SMS message. When the quota reaches 0, no SMS will be sent until it is reset to greater than 0.
Sending Interval	Minimum amount of time, in seconds, to wait between sending SMS messages.

To save changes on the page, click **OK**. To discard changes, click **Cancel**. To blank out all settings in the SMS service object, click **Clear**.

Mail Service Object

Up to 10 **Mail Service Objects** can be set up for use with Application>>Mail Alert Service.

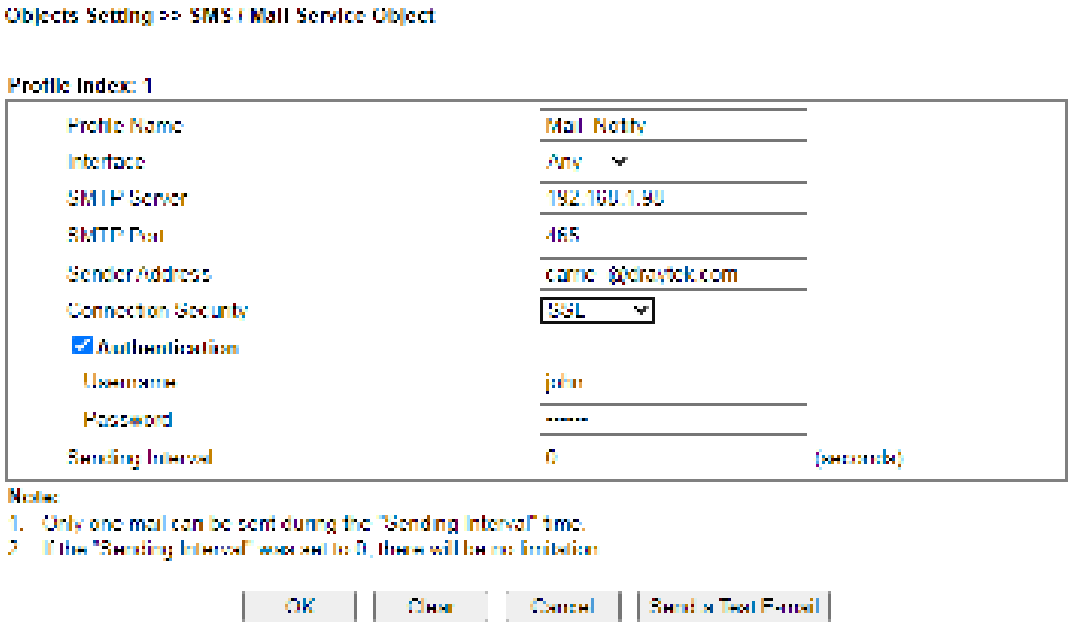


Each item is explained as follows:

Item	Description
Set to Factory Default	Clear all profile settings.
Index	Index number of the profile.

Profile Name	Name that identifies the profile.
Objects Backup/Restore	Click it to backup or restore the service object.

To set up a profile, click the Mail Server tab, and then click its index to bring up the configuration page.



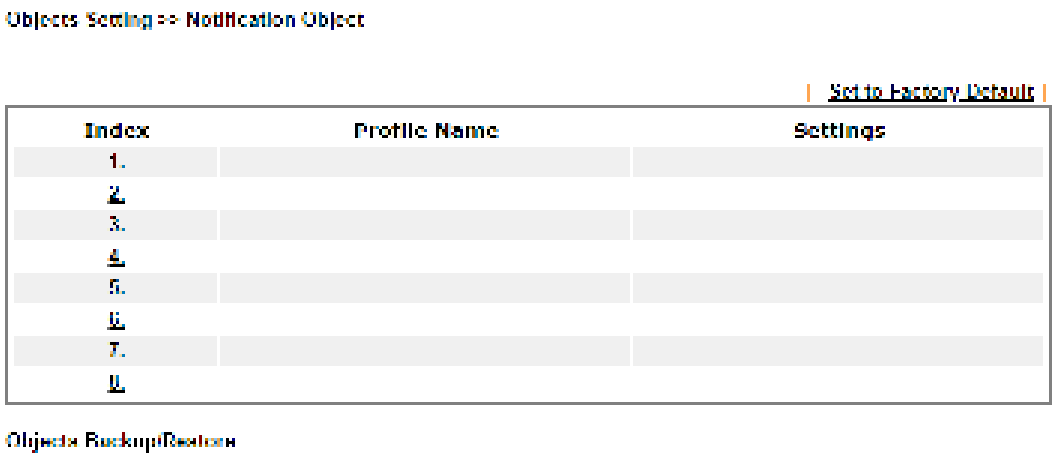
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Profile Name	Name that identifies this profile. Maximum length is 31 characters.
Interface	Select an interface for mail passing through.
SMTP Server	IP address of the SMTP server.
SMTP Port	Port number of the SMTP server.
Sender Address	E-mail address of the sender.
Connection Security	Use Plaintext, StartTLS or SSL to communicate with the SMTP server.
Authentication	Select to send username and password to SMTP server for authentication. **Username** – Username for authentication. Maximum length is 31 characters. **Password** – Password for authentication. Maximum length is 31 characters.
Sending Interval	Minimum amount of time, in seconds, to wait between sending e-mail messages.
Send a Test E-mail	Click it to send a test e-mail according to above configuration.

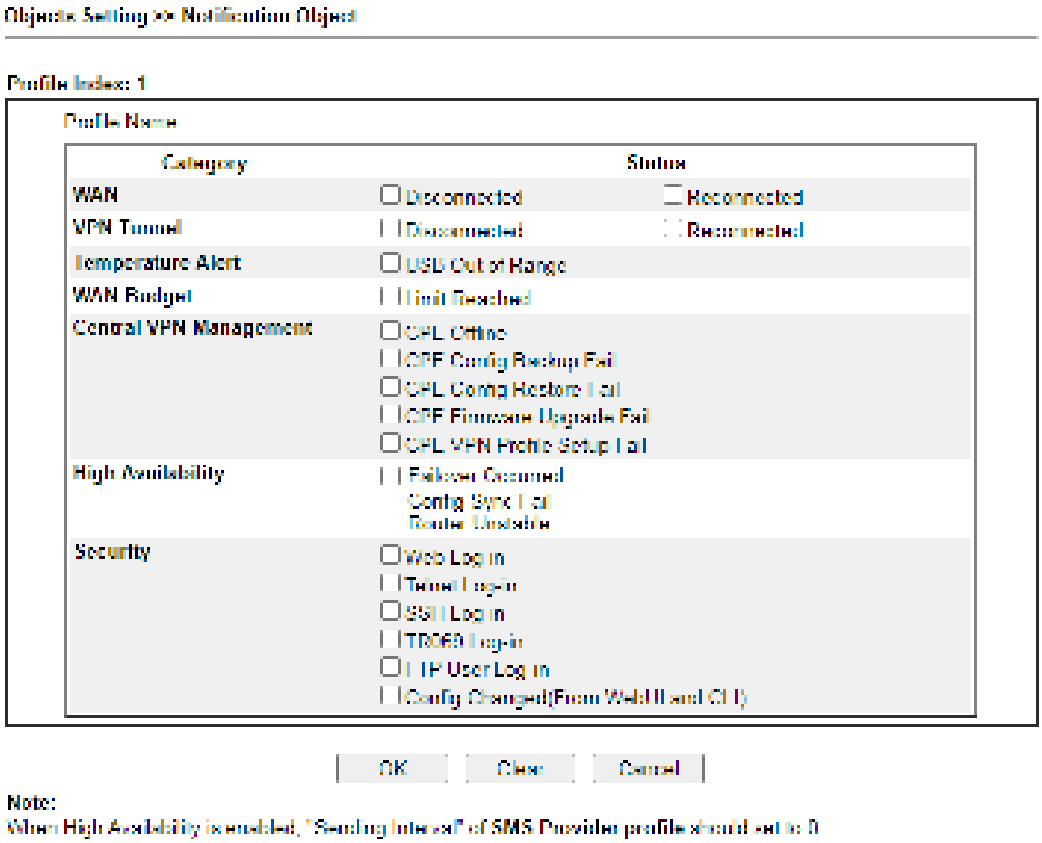
To save changes on the page, click **OK**. To discard changes, click **Cancel**. To blank out all settings in the mail service object, click **Clear**.

VIII-1-11 Notification Object

Up to 8 Notification Objects can be set up for use in **Application>>SMS Alert Service** and **Application>>Mail Alert Service**.



To set up a profile, click its index to bring up the configuration page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

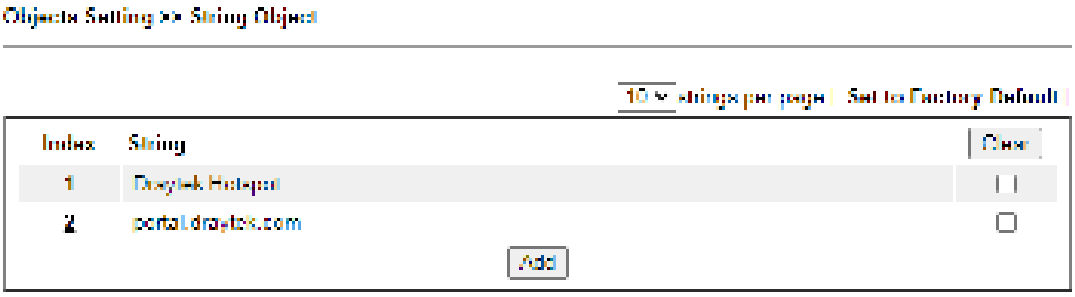
Item	Description
Profile Name	Name that identifies this profile. Maximum length is 31 characters.

Category	Areas to be monitored.
Status	Select the states to be monitored. For example, the check box of **CPE firmware upgrade fail** under the category of **Central VPN Management** is checked. Once such profile is enabled, Vigor router system will send out notification to the recipient via SMS.

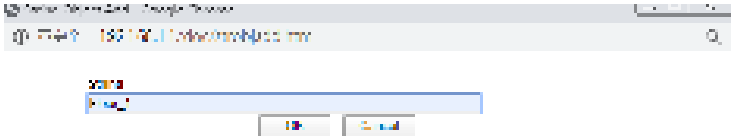
To save changes on the page, click OK. To discard changes, click Cancel. To blank out all settings in the notification object, click Clear.

VIII-1-12 String Object

This page allows you to set string profiles which will be applied in route policy (domain name selection for destination) and etc.



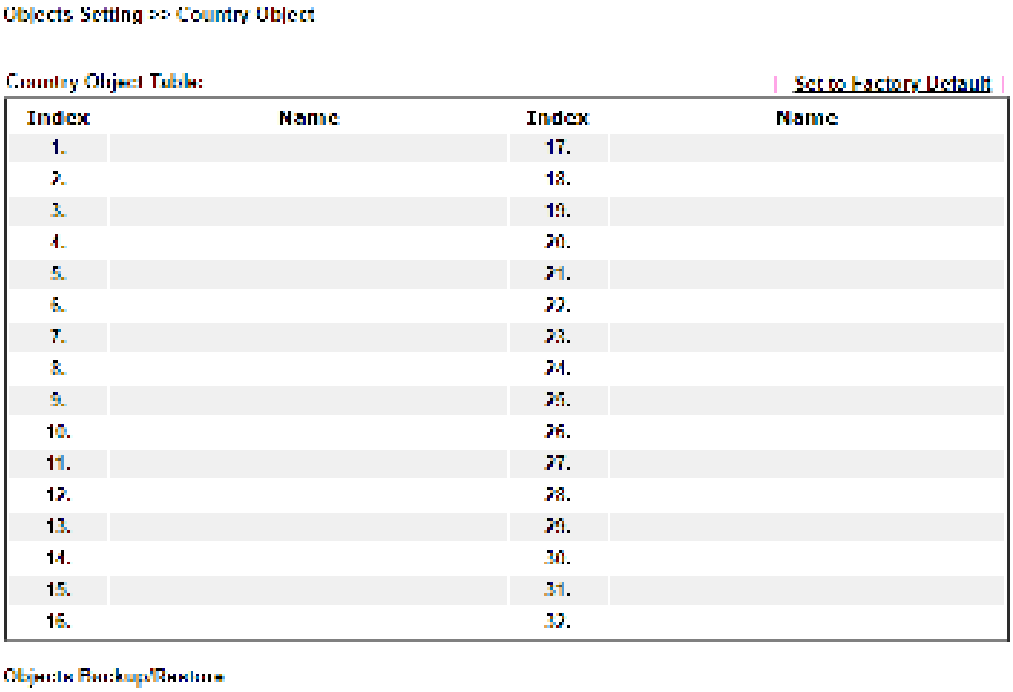
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Add	Click it to open the following page for adding a new string object. 
Set to Factory Default	Click it to clear all of the settings in this page.
Index	Display the number link of the string profile.
String	Display the string defined.
Clear	Choose the string that you want to remove. Then click this check box to delete the selected string.

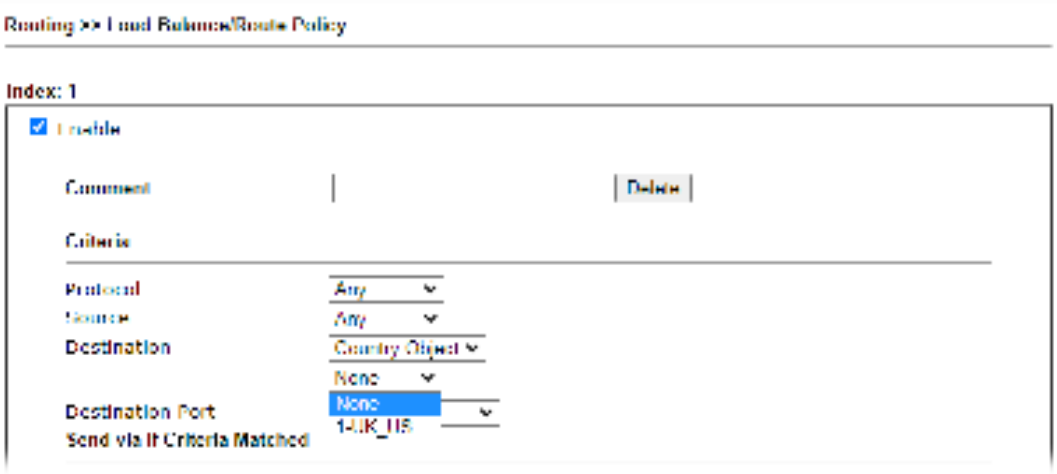
Below shows an example to apply string object (in route policy):

VIII-1-13 Country Object

The country object profile can determine which country/countries shall be blocked by the Vigor router's Firewall.



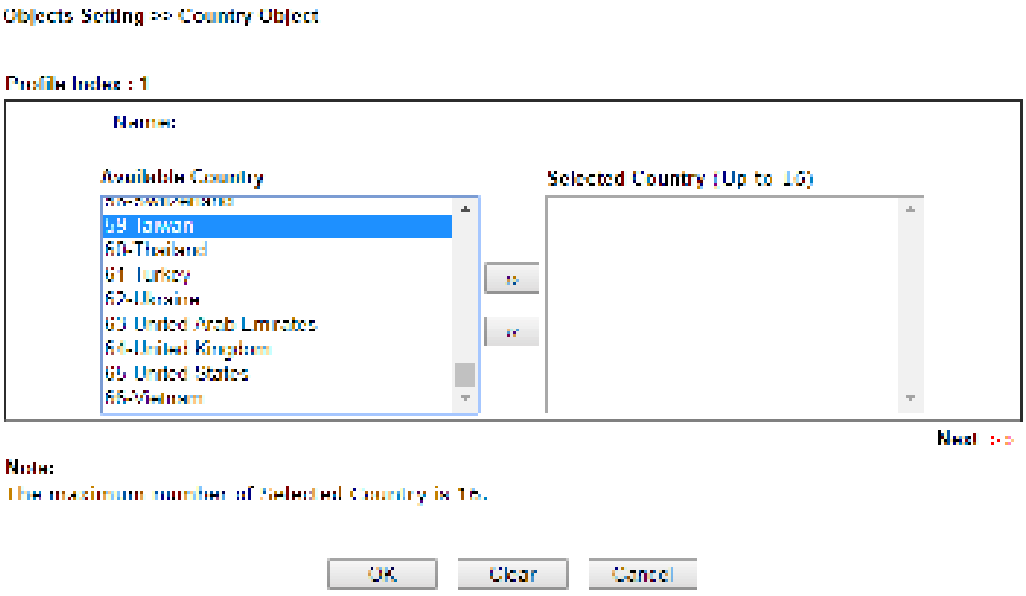
The country object, by grouping IP addresses for multiple countries, can be applied by other functions such as router policy destination (refer to the following figure for example).



To set a new profile, please do the steps listed below:

1. Open **Object Setting>>Country Object**, and click the number (e.g., #1) under Index column for configuration in details.

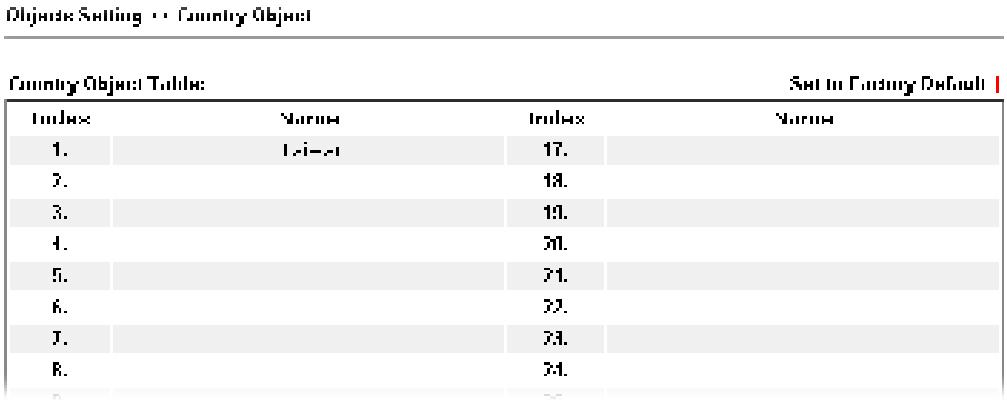
2. The configuration page will be shown as follows:



Available settings are explained as follows:

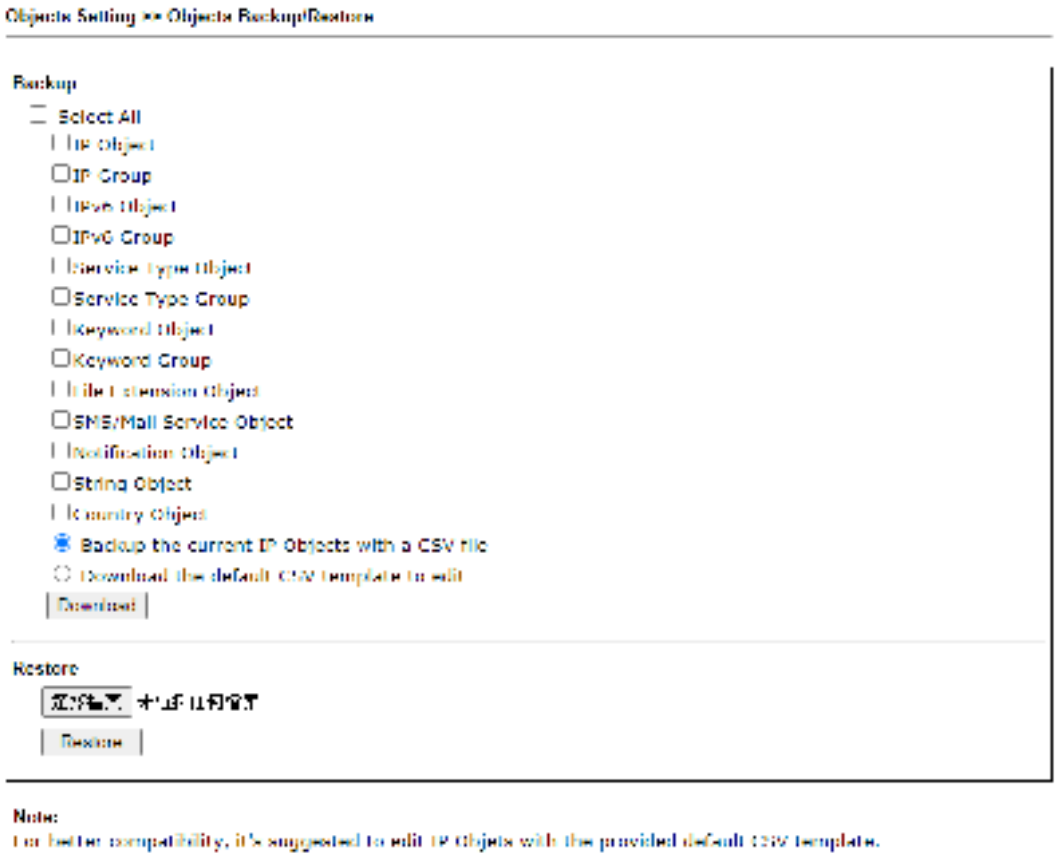
Item	Description
Name	Type a name for such profile. The maximum length of the name you can set is 15 characters.
Available Country / Selected Country	Select any country from Available Country. Click >> to move the selected country and place on Selected Country. Note that one country profile can contain 1 up to 16 countries.

3. After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to save the configuration.



VIII-1-14 Objects Backup/Restore

The objects settings can be backup as a file. The backup file can be imported to the device to restore the configuration in the future if required.



Available settings are explained as follows:

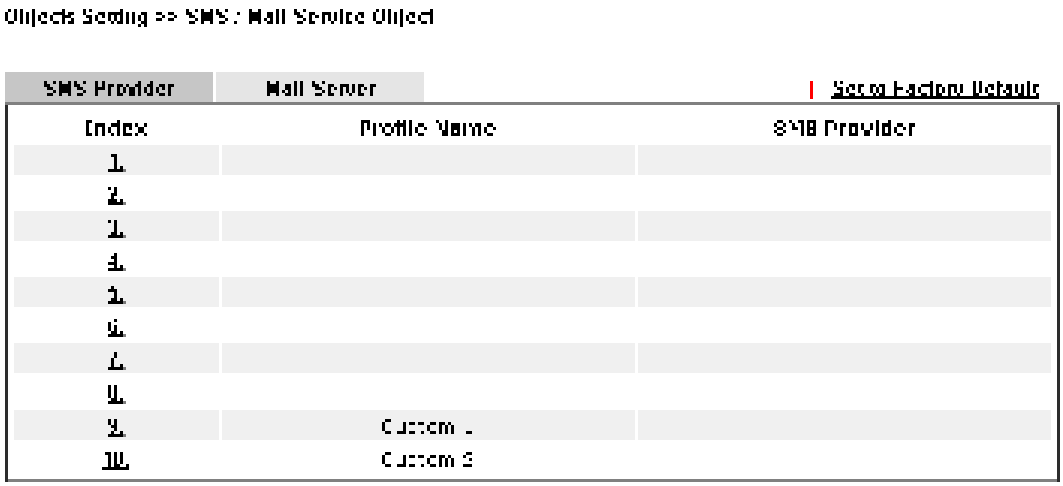
Item	Description
Backup	Usually, the objects can be created one by one through the web page under **Objects Settings**. However, to a user who wants to save more time in bulk creating various objects, a quick method is offered by Vigor router to modify the objects with a single file, a CSV file. All of the objects (or the template) can be exported as a file by clicking Download. Then the user can open the CSV file through Microsoft Excel and modify all the IP objects at the same time. **Backup the current IP Objects with a CSV file** – Click it to backup current IP objects as a CSV file. Such file can be restored for future use. **Download the default CSV template to edit** – After clicking it, press Download to store the default CSV template (a table without any input data) to your hard disk. **Download** – Download the CSV file from Vigor router and store in your hard disk.
Restore	**Select** – Click it to specify a predefined CSV file. **Restore** – Import the selected CSV file onto Vigor router.

Application Notes

A-1 How to Send a Notification to Specified Phone Number via SMS Service in WAN Disconnection

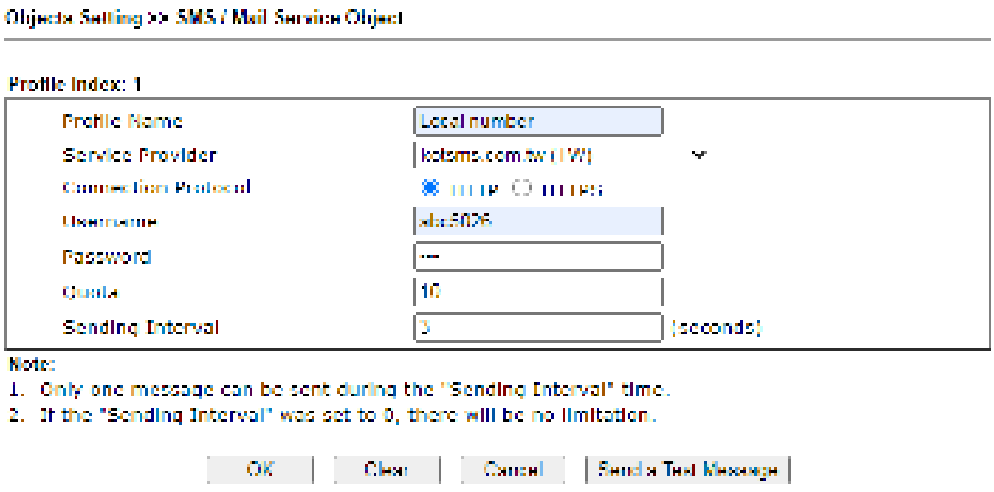
Follow the steps listed below:

1. Log into the web user interface of Vigor router.
2. Configure relational objects first. Open **Object Settings>>SMS/Mail Server Object** to get the following page.

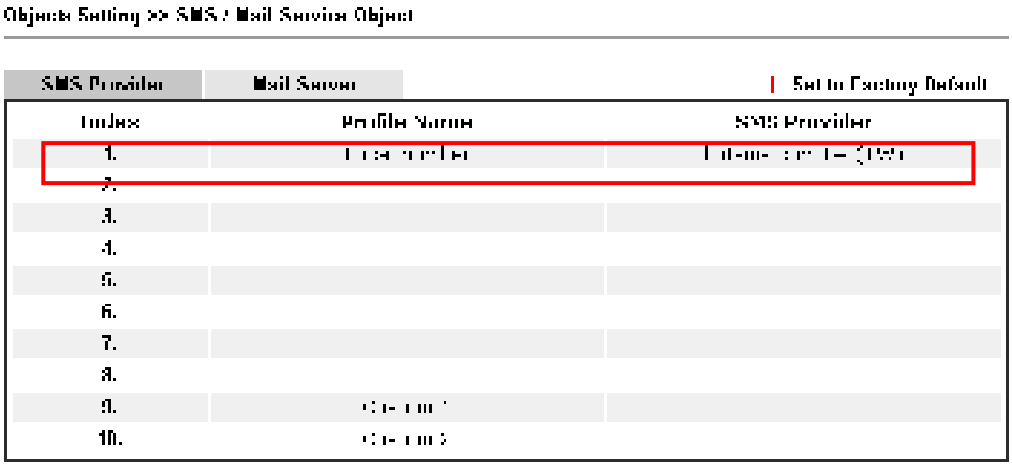


Index 1 to Index 8 allows you to choose the built-in SMS service provider. If the SMS service provider is not on the list, you can configure Index 9 and Index 10 to add the new service provider to Vigor router.

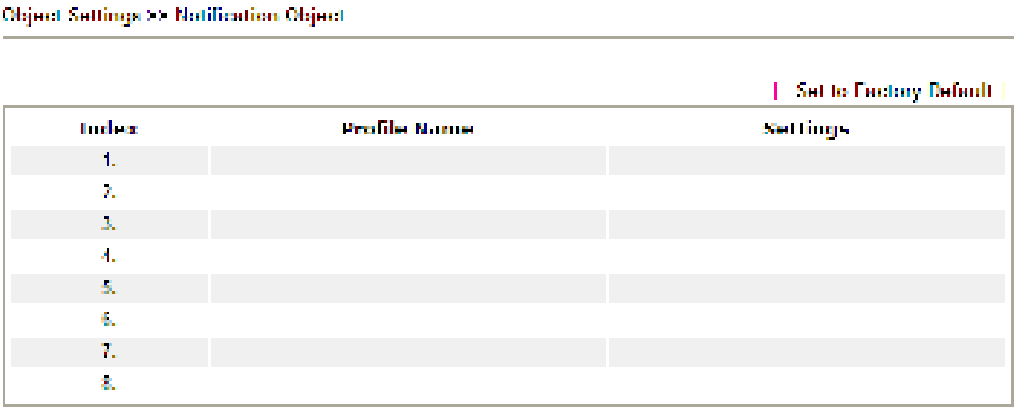
3. Choose any index number (e.g., Index 1 in this case) to configure the SMS Provider setting. In the following page, Enter the username and password and set the quota that the router can send the message out.



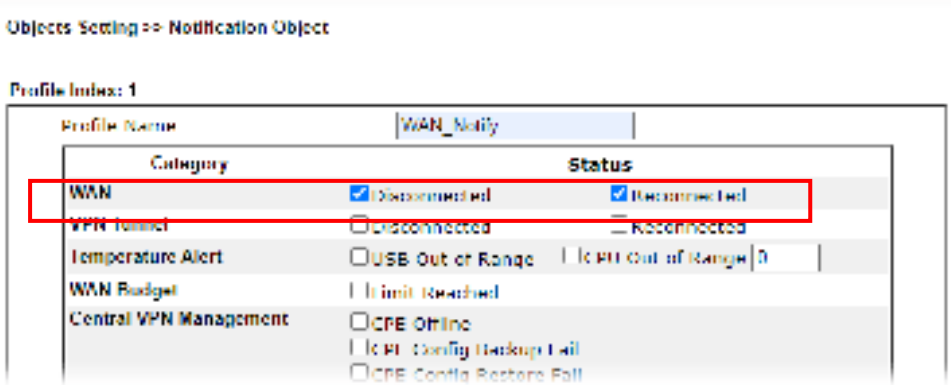
4. After finished the settings, click **OK** to return to previous page. Now you have finished the configuration of the SMS Provider profile setting.



5. Open **Object Settings>>Notification Object** to configure the event conditions of the notification.

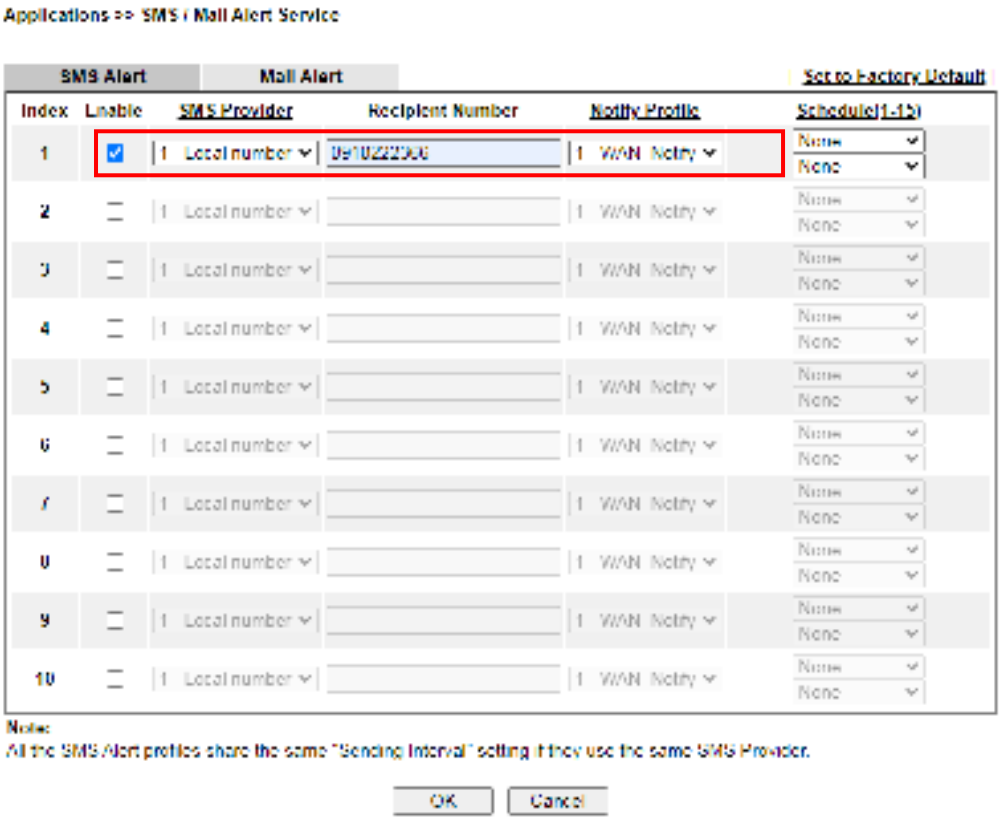


6. Choose any index number (e.g., Index 1 in this case) to configure conditions for sending the SMS. In the following page, Enter the name of the profile and check the Disconnected and Reconnected boxes for WAN to work in concert with the topic of this paper.



7. After finished the settings, click **OK** to return to previous page. You have finished the configuration of the notification object profile setting.

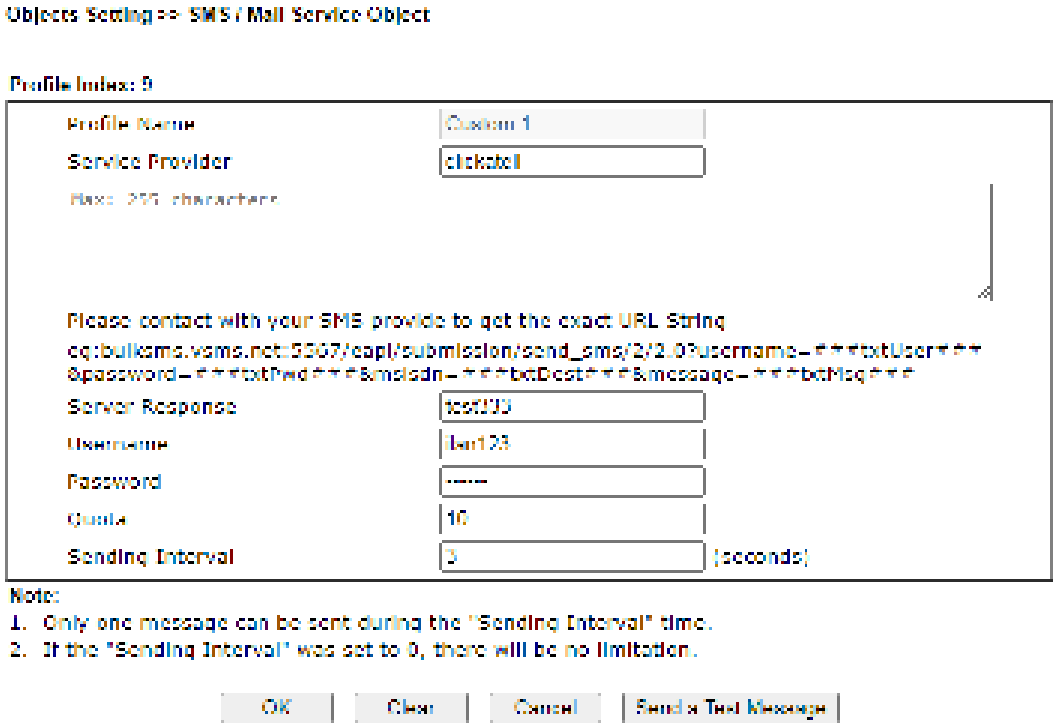
8. Now, open **Application >> SMS / Mail Alert Service**. Use the drop down list to choose SMS Provider and the Notify Profile (specify the time of sending SMS). Then, Enter the phone number in the field of Recipient Number (the one who will receive the SMS).



9. Click **OK** to save the settings. Later, if one of the WAN connections fails in your router, the system will send out SMS to the phone number specified. If the router has only one WAN interface, the system will send out SMS to the phone number while reconnecting the WAN interface successfully.

Remark: How the customize the SMS Provider

Choose one of the Index numbers (9 or 10) allowing you to customize the SMS Provider. In the web page, Enter the URL string of the SMS provider and Enter the username and password. After clicking **OK**, the new added SMS provider will be added and will be available for you to specify for sending SMS out.



VIII-2 USB Application

USB devices connected to the Vigor router can function as storage servers, WAN interfaces, network printers or thermometers.

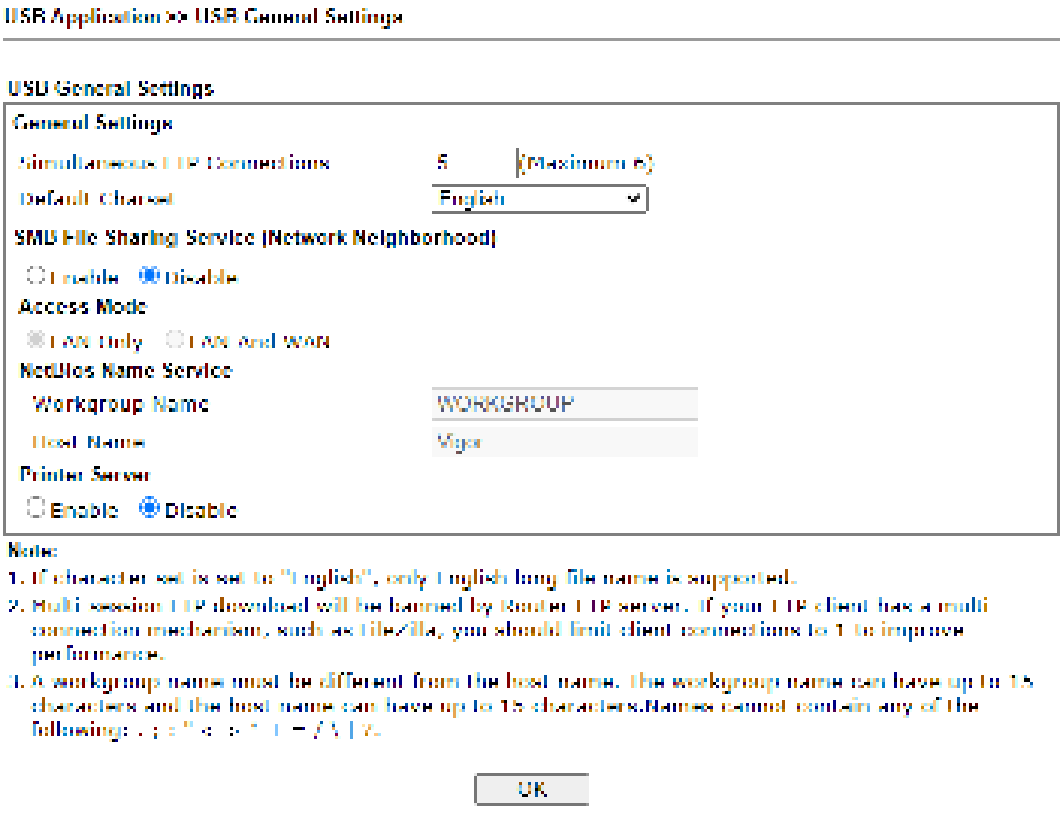
After setting the configuration in USB Application, a USB storage device can be accessed using either the FTP or SMB protocol from LAN clients with the IP address of the Vigor router and the username and password entered in **USB Application>>USB User Management**.

Info	USB modems that are supported by the router are listed in **USB Application>>Modem Support List**. For network connection via USB modem, refer to **WAN>>Internet Access** and **WAN>>General Setup** for detailed information.

Web User Interface

VIII-2-1 USB General Settings

This page allows you to configure the file sharing feature of the Vigor router, where USB mass storage devices such as thumb drives and hard drives can be made accessible to LAN clients. Currently, only FAT16 and FAT32 file systems are supported by the Vigor router, so verify that the USB drive contains these file systems. FAT32 is recommended because of its long filename support, which FAT16 lacks.



Available settings are explained as follows:

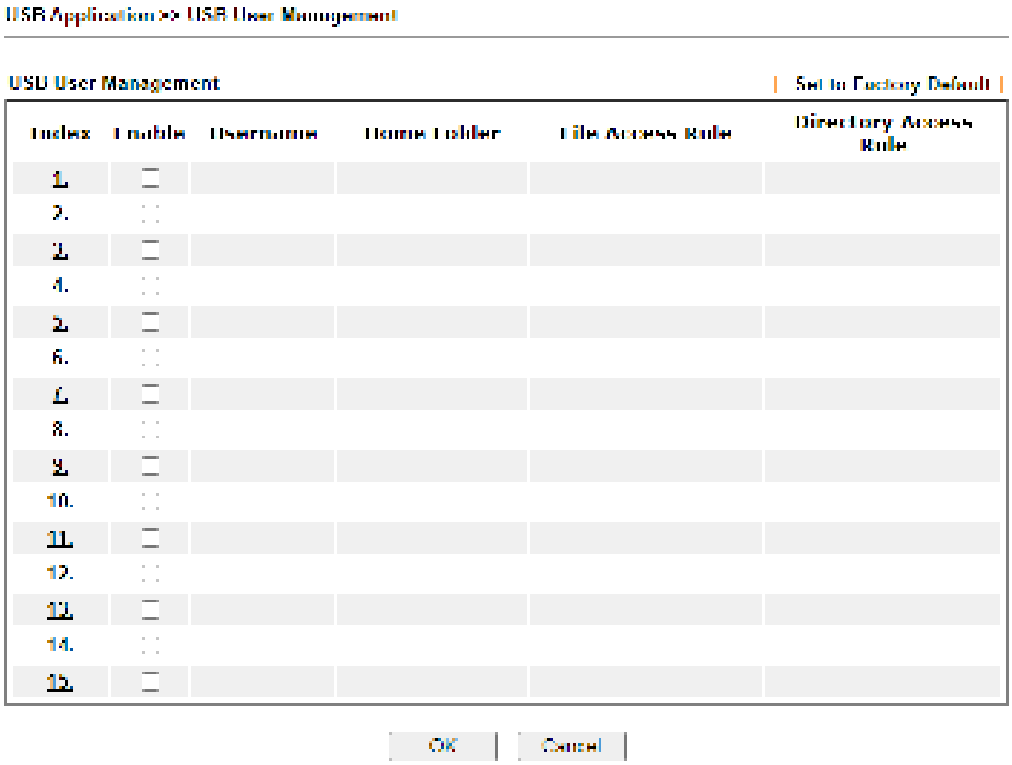
Item	Description
General Settings	**Simultaneous FTP Connections -** Enter the maximum number of simultaneous FTP sessions allowed. The router allows up to 6 simultaneous sessions. **Default Charset -** Select the character set for file and directory names. Currently, the Vigor router supports four

	character sets. The default charset is English.
SMB File Sharing Service	Click **Enable** to enable SMB service (file sharing).
Access Mode	**LAN Only** – Only users on the LAN can connect access the shared USB disk. **LAN And WAN** - Both LAN and WAN users can access SMB server of the router.
NetBios Name Service	For SMB file sharing service, you need to specify a workgroup name and a host name. The two names cannot be identical, and neither can contain any of the following characters: ; : " < > * + = \ | ? **Workgroup Name** – Enter the workgroup name. Maximum allowed length is 15 characters. **Host Name** – Enter the NetBIOS hostname for the router. Maximum allowed length is 23 characters.
Printer Server	**Enable** – Select to allow the Vigor router to act as a print server for printers connected the USB.

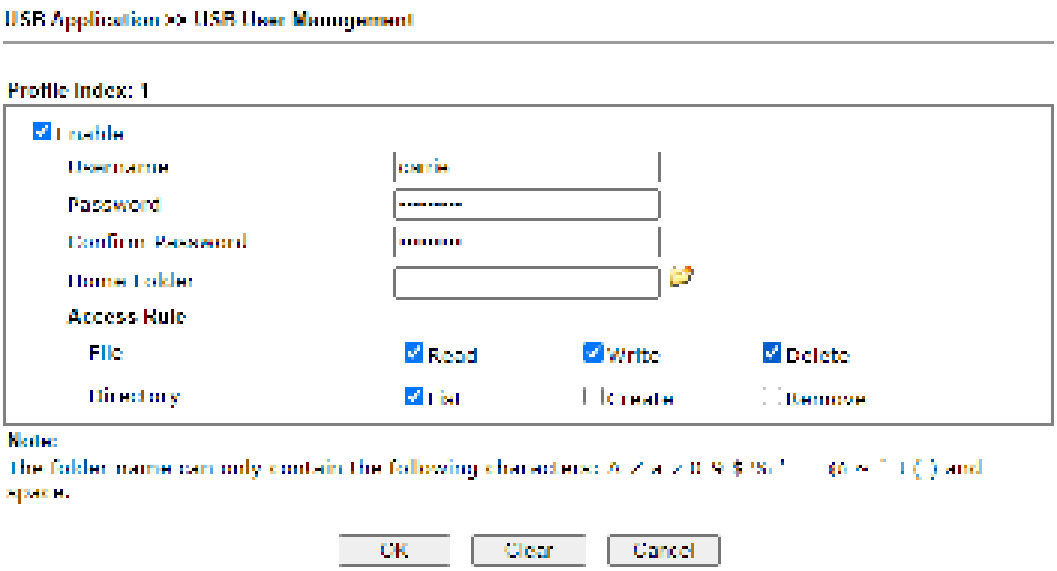
Select **OK** to save changes on the page.

VIII-2-2 USB User Management

This page allows you to set up profiles for FTP/SMB users. Any user who wants to access the USB storage disk must authenticate using a username and password that have been configured on this page. Please connect a USB storage device before adding or modifying settings on this page, or else an error message will appear requesting you to do so before allowing you to proceed.



Click index number to access into configuration page.



Available settings are explained as follows:

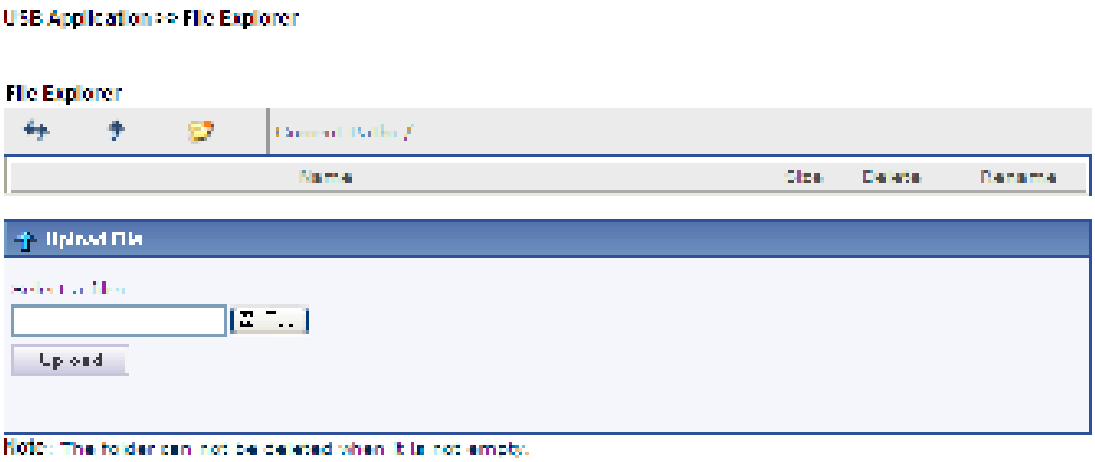
Item	Description
Enable	Check to activate this profile (account) for FTP service and / or SMB service. Later, the user can use the username specified in this page to login into FTP server.
Username	Enter the username for this user profile. Maximum allowed length of the username is 11 characters. **Note:** Anonymous user access is not supported. **Note:** "Admin" cannot be used as a username, as it is reserved for access to web pages on the Vigor router, and for FTP firmware upgrade. **Note:** Ensure that the FTP client does not use passive FTP mode as it is not supported by the Vigor router.
Password	Enter the password for this user profile. Maximum allowed length of the username is 11 characters.
Confirm Password	Enter the password again to confirm.
Home Folder	Enter the folder which will be the root folder for FTP and SMB sessions established using the credentials of this user profile. Only folders and files inside this selected root folder are accessible to the user. In addition, if the user types "/" here, the user can access into all of the disk folders and files in USB storage disk. To browse the list of folders available for selection, or to create a new folder, click the icon.

	 Note: If the USB storage device is write-protected, new folders cannot be created. Only existing folders can be selected. **Note**: Only folders directly under the root can be selected as the home folder.
Access Rule	It determines the authority for such profile. Any user, who uses such profile for accessing into USB storage disk, must follow the rule specified here. **File** – Check the items (Read, Write and Delete) for such profile. **Directory** –Check the items (List, Create and Remove) for such profile.

To save changes on this page, ensure that a USB storage device is connected, and click **OK**. To discard changes, click **Cancel**. To blank out all settings in the current IP object, click **Clear**.

VIII-2-3 File Explorer

File Explorer offers an easy way for users to view and manage the content of USB storage disk connected on Vigor router.



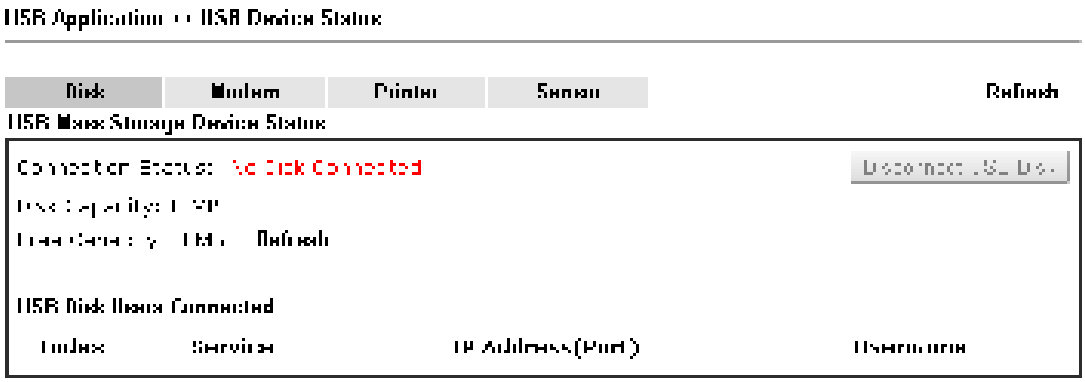
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Refresh	Click this icon to refresh the list of files and folders.

Back	Click this icon to return to the parent folder.
Create	Click this icon to add a new folder.
Current Path	Shows current folder.
Upload	To upload a file to the USB storage device, click the **Browse...** button to bring up the file selection dialog box. Select the file you wish to upload, and click the **Upload** button to initiate the upload process.

VIII-2-4 USB Device Status

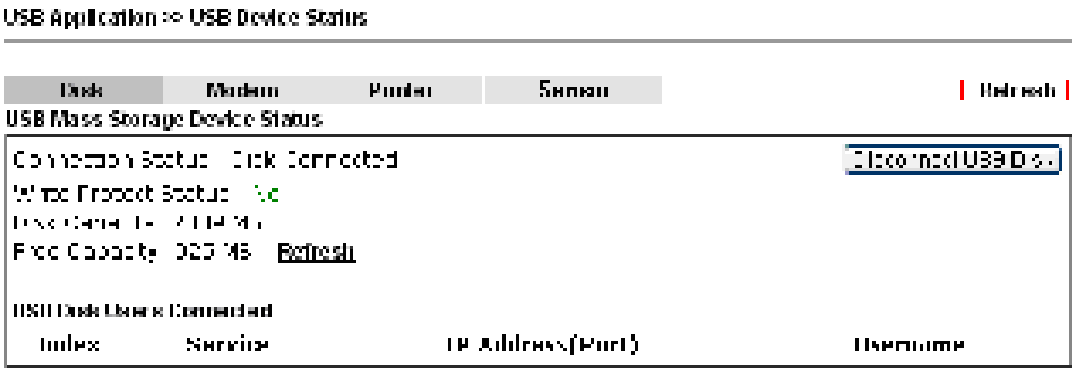
This page allows monitoring of the status of USB devices (disk, modem, printer, and sensor) connected to the Vigor router. To maintain the data integrity of a USB disk that is connected to the router, always click **Disconnect USB Disk** before unplugging the disk from the router.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Connection Status	Shows whether a USB disk is connected or not. If there is no USB device connected to the Vigor router, “No Disk Connected” will be displayed.
Disk Capacity	Shows the total capacity of the USB storage disk.
Free Capacity	Shows the free space on the USB storage disk. Click **Refresh** at any time to get the most up-to-date free capacity.
USB Disk Users Connected	Shows the clients that are connected to the SMB/FTP server. **Index** – The profile index used by the LAN client to establish the connection. **Service** – Shows whether the connection is using FTP or SMB. **IP Address** – Shows the client’s IP address. **Username** – Shows the username used to establish the connection.
Disconnect USB Disk	Before unplugging the USB storage device from the router, make sure you click this first to ensure that all data has been written to the disk and all open files are closed.

After a USB storage device has been connected, the **Connection Status** will be updated within a few seconds.



VIII-2-5 Temperature Sensor

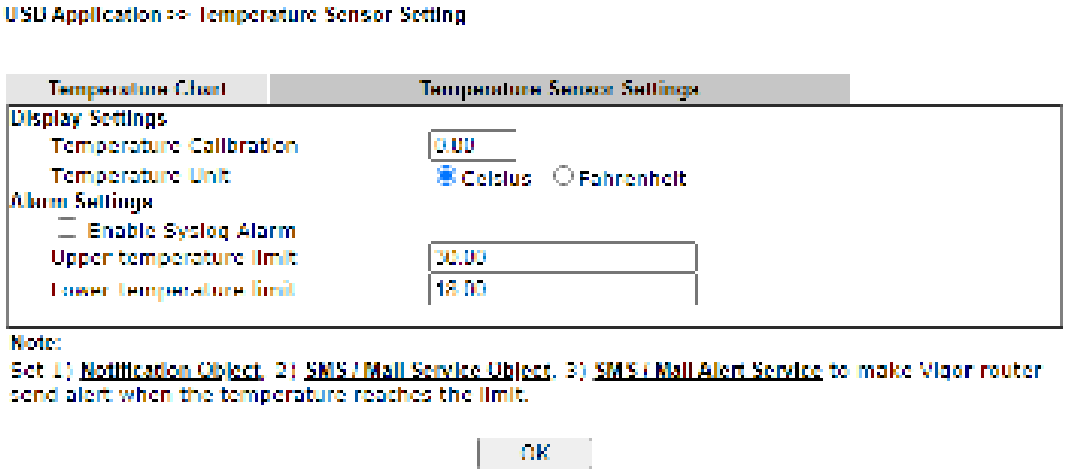
A USB Thermometer is now available. It complements your installed DrayTek router installations which will help you monitor the server or data communications room environment and notify you if the server room or data communications room is overheating.

During summer in particular, it is important to ensure that your server or data communications equipment are not overheating due to cooling system failures.

The inclusion of a USB thermometer in compatible Vigor routers will continuously monitor the temperature of its environment. When a pre-determined threshold is reached you will be alerted by either an email or SMS so you can undertake appropriate action.

For a list of supported USB thermometers, visit our website at https://www.draytek.com/en/products/usb-thermometer/ or contact your local DrayTek partner.

Temperature Sensor Settings

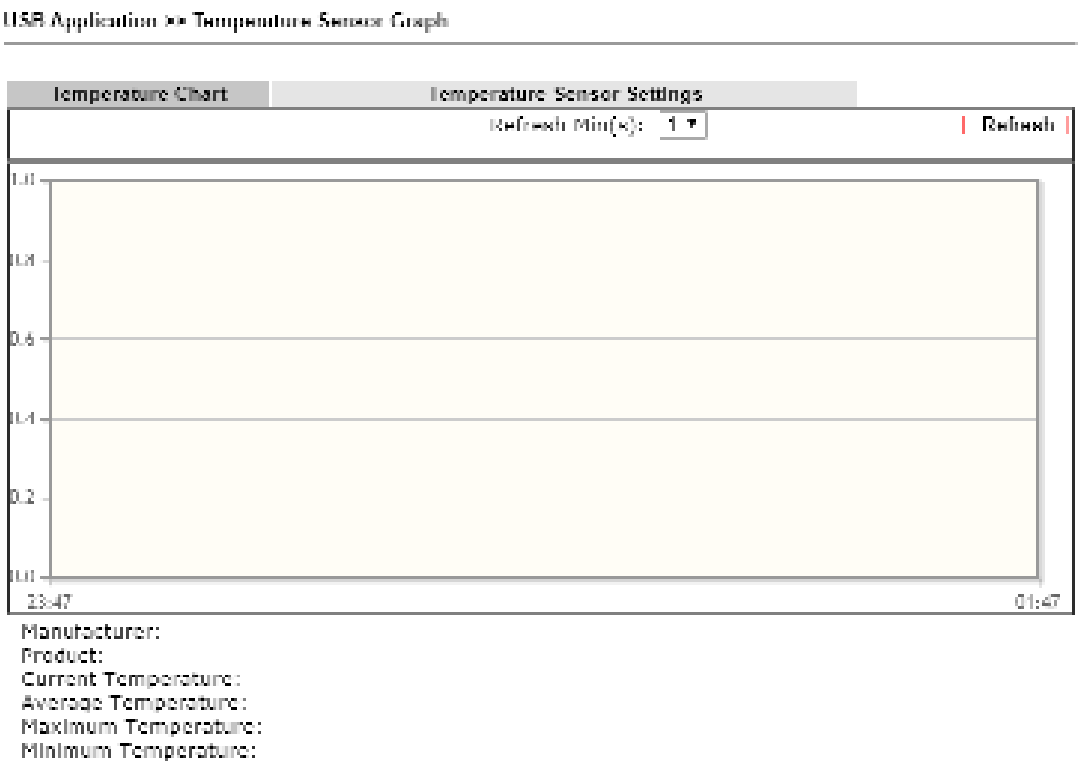


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Display Settings	**Temperature Calibration** - Enter the difference between the actual temperature and the temperature as reported by the thermometer. **Temperature Unit -** Select the temperature scale to be used.
Alarm Settings	**Enable Syslog Alarm** - Select to enable recording of the temperature in Syslog. **Upper temperature limit**/**Lower temperature limit** - Enter the upper and lower temperature limits. If the temperature falls outside of this range, an alert will be sent.

Temperature Chart

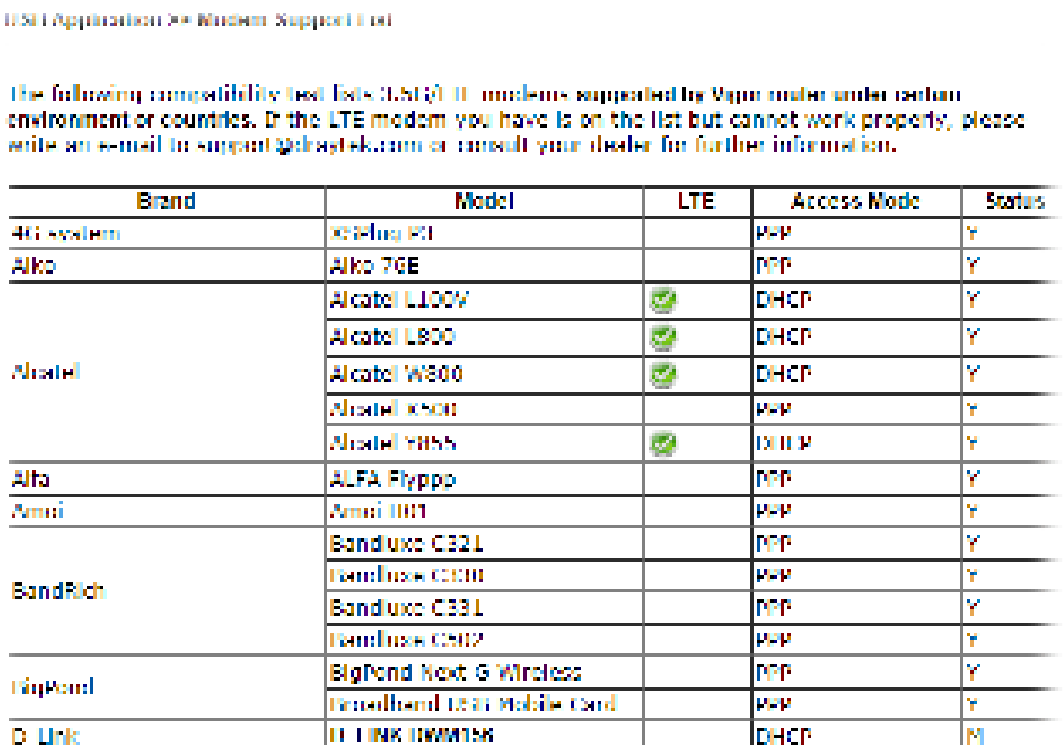
Below shows an example of temperature graph:



VIII-2-6 Modem Support List

This page lists the brands and models of USB modems that are supported by the Vigor router.

This list is subject to change between different versions of firmware as support for new modems are added.



Brand	Model	LTE	Access Mode	Status
4G system	[illegible]		PPP	Y
Alko	Alko 7GE		PPP	Y
Alcatel	Alcatel L100V	✓	DHCP	Y
	Alcatel L800	✓	DHCP	Y
	Alcatel W800	✓	DHCP	Y
	Alcatel X500		PPP	Y
	Alcatel X955	✓	DHCP	Y
Alfa	ALFA Flyppo		PPP	Y
Amoi	Amoi H01		PPP	Y
BandRich	Bandluxe C321		PPP	Y
	Bandluxe C330		PPP	Y
	Bandluxe C331		PPP	Y
	Bandluxe C507		PPP	Y
BigPond	BigPond Next G Wireless		PPP	Y
	Broadband USB Mobile Card		PPP	Y
D-Link	D-LINK DWM156		DHCP	N

VIII-2-7 SMB Client Support List

This page shows a list of SMB clients on various platforms, and their levels of compatibility with the Vigor router as determined by our in-house testing. This list is subject to change as support for SMB clients are added or improved.

USB Application >> SMB Client Support List

The following compatibility test lists suggested SMB clients supported by Vigor router.

Platform	Application	Status
Microsoft® Windows® XP	Built in	Y
Microsoft® Windows Vista [N]	Built in	Y
Microsoft® Windows® 7	Built in	Y
Microsoft® Windows® 8	Built in	M
Microsoft® Windows® 10	Built in	Y
OS X® 10.7.5	Built in	Y
OS X® 10.10	Built in	Y
Ubuntu 14.0	Built in	Y
Android [N]	AndEMS	Y
Android [N]	ES File Explorer	Y
Android [N]	File Expert	Y
Android [N]	File Manager	Y
Android [N]	Solid Explorer	Y
Android [N]	SharesFinder	Y
iOS	cDPlayer	Y
iOS	nPlayer	Y

Y: Tested and is supported.
C: Supported but has some issue.
M: Has not been tested but might be supported.

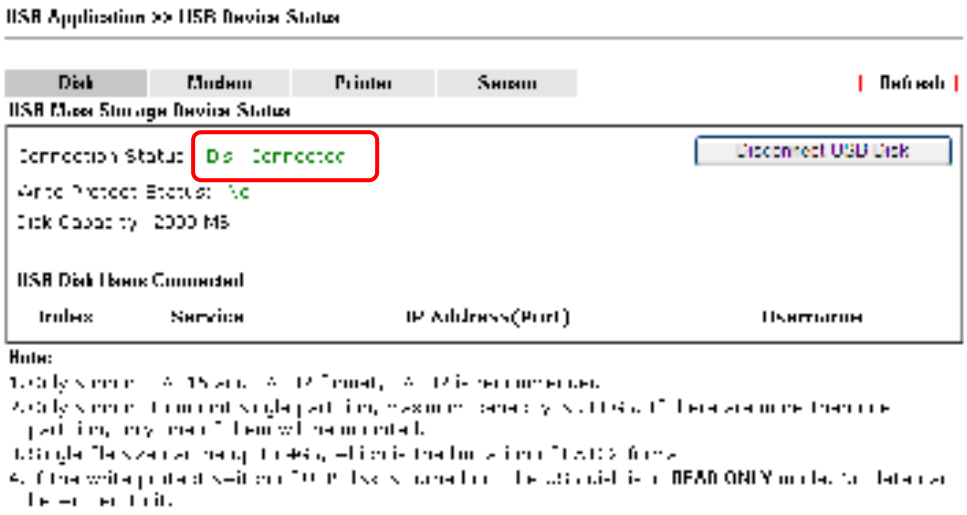
Application Notes

A-1 How can I get the files from USB storage device connecting to Vigor router?

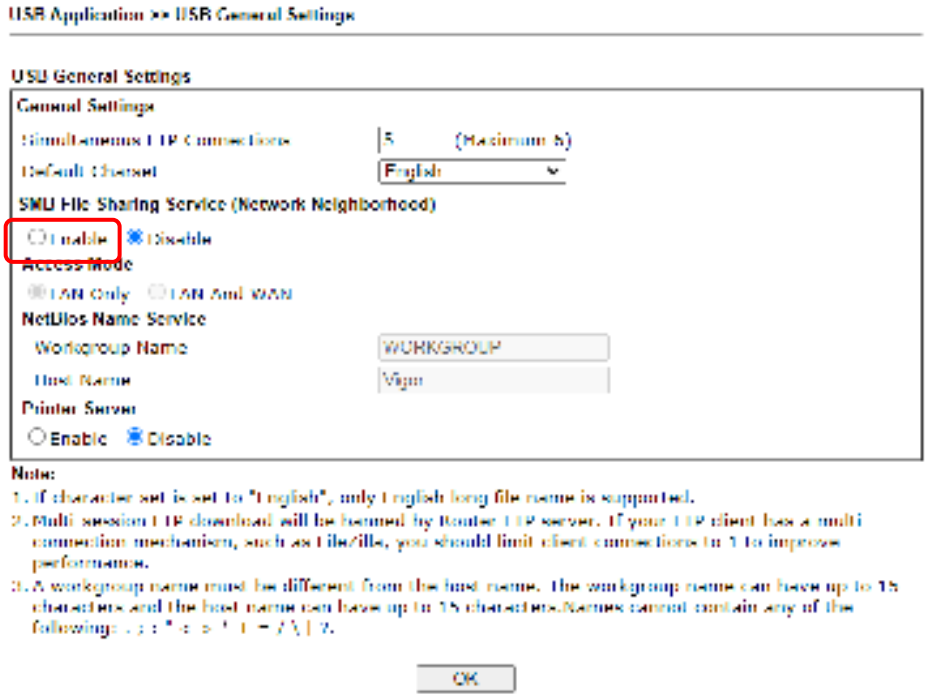
Files on USB storage device can be reviewed by opening **USB Applicaiton>>File Explorer.** If it is necessary for you to delete, copy files on the device or write, paste files to the devcie, it must be done through SMB server or FTP server.

SMB service is based on the original USB FTP service. You will need to setup USB FTP first. We would like to give brief instructions on USB FTP setup here.

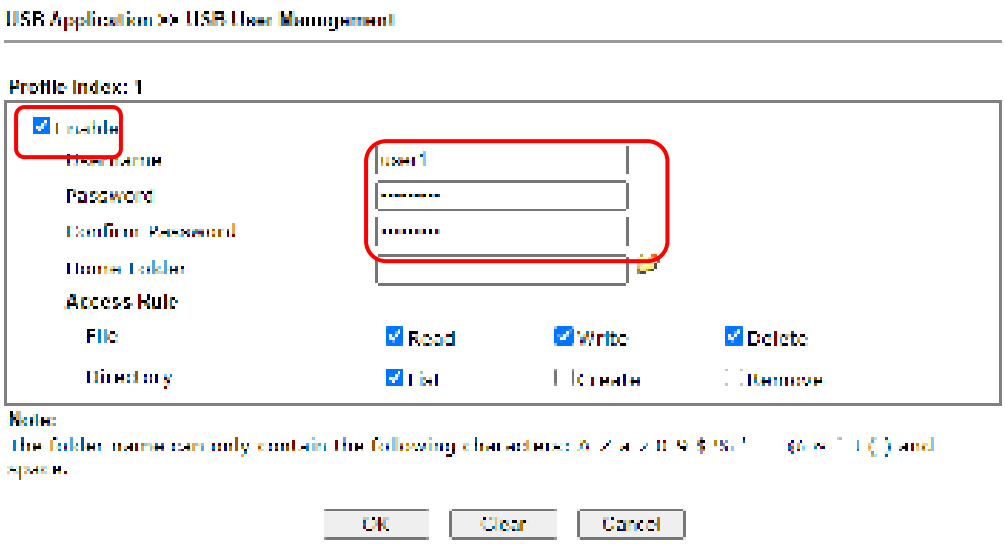
1. Plug the USB device to the USB port on the router. Make sure **Disk Connected** appears on the **Connection Status** as the figure shown below:



2. Then, please open **USB Application >> USB General Settings** to enable SMB service.

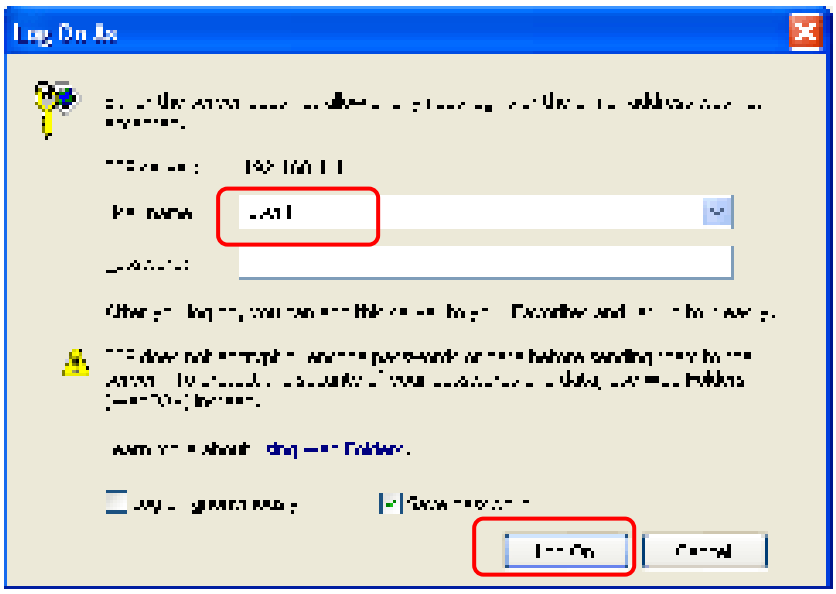


3. Setup a user account for the FTP service by using **USB Application >>USB User Management.** Click **Enable** to enable FTP/SMB User account. In the example below, we have set up a new account with the username "user1", and granted “Read”, “Write” , "Delete" and “List” permissions to it.

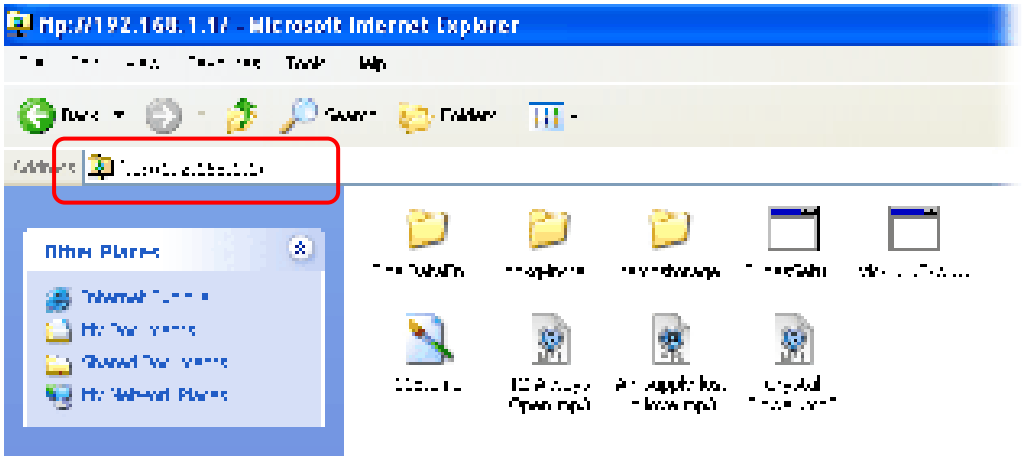


4. Click **OK** to save the configuration.

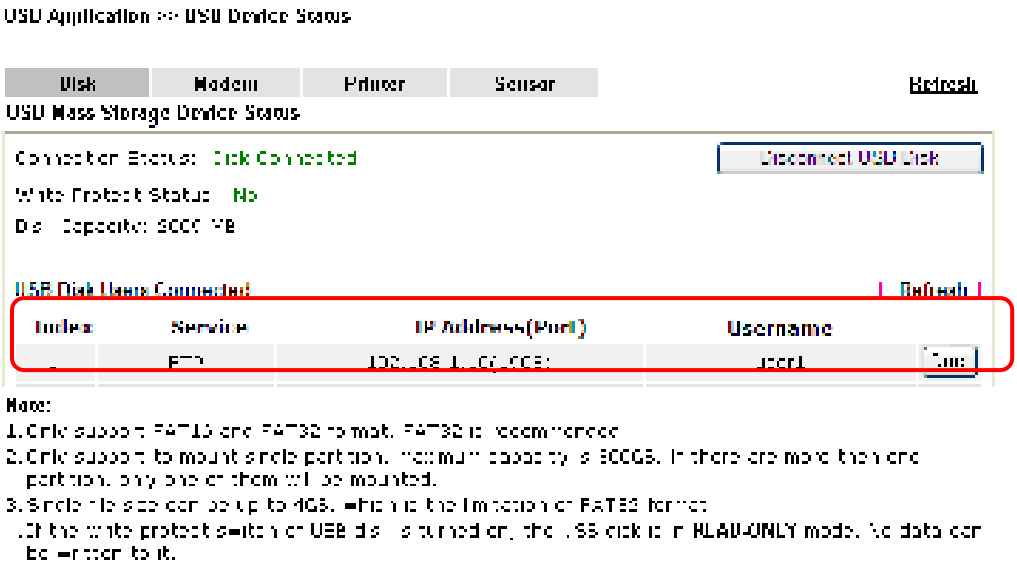
5. To verify that the FTP service is running properly, open a browser window and enter ftp://192.168.1.1 as the destination. Replace 192.168.1.1 with the actual IP address of the router. When prompted to enter the login credentials, enter the username "user1" to login.



6. When the following screen appears, you have successfully connected to the FTP server and verified that it is running properly.



7. If you check **USB Application** >> **USB Disk Status** on browser, you will see the FTP session initiated by user1.



Now, users in LAN of Vigor2927 can access into the USB storage device by entering ftp://192.168.1.1 on any browser. They can add or remove files / directories, depending on the Access Rule for FTP account settings in **USB Application** >>**USB User Management**.

This page is left blank.

Part IX Troubleshooting

This part will guide you to solve abnormal situations if you cannot access into the Internet after installing the router and finishing the web configuration.

IX-1 Diagnostics

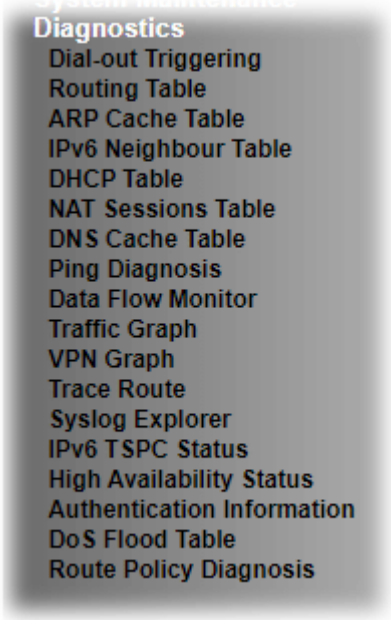
This section will guide you to solve abnormal situations if you cannot access into the Internet after installing the router and finishing the web configuration. Please follow sections below to check your basic installation status stage by stage.

- Checking if the hardware status is OK or not.
- Checking if the network connection settings on your computer are OK or not.
- Pinging the router from your computer.
- Checking if the ISP settings are OK or not.
- Backing to factory default setting if necessary.

If all above stages are done and the router still cannot run normally, it is the time for you to contact your dealer or DrayTek technical support for advanced help.

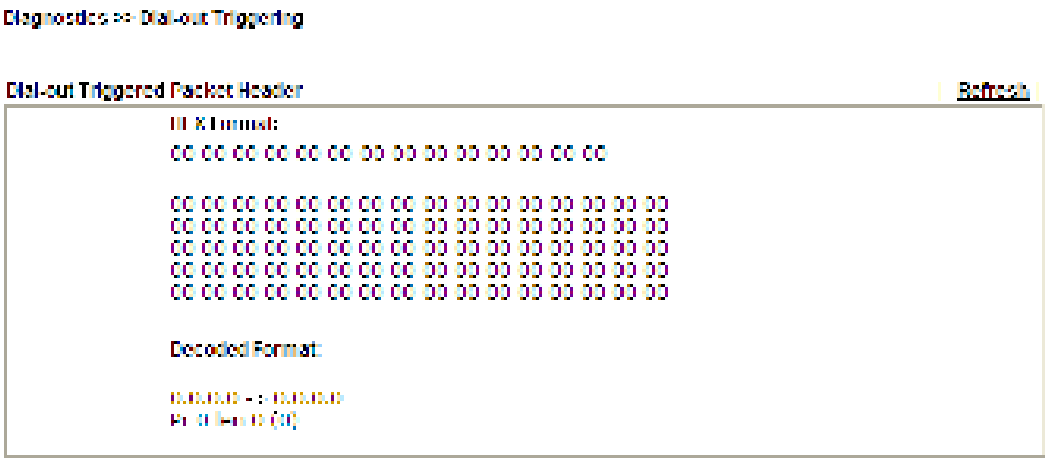
Web User Interface

Fisrt, take a look at the menu items under Diagnostics. Diagnostic Tools provide a useful way to **view** or **diagnose** the status of your Vigor router.



IX-1-1 Dial-out Triggering

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Dial-out Triggering** to open the web page. The internet connection (e.g., PPPoE) is triggered by a package sending from the source IP address.

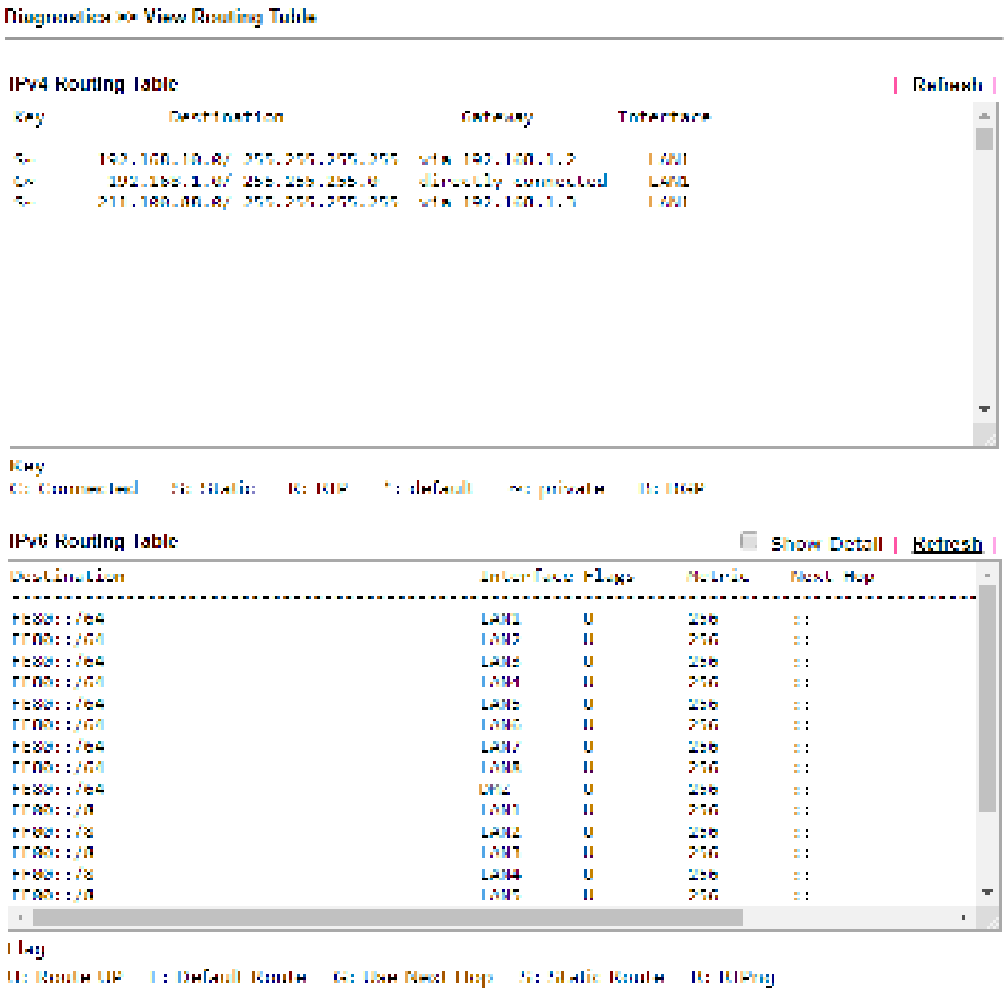


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Decoded Format	It shows the source IP address (local), destination IP (remote) address, the protocol and length of the package.
Refresh	Click it to reload the page.

IX-1-2 Routing Table

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Routing Table** to open the web page.

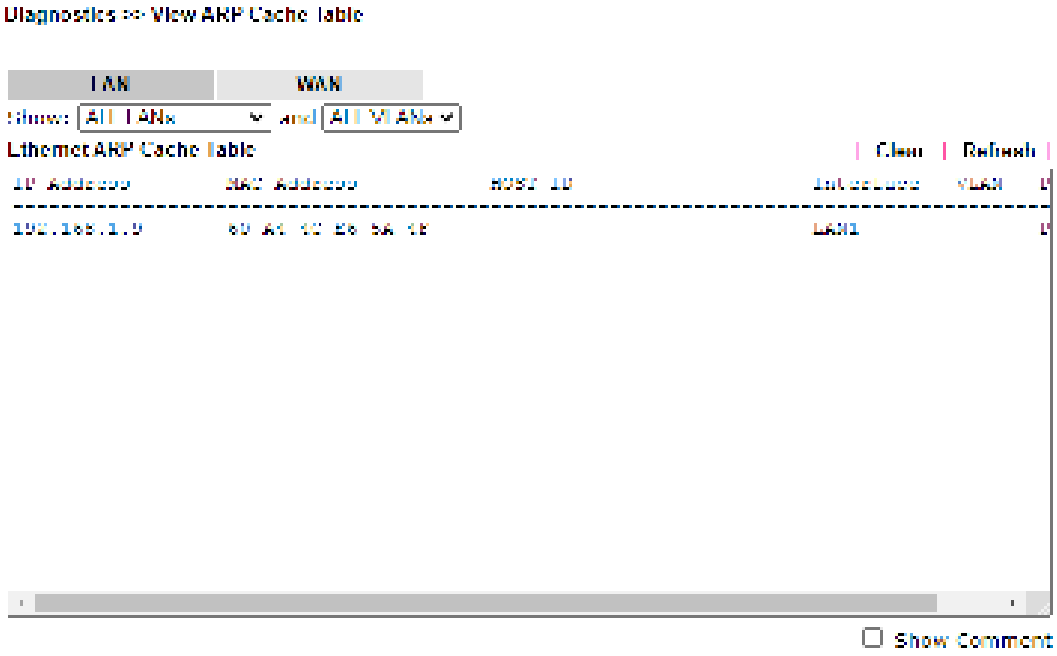


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Refresh	Click it to reload the page.

IX-1-3 ARP Cache Table

Click **Diagnostics** and click **ARP Cache Table** to view the content of the ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) cache held in the router. The table shows a mapping between an Ethernet hardware address (MAC Address) and an IP address.



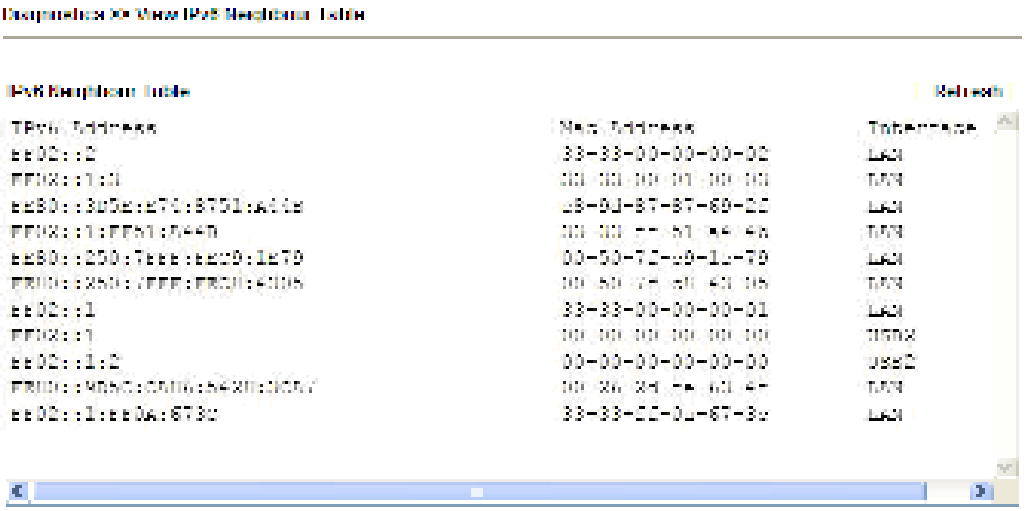
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Show	Specify LAN and VLAN to display related information. In default, this page will display all of the information about LAN and VLAN.
Refresh	Click it to reload the page.

IX-1-4 IPv6 Neighbour Table

The table shows a mapping between an Ethernet hardware address (MAC Address) and an IPv6 address. This information is helpful in diagnosing network problems, such as IP address conflicts, etc.

Click **Diagnostics** and click **IPv6 Neighbour Table** to open the web page.



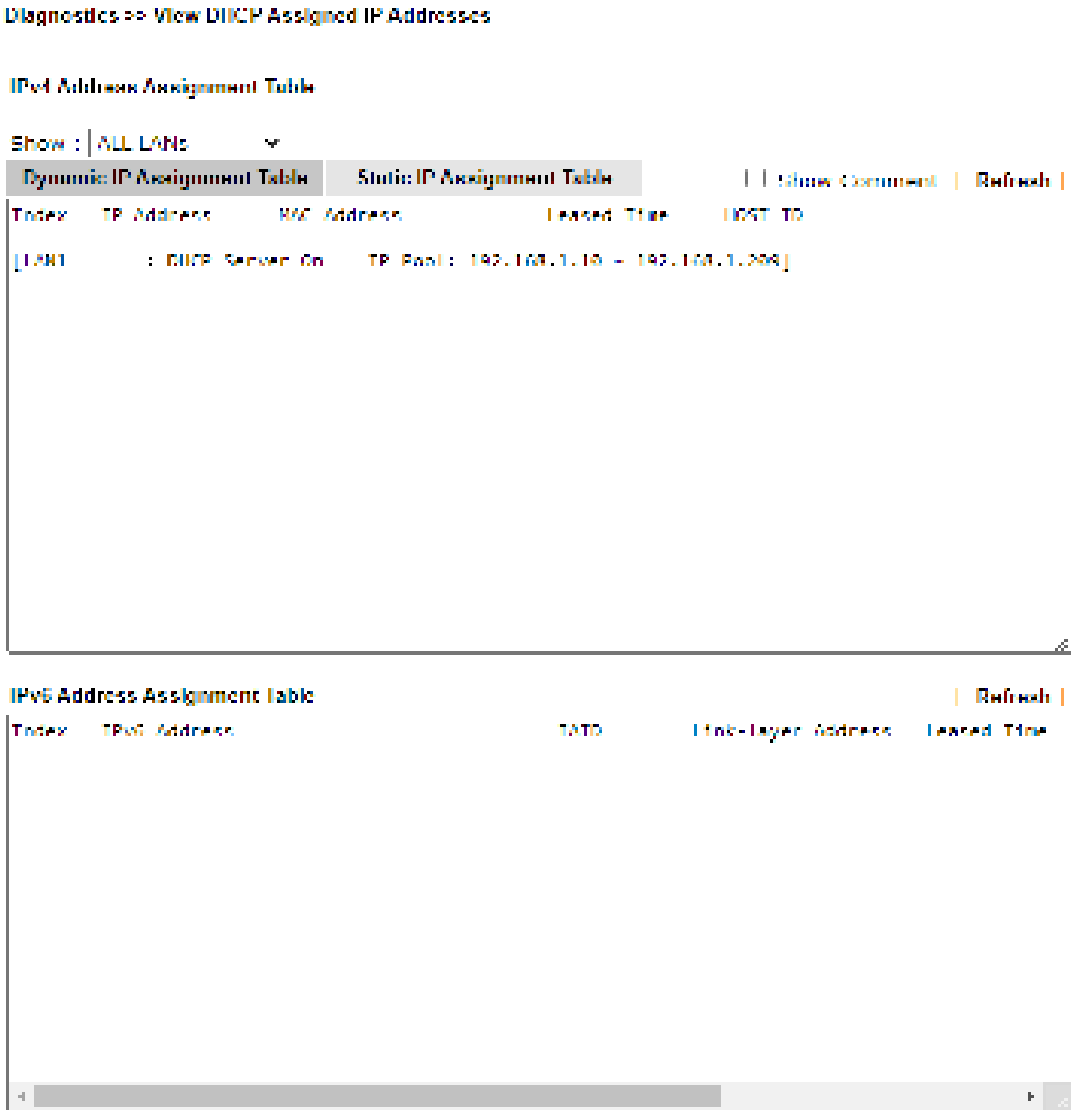
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Refresh	Click it to reload the page.

IX-1-5 DHCP Table

The facility provides information on IP address assignments. This information is helpful in diagnosing network problems, such as IP address conflicts, etc.

Click **Diagnostics** and click **DHCP Table** to open the web page.

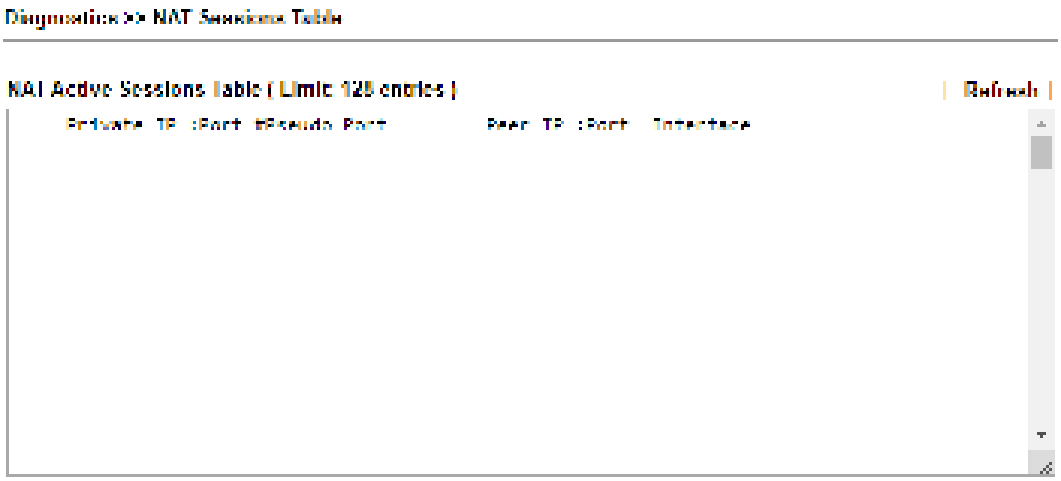


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Index	It displays the connection item number.
IP Address	It displays the IP address assigned by this router for specified PC.
MAC Address	It displays the MAC address for the specified PC that DHCP assigned IP address for it.
Leased Time	It displays the leased time of the specified PC.
HOST ID	It displays the host ID name of the specified PC.
Refresh	Click it to reload the page.

IX-1-6 NAT Sessions Table

Click **Diagnostics** and click **NAT Sessions Table** to open the list page.



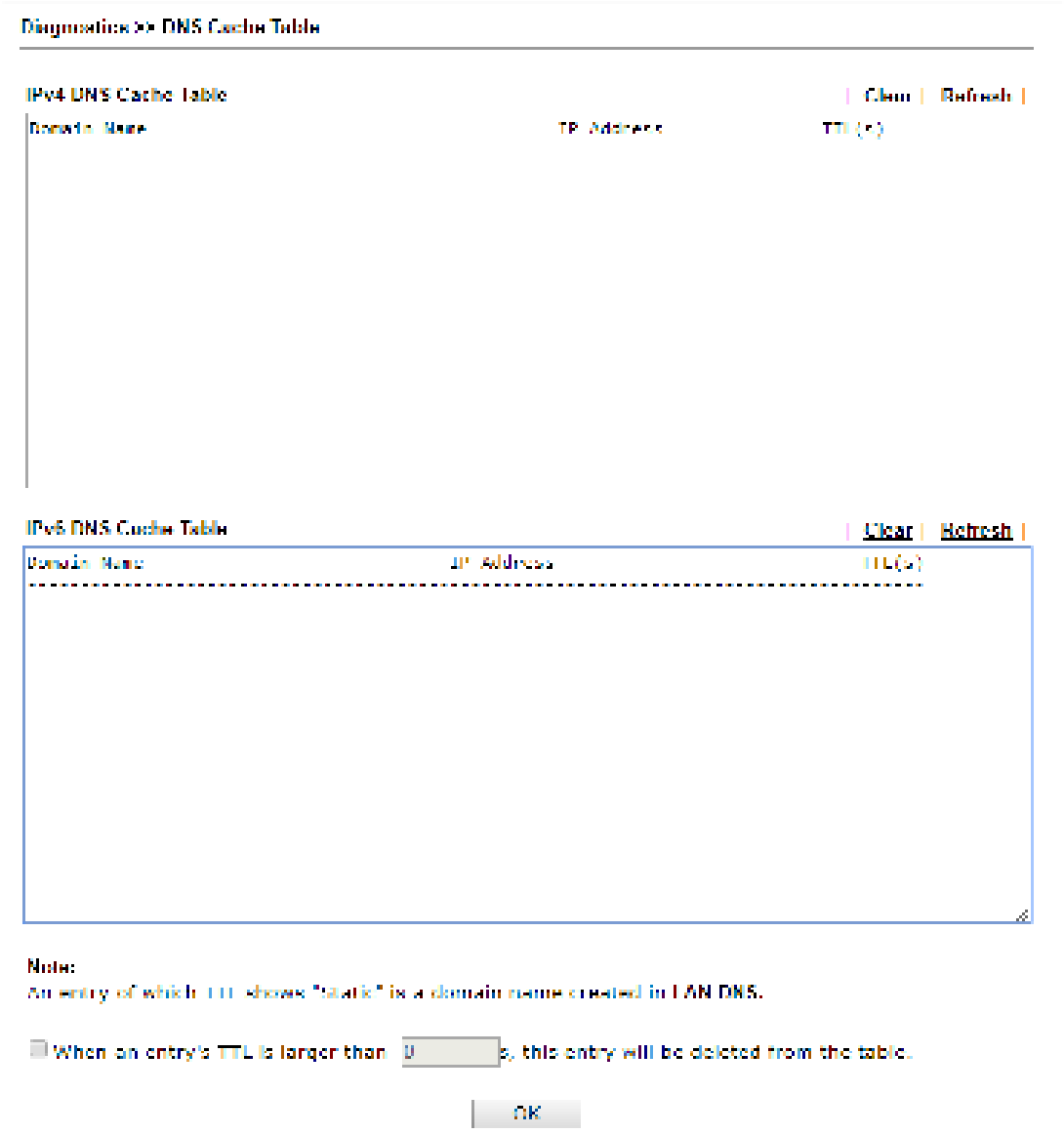
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Private IP:Port	It indicates the source IP address and port of local PC.
#Pseudo Port	It indicates the temporary port of the router used for NAT.
Peer IP:Port	It indicates the destination IP address and port of remote host.
Interface	It displays the representing number for different interface.
Refresh	Click it to reload the page.

IX-1-7 DNS Cache Table

Click **Diagnostics** and click **DNS Cache Table** to open the web page.

The record of domain Name and the mapping IP address for answering the DNS query from LAN will be stored on Vigor router's Cache temporarily and displayed on **Diagnostics >> DNS Cache Table**.

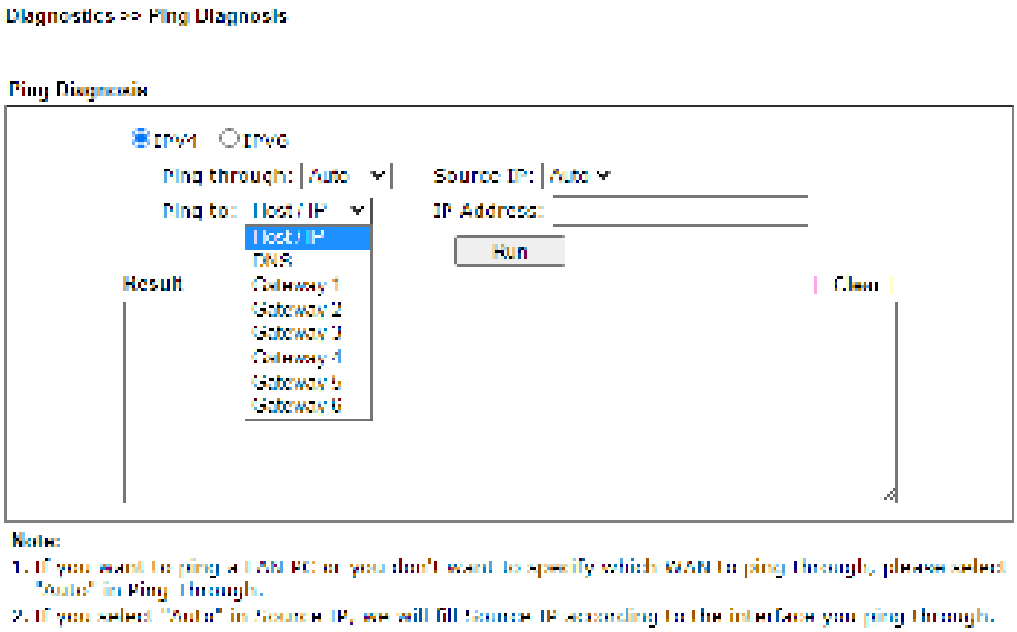


Available settings are explained as follows:

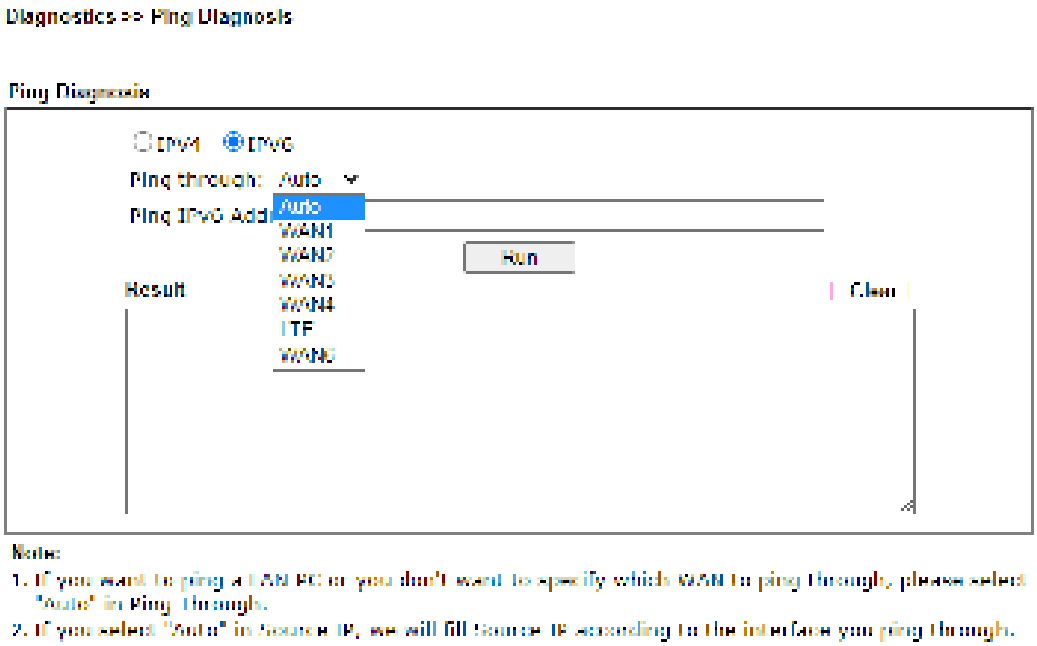
Item	Description
Clear	Click this link to remove the result on the window.
Refresh	Click it to reload the page.
When an entry's TTL is larger than...	Check the box the Enter the value of TTL (time to live) for each entry. Click **OK** to enable such function. It means when the TTL value of each DNS query reaches the threshold of the value specified here, the corresponding record will be deleted from router's Cache automatically.

IX-1-8 Ping Diagnosis

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Ping Diagnosis** to open the web page.



or



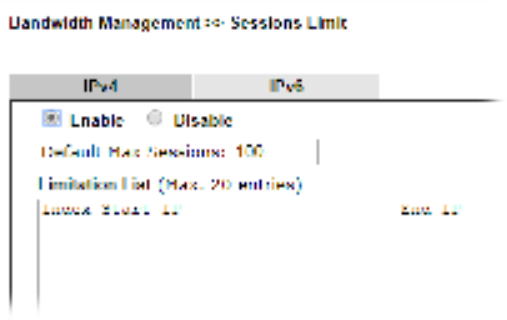
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
IPV4 /IPV6	Choose the interface for such function.
Ping through	Use the drop down list to choose the WAN/LTE interface that you want to ping through or choose **Auto** to be determined by the router automatically.
Ping to	Use the drop down list to choose the destination that you want to ping.

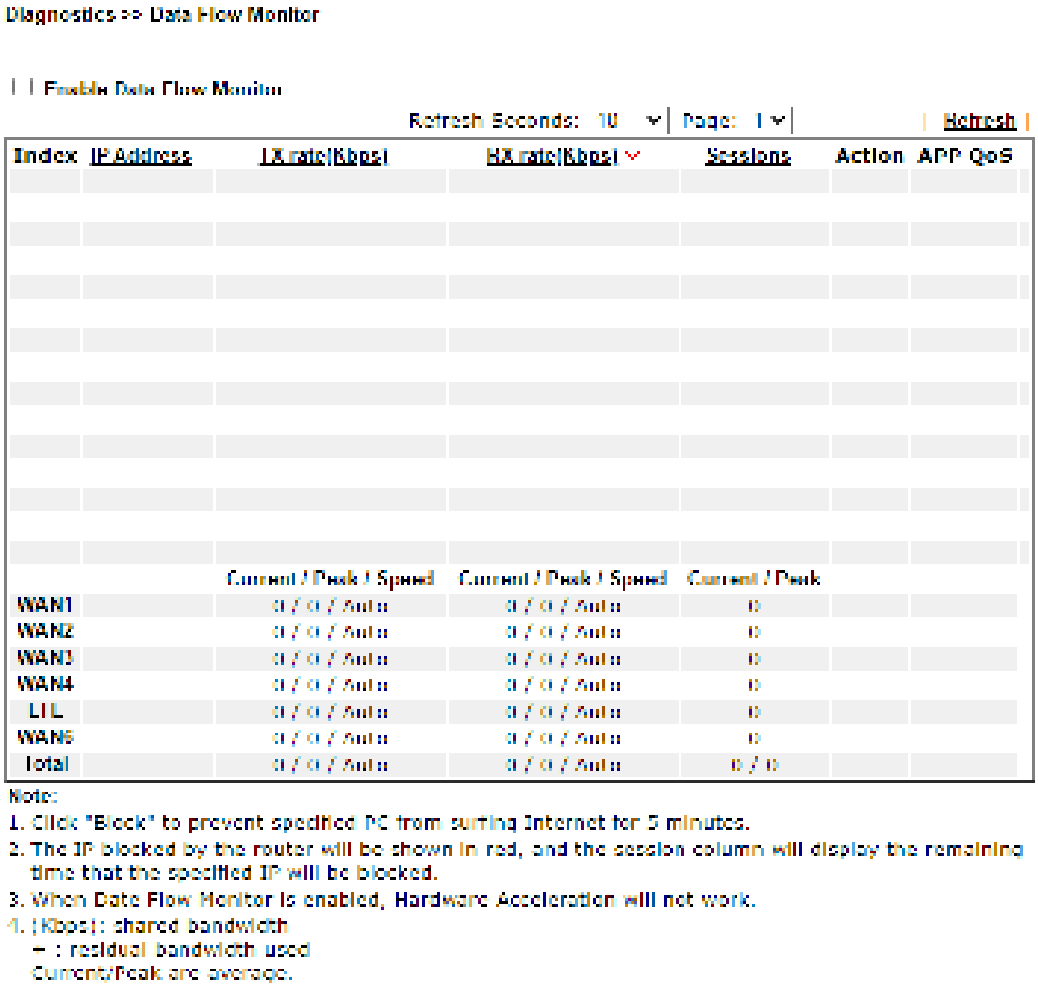
IP Address	Enter the IP address of the Host/IP that you want to ping.
Ping IPv6 Address	Enter the IPv6 address that you want to ping.
Run	Click this button to start the ping work. The result will be displayed on the screen.
Clear	Click this link to remove the result on the window.

IX-1-9 Data Flow Monitor

This page displays the running procedure for the IP address monitored and refreshes the data in an interval of several seconds. The IP address listed here is configured in Bandwidth Management. You have to enable IP bandwidth limit and IP session limit before invoking Data Flow Monitor. If not, a notification dialog box will appear to remind you enabling it.



Click **Diagnostics** and click **Data Flow Monitor** to open the web page. You can click **IP Address**, **TX rate**, **RX rate** or **Session** link for arranging the data display.



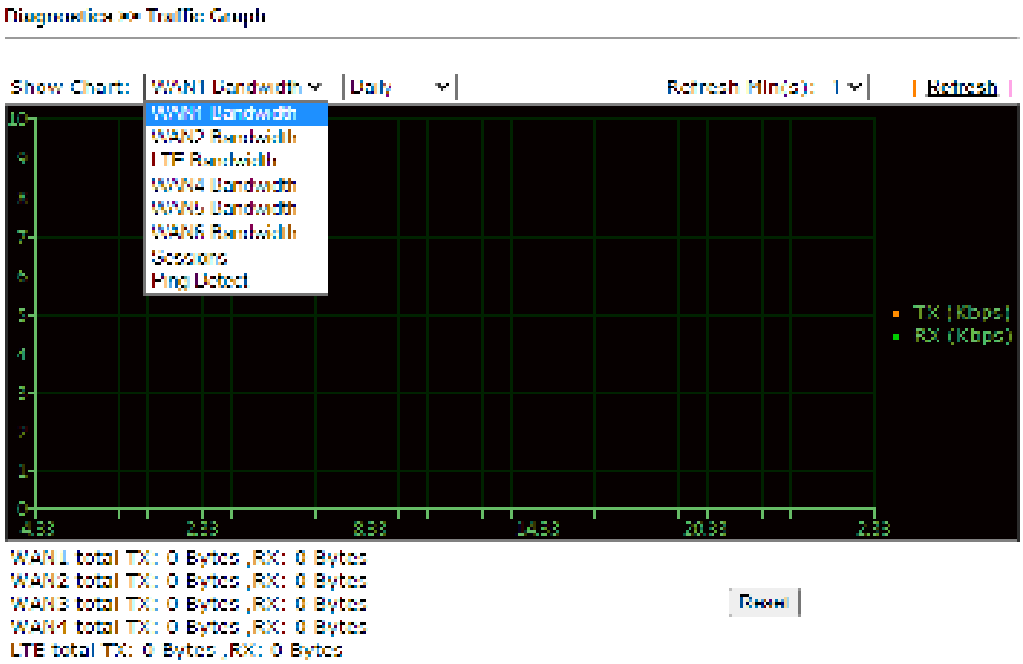
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable Data Flow Monitor	Check this box to enable this function.
Refresh Seconds	Use the drop down list to choose the time interval of refreshing data flow that will be done by the system automatically.
Refresh	Click this link to refresh this page manually.
Index	Display the number of the data flow.
IP Address	Display the IP address of the monitored device.
TX rate (kbps)	Display the transmission speed of the monitored device.
RX rate (kbps)	Display the receiving speed of the monitored device.
Sessions	Display the session number that you specified in Limit Session web page.
Action	**Block** - can prevent specified PC accessing into Internet within 5 minutes. **Unblock** -The device with the IP address will be blocked for five minutes. The remaining time will be shown on the session column. Click it to cancel the IP address blocking.
APP QoS	Use the drop down list to change the priority in data transmission for the specified IP address (host).

Current /**Peak**/**Speed**	**Current** means current transmission rate and receiving rate for WAN interface. **Peak** means the highest peak value detected by the router in data transmission. **Speed** means line speed specified in **WAN>>General Setup**. If you do not specify any rate at that page, here will display **Auto** for instead.

IX-1-10 Traffic Graph

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Traffic Graph** to open the web page. Choose WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4/WAN5/WAN6 Bandwidth, Sessions, Ping Detect, daily or weekly for viewing different traffic graph. Click **Reset** to zero the accumulated RX/TX (received and transmitted) data of WAN. Click **Refresh** to renew the graph at any time.

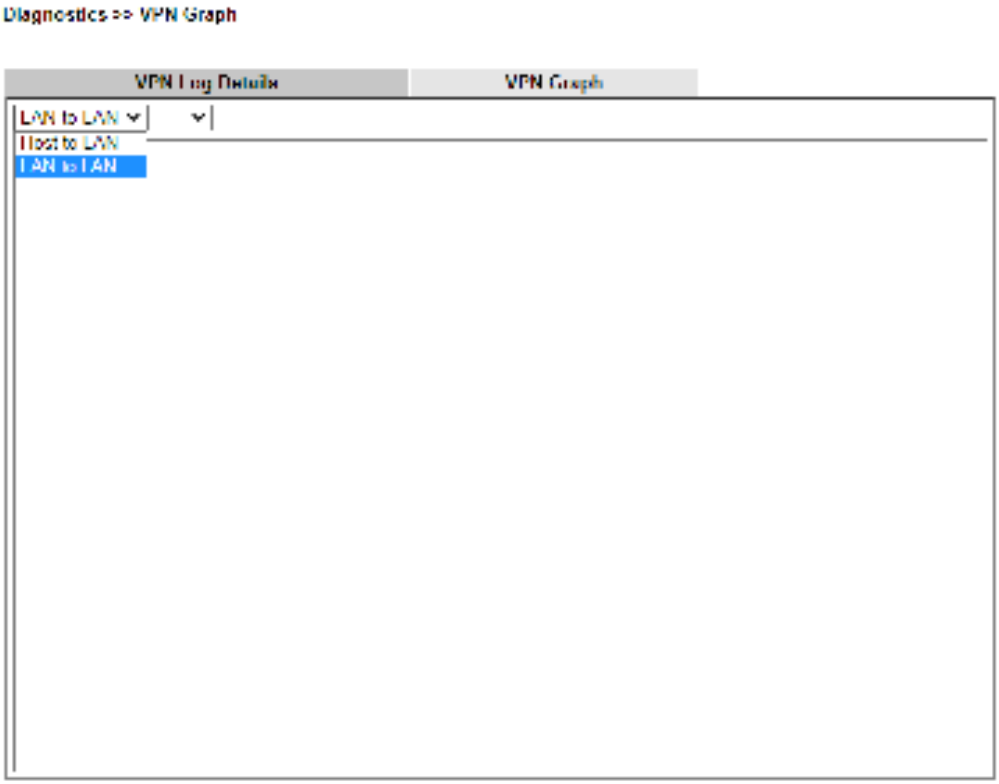


The horizontal axis represents time. Yet the vertical axis has different meanings. For WAN1/WAN2/WAN3/WAN4/WAN5/WAN6 Bandwidth chart, the numbers displayed on vertical axis represent the numbers of the transmitted and received packets in the past.

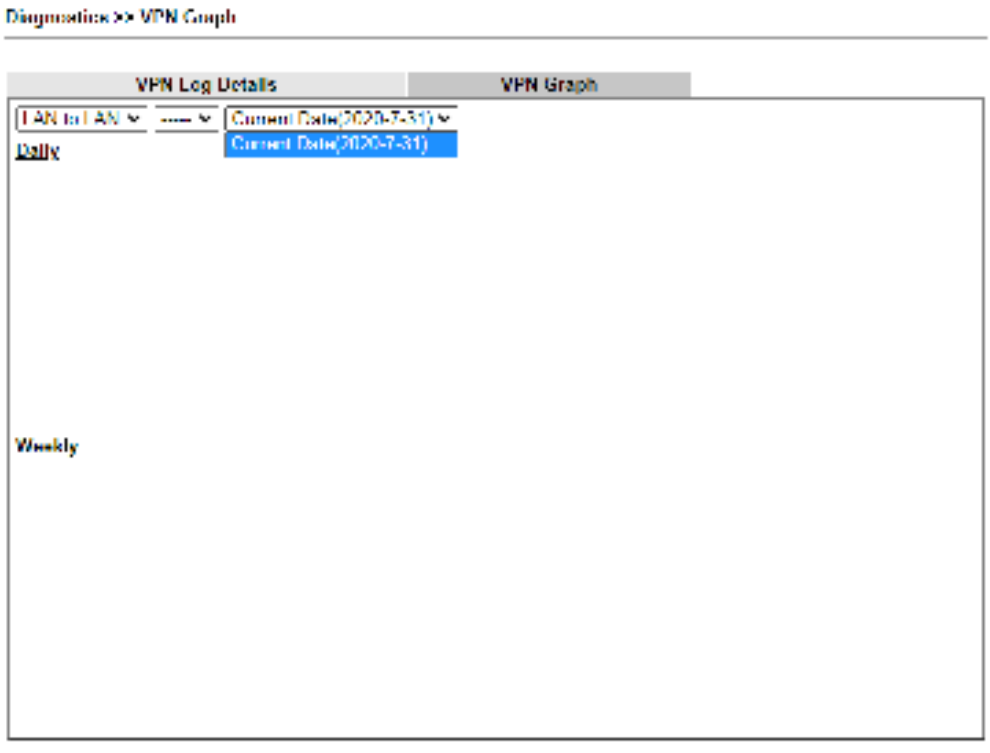
For Sessions chart, the numbers displayed on vertical axis represent the numbers of the NAT sessions during the past.

IX-1-11 VPN Graph

Click **Diagnostics** and click **VPN Graph** to open the web page.

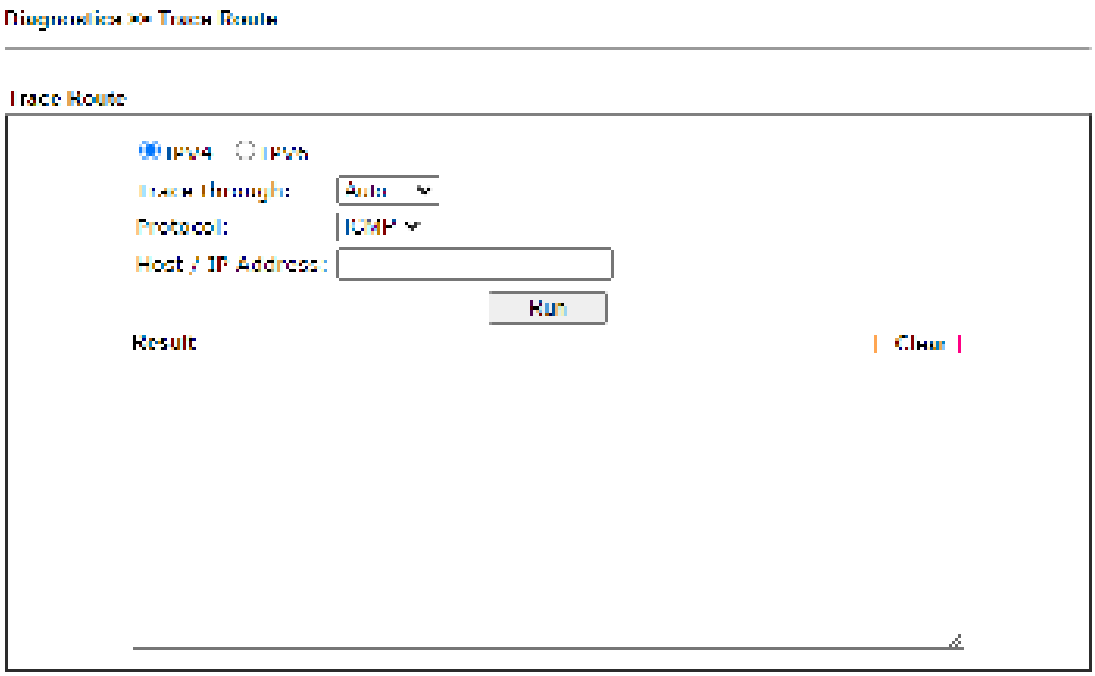


and

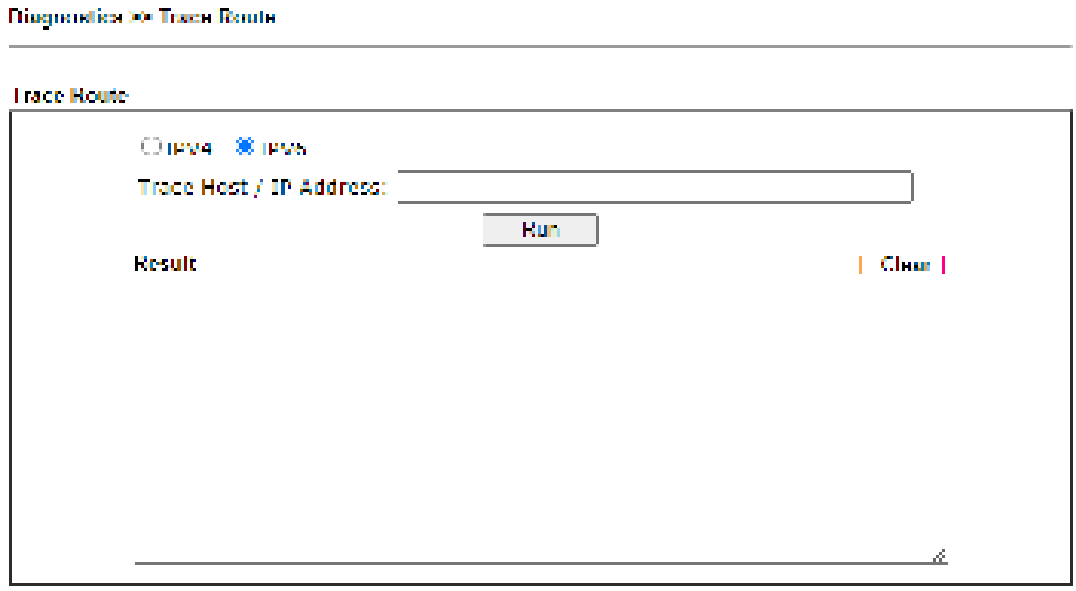


IX-1-12 Trace Route

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Trace Route** to open the web page. This page allows you to trace the routes from router to the host. Simply Enter the IP address of the host in the box and click **Run**. The result of route trace will be shown on the screen.



or



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
IPv4 / IPv6	Click one of them to display corresponding information for it.

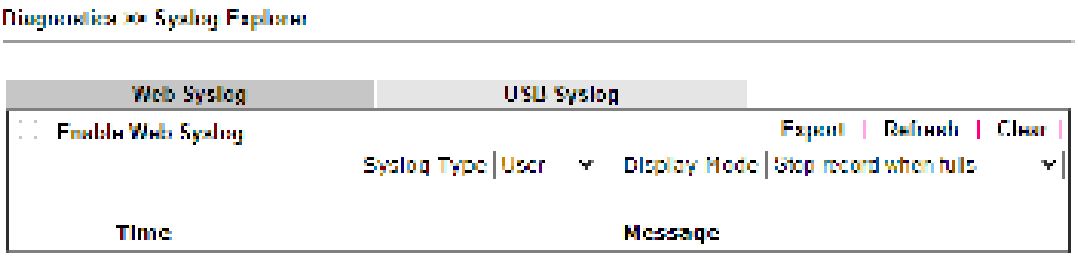
Trace through	Use the drop down list to choose the interface that you want to ping through.
Protocol	Use the drop down list to choose the protocol that you want to ping through.
Host/IP Address	It indicates the IP address of the host.
Trace Host/IP Address	It indicates the IPv6 address of the host.
Run	Click this button to start route tracing work.
Clear	Click this link to remove the result on the window.

IX-1-13 Syslog Explorer

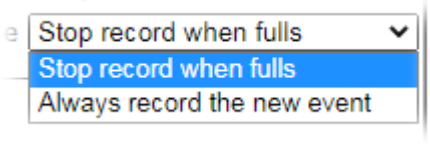
Such page provides real-time syslog and displays the information on the screen.

For Web Syslog

This page displays the time and message for User/Firewall/call/WAN/VPN settings. You can check **Enable Web Syslog**, specify the type of Syslog and choose the display mode you want. Later, the event of Syslog with specified type will be shown for your reference.

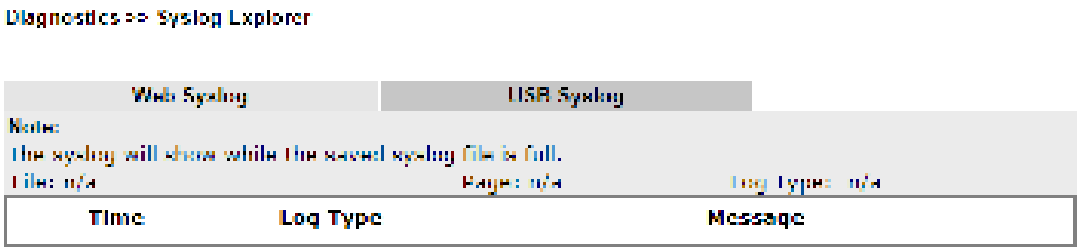


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Enable Web Syslog	Check this box to enable the function of Web Syslog.
Syslog Type	Use the drop down list to specify a type of Syslog to be displayed.
Export	Click this link to save the data as a file.
Refresh	Click this link to refresh this page manually.
Clear	Click this link to clear information on this page.
Display Mode	There are two modes for you to choose.  **Stop record when fulls** – When the capacity of syslog is full, the system will stop recording. **Always record the new event** – only the newest events will be recorded by the system.
Time	Display the time of the event occurred.
Message	Display the information for each event.

For USB Syslog

This page displays the syslog recorded on the USB storage disk.



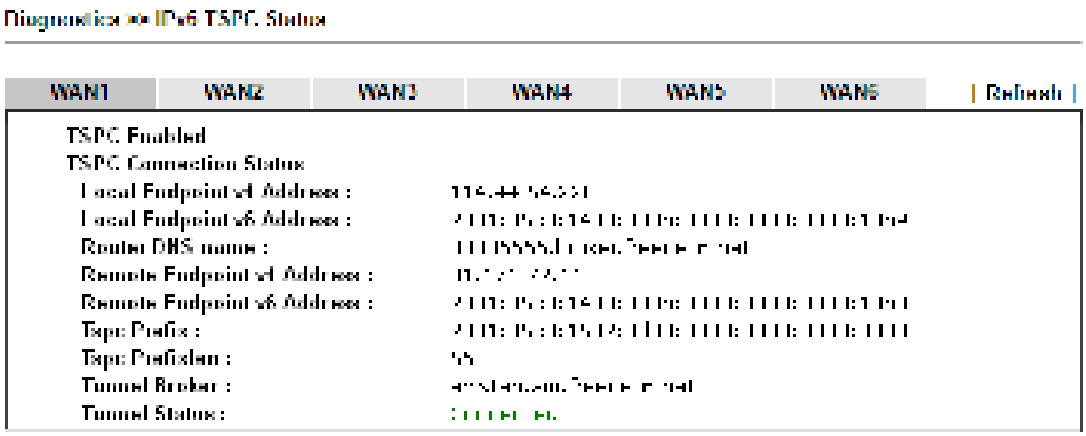
Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Time	Display the time of the event occurred.
Log Type	Display the type of the record.
Message	Display the information for each event.

IX-1-14 IPv6 TSPC Status

IPv6 TSPC status web page could help you to diagnose the connection status of TSPC.

If TSPC has configured properly, the router will display the following page when the user connects to tunnel broker successfully.



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Refresh	Click this link to refresh this page manually.

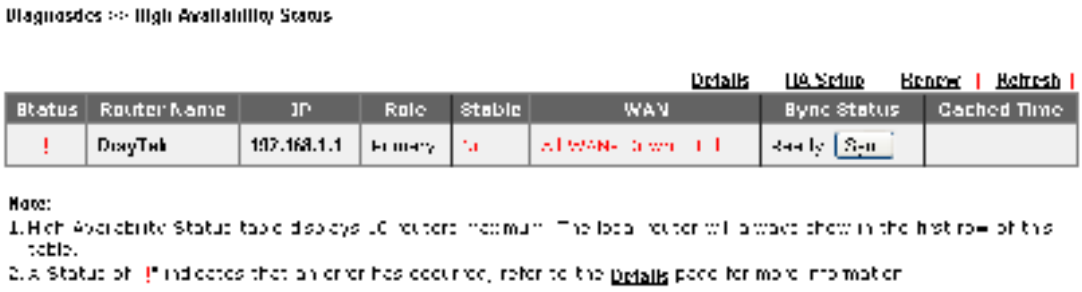
IX-1-15 High Availability Status

All of the routers under the same DARP (DrayTek Address resolution Protocol) group can be viewed in such page. However, only partial information of the router status will be displayed.

Vigor routers with the following condtions will be treated as the same DARP group:

- HA enabled
- the same Redundancy method
- the same Group ID
- the same Authentication Key
- the same Management Interface

Open **Diagnostics>>High Availablity Status.**

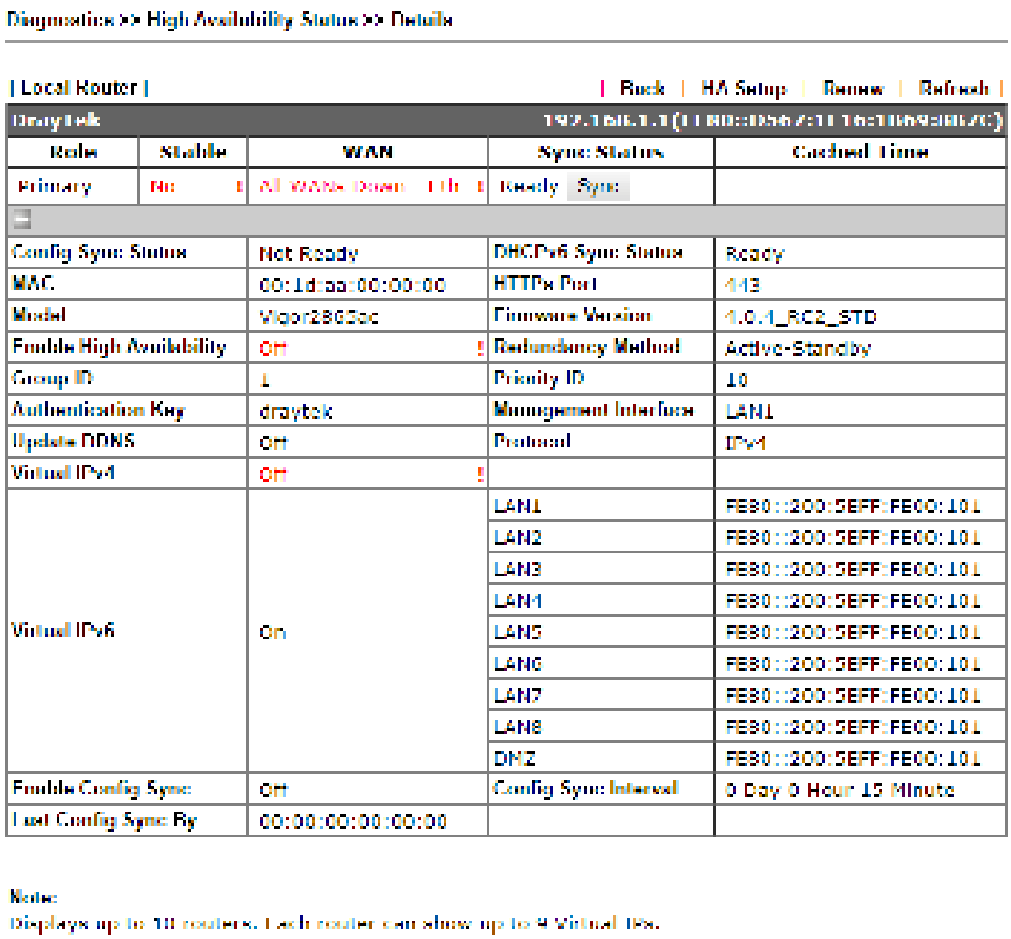


Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Details/Back	**Details** – Click it to display detailed status about HA configuration for the selected router. **Back** - Return to previous page.
HA Setup	Click it to open **Applications>>High Availability** for modifying the configuration.
Renew	Click it to get the newest status of other router (except the primary router).
Refresh	Click it to get the newest status of the primary router.
Status	"**!**" means an error has occurred. Refer to **Detailed** information and modify HA settings if required.
Router Name	Display the name of the device.
IP	Display the IPv4 address of such router.
Role	"Down" means the function of HA is disabled. "Primary" means such router stands for the primary router in HA. "Secondary" means such router stands for the secondary router in HA.
Stable	"No" means the primary router has not been determined yet. DARP is negotiating. "YES" means the primary router is determined.
WAN	"At Least One UP" means that at least one WAN interface connects to Internet. "All WANs Down" means that no WAN interface connects to Internet.
Sync Status	"Not Ready" means configuration synchronization is unable to execute, or configuration synchronization is disabled, or synchronization initialization executes but fails. "Ready" means configuration synchronization is ready to execute.

	“Progressing” means configuration synchronization is operating. “Fail” means configuration synchronization executed and failed; or wrong model name. “Equal” means the corresponding settings are equal to the primary router.
Cached Time	Display the time period since the last time to get the newest status of other router (except the primary router).

Cick the link of **Router Name**, **IP** or **Details**, the following page will be displayed on the screen.

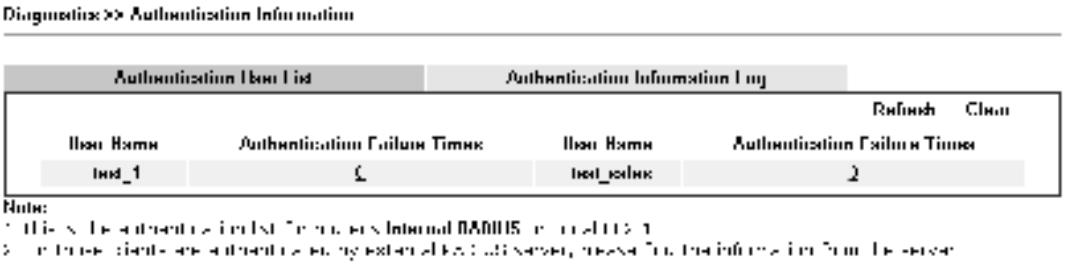


IX-1-16 Authentication Information

Authentication User List

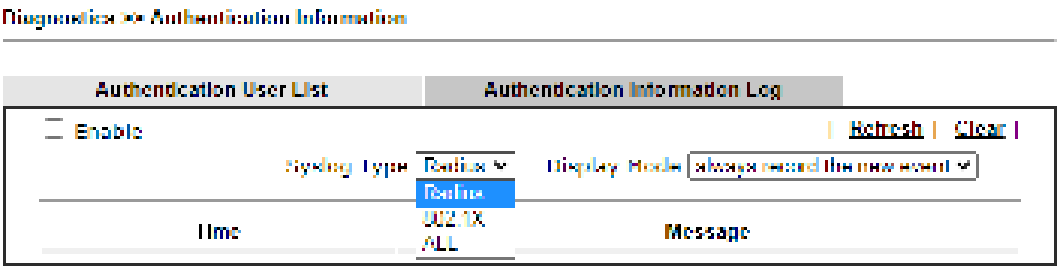
Such page displays authentication jobs made by Internal RADIUS or Local 802.1X.

When the mouse cursor moves to the name link under User Name, the connection message (including authentication failed information) about internal RADIUS or local 802.1X service will be shown by a popped up dialog box.



Authentication Information Log

This page will display the complete authentication log information.



Available settings are explained as follows:

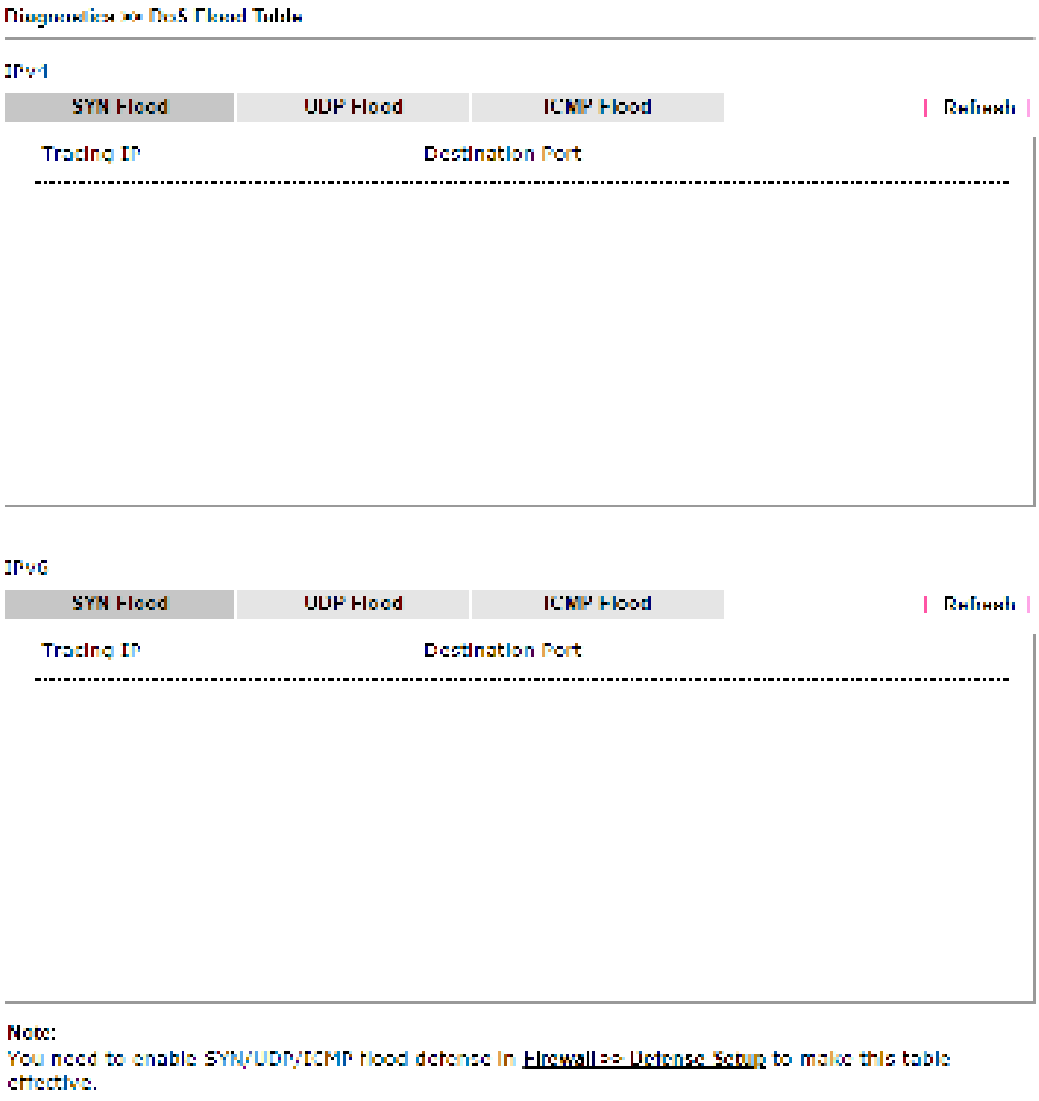
Item	Description
Enable	Check the box to enable such function.
Refresh	Click it to update current page.
Clear	Click it to remove all of the records.
Syslog Type	Specify RADIUS, 802.1X or All to display related authentication information log.
Display Mode	Choose the mode you want to display the related information on the following table. ● **Stop record when fulls**—When the capacity of CVM log is full, the system will stop recording. ● **Always record the new event**—only the newest events will be recorded by the system.
Time	Display the time the user authenticated by Vigor2927 series.
Message	Display authentication information done by Vigor2927 series.

IX-1-17 DoS Flood Table

This page can display content of IP connection detected by DoS Flooding Defense mechanism. It is useful and convenient for network engineers (e.g., MIS engineer) to inspect the network environment to find out if there is any abnormal connection.

Information of IP traced and destination port used for SYN Flood, UDP Flood and ICMP Flood attacks will be detected and shown respectively on different pages.

Moreover, IP address detected and suspected to attack the network system can be blocked shortly by clicking the **Block** button shown on pages of SYN Flood, UDP Flood and ICMP Flood.

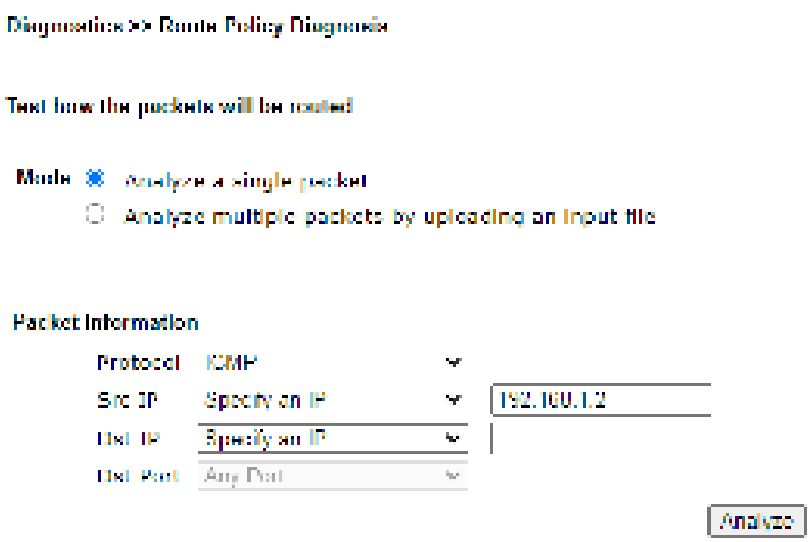


Info

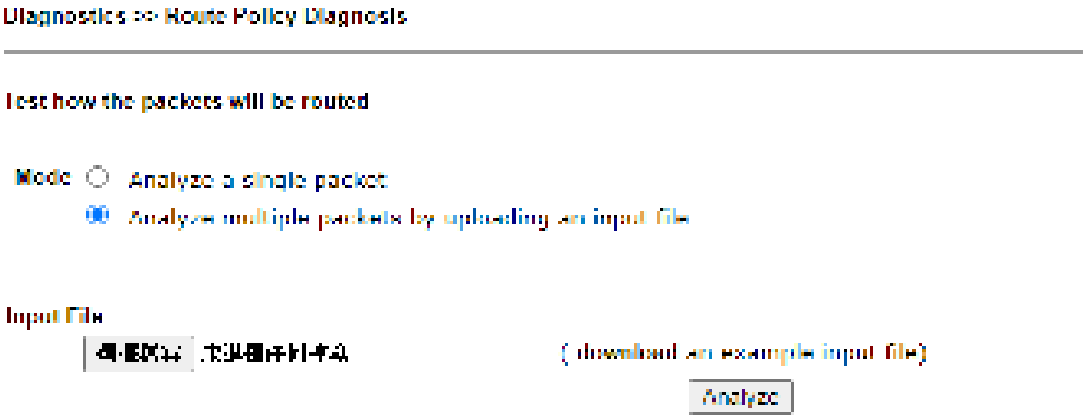
The icon - ( ) - means there is something wrong (e.g., attacking the system) with that IP address.

IX-1-18 Route Policy Diagnosis

With the analysis done by such page, possible path (static route, routing table or policy route) of the packets sent out of the router can be traced.

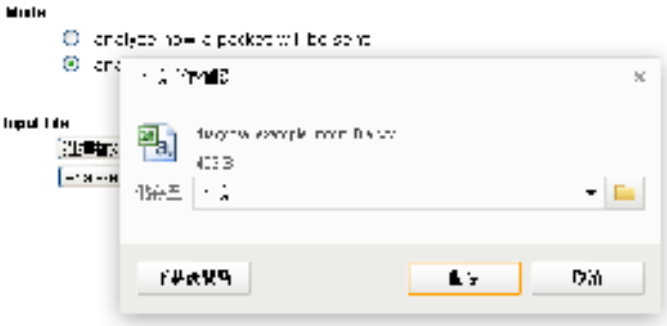


or



Available settings are explained as follows:

Item	Description
Mode	**Analyze a single packet** – Choose such mode to make Vigor router analyze how a single packet will be sent by a route policy. **Analyze multiple packets…** - Choose such mode to make Vigor router analyze how multiple packets in a specified file will be sent by a route policy.
Packet Information	Specify the nature of the packets to be analyzed by Vigor router. **ICMP/UDP/TCP/ANY-** Specify a protocol for diagnosis. **Src IP** – Type an IP address as the source IP.

	Dst IP – Type an IP address as the destination IP. **Dst Port** – Use the drop down list to specify the destination port. **Analyze** – Click it to perform the job of analyzing. The analyzed result will be shown on the page..
Input File	It is available when Analyze multiple packets.. is selected as **Mode.** **Select** – Click the download link to get a blank example file. Then, click such button to select that blank ".csv" file for saving the result of analysis.  **Analyze** – Click it to perform the job of analyzing. The analyzed result will be shown on the page. If required, click **export analysis** to export the result as a file. Note that the analysis was based on the current "load-balance/route policy" settings, we do not guarantee it will be 100% the same as the real case.

IX-2 Checking If the Hardware Status Is OK or Not

Follow the steps below to verify the hardware status.

1. Check the power line and WLAN/LAN cable connections. Refer to "**I-2 Hardware Installation**" for details.
2. Turn on the router. Make sure the **ACT LED** blink once per second and the correspondent **LAN LED** is bright.

3. If not, it means that there is something wrong with the hardware status. Simply back to "**I-2 Hardware Installation**" to execute the hardware installation again. And then, try again.

IX-3 Checking If the Network Connection Settings on Your Computer Is OK or Not

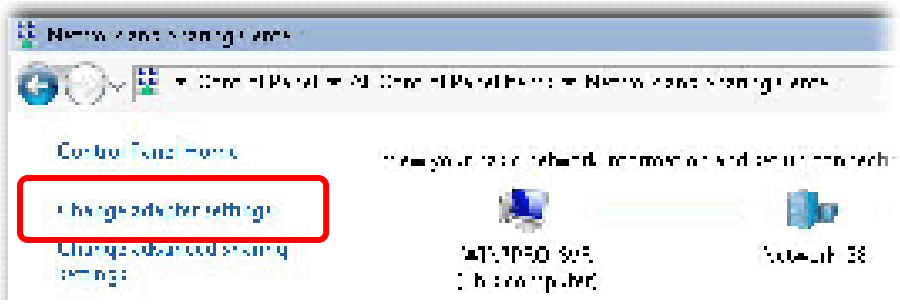
Sometimes the link failure occurs due to the wrong network connection settings. After trying the above section, if the link is stilled failed, please do the steps listed below to make sure the network connection settings is OK.

For Windows

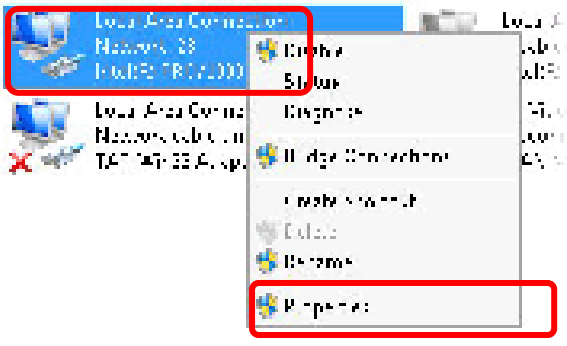
Info	The example is based on Windows 7. As to the examples for other operation systems, please refer to the similar steps or find support notes in www.DrayTek.com.

1. Open **All Programs>>Getting Started>>Control Panel.** Click **Network and Sharing Center.**

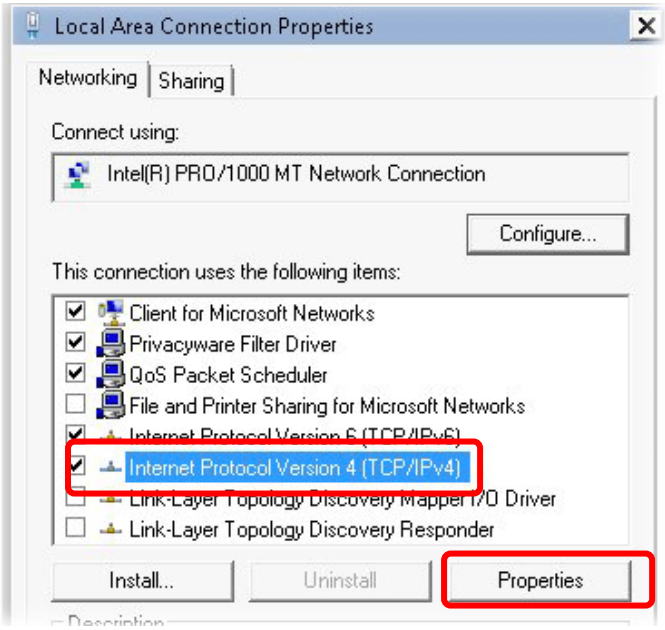
2. In the following window, click **Change adapter settings.**



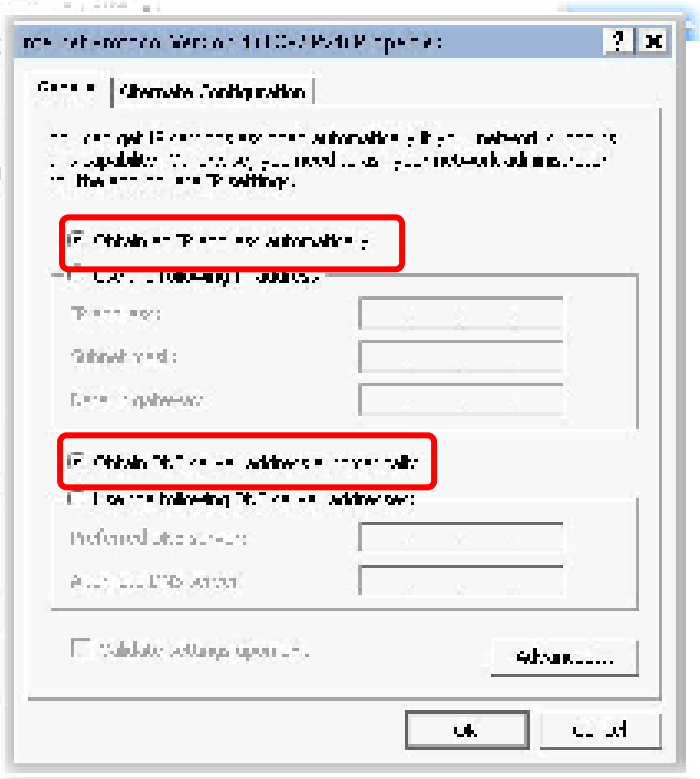
3. Icons of network connection will be shown on the window. Right-click on **Local Area Connection** and click on **Properties.**



4. Select **Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IP)** and then click **Properties.**

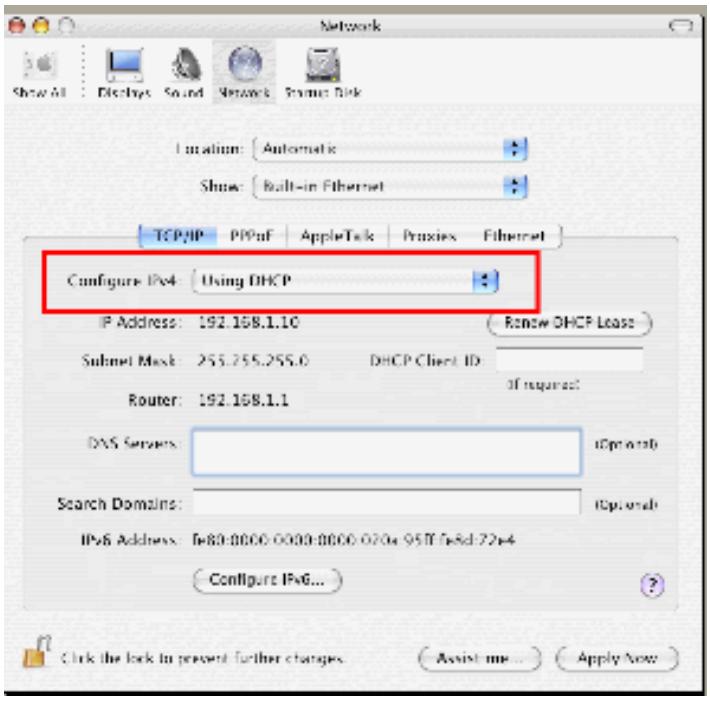


5. Select **Obtain an IP address automatically** and **Obtain DNS server address automatically.** Finally, click **OK.**



For Mac OS

1. Double click on the current used Mac OS on the desktop.
2. Open the **Application** folder and get into **Network**.
3. On the **Network** screen, select **Using DHCP** from the drop down list of Configure IPv4.



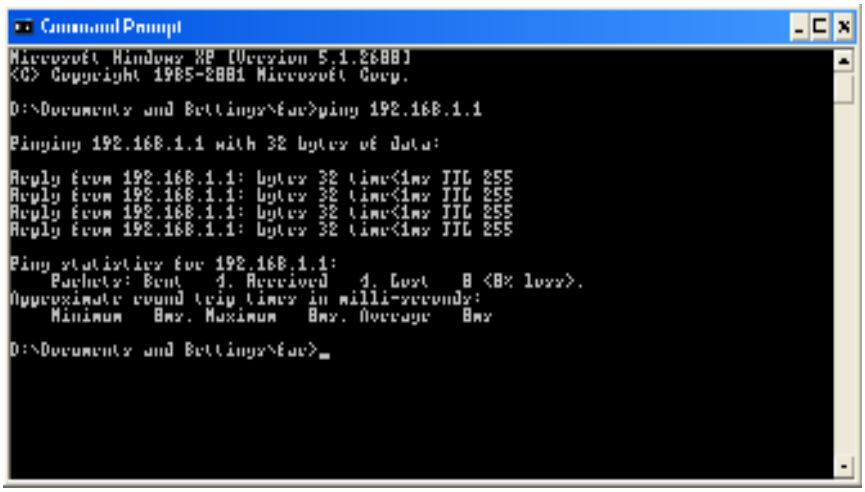
IX-4 Pinging the Router from Your Computer

The default gateway IP address of the router is 192.168.1.1. For some reason, you might need to use "ping" command to check the link status of the router. **The most important thing is that the computer will receive a reply from 192.168.1.1.** If not, please check the IP address of your computer. We suggest you setting the network connection as **get IP automatically**. (Please refer to the previous section IX-3)

Please follow the steps below to ping the router correctly.

For Windows

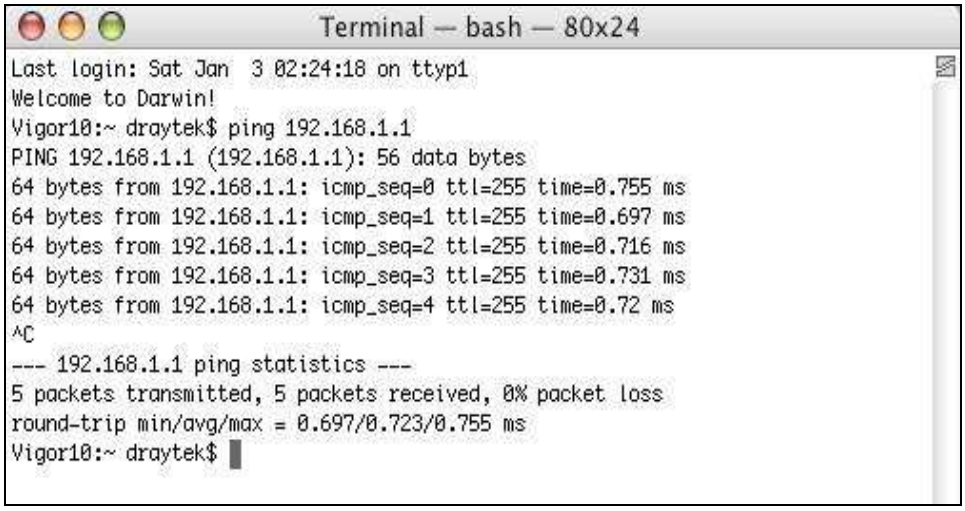
1. Open the **Command** Prompt window (from **Start menu> Run**).
2. Type **command** (for Windows 95/98/ME) or **cmd** (for Windows NT/ 2000/XP/Vista/7). The DOS command dialog will appear.



3. Type ping 192.168.1.1 and press [Enter]. If the link is OK, the line of "**Reply from 192.168.1.1:bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=255**" will appear.
4. If the line does not appear, please check the IP address setting of your computer.

For Mac OS (Terminal)

1. Double click on the current used MacOs on the desktop.
2. Open the **Application** folder and get into **Utilities**.
3. Double click **Terminal**. The Terminal window will appear.
4. Type **ping 192.168.1.1** and press [Enter]. If the link is OK, the line of "**64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=0 ttl=255 time=xxxx ms**" will appear.


Terminal — bash — 80x24
Last login: Sat Jan 3 02:24:18 on ttyp1
Welcome to Darwin!
Vigor10:~ draytek$ ping 192.168.1.1
PING 192.168.1.1 (192.168.1.1): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=0 ttl=255 time=0.755 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=1 ttl=255 time=0.697 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=2 ttl=255 time=0.716 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=3 ttl=255 time=0.731 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=4 ttl=255 time=0.72 ms
^C
--- 192.168.1.1 ping statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 0.697/0.723/0.755 ms
Vigor10:~ draytek$

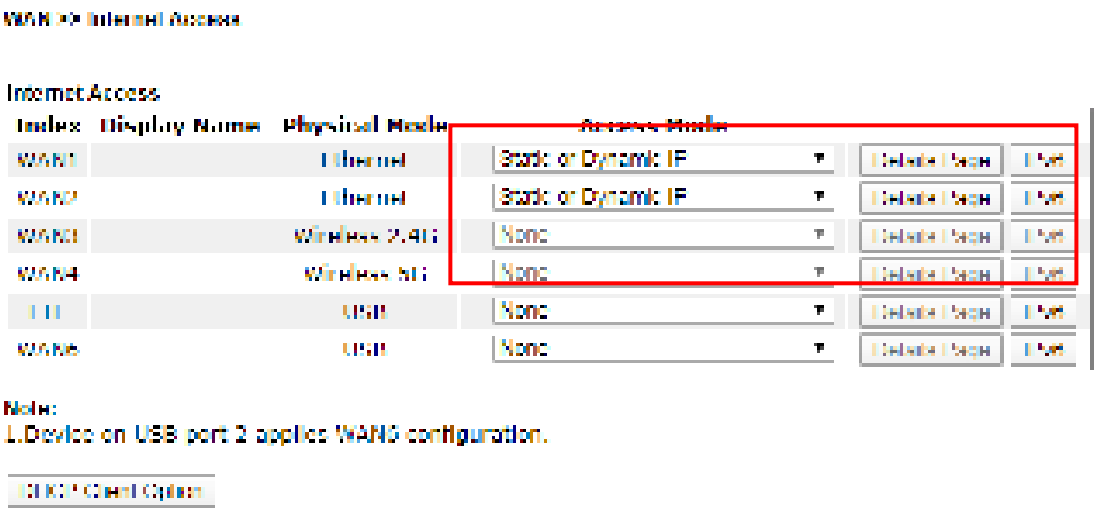
IX-5 Checking If the ISP Settings are OK or Not

If WAN connection cannot be up, check if the LEDs (according to the LED explanations listed on section I-1-1, Indicators and Connectors) are correct or not. If the LEDs are off, please:

- Change the **Physical Type** from **Auto negotiation** to other values (e.g., 100M full duplex).
- Next, change the physical type of modem (e.g., DSL/FTTX(GPON)/Cable modem) offered by ISP with the same value configured in Vigor router. Check if the LEDs on Vigor router are on or not.
- If not, please install an additional switch for connecting both Vigor router and the modem offered by ISP. Then, check if the LEDs on Vigor router are on or not.
- If the problem of LEDs cannot be solved by the above measures, please contact with the nearest reseller, or send an e-mail to DrayTek FAE for technical support.
- Check if the settings offered by ISP are configured well or not.

When the LEDs are on and correct, yet the WAN connection still cannot be up, please:

- Open **WAN >> Internet Access** page and then check whether the ISP settings are set correctly. Click **Details Page** of WAN1~WAN6 to review the settings that you configured previously.



IX-6 Problems for 3G/4G Network Connection

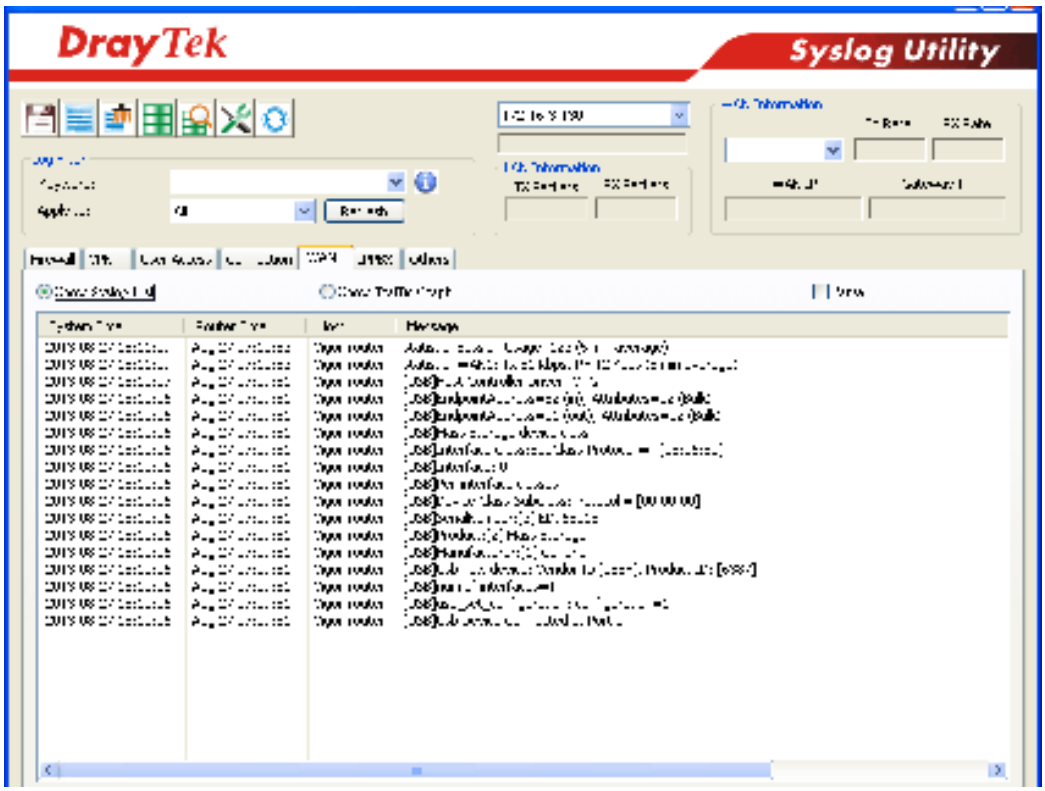
When you have trouble in using 3G/4G network transmission, please check the following:

Check if USB LED lights on or off

You have to wait about 15 seconds after inserting 3G/4G USB Modem into your Vigor2927. Later, the USB LED will light on which means the installation of USB Modem is successful. If the USB LED does not light on, please remove and reinsert the modem again. If it still fails, restart Vigor2927.

USB LED lights on but the network connection does not work

Check the PIN Code of SIM card is disabled or not. Please use the utility of 3G/4G USB Modem to disable PIN code and try again. If it still fails, it might be the compliance problem of system. Please open DrayTek Syslog Tool to capture the connection information (WAN Log) and send the page (similar to the following graphic) to the service center of DrayTek.



Transmission Rate is not fast enough

Please connect your Notebook with 3G/4G USB Modem to test the connection speed to verify if the problem is caused by Vigor2927. In addition, please refer to the manual of 3G/4G USB Modem for LED Status to make sure if the modem connects to Internet via HSDPA mode. If you want to use the modem indoors, please put it on the place near the window to obtain better signal receiving.

IX-7 Backing to Factory Default Setting If Necessary

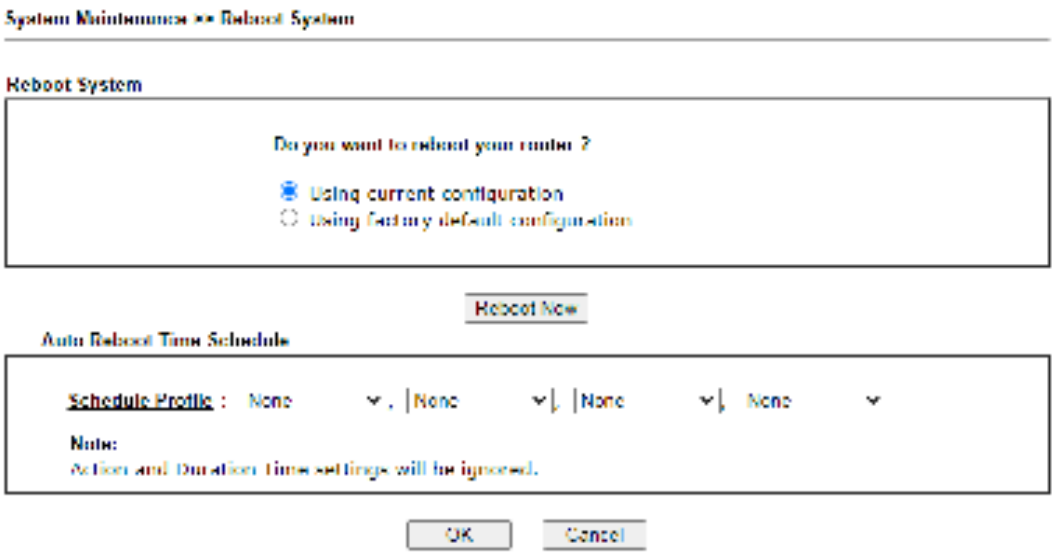
Sometimes, a wrong connection can be improved by returning to the default settings. Try to reset the router by software or hardware. Such function is available in **Admin Mode** only.

Info	After pressing factory default setting, you will loose all settings you did before. Make sure you have recorded all useful settings before you pressing. The password of factory default is null.

Software Reset

You can reset the router to factory default via Web page. Such function is available in **Admin Mode** only.

Go to **System Maintenance** and choose **Reboot System** on the web page. The following screen will appear. Choose **Using factory default configuration** and click **Reboot Now**. After few seconds, the router will return all the settings to the factory settings.



Hardware Reset

While the router is running (ACT LED blinking), press the **Factory Reset** button and hold for more than 5 seconds. When you see the **ACT** LED blinks rapidly, please release the button. Then, the router will restart with the default configuration.

After restore the factory default setting, you can configure the settings for the router again to fit your personal request.

IX-8 Contacting DrayTek

If the router still cannot work correctly after trying many efforts, please contact your dealer for further help right away. For any questions, please feel free to send e-mail to support@DrayTek.com.

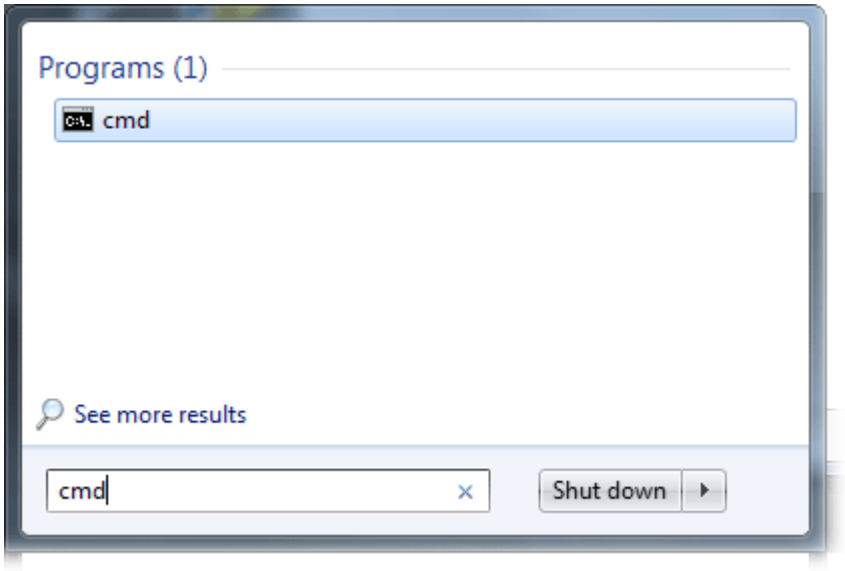
Part X Telnet Commands

Accessing Telnet of Vigor2927

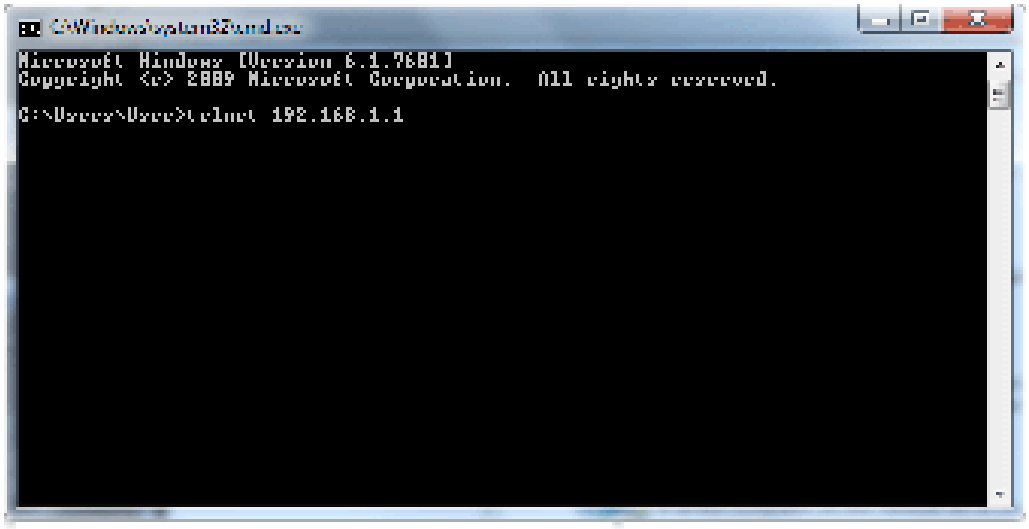
This chapter also gives you a general description for accessing telnet and describes the firmware versions for the routers explained in this manual.

Info	For Windows 7 user, please make sure the Windows Features of Telnet Client has been turned on under **Control Panel>>Programs**.

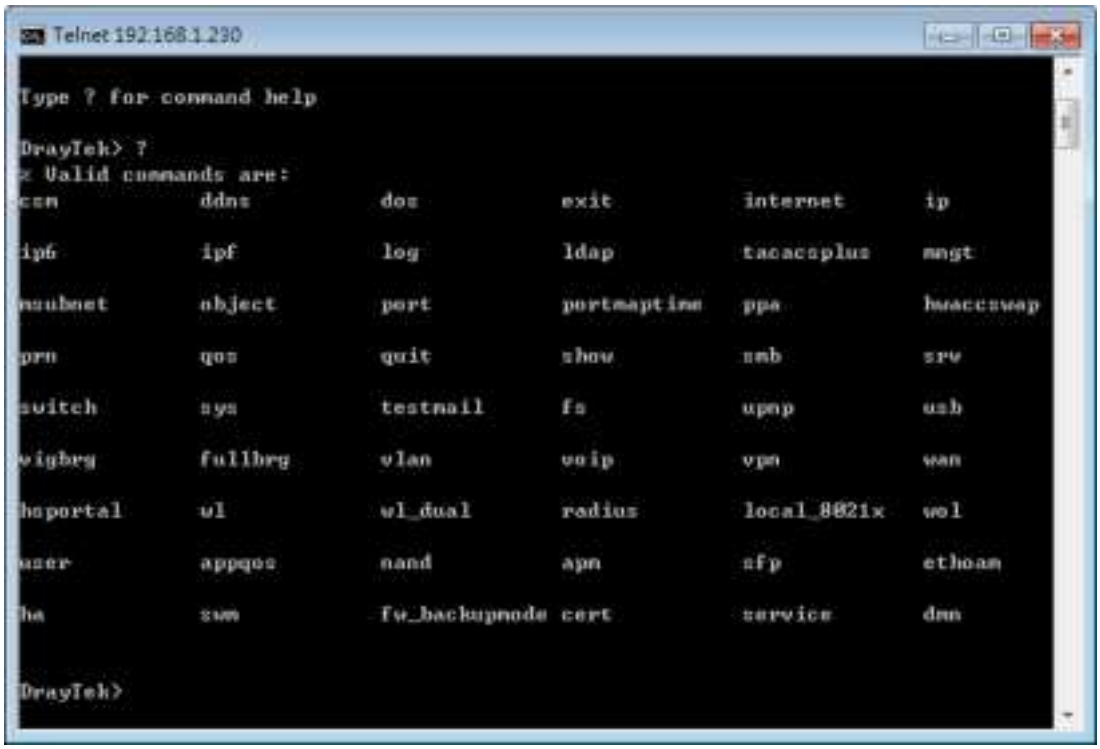
Type **cmd** and press Enter. The Telnet terminal will be open later.



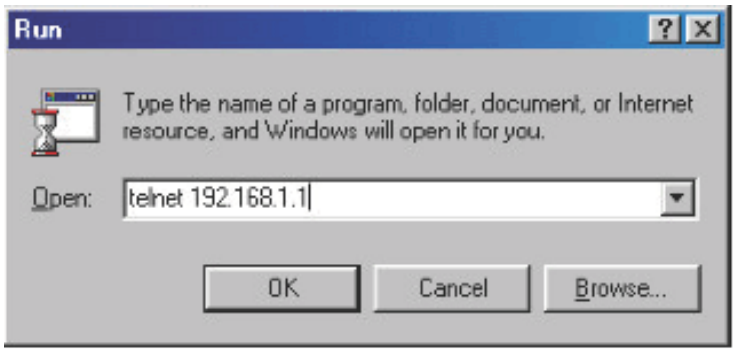
In the following window, type **Telnet 192.168.1.1** as below and press Enter. Note that the IP address in the example is the default address of the router. If you have changed the default, enter the current IP address of the router.



Next, enter admin/admin for Account/Password. Then, enter **?**. You will see a list of valid/common commands depending on the router that your use.



For users using previous Windows system (e.g., 2000/XP), simply click **Start >> Run** and type **Telnet 192.168.1.1** in the Open box as below. Next, type admin/admin for Account/Password. And, type **?** to get a list of valid/common commands.



Telnet Command: csm appe prof

Commands under CSM allow you to set CSM profile to define policy profiles for different policy of IM (Instant Messenger)/P2P (Peer to Peer) application.

"csm appe prof " is used to configure the APP Enforcement Profile name. Such profile will be applied in **Default Rule** of **Firewall>>General Setup** for filtering.

Syntax

csm appe prof -i *INDEX [-v | -n NAME| setdefault]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
INDEX	It means to specify the index number of CSM profile, from 1 to 32.
- v	It means to view the configuration of the CSM profile.
- n	It means to set a name for the CSM profile.
NAME	It means to specify a name for the CSM profile, less then 15 characters.
setdefault	Reset to default settings.

Example

```
> csm appe prof –i 1 –n games
The name of APPE Profile 1 was setted.
```

Telnet Command: csm appe set

It is used to configure group settings for IM/P2P/Protocol and Others in APP Enforcement Profile.

Syntax

csm appe set *-i INDEX -v GROUP*

csm appe set *-i INDEX -e AP_IDX*

csm appe set *-i INDEX -d AP_IDX*

csm appe set *-i INDEX -p AP_IDX*

csm appe set *-i INDEX -q AP_IDX*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
INDEX	Specify the index number of CSM profile, from 1 to 32.
-v GROUP	View the IM/P2P/Protocol and Others configuration of the CSM profile. GROUP - Specify the category of the application. Available options are: IM, P2P, Protocol and Others.
-e AP_IDX	Enable to block specific application. AP_IDX - Specify the index number of the APP.
-d AP_IDX	Disable to block specific application. AP_IDX - Specify the index number of the APP.
-p AP_IDX	Enable the policy route for the action of specific application.

	AP_IDX - Specify the index number of the APP.
-q AP_IDX	Disable the policy route for the action of specific application. AP_IDX - Specify the index number of the APP.
AP_IDX	Each application has independent index number for identification in CLI command. Specify the index number of the application here. If you have no idea of the inex number, do the following (Take IM as an example): Type "csm appe set -I 1 -v IM", the system will list all of the index numbers of the applications categorized under IM.

Example

```
> csm appe set –i 1 –p 1
The index of APP is not support for Policy Route!
>
```

Telnet Command: csm appe show

It is used to display group (IM/P2P/Protocol and Others) information APP Enforcement Profile.

Syntax

csm appe show *[-a| -i| -p| -t| -m]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-a	View the configuration status for All groups.
-i	View the configuration status of IM group.
-p	View the configuration status of P2P group.
-t	View the configuration status of protocol group.
-m	View the configuration status of Others group.

Example

```
> csm appe show –t
          Type     Index                  Name        Version
-------------------------------------------------------------------
      Protocol       43                   BGP              4
      Protocol       44                   DNS
      Protocol       45                   FTP
      Protocol       46                   GIT
      Protocol       47                 H.323
      Protocol       48                  HTTP            1.1
      Protocol       49           IBM Informix
      Protocol       50                IBM DB2
      Protocol       51                  ICMP
      Protocol       52     IMAP/IMAP STARTTLS             4.1
      Protocol       53                   IRC          2.4.0
      Protocol       54          Microsoft SQL
      Protocol       55                  MQTT
```

```
      Protocol       56                MySQL
      Protocol       57                 NNTP
      Protocol       58                NNTPS
      Protocol       59                  NTP
      Protocol       60               Oracle            11g
      Protocol       61     POP3/POP3 STARTTLS
      Protocol       62            PostgreSQL

      Protocol       63                 QUIC           Q025
--- MORE ---     ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page]
```

Telnet Command: csm appe config

It is used to display the configuration status (enabled or disabled) for IM/P2P/Protocol/Other applications.

Syntax

csm appe config -v *INDEX [-i| -p| -t| -m]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
INDEX	Specify the index number of CSM profile, from 1 to 32.
-i	View the configuration status of IM group.
-p	View the configuration status of P2P group.
-t	View the configuration status of protocol group.
-m	View the configuration status of Others group.

Example

```
> csm appe config -v 1 -m
Group            Type     Index               Name        Enable
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
   OTHERS        Tunneling       74          CloudFlare       Disable
   OTHERS        Tunneling       75            DNSCrypt       Disable
   OTHERS        Tunneling       76            DynaPass       Disable
   OTHERS        Tunneling       77            FreeGate       Disable
   OTHERS        Tunneling       78       Hotspot Shield       Disable
   OTHERS        Tunneling       79          HTTP Tunnel       Disable
   OTHERS        Tunneling       80           HTTP Proxy       Disable
   OTHERS        Tunneling       81      LogMeIn Hamachi       Disable
   OTHERS        Tunneling       82            MS Teredo       Disable
   OTHERS        Tunneling       83              OpenDNS       Disable
   OTHERS        Tunneling       84              OpenVPN       Disable
   OTHERS        Tunneling       85               PGPNet       Disable
   OTHERS        Tunneling       86          Ping Tunnel       Disable
   OTHERS        Tunneling       87           RealTunnel       Disable
   OTHERS        Tunneling       88              Skyfire       Disable
   OTHERS        Tunneling       89        SOCKS4/SOCKS5       Disable
   OTHERS        Tunneling       90        SoftEther VPN       Disable
   OTHERS        Tunneling       91              TinyVPN       Disable
   OTHERS        Tunneling       92                 Tor       Disable
   OTHERS        Tunneling       93             UltraVPN       Disable
   OTHERS        Tunneling       94                 VNN       Disable
```

```
   OTHERS        Tunneling       95      Wujie/UltraSurf       Disable
--- MORE ---   ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page] --
>
```

Telnet Command: csm appe interface

It is used to configure APPE signature download interface.

Syntax

csm appe interface *<AUTO/ WAN#>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
AUTO	Vigor router specifies WAN interface automatically.
WAN	Specify the WAN interface for signature downloading.

Example

```
> csm appe interface wan1
Download interface is set as "WAN1" now.
> csm appe interface auto
Download interface is set as "auto-selected" now.
```

Telnet Command: csm appe email

It is used to set notification e-mail for APPE signature based on the settings configured in **System Maintenance>>SysLog/Mail Alert Setup** (in which, the box of **APPE Signature** is checkd under **Enable E-Mail Alert**).

Syntax

csm appe email *<-e| -d| -s>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-e	Enable notification e-mail mechanism.
-d	Disable notification e-mail mechanism.
-s	Send an example e-mail.

Example

```
> csm appe email –e
Enable APPE email.
```

Telnet Command: csm ucf

It is used to configure settings for URL control filter profile.

Syntax

csm ucf show
csm ucf setdefault
csm ucf msg *MSG*
csm ucf obj *INDEX <-n PROFILE_NAME | -I [P/B/A] | uac | wf >*
csm ucf obj *INDEX -n PROFILE_NAME*
csm ucf obj *INDEX -p VALUE*
csm ucf obj *INDEX -I P/B/A*
csm ucf obj *INDEX uac*
csm ucf obj *INDEX wf*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
show	It means to display all of the profiles.
setdefault	It means to return to default settings for all of the profile.
msg MSG	It means de set the administration message. MSG means the content (less than 255 characters) of the message itself.
obj	It means to specify the object for the profile.
INDEX	It means to specify the index number of CSM profile, from 1 to 8.
-n	It means to set the profile name.
PROFILE_NAME	It means to specify the name of the profile (less than 16 characters)
-p	Set the priority (defined by the number specified in VALUE) for the profile.

VALUE	Number 0 to 3 represent different conditions. 0: It means Bundle: Pass. 1: It means Bundle: Block. 2: It means Either: URL Access Control First. 3: It means Either: Web Feature First.
-l	It means the log type of the profile. They are: P: Pass, B: Block, A: All,
MSG	It means to specify the Administration Message, less then 255 characters
uac	It means to set URL Access Control part.
wf	It means to set Web Feature part.

Example

```
> csm ucf obj 1 -n game -l B
Profile Index: 1 Profile Name:[game]
> csm ucf show
URL Content Filter Profile Table:
Profile       Name         Profile       Name
-------------------------   -------------------------
[1]     [game          ]   [5]     [             ]
[2]     [              ]   [6]     [             ]
[3]     [              ]   [7]     [             ]
[4]     [              ]   [8]     [             ]
-------------------------   -------------------------

Administration Message (Max 255 characters):
-----------------------------------------------
<body><center><br><p>The requested Web page has been blocked by URL Content
Filt
er.<p>Please contact your system administrator for further
information.</center>
</body>
```

Telnet Command: csm ucf obj INDEX uac

It means to configure the settings regarding to URL Access Control (uac).

Syntax

csm ucf obj *INDEX uac -v*
csm ucf obj *INDEX uac -e*
csm ucf obj *INDEX uac -d*
csm ucf obj *INDEX uac -a P| B*
csm ucf obj *INDEX uac -i E| D*
csm ucf obj *INDEX uac -o KEY_WORD_Object_Index*
csm ucf obj *INDEX uac -g KEY_WORD_Group_Index*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
INDEX	It means to specify the index number of CSM profile, from 1 to 8.
- v	It means to view the protocol configuration of the CSM profile.
-e	It means to enable the function of URL Access Control.
-d	It means to disable the function of URL Access Control.
-a	Set the action of specific application, P or B. B: Block. The web access meets the URL Access Control will be blocked. P: Pass. The web access meets the URL Access Control will be passed.
-i	Prevent the web access from any IP address. E: Enable the function. The Internet access from any IP address will be blocked. D: Disable the function.
-o	Set the keyword object.
KEY_WORD_Object_Index	Specify the index number of the object profile.
-g	Set the keyword group.
KEY_WORD_Group_Index	Specify the index number of the group profile.

Example

```
> csm ucf obj 1 uac -i E
Log:[block]
Priority Select : [Either : Url Access Control First]
------------------------------------------------
URL Access Control
[ ]Enable URL Access Control    Action:[pass]
[v]Prevent web access from IP address.
  No  Obj NO.    Object Name
 --- -------- ---------------------------------

  No  Grp NO.    Group Name
 --- -------- ---------------------------------

> csm ucf obj 1 uac -a B
Log:[block]
Priority Select : [Either : Url Access Control First]
------------------------------------------------
URL Access Control
[ ]Enable URL Access Control    Action:[block]
[v]Prevent web access from IP address.
  No  Obj NO.    Object Name
 --- -------- ---------------------------------

  No  Grp NO.    Group Name
 --- -------- ---------------------------------
>
```

Telnet Command: csm ucf obj INDEX wf

It means to configure the settings regarding to Web Feature (wf).

Syntax

csm ucf obj *INDEX wf -v*
csm ucf obj *INDEX wf -e*
csm ucf obj *INDEX wf -d*
csm ucf obj *INDEX wf -a P| B*
csm ucf obj *INDEX wf -s WEB_FEATURE*
csm ucf obj *INDEX wf -u WEB_FEATURE*
csm ucf obj *INDEX wf -f File_Extension_Object_index*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
INDEX	It means to specify the index number of CSM profile, from 1 to 8.
-v	It means to view the protocol configuration of the CSM profile.
-e	It means to enable the restriction of web feature.
-d	It means to disable the restriction of web feature.
-a P| B	Set the action of web feature, P or B. B: Block. The web access meets the web feature will be blocked. P: Pass. The web access meets the web feature will be passed.
-s WEB_FEATURE	It means to enable the the Web Feature configuration. Features available for configuration are: c: Cookie p: Proxy u: Upload
-u WEB_FEATURE	It means to cancel the web feature configuration.
-f	It means to set the file extension object index number.
File_Extension_Object_index	Enter the index number (1 to 8) for the file extension object.

Example

```
> csm ucf obj 1 wf -s c
-----------------------------------------------
Web Feature
[ ]Enable Restrict Web Feature   Action:[pass]

File Extension Object Index : [0] Profile Name : []

[V] Cookie [ ] Proxy [ ] Upload
```

Telnet Command: csm wcf

It means to configure the settings regarding to web control filter (wcf).

Syntax

csm wcf show
csm wcf look
csm wcf cache
csm wcf server WCF_SERVER

csm wcf msg *MSG*
csm wcf setdefault
csm wcf obj *INDEX -v*
csm wcf obj *INDEX -a P| B*
csm wcf obj *INDEX -n PROFILE_NAME*
csm wcf obj *INDEX -l P| B| A*
csm wcf obj *INDEX -o KEY_WORD Object Index*
csm wcf obj *INDEX -g KEY_WORD Group Index*
csm wcf obj *INDEX -w E| D| P| B*
csm wcf obj *INDEX -s CATEGORY| WEB_GROUP*
csm wcf obj *INDEX -u CATEGORY| WEB_GROUP*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
show	It means to display the web content filter profiles.
Look	It means to display the license information of WCF.
Cache	It means to set the cache level for the profile.
Server WCF_SERVER	It means to set web content filter server.
Msg MSG	It means de set the administration message. MSG means the content (less than 255 characters) of the message itself.
setdefault	It means to return to default settings for all of the profile.
obj	It means to specify the object profile.
INDEX	It means to specify the index number of web content filter profile, from 1 to 8.
- v	It means to view the web content filter profile.
-a P| B	Set the action of web content filter profile, P or B. B: Block. The web access meets the web feature will be blocked. P: Pass. The web access meets the web feature will be passed.
-n	It means to set the profile name.
PROFILE_NAME	It means to specify the name of the profile (less than 16 characters)
-l P| B| A	It means the log type of the profile. They are: P: Pass, B: Block, A: All
-o	Set the keyword object.
KEY_WORD_Object_Index	Specify the index number of the object profile.
-g	Set the keyword group.
KEY_WORD_Group_Index	Specify the index number of the group profile.
-w	It means to set the action for the black and white list. E:Enable, D:Disable, P:Pass, B:Block
-s	It means to choose the items under CATEGORY or WEB_GROUP.
-u	It means to discard items under CATEGORY or WEB_GROUP.
WEB_GROUP	Child_Protection, Leisure, Business, Chating, Computer Internet, Other
CATEGORY	Includes:

	"Advertisement & Pop-Ups", "Alcohol & Tobacco", "Anonymizers", "Arts", "Business", "Transportation", "Chat", "Forums & Newsgroups", "Compromised", "Computers & Technology", "Criminal & Activity", "Dating & Personals", "Down sites", "Education", "Entertainment", "Finance", "Gambling", "Games", "Government", "Hate & Intolerance", "Health & Medicine", "Illegal Drug", "Job Search", "Streaming Media & Downloads", "News", "Non-profits & NGOs", "Nudity", "Persional Sites", "Phishing & Fraud", "Politics", "Pornography & Sexually explicit", "Real Estate", "Religion", "Restaurants & Dining", "Search engines & Portals", "Shopping", "Social Networking", "Spam sites", "Sports", "Malware", "Translators", "Travel", "Violence", "Weapons", "Web-Based Email", "General", "Leisure & Recreation", "Botnets", "Cults", "Fashion & Beauty", "Greeting Cards", "Hacking", "Illegal Softwares", "Image Sharing", "Information Security", "Instant Messaging", "Network Errors", "Parked Domains", "Peer-to-Peer", "Private IP Address", "School Cheating", "Sex Education", "Tasteless", "Child Abuse Images", "Uncategorised Sites"

Example

```
> csm wcf obj 1 -n test_wcf
Profile Index: 1
Profile Name:[test_wcf]
[]White/Black list
Action:[block]
  No  Obj NO.    Object Name
 --- -------- ---------------------------------
  No  Grp NO.    Group Name
 --- -------- ---------------------------------
Action:[block]
Log:[block]
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Security
  [ ]Anonymizers                  [ ]Compromised                  [ ]Phi
shing & Fraud
  [ ]Spam Sites                   [ ]Malware                      [ ]Bot
nets
  [ ]Network Errors                [ ]Parked Domains
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Parent Control
  [v]Alcohol & Tobacco             [v]Chat                        [v]Cri
minal & Activity
  [v]Hate & Intolerance            [v]Illegal Drug                 [v]Nud
ity
  [v]Pornography & Sexually Explicit  [v]Violence                   [v]Wea
pons
  [v]Cults                        [v]School Cheating              [v]Sex
 Education
  [v]Tasteless                    [v]Child Abuse Images
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Productivity
  [ ]Advertisement & Pop-Ups       [ ]Computers & Technology       [ ]Dat
ing & Personals
  [ ]Download Sites                [ ]Finance                      [ ]Gam
bling
  [ ]Games                        [ ]Job Search                   [ ]Str
eaming Media & Downloads
  [ ]Shopping                     [ ]Social Networking            [ ]Spo
rts
  [ ]Hacking                      [ ]Illegal Softwares            [ ]Ima
ge Sharing
  [ ]Instant Messaging             [ ]Peer-to-Peer
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
General Use
  [ ]Arts                         [ ]Business                     [ ]Tra
nsportation
```

```
  [ ]Forums & Newsgroups            [ ]Education                    [ ]Ent
ertainment
  [ ]Government                    [ ]Health & Medicine             [ ]New
s
  [ ]Non-profits & NGOs             [ ]Persional Sites              [ ]Pol
itics & Law
  [ ]Real Estate                   [ ]Religion                     [ ]Res
taurants & Dining
  [ ]Search Engines & Portals       [ ]Translators                  [ ]Tra
vel
  [ ]Web-Based Email               [ ]General                      [ ]Lei
sure & Recreation
  [ ]Fashion & Beauty              [ ]Greeting Cards               [ ]Inf
ormation Security
  [ ]Private IP Address            [ ]Uncategorised Sites
>
```

Telnet Command: csm dnsf

It means to configure the settings regarding to DNS filter.

Syntax

csm dnsf enable *ON| OFF*
csm dnsf syslog *N| P| B| A*
csm dnsf wcf *<INDEX>*
csm dnsf ucf *<INDEX>*
csm dnsf cachetime *<CACHE_TIME>*
csm dnsf blockpage *show/ on/ off*
csm dnsf profile_show
csm dnsf profile_edit *INDEX*
csm dnsf profile_edit *INDEX -n <PROFILE_NAME>*
csm dnsf profile_edit *INDEX -l <P| B| A>*
csm dnsf profile_edit *INDEX -w <WCF_PROFILE>*
csm dnsf profile_edit *INDEX -u <UCF_PROFILE>*
csm dnsf profile_edit *INDEX -c <CACHE_TIME>*
csm dnsf profile_setdefault
csm dnsf local_bw *<e/ d/ p/ b/ a/ g/ o/ s/ c>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
enable	Enable or disable DNS Filter. ON: enable. OFF: disable.
syslog	Determine the content of records transmitting to Syslog. P: Pass. Records for the packets passing through DNS filter will be sent to Syslog. B: Block. Records for the packets blocked by DNS filter will be sent to Syslog. A: All. Records for the packets passing through or blocked by DNS filter will be sent to Syslog. N: None. No record will be sent to Syslog.
wcf <INDEX>	Specify a WCF profile (1 to 8) as the base of DNS filtering. Type a number to indicate the index number of WCF profile (1 is first profile, 2 is second profile, and so on ...).
ucf <INDEX>	Specify a UCF profile (1 to 8) as the base of DNS filtering. Type a

	number to indicate the index number of UCF profile (1 is first profile, 2 is second profile, and so on ...).
cachetime <CACHE_TIME>	CACHE_TIME: It means to set the time for cache to live (available values are 1 to 24; 1 is one hour, 2 is two hours, and so on ...) for DNS filter. OFF is no cache ; AUTO is using TTL from pkt.
blockpage <value>	DNS sends block page for redirect port. When a web page is blocked by DNS filter, the router system will send a message page to describe that the page is not allowed to be visisted. ON: Enable the function of displaying message page. OFF: Disable the function of displaying message page. SHOW: Display the function of displaying message page is ON or OFF.
profile_show	Display the table of the DNS filter profile.
profile_edit	Modify the content of the DNS filter profile.
-n <PROFILE_NAME>	PROFILE_NAME: Enter the name of the DNS filter profile that you want to modify.
-l <P/B/A>	Specify the log type of the profile. P: Pass. B: Block. A: All.
-w <WCF_PROFILE>	WCF_PROFILE: Enter the index number of the WCF profile.
-u <UCF_PROFILE>	UCF_PROFILE: Enter the index number of the UCF profile.
-c <CACHE_TIME>	-c means to set the cache time for DNS filter. CACHE_TIME: It means to set the time for cache to live (available values are 1 to 24; 1 is one hour, 2 is two hours, and so on ...) for DNS filter.
profile_setdefault	Reset to factory default setting.
local_bw <e/d/p/b/s/c>	Set the Black/White List of DNS Filter Local Setting. e: Enable the function of black/white list. d: Disable the function of black/white list. p: Set the action as "Pass". b: Set the action as "Block". s: Show the config setting. c: Clear the config setting and reset to factory default settings.
local_bw a <type index> <START_IP><END/MASK_IP>	Set the address type for Black/White List of DNS Filter. type index: Enter 0/1/2/3/4. In which, 0=mask, 1=single, 2=any, 3=range, 4=group and objects <START_IP>: Enter an IP address as a starting point. <END/MASK_IP>: Enter an IP address as an ending point.
local_bw g <item number><group index>	Select the group index for Black/White List of DNS Filter. item_number: 1 or 2 (group 1 or group 2) group_index: 1 to 192
local_bw o <item number><group index>	Select the object index for Black/White List of DNS Filter. item_number: 1 or 2 (object 1 or object 2) object_index: 1 to 32

Example

```
> csm dnsf local_bw e 1
Enable the Block and White List.
> csm dnsf wcf 1
dns service set up!!!
> csm dnsf cachetime auto
use TTL from pkt!!!
> csm dnsf local_bw a 0 192.168.1.20 255.255.255.0
Address Type: 0:mask, 1:single, 2:any, 3:range, 4:object and group
Set the [MASK] Address type
```

```
> csm dnsf profile_edit 1 -n testformarket
Profile Index: 1
Profile Name:[testformarket]

Log:[block]

WCF Profile Index: 0

UCF Profile Index: 0
```

Telnet Command: ddns enable

Enable/disable the DDNS service.

Syntax

ddns enable *<0/ 1>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
Enable <0/ 1>	Enable or disable DDNS service. 1: enable. 0: disable.

Example

```
> ddns enable 1
 Enable Dynamic DNS Setup
>
```

Telnet Command: ddns set

This command allows users to set Dynamica DNS account.

Syntax

ddns set *option <value>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-i <value>	It means index number of Dynamic DNS Account. <value>=1~6
-E <value>	It means to enable /disable Dynamic DNS Account. <value>=0~1 0: Disable 1: Enable
-W <value>	It means to specify WAN Interface. <value>=1~6 1: WAN1 First 2: WAN1 Only 3: WAN2 First 4: WAN2 Only 5: WAN3 First 6: WAN3 Only example: To set WAN Interface: WAN1 First
-L <value>	It means to type Login Name.

	[value]: limit up to 64 characters
-P <value>	It means to type Password. [value]: limit up to 24 characters
-C <value>	It means to enable /disable Wildcards. <value>=0~1 0: Disable 1: Enable
-B <value>	It means to enable / disable Backup MX. <value>=0~1 0: Disable 1: Enable
-M <value>	It means to type Mail Extender. [value]: limit up to 60 characters
-R <value>	It means to type Determine Real WAN IP. <value>=0~1 0: WAN IP, 1: Internet IP
-S <value>	It means to specify Servive Provider. If user want to set User-Defined page, value must select 1. <value>= 1~19 1: User-Defined 2:3322 DDNS (www.3322.org) 3: ChangeIP.com (www.changeip.com) 4:ddns.com.cn (www.ddns.com.cn) 5: DtDNS (www.dtdns.com) 6: dyn.com (www.dyn.com) 7: DynAccess (www.dynaccess.com) 8: dynami.co.za (www.dynami.co.za) 9: freedns.afraid.org (freedns.afraid.org) 10: NO-IP.COM Free (www.no-ip.com) 11: opendns.com (www.opendns.com) 12: OVH (www.ovh.com) 13: Strato (www.strato.eu) 14: TwoDNS (www.twodns.de) 15: TZO (www.tzo.com) 16: ubddns.org (ubddns.org) 17: Viettel DDNS (vddns.vn) 18: vigorddns.com (www.vigorddns.com) 19: ZoneEdit DDNS (dynamic.zoneedit.com)
T <value>	It means to type Servive Type. <value>= 1~3 1: Dynamic 2: Custom 3: Static
-D <Host Name> <sub Domain Name>	It means to type Domain Name. i.e: Account index 1 setting Domain Name for Dynamic Service Type >> ddns set -i 1 -T 1 -D "host ddns.com.cn" i.e: Account index 2 setting Domain Name for Custom Service Type >> ddns set -i 2 -T 2 -D "domain name" i.e: Account index 3 setting Domain Name for Static Service Type

	>> ddns set -i 3 -T 3 -D "domain name"
-H <value>	It means to type User-Defined Provider Host. <value>= limit up to 64 characters
-A <value>	It means to type User-Defined Service API. <value>= limit up to 256 characters
-a <value>	It means to type User-Defined Auth Type. <value>=0~1 0: basic 1: URL
-N <value>	It means to type User-Defined Connection Type. <value>=0~1 0: Http 1: Https
-O <value>	It means to type User-Defined Server Response. <value>: limit up to 32 characters

Example

```
> ddns set –i 1 –S 6 –T 1 –D "hostname dnsalias.net" –L user1 –P pwd1
> Save OK
```

Telnet Command: ddns log

Displays the DDNS log.

Example

```
>ddns log
>
```

Telnet Command: ddns time

Sets and displays the DDNS time.

Syntax

ddns time *<update in minutes>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
Update in minutes	Enter the value as DDNS time. The range is from 1 to 14400.

Example

```
> ddns time
ddns time <update in minutes>
Valid: 1 ~ 1440
%Now: 1440
> ddns time 1000
ddns time <update in minutes>
Valid: 1 ~ 1440
%Now: 1000
```

Telnet Command: ddns forceupdate

This command will update DDNS automatically.

Example

```
> ddns forceupdate
 Now updating DDNS ...
 Please check result by using command "ddns log"
```

Telnet Command: ddns setdefault

This command will return DDS with factory default settings.

Example

```
> ddns setdefault
> Set to Factory Default.
```

Telnet Command: ddns show

This command allows users to check the content of selected DDNS account.

Syntax

ddns show -i <*value*>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-i <value>	Display the content of selected DDNS account by entering the index number of the account. <value>=1~6

Example

```
> ddns show -i 1
-------------------------------------------------
 Index: 1
 [ ] Enable Dynamic DNS Account
 WAN Interface: WAN1 First
 Service Provider: dyn.com (www.dyn.com)
 Service Type: Dynamic
 Domain Name: [].[]
 Login Name:
 [ ] Wildcards
 [ ] Backup MX
 Mail Extender:
 Determine Real WAN IP: WAN IP

>
```

Telnet Command: dos

This command allows users to configure the settings for DoS defense system.

Syntax

dos *-V | D | A*

dos *-s ATTACK_F [THRESHOLD][TIMEOUT]]*

dos *-a | e [ATTACK_F][ATTACK_0] | d [ATTACK_F][ATTACK_0]]*

dos *-o <LOG_TYPE>| p <LOG_TYPE> | l <LOG_TYPE>*

dos *-P <add4/ remove4> <type> <value> | <add6/ remove6> <type> <value> | <show> | remove4 all | remove6 all>*

dos *-B <add4/ remove4> <type> <value> | <add6/ remove6> <type> <value> | <show> | remove4 all | remove6 all>*

dos *-o <0/ 1>*

dos *-p <0/ 1>*

dos *-l <1/ 2/ 3>*

dos *-f <0/ 1/ show>*

dos *-i <1/ 2/ 3/ 4/ show>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-V	It means to view the configuration of DoS defense system.
-D	It means to deactivate the DoS defense system.
-A	It means to activate the DoS defense system.
-s	It means to enable the defense function for a specific attack and set its parameter(s).
ATTACK_F	It means to specify the name of flooding attack(s) or portscan, e.g., synflood, udpflood, icmpflood, or postscan.
THRESHOLD	It means the packet rate (packet/second) that a flooding attack will be detected. Set a value larger than 20.
TIMEOUT	It means the time (seconds) that a flooding attack will be blocked. Set a value larger than 5.
-a	It means to enable the defense function for all attacks listed in ATTACK_0.
-e	It means to enable defense function for a specific attack(s).
ATTACK_0	It means to specify a name of the following attacks: ip_option, tcp_flag, land, teardrop, smurf, pingofdeath, traceroute, icmp_frag, syn_frag, unknow_proto, fraggle.
-d	It means to disable the defense function for a specific attack(s).
-P <add4/ remove4> <type> <value> | <add6/ remove6> <type> <value> | <show> | remove4 all | remove6 all>	Add or remove the IPv4/IPv6 address in the white passing IP list. add4/remove4: Add /remove an IPv4/IPv6 address to/from the whitelist. add6/remove6: Add/remove an IPv6 address to/from the whitelist. Type: Two types, -i and -c. In which, "-i" means the IPv4 address and "-c" means the country object. Value: Enter the IP address for -i; enter the index number of the country object profile. Show: Display the whitelist.
-B <add4/ remove4> <type> <value> | <add6/ remove6> <type> <value> | <show> | remove4 all | remove6 all>	Add or remove the IPv4/IPv6 address in the black blocking IP list. add4/remove4: Add /remove an IPv4/IPv6 address to/from the blacklist. add6/remove6: Add/remove an IPv6 address to/from the blacklist. Type: Two types, -i and -c. In which, "-i" means the IPv4 address and "-c" means the country object. Value: Enter the IP address for -i; enter the index number of the

	country object profile. Show: Display the blacklist.
dos -o <LOG_TYPE>	Enable/Disable dos defense log. <LOG_TYPE>: Enter 0 or 1. 0: Disable 1: Enable
dos -p <LOG_TYPE>	Enable/Disable spoofing defense log. <LOG_TYPE>: Enter 0 or 1. 0: Disable 1: Enable
dos -l <LOG_TYPE>	Enable/Disable dos defense black/white list log. <LOG_TYPE>: Enter 0 to 3. 0: None 1: White list 2: Black List 3: All
dos -f <0/1/show>	Set the priority of whitelist/blacklist. [0/1/show]: 0:WhiteList; 1:BlackList
dos -i <1/2/3/4/show>	Set the time interval to send the whitelist/blacklist log. [1/2/3/4/show]: 1:30; 2:60; 3:180; 4:300 seconds

Example

```
> dos -A

The Dos Defense system is Activated

> dos -s synflood 50 10

Synflood is enabled! Threshold=50 <pke/sec> timeout=10 <pke/sec>

> dos -P add4 -i 192.168.5.89
Add IP in Passing IP List success.
> dos -P show
DoS White Passing IP List:
   Type        IPv4                Type    IPv6
 1. IP          192.168.5.89        IP      ::
 2. IP          0.0.0.0             IP      ::
 3. IP          0.0.0.0             IP      ::
 4. IP          0.0.0.0             IP      ::
 5. IP          0.0.0.0             IP      ::
 6. IP          0.0.0.0             IP      ::
 7. IP          0.0.0.0             IP      ::
 8. IP          0.0.0.0             IP      ::
 9. IP          0.0.0.0             IP      ::
10. IP          0.0.0.0             IP      ::
11. IP          0.0.0.0             IP      ::
12. IP          0.0.0.0             IP      ::
13. IP          0.0.0.0             IP      ::
14. IP          0.0.0.0             IP      ::
15. IP          0.0.0.0             IP      ::
16. IP          0.0.0.0             IP      ::
```

Telnet Command: exit

Type this command will leave telnet window.

Telnet Command: Internet

This command allows you to configure detailed settings for WAN connection.

Syntax

internet *-W n -M n [-<command> <parameter> | ...]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-W n	It means to selelct WAN interface for configuration. n: 1 to x. The default is WAN1.
-M n	M means to set Internet Access Mode (Mandatory) and n means different modes. n=0: Offline n=1: PPPoE n=2: Dynamic IP n=3: Static IP n=4: PPTP with Dynamic IP, n=5: PPTP with Static IP, n=6: L2TP with Dynamic IP n=7: L2TP with Static IP n=A: 3G/4G USB Modem(PPP mode), n=B: 3G/4G USB Modem(DHCP mode)
<command><parameter>| ..]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. *[..]* means that you can Enter several commands in one line.
-S <isp name>	It means to set ISP Name (max. 23 characters).
-P <on/off>	It means to enable PPPoE Service.
-u <username>	It means to set username (max. 49 characters) for Internet accessing.
-p <password>	It means to set password (max. 49 characters) for Internet accessing.
-a n	It means to set PPP Authentication Type and n means different types (represented by 0-1). n=0: PAP/CHAP (this is default setting) n=1: PAP Only
-t n	It means to set connection duration and n means different conditions. n=-1: Always-on n=1 ~ 999: Idle time for offline (default 180 seconds)
-i <ip address>	It means that *PPPoE server* will assign an IP address specified here for CPE (PPPoE client). If you type 0.0.0.0 as the <ip address>, ISP will assign suitable IP address for you. However, if you type an IP address here, the router will use that one as a fixed IP.
-w <ip address>	It means to assign WAN IP address for such connection. Please type an IP address here for WAN port.
-n <netmask>	It means to assign netmask for WAN connection. You have to type 255.255.255.xxx (x is changeable) as the netmask for WAN port.
-g <gateway>	It means to assign gateway IP for such WAN connection.
-s <server ip>	It means to set PPTP/L2TP server IP.
-A <idx>	Set to Always On mode, and <idx> as backup WAN#
-B <mode>	Set to Backup mode. <mode> 0: When any WAN disconnect; 1: When all WAN disconnect.
-V	It means to view Internet Access profile.
-C <sim pin code>	Set (PPP mode) SIM PIN code (max. 15 characters).
-O <init string>	Set (PPP mode) Modem Initial String (max. 47 characters).
-T <init string2>	Set (PPP mode) Modem Initial String2 (max. 47 characters)
-D <dial string>	Set (PPP mode) Modem Dial String (max. 31 characters).
-v <service name>	Set (PPP mode) Service Name (max. 23 characters).
-m <ppp username>	Set (PPP mode) PPP Username (max. 63 characters).

-o <ppp password>	Set (PPP mode) PPP Password (max. 62 characters).
-e n	Set (PPP mode) PPP Authentication Type. n= 0: PAP/CHAP (default), 1: PAP Only
-q n	(PPP mode) Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup-One
-x n	(PPP mode) Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup-Two
-y n	(PPP mode) Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup-Three
-z n	(PPP mode) Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup-Four
-Q <mode>	Set (PPP mode or DHCP mode) WAN Connection Detection Mode. <mode> 0: ARP Detect; 1: Ping Detect
-I <ping ip>	Set (PPP mode or DHCP mode) WAN Connection Detection Ping IP. <ping ip>= ppp.qqq.rrr.sss: WAN Connection Detection Ping IP
-L n	Set (PPP mode) WAN Connection Detection TTL (1-255) value.
-R n	Set (PPP mode) WAN Connection Detection Echo Interval secondes. n= 3 to 60.
-E <sim pin code>	Set (DHCP mode) SIM PIN code (max. 19 characters).
-G <mode>	Set (DHCP mode) Network Mode. <mode> 0: 4G/3G/2G; 1: 4G Only; 2: 3G Only; 3: 2G Only
-N <apn name>	Set (DHCP mode) APN Name (max. 47 characters)
-U <n>	Set the MTU for DHCP mode. n= 1000 to 1440.

Example

```
>internet -M 1 -S tcom -u username -p password -a 0 -t -1  -i 0.0.0.0
 WAN1 Internet Mode set to PPPoE/PPPoA
 WAN1 ISP Name set to tcom
 WAN1 Username set to username
 WAN1 Password set successful
 WAN1 PPP Authentication Type set to PAP/CHAP
 WAN1 Idle timeout set to always-on
 WAN1 Gateway IP set to 0.0.0.0
> internet -V
WAN1 Internet Mode:PPPoE
ISP Name: tcom
Username: username
Authentication: PAP/CHAP
Idle Timeout: -1
WAN IP: Dynamic IP
>
```

Telnet Command: ip pubsubnet

This command allows users to enable or disable the IP routing subnet for your router.

Syntax

ip pubsubnet *<Enable/ Disable>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
Enable	Enable the function.
Disable	Disable the function.

Example

```
> ip pubsubnet enable
public subnet enabled!
>
```

Telnet Command: ip pubaddr

This command allows to set the **IP routed subnet** for the router.

Syntax

ip pubaddr *?*

ip pubaddr *<public subnet IP address>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
?	Display an IP address which allows users set as the public subnet IP address.
public subnet IP address	Specify an IP address. The system will set the one that you specified as the public subnet IP address.

Example

```
> ip pubaddr ?
% ip addr <public subnet IP address>
% Now: 192.168.0.1

> ip pubaddr 192.168.2.5
% Set public subnet IP address done !!!
```

Telnet Command: ip pubmask

This command allows users to set the mask for IP routed subnet of your router.

Syntax

ip pubmask *?*

ip pubmask *<public subnet mask>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
?	Display an IP address which allows users set as the public subnet mask.

public subnet IP address	Specify a subnet mask. The system will set the one that you specified as the public subnet mask.

Example

```
> ip pubmask ?
% ip pubmask <public subnet mask>
% Now: 255.255.255.0

> ip pubmask 255.255.0.0
% Set public subnet mask done !!!
```

Telnet Command: ip lanalias

This command is used for configuring WAN IP Alias.

Syntax

ip lanalias *<idx> <option>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<idx>	It means the index number of the profile. Idx: 1 to 5
<option>	The available commands with parameters are listed below.
-e <0/1>	It means to enable / disable the function of IP alias. 0: disable 1: enable
-a <IP address>	It means to set auxiliary IP address.
-w n	It means to add an address for the selected WAN interface. N=0, none N=1, means WAN1 N=2, means WAN2 ...
-r	It means to remove the address of the selected WAN interface.

Example

```
> ip lanalias 1 -r
> ip lanalias 1 -a 192.168.1.2
> ip lanalias
Usage:
%% ip lanalias [idx] [Option]
  idx   :profile index from 1 to 5
  Option:
  -e 1          :1:enable, 0:disable
  -a 192.168.1.2 :IP Address as alias
  -w 1          :WAN number or 0(None)
  -r           :remove this profile

LAN IP Alias Address table:
Index no.      Status  IP address     Prefer Output
-------------------------------------------------
```

```
1           Disable 192.168.1.2           n/a
2           Disable 0.0.0.0        n/a
3           Disable 0.0.0.0        n/a
4           Disable 0.0.0.0        n/a
5           Disable 0.0.0.0        n/a
```

Telnet Command: ip addr

This command allows users to set/add a specified LAN IP your router.

Syntax

ip addr <*IP address*>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
IP address	It means the LAN IP address.

Example

```
>ip addr 192.168.50.1
% Set IP address OK !!!
```

Info

When the LAN IP address is changed, the start IP address of DHCP server are still the same. To make the IP assignment of the DHCP server being consistent with this new IP address (they should be in the same network segment), the IP address of the PC must be fixed with the same LAN IP address (network segment) set by this command for accessing into the web user interface of the router. Later, modify the start addresses for the DHCP server.

Telnet Command: ip nmask

This command allows users to set/add a specified netmask for your router.

Syntax

ip nmask <*IP netmask*>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
IP netmask	It means the netmask of LAN IP.

Example

```
> ip nmask 255.255.0.0
% Set IP netmask OK !!!
```

Telnet Command: ip arp

ARP displays the matching condition for IP and MAC address.

Syntax

ip arp add <*IP address*> <*MAC address*> <*LAN or WAN*>

ip arp del <*IP address*> <*LAN or WAN*>

ip arp flush

ip arp status

ip arp accept <*0/1/2/3/4/5/status*>

ip arp setCacheLife <*time*>

In which, **arp add** allows users to add a new IP address into the ARP table; **arp del** allows users to remove an IP address; **arp flush** allows users to clear arp cache; **arp status** allows users to review current status for the arp table; **arp accept** allows to accept or reject the source /destination MAC address; arp **setCacheLife** allows users to configure the duration in which ARP caches can be stored on the system. If **ip arp setCacheLife** is set with "60", it means you have an ARP cache at 0 second. Sixty seconds later without any ARP messages received, the system will think such ARP cache is expired. The system will issue a few ARP request to see if this cache is still valid.

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
IP address	It means the LAN IP address.
MAC address	It means the MAC address of your router.
LAN or WAN	It indicates the direction for the arp function.
0/1/2/3/4/5/status	0: disable to accept illegal source mac address 1: enable to accept illegal source mac address 2: disable to accept illegal dest mac address 3: enable to accept illegal dest mac address 4: Decline VRRP mac into arp table 5: Accept VRRP mac into arp table status: display the setting status.
Time	Available settings will be 10, 20, 30,....2550 seconds.

Example

```
> ip arp accept status
Accept illegal source mac arp: disable

Accept illegal dest mac arp: disable

Accept VRRP mac into arp table: disable
> ip arp status
[ARP Table]
 Index IP Address     MAC Address        HOST ID         Interface  VLAN   Port
   1   192.168.1.10   60-A4-4C-E6-5A-4F   A1000381       LAN1       ---    P1
   2   192.168.1.12   00-1D-AA-7C-F5-A4                   LAN1       ---    P3
   3   192.168.1.13   14-49-BC-43-E5-79                   LAN1       ---    P2
   4   192.168.1.100  14-49-BC-0A-8A-B8                   LAN1       ---    P5
>
```

Telnet Command: ip dhcpc

This command is available for WAN DHCP.

Syntax

ip dhcpc *option*
ip dhcpc *option -h|l*
ip dhcpc *option -d <idx>*
ip dhcpc *option -e<1 or 0> -w <wan unmber> -c <option number> -v <option value>*
ip dhcpc *option -e <1 or 0> -w <wan unmber> -c <option number> -x "<option value>"*
ip dhcpc *option -e <1 or 0> -w <wan unmber> -c <option number> -a <option value>*
ip dhcpc *option -u <idx unmber>*
ip dhcpc *release <wan number>*
ip dhcpc *renew <wan number>*
ip dhcpc *status*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
option	It is an optional setting for DHCP server. -h: display usage -l: list all custom set DHCP options -d: delete custom dhcp client option by index number -e: enable/disable option feature, 1:enable, 0:disable -w: set WAN number (e.g., 1=WAN1) -c: set option number: 0~255 -v: set option value by string -x: set option value by raw byte (hex) -u: update by index number -r: remove all custom DHCP Client options
release	It means to release current WAN IP address.
renew	It means to renew the WAN IP address and obtain another new one.
status	It displays current status of DHCP client.

Example

```
>ip dhcpc status
=====================================
WAN1:

DHCP Client Status: None active DHCP client!

=====================================
WAN2:

DHCP Client Status: None active DHCP client!

=====================================
WAN3:

DHCP Client Status: None active DHCP client!

=====================================
WAN4:

DHCP Client Status: None active DHCP client!

=====================================
WAN5:

DHCP Client Status: None active DHCP client!

=====================================
WAN6:

DHCP Client Status: None active DHCP client!
...
```

Telnet Command: ip ping

This command allows users to ping IP address of WAN1/WAN2/PVC3/PVC4/PVC5 for verifying if the WAN connection is OK or not.

Syntax

ip ping *<IP address> <AUTO/ WAN1/ WAN2/ WAN5/ WAN6> <Source IP address>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
IP address	It means the WAN IP address.
AUTO/ WAN1/ WAN2/ WAN5/ WAN6>	It means the WAN port /PVC that the above IP address passes through.
Source IP address	It means the source IP address.

Example

```
> ip ping 172.16.3.229 WAN1

Pinging 172.16.3.229 with 64 bytes of Data:
Receive reply from 172.16.3.229, time=0ms
Receive reply from 172.16.3.229, time=0ms
Receive reply from 172.16.3.229, time=0ms
Packets: Sent = 5, Received = 5, Lost = 0 <0% loss>
```

Telnet Command: ip tracert

This command allows users to trace the routes from the router to the host.

Syntax

ip tracert <*Host/ IP address*> <*WAN1/ WAN2/ WAN3/ WAN4/ WAN5/ WAN6*> <*Udp/ Icmp*>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
IP address	It means the target IP address.
WAN1/ WAN2/ WAN3/ WAN4/ WAN 5/ WAN6	It means the WAN port that the above IP address passes through.
Udp/ Icmp	It means the UDP or ICMP.

Example

```
>ip tracert 22.128.2.62 WAN1
Traceroute to 22.128.2.62, 30 hops max
1    172.16.3.7    10ms
2    172.16.1.2    10ms
3    Request Time out.
4    168.95.90.66  50ms
5    211.22.38.134 50ms
6    220.128.2.62  50ms
Trace complete
```

Telnet Command: ip telnet

This command allows users to access specified device by telnet.

Syntax

ip telnet <*IP address*><*Port*>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
IP address	Enter the WAN or LAN IP address of the remote device.
Port	Type a port number (e.g., 23). Available settings: 0 ~65535.

Example

```
> ip telnet 172.17.3.252 23
>
```

Telnet Command: ip rip

This command allows users to set the RIP (routing information protocol) of IP.

Syntax

ip rip <*0/ 1/ 2*>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
0/ 1/ 2	0 means disable; 1 means first subnet and 2 means second

	subnet.

Example

```
> ip rip 1
%% Set RIP 1st subnet.
```

Telnet Command: ip wanrip

This command allows users to set the RIP (routing information protocol) of WAN IP.

Syntax

ip wanrip *<ifno> -e <0/1>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
ifno	It means the connection interface. 1: WAN1,2: WAN2, 3: PVC3,4: PVC4,5: PVC5 **Note**: PVC3 ~PVC5 are virtual WANs.
-e	It means to disable or enable RIP setting for specified WAN interface. 1: Enable the function of setting RIP of WAN IP. 0: Disable the function.

Example

```
> ip wanrip ?
 Valid ex:ip wanrip <ifno> -e <0/1>
 <ifno> 1: WAN1,2: WAN2
       3: PVC3,4: PVC4,5: PVC5
 -e <0/1>  0: disable, 1: enable
 Now status:
 WAN[1] Rip Protocol disable
 WAN[2] Rip Protocol disable
 WAN[3] Rip Protocol disable
 WAN[4] Rip Protocol disable
 WAN[5] Rip Protocol disable
 WAN[6] Rip Protocol enable
 WAN[7] Rip Protocol enable
 WAN[8] Rip Protocol enable
 WAN[9] Rip Protocol enable
 WAN[10] Rip Protocol enable
 WAN[11] Rip Protocol enable
 WAN[12] Rip Protocol enable
 WAN[13] Rip Protocol enable
 WAN[14] Rip Protocol enable
 WAN[15] Rip Protocol enable
 WAN[16] Rip Protocol enable
> ip wanrip 5 -e 1
> ip wanrip ?
 Valid ex:ip wanrip <ifno> -e <0/1>
 <ifno> 1: WAN1,2: WAN2
       3: PVC3,4: PVC4,5: PVC5
 -e <0/1>  0: disable, 1: enable
 Now status:
 WAN[1] Rip Protocol disable
 WAN[2] Rip Protocol disable
 WAN[3] Rip Protocol disable
 WAN[4] Rip Protocol disable
 WAN[5] Rip Protocol enable
```

```
...
```

Telnet Command: ip route

This command allows users to set static route.

Syntax

ip route *add <dst><netmask><gateway><ifno><rtype>*
ip route *del <dst><netmask><rtype>*
ip route *status*
ip route *cnc*
ip route *default <wan1/wan2/off/?>*
ip route *clean <1/0>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
add	It means to add an IP address as static route.
del	It means to delete specified IP address.
status	It means current status of static route.
dst	It means the IP address of the destination.
netmask	It means the netmask of the specified IP address.
gateway	It means the gateway of the connected router.
ifno	It means the connection interface. 3=WAN1 5=WAN3,6=WAN4,7=WAN5 However, WAN3, WAN4, WAN5 are router-borne WANs
rtype	It means the type of the route. default : default route; static: static route.
cnc	It means current IP range for CNC Network.
default	Set WAN1/WAN2/off as current default route.
clean	Clean all of the route settings. 1: Enable the function. 0: Disable the function.

Example

```
> ip route add 172.16.2.0 255.255.255.0 172.16.2.4 3 static
> ip route status

Codes: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, * - default, ~ - private
C~       192.168.1.0/   255.255.255.0 is directly connected, LAN1
S         172.16.2.0/   255.255.255.0 via 172.16.2.4, WAN1
```

Telnet Command: ip igmp_proxy

This command allows users to enable/disable igmp proxy server.

Syntax

ip igmp_proxy *set*
ip igmp_proxy *reset*
ip igmp_proxy *wan*
ip igmp_proxy *query*
ip igmp_proxy *ppp <0/ 1>*
ip igmp_proxy *status*
ip igmp_proxy *version <v2/ v3/ auto/ show>*
ip igmp_proxy *syslog <0/ 1>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
set	It means to enable proxy server.
reset	It means to disable proxy server.
wan	It means to specify WAN interface for IGMP service.
query	It means to set IGMP general query interval. The default value is 125000 ms.
ppp <0/ 1>	0 – No need to set IGMP with PPP header. 1 – Set IGMP with PPP header.
status	It means to display current status for proxy server.
version <v2/ v3/ auto/ show>	It means to set IGMP version fixed on v2 or v3.
syslog <0/ 1>	It means to set IGMP syslog. 0: disable 1: enable

Example

```
> ip igmp_proxy query 130000
 This command is for setting IGMP General Query Interval
 The default value is 125000 ms
 Current Setting is:130000 ms
>
```

Telnet Command: ip igmp_snoop

This command allows users to enable or disable IGMP snoop function.

Syntax

ip igmp_snoop enable
ip igmp_snoop disable
ip igmp_snoop status
ip igmp_snoop hw_acc *<on/ off/ status>*
ip igmp_snoop txquery *<on/ off> <v2/ v3>*
ip igmp_snoop chkleave *<on/ off>*
ip igmp_snoop separate *<on/ off>*
ip igmp_snoop acceptlist *<type><index>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
enable	It means to enable igmp snoop function
disable	It means to disable igmp snoop function.
status	It means to display current igmp configuration.
hw_acc <on/off/status>	It means to enable/disable the multicast hardware accleration.. On: enable the function. Off: disable the function.
txquery <on/off> <v2/v3>	It means to send out IGMP QUERY to LAN periodically. On: enable Off: disable v2: version v2 v3: version v3
chkleave <on/off>	It means to check the leave status. On: enable the IGMP snoop leave checking function. Off: it will drop LEAVE if still clients on the same group.
separate <on/off>	It means to set IGMP packets being separated by NAT/Bridge. On: The packets will be separated. Off: The packets will not be separated by NAT/Bridge.
acceptlist <type><index>	Type: Enter 0 (disable), 1 (ip object) or 2 (ip group). Index: Enter 0 to 192 (for ip object); enter 0 to 32 (for ip group).

Example

```
> ip igmp_snoop enable
%% ip igmp snooping [enable|disable|status], IGMP Snooping is Enabled.
> ip igmp_snoop disable
%% ip igmp snooping [enable|disable|status], IGMP Snooping is Disabled.
```

Telnet Command: ip igmp_fl

This command allows users to enable or disable IGMP Fast Leave function.

Syntax

ip igmp_fl enable
ip igmp_fl disable
ip igmp_fl status

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
enable	It means to enable IGMP Fast Leave function
disable	It means to disable IGMP Fast Leave function.
status	It means to display current IGMP Fast Leave configuration.

Example

```
> ip igmp_fl enable ?
  If you want to use IGMP fast leave , you "MUST" enable IGMP snooping.
```

```
> ip igmp_snoop enable
% ip igmp snooping [enable|disable|status], IGMP Snooping is Enabled.
>
```

Telnet Command: ip session

This command allows users to set maximum session limit number for the specified IP; set message for exceeding session limit and set how many seconds the IP session block works.

Syntax

ip session *on*

ip session *off*

ip session *default <num>*

ip session *defaultp2p <num>*

ip session *status*

ip session *show*

ip session *timer <num>*

ip session *<block/unblock> <IP>*

ip session *<add/del> <IP1-IP2> <num> <p2pnum>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
on	It means to turn on session limit for each IP.
off	It means to turn off session limit for each IP.
default <num>	It means to set the default number of session num limit.
Defaultp2p <num>	It means to set the default number of session num limit for p2p.
status	It means to display the current settings.
show	It means to display all session limit settings in the IP range.
timer <num>	It means to set when the IP session block works. The unit is second.
<block/unblock> <IP>	It means to block/unblock the specified IP address. Block: The IP cannot access Internet through the router. Unblock: The specified IP can access Internet through the router.
<add/del> <IP1-IP2> <num> <p2pnum>	It means to add / delete the session limits in an IP range. <IP1-IP2> - Set the range of IP address specified for this command. <num> - Set the number of the session limits, e.g., 100. <p2pnum> - Set the number of the session limits, e.g., 50 for P2P.

Example

```
> ip session default 100
> ip session add 192.168.1.5-192.168.1.100 100 50
> ip session on
> ip session status

  IP range:
    192.168.1.5 - 192.168.1.100 : 100

  Current ip session limit is turn on
```

```
Current default session number is 100
```

Telnet Command: ip bandwidth

This command allows users to set maximum bandwidth limit number for the specified IP.

Syntax

ip bandwidth *on*
ip bandwidth *off*
ip bandwidth *default <tx_rate><rx_rate>*
ip bandwidth *status*
ip bandwidth *routing <on/off>*
ip bandwidth *schedule <s1> <s2> <s3> <s4>*
ip bandwidth *show*
ip bandwidth *<add/del><IP1-IP2><tx><rx><shared>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
on	It means to turn on the IP bandwidth limit.
off	It means to turn off the IP bandwidth limit.
default [tx_rate][rx_rate]	It means to set default tx and rx rate of bandwidth limit. The range is from 0 – 65535 Kpbs.
status	It means to display the current settings.
routing <on/off>	It means to apply to IP Routed Subnet. On: apply to Off: not apply to
schedule <s1> <s2> <s3> <s4>	It means to set schedule profile (1 to 4). S1 ~ S4: Up to four profile can be set. Available schedule profiles from 0 to 16.
show	It means to display all the bandwidth limits settings within the IP range.
add	It means to add the bandwidth within the IP range.
del	It means to delete the bandwidth within the IP range.
IP1-IP2	It means the range of IP address specified for this command.
tx	It means to set transmission rate for bandwidth limit.
rx	It means to set receiving rate for bandwidth limit.
shared	It means that the bandwidth will be shared for the IP range.

Example

```
> ip bandwidth default 200 800
> ip bandwidth add 192.168.1.50-192.168.1.100 10 60
> ip bandwidth status

  IP range:
    192.168.1.50 - 192.168.1.100 : Tx:10K Rx:60K

  Current ip Bandwidth limit is turn off
```

```
Auto adjustment is off
```

Telnet Command: ip dataflowmonitor.

This command allows users to set data flow monitor.

Syntax

ip dataflowmonitor *on*
ip dataflowmonitor *off*
ip dataflowmonitor *status*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
on	It means to enable the Data Flow Monitor function.
off	It means to disable the Data Flow Monitor function.
show	It means to display current status of Data Flow Monitor function.

Example

```
> ip dataflowmonitor status
Data Flow Monitor: Off
```

Telnet Command: ip bindmac

This command allows users to set IP-MAC binding for LAN host.

Syntax

ip bindmac *on*
ip bindmac *off*
ip bindmac *strict_on*
ip bindmac *strict_off*
ip bindmac *subnet <all/ set LAN_Index/ unset LAN_Index/ clear/ show>*
ip bindmac *add <IP><MAC><omment>*
ip bindmac *del <IP/ all>*
ip bindmac *show*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
on	It means to turn on IP bandmac policy. Even the IP is not in the policy table, it can still access into network.
off	It means to turn off all the bindmac policy.
strict_on	It means that only those IP address in IP bindmac policy table can access into network.
strict_off	It means to turn off the IP bindmac policy.
subnet <all/ set LAN_Index/ unset LAN_Index/ clear/ show>	It means to set LAN subnet to bind strict mode.
show	It means to display the IP address and MAC address of the pair of binded one.

add	It means to add one ip bindmac.
del	It means to delete one ip bindmac.
IP	It means to Enter the IP address for binding with specified MAC address.
MAC	It means to Enter the MAC address for binding with the IP address specified.
Comment	It means to type words as a brief description.
All	It means to delete all the IP bindmac settings.

Example

```
> ip bindmac add 192.168.1.46 00:50:7f:22:33:55 just for test
> ip bindmac show
ip bind mac function is turned OFF
ip bind mac function is STRICT OFF
Show all IP Bind MAC entries.
IP : 192.168.1.46 bind MAC : 00-50-7f-22-33-55 HOST ID :
  Comment : just
```

Telnet Command: ip bgp

Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) is a standardized protocol designed to exchange routing and reachability information among autonomous systems (AS) on the Internet.

Syntax

ip bgp mode *<0/1>*
ip bgp as *<0~4294967295>*
ip bgp hold *<10~65535>*
ip bgp retry *<3~255 >*
ip bgp id *<x.x.x.x>*
ip bgp show
ip bgp neighbor *<idx>* **mode** *<0/1>*
ip bgp neighbor *<idx>* **name** *<max len>*
ip bgp neighbor *<idx>* **ip** *<x.x.x.x>*
ip bgp neighbor *<idx>* **as** *<1~4294967295>*
ip bgp neighbor *<idx>* **weight** *<0~7>*
ip bgp neighbor *<idx>* **prepend** *<0~7>*
ip bgp neighbor *<idx>* **md5** *<0/1>*
ip bgp neighbor *<idx>* **key** *<max len>*
ip bgp neighbor *<idx>* **show**
ip bgp neighbor show all
ip bgp static *<sidx> <ip> <netmask>*
ip bgp static *<sidx>* **delete**
ip bgp static show

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
mode <0/1>	Enable or disable the GMP. 0: disable 1: enable
as <0~4294967295>	Set the AS number for local router. <0~4294967295>
hold <10~65535>	Set the time interval (in seconds) to determine the peer is dead when the router is unable to receive any keepalive message from the peer within the time. <10~65535>: Default is 180 sec.
retry <3~255>	Set the BGP conntion retry time. <3~255>: Default is 120 sec
id <x.x.x.x>	Select a enabled local subnet IP as router ID. <x.x.x.x>: Enter an IP address.
show	Display all BGP settings.
neighbor <idx> mode <0/1>	Enable or disable the neighbor profile. <idx>: 1 to 8. Index number of the neighbor profile. 0: disable 1: enable
neighbor <idx> name <max len>	Set a name of the neighbor profile. <idx>: 1 to 8. Index number of the neighbor profile. <max len>: Enter a name (no more than 20 characters).
neighbor <idx> ip <x.x.x.x>	Set the IP address for the specified neighbor profile.

	<idx>: 1 to 8. Index number of the neighbor profile. <x.x.x.x>: Enter an IP address (e.g., 192.168.1.33).
neighbor <idx> as <1~4294967295>	Set an AS number for the specified neighbor profile. <idx>: 1 to 8. Index number of the profile. <1~4294967295>: Enter a number.
neighbor <idx> weight <0~7>	Set the weight value for the specified neighbor profile. <idx>: 1 to 8. Index number of the neighbor profile. <0~7>: higher is better.
neighbor <idx> prepend <0~7>	Set the prepend value for the specified neighbor profile. <idx>: 1 to 8. Index number of the neighbor profile. <0~7>: lower is better.
neighbor <idx> md5 <0/1>	Enable or disable the MD5 authentication for the neighbor profile. <idx>: 1 to 8. Index number of the profile. 0: Disable. 1: Enable.
neighbor <idx> key <max len>	Set the key used for the MD5 authentication. <idx>: 1 to 8. Index number of the neighbor profile. <max len>: Enter a name (no more than 20 characters).
neighbor <idx> show	Display the BGP setting for the specified neighbor profile. <idx>: 1 to 8. Index number of the profile.
neighbor show all	Display the BGP setting of neighbor profiles.
static <sidx> <ip> <netmask>	Set the IP address and subnet mask for specified static network profile. <sidx>: 1 to 16. Index number of the static network profile. <ip>: Enter an IP address. <netmask>: Enter a netmask.
static <sidx> delete	Remove / clear the settings for the selected static network profile. <sidx>: 1 to 16. Index number of the profile.
static show	Display the BGP setting of static network profiles.

Example

```
> ip bgp id 255.255.255.0
Set BGP router id: 255.255.255.0
> ip bgp show
BGP is enable
Local autonomous system number: 33333
Hold time: 180
Connect retry time: 20
Router ID: 255.255.255.0

BGP neighbor:
Idx Mode As Number  Name      IP Addr         Status       weight prepend
---------- ---------- ---------------- ------------- ------ --------
1   En   0                  Empty          None         0      0
2   Dis  0                  Empty          None         0      0
3   Dis  0                  Empty          None         0      0
4   Dis  0                  Empty          None         0      0
5   Dis  0                  Empty          None         0      0
6   Dis  0                  Empty          None         0      0
7   Dis  0                  Empty          None         0      0
8   Dis  0                  Empty          None         0      0

BGP static networks:
Index: 8, IP addr: 192.168.2.56, mask: 255.255.255.254
```

Telnet Command: ip maxnatuser

This command is used to set the maximum number of NAT users.

Syntax

ip maxnatuser *user no*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
User no	A number specified here means the total NAT users that Vigor router supports. 0 – It means no limitation.

Example

```
> ip maxnatuser 100
% Max NAT user = 100
```

Telnet Command: ip policy_rt

This command is used to set the IP policy route profile.

Syntax

ip policy_rt *[-<command> <parameter> | ...]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<command><parameter>| ..]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. *[..]* means that you can Enter several commands in one line.
General Setup for Policy Route	
-i <value>	Specify an index number for setting policy route profile. Value: 1 to 60. "-1" means to get a free policy index automatically.
-e <0/1>	0: Disable the selected policy route profile. 1: Enable the selected policy route profile.
-o <value>	Determine the operation of the policy route. Value: add – Create a new policy rotue profile. del – Remove an existed policy route profile. edit – Modify an existed policy route profile. flush – Reset policy route to default setting.
-1 <any/range>	Specify the source IP mode. Range: Indicate a range of IP addresses. Any: It means any IP address will be treated as source IP address.
-2 <any/ip_range/ip_subnet/domain>	Specify the destination IP mode. Any: No need to specify an IP address for any IP address will be treated as destination IP address. ip_range: Indicates a range of IP addresses. ip_subnet: Indicates the IP subnet. domain: Indicates the domain name.
-3 <any/range>	Specify the destination port mode. Range: Indicate a range of port number. Any: It means any port number can be used as destination port.

-G <default/specific>	Specify the gateway mode.
-L <default/specific>	Specify the failover gateway mode.
-s <value>	Indicate the source IP start. Value: The type format shall be “xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx”. (e.g, 192.168.1.0)
-S <value>	Indicate the source IP end. Value: The type format shall be “xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx”. (e.g, 192.168.1.100)
-d <value>	Indicate the destination IP start. Value: The type format shall be “xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx”. (e.g, 192.168.2.0)
-D <value>	Indicate the destination IP end. Value: The type format shall be “xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx”. (e.g, 192.168.2.100)
-p<value>	Indicate the destination port start. Value: Type a number (1 ~ 65535) as the port start (e.g., 1000).
-P <value>	Indicate the destination port end. Value: Type a number (1 ~ 65535) as the port end (e.g., 2000).
-y <value>	Indicate the priority of the policy route profile. Value: Type a number (0 ~ 250). The default value is “150”.
-I <value>	Indicate the interface specified for the policy route profile. Value: Available interfaces include, LAN1~LAN16, IP_Routed_Subnet, DMZ_Subnet, VOIP_WAN, WAN1~WAN6, VPN_PROFILE_1~VPN_PROFILE_64,WAN_1_IP_ALIAS_1~WAN_4_IP_ALIAS_32
-g <value>	Indicate the gateway IP address. Value: The type format shall be “xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx”. (e.g, 192.168.3.1)
-I <value>	Indicate the failover IP address. Value: The type format shall be “xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx”. (e.g, 192.168.4.1)
-t <value>	It means “protocol”. Value: Available settings include “TCP”, “UDP”, “TCP/UDP”, “ICMP” and “Any”.
-n <0/1>	Indicates the function of “Force NAT”. 0: Disable the function. 1: Enable the function.
-F <value>	It means "enable failover by MOS". value: 0 or 1
-M <value>	It means "Value of failover MOS". value: 2.0 ~ 4.0
-a <0/1>	Indicates to enable the function of failover. 0: Disable the function. 1: Enable the function.
-f <value>	It means to specify the interface for failover. Value: Avaialbe interfaces include, NO_FAILOVER, Default_WAN, Policy1~Policy50, LAN1~LAN16, IP_Routed_Subnet,DMZ_Subnet, WAN1~WAN6, VPN_PROFILE_1~VPN_PROFILE_64, WAN_1_IP_ALIAS_1 ~ WAN_4_IP_ALIAS_32
-b <value>	It means “failback”. Value: Available settings include, 0: Disable the function of “failback”. 1: Enable the function of “failback”.

-v	View current failback setting.
Diagnose for Policy Route	
-s <value>	It means “source IP”. Value: Available settings include: Any: It indicates any IP address can be used as source IP address. “xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx”: The type format (e.g, 192.168.1.0).
-d <value>	It means “destination IP”. Value : Available settings include: Any: It indicates any IP address can be used as destination IP address. “xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx”: Specify an IP address.
-p <value>	It means “destination port”. Value: Specify a number or type Any (indicating any number).
-t <value>	It means “protocol”. Value: Available settings include “ICMP”, “TCP”, “UDP” and “Any”.

Example

```
> ip policy_rt diagnose –s 192.168.1.100 –d any –p any –t ICMP

   ------------------------------------------------
      Matched Route  (Priority)
   ------------------------------------------------
   * No_Match

   ------------------------------------------------
      Matched Policy (Priority)
   ------------------------------------------------
   * Policy_1 (200)

   * Conclusion:The packet was dropped because the send-to interface of the
mat
ched policy "policy 1" was inactive and there was no failover setting
> ip policy_rt –i –1 –o add –1 range –s 192.168.1.10 –S 192.168.1.20 –2
ip_range –d 202.211.100.10 –D 202.211.100.20 –g 202.211.100.1 –I WAN2
```

Telnet Command: ip lanDNSRes

This command is used to set LAN DNS profiles. With such feature, the user can configure some services (such as ftp, www or database) with domain name which is easy to be accessed.

Syntax

ip lanDNSRes *[-<command> <parameter> | ...]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-a <IP Address>	It is used to configure IP address mapping (IPv4/IPv6 Address or multiple subnet addresses). IP Address: type the IP address (e.g., 192.168.1.56).
-c <CNAME>	It is used to set CNAME. CNAME: Enter a string.
-d <address mapping index number>	It means to delete index number with address mapping configured. address mapping index number : type the index number which

	represents the address mapping profile.
-e <0/ 1>	It means to enable or disable the function of LAN DNS or DNS Forwarding Profile. 0: disable 1: enable
-i <profile setting index number>	It means to create LAN DNS profile with specified domain name. profile setting index number : type the index number which represents the profile with domain name configured.
-l	It means to list detailed information of profile configuration.
-n<domain name>	It means to specify a domain name to be accessed.
-p<profile name>	It means to set name of the LAN DNS profile.
-r	It means to clear specified domain name profile and the address mapping setting.
-R	It means to set to factory default setting.
-s <0/ 1>	It means to determine all subnet packets or only the packets with the same subnet will be replied for address mapping profile. 0: reply all subnet packets. 1: reply only same subnet packet.
-z	It means to update LAN DNS configuration to DNS cache.

Example

```
> ip lanDNSRes –i 1 –n ftp.drayTek.com
% Configure Set1's DomainName:ftp.drayTek.com
> ip lanDNSRes –i 1 –a 172.16.2.10 –s 1
% Configure Set1's IP:172.16.2.10
% Configure Set1's Idx:1 ReplyOnlySameSubnet:Yes
> ip lanDNSRes –i 1 –a 172.16.3.10 –s 1
% Configure Set1's IP:172.16.3.10
% Configure Set1's Idx:2 ReplyOnlySameSubnet:Yes
> ip lanDNSRes –i 1 –a 172.16.4.10 –s 1
% Configure Set1's IP:172.16.4.10
% Configure Set1's Idx:3 ReplyOnlySameSubnet:Yes
>
```

Telnet Command: ip dnsforward

This command is used to set LAN DNS profile for conditional DNS forwarding.

Syntax

ip dnsforward *[-<command> <parameter> | ...]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
[<command> <parameter>| ..]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. *[..]* means that you can Enter several commands in one line.
-a <IP Address/ Domain Name>	Set forwarded DNS server IP Address or domain name. <IP Address/Domain Name>: Enter an IP address or the domain name.
-d <DNS server mapping index number>	Delete the selected LAN DNS profile. <DNS server mapping index number>: Enter the index number.

-e <0/1>	0: disable this function. 1: enable this function.
-i <profile setting index number>	Type the index number of the profile. <profile setting index number>: Enter the index number.
-l	List the content of LAN DNS profile (including domain name, IP address and message).
-n <domain name>	Set domain name.
-p <profile name>	Set profile name for LAN DNS.
-r	Reset the settings for selected profile.
-R	Set to factory default setting.

Example

```
> ip dnsforward -i 1 -n ftp.drayTek.com
% Configure Set1's DomainName:ftp.drayTek.com
> ip dnsforward -i 1 -a 172.16.1.1
% Configure Set1's IP:172.16.1.1
> ip dnsforward -i 1 -l
% Idx: 1
% State: Disable
% Profile: test
% Domain Name: ftp.drayTek.com
% DNS Server IP: 172.16.1.1
>
```

Telnet Command: ip spoofdef

This command is used to enable/disable the IP Spoofing Defense.

Syntax

ip spoofdef *<WAN/LAN><0/1>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<WAN/LAN>	It means to block IP packet from WAN/LAN with inconsistent source IP address.
<0/1>	0: Disable the function. 1: Enable the funciton.

Example

```
> ip spoofdef WAN 1
Setting saved:
>
```

Telnet Command: ip6 addr

This command allows users to set the IPv6 address for your router.

Syntax

ip6 addr -s *<prefix> <prefix-length> <LAN1/..LAN8/DMZ/WAN1/..WAN4/USB1/USB2/VPN1/..VPN64>*

ip6 addr -d *<prefix> <prefix-length><LAN1/..LAN8/ DMZ/ WAN1/..WAN4/ USB1/ USB2/ VPN1/..VPN64>*

ip6 addr -a*<LAN1/..LAN8/ DMZ/ WAN1/..WAN4/ USB1/ USB2/ VPN1/..VPN64> -u*

ip6 addr -v*<LAN1/..LAN8/ DMZ/ WAN1/..WAN4/ USB1/ USB2>*

ip6 addr -t *<old-prefix><old-prefix-length><new-prefix> <new-prefix-length> <LAN1/..LAN8/ DMZ/ WAN1/..WAN4/ USB1/ USB2>*

ip6 addr -o *<1/2>*

ip6 addr -o 3 *<prefix> <prefix-length> <WAN1/ WAN2/ USB1/ USB2>*

ip6 addr -l *<prefix> <prefix-length> <LAN1/..LAN8/ DMZ>*

ip6 addr <-*p/-b> <prefix> <prefix-length> <WAN1/..WAN4/ USB1/ USB2>*

ip6 addr -x *<LAN1/..LAN8/ DMZ>*

ip6 addr -c *<LAN1/..LAN8/ DMZ>*

ip6 addr -e *<type> < LAN1/..LAN8/ DMZ>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-s <prefix> <prefix-length> < LAN1/..LAN8/ DMZ/ WAN1/..WAN4/ USB1/ USB2/ VPN1/..VPN64>	It means to add a static ipv6 address. <prefix>: It means to enter the prefix number of IPv6 address. <prefix-length>: It means to enter a fixed value as the length of the prefix. <LAN1/..LAN8/DMZ/ WAN1/..WAN4/USB1/USB2/VPN1/..VPN64>: It means to specify LAN/WAN/USB/VPN interface for such address.
-d <prefix> <prefix-length> <LAN1/..LAN8/ DMZ/ WAN1/..WAN4/ USB1/ USB2/ VPN1/..VPN64>	It means to delete an ipv6 address. <prefix>: It means to enter the prefix number of IPv6 address. <prefix-length>: It means to enter a fixed value as the length of the prefix. <LAN1/..LAN8/DMZ/ WAN1/..WAN4/USB1/USB2/VPN1/..VPN64>: It means to specify LAN/WAN/USB/VPN interface for such address.
-a < LAN1/..LAN8/ DMZ/ WAN1/..WAN4/ USB1/ USB2/ VPN1/..VPN64> -u	It means to show current address(es) status. <LAN1/..LAN8/DMZ/ WAN1/.. WAN4/USB1/USB2/VPN1/..VPN64>: It means to specify LAN/WAN/USB/VPN interface. <-u>: It means to show unicast address only.
-v <LAN1/..LAN8/ WAN1/..WAN4/ USB1/ USB2>	It means to show prefix list status.
-t <old-prefix><old-prefix-length><new-prefix> <new-prefix-length> <LAN1/..LAN8 / WAN1/..WAN4/ USB1/ USB2>	It means to update WAN static IPv6 address table. <old-prefix>: It means to enter the prefix number of IPv6 address. <old prefix-length>: It means to enter a fixed value as the length of the prefix. <new-prefix>: It means to enter the prefix number of IPv6 address. <new-prefix-length>: It means to enter a fixed value as the length of the prefix. <LAN1/..LAN8/WAN1/..WAN4/USB1/USB2 >: It means to specify LAN/WAN/USB interface for such address.
-o <1/2>	<1>: It means to show old prefix list. <2>: It means to send old prefix option by RA.
-o <3> <prefix> <prefix-length> <WAN1/..WAN4/ USB1/ USB2>	<3>: It means to set old prefix. <prefix>: It means to enter the prefix number of IPv6 address. <prefix-length>: It means to enter a fixed value as the length of the prefix. <WAN1/..WAN4/USB1/USB2 >: It means to specify a WAN/USB interface for such address.
-l <prefix> <prefix-length> <	It means to add a ULA.

LAN1/..LAN8/DMZ>	<prefix>: It means to enter the prefix number of IPv6 address. <prefix-length>: It means to enter a fixed value as the length of the prefix. <LAN1/..LAN8/DMZ>: It means to specify a LAN interface for such address.
-p/-b <prefix> <prefix-length> <WAN1/..WAN4/USB1/USB2>	It means to add/delete an prefix to/from prefix list. p: Add a prefix to a prefix list. b: Delete a prefix from a prefix list. <prefix>: It means to enter the prefix number of IPv6 address. <prefix-length>: It means to enter a fixed value as the length of the prefix. <WAN1/..WAN4/USB1/USB2 >: It means to specify a WAN/USB interface for such address.
-x <LAN1/..LAN8/DMZ>	It means to generate a ULA automatically. <LAN1/..LAN8/DMZ>: It means to specify a LAN interface.
-c <LAN1/..LAN8/DMZ>	It means to delete a ULA . <LAN1/..LAN8/DMZ>: It means to specify a LAN interface.
-e <type> <LAN1/..LAN8/DMZ>	It means to set ULA type. <type>: 0, disable; 1, static; 2, auto <LAN1/..LAN8/DMZ>: It means to specify a LAN interface.

Example

```
> ip6 addr –a
LAN
Unicast Address:
 FE80::250:7FFF:FE00:0/64 (Link)
Multicast Address:
 FF02::2
 FF02::1:FF00:0
 FF02::1
...
...
```

Telnet Command: ip6 dhcp req_opt

This command is used to configure option-request settings for DHCPv6 client.

Syntax

ip6 dhcp *req_opt <LAN1|..LAN8|DMZ|WAN1|..WAN4|USB1|USB2> <command> <parameter>| ...*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
req_opt	It means option-request.
LAN1|..LAN8|DMZ|WAN1|..WAN4|USB1|USB2	It means to specify LAN or WAN interface for such address.
[<command> <parameter>|..]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. *[..]* means that you can Enter several commands in one line.
-a	It means to show current DHCPv6 status.
-s	It means to ask the SIP.

-S	It means to ask the SIP name.
-d	It means to ask the DNS setting.
-D	It means to ask the DNS name.
-n	It means to ask NTP.
-i	It means to ask NIS.
-I	It means to ask NIS name.
-p	It means to ask NISP.
-P	It means to ask NISP name.
-b	It means to ask BCMCS.
-B	It means to ask BCMCS name.
-r	It means to ask refresh time.
Parameter	1: the parameter related to the request will be displayed. 0: the parameter related to the request will not be displayed.

Example

```
> ip6 dhcp req_opt WAN2 -S 1
> ip6 dhcp req_opt WAN2 -r 1
> ip6 dhcp req_opt WAN2 -a
% Interface WAN2 is set to request following DHCPv6 options:
%    sip name
>
```

Telnet Command: ip6 dhcp client

This command allows you to use DHCPv6 protocol to obtain IPv6 address from server.

Syntax

ip6 dhcp *client <WAN1| ...| WAN4| USB1| USB2> [-<command> <parameter>| ...*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
client	It means the dhcp client settings.
[<command> <parameter>| ..]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. *[..]* means that you can type in several commands in one line.
-a	It means to show current DHCPv6 status.
-p <IAID>	It means to request identity association ID for Prefix Delegation.
-n <IAID>	It means to request identity association ID for Non-temporary Address.
-t <time>	It means to set solicit interval. <time>: 0 ~ 7 seconds (default value is 0).
-c <parameter>	It means to send rapid commit to server. 1: Enable 0: Disable
-i <parameter>	It means to send information request to server. 1: Enable 0: Disable
-e <parameter>	It means to enable or disable the DHCPv6 client.

	1: Enable 0: Disable
-m <parameter>	It means to enable/disable server DUID set by Link layer and time. 1: Enable 0: Disable
-d	It means to display the client DUID.
-A <parameter>	It means to set authentication protocol. 0: Undefine 2: delayed protocol
-R <parameter>	It means to set realm value (max: 31 characters) in delayed protocol. <parameter>: Enter a string.
-S <parameter>	It means to set shared secret (max: 31 characters) in delayed protocol. <parameter>: Enter a string.
-K <parameter>	It means to set key ID (1~65535) in delayed protocol. <parameter>: Enter a number.

Example

```
> ip6 dhcp client WAN2 -d
 Client DUID = 000300011449bc0a6241
>
```

Telnet Command: ip6 dhcp server

This command allows you to configure DHCPv6 server.

Syntax

ip6 dhcp *server [-<command> <parameter>| ...]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
server	It means the dhcp server settings.
[<command> <parameter>| ..]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. *[..]* means that you can Enter several commands in one line.
-a	It means to show current DHCPv6 status.
-b	It means to show current DHCPv6 IP assignment table.
-n <name>	It means to set a pool name.
-c <parameter>	It means to send rapid commit to server. 1: Enable 0: Disable
-e <parameter>	It means to enable or disable the DHCPv6 server. 1: Enable 0: Disable
-t <time>	It means to set prefer lifetime.
-y <time>	It means to set valid lifetime.
-u <time>	It means to set T1 time.
-o <time>	It means to set T2 time.

-i <pool_min_addr>	It means to set the start IPv6 address of the address pool.
-x <pool_max_addr>	It means to set the end IPv6 address of the address pool.
-R	It means to send reconfigure packet to the client.
-r <0/1>	It means to disable (0) or enable (1) the auto range.
-N <0/1>	It means to disable (0) or enable (1) the random address allocation.
-d <addr>	It means to set the first DNS IPv6 address. <addr> : Enter an IPv6 address.
-D <addr>	It means to set the second DNS IPv6 address. <addr> : Enter an IPv6 address.
-m <1/0>	It means to enable(1) or disable (0) the server DUID set by Link Layter and Time.
-q <name>	It means to set DNS domain search list. <name>: Enter a name.
-z <0/1>	It means to disable (0) or enable (1) the DHCP PD.
pdadd <suffix> <prefix_len> <client linklocal><client DUID>	It means to add PD node.
pddel <PD index>	It means to delete PD node. <PD index>: Enter a number.
-A <parameter>	It means to set authentication protocol. <parameter>: Enter 0, 2 or 3. 0: Undefine 2: delayed protocol 3: Reconfigure key
- M <parameter>	It means to set realm value (max: 31 characters) in delayed protocol. <parameter>: Enter a string.
-S <parameter>	It means to set shared secret (max: 31 characters) in delayed protocol. <parameter>: Enter a string.
-K <parameter>	It means to set key ID (1~65535) in delayed protocol. <parameter>: Enter a number.

Example

```
> ip6 dhcp server LAN1 pdadd 11:22:33 64 fe80::e202:1bff:fe65:4084
000100011d2ce39a00e06f25c839
%      Add to PD list success!
%%  PD status : invalid, no prefix available.
>
```

Telnet Command: ip6 internet

This command allows you to configure settings for accessing Internet.

Syntax

ip6 internet *-W n -M n [-<command> <parameter> | ...]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
[<command> <parameter>| ..]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. *[..]* means that you can type in several commands in one line.
-W n	**W** means to set WAN interface and **n** means different selections. Default is WAN1. n=1: WAN1 n=2: WAN2 n=3: WAN3 . . n=X: WANx
-M n	M means to set Internet Access Mode (Mandatory) and n means different modes (represented by 0 – 5) n= 0: Offline, n=1: PPP, n=2: TSPC, n=3: AICCU, n=4: DHCPv6, n=5: Static n=6: 6in4-Static n=7: 6rd
-m n	It means to set IPv6 MTU. N = any value (0 means “unspecified”).
6rd	
-C <n>	It means to set 6rd connection mode. n=0: Auto n=1: Static
-s <server>	It means to set 6rd IPv4 Border Relay. <server>: Enter a string.
-m <n>	It means to set 6rd IPv4 address mask length. <n>: Enter a number.
-p <prefix>	It means to set IPv6 prefix for 6rd connection. <prefix>: Enter a prefix number of IPv6 address.
-l <n>	It means to set the prefix length for 6rd connection. <n>: It means to enter a fixed value as the length of the prefix.
6in4	
-s <server>	It means to set 6in4 remote endpoint IPv4 address.
-I <IPv6 Addr>	It means to set the IPv6 address for 6in4 connection.
-P <n>	It means to set IPv6 WAN prefix length for 6in4 connection.
-p <prefix>	It means to set 6in4 LAN Routed Prefix.
-l <n>	It means to set 6in4 LAN Routed Prefix length.
-T <n>	It means to set 6in4 Tunnel TTL.
TSPC/ AICCU	
-u <username>	It means to set username (max. 63 characters). <username>: Enter a string.
-P <password>	It means to set Password (max. 63 characters). <password>: Enter a password.
-s <server>	It means to set Tunnel Server IP. <server>: Enter an IPv4 Address or URL (max. 63 characters)
AICCU	
-p <prefix>	It means to set Subnet Prefix (AICCU). <prefix>: Enter a prefix number of IPv6 address.
-l <n>	It means to set Subnet Prefix length (AICCU). <n>: Enter a number.
-o <1/ 0>	It means to set AICCU always on. 1: on 0: off

-f	It means to set AICCU tunnel ID.
Static	
-w <addr>	It means to set Default Gateway. <addr>: Enter an IPv6 address.
Others	
-d <server>	It means to set 1st DNS Server IP. <server>: Enter an IPv6 address.
-D <server>	It means to set 2nd DNS Server IP. <server>: Enter an IPv6 address.
-t <dhcp/ra/none>	It means to set ipv6 PPP WAN test mode for DHCP or RA. <dhcp/ra/none> : Enter dhcp, ra or none.
-V	It means to view IPv6 Internet Access Profile.
-k	It means to dial the Tunnel on the WAN.
-j	It means to drop the Tunnel on the WAN.
-r n	It means to set Prefix State Machine RA timeout.
-c n	It means to set Prefix State Machine DHCPv6 Client timeout.
-q <0/1/2>	It means to set WAN detection mode. 0:NS Detect 1:Ping Detect 2:Always On
-z <value>	It means to set Ping Detect TTL (0-255). <value>: Enter 0~255.
-x <hostname/ IPv6 addr>	It means to set Ping Detect Host (hostname or IPv6 address). <hostname/ipv6 addr> : Enter a hostname or an IPv6 address.
-i <value>	It means to set ipv6 connection interval. <value>: Enter a number (1500-60000 (unit:10ms)).
-b <0/1>	It means to enable DNSv6 based on DHCPv6. 1 = on 0 = off
-R <0/1>	It means to Enable RIPng. 1 = on 0 = off

Example

```
> ip6 internet -W 2 -M 2 -u 88886666 -p draytek123456 -s amsterdam.freenet6.net
 This setting will take effect after rebooting.
 Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
> system reboot
```

Telnet Command: ip6 neigh

This command allows you to display IPv6 neighbour table.

Syntax

ip6 neigh *-s <inet6_addr> <eth_addr> <LAN1/..LAN8/ DMZ/ WAN1/..WAN4/ USB1/ USB2>*
ip6 neigh *-d <inet6_addr> <LAN1/..LAN8/ DMZ/ WAN1/..WAN4/ USB1/ USB2>*
ip6 neigh *-a <inet6_addr> <-N LAN1/..LAN8/ DMZ/ WAN1/..WAN4/ USB1/ USB2>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-s <inet6_addr> <eth_addr> <LAN1/..LAN8/ DMZ/ WAN1/ WAN4/ USB1/ USB2>	It means to add a neighbour. <inet6_addr>: Enter an IPv6 address. <eth_addr>: Enter a submask address. <LAN1/..LAN8/DMZ/WAN1/..WAN4/USB1/USB2>: Specify an interface for the neighbor.
-d <inet6_addr> <LAN1/..LAN8/ DMZ/ WAN1/..WAN4/ USB1/ USB2>	It means to delete a neighbour. <inet6_addr>: Enter an IPv6 address. < LAN1/..LAN8/DMZ/WAN1/..WAN4/USB1/USB2>: Specify an interface for the neighbor.
-a <inet6_addr> <-N LAN1/..LAN8/ DMZ/ WAN1/..WAN4/ USB1/ USB2>	It means to show neighbour status. <inet6_addr>: Enter an IPv6 address. <LAN1/..LAN8/DMZ/WAN1/..WAN4/USB1/USB2>: Specify an interface for the neighbor.

Example

```
> ip6 neigh -s 2001:2222:3333::1111 00:50:7F:11:ac:22:WAN2
% Neighbour 2001:2222:3333::1111 successfully added!
DrayTek> ip6 neigh -a

I/F  ADDR                                MAC             STATE
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
 LAN1 ::                                                  NONE
 LAN1 2001:2222:3333::1111                               FAILED
 LAN1 FE80::D161:4B76:3314:9E59         14-49-bc-0a-8a-b8  STALE
 LAN1 FF02::1                            33-33-00-00-00-01  CONNECTED
NONE
>
```

Telnet Command: ip6 pneigh

This command allows you to add a proxy neighbour.

Syntax

ip6 pneigh *-s <inet6_addr> <LAN1/..LAN8/ DMZ/ WAN1/..WAN4/ USB1/ USB2>*

ip6 pneigh *-d <inet6_addr><LAN1/..LAN8/ DMZ/ WAN1/..WAN4/ USB1/ USB2>*

ip6 pneigh *-a <inet6_addr> <-N LAN1/..LAN8/ DMZ/ WAN1/..WAN4/ USB1/ USB2>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-s <inet6_addr> <LAN1/..LAN8/ DMZ/ WAN 1/..WAN4/ USB1/ USB2>	It means to add a proxy neighbour. <inet6_addr>: Enter an IPv6 address. <LAN1/..LAN8/DMZ/WAN1/..WAN4/USB1/USB2>: Specify an interface for the proxy neighbor.
-d <inet6_addr> <LAN1/..LAN8/ DMZ/ WAN 1/..WAN4/ USB1/ USB2>	It means to delete a proxy neighbour. <inet6_addr>: Enter an IPv6 address. <LAN1/..LAN8/DMZ/WAN1/..WAN4/USB1/USB2>: Specify an interface for the proxy neighbor.
-a <inet6_addr> <-N LAN1/..LAN8/ DMZ/ WAN1 /..WAN4/ USB1/ USB2>	It means to show proxy neighbour status. <inet6_addr>: Enter an IPv6 address. <LAN1/..LAN8/DMZ/WAN1/..WAN4/USB1/USB2>: Specify an interface for the proxy neighbor.

Example

```
> ip6 neigh -s FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:300 LAN1
%      Neighbour FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:300 successfully added!
```

Telnet Command: ip6 route

This command allows you to IPv6 route policy.

Syntax

ip6 route *-s <prefix> <prefix-length> <gateway> <LAN1/..LAN8/ DMZ/ WAN1/..WAN4/ USB1/ USB2/ VPN1/..VPN64> <-D>*

ip6 route -*d <prefix> <prefix-length>*

ip6 route -*a <LAN1/..LAN8/ DMZ/ WAN1/..WAN4/ USB1/ USB2/ VPN1/..VPN64>*

ip6 route -*l*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-s <prefix> <prefix-length> <gateway> <LAN1/..LAN8/ DMZ/ WAN1/ WAN4/ USB1/ USB2/ VPN1/..VPN64> <-D>	It means to add a route. <prefix>: It means to enter the prefix number of IPv6 address. <prefix length>: It means to enter a fixed value as the length of the prefix. <gateway>: It means to enter the gateway of the router. <LAN1/..LAN8/DMZ/WAN1/..WAN4/ USB1/USB2/VPN1/..VPN64>: It means to specify LAN or WAN or VPN interface for such address. <-D>: It means that such route will be treated as the default route.
-d <prefix> <prefix-length>	It means to delete a route. <prefix>: It means to enter the prefix number of IPv6 address. <prefix length>: It means to enter a fixed value as the length of the prefix.

-a <LAN1/..LAN8/ DMZ/ WAN1/.. WAN4/ USB1/ USB2/ VPN1/..VPN64>	It means to show the route status. <LAN1/..LAN8/DMZ/WAN1/..WAN4/USB1/USB2/VPN1/..VPN64>: It means to specify LAN or WAN or VPN interface for such address.
-l	It means to clear the routing table.

Example

```
> ip6 route -s FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:500 16 FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:100 LAN1
%      Route FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:500/16 successfully added!
> ip6 route -a LAN1

PREFIX/PREFIX-LEN                    I/F METRIC FLAG NEXT-HOP
------------------------------------------------------------------------------
 ::0.0.0.1/128                       LAN1    0 U ::
 FE80::/128                          LAN1    0 U ::
 FE80::1649:BCFF:FE0A:6240/128       LAN1    0 U ::
 FE80::/64                           LAN1  256 U ::
 FE80::/16                           LAN1 1024 UGS FE80::250:7FFF:FE12:100
 FF00::/8                            LAN1  256 U ::
>
```

Telnet Command: ip6 ping

This command allows you to pin an IPv6 address or a host.

Syntax

ip6 ping *<IPv6 address/ Host> <LAN1/..LAN8/ DMZ/ WAN1/..WAN4/ USB1/ USB2> <send count> <data_size>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
IPV6 address/ Host	It means to specify the IPv6 address or host for ping.
LAN1/..LAN8/ DMZ/ WAN1/.. WAN4/ USB1/ USB2	It means to specify an interface for such address.
data_size	Ranges from 1 to 1452.

Example

```
> ip6 ping 2001:4860:4860::8888 WAN2

Pinging 2001:4860:4860::8888 with 64 bytes of Data:

Receive reply from 2001:4860:4860::8888, time=330ms
Receive reply from 2001:4860:4860::8888, time=330ms
Receive reply from 2001:4860:4860::8888, time=330ms
Receive reply from 2001:4860:4860::8888, time=330ms
Receive reply from 2001:4860:4860::8888, time=330ms

Packets: Sent = 5, Received = 5, Lost = 0 <% loss>
>
```

Telnet Command: ip6 tracert

This command allows you to trace the routes from the router to the host.

Syntax

ip6 tracert <*IPV6 address/ Host*><*LAN1/ ..LAN8/ DMZ/ WAN1/ ..WAN4/ USB1/ USB2*>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<*IPV6 address/ Host*>	It means to specify the IPv6 address or host for ping.
<*LAN1/ ..LAN8/ DMZ/ WAN1/ WAN4/ USB1/ USB2*>	It means to specify an interface for such address.

Example

```
> ip6 tracert 2001:4860:4860::8888
traceroute to 2001:4860:4860::8888, 30 hops max through protocol ICMP
  1 2001:5C0:1400:B::10B8    340 ms
  2 2001:4DE0:1000:A22::1    330 ms
  3 2001:4DE0:A::1           330 ms
  4 2001:4DE0:1000:34::1     340 ms
  5 2001:7F8:1: :A501:5169:1 330 ms
  6 2001:4860::1:0:4B3       350 ms
  7 2001:4860::8:0:2DAF      330 ms
  8 2001:4860::2:0:66E       340 ms
  9 Request timed out.          *
 10 2001:4860:4860::8888     350 ms
Trace complete.
>
```

Telnet Command: ip6 tspc

This command allows you to display TSPC status.

Syntax

ip6 tspc <*ifno*>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
ifno	It means the connection interface. Ifno=1 (means WAN1) Info=2 (means WAN2)

Example

```
> ip6 tspc 2
Local Endpoint v4 Address : 111.243.177.223
Local Endpoint v6 Address : 2001:05c0:1400:000b:0000:0000:0000:10b9
Router DNS name : 8886666.broker.freenet6.net
Remote Endpoint v4 Address :81.171.72.11
Remote Endpoint v6 Address : 2001:05c0:1400:000b:0000:0000:0000:10b8
Tspc Prefixlen : 56
Tunnel Broker: Amsterdam.freenet.net

Status: Connected

>
```

Telnet Command: ip6 radvd

This command allows you to enable or disable RADVD server.

Syntax

Ip6 radvd *<LAN1/..LAN8/DMZ> <-<command> <parameter>/ ... >*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<<command> <parameter>/..>	The available commands with parameters are listed below. *<..>* means that you can Enter several commands in one line.
-s <0/1>	It means to enable or disable the default lifetime of the RADVD server. 1: Enable the RADVD server. 0: Disable the RADVD server.
-D <0/1/2>	It means to set RDNSS Disable/Enable/Deploy (0/1/2) when WAN is up.
-d <lifetme>	It means to set RA default lifetime.
-i <lifetme>	It means to set RA min interval time(sec).
-I <lifetme>	It means to set RA MAX interval time(sec).
-h <hoplimit>	It means to set RA hop limit.
-m <mtu/auto>	It means to set RA MTU, 1280-1500. mtu: auto - auto select MTU from WAN,
-e <time>	It means to set reachable time.
-a <time/infinity>	It means to set retransmit timer /infinity.
-p <0/1/2>	It means to set radvd default preference Low/Medium/High. 0-low 1-medium 2-high
-v	It means to view radvd configuration.
-V	It means to view setting in RA.
-L <time/infinity>	It means to set prefix valid lifetime.
-P <time/infinity>	It means to set prefix preferred lifetime.
-r <num>	It means to to set RA test for item. <num>: 0, 121, 124 0: default, 121: logo 121, 124: logo 124..
-R	It means to reload Config and send RA for subnets.
-u	It means to view MTU on all interfaces.

Example

```
> ip6 radvd LAN1 -s 1
% [LAN1] setting !
%   Enable LAN1 radvd OK!
> ip6 radvd LAN1 -d 1800
% [LAN1] setting !
%   Set default lifetime ok: 1800 !
> ip6 radvd LAN1 -V
% [LAN1] setting !
```

```
%   Default Lifetime : 0 seconds
%   min interval time: 200 seconds
%   MAX interval time: 600 seconds
%   Hop limit       : 64
%   MTU            : 0
%   Reachable time   : 0
%   Retransmit time  : 0
%   Preference      : Medium
>
```

Telnet Command: ip6 mngt

This command allows you to manage the settings for access list.

Syntax

ip6 mngt list

ip6 mngt list *add <Index> <IPv6 Object Index>| remove <index>| flush*

ip6 mngt status

ip6 mngt *<internet/ http/telnet/ping/https/ssh/enforce_https> <on/off>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
list	It means to show the setting information of the access list.
add <Index> <IPv6 Object Index> | remove <NO.>| flush	It means to add an IPv6 address which can be used to execute management through Internet. <Index>: 1 to 10. Ten profiles can be set for IPv6 access list. <IPv6 Object Index>: It means the index number of IP object (1 to 64) or keyword object (1 to 64) . remove <Index>: It means to remove (delete) the specified IP/Keyword object.
flush	It means to clear the IPv6 access table.
status	It means to show the status of IPv6 remote management.
internet/ http/telnet/ping/https/ssh /enforce_https	These protocols are used for accessing Internet.
on/off	It means to enable (on) or disable (off) the Internet accessing through http/telnet/ping.

Example

```
> ip6 mngt list add 1 62
%% Set OK.
>
```

Telnet Command: ip6 online

This command allows you to check the online status of IPv6 LAN /WAN.

Syntax

ip6 *online <WAN1/..WAN4/USB1/USB2>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<WAN1/..WAN4/USB1/USB2>	It means the connection interface.

Example

```
> ip6 online WAN1
 % WAN1 online status :
 % IPv6 WAN1 Disabled
 % Default Gateway : ::
 % Interface : DOWN
 % UpTime : 00:00:00
 % IPv6 DNS Server: :: Static
 % IPv6 DNS Server: :: Static
 % IPv6 DNS Server: :: Static
 % Tx packets = 0, Tx bytes = 0, Rx packets = 0, Rx bytes = 0
 % MTU Onlink: 1280 , Config MTU : 0
```

Telnet Command: ip6 aiccu

This command allows you to set IPv6 settings for WAN interface with connection type of AICCU.

Syntax

ip6 aiccu -i *<ifno>* **-r**

ip6 aiccu -i *<ifno>* **-s**

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<Ifno>	It means the connection interface. 1=WAN1 2=WAN2
-r	It means to remove (delete) the specified index number with IPv6 settings.
-s	It means to display the interface status.

Example

```
> ip6 aiccu –i 1 –s
Status: Idle
>
```

Telnet Command: ip6 ntp

This command allows you to set IPv6 settings for NTP (Network Time Protocols) server.

Syntax

ip6 ntp –h

ip6 ntp –v

ip6 ntp –p <0/1>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
–h	It is used to display the usage of such command.
-v	It is used to show the NTP state.
-p <0/ 1>	It is used to specify NTP server for IPv6. 0 – Auto 1 – First Query IPv6 NTP Server.

Example

```
> ip6 ntp -p 1
% Set NTP Priority: IPv6 First
```

Telnet Command: ip6 lan

This command allows you to set IPv6 settings for LAN interface.

Syntax

ip6 lan -l n <-*<l:w:d:D:m:o:s>* <*parameter*> / ... >

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-h	It is used to display the usage of such command.
-l <n>	It means to selete LAN interface to be set. n= 1: LAN1 n= 2: LAN2, ... x: LANx. Default is LAN1
-w <n>	It means to selete WAN interface to be primary interface. n= 0: None, n=1: WAN1 , n=2: WAN2, ... x: WANx.
-d <server>	It means to set 1st DNS Server IP. <server>: Enter the IPv6 Address.
-D <server>	It means to set 2nd DNS Server IP. <server>: Enter the IPv6 Address.
-m <n>	It means to set ipv6 LAN management. n=0:OFF n=1:SLAAC. Default is SLAAC n=2:DHCPv6
-o <n>	It means to enable Other option(O-bit) flag. (O-bit is redundant when management is DHCPv6) n=0: Disable n=1: Enable.
-e <n>	It means to add an extension WAN. n: 1: WAN1, 2: WAN2, ... x: WANx.
-E <n>	It means to delete an extension WAN. n: 1: WAN1 ,2: WAN2, ... x: WANx.
-b <map>	It means to set bit map(decimal) for extension WAN. <map>: 0: WAN1; 1: WAN2, ... n: WAN(n+1).
-f <n>	It means to disable IPv6. n=1: Disable IPv6, n=0: Enable IPv6.
-R <n>	It means to enable /disable RIPng. n=1: Enable RIPng, n=0: Disable RIPng.
-s <n>	It means to show IPv6 LAN setting. n=0:show all. Default is show all. n=1 to 8: LAN1 to LAN8. n=17: DMZ.

Example

```
> ip6 lan -l 1 -w 1 -d 2001:4860:4860::8888 -o 1 -f 0 -s 2
%   Set LAN1!

%   Set primary WAN1!

%  Set 1st DNS server 2001:4860:4860::8888

%   Set Other Option Enable!

%   [LAN1] support ipv6!
```

```
 This setting will take effect after rebooting.
 Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.

% [LAN2] setting:
%  Primary WAN    : WAN1
%  Management     : SLAAC
%  Other Option   : Disable
%  WAN Exten      : None
%  Subnet ID      : 2
%  Static IP(0)   : ::/0
%                 [ifno: 0, enable: 0]
%  Static IP(1)   : ::/0
%                 [ifno: 0, enable: 0]
%  Static IP(2)   : ::/0
%                 [ifno: 0, enable: 0]
%  Static IP(3)   : ::/0
%                 [ifno: 0, enable: 0]
%  DNS1           : 2001:4860:4860::8888
%  DNS2           : 2001:4860:4860::8844
%  ULA Type       : OFF
%  RIPng          : Enable
>
```

Telnet Command: ip6 session

This command allows you to set sessions limit for IPv6 address.

Syntax

ip6 session *on*

ip6 session *off*

ip6 session *default <num>*

ip6 session *status*

ip6 session *show*

ip6 session *add <IP1-IP2> <num> <p2pnum>*

ip6 session *del <IP1-IP2> <num> <p2pnum>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
on	It means to turn on session limit for each IP.
off	It means to turn off session limit for each IP.
default <num>	It means to set the default number of session num limit. <num>: Enter a number.
status	It means to display the current settings.
show	It means to display all IP range session limit settings.
add <IP1-IP2><num> <p2pnum>	<add>*:* It means to add the session limit for an IPv6 range. <IP1-IP2> : Specify a range for IPv6 addresses. <num>: Enter a number.
del<IP1-IP2><num> <p2pnum>	<del>*:* It means to delete the session limit for an IPv6 range. <IP1-IP2> : Specify a range for IPv6 addresses. <num>: Enter a number.

Example

```
> ip6 session on
> ip6 session add 2100:ABCD::2-2100:ABCD::10 100
> ip6 session status

  IPv6 range:
    2100:ABCD::2 - 2100:ABCD::10 : 100

  Current ip6 session limit is turn on

  Current default session number is 100
```

Telnet Command: ip6 bandwidth

This command allows you to set IPv6 settings for bandwidth control.

Syntax

ip6 bandwidth *on*
ip6 bandwidth *off*
ip6 bandwidth *default <tx_rate> <rx_rate>*
ip6 bandwidth *status*
ip6 bandwidth *show*
ip6 bandwidth *add <IP1-IP2> <tx><rx><shared>*
ip6 bandwidth *del <IP1-IP2> <tx><rx><shared>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
on	It means to turn on bandwidth limit for each IP.
off	It means to turn off bandwidth limit for each IP.
default <tx_rate> <rx_rate>	It means to set the default transmission (tx), receiving (rx) rate of bandwidth limit (0-30000 Kbps/Mbps). <tx_rate>: Enter a number. <rx_rate>: Enter a number.
status	It means to display the current settings.
show	It means to display all IP range bandwidth limit settings.
add <IP1-IP2> *<tx><rx><shared>*	<add>: It means to add the bandwidth limit for an IPv6 range. <IP1-IP2> - Specify a range for IPv6 addresses. <tx><rx>: It means the bandwidth limit for transmission and receivign rate. <shared>: It means the bandwidth will be shared for the IPv6 range.
del <IP1-IP2> *<tx><rx><shared>*	<del>: It means to delete the bandwidth limit for an IPv6 range by first IP (IP1) or 'del all'. <IP1-IP2> - Specify a range for IPv6 addresses. <tx><rx>: It means the bandwidth limit for transmission and receivign rate. <shared>: It means the bandwidth will be shared for the IPv6 range.

Example

```
> ip6 bandwidth on
> ip6 bandwidth add 2001:ABCD::2-2001:ABCD::10 512 5M shared
> ip6 bandwidth status

  IPv6 range:
    2001:ABCD::2 - 2001:ABCD::10 : Tx:512K Rx:5M shared

  Current ip6 Bandwidth limit is turn on

  Current default ip6 Bandwidth rate is Tx:2000K Rx:8000K bps
> ip6 bandwidth del 2001:ABCD::2
>
```

Telnet Command: ipf view

IPF users to view the version of the IP filter, to view/set the log flag, to view the running IP filter rules.

Syntax

ipf view *[-VdhrtzZ]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-V	It means to show the version of this IP filter.
-d	It means to show the running data filter rules.
-h	It means to show the hit-number of the filter rules.
-r	It means to show the running call and data filter rules.
-t	It means to display all the information at one time.
-z	It means to clear a filter rule's statistics.
-Z	It means to clear IP filter's gross statistics.

Example

```
> ipf view -V
ipf: IP Filter: v3.3.1 (1852)
Kernel: IP Filter: v3.3.1
Running: yes
Log Flags: 0x6055af1c = block, nomatch
Default: pass all, Logging: available
```

Telnet Command: ipf set

This command is used to set general rule, filter set and filter rule for firewall.

Syntax

ipf set *<Options>*

ipf set *<SET_NO><Options>*

ipf set *<SET_NO>* ***rule*** *<RULE_NO><Options>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
ipf set <Options>	It means to set the firewall general setup and default rule.
ipf set <SET_NO><Options>	It means to set the firewall fiter set including comments and next fiter set.
ipf set <SET_NO> rule <RULE_NO> <Options>	It means to set the firewall rule in filter set. For detailed information, refer to Telnet Command: ipf rule.
About ipf set <Options>	
-v	It means to view the configuration of general set.
-d <p1>	It means to setup Data Filter. <p1>: Specify the index number (1 to 12) of the set profile. To disable the setting, enter "0".

- p <p1><p2>	It means to setup actions for packet not matching any rule and whether record syslog. <p1>: Type “0” to let packets not matching any rule pass; Type “1” to block the packets not matching any rule. <p2>: "0" means the log related to rule matching will not be recorded on Syslog; "1" means the log related to rule matching will be recorded on Syslog. For example, to set pass for packet not matching any rule and enable syslog, ***-p 0 1***.
-R <v4/ v6> <Enable/ Disable>	It means to accept routing packet from WAN. <v4/v6>: IPv4 or IPv6. <Enable/Disable>: Enter 0 (enable) or 1 (disable). Set Accept routing packet from WAN by IPv4, please enter ***-R v4 0***.
-L <p1>	It means to enable or disable the Strict Security Firewall function. <p1>: Enter 1(enable) or 0 (disable).
-C <p1>	It means to setup Code Page. <p1>: Enter a code page number (0 to 20). For example, ipf set -C 20. 0. None 1. ANSI(1250)-Central Europe 2. ANSI(1251)-Cyrillic 3. ANSI(1252)-Latin I 4. ANSI(1253)-Greek 5. ANSI(1254)-Turkish 6. ANSI(1255)-Hebrew 7. ANSI(1256)-Arabic 8. ANSI(1257)-Baltic 9. ANSI(1258)-Viet Nam 10. OEM(437)-United States 11. OEM(850)-Multilingual Latin I 12. OEM(860)-Portuguese 13. OEM(861)-Icelandic 14. OEM(863)-Canadian French 15. OEM(865)-Nordic 16. ANSI/OEM(874)-Thai 17. ANSI/OEM(932)-Japanese Shift-JIS 18. ANSI/OEM(936)-Simplified Chinese GBK 19. ANSI/OEM(949)-Korean 20. ANSI/OEM(950)-Traditional Chinese Big5
-M <p1><p2>	It means to setup APP Enforcement and Syslog. <p1>: Enter a number (0 to 32). In which, 0 means none; 1 to 32 mens the index number of the profile. <p2>: "0" means the log related to APP Enforcement will not be recorded on Syslog; "1" means the log related to APP Enforcement will be recorded on Syslog.
-U <p1><p2>	It means to setup URL Content Filter for packets not matching any rule. <p1>: Enter a number (0 to 8). In which, 0 means none; 1 to 8 mens the index number of the profile. <p2>: "0" means the log related to URL Content Filter will not be recorded on Syslog; "1" means the log related to URL Content Filter will be recorded on Syslog.
-W <p1><p2>	It means to setup Web Content Filter for packets not matching any rule.

	<p1>: Enter a number (0 to 8). In which, 0 means none; 1 to 8 mens the index number of the profile. <p2>: "0" means the log related to Web Content Filter will not be recorded on Syslog; "1" means the log related to Web Content Filter will be recorded on Syslog.
-D <p1><p2>	It means to setup DNS Filter for packets not matching any rule. <p1>: Enter a number (0 to 8). In which, 0 means none; 1 to 8 mens the index number of the profile. <p2>: "0" means the log related to DNS Filter will not be recorded on Syslog; "1" means the log related to DNS Filter will be recorded on Syslog.
-a <p1>	It means to configure the advanced settings.
-f <p1>	It means to accept large incoming fragmented UDP or ICMP packets. <p1>: Enter 1(enable) or 0 (disable).
-t <p1>	It means to enable or disable the Transparent Mode. <p1>: Enter 1(enable) or 0 (disable).
-E <p1><p2>	It means to set the maximum count for session limitation. <p1>: Enter a number (0 to 50000) <p2>: "0" means the log related to session control will not be recorded on Syslog; "1" means the log related to session control will be recorded on Syslog.
-Q <p1><p2>	It means to set the QoS Class. <p1>: Enter a number (0 to 4). 0: None 1: Class 1 2: Class 2 3: Class 3 4: Default Class <p2>: "0" means the log related to QoS Class will not be recorded on Syslog; "1" means the log related to QoS Class will be recorded on Syslog.
-Y <p1><p2>	It means to set the User Management. <p1>: Enter a number (-1 to 2). -1: None 0: All 1: user object 2: user group <p2>: 1 to 200(if p1 is set with 1, user object) or 1 to 32(if p1 is set with 2, user group)
-y <p1>	It means the log related to User Management will be or be not recorded on Syslog. <p1>: Enter 1(enable) or 0 (disable).
-w <p1>	It means to set the window size of TCP protocol. <p1>: Enter a value (0 to 65535).
-A <p1>	It means to enable or disable the function of packet capture. <p1>: Enter 1(enable) or 0 (disable).
About ipf set <SET_NO><Options>	
-m <Comments>	It means to set comment for a filter set. <Comments>: Enter a description for the filter set.
-v	It means to view the comment and the next filter set.
-n <NEXT_SET_NO>	It means to specify the next filter set of current filter set.

	<NEXT_SET_NO>: Enter a number (1 to 12). For example, ipf set 1 -n 2.

Example

```
> ipf set -R "v4 1"
Setting saved.
> ipf set -R "v6 1"
Setting saved.
> ipf set -v
Data Filter: Enable (Start Filter Set = 1)
Log Flag   : Disable

Actions for packet not matching any rule:
  Pass or Block     : Pass
  CodePage         : ANSI(1252)-Latin I
  Max Sessions Limit: 60000
  Current Sessions  : 0
  Mac Bind IP       : Non-Strict
  QOS Class         : None
  Packet Capture    : Disable
  APP Enforcement   : None
  URL Content Filter: None
  WEB Content Filter: None
  DNS Filter        : None
  Load-Balance policy : Auto-select
  ----------------------------------------------------------------------
  CodePage                : ANSI(1252)-Latin I
  Window size              : 65535
  Session timeout          : 60
  DrayTek Banner           : Enable
  ----------------------------------------------------------------------
  Accept large incoming fragmented UDP or ICMP packets: Enable
  Transparent Mode                                 : Disable
  ----------------------------------------------------------------------
  Block routing packet from WAN:
    [v] IPv4
    [v] IPv6
  ----------------------------------------------------------------------
  [v] Enable Strict Security Firewall l
>
```

Telnet Command: ipf rule

This command is used to set filter rule for firewall.

Syntax

ipf rule *s r* *[-<command> <parameter> | ...*

ipf rule s r -v

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
s	It means the Filter Set. s: Enter a value (1 to 12).

r	It means Filter Rule r: Enter a value (1~7).
[<command> <parameter>| ..]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. *[...]* means that you can type in several commands in one line.
-e <0/ 1>	It means to enable or disable the rule setting. 0: disable 1:enable
-v	It is used to show current filter rule settings.
-D <value>	It means to set the direction of packet flow. It is for **Data Filter** only. 0: LAN/DMZ/RT/VPN -> WAN 1: WAN -> LAN/DMZ/RT/VPN 2: LAN/DMZ/RT/VPN -> LAN/DMZ/RT/VPN
-I "<e/ d><para1, para2,...>"	It means to set incoming interface. e: Enable the function. d: Disable the function. Para1, para2,...: Available values include all, LAN1, LAN2,...LAN8, RT, VPN, WAN1, WAN2,...WAN9 Example: > ipf rule 3 1 -e 1 -I "e LAN1"
-O "<e/ d><para1, para2,...>"	It means to set outgoing interface. e: Enable the function. d: Disable the function. Para1, para2,...: Available values include all, LAN1, LAN2,...LAN8, RT, VPN, WAN1, WAN2,...WAN9 Exampe: > ipf rule 3 1 -e 1 -O "e LAN2"
-s "o| o6| g| g6| c <field> <obj>"	It means to specify source IP object, IP group. o: Indicates “IPv4 object”. o6: Indicates IPv6 object". g: Indicates “IPv4 group”. g6: Indicates “IPv6 group”. c: Indicates country object. field: Indicates the quantity of objects/groups that can be set for this rule at one time. -2 object profiles are allowed for IPv4 -2 group profiles are allowed for IPv4 group -3 object profiles are allowed for IPv6 -1 group profiles is allowed for IPv6 group obj : indicates index number of object or index number of group. -Range for IPv4, from 1 to 192, 0 means none. -Range for IPv4 group, from 1 to 32, 0 means none. -Range for IPv6, from 1 to 64, 0 means none. -Range for IPv6 group, from 1 to 32, 0 means none. -Ranges for country object, from 1 to 32. For example, -s "o 1 2" means IPv4 object profile 1 and 2 are set as souce IP. Exampe: > ipf rule 3 1 -e 1 -s "o 1 2"
-d "o| o6| g| g6| c <field> <obj>"	It means to specify destination IP object, IP group. o: Indicates “IPv4 object”. o6: Indicates IPv6 object". g: Indicates “IPv4 group”. g6: Indicates “IPv6 group”.

	c: Indicates country object. field: Indicates the quantity of objects/groups can be set for this rule at one time. -2 object profiles are allowed for IPv4 -2 group profiles are allowed for IPv4 group -3 object profiles are allowed for IPv6 -1 group profiles is allowed for IPv6 group obj : indicates index number of object or index number of group. -Range for IPv4, from 1 to 192, 0 means none. -Range for IPv4 group, from 1 to 32, 0 means none. -Range for IPv6, from 1 to 64, 0 means none. -Range for IPv6 group, from 1 to 32, 0 means none. -Range for country object, from 1 to 32. For example, -s "o 1 2" means IPv4 object profile 1 and 2 are set as destination IP. Exampe: > ipf rule 3 1 -e 1 -d "o 2 2"
–d "u *<Address Type> <Start IP Address> <End IP Address> | <Address Mask>"*	It means to configure **destination** IP address including address type, start IP address, end IP address and address mask. u : It means “user defined”. *Address Type* : Type the number (representing different address type). 0 : Subnet Address 1 : Single Address 2 : Any Address 3 : Range Address Example: Set Subnet Address => -d "u 0 192.168.1.10 255.255.255.0" Set Single Address => -d "u 1 192.168.1.10 " Set Any Address => -d "u 2 " Set Range Address => -d "u 3 192.168.1.10 192.168.1.15"
-S o| g <obj>	It means to specify Service Type object. o : indicates “object” profile. g: indicates “group” profile. <obj> : indicates index number of object or index number of group. Available settings range from 1-96. For example, -S "o 1" means the first service type object profile.
-S "u <protocol> <source_port_value> <destination_port_vale>"	It means to configure advanced settings for Service Type, such as protocol and port range. u : it means “user defined”. <protocol> : It means TCP(6),UDP(17), TCP/UDP(255), Any(0), ICMP(1), ICMPv6(58), Other(other) <source_port_value> : 1 : Port OP, range is 0-3. 0:= =, 1:!=, 2:>, 3:< 3 : Port range of the Start Port Number, range is 1-65535. 5 : Port range of the End Port Number, range is 1-65535. <destination_port_value>: 2 : Port OP, range is 0-3, 0:==, 1:!=, 2:>, 3:< 4 : Port range of the Start Port Number, range is 1-65535. 6: Port range of the End Port Number, range is 1-65535.
-f <value>	It means to set fragment type. 0 : Don't care. 1 : Unfragmented.

	2 : Fragmented. 3 : Too Short
-F "<Param 0> <Param 1>"	It means the Filter action you can specify. <param 0>: Enter the number to set the filter action. 0 : Pass Immediately. 1 : Block Immediately. 2 : Pass if no further match. 3 : Block if no further match. <Param 1>: Let the log be recorded on Syslog. 0 : Disable Log. 1 : Enable Log.
-m "<Param 0> <Param 1>"	It means to set MAC Bind IP type and the Syslog. <param 0>: Enter the number to choose the type. 0 : Non-Strict. 1 : Strict. <Param 1>: Let the log be recorded on Syslog. 0 : Disable Log. 1 : Enable Log.
-Y <Param 0> <Param 1>	It means to set the User Management. <param 0>: Enter the number to choose the type. -1 : None. 0 : All. 1 : User Object 2 : User group <Param 1>: Let the log be recorded on Syslog if <param 0> is set with None/ALL. 0 : Disable. 1 : Enable. Enter the the user object number (1 to 200) / group number (1 to 32) if <param 0> is set with User Object.
-y <value>	It means the log related to User Management will be or be not recorded on Syslog. <value>: Enter 1(enable) or 0 (disable)
-L <Param 0> <Param 1>	It means to set the maximum count for the session limitation. <param 0>: Enter the number (0 to 60000) to choose the type. <Param 1>: Let the log be recorded on Syslog. 0 : Disable. 1 : Enable.
-q <Param 0> <Param 1>	It means to set the classification for QoS. <Param 0>: 1- Class 1, 2 – Class 2, 3 – Class 3, 4 – Other <Param 1>: Let the log be recorded on Syslog. 0 : Disable. 1 : Enable.
-A "<Param 0>"	It means to enable or disable the packet capture function. <Param 0>: Enter 0 or 1. 0 : Disable. 1 : Enable.

-l <Param 0> <Param 1>	It means load balance policy. Such function is used for “debug” only. <Param 0>: Enter 0, 1, 2, or 3. 0:Auto-Select, 1:WAN 1. 2:WAN 2. 3:WAN 3. <Param 1>: Enter 0 or 1. 0:Disable Log. 1:Enable Log.
-a "<Param 0> <Param 1>"	It means to specify which APP Enforcement profile will be applied. <Param 0> : Available settings range from 0 ~ 32. “0” means no profile will be applied. <Param 1> : Let the log be recorded on Syslog. 0 : Disable. 1 : Enable.
-u <Param 0> <Param 1>	It means to specify which URL Content Filter profile will be applied. <Param 0> : Available settings range from 0 ~ 8. “0” means no profile will be applied. <Param 1> : Let the log be recorded on Syslog. 0 : Disable. 1 : Enable.
-w "<Param 0> <Param 1>"	It means to specify which Web Content Filter profile will be applied. <Param 0> : Available settings range from 0 ~ 8. “0” means no profile will be applied. <Param 1> : Let the log be recorded on Syslog. 0 : Disable. 1 : Enable.
-n "<Param 0> <Param 1>"	It means to specify which DNS Filter profile will be applied. <Param 0> : Available settings range from 0 ~ 8. “0” means no profile will be applied. <Param 1> : Let the log be recorded on Syslog. 0 : Disable. 1 : Enable.
-N <value>	It means to set the Next Filter Set. <value> : Available settings range from 0 ~ 12. “0” means no profile will be applied. 0 : None 1 : Set#1; 2: Set#2, and so on.
-c <0~20>	It means to set code page. Different number represents different code page. 0. None 1. ANSI(1250)-Central Europe 2. ANSI(1251)-Cyrillic 3. ANSI(1252)-Latin I 4. ANSI(1253)-Greek 5. ANSI(1254)-Turkish 6. ANSI(1255)-Hebrew 7. ANSI(1256)-Arabic 8. ANSI(1257)-Baltic 9. ANSI(1258)-Viet Nam 10. OEM(437)-United States

	11. OEM(850)-Multilingual Latin I 12. OEM(860)-Portuguese 13. OEM(861)-Icelandic 14. OEM(863)-Canadian French 15. OEM(865)-Nordic 16. ANSI/OEM(874)-Thai 17. ANSI/OEM(932)-Japanese Shift-JIS 18. ANSI/OEM(936)-Simplified Chinese GBK 19. ANSI/OEM(949)-Korean 20. ANSI/OEM(950)-Traditional Chinese Big5
-C "<Windows Size> <Session_Timeout>"	It means to set Window size and Session timeout (Minute). <Windows Size> - Available settings range from 1 ~ 65535. <Session_Timeout> - Make the best utilization of network resources.
-b <value>	It means to enable or disable the DrayTek Banner. <value>: 0 : Disable; 1 : Enable.
-t "i <Param 0> <Param 1>"	It means to set schedule profile. Totally, there are four sets of schedule profiles can be specified. <param 0>: Enter the index number (1 to 4) for each set. <param 1>: Enter the index number (0 to 15) of the schedule profile for each set. 0 means none. For example, -t "i 1 3" means schedule profile #3 is configured for set #1. Exampe: > ipf rule 3 1 -e 1 -t "i 1 3"
-t "c <value>"	It means to enable or disable the function of clearing sessions when the schedule is ON. <value>: 0 : Disable; 1 : Enable.
-M <Your Comments>	It means to set comments for the fitler rule. <Your Comments>: Enter a brief description.
-U "<up/down>"	It means to move up or move down the order of a filter rule in the filter set. up: It indicates move the filter rule up. down: It indicates move the filter rule down.

Example

```
> ipf rule 2 1 -v
Filter Set 2 Rule 1:

Status  : Disable
Comments: <null>
Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup: <null>, <null>, <null>, <null>

Clear sessions when schedule is ON: Disable

Direction    : LAN/DMZ/RT/VPN -> WAN
Src Interface : LAN1, LAN2, LAN3, LAN4, LAN5, LAN6, LAN7, LAN8, DMZ, Routed,
VPN

Dst Interface : WAN1, WAN2, WAN3, WAN4, WAN5, WAN6, WAN7, WAN8, WAN9
Source IP    : Any
Destination IP: Any
Service Type  : Any
Fragments    : Don't Care
```

```
Pass or Block           : Pass Immediately
Branch to Other Filter Set: None
Max Sessions Limit       : 60000
Current Sessions         : 0
Mac Bind IP             : Non-Strict
Qos Class               : None
Packet Capture           : Disable
APP Enforcement          : None
URL Content Filter       : None
WEB Content Filter       : None
DNS Filter              : None
Load-Balance policy      : Auto-select
Log                    : Disable
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
CodePage                : ANSI(1252)-Latin I
Window size              : 65535
Session timeout          : 60
DrayTek Banner           : Enable
  -----------------------------------------------------------------------
  Strict Security Checking
    [ ]APP Enforcement
>
```

Telnet Command: ipf flowtrack

This command is used to set and view flowtrack sessions.

Syntax

ipf flowtrack set *<-r/-e>*

ipf flowtrack view *<-f/-b>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-r	It means to refresh the flowtrack.
-e	It means to enable or disable the flowtrack.
-f	It means to show the sessions state of flowtrack. If you do not specify any IP address, then all the session state of flowtrack will be displayed.
-b	It means to show all of IPv6 sessions state.

Example

```
> ipf flowtrack set -r
Refresh the flowstate ok
> ipf flowtrack view -f
Start to show the flowtrack sessions state:

ORIGIN>>   192.168.1.11:59939 ->        8.8.8.8:   53 ,ifno=0
REPLY >>       8.8.8.8:   53 ->    192.168.1.11:59939 ,ifno=3
       proto=17, age=93023180(3920), flag=203
ORIGIN>>   192.168.1.11:15073 ->        8.8.8.8:   53 ,ifno=0
```

```
REPLY >>       8.8.8.8:   53 ->   192.168.1.11:15073 ,ifno=3
       proto=17, age=93025100(2000), flag=203
ORIGIN>>   192.168.1.11: 7247 ->        8.8.8.8:   53 ,ifno=0
REPLY >>       8.8.8.8:   53 ->   192.168.1.11: 7247 ,ifno=3
       proto=17, age=93020100(7000), flag=203
End to show the flowtrack sessions state
> ipf flowtrack set -e
Current flow_enable=0
> ipf flowtrack set -e
Curretn flow_enable=1
>
```

Telnet Command: Log

This command allows users to view log for WAN interface such as call log, IP filter log, flush log buffer, etc.

Syntax

log *[-cfhiptwx?] [-F a| c | f | w]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-c	It means to show the latest call log.
-f	It means to show the IP filter log.
-F	It means to show the flush log buffer. a: flush all logs c: flush the call log f: flush the IP filter log w: flush the WAN log
-h	It means to show this usage help.
-p	It means to show PPP/MP log.
-t	It means to show all logs saved in the log buffer.
-w	It means to show WAN log.
-x	It means to show packet body hex dump.

Example

```
> log -w
25:36:25.580 ---->DHCP (WAN-5) Len = 548XID = 0x7880fdd4
       Client IP     = 0.0.0.0
       Your IP       = 0.0.0.0
       Next server IP = 0.0.0.0
       Relay agent IP = 0.0.0.0
25:36:33.580 ---->DHCP (WAN-5) Len = 548XID = 0x7880fdd4
       Client IP     = 0.0.0.0
       Your IP       = 0.0.0.0
       Next server IP = 0.0.0.0
       Relay agent IP = 0.0.0.0
25:36:41.580 ---->DHCP (WAN-5) Len = 548XID = 0x7880fdd4
       Client IP     = 0.0.0.0
       Your IP       = 0.0.0.0
```

```
       Next server IP = 0.0.0.0
       Relay agent IP = 0.0.0.0
25:36:49.580 ---->DHCP (WAN-5) Len = 548XID = 0x7880fdd4
       Client IP     = 0.0.0.0
       Your IP       = 0.0.0.0
       Next server IP = 0.0.0.0
       Relay agent IP = 0.0.0.0
25:36:57.580 ---->DHCP (WAN-5) Len = 548XID = 0x7880fdd4
       Client IP     = 0.0.0.0
       Your IP       = 0.0.0.0
--- MORE ---   ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page] ---
```

Telnet Command: ldap user

This command is used to configure the LDAP profile.

Syntax

ldap user *<INDEX><OPTION>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
INDEX	Specify the index number (1 to 8) of the LDAP profile.
OPTION	
-n VALUE	Setup Profile Name.
-b VALUE	Setup Base Distinguished Name.
-a VALUE	Setup Additional Filter.
-g VALUE	Setup Group Distinguished Name.
-c VALUE	Setup Common Name Identifier.
-v	View detail information of the LDAP profile.

Example

```
> ldap user 1 -n LD_user_test1
Profile Name has been updated!
> ldap user 1 -v
Profile Index:1
Profile Name:LD_user_test1
Common Name Identifier:
Base Distinguished Name:
Additional Filter:
Group distinguished Name:
>
```

Telnet Command: ldap set

This command is used to set general settings (e.g., IP address, port number) for LDAP server.

Syntax

ldap set *<Options><Value>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
enable <0-1>	Enable or disable LDAP function. 0 : Disable the function. 1 : Enable the function.
type <0-2>	Set the bind type as Simple(0),Anonymous(1), and Regular(2).
ssl <0-1>	Enable or disable LDAP function via SSL tunnel. 0 : Disable the function. 1 : Enable the function.
IP <VALUE>	Set IP address for LDAP server.
port <VALUE>	Set port number for LDAP server.
dn <VALUE>	Set Regular DN value
PWD <VALUE>	Set Regular password value.

Example

```
> ldap set enable 1
LDAP enabled!
> ldap enabled.
> ldap set ssl 1
LDAP with SSL has been enabled!
> ldap set IP 192.168.100.155
LDAP Server IP has been setting.
> ldap set port 389
LDAP Server Port has been setting.
> ldap set dn dc=example,dc=com
LDAP Regular DN has been setting.
> ldap set PWD 123456
LDAP Regular Password has been setting.
```

Telnet Command: ldap view

This command is used to check current status of LDAP settings configuration.

Syntax

ldap view

Example

```
> ldap view ?
LDAP Enable:Disabled.
LDAP Bind Type:Simple
LDAP with SSL:Disabled
LDAP Regular DN:
LDAP Regular Password:
LDAP Server IP:
```

```
LDAP Server Port:389
>
```

Telnet Command: tacacsplus set

This command allows users to configure general settings for TACACS+ server.

Syntax

tacacspluse set *<Options><Value>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
enable <0/1>	Disable (0)/enable(1) the TACACS+ server.
IP <VALUE>	Set the IP address of TACACS+ server.
port <VALUE>	Set the port number of TACACS+ server.
shared_secret <VALUE>	Set the Shared Secret value of TACACS+ Server.

Example

```
> tacacsplus set enable 1
TACACS+ enabled!
 This setting will take effect after rebooting.
 Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.

> tacacsplus set IP 192.168.1.59
TACACS+ Server IP has been setting.
 This setting will take effect after rebooting.
 Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
> tacacsplus view
TACACS+ Enable:Enable.
TACACS+ Server IP:192.168.1.59
TACACS+ Server Port:49
TACACS+ Type:ASCII
TACACS+ Shared Secret:
>
```

Telnet Command: tacacsplus view

This command allows users to check the general settings for TACACS+ server

Syntax

tacacspluse view

Example

```
> tacacsplus view
TACACS+ Enable:Enable.
TACACS+ Server IP:192.168.1.59
TACACS+ Server Port:49
TACACS+ Type:ASCII
TACACS+ Shared Secret:
```

Telnet Command: mngt ftpport

This command allows users to set FTP port for management.

Syntax

mngt ftpport *<FTP port>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
FTP port	It means to Enter the number for FTP port. The default setting is 21.

Example

```
> mngt ftpport 21
% Set FTP server port to 21 done.
```

Telnet Command: mngt httpport

This command allows users to set HTTP port for management.

Syntax

mngt httpport *<Http port>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
Http port	It means to enter the number for HTTP port. The default setting is 80.

Example

```
> mngt httpport 80
% Set web server port to 80 done.
```

Telnet Command: mngt httpsport

This command allows users to set HTTPS port for management.

Syntax

mngt httpsport *<Https port>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
Https port	It means to Enter the number for HTTPS port. The default setting is 443.

Example

```
> mngt httpsport 443
% Set web server port to 443 done.
```

Telnet Command: mngt sslvpnport

This command allows users to set SSL VPN port for management.

Syntax

mngt sslvpnport <*SSL VPN port*>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
SSL VPN port	It means to type the number for SSL VPN port. The default setting is 443.

Example

```
> mngt sslvpnport 1010
% Set SSL VPN port to 1010 done.
```

Telnet Command: mngt telnetport

This command allows users to set telnet port for management.

Syntax

mngt telnetport <*Telnet port*>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
Telnet port	It means to Enter the number for telnet port. The default setting is 23.

Example

```
> mngt telnetport 23
% Set Telnet server port to 23 done.
```

Telnet Command: mngt sshport

This command allows users to set SSH port for management.

Syntax

mngt sshport <*ssh port*>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
ssh port	It means to Enter the number for SSH port. The default setting is 22.

Example

```
> mngt sshport 23
% Set ssh port to 23 done.
```

Telnet Command: mngt noping

This command is used to pass or block Ping from LAN PC to the internet.

Syntax

mngt noping *on*
mngt noping *off*
mngt noping *viewlog*
mngt noping *clearlog*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
on	All PING packets will be forwarded from LAN PC to Internet.
off	All PING packets will be blocked from LAN PC to Internet.
viewlog	It means to display a log of ping action, including source MAC and source IP.
clearlog	It means to clear the log of ping action.

Example

```
> mngt noping off
No Ping Packet Out is OFF!!
```

Telnet Command: mngt defenseworm

This command can block specified port for passing through the router.

Syntax

mngt defenseworm *on*
mngt defenseworm *off*
mngt defenseworm *<add port>*
mngt defenseworm *<del port>*
mngt defenseworm *<viewlog>*
mngt defenseworm *<clearlog>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
on	It means to activate the function of defense worm packet out.
off	It means to inactivate the function of defense worm packet out.
add port	It means to add a new TCP port for block.
del port	It means to delete a TCP port for block.
viewlog	It means to display a log of defense worm packet, including source MAC and source IP.
clearlog	It means to remove the log of defense worm packet.

Example

```
> mngt defenseworm add 21
Add TCP port 21
```

```
Block TCP port list: 135, 137, 138, 139, 445, 21
> mngt defenseworm del 21
Delete TCP port 21
Block TCP port list: 135, 137, 138, 139, 445
```

Telnet Command: mngt rmtcfg

This command can allow the system administrators to login from the Internet. By default, it is not allowed.

Syntax

mngt rmtcfg *<status>*

mngt rmtcfg *<enable>*

mngt rmtcfg *<disable>*

mngt rmtcfg *<http/https/ftp/telnet/ssh/tr069/snmp/enforce_https> <on/off>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
status	It means to display current setting for your reference.
enable	It means to allow the system administrators to login from the Internet.
disable	It means to deny the system administrators to login from the Internet.
http/https/ftp/telnet/ssh/tr069/snmp/enforce_https	It means to specify one of the servers/protocols for enabling or disabling.
on/off	on - enable the function. off - disable the function.

Example

```
> mngt rmtcfg ftp on
Enable server fail
Remote configure function has been disabled
please enable by enter mngt rmtcfg enable

> mngt rmtcfg enable
%% Remote configure function has been enabled.
> mngt rmtcfg ftp on
%% FTP server has been enabled.
```

Telnet Command: mngt lanaccess

This command allows users to manage accessing into Vigor router through LAN port.

Syntax

mngt lanaccess *-e <0/1> –s <value> –i <value>*

mngt lanaccess *–l*

mngt lanaccess *–E*

mngt lanaccess *–f*

mngt lanaccess *–d*

mngt lanaccess *–v*

mngt lanaccess *–h*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-e <0/ 1>	It means to enable/disable the function. 0-disable the function. 1-enable the function.
-s <value>	It means to specify service offered. Available values include: FTP, HTTP, HTTPS, ENFORCE_HTTPS,TELNET, SSH, None, All
-i <value>	It means the interface which is allowed to access. Available values include: LAN2~LAN16, DMZ, IP Routed Subnet, None, All **Note**: LAN1 is always allowed for accessing into the router.
-I <value>	It means the IP object index allowed to access. Available values include: 1 to 192.
-E <0/ 1>	It means to enable the function of specific IP allowed to be access. 0-disable the function. 1-enable the function.
-f	It means to flush all of the settings.
-d	It means to restore the factory default settings.
-v	It means to view current settings.
-h	It means to get the usage of such command.

Example

```
> mngt lanaccess -e 1
> mngt lanaccess -s FTP,TELNET
> mngt lanaccess -i LAN3
> mngt lanaccess -v
Current LAN Access Control Setting:
* Enable:Yes
  - FTP:Yes
  - HTTP:Yes
  - HTTPS:Yes
  - TELNET:Yes
  - SSH:Yes
  - TR069:Yes
  - Enforce HTTPS:No
 Subnet:
    - LAN 1: enabled
    - Specific IP(type:IP Object)(index:0) is disabled
  - LAN 2: enabled
    - Specific IP(type:IP Object)(index:0) is disabled
  - LAN 3: enabled
    - Specific IP(type:IP Object)(index:0) is disabled
  - LAN 4: enabled
    - Specific IP(type:IP Object)(index:0) is disabled
  - LAN 5: enabled
    - Specific IP(type:IP Object)(index:0) is disabled
  - LAN 6: enabled
    - Specific IP(type:IP Object)(index:0) is disabled
```

```
  - LAN 7: enabled
    - Specific IP(type:IP Object)(index:0) is disabled
  - LAN 8: enabled
    - Specific IP(type:IP Object)(index:0) is disabled
  - LAN 9: enabled
    - Specific IP(type:IP Object)(index:0) is disabled
  - LAN 10: enabled
    - Specific IP(type:IP Object)(index:0) is disabled
  - LAN 11: enabled
    - Specific IP(type:IP Object)(index:0) is disabled
  - LAN 12: enabled
    - Specific IP(type:IP Object)(index:0) is disabled
  - LAN 13: enabled
    - Specific IP(type:IP Object)(index:0) is disabled
  - LAN 14: enabled
    - Specific IP(type:IP Object)(index:0) is disabled
  - LAN 15: enabled
    - Specific IP(type:IP Object)(index:0) is disabled
  - LAN 16: enabled
    - Specific IP(type:IP Object)(index:0) is disabled
  - DMZ: enabled
    - Specific IP(type:IP Object)(index:0) is disabled
  - IP Routed Subnet: enabled
    - Specific IP(type:IP Object)(index:0) is disabled
>
```

Telnet Command: mngt echoicmp

This command allows users to reject or accept PING packets from the Internet.

Syntax

mngt echoicmp *<enable>*

mngt echoicmp *<disable>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
enable	It means to accept the echo ICMP packet.
disable	It means to drop the echo ICMP packet.

Example

```
> mngt echoicmp enable
%% Echo ICMP packet enabled.
```

Telnet Command: mngt accesslist

This command allows you to specify that the system administrator can login from a specific host or network. A maximum of ten IPs/subnet masks is allowed.

Syntax

mngt accesslist *list*

mngt accesslist *add <Index><IP Object Index>*

mngt accesslist *remove <Index>*

mngt accesslist *flush*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
list	It can display current setting for your reference.
add	It means adding a new entry.
<Index><IP Object Index>	It means to specify the IP object. Available settings: <index> - Enter the index number of the accesslist profile. <IP Object Index> - Enter the index number of the IP object.
No.	A maximum of 10 IP objects are allowed to be assigned.
index	It means the index number (1 to 192) of the IP objects preconfigured.
remove	It means to delete the selected item.
flush	It means to remove all the settings in the access list.

Example

```
> mngt accesslist add 1 1
%% Set OK.
> mngt accesslist list
%% Access list :
  [Index]      [IP Object Index]      [IP/CIDR or StartIP ~ EndIP]
============================================================================
  1           1                   Please setting index=1 for IP Object

>
```

Telnet Command: mngt wanlogin

This command allows you to enable or disable WAN login function.

Syntax

mngt wanlogin *enable*

mngt wanlogin *disable*

Example

```
> mngt wanlogin enable
%% wan login enabled.
>
```

Telnet Command: mngt snmp

This command allows you to configure SNMP for management.

Syntax

mngt snmp *[-<command> <parameter> | ...]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description

[<command> <parameter>| ..]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. *[..]* means that you can Enter several commands in one line.
-e <1/2>	1: Enable the SNMP function. 2: Disable the SNMP function.
-a <1/2>	1: Enable the SNMPV1 function. 2: Disable the SNMPV1 function.
-b <1/2>	1: Enable the SNMPV2C function. 2: Disable the SNMPV2C function.
-c <1/2>	1: Enable the SNMPV3 function. 2: Disable the SNMPV3 function.
-g <Community name>	It means to set the name for getting community by typing a proper character. (max. 23 characters)
-s <Community name>	It means to set community by typing a proper name. (max. 23 characters)
-m <IP address>	It means to set one host as the manager to execute SNMP function. Please type in IPv4 address to specify certain host. It allows to set 3 IPs, separated by ",".
-t <Community name>	It means to set trap community by typing a proper name. (max. 23 characters)
-n <IP address>	It means to set the notification host. It allows to set 2 IPs, separated by ",".
-T <seconds>	It means to set the trap timeout <0~999>.
-o <username>	It means to set a user account (maximum 23 characters) for user management.
-p <0/1/2>	It means to set the authentication algorithm. 0: No auth 1: MD5_AUTH 2: SHA_AUTH
-q <password>	It means to set the password (maximum 23 characters) for authentication.
-r <0,3/4/6>	It means to set privacy algorithm 0, 3: No_PRIV 4: DES_PRIV 6: AES_PRIV
-u <password>	It means to set the password (maximum 23 characters) for privacy.
-V	It means to list SNMP setting.

Example

```
> mngt snmp -e 1 -g draytek -s DK -m
192.168.1.20,192.168.5.192/26,10.20.3.40/24 -t trapcom -n
192.168.1.20,10.20.3.40 -T 88
SNMP Agent Turn on!!!
 Get Community set to draytek
 Set Community set to DK
 Manager Host IP set to 192.168.1.20,192.168.5.192/26,10.20.3.40/24
 Trap Community set to trapcom
 Notification Host IP set to 192.168.1.20,10.20.3.40
 Trap Timeout set to 88 seconds
>
```

Telnet Command: mngt bfp

This command allows you to configure brute force protect (BFP) for system management.

Syntax

mngt bfp *[<command><parameter>| ..]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
[<command> <parameter>| ..]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. *[...]* means that you can type in several commands in one line.
-e 0/1	Enable / disable the BFP function. 0 – Disable 1 – Enable
-s <service>	It means to enable different service. service - Available types are FTP, HTTP, HTTPS, TELNET, TR069, SSH, VPN, None and All.
-l <failure>	It means to set login failure retry times. failure - Available number is from 1 to 255.
-p <penalty>	It means to set penalty time for BFP. The unit is sec.
-u <IP>	It means to unblock an IP address in list.
-v	It means to view current settings.

Example

```
> mngt bfp -e 1
> mngt bfp -s FTP
> mngt bfp -l 10
> mngt bfp -v
Current Brute Force Protection Setting:
* Enable: yes
* Service:
 - FTP:        yes
 - HTTP:       no
 - HTTPS:      no
 - TELNET:     no
 - TR069:      no
 - SSH:        no
* Maximum login failures: 10
* Penalty period: 0
```

Telnet Command: mngt cert_import

This command allows you to import a certificate to Vigor router.

Syntax

mngt cert_import local_cert *<URL><password>*

mngt cert_import trusted_ca *<URL>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
local_cert url <URL>	URL - Enter a URL(http://....) for downloading the certificate.

<password>	The file is encrypted with the file format of "xxxx.p12". Password - Enter the password for decrypting the .p12 certificate.
trusted_ca <URL>	URL - Enter a URL(http://....) for downloading the certificate. The file is encrypted with the file format of "xxxx.p12".

Telnet Command: mngt telnettimeout

This command allows you to configure the timeout for telnet connection.

Syntax

mngt telnettimeout *<value>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<value>	Range from 60 to 300. The default value is 300 (seconds).

Example

```
> mngt telnettimeout 100
% Telnet timeout : 100s

>
```

Telnet Command: mngt sshtimeout

This command allows you to configure the timeout for SSH connection.

Syntax

mngt sshtimeout *<value>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<value>	Range from 60 to 300. The default value is 180 (seconds).

Example

```
> mngt sshtimeout 200
% SSH timeout : 200s
>
```

Telnet Command: mngt ip6_IIDs

This command allows you to configure the IPv6 interfce ID.

Syntax

mngt ip6-IIDs *-e <val>>*

mngt ip6_IIDs *-r <interface>*

mngt ip6_IIDs *-s*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-e <value>	It is used to determine the way of generating IPv6 interface

	id. val = 0 : Use EUI-64 IIDs as interface id val = 1 : Use Random IIDs as interface id
-r <interface>	It is used to re-generate the random IIDs of the specified interface. interface = LAN1/LAN2/.../WAN1/WAN2/USB1/USB2...
-s	Displays the random IIDs for each interface.

Example

```
> mngt ip6_IIDs -e 1
% Setting success, the change will take effect after router rebooting.
> mngt ip6_IIDs -r LAN1
% Setting success, the change will take effect after router rebooting.
> mngt ip6_IIDs -s
% LAN  IIDs = 9a5d:06c3:c972:f3ad
% WAN1 IIDs = 7651:92cc:6f8b:42c8
% WAN2 IIDs = 79e5:56cd:be43:384a
% WAN3 IIDs = 0193:56a8:5c6e:01e7
% WAN4 IIDs = 47bf:a971:857d:5a07
% LTE  IIDs = e4bf:d21d:f59f:888d
% USB  IIDs = 4c55:260c:e5f5:57b7
>
```

Telnet Command: msubnet switch

This command is used to configure multi-subnet.

Syntax

msubnet switch *<2/3/4/5/6/7/8/dmz><On/Off>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
2/3/4/5/6/7/8/dmz	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6 7=LAN7 8=LAN8 dmz=DMZ
On/Off	On means turning on the subnet for the specified LAN interface. Off means turning off the subnet.

Example

```
> msubnet switch 2 On
% LAN2       Subnet On!

 This setting will take effect after rebooting.
```

```
Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

Telnet Command: msubnet addr

This command is used to configure IP address for the specified LAN interface.

Syntax

msubnet addr *<2/ 3/ 4/ 5/ 6/ 7/ 8/ dmz><IP address>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
2/ 3/ 4/ 5/ 6/ 7/ 8/ dmz	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6 7=LAN7 8=LAN8 dmz=DMZ
IP address	Enter the private IP address for the specified LAN interface.

Example

```
> msubnet addr 2 192.168.5.1
% Set LAN2 subnet IP address done !!!

 This setting will take effect after rebooting.
 Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

Telnet Command: msubnet nmask

This command is used to configure net mask address for the specified LAN interface.

Syntax

msubnet nmask *<2/ 3/ 4/ 5/ 6/ 7/ 8/ dmz><IP address>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
2/ 3/ 4/ 5/ 6/ 7/ 8/ dmz	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6 7=LAN7 8=LAN8 dmz=DMZ
IP address	Enter the subnet mask address for the specified LAN interface.

Example

```
> msubnet nmask 2 255.255.0.0
% Set LAN2 subnet mask done !!!

 This setting will take effect after rebooting.
 Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

Telnet Command: msubnet status

This command is used to display current status of subnet.

Syntax

msubnet status <*2/ 3/ 4/ 5/ 6/ 7/ 8/ dmz*>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
2/ 3/ 4/ 5/ 6/ 7/ 8/ dmz	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6 7=LAN7 8=LAN8 dmz=DMZ

Example

```
> msubnet status 2
% LAN2       Off: 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0, PPP Start IP: 0.0.0.60
% DHCP server: Off
% Dhcp Gateway: 0.0.0.0, Start IP: 0.0.0.10, Pool Count: 50
```

Telnet Command: msubnet dhcps

This command allows you to enable or disable DHCP server for the subnet.

Syntax

msubnet dhcps <*2/ 3/ 4/ 5/ 6/ 7/ 8/ dmz*><*On/ Off*>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
2/ 3/ 4/ 5/ 6/ 7/ 8/ dmz	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6 7=LAN7 8=LAN8 dmz=DMZ

On/ Off	On means enabling the DHCP server for the specified LAN interface. Off means disabling the DHCP server.

Example

```
> msubnet dhcps 3 off
% LAN3       Subnet DHCP Server disabled!

 This setting will take effect after rebooting.
 Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

Telnet Command: msubnet nat

This command is used to configure the subnet for NAT or Routing usage.

Syntax

msubnet nat <*2/ 3/ 4/ 5/ 6/ 7/ 8/ dmz*><*On/ Off*>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
2/ 3/ 4/ 5/ 6/ 7/ 8/ dmz	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6 7=LAN7 8=LAN8 dmz=DMZ
On/ Off	On – It means the subnet will be configured for NAT usage. Off **-** It means the subnet will be configured for Routing usage.

Example

```
> msubnet nat 2 off
% LAN2 Subnet is for Routing usage!
% LAN2 Subnet is for Routing usage!
%Note: If you have multiple WAN connections, please be reminded to setup a
Load-Balance policy so that packets from this subnet will be forwarded to the
right WAN interface!

 This setting will take effect after rebooting.
 Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

Telnet Command: msubnet gateway

This command is used to configure an IP address as the gateway used for subnet.

Syntax

msubnet gateway <*2/ 3/ 4/ 5/ 6/ 7/ 8/ dmz*><*Gateway IP*>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
2/ 3/ 4/ 5/ 6/ 7/ 8/ dmz	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4

	5=LAN5 6=LAN6 7=LAN7 8=LAN8 dmz=DMZ
Gateway IP	Specify an IP address as the gateway IP.

Example

```
> msubnet gateway 2 192.168.1.13
% Set LAN2 Dhcp Gateway IP done !!!

 This setting will take effect after rebooting.
 Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

Telnet Command: msubnet ipcnt

This command is used to defined the total number allowed for each LAN interface.

Syntax

msubnet ipcnt *<2/3/4/5/6/7/8/dmz> <IP counts>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
2/3/4/5/6/7/8/dmz	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6 7=LAN7 8=LAN8 dmz=DMZ
IP counts	Specify a total number of IP address allowed for each LAN interface. The available range is from 0 to 220.

Example

```
> msubnet ipcnt 2 15
 This setting will take effect after rebooting.
 Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

Telnet Command: msubnet talk

This command is used to establish a route between two LAN interfaces.

Syntax

msubnet talk *<1/2/3/4/5/6/7/8/dmz> <1/2/3/4/5/6/7/8/dmz> <On/Off>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
1/2/3/4/5/6/7/8/dmz	It means LAN interface. 1=LAN1

	2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6 7=LAN7 8=LAN8 dmz=DMZ
On/Off	On – It means to enable the function. Off - It means to disable the function.

Example

```
> msubnet talk 1 2 on
% Enable routing between LAN1       and LAN2      !

 This setting will take effect after rebooting.
 Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
> msubnet talk ?
% msubnet talk <1/2/3/4/5/6/7/8/dmz> <1/2/3/4/5/6/7/8/dmz> <On/Off>
% where 1:LAN1, 2:LAN2, 3:LAN3, 4:LAN4, 5:LAN5, 6:LAN6, 7:LAN7, 8:LAN8, dmz:DMZ
Port
% Now:
%            LAN1   LAN2   LAN3   LAN4   LAN5   LAN6   LAN7   LAN8   DMZ Port
% LAN1         V
% LAN2         V      V
% LAN3                       V
% LAN4                              V
% LAN5                                     V
% LAN6                                            V
% LAN7                                                   V
% LAN8                                                          V
% DMZ Port                                                             V

>
```

Telnet Command: msubnet startip

This command is used to configure a starting IP address for DCHP.

Syntax

msubnet startip *<2/3/4/5/6/7/8/dmz><Gateway IP>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
2/3/4/5/6/7/8/dmz	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6 7=LAN7 8=LAN8 dmz=DMZ

Gateway IP	Type an IP address as the starting IP address for a subnet.

Example

```
> msubnet startip 2 192.168.2.90
%Set LAN2 Dhcp Start IP done !!!

 This setting will take effect after rebooting.
 Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
> msubnet startip ?
% msubnet startip <2/3/4/5/6/7/8/dmz> <Gateway IP>
% Now: LAN2 192.168.2.90; LAN3 192.168.3.10; LAN4 192.168.4.10; LAN5
192.168.5.10; LAN6 192.168.6.10; LAN7 192.168.7.10; LAN8 192.168.8.10
>
```

Telnet Command: msubnet pppip

This command is used to configure a starting IP address for PPP connection.

Syntax

msubnet pppip *<2/3/4/5/6/7/8/dmz><Start IP>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
2/3/4/5/6/7/8/dmz	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6 7=LAN7 8=LAN8 dmz=DMZ
Start IP	Type an IP address as the starting IP address for PPP connection.

Example

```
> msubnet pppip 2 192.168.2.250
% Set LAN2 PPP(IPCP) Start IP done !!!

 This setting will take effect after rebooting.
 Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.

> msubnet pppip ?
% msubnet pppip <2/3/4/5/6/7/8/dmz> <Start IP>
% Now: LAN2 192.168.2.250; LAN3 192.168.3.200; LAN4 192.168.4.200; LAN5
192.168.5.200; LAN6 192.168.6.200; LAN7 192.168.7.200; LAN8 192.168.8.200
```

Telnet Command: msubnet nodetype

This command is used to specify the type for node which is required by DHCP option.

Syntax

msubnet nodetype *<2/3/4/5/6/7/8/dmz><count>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
2/ 3/ 4/ 5/ 6/ 7/ 8/ dmz	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6 7=LAN7 8=LAN8 dmz=DMZ
count	Choose the following number for specifying different node type. 1= B-node 2= P-node 4= M-node 8= H-node 0= Not specify any type for node.

Example

```
> msubnet nodetype ?
% msubnet nodetype <2/3/4/5/6/7/8/dmz> <count>
% Now: LAN2 0; LAN3 0; LAN4 0; LAN5 0; LAN6 0; LAN7 0; LAN8 0

% count: 1. B-node 2. P-node 4. M-node 8. H-node

>  msubnet nodetype 2 1
% Set LAN2 Dhcp Node Type done !!!

> msubnet nodetype ?
% msubnet nodetype <2/3/4/5/6/7/8/dmz> <count>
% Now: LAN2 1; LAN3 0; LAN4 0; LAN5 0; LAN6 0; LAN7 0; LAN8 0

% count: 1. B-node 2. P-node 4. M-node 8. H-node
```

Telnet Command: msubnet primWINS

This command is used to configure primary WINS server.

Syntax

msubnet primWINS *<2/ 3/ 4/ 5/ 6/ 7/ 8/ dmz><WINS IP>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
2/ 3/ 4/ 5/ 6/ 7/ 8/ dmz	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6 7=LAN7 8=LAN8

	dmz=DMZ
WINS IP	Enter the IP address as the WINS IP.

Example

```
> msubnet primWINS ?
% msubnet primWINS <2/3/4/5/6/7/8/dmz> <WINS IP>
% Now: LAN2 0.0.0.0; LAN3 0.0.0.0; LAN4 0.0.0.0; LAN5 0.0.0.0; LAN6 0.0.0.0;
LAN
7 0.0.0.0; LAN8 0.0.0.0

> msubnet primWINS 2 192.168.3.5
% Set LAN2 Dhcp Primary WINS IP done !!!

> msubnet primWINS ?
% msubnet primWINS <2/3/4/5/6/7/8/dmz> <WINS IP>
% Now: LAN2 192.168.3.5; LAN3 0.0.0.0; LAN4 0.0.0.0; LAN5 0.0.0.0; LAN6 0.0.0.0;
LAN7 0.0.0.0; LAN8 0.0.0.0
```

Telnet Command: msubnet secWINS

This command is used to configure secondary WINS server.

Syntax

msubnet secWINS *<2/ 3/ 4/ 5/ 6/ 7/ 8/ dmz> <WINS IP>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
2/ 3/ 4/ 5/ 6/ 7/ 8/ dmz	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6 7=LAN7 8=LAN8 dmz=DMZ
WINS IP	Enter the IP address as the WINS IP.

Example

```
> msubnet secWINS ?
% msubnet secWINS <2/3/4/5/6/7/8/dmz> <WINS IP>
% Now: LAN2 0.0.0.0; LAN3 0.0.0.0; LAN4 0.0.0.0; LAN5 0.0.0.0; LAN6 0.0.0.0;
LAN
7 0.0.0.0; LAN8 0.0.0.0
>  msubnet secWINS 2 192.168.3.89
% Set LAN2 Dhcp Secondary WINS IP done !!!

> msubnet secWINS ?
% msubnet secWINS <2/3/4/5/6/7/8/dmz> <WINS IP>
% Now: LAN2 192.168.3.89; LAN3 0.0.0.0; LAN4 0.0.0.0; LAN5 0.0.0.0; LAN6
0.0.0.0; LAN7 0.0.0.0; LAN8 0.0.0.0
```

Telnet Command: msubnet tftp

This command is used to set TFTP server for multi-subnet.

Syntax

msubnet tftp *<2/ 3/ 4/ 5/ 6/ 7/ 8/ dmz> <TFTP server name>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
2/ 3/ 4/ 5/ 6/ 7/ 8/ dmz	It means LAN interface. 2=LAN2 3=LAN3 4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6 7=LAN7 8=LAN8 dmz=DMZ
TFTP server name	Type a name to indicate the TFTP server.

Example

```
> msubnet tftp ?
% msubnet tftp <2/3/4/5/6/7/8/dmz> <TFTP server name>
% Now: LAN2
         LAN3
         LAN4
         LAN5
         LAN6
         LAN7
         LAN8
> msubnet tftp 2 publish
% Set LAN2 TFTP Server Name done !!!

> msubnet tftp ?
% msubnet tftp <2/3/4/5/6/7/8/dmz> <TFTP server name>
% Now: LAN2 publish
         LAN3
         LAN4
         LAN5
         LAN6
         LAN7
         LAN8
```

Telnet Command: msubnet mtu

This command allows you to configure MTU value for LAN/DMZ/IP Routed Subnet.

Syntax

msubnet mtu *<interface><value>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
interface	Available settings include LAN1~LAN6, IP_Routed_Subnet, and DMZ.
value	1000 ~ 1500 (Bytes), default: 1500 (Bytes)

Example

```
> msubnet mtu LAN1 1492
> msubnet mtu ?
Usage:

  >msubnet mtu <interface> <value>

  <interface>: LAN1~LAN6,IP_Routed_Subnet,DMZ
  <value>:    1000 ~ 1508 (Bytes), default: 1500 (Bytes)

  e.x: >msubnet mtu LAN1 1492

Current Settings:

   LAN1 MTU:           1500 (Bytes)
   LAN2 MTU:           1500 (Bytes)
   LAN3 MTU:           1500 (Bytes)
   LAN4 MTU:           1500 (Bytes)
   LAN5 MTU:           1500 (Bytes)
   LAN6 MTU:           1500 (Bytes)
   LAN7 MTU:           1500 (Bytes)
   LAN8 MTU:           1500 (Bytes)
   DMZ MTU:           1500 (Bytes)
   IP Routed Subnet MTU: 1500 (Bytes)
>
```

Telnet Command: msubnet leasetime

This command is used to set leasetime for multi-subnet.

Syntax

msubnet leasetime *<1/2/3/4/5/6/7/8/dmz> <Lease Time sec.>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
1/2/3/4/5/6/7/8/dmz	It means LAN interface. 1=LAN1 2=LAN2 3=LAN3

	4=LAN4 5=LAN5 6=LAN6 7=LAN7 8=LAN8 dmz=DMZ
Lease Time sec.	Enter a value (range: 10 to 259200).

Example

```
> msubnet leasetime ?
% msubnet leasetime <1/2/3/4/5/6/7/8/dmz> <Lease Time (sec.)>
% Now:LAN1 86400; LAN2 259200; LAN3 259200; LAN4 259200; LAN5 259200; LAN6 25920
0; LAN7 259200; LAN8 259200; DMZ Port 259200
> msubnet leasetime 8 300
% Set LAN8 lease time: 300
>
```

Telnet Command: object ip obj

This command is used to create an IP object profile.

Syntax

object ip obj setdefault
object ip obj *INDEX -v*
object ip obj *INDEX -n NAME*
object ip obj *INDEX -i INTERFACE*
object ip obj *INDEX -s INVERT*
object ip obj I*NDEX -a TYPE <START_IP><END/ MASK_IP>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
setdefault	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.
INDEX	It means the index number of the specified object profile.
-v	It means to view the information of the specified object profile. Example: *object ip obj 1 –v*
-n NAME	It means to define a name for the IP object. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters. Example: *object ip obj 9 –n bruce*
-i INTERFACE	It means to define an interface for the IP object. INTERFACE=0, means any INTERFACE=1, means LAN INTERFACE=3, means WAN Example: *object ip obj 8 –i 0*
-s INVERT	It means to set invert seletion for the object profile. INVERT=0, means disableing the function. INVERT=1, means enabling the function. Example: *object ip obj 3 –s 1*
-a TYPE	It means to set the address type and IP for the IP object profile.

	TYPE=0, means Mask TYPE=1, means Single TYPE=2, means Any TYPE=3, means Range TYPE=4, means MAC Example: *object ip obj 3 –a 2*
<START_IP>	When the TYPE is set with 2, you have to type an IP address as a starting point and another IP address as end point. Type an IP address.
<END/ MASK_IP>	Type an IP address (different with START_IP) as the end IP address.

Example

```
> object ip obj 1 –n marketing
OK.
> object ip obj 1 –a 1 192.168.1.45
OK.
> object ip obj 1 –v
 IP Object Profile 1
 Name   :[marketing]
 Interface:[Any]
 Address type:[single]
 Start ip address:[192.168.1.45]
 End/Mask ip address:[0.0.0.0]
 MAC Address:[00:00:00:00:00:00]
 Invert Selection:[0]
```

Telnet Command: object ip grp

This command is used to integrate several IP objects under an IP group profile.

Syntax

object ip grp setdefault
object ip grp *INDEX -v*
object ip grp *INDEX -n NAME*
object ip grp *INDEX -i INTERFACE*
object ip grp *INDEX -a IP_OBJ_INDEX*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
setdefault	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.
INDEX	It means the index number of the specified group profile.
-v	It means to view the information of the specified group profile. Example: *object ip grp 1 –v*
-n NAME	It means to define a name for the IP group. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters. Example: *object ip grp 8 –n bruce*
-i INTERFACE	It means to define an interface for the IP group. INTERFACE=0, means any INTERFACE=1, means LAN INTERFACE=2, means WAN

	Example: *object ip grp 3 –i 0*
-a IP_OBJ_INDEX	It means to specify IP object profiles for the group profile. Example: *:object ip grp 3 –a 1 2 3 4 5* The IP object profiles with index number 1,2,3,4 and 5 will be group under such profile.

Example

```
> object ip grp 2 –n First
 IP Group Profile 2
 Name   :[First]
 Interface:[Any]
 Included ip object index:
 [0:][0]
 [1:][0]
 [2:][0]
 [3:][0]
 [4:][0]
 [5:][0]
 [6:][0]
 [7:][0]
 [8:][0]
 [9:][0]
 [10:][0]
 [11:][0]

> object ip grp 2 –i 1
IP Group Profile 2
 Name   :[First]
 Interface:[Lan]
 Included ip object index:
 [0:][0]
 [1:][0]
 [2:][0]
 [3:][0]
 [4:][0]
 [5:][0]
 [6:][0]
 [7:][0]
 [8:][0]
 [9:][0]
 [10:][0]
 [11:][0]

Set ok!
```

Telnet Command: object ipv6 obj

This comman is used to create an IP object profile.

Syntax

object ip obj setdefault
object ip obj *INDEX -v*
object ip obj *INDEX -n NAME*
object ip obj *INDEX -i INTERFACE*
object ip obj *INDEX -s INVERT*
object ip obj *INDEX -a TYPE <START_IP><END_IP>/ <Prefix Length>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
setdefault	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.
INDEX	It means the index number of the specified object profile.
-v	It means to view the information of the specified object profile. Example: `object ip obj 1 -v`
-n NAME	It means to define a name for the IPv6 object. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters. Example: `object ip obj 9 -n bruce`
-i INTERFACE	It means to define an interface for the IP object. INTERFACE=0, means any INTERFACE=1, means LAN INTERFACE=3, means WAN Example: `object ip obj 8 -i 0`
-s INVERT	It means to set invert seletion for the object profile. INVERT=0, means disableing the function. INVERT=1, means enabling the function. Example: `object ip obj 3 -s 1`
-e [0/1]	It means to set the match type of the IPv6 object profile. 0: means 128 Bits 1: means suffix 64 bits interface ID.
-a TYPE	It means to set the address type and IP for the IPv6 object profile. TYPE=0, means Mask TYPE=1, means Single TYPE=2, means Any TYPE=3, means Range TYPE=4, means MAC Example: `object ip obj 3 -a 2`
<START_IP><END_IP>	When the TYPE is set with 0, 1,3, you have to type an IP address as a starting point and another IP address as end point. Type the IP address(es) based on the selection of TYPE.
<Prefix Length>	When the TYPE is set with 0, 1 or 3, you have to enter a number as prefix length for the IPv6 address.

Example

```
> obj ipv6 obj 3 -a 3 2607:f0d0:1002:51::4 2607:f0d0:1002:51::4
Setting saved.
> obj ipv6 obj 3 -v
```

```
IPv6 Object Profile 3
 Name   :[]
 Address Type:[range]
 Start IPv6 Address:[2607:F0D0:1002:51::4]
 End IPv6 Address:[2607:F0D0:1002:51::4]
 Prefix Length:[0]
 MAC Address:[00:00:00:00:00:00]
 Invert Selection:[0]
 Match Type:[0]
```

Telnet Command: object ipv6 grp

This command is used to integrate several IP objects under an IP group profile.

Syntax

object ip grp setdefault
object ip grp *INDEX -v*
object ip grp *INDEX -n NAME*
object ip grp *INDEX -a IP_OBJ_INDEX*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
setdefault	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.
INDEX	It means the index number of the specified group profile.
-v	It means to view the information of the specified group profile. Example: *object ip grp 1 –v*
-n NAME	It means to define a name for the IP group. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters. Example: *object ip grp 8 –n bruce*
-a IP_OBJ_INDEX	It means to specify IP object profiles for the group profile. Example: *:object ip grp 3 –a 1 2 3 4 5* The IP object profiles with index number 1,2,3,4 and 5 will be group under such profile.

Example

```
> object ipv6 grp 1 –n marketingtest
 IP Group Profile 1
 Name   :[marketingtest]
 Included ip object index:
 [0:][0]
 [1:][0]
 [2:][0]
 [3:][0]
 [4:][0]
 [5:][0]
 [6:][0]
 [7:][0]

> object ipv6 grp 1 –a 1 2 3 4 5
IPv6 Group Profile 1
Name   :[marketingtest]
Included ip object index:
[0:][1]
```

```
[1:][2]
[2:][3]
[3:][4]
[4:][5]
[5:][0]
[6:][0]
[7:][0]
```

Telnet Command: object country

This command is used to create country object profile.

Syntax

object country set *INDEX -v*
object country set *INDEX -n NAME*
object country set *INDEX -a COUNTRY_INDEX*
object country activate
object country setdefault
object country list

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
INDEX	It means the index number of the specified country object profile (1 to 32).
-n NAME	It means to define a name for country object proffile.
COUNTRY_INDEX	It means the code number of a country. To get the detailed information of the code number, use "object country list" to get the one you need.
activate	It means to activate the country object profile.
setdefault	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.
list	Displays a list of country with code number. For example, "222" means "Taiwan"; "241" means "United States".

Example

```
> object country set 1 -n Best
Country object Profile 1
 Name   :[Best]
 Included country index:

Set ok!
> object country set 1 -a 222
Country object Profile 1
 Name   :[Best]
 Included country index:
 [0:][222] Taiwan

Set ok!
```

Telnet Command: object service obj

This command is used to create service object profile.

Syntax

object service obj setdefault
object service obj *INDEX -v*
object service obj *INDEX -n NAME*
object service obj *INDEX -p PROTOCOL*
object service obj *INDEX -s CHK <START_P><END_P>*
object service obj *INDEX -d CHK <START_P><END_P>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
setdefault	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.
INDEX	It means the index number of the specified service object profile.
-v	It means to view the information of the specified service object profile. Example: `object service obj 1 -v`
-n NAME	It means to define a name for the IP object. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters. Example: `object service obj 9 -n bruce`
-i PROTOCOL	It means to define a PROTOCOL for the service object profile. PROTOCOL =0, means any PROTOCOL =1, means ICMP PROTOCOL =2, means IGMP PROTOCOL =6, means TCP PROTOCOL =17, means UDP PROTOCOL =58, means ICMPv6 PROTOCOL =255, means TCP/UDP Other values mean other protocols. Example: `object service obj 8 -i 0`
CHK	It means the check action for the port setting. 0=equal(**=**), when the starting port and ending port values are the same, it indicates one port; when the starting port and ending port values are different, it indicates a range for the port and available for this service type. 1=not equal(**!=**), when the starting port and ending port values are the same, it indicates all the ports except the port defined here; when the starting port and ending port values are different, it indicates that all the ports except the range defined here are available for this service type. 2=larger(**>**), the port number greater than this value is available.. 3=less(**<**), the port number less than this value is available for this profile.
-s CHK <START_P><END_P>	It means to set source port check and configure port range (1~65565) for TCP/UDP. START_P: Enter a port number to indicate the starting source port. END_P: Enter a port number to indicate the ending source port. Example: `object service obj 3 -s 0 100 200`
-d CHK <START_P><END_P>	It means to set destination port check and configure port range (1~65565) for TCP/UDP. START_P: Enter a port number to indicate the starting destination port. END_P: Enter a port number to indicate the ending destination port. Example: `object service obj 3 -d 1 100 200`

Example

```
> object service obj 1 -n limit
> object service obj 1 -p 255
> object service obj 1 -s 1 120 240
> object service obj 1 -d 1 200 220
> object service obj 1 -v
 Service Object Profile 1
 Name   :[limit]
 Protocol:[255]
 Source port check action:[!=]
 Source port range:[120~240]
 Destination port check action:[!=]
 Destination port range:[200~220]
```

Telnet Command: object service grp

This command is used to integrate several service objects under a service group profile.

Syntax

object service grp setdefault
object service grp *INDEX -v*
object service grp *INDEX -n NAME*
object service grp *INDEX -a SER_OBJ_INDEX*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
setdefault	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.
INDEX	It means the index number of the specified group profile.
-v	It means to view the information of the specified group profile. Example: *object service grp 1 -v*
-n NAME	It means to define a name for the service group. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters. Example: *object service grp 8 -n bruce*
-a SER_OBJ_INDEX	It means to specify service object profiles for the group profile. Example: *:object service grp 3 -a 1 2 3 4 5* The service object profiles with index number 1,2,3,4 and 5 will be group under such profile.

Example

```
>object service grp 1 -n Grope_1
 Service Group Profile 1
 Name   :[Grope_1]
 Included service object index:
 [0:][0]
 [1:][0]
 [2:][0]
 [3:][0]
 [4:][0]
 [5:][0]
 [6:][0]
 [7:][0]
```

```
> object service grp 1 -a 1 2
 Service Group Profile 1
 Name   :[Grope_1]
 Included service object index:
 [0:][1]
 [1:][2]
 [2:][0]
 [3:][0]
 [4:][0]
 [5:][0]
 [6:][0]
 [7:][0]
```

Telnet Command: object kw

This command is used to create keyword profile.

Syntax

object kw obj setdefault
object kw obj show PAGE
object kw obj *INDEX -v*
object kw obj *INDEX -n NAME*
object kw obj *INDEX -a CONTENTS*
object kw obj *INDEX -c*
object kw obj *INDEX -t*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
setdefault	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.
show PAGE	It means to show the contents of the specified profile. PAGE: Enter the page number.
show	It means to show the contents for all of the profiles.
INDEX	It means the index number of the specified keyword profile.
-v	It means to view the information of the specified keyword profile.
-n NAME	It means to define a name for the keyword profile. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters.
-a CONTENTS	It means to set the contents for the keyword profile. Example: *object kw obj 40 -a test*
-c	It means to clear the content of the keyword object profile.
-t <0/1>	It means to set keyword object type. <0>: normal <1> : domain name

Example

```
> object kw obj 1 -n children
 Profile 1
 Name   :[children]
 Type   :[Normal]
```

```
 Content:[]
> object kw obj 1 -a gambling
 Profile 1
 Name   :[children]
 Type   :[Normal]
 Content:[gambling]

> object kw obj 1 -v
 Profile 1
 Name   :[children]
 Type   :[Normal]
 Content:[gambling]
```

Telnet Command: object fe

This command is used to create File Extension Object profile.

Syntax

object fe show
object fe setdefault
object fe obj *INDEX -v*
object fe obj *INDEX -n NAME*
object fe obj *INDEX -e CATEGORY| FILE_EXTENSION*
object fe obj *INDEX -d CATEGORY| FILE_EXTENSION*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
show	It means to show the contents for all of the profiles.
setdefault	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.
INDEX	It means the index number (from 1 to 8) of the specified file extension object profile.
-v	It means to view the information of the specified file extension object profile.
-n NAME	It means to define a name for the file extension object profile. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters.
-e	It means to enable the specific CATEGORY or FILE_EXTENSION.
-d	It means to disable the specific CATEGORY or FILE_EXTENSION
CATEGORY| FILE_EXTENSION	CATEGORY: Image, Video, Audio, Java, ActiveX, Compression, Executation Example: *object fe obj 1 -e Image* FILE_EXTENSION: ".bmp", ".dib", ".gif", ".jpeg", ".jpg", ".jpg2", ".jp2", ".pct", ".pcx", ".pic", ".pict", ".png", ".tif", ".tiff", ".asf", ".avi", ".mov", ".mpe", ".mpeg", ".mpg", ".mp4", ".qt", ".rm", ".wmv", ".3gp", ".3gpp", ".3gpp2", ".3g2", ".aac", ".aiff", ".au", ".mp3", ".m4a", ".m4p", ".ogg", ".ra", ".ram", ".vox", ".wav", ".wma", ".class", ".jad", ".jar", ".jav", ".java", ".jcm", ".js", ".jse", ".jsp", ".jtk", ".alx", ".apb", ".axs", ".ocx", ".olb", ".ole", ".tlb", ".viv", ".vrm", ".ace", ".arj", ".bzip2", ".bz2", ".cab", ".gz", ".gzip", ".rar", ".sit", ".zip", ".bas", ".bat", ".com", ".exe", ".inf", ".pif", ".reg", ".scr", "torrent", ".doc", ".docx", ".odp",

	".ods", ".odt", ".pdf", ".ppt", ".pptx", ".xls", ".xlsx" Example: *object fe obj 1 –e .bmp*

Example

```
> object fe obj 1 -n music
> object fe obj 1 -e Audio
> object fe obj 1 -v
Profile Index: 1
Profile Name:[music]

-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Image category:
 [ ].bmp   [ ].dib   [ ].gif   [ ].jpeg  [ ].jpg   [ ].jpg2  [ ].jp2   [ ].pct
 [ ].pcx   [ ].pic   [ ].pict  [ ].png   [ ].tif   [ ].tiff  [ ].ico
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Video category:
 [ ].asf   [ ].avi   [ ].mov   [ ].mpe   [ ].mpeg  [ ].mpg  [v].mp4   [ ].qt
 [ ].rm    [v].wmv   [ ].3gp   [ ].3gpp  [ ].3gpp2 [ ].3g2 [ ].flv   [ ].swf
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Audio category:
 [v].aac   [v].aiff  [v].au    [v].mp3   [v].m4a   [v].m4p   [v].ogg   [v].ra
 [v].ram   [v].vox   [v].wav   [v].wma
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Java category:
 [ ].class [ ].jad   [ ].jar   [ ].jav   [ ].java  [ ].jcm   [ ].js    [ ].jse
 [ ].jsp   [ ].jtk
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
ActiveX category:
 [ ].alx   [ ].apb   [ ].axs   [ ].ocx   [ ].olb   [ ].ole   [ ].tlb   [ ].viv
 [ ].vrm
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Compression category:
 [ ].ace   [ ].arj   [ ].bzip2 [ ].bz2   [ ].cab   [ ].gz    [ ].gzip  [ ].rar
 [ ].sit   [ ].zip
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Executation category:
 [ ].bas   [ ].bat   [ ].com   [ ].exe   [ ].inf   [ ].pif   [ ].reg   [ ].scr
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
P2P category:
 [ ].torrent
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Document category:
 [ ].doc   [ ].docx  [ ].odp   [ ].ods   [ ].odt   [ ].pdf   [ ].ppt   [ ].pptx
 [ ].xls   [ ].xlsx
```

Telnet Command: object sms

This command is used to create short message object profile.

Syntax

object sms show
object sms setdefault
object sms obj *INDEX -v*
object sms obj *INDEX -n NAME*
object sms obj *INDEX -s Service Provider*
object sms obj *INDEX -u Username*
object sms obj *INDEX -p Password*

object sms obj *INDEX -q Quota*
object sms obj *INDEX -i Interval*
object sms obj *INDEX -l URL*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
show	It means to show the contents for all of the profiles.
setdefault	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.
<INDEX>	It means the index number (from 1 to 10) of the specified SMS object profile.
-v	It means to view the information of the specified SMS object profile.
-n <NAME>	It means to define a name for the SMS object profile. NAME: Type a name with less than 15 characters.
-s <Service Provider>	It means to specify the number of the service provider which offers the service of SMS. Different numbers represent different service provider. 0 : kotsms.com.tw (TW) 2 : textmarketer.co.uk (UK) 4 : messagemedia.co.uk (UK) 5 : bulksms.com (INT) 6 : bulksms.co.uk (UK) 7 : bulksms.2way.co.za (ZA) 8 : bulksms.com.es (ES) 9 : usa.bulksms.com (US) 10 : bulksms.de (DE) 11 : www.pswin.com (EU) 12 : www.messagebird.com (EU) 13 : www.lusosms.com (EU) 14 : www.vibeactivemedia.com (UK)
-u <Username>	It means to define a user name for the SMS object profile. Type a user name that the sender can use to register to selected SMS provider.
-p <Password>	It means to define a password for the SMS object profile. Type a password that the sender can use to register to selected SMS provider.
-q <Quota>	Enter the number of the credit that you purchase from the service provider. Note that one credit equals to one SMS text message on the standard route.
-l <Interval>	It means to set the sending interval for the SMS to be delivered. Enter the shortest time interval for the system to send SMS.
-l <URL>	It means to set the URL for Custom 1 and Custom 2 profiles. The profile name for Custom 1 and Custom 2 are defined in default and can not be changed.

Example

```
> object sms obj 1 -n CTC
> object sms obj 1 -s 0
> object sms obj 1 -u carrie
> object sms obj 1 -p 19971125cm
> object sms obj 1 -q 2
> object sms obj 1 -i 50
> object sms obj 1 -v
Profile Index: 1
Profile Name:[CTC]
SMS Provider:[kotsms.com.tw (TW)]
Username:[carrie]
Password:[******]
Quota:[2]
Sending Interval:[50(seconds)]
```

Telnet Command: object mail

This command is used to create mail object profile.

Syntax

object mail show
object mail setdefault
object mail obj *INDEX -v*
object mail obj *INDEX -n <Profile Name>*
object mail obj *INDEX -s <SMTP Server>*
object mail obj *INDEX -l <Connection security>*
object mail obj *INDEX -m <SMTP Port>*
object mail obj *INDEX -a <Sender Address>*
object mail obj *INDEX -t <Authentication>*
object mail obj *INDEX -u <Username>*
object mail obj *INDEX -p <Password>*
object mail obj *INDEX -i <Sending Interval>*
object mail obj *INDEX -w <Interface>*
object mail obj *INDEX -x <Alias IP Index>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
show	It means to show the contents for all of the profiles.
setdefault	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.
[INDEX]	It means the index number (from 1 to 10) of the specified mail object profile.
-v	It means to view the information of the specified mail object profile.
-n <Profile Name>	It means to define a name for the mail object profile. *Profile Name*: Type a name with less than 15 characters.
-s <SMTP Server>	It means to set the IP address of the mail server.
-l <Connection security>	It means to set the connection security for the object profile. 0 - (Plaintext) 1 - (SSL) 2 - (StartTLS ,nice to have) 3 - (StartTLS ,MUST)
-m <SMTP Port>	It means to set the port number for SMTP server.
-a <Sender Address>	It means to set the e-mail address (e.g., johnwash@abc.com.tw) of the sender.
-t <Authentication>	The mail server must be authenticated with the correct username and password to have the right of sending message out. 0 – disable

	1 – enable to use the port number.
-u <Username>	Type a name for authentication. The maximum length of the name you can set is 31 characters.
-p <Password>	Type a password for authentication. The maximum length of the password you can set is 31 characters.
-i <Sending Interval>	Define the interval for the system to send the SMS out. The unit is second.
-w <Interface>	Set the interface of the mail server profile.
-x <Alias IP Index>	Set the alias IP of mail server profile (1 to 10).

Example

```
> object mail obj 1 -n buyer
> object mail obj 1 -s 192.168.1.98
> object mail obj 1 -m 25
> object mail obj 1 -t 1
> object mail obj 1 -u john
> object mail obj 1 -p happy123456
> object mail obj 1 -i 25
> object mail obj 1 -v
Profile Index: 1
Interface:[WAN1]
Alias IP Index:[0]
Profile Name:[buyer]
SMTP Server:[192.168.1.98]
SMTP Port:[25]
Sender Address:[carrie@draytek.com]
Connection Security:[StartTLS(Nice to have)]
Authentication:[enable]
Username:[john]
Password:[******]
 Sending Interval:[25(seconds)]
```

Telnet Command: object noti

This command is used to create notification object profile.

Syntax

object noti show
object noti setdefault
object noti obj *INDEX -v*
object noti obj *INDEX -n <Profile Name>*
object mail obj *INDEX –e <Category><Status>*
object mail obj *INDEX –d <Category><Status>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
show	It means to show the contents for all of the profiles.
setdefault	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.
<INDEX>	It means the index number (from 1 to 8) of the specified notification object profile.
-v	It means to view the information of the specified notification object profile.
-n <Profile Name>	It means to define a name for the notification object profile.

	Profile Name: Type a name with less than 15 characters.
-e	It means to enable the status of specified category.
-d	It means to disable the status of specified category.
<Category>	Available categories are: 1: WAN; 2: VPN Tunnel; 3: Temperature Alert; 4: WAN Budget; 5: CVM; 6: High Availability; 9:Security
<status>	For WAN - 1: Disconnected; 2: Reconnected. For VPN Tunnel - 1: Disconnected; 2: Reconnected. For Temperature Alert - 1: Out of Range. For WAN Budget - 1: Limit Reached. For CVM - 1: CPE Offline; 2: Backup Fail; 3: Restore Fail; 4: FW Update Fail; 5: VPN Profile Setup Fail. For High Availability - 1: Failover Occurred, Config Sync Fail, and Router Unstable For Security - 1 : Web Log-in event occurs. 2 : Telnet Log-in event occurs. 3 : SSH Log-in event occurs. 4 : TR069 Log-in event occurs. 5 : FTP User Log-in event occurs. 6 : Config-Changed event occurs.

Example

```
> object noti obj 1 -n market
> object noti obj 1 -e 1 1
> object noti obj 1 -e 2 1
> object noti obj 1 -e 5 3
> object noti obj 1 -v
Profile Index: 1
Profile Name:[]
    Category                  Status
  WAN                  [v]Disconnected     [ ]Reconnected
  VPN Tunnel           [v]Disconnected     [ ]Reconnected
  Temperature Alert    [ ]USB Temperature Out of Range
  WAN Budget Alert     [ ]Limit Reached
  CVM Alert            [ ]CPE Offline
                       [ ]CPE Config Backup Fail
                       [v]CPE Config Restore Fail
                       [ ]CPE Firmware Fpgrade Fail
                       [ ]CPE VPN Profile Setup Fail
  High Availability    [ ]Failover Occurred
                      Config Sync Fail
                       Router Unstable
  Security             [ ]Web Log-in event occurs
                       [ ]Telnet Log-in event occurs
                       [ ]SSH Log-in event occurs
                       [ ]TR069 Log-in event occurs
                       [ ]FTP User Log-in event occurs
                       [ ]Config-Changed event occurs
```

Telnet Command: object schedule

This command is used to create schedule object profile.

Syntax

object schedule set *INDEX option*
object schedule view
object schedule setdefault

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
set	It means to set the schedule profile.
<INDEX>	It means the index number (from 1 to 15) of the specified object profile.
option	Available options for schedule.
-e <value>	It means to enable the schedule setup. 0 – disable 1 – enable
-c <comment>	It means to set brief description for the specified profile. The length range of the comment: 0 ~ 32 characters.
-D <year><month><day>	It means to set the starting date of the profile. [year] – Must be between 2000-2049. [month] - Must be between 1-12. [day] - Must be between 1-31. For example: To set Start Date 2015/10/6, type *> object schedule set 1 -D "2015 10 6"*
-T <hour><minute>	It means to set the starting time of the profile. [hour] - Must be between 0-23. [minute] - Must be between 0-59. For example: To set Start Time 10:20, type *> object schedule set 1 -T "10 20"*
-d <hour><minute>	It means to set the duration time of the profile. [hour] - Must be between 0-23. [minute] - Must be between 0-59. For example: To set Duration Time 3:30, type *> object schedule set 1 -d "3 30"*
-a <value>	It means to set the action used for the profile. [value] – 0:Force On, 1:Force Down, 2:Enable Dial-On-Demand, 3:Disable Dial-On-Demand
-I <value>	It means to set idle time. [value] – Must be between 0-255(minute). The default is 0.
-h <option><day>	Set how often the schedule will be applied. [option] – 0: Once, 1: Weekdays, 2:Monthly, 3:Cycle days [day] – Sun, Mon, Tue, Wed, Thu, Fri, Sat If the [option] set Weekdays, then must select which days of Week. example: To select Sunday, Monday, Thursday, type *> object schedule set 1 -h "1 Sun Mon Thu"*
view [INDEX]	It means to show the content of the profile.
setdefault	It means to return to default settings for all profiles.

Example

```
> object schedule set 1 -e 1
> object schedule set 1 -c Working
> object schedule set 1 -D "2021 10 8"
> object schedule set 1 -T "8 1"
> object schedule set 1 -d "2 30"
> object schedule set 1 -a 0
> object schedule set 1 -h "1 Mon Wed"
> object schedule view 1
Index No.1

-----------------------------------------------
[v] Enable Schedule Setup
       Comment [ Working ]
       Start Date (yyyy-mm-dd)  [ 2021 ]-[ 10 ]-[  8 ]
       Start Time (hh:mm)       [  8 ]:[  1 ]
       Duration Time (hh:mm)    [  2 ]:[ 30 ]
       Action                   [ Force On ]
       Idle Timeout             [ 0 ] minute(s).(max. 255, 0 for
                                default)
       ---------------------------------------------------------------
       How Often
        [ ] Once
        [v] Weekdays
            [ ]Sun  [v]Mon  [ ]Tue  [v]Wed  [ ]Thu  [ ]Fri  [ ]Sat
>
```

Telnet Command: port

This command allows users to set the speed for specific port of the router.

Syntax

port *<1, 2, 3, 4, 5, all> <AN, 1G, 100F, 100H, 10F, 10H, status>*
port *<wan1, wan2> <AN, 1000F, 100F, 100H, 10F, 10H, status>*
port *<enable, disable> <1, 2, 3, 4, 5, all>*
port status
port sniff *<on,off,port,txrx,restart,status>*
port 802.1x *<enable,disable,status,addport,delport>*
port jumbo
port wanfc

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
1, 2, 3, 4, 5, wan1, wan2, all	It means the number of LAN port and WAN port.
AN...10H	It means the physical type for the specific port. AN: auto-negotiate. 1G: 1G 100F: 100M Full Duplex. 100H: 100M Half Duplex.

	10F: 10M Full Duplex. 10H: 10M Half Duplex.
status	It means to view the Ethernet port status.
sniff <on,off,port,txrx,restart,status>	It means to set settings for sniffer. <on,off,port,txrx,restart,status>: See the following, on - Turn on the sniffer. off - Turn off the sniffer. port - Specify a LAN port (p1, p2, p3, p4, p5 or p6). restart - Restart the system to activate the settings. status - Display current settings. rxrx - Set the transmission and receiving rates for a LAN/WAN port. e.g., > port sniff txrx 30000 p2
802.1x <enable,disable,status,addport,delport>	It means to set settings for 802.1x. <enable,disable,status,addport,delport>: See the following, enable - Enable the function. disable - Disable the function. status - Display current settings. addport - Add a port number (1 to 5). delport - Delete a port number (1 to 5).
jumbo <on/off>	It means to enable (on) or disable (off) the Jumbo frame function.
jumbo size <value>	If jumbo is enabled, set a jumbo size. <value>: 1537 to 9022. Set a number.
wanfc <INDEX> <on/off/status>	It means to set WAN flow control. <INDEX>: Enter the index number (1 to 4) of the WAN interface. <on/off/status>: Enter "on" to enable the function; enter "off" to disable the function; enter "status" to view current settings.

Example

```
> port 1 100F
%Set Port 1 Force speed 100 Full duplex OK !!!
```

Telnet Command: portmaptime

This command allows you to set a time of keeping the session connection for specified protocol.

Syntax

portmaptime *[-<command> <parameter> | ...]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
[<command> <parameter>|..]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. *[..]* means that you can Enter several commands in one line.
-t <sec>	It means “TCP” protocol. <sec>: Type a number to set the TCP session timeout.
-u <sec>	It means “UDP” protocol. <sec>: Type a number to set the UDP session timeout.
-i <sec>	It means “IGMP” protocol. <sec>: Type a number to set the IGMP session timeout.

-w <sec>	It means “TCP WWW” protocol. <sec>: Type a number to set the TCP WWW session timeout.
-s <sec>	It means “TCP SYN” protocol. <sec>: Type a number to set the TCP SYN session timeout.
-f	It means to flush all portmaps (useful for diagnostics).
-l <List>	List all settings.

Example

```
> portmaptime -t 86400 -u 300  -i 10
> portmaptime -l
------ Current setting ------
TCP Timeout   : 86400 sec.
UDP Timeout   : 300 sec.
IGMP Timeout  : 10 sec.
TCP WWW Timeout: 60 sec.
TCP SYN Timeout: 60 sec.
```

Telnet Command: ppa

This command allows you to configure PPA mode.

ppa *[-<command> <parameter> | ...]*
ppa n *[-<command> <parameter> | ...]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
[<command> <parameter>| ..]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. *[..]* means that you can Enter several commands in one line.
-z <1/0>	Enable or disable the PPA hardware acceleration. 1: Enable; 0: Disable
-m <mode>	Specify a mode. 1=auto 2=manual(traffic) 3=manual(qos) 0=disable
-p <proto>	Specify a protocol. proto - 1-TCP; 2-UDP; 3-Both.
-b 1/0	Enable/disable TWO-way hardware acceleration.
-M enable/disable	Enable/disable the multicast hardware acceleration.
-S	Show multicast table in HW accleration
-I <1/0>	Enable or disable IPSec HW accleration. 1: Enable; 0: Disable
-I -T <1/0>	Enable or disable Protocol TCP for IPSec HW accleration. 1: Enable; 0: Disable
-I -U <1/0>	Enable or disable Protocol UDP for IPSec HW accleration. 1: Enable; 0: Disable
-v	Show PPA_WAN_Table and PPA_LAN_Table for reference.
-c	Clean all settings.
-x	Show hardware acceleration information.

-k	Clean the PPA table.
ppa n – used in QoS or specific host	
-l <rule>	Specify an index number of rule profile for QoS mode.
-E -e <1/0>	Eenable/disable the exception list. 1: Enable; 0: Disable
-E -a <mac> <type>	Add exception client. <type> : nat|ipsec
-E -u <index> <option> <value>	Update the information of thet exception client. -m <mac> : Enter MAC address. -t <type> : nat|ipsec. -d <descrption>: Enter a brief description. example: *-m 12:34:56:78:90:00 -t nat|ipsec -d notebook*
-E -d -i <value>	Delete the exception client by specifying an index number.
-E -d -m <value>	Delete the exception client by specifying a mac address.
-E -c	Clear exception list.
-E -v	Display the exception list.

Example

```
> ppa n –E –e 1
> ppa n –E –a 12:34:56:78:90:00 nat|ipsec
> ppa n –E –u 12:34:56:78:90:00 –t nat|ipsec –d notebook
> ppa n –E –v
> ppa –v
%PPA is enabled
%PPA NAT is enabled
%PPA mode is Auto
%PPA Protocol TCP 1, UDP 0
%PPA Multicast is enabled
%PPA IPSec is disabled
%PPA IPSec Protocol TCP disabled
%PPA IPSec Protocol UDP disabled
%PPA two way enable
%PPA time  is 10
%PPA range is 8000
%PAE range is 2048
%MPE range is 5952
%PPA LAN entries 0, working 0
%PPA WAN entries 0, working 0
%PPA statistics interval: 5 sec
>
```

Telnet Command: prn

This command allows you to view current status (interface and driver) of USB printer.

Syntax

prn status
prn debug
prn enable *<0/1>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
enable <0/1>	*It means to enable / disable the function of USB pritner.* *0: disable* *1: enable*

Example

```
> prn status
Interface: USB bus 2.0
Printer: NotReady

> prn debug
conn[0] :
none
conn[1] :
none
conn[2] :
none
conn[3] :
none
LPD_data_total=0

usblp_ptr=0
UsbPrintReady=0, UsbIsPrinting=0
```

Telnet Command: qos setup

This command allows user to set general settings for QoS.

Syntax

qos setup *[-<command> <parameter> | ...]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
[<command> <parameter>| ..]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. *[..]* means that you can Enter several commands in one line.
-h	Type it to display the usage of this command.
-W <1~6>	It means to select an interface. <1~6>: 1 is WAN1; 2 is WAN2 and etc. The default is WAN1.
-m <mode>	It means to define which traffic the QoS control settings will apply to and eable QoS control. 0: disable. 1: in, apply to incoming traffic only. 2: out, apply to outgoing traffic only. 3: both, apply to both incoming and outgoing traffic. Default is enable (for outgoing traffic).
-i <bandwidth>	It means to set inbound bandwidth in kbps (Ethernet WAN only) The available setting is from 1 to 100000.
-o <bandwidth>	It means to set outbound bandwidth in kbps (Ethernet WAN only). The available setting is from 1 to 100000.
-r <index:ratio>	It means to set ratio for class index, in %.

-u <mode>	It means to enable bandwidth control for UDP. 0: disable 1: enable Default is disable.
-p <ratio>	It means to enable bandwidth limit ratio for UDP.
-t <mode>	It means to enable/disable Outbound TCP ACK Prioritize. 0: disable 1: enable
-V	Show all the settings.
-I <bandwidth>	It means the minimum available non-VoIP Inbound Bandwidth when VoIP is detected (Kbps). <bandwidth>: Enter a value. Default value: half of WAN inbound bandwidth.
-O <bandwidth>	It means the minimum available non-VoIP Outbound Bandwidth when VoIP is detected (Kbps). <bandwidth>: Enter a value. Default value: half of WAN outbound bandwidth.
-v <0/1>	It means to adjust to minimum In/Out bandwidth setting (or half QoS bandwidth). 0: Auto bandwidth adjustment. 1: When VoIP detected, QoS In/Out bandwidth will be adjusted to minimum values.
-D	Set all to factory default (for all WANs).

Example

```
> qos setup -W 2 -m 3 -i 9500 -o 8500 -r 3:20 -u 1 -p 50 -t 1
 Setup WAN2 !!!!
 WAN2 QOS mode is both
 inbound bandwidth set to 9500
 outbound bandwidth set to 8500
 WAN2 class 3 ratio set to 20
 WAN2 udp bandwidth control set to enable
 WAN2 udp bandwidth limit ratio set to 50
 WAN2 Outbound TCP ACK Prioritizel set to enable
QoS WAN2 set complete; restart QoS
>
```

Telnet Command: qos class

This command allows user to set QoS class.

Syntax

qos class -c *<no> -<a/ e/ d <no>>[-<command> <parameter> | ...]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
[<command> <parameter>/ ..]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. *[..]* means that you can Enter several commands in one line.
-h	Type it to display the usage of this command.
-c <no>	Specify the inde number for the class.

	Available value for <no> contains 1, 2 and 3. The default setting is class 1.
-n <name>	It means to type a name for the class.
-a	It means to add rule for specified class.
-e <no>	It means to edit specified rule. <no>: Enter the index number for the rule.
-d <no>	It means to delete specified rule. <no>: Enter the index number for the rule.
-m <mode>	It means to enable or disable the specified rule. 0: disable, 1: enable
-I <addr>	Set the local address. *Addr1* – It means Single address. Please specify the IP address directly, for example, "*-I 172.16.3.9*". *addr1:addr2* – It means Range address. Please specify the IP addresses, for example, "*-I 172.16.3.9: 172.16.3.50*." *addr1:subnet* – It means the subnet address with start IP address. Please Enter the subnet and the IP address, for example, "*-I 172.16.3.9:255.255.0.0".0* *any* –It means Any address. Simple type "*-I*" to specify any address for this command.
-r <addr>	Set the remote address. *addr1* – It means Single address. Please specify the IP address directly, for example, "*-I 172.16.3.9*". *addr1:addr2* – It means Range address. Please specify the IP addresses, for example, "*-I 172.16.3.9: 172.16.3.50*." *addr1:subnet* – It means the subnet address with start IP address. Please Enter the subnet and the IP address, for example, "*-I 172.16.3.9:255.255.0.0".0* *any* –It means Any address. Simple type "*-I*" to specify any address for this command.
-I/-r	Set the Address Type to "any". No need to input any IP address.
-p <DSCP id>	Specify the ID.
-s <Service type>	Specify the predefined service type by typing the number. The available types are listed as below: 1:ANY 2:DNS 3:FTP 4:GRE 5:H.323 6:HTTP 7:HTTPS 8:IKE 9:IPSEC-AH 10:IPSEC-ESP 11:IRC 12:L2TP 13:NEWS 14:NFS 15:NNTP 16:PING 17:POP3 18:PPTP 19:REAL-AUDIO 20:RTSP 21:SFTP 22:SIP 23:SMTP 24:SNMP 25:SNMP-TRAPS 26:SQL-NET 27:SSH 28:SYSLOG 29:TELNET 30:TFTP
-u <Service type>	Specify the user defined service type by typing the number (1 to 40).
-S <d/s>	Show the content for specified DSCP ID (0 to 20) /Service type (1 to 40). In which, the DSCP ID means; 0: default, 1: IP precedence 1, 2: IP precedence 2, 3: IP precedence 3, 4: IP precedence 4, 5: IP precedence 5, 6: IP precedence 6, 7: IP precedence 7, 8: AF Class1 (Low Drop), 9: AF Class1 (Medium Drop), 10: AF Class1 (High Drop), 11: AF Class2 (Low Drop), 12: AF Class2 (Medium Drop) 13: AF Class2 (High Drop), 14: AF Class3 (Low Drop), 15: AF Class3 (Medium Drop), 16: AF Class3 (High Drop) 17: AF Class4 (Low Drop), 18: AF Class4 (Medium Drop),

	19: AF Class4 (High Drop), 20: EF Class
-V <1/2/3>	Show the rule in the specified class.

Example

```
> qos class -c 2 -n draytek -a -m 1 -l 192.168.1.50:192.168.1.80

 Following setting will set in the class2
 class 2 name set to draytek
 Add a rule in class2
 Class2 the 1 rule enabled
 Set local address type to Range, 192.168.1.50:192.168.1.80
>
```

Telnet Command: qos type

This command allows user to configure protocol type and port number for QoS.

Syntax

qos type *[-a <service name> | -e <no> | -d <no>]*.

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-a <name>	It means to add rule.
-e <no>	It means to edit user defined service type. “no” means the index number. Available numbers are 1~40.
-d <no>	It means to delete user defined service type. “no” means the index number. Available numbers are 1~40.
-n <name>	It means the name of the service.
-t <type>	It means protocol type. 6: tcp(default) 17: udp 0: tcp/udp <1~254>: other
-p <port>	It means service port. The typing format must be [start:end] (ex., 510:330).
-l	List user defined types. “no” means the index number. Available numbers are 1~40.

Example

```
> qos type -a draytek -t 6 -p 510:1330

 service name set to draytek
 service type set to 6:TCP
 Port type set to Range
 Service Port set to 510 ~ 1330
>
```

Telnet Command: qos voip

This command allows user to enable or disable the QoS for VoIP and RTP.

Syntax

qos voip *<on/off>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
on/off	On – Enable the QoS for VoIP. Off – Disable th QoS for VoIP.

Example

```
> qos voip off
QoS for VoIP: Disable; SIP Port: 5060
```

Telnet Command: quit

This command can exit the telnet command screen.

Telnet Command: show lan

This command displays current status of LAN IP address settings.

Example

```
> show lan
The LAN settings:
         ip             mask       dhcp  star_ip          pool   gateway
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
[V]LAN1  192.168.1.230   255.255.255.0   V    192.168.1.10    200  192.168.1.230
[X]LAN2  192.168.2.1     255.255.255.0   V    192.168.2.10    100  192.168.2.1
[X]LAN3  192.168.3.1     255.255.255.0   V    192.168.3.10    100  192.168.3.1
[X]LAN4  192.168.4.1     255.255.255.0   V    192.168.4.10    100  192.168.4.1
[X]LAN5  192.168.5.1     255.255.255.0   V    192.168.5.10    100  192.168.5.1
[X]LAN6  192.168.6.1     255.255.255.0   V    192.168.6.10    100  192.168.6.1
[X]LAN7  192.168.7.1     255.255.255.0   V    192.168.7.10    100  192.168.7.1
[X]LAN8  192.168.8.1     255.255.255.0   V    192.168.8.10    100  192.168.8.1
[X]Route 192.168.0.1     255.255.255.0   V    0.0.0.0         0    192.168.0.1
>
```

Telnet Command: show dmz

This command displays current status of DMZ host.

Example

```
> show dmz
%     WAN1 DMZ mapping status:
 Index  Status  WAN1 aux IP    Private IP
-----------------------------------------------------
   1    Disable 0.0.0.0

%     WAN2 DMZ mapping status:
 Index  Status  WAN2 aux IP    Private IP
-----------------------------------------------------
   1    Disable 0.0.0.0

%     WAN3 DMZ mapping status:
 Index  Status  WAN3 aux IP    Private IP
-----------------------------------------------------
   1    Disable 0.0.0.0

%     WAN4 DMZ mapping status:
 Index  Status  WAN4 aux IP    Private IP
-----------------------------------------------------
   1    Disable 0.0.0.0

%     WAN5 DMZ mapping status:
 Index  Status  WAN5 aux IP    Private IP
-----------------------------------------------------
   1    Disable 0.0.0.0
%     WAN6 DMZ mapping status:
 Index  Status  WAN6 aux IP    Private IP
-----------------------------------------------------
   1    Disable 0.0.0.0
>
```

Telnet Command: show dns

This command displays current status of DNS setting

Example

```
> show dns
%%     Domain name server settings:
%  LAN1  Primary DNS: [Not set]
%  LAN1  Secondary DNS: [Not set]

%  LAN2  Primary DNS: [Not set]
%  LAN2  Secondary DNS: [Not set]

%  LAN3  Primary DNS: [Not set]
%  LAN3  Secondary DNS: [Not set]

%  LAN4  Primary DNS: [Not set]
%  LAN4  Secondary DNS: [Not set]
```

```
%  LAN5  Primary DNS: [Not set]
%  LAN5  Secondary DNS: [Not set]
..
```

Telnet Command: show openport

This command displays current status of open port setting.

Example

```
> show openport
%%     Openport settings:
Index   Status  Comment        Local IP Address
*******************************************************
                No data entry.
```

Telnet Command: show nat

This command displays current status of NAT.

Example

```
> show nat
 Port Redirection Running Table:

Index  Protocol  Public Port   Private IP       Private Port
 1           0           0   0.0.0.0                   0
 2           0           0   0.0.0.0                   0
 3           0           0   0.0.0.0                   0
 4           0           0   0.0.0.0                   0
 5           0           0   0.0.0.0                   0
 6           0           0   0.0.0.0                   0
 7           0           0   0.0.0.0                   0
 8           0           0   0.0.0.0                   0
 9           0           0   0.0.0.0                   0
10           0           0   0.0.0.0                   0
11           0           0   0.0.0.0                   0
12           0           0   0.0.0.0                   0
13           0           0   0.0.0.0                   0
14           0           0   0.0.0.0                   0
15           0           0   0.0.0.0                   0
16           0           0   0.0.0.0                   0
17           0           0   0.0.0.0                   0
18           0           0   0.0.0.0                   0
19           0           0   0.0.0.0                   0
20           0           0   0.0.0.0                   0
--- MORE ---   ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page]
```

Telnet Command: show portmap

This command displays the table of NAT Active Sessions.

Example

```
> show portmap
------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

```
  Private_IP:Port Pseudo_IP:Port Peer_IP:Port [Timeout/Protocol/Flag]
------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Telnet Command: show pmtime

This command displays the reuse time of NAT session.

Level0: It is the default setting.

Level1: It will be applied when the NAT sessions are smaller than 25% of the default setting.

Level2: It will be applied when the NAT sessions are smaller than the eighth of the default setting.

Example

```
> show pmtime
  Level0 TCP=86400001 UDP=300001 ICMP=10001
  Level1 TCP=600000 UDP=90000 ICMP=7000
  Level2 TCP=60000 UDP=30000 ICMP=5000
```

Telnet Command: show session

This command displays current status of current session.

Example

```
> show session
% Maximum Session Number: 60000
% Maximum Session Usage: 0
% Current Session Usage: 0
% Current Session Used(include waiting for free): 6
% WAN1 Current Session Usage: 0
% WAN2 Current Session Usage: 0
% WAN3 Current Session Usage: 0
% WAN4 Current Session Usage: 0
% WAN5 Current Session Usage: 0
% WAN6 Current Session Usage: 0
```

Telnet Command: show status

This command displays current status of LAN and WAN connections.

Example

```
> show status

System Uptime:95:4:44
LAN Status
Primary DNS:8.8.8.8          Secondary DNS:8.8.4.4
IP Address:192.168.1.1       Tx Rate:125096    Rx Rate:41045

WAN 1 Status: Disconnected
Enable:Yes      Line:Ethernet    Name:
Mode:DHCP Client Up Time:0:00:00     IP:---           GW IP:---
TX Packets:0         TX Rate(bps):0   RX Packets:0         RX Rate(bps):0

WAN 2 Status: Disconnected
Enable:Yes      Line:Ethernet    Name:
Mode:DHCP Client Up Time:0:00:00     IP:---           GW IP:---
TX Packets:0         TX Rate(bps):0   RX Packets:0         RX Rate(bps):0

WAN 3 Status: Disconnected
Enable:No       Line:Ethernet    Name:
Mode:---        Up Time:0:00:00     IP:---           GW IP:---
TX Packets:0         TX Rate(bps):0   RX Packets:0         RX Rate(bps):0

WAN 4 Status: Disconnected
Enable:No       Line:Ethernet    Name:
...
```

Telnet Command: show traffic

This comman can display traffic graph for WAN1 to WAN4, transmitted bytes, receivied bytes and sessions.

Syntax

show traffic *[wan1/..wan6] [tx/rx] [weekly]*

show traffic *[ipaddr] [tx/rx]*

show traffic session *[weekly]*

Example

```
> show traffic session weekly0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,
0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0
,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0
 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,
,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0
 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,
,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0
 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,2 ,1 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,
,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,1 ,3 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,2 ,15 ,5 ,4 ,1 ,0 ,0 ,
,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0
> show traffic wan1 tx weekly0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,
0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0
,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0
 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,
0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0
,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0
 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,
0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0
,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0
```

```
,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,
,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0
,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,
0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0
```

Telnet Command: show clienttraffic

This command displays packet information for specified external device.

Syntax

show clienttraffic *[device index] [wan# or lan#] [tx/rx] [weekly]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
[device index]	Enter the device index (01 – 30) in double-digit (ex: 01, 02) for external device. Use “switch list” to check which VigorSwitch connects to this router. Then, Enter the index number of this VigorSwitch in this field.
[wan# or lan#]	wan# - Specify WAN interface (WAN1 to WAN2) for Vigor router. lan#- Specify LAN interface (LANA / LANB) for Vigor router.
[tx/rx]	Tx – Inidcate transmitted data. Rx – Indicate receivied data.
[weekly]	Display the transmitted data or receivied data collected weekly.

Example

```
> show clienttraffic 01 lana tx weekly
0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,
0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,
0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,
0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,
0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,
0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,
0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,
0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,
0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,
0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0 ,0
```

Telnet Command: show statistic

This command displays statistics for WAN interface.

Syntax

show statistic

show statistic reset *<interface>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
reset	It means to reset the transmitted/received bytes to Zero.
interface	It means to specify WAN1 ~WAN5 (including multi-PVC) interface for displaying related statistics.

Example

```
> show statistic
 WAN1 total TX: 0 Bytes ,RX: 0 Bytes
WAN2 total TX: 0 Bytes ,RX: 0 Bytes
WAN3 total TX: 0 Bytes ,RX: 0 Bytes
WAN4 total TX: 0 Bytes ,RX: 0 Bytes
WAN5 total TX: 0 Bytes ,RX: 0 Bytes
WAN6 total TX: 0 Bytes ,RX: 0 Bytes
WAN7 total TX: 0 Bytes ,RX: 0 Bytes
WAN8 total TX: 0 Bytes ,RX: 0 Bytes
WAN9 total TX: 0 Bytes ,RX: 0 Bytes
 >
```

Telnet Command: smb setting

This command is used to configure file sharing settings for SMB server.

Syntax

smb setting *<enable/ disable>*
smb setting *status*
smb setting *set workgroup <Workgroup name>*
smb setting *set host <host name>*
smb setting *set access <LAN / LANWAN>*
smb setting *set version <v1v2/ v2>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<enable/ disable>	Enable or disable the SMB service.
status	Displays current status of SMB service.
Set workgroup <Workgroup name>	It means to set a name of workgroup for SMB service.
set host <host name>	It means to set a name of the host for SMB service.
set access <LAN / LANWAN>	It means to set the access into SMB server by LAN or borth LAN and WAN.
set version <v1v2/ v2>	It means to set SMB server version.

Example

```
> smb setting enable
SMB service is enabled.

> smb setting set access LAN
Allow SMB access from LAN only.
> smb setting set version v1v2
SMB version: v1 and v2.
```

Telnet Command: srv dhcp dhcp2

This command is used to enable DCHP2 server.

Syntax

srv dhcp dhcp2 *[-<command> <parameter> | ...]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-l <enable>	The DHCP server assigns the IP addresses to the clients via LAN port. <enable> : Enter 0 (disable) or 1 (enable).
-m <enable>	The DHCP server assigns the IP addresses to the clients via MAC address configuration. <enable> : Enter 0 (disable) or 1 (enable).
-e <id>	Turn on the flag of LAN 1 or LAN 2 if LAN port is enabled. <id>: Enter 1 or 2.
-d <id>	Turn off the flag of LAN port 1 or LAN port 2.

	<id>: Enter 1 or 2.
-v	View current status.

Example

```
> srv dhcp dhcp2 -l 1 -e 1,2
> srv dhcp dhcp2 -v
 2nd DHCP server flag status --
   Server works on specified MAC address: ON
   Server works on specified LAN port: ON
   Port 1 flag: ON
   Port 2 flag: ON
>
```

Telnet Command: srv dhcp public

This command allows users to configure DHCP server for second subnet.

Syntax

srv dhcp public *start <IP address>*
srv dhcp public *cnt <IP counts>*
srv dhcp public *status*
srv dhcp public *add <MAC Addr XX-XX-XX-XX-XX-XX>*
srv dhcp public *del <MAC Addr XX-XX-XX-XX-XX-XX/ all/ ALL>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
start <IP address>	It means the starting point of the IP address pool for the DHCP server. *<IP address>:* Specify an IP address as the starting point in the IP address pool.
cnt <IP counts>	It means the IP count number. *<IP counts>:* Specify the number of IP addresses in the pool. The maximum is 10.
status	It means the execution result of this command.
add <MAC Addr XX-XX-XX-XX-XX-XX>	It means creating a list of hosts to be assigned. <MAC Addr XX-XX-XX-XX-XX-XX>: Specify MAC Address of the host.
del <MAC Addr XX-XX-XX-XX-XX-XX/ all/ ALL>	It means removing the selected MAC address. <MAC Addr XX-XX-XX-XX-XX-XX>: Specify MAC Address of the host. all/ALL: It means all of the MAC addresses.

Example

```
> ip route add 192.168.1.56 255.255.255.0 192.168.1.12 3 default
> srv dhcp public status
Index   MAC Address
```

Telnet Command: srv dhcp dns1

This command allows users to set Primary IP Address for DNS Server in LAN.

Syntax

srv dhcp dns1 *<lan1/ lan2/ lan3/ lan4/ lan5/ lan6/ lan7/ lan8> <DNS IP address>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<lan1/ lan2/ lan3/ lan4/ lan5/ lan6/ lan7/ lan8>	It means to sepcify the LAN interface for setting the DNS server.
<DNS IP address>	It means the IP address that you want to use as DNS1. **Note:** The IP Routed Subnet DNS must be the same as NAT Subnet DNS).

Example

```
> srv dhcp dns1 lan1 168.95.1.1
% srv dhcp dns1 lan1 <DNS IP address>
% Now: 168.95.1.1
(IP Routed Subnet dns same as lan1)
```

Telnet Command: srv dhcp dns2

This command allows users to set Secondary IP Address for DNS Server in LAN.

Syntax

srv dhcp dns2 *<lan1/ lan2/ lan3/ lan4/ lan5/ lan6/ lan7/ lan8> <DNS IP address>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<lan1/ lan2/ lan3/ lan4/ lan5/ lan6/ lan7/ lan8>	It means to sepcify the LAN interface for setting the DNS server.
<DNS IP address>	It means the IP address that you want to use as DNS2. **Note:** The IP Routed Subnet DNS must be the same as NAT Subnet DNS).

Example

```
> srv dhcp dns2 lan3 10.1.1.1
% srv dhcp dns2 lan3 <DNS IP address>
% Now: 10.1.1.1
```

Telnet Command: srv dhcp frcdnsmanl

This command can force the router to invoke DNS Server IP address.

Syntax

srv dhcp frcdnsmanl <*on/off*>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
?	It means to display the current status.
on	It means to use manual setting for DNS setting.
off	It means to use auto settings acquired from ISP.

Example

```
> srv dhcp frcdnsmanl on
% Domain name server now is using manual settings!
> srv dhcp frcdnsmanl off
% Domain name server now is using auto settings!
```

Telnet Command: srv dhcp gateway

This command allows users to specify gateway address for DHCP server.

Syntax

srv dhcp gateway *<Gateway IP>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
Gateway IP	It means to specify a gateway address used for DHCP server.

Example

```
> srv dhcp gateway 192.168.2.1
 This setting will take effect after rebooting.
 Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

Telnet Command: srv dhcp ipcnt

This command allows users to specify IP counts for DHCP server.

Syntax

srv dhcp ipcnt *<IP counts>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
IP counts	It means the number that you have to specify for the DHCP server.

Example

```
> srv dhcp ipcnt ?
% srv dhcp ipcnt <IP counts>
% Now: 150
```

Telnet Command: srv dhcp off

This function allows users to turn off DHCP server. It needs rebooting router, please type "sys reboot" command to reboot router.

Telnet Command: srv dhcp on

This function allows users to turn on DHCP server. It needs rebooting router, please type "sys reboot" command to reboot router.

Telnet Command: srv dhcp relay

This command allows users to set DHCP relay setting.

Syntax

srv dhcp relay servip *<server ip>*

srv dhcp relay 2nd_servip *<server ip>*

srv dhcp relay subnet *<index>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
server ip	It means the IP address that you want to used as DHCP server.
Index	It means subnet 1 or 2. Please type 1 or 2. The router will invoke this function according to the subnet 1 or 2 specified here.

Example

```
> srv dhcp relay servip 192.168.1.46
> srv dhcp relay subnet 2
> srv dhcp relay servip ?
% srv dhcp relay servip <server ip>
% Now: 192.168.1.46
```

Telnet Command: srv dhcp startip

Syntax

srv dhcp startip *<IP address>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
IP address	It means the IP address that you can specify for the DHCP server as the starting point.

Example

```
> srv dhcp startip 192.168.1.53
 This setting will take effect after rebooting.
 Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

Telnet Command: srv dhcp status

This command can display general information for the DHCP server, such as IP address, MAC address, leased time, host ID and so on.

Syntax

srv dhcp status *<LAN1/2/3/4/5/6/7/8/ip_routed_subnet>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<LAN1/2/3/4/5/6/7/8 /ip_routed_subnet>	It means to display current status for the selected interface.

Example

```
> srv dhcp status
LAN1      : DHCP Server On    IP Pool: 192.168.1.10 ~ 192.168.1.209
            Default Gateway: 192.168.1.1
IP Routed  : DHCP Server Off
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Index   IP Address     MAC Address           Leased Time     HOST ID
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
LAN1
1       192.168.1.10    00-1D-AA-0F-2E-68      17:24:58
2       192.168.1.11    00-1D-AA-4F-E2-98      17:54:14
>
```

Telnet Command: srv dhcp leasetime

This command can set the lease time for the DHCP server.

Syntax

srv dhcp leasetime *<Lease Time (sec)>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
Lease Time (sec)	It means the lease time (500 to 1661992960) that DHCP server can use. The unit is second.

Example

```
> srv dhcp leasetime ?
% srv dhcp leasetime <Lease Time (sec.)>
% Now: 86400
>
```

Telnet Command: srv dhcp nodetype

This command can set the node type for the DHCP server.

Syntax

srv dhcp nodetype *<count>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
count	It means to specify a type for node. 1. B-node 2. P-node 4. M-node 8. H-node

Example

```
> srv dhcp nodetype 1
> srv dhcp nodetype ?
%% srv dhcp nodetype <count>
%% 1. B-node 2. P-node 4. M-node 8. H-node
% Now: 1
```

Telnet Command: srv dhcp primWINS

This command can set the primary IP address for the DHCP server.

Syntax

srv dhcp primWINS *<WINS IP address>*

srv dhcp primWINS clear

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
WINS IP address	It means the IP address of primary WINS server.
clear	It means to remove the IP address settings of primary WINS server.

Example

```
> srv dhcp primWINS 192.168.1.88
> srv dhcp primWINS ?
%% srv dhcp primWINS <WINS IP address>
%% srv dhcp primWINS clear
% Now: 192.168.1.88
```

Telnet Command: srv dhcp secWINS

This command can set the secondary IP address for the DHCP server.

Syntax

srv dhcp secWINS *<WINS IP address>*

srv dhcp secWINS clear

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
WINS IP address	It means the IP address of secondary WINS server.
clear	It means to remove the IP address settings of second WINS server.

Example

```
> srv dhcp secWINS 192.168.1.180
> srv dhcp secWINS ?
%% srv dhcp secWINS <WINS IP address>
%% srv dhcp secWINS clear
% Now: 192.168.1.180
```

Telnet Command: srv dhcp expRecycleIP

This command can set the time to check if the IP address can be assigned again by DHCP server or not.

Syntax

srv dhcp expRecycleIP *<sec time>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
sec time	It means to set the time (5~300 seconds) for checking if the IP can be assigned again or not.

Example

```
Vigor> srv dhcp expRecycleIP 250
% DHCP expired_RecycleIP = 250
```

Telnet Command: srv dhcp tftp

This command can set the TFTP server as the DHCP server.

Syntax

srv dhcp tftp *<TFTP server name>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
TFTP server name	It means to Enter the name of TFTP server.

Example

```
> srv dhcp tftp TF123
> srv dhcp tftp ?
%% srv dhcp tftp <TFTP server name>
% Now: TF123
```

Telnet Command: srv dhcp tftpdel

This command can remove the name defined for the TFTP server.

Syntax

srv dhcp tftpdel

Example

```
> srv dhcp tftp TF123
> srv dhcp tftp ?
%% srv dhcp tftp <TFTP server name>
% Now: TF123
> srv dhcp tftpdel
% The TFTP Server Name had been deleted !!!
```

Telnet Command: srv dhcp option

This command can set the custom option for the DHCP server.

Syntax

srv dhcp option *-h*
srv dhcp option *-l*
srv dhcp option *-d <idx>*
srv dhcp option *-e <1 or 0> -i <lan number> -s <Next Server IP Address>*
srv dhcp option *-e <1 or 0> -i <lan number> -c <option number> -v <option value>*
srv dhcp option *-e <1 or 0> -i <lan number> -c <option number> -x <option value>*
srv dhcp option *-e <1 or 0> -i <lan number> -c <option number> -a <option value>*
srv dhcp option *-u <idx number>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-h	It means to display usage of this command.
-l	It means to display all the user defined DHCP options.
-d <idx>	It means to delete the option number by specifying its index number.
-e <1/ 0>	It means to enable/disable custom option feature. 1: Enable; 0: Disable
-i <lan number>	<lan number> *:* It means to specify the LAN interface. 1: lan1 a: all LAN r: routed subnet d: DMZ
-s <Next Server IP Address>	It means to set the next server IP address. Next Server IP Address: Enter an IP address.
-c <option number>	It means to set option number. Available number ranges from 0 to 255. option number: Enter a number.
-v <option value>	It means to set option number by typing string. option value: Enter a string.
-x <option value>	It means to set option number with the format of Hexadecimal characters. option value: Enter a number (hex).
-a <option value>	It means to set the option value by specifying the IP address. option value: Enter an IP address.
-u <idx number>	It means to update the option value of the sepecified index. idx number: Enter the index number of the option value.
-r	It means to remove all DHCP server options.

Example

```
> srv dhcp option -e 1 -i 1/2 -s 8.8.8.8

> srv dhcp option -l

% state   idx interface         opt type     data


% enable  1   LAN1/2            0   SIAddr   0.0.0.0
```

Telnet Command: srv nat dmz

This command allows users to set DMZ host. Before using this command, please set WAN IP Alias first.

Syntax

srv nat dmz n m *[-<command> <parameter> | ...]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
n	It means to map selected WAN IP to certain host. 1: wan1 2: wan2
m	It means the index number (1 to 32) of the DMZ host. Default setting is "1" (WAN 1). It is only available for Static IP mode. If you use other mode, you can set 1 ~ 32 in this field. If WAN IP alias has been configured, then the number of DMZ host can be added more.
[<command> <parameter>| ..]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. *[..]* means that you can Enter several commands in one line.
-e	It means to enable/disable such feature. 1:enable 0:disable
-i	It means to specify the private IP address of the DMZ host.
-r	It means to remove DMZ host setting.
-v	It means to display current status.

Example

```
> srv nat dmz 1 1 -i 192.168.1.96
> srv nat dmz -v
%     WAN1 DMZ mapping status:
 Index  Status  WAN1 aux IP    Private IP
-------------------------------------------------
   1    Disable 0.0.0.0 192.168.1.96

%     WAN2 DMZ mapping status:
 Index  Status  WAN2 aux IP    Private IP
-------------------------------------------------
   1    Disable 0.0.0.0

%     WAN3 DMZ mapping status:
 Index  Status  WAN3 aux IP    Private IP
-------------------------------------------------
   1    Disable 0.0.0.0

%     WAN4 DMZ mapping status:
 Index  Status  WAN4 aux IP    Private IP
-------------------------------------------------
   1    Disable 0.0.0.0
```

```
%     WAN5 DMZ mapping status:
 Index  Status  WAN5 aux IP    Private IP
-------------------------------------------------
   1    Disable 0.0.0.0

%     WAN6 DMZ mapping status:
 Index  Status  WAN6 aux IP    Private IP
-------------------------------------------------

   1    Disable 0.0.0.0
>
```

Telnet Command: srv nat ipsecpass

This command allows users to enable or disable IPSec ESP tunnel passthrough and IKE source port (500) preservation.

Syntax

srv nat ipsecpass *<options>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<options>	The available commands with parameters are listed below.
on	It means to enable IPSec ESP tunnel passthrough and IKE source port (500) preservation.
off	It means to disable IPSec ESP tunnel passthrough and IKE source port (500) preservation.
status	It means to display current status for checking.

Example

```
> srv nat ipsecpass status
%% Status: IPsec ESP pass-thru and IKE src_port:500 preservation is OFF.
```

Telnet Command: srv nat openport

This command allows users to set open port settings for NAT server.

Syntax

srv nat openport n m *[-<command> <parameter> | ...]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
n	It means the index number for the profiles. The range is from 1 to 40.
m	It means to specify the sub-item number for this profile. The range is from 1 to 10.
[<command> <parameter>| ..]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. *[..]* means that you can Enter several commands in one line.
-a <enable>	It means to enable or disable the open port rule profile. 0: disable 1:enable

-c <comment>	It means to Enter the description (less than 23 characters) for the defined network service.
-I <source ip idx>	It means to set source IP object. 1 to 192: for IP object 1 to 32: for IP group 0: Any For example: srv nat openport 1 1 -l 1 -g 0
-g <source ip type>	It means to set IP type. 0: IP object 1: IP group For example: srv nat openport 1 1 -l 1 -g 0
-i <local ip>	It means to set the IP address for local computer. Local ip: Type an IP address in this field.
-w <widx><ipidx>	widx: Specify the public IP. 1: WAN1 Default, 2: WAN1 Alias 1, …and so on. ipidx: Specify the index number of an alias IP (1 to 32).
-p <protocol>	Specify the transport layer protocol. Available values are TCP, UDP and ALL.
-s<start port>	It means to specify the starting port number of the service offered by the local host. The range is from 0 to 65535.
-e<end port>	It means to specify the ending port number of the service offered by the local host. The range is from 0 to 65535.
-v	It means to display current settings.
-r <remove>	It means to delete the specified open port setting. remove: Enter the index number of the profile.
-f	It means to return to factory settings for all the open ports profiles.

Example

```
> srv nat openport 1 1 -a 1 -c games -i 192.168.1.55 -w 1 1 -p TCP -s 56 -e
83
 Set WAN Port ok!!

> srv nat openport 1 1 -v
%% Status: Enable
%% Comment: games
%% WAN Interface: WAN1
%% Private IP address: 192.168.1.55
Index   Protocal       Start Port     End Port
**************************************************************
  1.    TCP           56            83
> srv nat openport 1 1 -f
> srv nat openport 1 1 -v
%% Status: Disable
%% Comment:
%% WAN Interface: WAN1
%% Private IP address: 0.0.0.0
Index   Protocal       Start Port     End Port
```

```
**************************************************************
>
```

Telnet Command: srv nat portmap

This command allows users to set port redirection table for NAT server.

Syntax

srv nat portmap *add <idx> <serv name> <proto> <pub port> <src ip type> <src ip idx> <pri ip> <pri port> <wan idx> <alias IP>*

srv nat portmap *del <idx>*

srv nat portmap *disable <idx>*

srv nat portmap *enable <idx><proto>*

srv nat portmap *flush*

srv nat portmap *table*

srv nat portmap *view*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
add <idx>	It means to add a new port redirection table with an index number. Available index number is from 1 to 40.
<serv name>	It means to type one name as service name.
<proto>	It means to specify TCP or UDP as the protocol.
<pub port>	It means to specify which port (0 to 65535) can be redirected to the specified Private IP and Port of the internal host.
<src ip type>	It means to specify the IP type (object or group). ip type: 0 means IP object; 1 means IP group.
<src ip idx>	It means to specify the index number of the object profile. ip idx: 1 to 192 for IP object profile; 1 to 32 for IP group profile. 0 means any object or group.
<pri ip>	It means to specify the private IP address of the internal host providing the service.
<pri port>	It means to specify the private port number (0 to 65535) of the service offered by the internal host.
<wan idx>	It means to specify WAN interface for the port redirection. Idx: wan1 to wan6, all
<alias IP>	It means to specify an alias IP by entering the index number (1 to 32). ip: 1 to 32.
del <idx>	It means to remove the selected port redirection setting.
disable <idx>	It means to inactivate the selected port redirection setting.
enable <idx>	It means to activate the selected port redirection setting.
flush	It means to clear all the port mapping settings.
table	It means to display Port Redirection Configuration Table.

Example

```
> srv nat portmap add 1 name tcp 100 0 0 192.168.1.10 200 wan1 1
> srv nat portmap table
```

```
NAT Port Redirection Configuration Table:

Index  Service Name         Protocol      Public Port   Private IP
Private Port    ifno
 1     name                 TCP          100   192.168.1.10              20
0      -1
 2                         Disabled         0
  0      -2
 3                         Disabled         0
  0      -2
 4                         Disabled         0
  0      -2
 5                         Disabled         0
  0      -2
 6                         Disabled         0
  0      -2
 7                         Disabled         0
  0      -2
 8                         Disabled         0
  0      -2
 9                         Disabled         0
  0      -2
10                         Disabled         0
  0      -2
11                         Disabled         0
  0      -2
...
```

Telnet Command: srv nat trigger

This command allows users to configure port triggering settings for NAT.

Syntax

srv nat trigger setdefault

srv nat trigger view

srv nat trigger *n [-<command> <parameter> | ...]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
setdefault	Set to factory default settings.
view	Dispaly all of the port triggering settings.
n <command><parameter>| ..]	"n" means the rule number. The available commands with parameters are listed below. *[..]* means that you can type in several commands in one line.
-c <XXX>	Type a comment for such rule if required.
-e <0/ 1>	Enable (1) or disable (0) a rule (specified with rule number).
-s <value>	It means the index number for the source IP. <value> - Any, IP Object (0 to 191); IP Group (0 to 31).
-g <0/ 1>	It means the source IP type. 0 - IP Object; 1 - IP Group.
-p <1/ 2/ 3>	Specify the protocol for such trigger rule. 1 – TCP 2 – UDP 3 - All
-t	Specify the port number (0~65535) for trigger.
-P <1/ 2/ 3>	Specify the incoming protocol for such trigger rule. 1 – TCP 2 – UDP 3 - All
-i	Specify the port number (0~65535) for incoming protocol.
-d	Delete the selected trigger rule.
-v	Display the port trigger settings for specified rule.

Example

```
> srv nat trigger 1 -c after_dinner
> srv nat trigger 1 -e 1
> srv nat trigger 1 -p 1
> srv nat trigger 1 -t 2000
> srv nat trigger 1 -P 2
> srv nat trigger 1 -i 3000
> srv nat trigger 1 -v

Port Trigger Rule Index:1

Status:Enable
```

```
Comment:after_dinner2000
Triggering Protocol:TCP
Triggering Port:2000
Incoming Protocol:UDP
Incoming Port:3000
```

Telnet Command: srv nat status

This command allows users to view NAT Port Redirection Running Table.

Example

```
> srv nat status
NAT Port Redirection Running Table:

Index  Protocol  Public Port   Private IP       Private Port
 1          6          80   192.168.1.11             100
 2          0           0   0.0.0.0                    0
 3          0           0   0.0.0.0                    0
 4          0           0   0.0.0.0                    0
 5          0           0   0.0.0.0                    0
 6          0           0   0.0.0.0                    0
 7          0           0   0.0.0.0                    0
 8          0           0   0.0.0.0                    0
 9          0           0   0.0.0.0                    0
10          0           0   0.0.0.0                    0
11          0           0   0.0.0.0                    0
12          0           0   0.0.0.0                    0
13          0           0   0.0.0.0                    0
14          0           0   0.0.0.0                    0
15          0           0   0.0.0.0                    0
16          0           0   0.0.0.0                    0
17          0           0   0.0.0.0                    0
18          0           0   0.0.0.0                    0
19          0           0   0.0.0.0                    0

20          0           0   0.0.0.0                    0

--- MORE ---   ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page] ---
```

Telnet Command: srv nat showall

This command allows users to view a summary of NAT port redirection setting, open port and DMZ settings.

Example

```
>  srv nat showall ?
Index   Proto   WAN IP:Port              Private IP:Port          Act
**********************************************************************
R01     TCP     0.0.0.0:100              192.168.1.10:200         Y

O01     TCP     0.0.0.0:56~83            192.168.1.55:56~83       Y

D01     All     0.0.0.0                  192.168.1.96             Y
```

```
R:Port Redirection, O:Open Ports, D:DMZ
>
```

Telnet Command: srv nat pseudoctl

This command allows users to check the pseudo port number to prevent from port conflict.

Syntax

srv nat pseudoctl *session <value>*
srv nat pseudoctl *function <0-3>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
session <value>	Set the threshold of the session. <value>: o to 2147483647.
function <0-3>	0: It means "Auto". Check the created pseudo port number automatically when the session number is over the threshold. 1: It means "Not". Create a pseudo port number based on subnet setting. No verification. 2: It means "Must". Check the created pseudo port number if it is used by other client. 3: Create a pseudo port number. No verification.

Example

```
> srv nat pseudoctl function 2
 pesudo port: get hash pseudo port + subnet.
 pseudo port search: check pseudo port(Must).

> srv nat pseudoctl function 3
 pesudo port: get hash pseudo port.

> srv nat pseudoctl function 0
 pesudo port: get hash pseudo port + subnet.
 pseudo port search: check pseudo port(Auto).
```

Telnet Command: srv nat RSTTimeout

This command is used for forwarding RST out via TCP after a period of time.

Syntax

srv nat RSTTimeout *<value>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<value>	Set the timeout value. <value>: 0 to 10 (one unit is 10msec).

Example

```
>  srv nat RSTTimeout 2
Set timeout 2 unit

> srv nat RSTTimeout ?
%% srv RSTtimeout <value> (unit is 10msec). (0<=value<=10)
--------------------------
now timeout set 2 unit

>
```

Telnet Command: switch -i

This command is used to obtain the TX (transmitted) or RX (received) data for each connected switch.

Syntax

switch -i *<switch idx_no><option>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
switch idx_no	It means the index number (1 to 8) of the switch profile.
option	The available commands with parameters are listed below. *cmd* *acc* *traffic <on/off/status/tx/rx>*
cmd	It means to send command to the client.
acc	It means to set the client authentication account and password.
traffic <on/off/status/tx/rx>	It means to turn on/off or display the data transmission from the client.

Example

```
>  switch -i 1 traffic on
External Device NO. 1 traffic statistic function is enable
>
```

Telnet Command: switch status

This command is used to check the status for the auto discovery of external devices.

Example

```
> switch status
External Device auto discovery status : Disable

No Respond to External Device : Enable
```

Telnet Command: switch not_respond

This command is used to detect the external device automatically and display on this page.

Syntax

switch not_respond 0

switch not_respond 1

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
0	Disable the option of "No Respond to External Device packets".
1	Enable the option of "No Respond to External Device packets".

Example

```
> switch not_respond 1
slave not respond!
>
```

Telnet Command: switch on

This command is used to turn on the auto discovery for external devices.

Example

```
>  switch on
Enable Extrnal Device auto discovery!
```

Telnet Command: switch off

This command is used to turn off the auto discovery for external devices.

Example

```
>  switch off
Disable External Device auto discovery!
```

Telnet Command: switch list

This command is used to display the connection status of the switch.

Example

```
> switch list?
No.      Mac             IP         status   Dur Time   CWMP   ACS_CTL   Mod
el_Name   firmware_version
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
------------------------------
[1]  00-1d-aa-7c-f5-a4  192.168.1.12    On-Line   01:03:57    -1       -1
VigorAP1060C, VigorAP1060C
[2]  14-49-bc-41-33-f4  192.168.1.11    On-Line   01:03:57    -1       -1
G2121
[3]  14-49-bc-43-e5-79  192.168.1.13    On-Line   01:03:57    -1       -1
G2100
```

Telnet Command: switch clear

This command is used to reset the switch table and reboot the router.

Syntax

switch clear *<idx>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
idx	It means the index number of each item shown on the table. The range is from 1 to 8.
-f	It means to clear all of the data.

Example

```
> switch clear 1
Switch Data clear successful

> switch clear –f
Switch Data clear successful
```

Telnet Command: switch query

This command is used to enable or disable the switch query.

Example

```
> switch query on
Extern Device status query is Enable
> switch query off
Extern Device status query is Disable
```

Telnet Command: switch syslog

This command is used to enable or disable the external device syslog.

Example

```
> switch syslog on
Extern Device status is Enable
> switch syslog off
Extern Device status is Disable
```

Telnet Command: sys admin

This command is used for RD engineer to access into test mode of Vigor router.

Telnet Command: sys adminuser

This command is used to create user account and specify LDAP server. The server will authenticate the local user who wants to access into the web user interface of Vigor router.

Syntax

sys adminuser <*option*>

sys adminuser edit <*index*> *username password*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
option	Available options includes: Local <0-1> LDAP <0-1> edit <INDEX> delete <INDEX> view <INDEX>
Local <0-1>	0 - Disable the local user. 1 - Enable the local user.
LDAP <0-1>	0 - Disable the LDAP. 1 - Enable the LDAP.
edit <INDEX> username password	Edit an existed user account or create a new local user account. [INDEX] - 1 ~8. There are eight profiles to be added / edited. Username - Type a new name for local user. Password - Type a password for local user.
delete <INDEX>	Delete a local user account.
view <INDEX>	Show the user account/password detail information.

Example

```
> sys adminuser Local 1
Local User has enabled!
> sys adminuser LDAP 1
LDAP has enabled!
> sys adminuser edit 1 carrie test123
Updated!
> sys adminuser view 1

Index:1
User Name:carrie
User Password:
0F1AD8240CF4F7566E75F78B6113E1A8595977BB9A98633C12D8AFBD1F019854
```

Telnet Command: sys board

This command is used to disable/enable and configure the panel control.

Syntax

sys board button def <*on/off*>

sys board button wlan <*on/off*>

sys board led control <*on/off*>

sys board led sleepMode <*on/off*>

sys board led sleepMode time *<minute>*
sys board usb *<p1/p2> <on/off>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
button def <on/off>	The default reset button will be invalid if turn it off. On - The button is valid. Off - The button is invalid.
Button wlan <on/off>	The wireless button will be invalid if turn it off. On - The button is valid. Off - The button is invalid.
led control <on/off>	All LEDs on the front panel will be invalid if turn it off. On - The LEDs are valid. Off - The LEDs are invalid.
led sleepMode <on/off>	All LEDs on the front panel will be set in sleep mode. On - The sleep mode is on. Off - The sleep mode is off. If the sleep mode is on, push the "wireless button" and the "factory reset button" to turn the LED on (even the buttons are disabled).
led sleepMode time <minutes>	After enableing the sleep mode for all LEDs, they will sleep after the minutes configured here. Minutes: Enter the number of the time.
usb <p1/p2> <on/off>	The USB port will be invalid if turn it off. On - The port is valid. Off - The port is invalid.

Example

```
> sys board led sleepMode on
 LEDs Sleep Mode is on now.

> sys board led sleepMode time 10
 Sleep Countdown Time set as 10 minute(s).
 Reset the led sleep timer success..
```

Telnet Command: sys bonjour

This command is used to disable/enable and configure the Bonjour service.

Syntax

sys bonjour *[-<command> <parameter> | ...]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-e <enable>	It is used to disable/enable bonjour service (0: disable, 1: enable).
-h <enable>	It is used to disable/enable http (web) service (0: disable, 1: enable).
-t <enable>	It is used to disable/enable telnet service (0: disable, 1: enable).
-f <enable>	It is used to disable/enable FTP service (0: disable, 1: enable).
-s <enable>	It is used to disable/enable SSH service (0: disable, 1: enable).
-p <enable>	It is used to disable/enable printer service (0: disable, 1: enable).

-6 <enable>	It is used to disable/enable IPv6 (0: disable, 1: enable).

Example

```
> sys bonjour -s 1
>
```

Telnet Command: sys cfg

This command reset the router with factory default settings. When a user types this command, all the configuration will be reset to default setting.

Syntax

sys cfg default

sys cfg status

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
default	It means to reset current settings with default values.
status	It means to display current profile version and status.

Example

```
> sys cfg status
Profile version: 3.0.0   Status: 1 (0x491e5e6c)
> sys cfg default
>
```

Telnet Command: sys cmdlog

This command displays the history of the commands that you have typed.

Example

```
> sys cmdlog
% Commands Log: (The lowest index is the newest !!!)
   [1] sys cmdlog
   [2] sys cmdlog ?
   [3] sys ?
   [4] sys cfg status
   [5] sys cfg ?
```

Telnet Command: sys ftpd

This command displays current status of FTP server.

Syntax

sys ftpd *on*

sys ftpd *off*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
on	It means to turn on the FTP server of the system.

off	It means to turn off the FTP server of the system.

Example

```
> sys ftpd on
% sys ftpd turn on !!!
```

Telnet Command: sys domainname

This command can set and remove the domain name of the system when DHCP mode is selected for WAN.

Syntax

sys domainname *<wan1/ wan2> <Domain Name Suffix>*
sys domainname *<wan1/ wan2> clear*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
wan1/ wan2	It means to specify WAN interface for assigning a name for it.
Domain Name Suffix	It means the name for the domain of the system. The maximum number of characters that you can set is 39.
clear	It means to remove the domain name of the system.

Example

```
> sys domainname wan1 clever
> sys domainname wan2 intellegent
> sys domainname ?
% sys domainname <wan1/wan2> <Domain Name Suffix (max. 39 characters)>
% sys domainname <wan1/wan2> clear
% Now: wan1 == clever, wan2 ==intelligent
>
```

Telnet Command: sys iface

This command displays the current interface connection status (UP or Down) with IP address, MAC address and Netmask for the router.

Example

```
> sys iface
Interface 0 Ethernet:
Status: UP
IP Address: 192.168.1.1      Netmask: 0xFFFFFF00 (Private)
IP Address: 0.0.0.0          Netmask: 0xFFFFFFFF
MAC: 00-50-7F-00-00-00
Interface 4 Ethernet:
Status: DOWN
IP Address: 0.0.0.0          Netmask: 0x00000000
MAC: 00-50-7F-00-00-02
Interface 5 Ethernet:
Status: DOWN
IP Address: 0.0.0.0          Netmask: 0x00000000
MAC: 00-50-7F-00-00-03
Interface 6 Ethernet:
```

```
Status: DOWN
IP Address: 0.0.0.0          Netmask: 0x00000000
MAC: 00-50-7F-00-00-04
Interface 7 Ethernet:
Status: DOWN
IP Address: 0.0.0.0          Netmask: 0x00000000
MAC: 00-50-7F-00-00-05
Interface 8 Ethernet:
Status: DOWN
IP Address: 0.0.0.0          Netmask: 0x00000000
MAC: 00-50-7F-00-00-06

Interface 9 Ethernet:
Status: DOWN
IP Address: 0.0.0.0          Netmask: 0x00000000
MAC: 00-50-7F-00-00-07
--- MORE ---   ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page] ---
>
```

Telnet Command: sys name

This command can set and remove the name for the router when DHCP mode is selected for WAN.

Syntax

sys name *<wan1/ wan2> <ASCII string>*

sys name *<wan1/ wan2>* **clear**

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<wan1/ wan2>	It means to specify WAN interface for assigning a name for it.
ASCII string	It means the name for router. The maximum character that you can set is 39.

Example

```
> sys name wan1 drayrouter
> sys name ?
% sys name <wan1/wan2> <ASCII string (max. 39 characters)>
% sys name <wan1/wan2> clear
% Now: wan1 == drayrouter, wan2 ==
```

Note: *Such name can be used to recognize router's identification in SysLog dialog.*

Telnet Command: sys passwd

This command allows users to set password for the administrator.

sys passwd *<old password> <new password>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
old password	Enter the old password.
new password	Enter a string as the new password for administrator. The maximum character that you can set is 83.

Example

```
> sys passwd admin admin123
Password change successful !!!
>
```

Telnet Command: sys reboot

This command allows users to restart the router immediately.

Example

```
> sys reboot
>
```

Telnet Command: sys autoreboot

This command allows users to restart the router automatically within a certain time.

Syntax

sys autoreboot *<on/off/hour(s)>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
on/off	On – It means to enable the function of auto-reboot. Off – It means to disable the function of auto-reboot.
hours	It means to set the time schedule for router reboot. For example, if you type "2" in this field, the router will reboot with an **interval** of two hours.

Example

```
> sys autoreboot on
 autoreboot is ON
> sys autoreboot 2
 autoreboot is ON
 autoreboot time is 2 hour(s)
```

Telnet Command: sys commit

This command allows users to save current settings to FLASH. Usually, current settings will be saved in SRAM. Yet, this command will save the file to FLASH.

Example

```
> sys commit
>
```

Telnet Command: sys tftpd

This command can turn on TFTP server for upgrading the firmware.

Example

```
> sys tftpd
% TFTP server enabled !!!
```

Telnet Command: sys cc

This command can display current country code and wireless region of this device.

Example

```
> sys cc
Country Code       : 0x 0 [International]
Wireless Region Code: 0x30
>
```

Telnet Command: sys version

This command can display current version for the system.

Example

```
> sys version
Router Model: Vigor2927Vac    Version: 4.3.2_RC4a zh_CN zh_TW

Profile version: 4.0.0    Status: 1 (0x9de81d8f)

Router IP: 192.168.1.230    Netmask: 255.255.255.0

Firmware Build Date/Time: Aug 12 2021 15:28:36

Router Name: DrayTek

Revision: 9647_2271_51cb273 master_V2927_432

Router serial no: None

>
```

Telnet Command: sys qrybuf

This command can display the system memory status and leakage list.

Example

```
> sys qrybuf
System Memory Status and Leakage List

Buf sk_buff  ( 200B), used#: 1647, cached#:   30
Buf KMC4088  (4088B), used#:    0, cached#:    8
Buf KMC2552  (2552B), used#: 1641, cached#:   42
Buf KMC1016  (1016B), used#:    7, cached#:    1
Buf KMC504   ( 504B), used#:    8, cached#:    8
Buf KMC248   ( 248B), used#:   26, cached#:   22
Buf KMC120   ( 120B), used#:   67, cached#:   61
Buf KMC56    (  56B), used#:   20, cached#:   44
Buf KMC24    (  24B), used#:   58, cached#:   70
Dynamic memory: 13107200B; 4573168B used; 190480B/0B in level 1/2 cache.

FLOWTRACK Memory Status
# of free = 12000
# of maximum = 0
# of flowstate = 12000
# of lost by siganture = 0
# of lost by list = 0
```

Telnet Command: sys pollbuf

This command can turn on or turn off polling buffer for the router.

Syntax

sys pollbuf *<on/off>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
on	It means to turn on pulling buffer.
off	It means to turn off pulling buffer.

Example

```
> sys pollbuf on
% Buffer polling is on!

> sys pollbuf off
% Buffer polling is off!
```

Telnet Command: sys britask

This command can improve triple play quality.

Syntax

sys britask *<on/off>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
on	It means to turn on the bridge task for improving the triple play quality.
off	It means to turn off the bridge task.

Example

```
> sys britask on
% bridge task is ON, now
```

Telnet Command: sys tr069

This command can set CPE settings for applying in VigorACS.

Syntax

sys tr069 get *<parm> <option>*
sys tr069 set *<parm> <value>*
sys tr069 getnoti *<parm>*
sys tr069 setnoti *<parm> <value>*
sys tr069 log
sys tr069 debug *<on/off>*
sys tr069 save
sys tr069 inform *<event code>*

sys tr069 port *<port num>*
sys tr069 cert_auth*<on/off>*
sys tr069 only_standard_parm *<on/off>*
sys tr069 notify -S
sys tr069 notify -n *<on/off>*
sys tr069 notify -l *<on/off>*
sys tr069 notify -c *<on/off>*
sys tr069 notify -b *<on/off>*
sys tr069 notify -B *"<WAN number> <Medium thretho ld> <High thretho ld> <TX Speed>Mb <RX Speed>Mb"*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
get <parm> <option>	It means to get parameters for tr-069. option=<nextlevel>: only gets nextlevel for GetParameterNames.
set <parm> <value>	It means to set parameters for tr-069.
getnoti <parm>	It means to get parameter notification value.
setnoti <parm> <value>	It means to set parameter notification value.
log	It means to display the TR-069 log.
debug <on/off>	on: turn on the function of sending debug message to syslog. off: turn off the function of sending debug message to syslog.
save	It means to save the parameters to the flash memory of the router.
Inform <event code>	It means to inform parameters for tr069 with different event codes. [event code] includes: 0-"0 BOOTSTRAP", 1-"1 BOOT", 2-"2 PERIODIC", 3-"3 SCHEDULED", 4-"4 VALUE CHANGE", 5-"5 KICKED", 6-"6 CONNECTION REQUEST", 7-"7 TRANSFER COMPLETE", 8-"8 DIAGNOSTICS COMPLETE", 9-"M Reboot"
port <port num>	It means to change tr069 listen port number.
cert_auth <on/off>	on: turn on certificate-based authentication. off: turn off certificate-based authentication.
only_standard_parm <on/off>	It means to turn on or off to exclude all the Vendor-Specific ("X_") parameters, and only send out standard parameters.
notify -n <on/off>	It means to set CPE notification settings. It means to / not to record the CPE notify log on the Syslog. on: Record on the Syslog. off: Not record on the Syslog.
notify -l <on/off>	It means to / not to record the web login log on the Syslog. on: Record on the Syslog. off: Not record on the Syslog.
notify -c <on/off>	It means to / not to record the web changed log on the Syslog. on: Record on the Syslog.

	off: Not record on the Syslog.
notify -h <on/off>	It means to / not to record the high availability log on the Syslog. on: Record on the Syslog. off: Not record on the Syslog.
notify -b [on/off]	It means to / not to record the bandwidth utilization log on the Syslog. on: Record on the Syslog. off: Not record on the Syslog.
notify -B "<WAN number> <Medium threthold> <High threthold> <TX Speed>Mb <RX Speed>Mb"	It means to set bandwidth utilization setting. <WAN number>: Enter the index number of WAN interface(s). <Medium threthold>: Enter a value. <High threthold>: Enter a value. <TX Speed>Mb: Enter a value. <RX Speed>Mb: Enter a value.
-S	Show the CPE notification settings.

Example

```
> sys tr069 get Int. nextlevel
Total number of parameter is 24
Total content length of parameter is 915
InternetGatewayDevice.LANDeviceNumberOfEntries
InternetGatewayDevice.WANDeviceNumberOfEntries
InternetGatewayDevice.DeviceInfo.
InternetGatewayDevice.ManagementServer.
InternetGatewayDevice.Time.
InternetGatewayDevice.Layer3Forwarding.
InternetGatewayDevice.LANDevice.
InternetGatewayDevice.WANDevice.
InternetGatewayDevice.Services.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_InternetAcc.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_LAN.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_NAT.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_Firewall.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_Bandwidth.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_Applications.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_VPN.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_VoIP.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_WirelessLAN.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_System.
InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_Status.

InternetGatewayDevice.X_00507F_Diagnostics.
--- MORE ---   ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page] ---
..
> sys tr069 notify -B "1 30 60 100 100"
Please enable the bandwidth utilization notify log.
> sys tr069 notify -n on
> sys tr069 notify -b on
Set OK
> sys tr069 notify -B "1 30 60 100 100"
> sys tr069 notify -S
CPE Notify Settings:
 CPE Notify           Enable
```

```
 -Web Login            Disable
 -Web Changed               Disable
 -High Availability         Disable
 -Bandwidth Utilization     Enable

      Threshold(%)     Speed(Mb)
  WAN1 Med: 0 High:  60 TX:    0 RX:    0
  WAN2 Med:  0 High:  0 TX:    0 RX:    0
  WAN3 Med:  0 High:  0 TX:    0 RX:    0
  WAN4 Med:  0 High:  0 TX:    0 RX:    0
  WAN5 Med:  0 High:  0 TX:    0 RX:    0
  WAN6 Med:  0 High:  0 TX:    0 RX:    0
```

Telnet Command: sys alg

This command can enable or disable ALG (Application Layer Gateway) master switch.

Syntax

sys alg *<1/ 0>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
1	It means to enable ALG master switch.
0	It means to disable ALG master switch.

Example

```
> sys alg -e 1
 Enable ALG

> sys alg
Usage: sys alg <command> <parameter>
 -e: enable ALG (0:disable, 1:enable)

Current ALG status
 -ALG Master Switch: Enabled
```

Telnet Command: sys sip_alg

This command can turn on/off SIP ALG (Application Layer Gateway) for traversal.

Syntax

sys sip_alg *<command> <parameter>| ...*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
[<command> <parameter>| ..]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. *[..]* means that you can type in several commands in one line.
-e <0/ 1>	0: Disable the function of SIP ALG. 1: Enable the function of SIP ALG.
-p <parameter>	It means to set the listening port for SIP ALG. <parameter> : Ranges from 1 to 65535.
-u	It means to enable or disable the listen along UDP path setting.

	0: Disable 1: Enable
-t	It means to enable or disable the listen along TCP path setting. 0: Disable 1: Enable

Example

```
> sys sip_alg -e 1
 Enable SIP ALG
> sys sip_alg -p 65535
 Current listening port: 65535
> sys sip_alg ?
Usage: sys sip_alg <command> <parameter>
 -e: enable SIP ALG (0:disable, 1:enable)
 -p: set your listening port for SIP ALG
 -u: enable listen along UDP path (0:disable, 1:enable)
 -t: enable listen along TCP path (0:disable, 1:enable)

Current SIP ALG status
 -ALG Master Switch: Enabled
 -SIP ALG: Enabled
 -Listen along UDP path: Yes
 -Listen along TCP path: Yes
 -Listening Port: 65535
 -Max sipalg session num: 512
 -Remain sipalg session num: 512
```

Telnet Command: sys rtsp_alg

This command can turn on/off RTSP ALG (Application Layer Gateway) for traversal.

Syntax

sys rtsp_alg *[<command> <parameter>| ..]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
[<command> <parameter>| ..]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. *[..]* means that you can type in several commands in one line.
-e <0/ 1>	0: Disable the function of RTSP ALG. 1: Enable the function of RTSP ALG.
-p <parameter>	It means to set the listening port for RTSP ALG. <parameter> : Ranges from 1 to 65535.
-u	It means to enable or disable the listen along UDP path setting. 0: Disable 1: Enable
-t	It means to enable or disable the listen along TCP path setting. 0: Disable 1: Enable
-v	It displays RTP and RTCP portmap information of RTSP ALG.

Example

```
> sys rtsp_alg -e 1
 Enable RTSP ALG

> sys rtsp_alg -p 60000
 Current listening RTSP Port: 60000

> sys rtsp_alg -v
 Current Open PortMap Number of RTSP ALG: 0

> sys rtsp_alg ?
Usage: sys rtsp_alg <command> <parameter>
 -e: enable RTSP ALG (0:disable, 1:enable)
 -p: set your listening port for RTSP ALG
 -u: enable listen along UDP path (0:disable, 1:enable)
 -t: enable listen along TCP path (0:disable, 1:enable)
 -v: show rtp and rtcp portmap information of RTSP ALG

Current RTSP ALG status
 -ALG Master Switch: Enabled
 -RTSP ALG: Enabled
 -Listen along UDP path: Yes
 -Listen along TCP path: Yes
 -Listening Port: 60000
 -Max RTSP session num: 256
 -Remain RTSP session num: 256
```

Telnet Command: sys license

This command can process the system license.

Syntax

sys license *reset_regser*
sys license *licera*
sys license *licifno <AUTO/ WAN#>*
sys license *licalias <index>*
sys license *lic_trigger*
sys license *licelog*
lic_https *set <0/ 1>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
reset_regser	It means the license register server setting or register service in portal.
licera	It means to erase license setting.
licifno <AUTO/ WAN#>	It means license and signature download interface setting.
licalias <index>	It means to specify an IP alias by entering the index number of the IP alias profile.
lic_trigger	It means to trigger the license.
licelog	It means to show the authentication log.
lic_https set <0/ 1>	0 - Set the lic connect type to HTTP. 1 - Set the lic connect type to HTTPs.

Example

```
> sys license licifno wan3
Download interface is set as "WAN3" now.
>
```

Telnet Command: sys diag_log

This command is used for RD debug.

Syntax

sys diag_log *<status| enable| disable| flush| lineno <w> | level <x> | feature <on|off><y>| voip_feature <on|off> <vf_name>| log>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
status	It means to show the status of diagnostic log.
enable	It means to enable the function of diag_log.
disable	It means to disenable the function of diag_log.
flush	It means the flush log buffer.
lineno <w>	It means the total lines for displaying message. w - Available value ranges from 100 to 50000.
level<x>	It determines the level of data displayed. x – Available value ranges from 0 to 12. The larger the number is, the detailed the data is displayed.
feature <on/off> <y>	It is used to specify the function of the log. Supported features include SYS, VoIP and EthOAM.
voip_feature <on/off> <vf_name>	It means VoIP feature. Type on to enable the feature or type off to disable the feature. vf_name: available settings include DRVTAPI, DRVVMMC, DRVMPS, DRVFXO, DRVHAL, PSMPHONE, PSMSUPP, PSM, FXO, PSMISDN, DTMFPSER, CALLERID (Case-Insensitive).
log	It means the dump log buffer.

Example

```
> sys diag_log status
 Status:
 diag_log is Disabled.
 lineno : 10000.
 level : 3.
 Enabled feature: SYS
>
```

Telnet Command: sys arp_AutoReq

This command is used to enable / disable the function that Vigor router sends ARP request to the connected device(s) periodically.

Syntax

sys arp_AutoReq -d *<value>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-d [value]	Disable the function of ARP auto request. 0 – Enable 1 – Disable

Example

```
> sys arp_AutoReq -d 1
  Arp auto-request disable.
>
```

Telnet Command: sys daylightsave

This command is used to conifgure day light saving.

Syntax

sys daylightsave *[-<command> <parameter> | ...]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
[<command><parameter>| ...]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. *[..]* means that you can type in several commands in one line.
-v	Display the daylight saving settings.
-r	Set to factory default setting.
-e <1/0>	Enable (1) / disable (0) daylight saving.
-t <0/1/2>	Specify the saving type for daylight setting. 0 – Default 1 – Time range 2 - Yearly
-s <year> <month> <day> <hour>	Set the detailed settings of the starting day for time range type. year – must be the year after 2013. month - 1 ~ 12 day – 1 ~ 31 hour – 0 ~ 23 e.g., sys daylightsave -s 2014 3 10 12
-d <year> <month> <day> <hour>	Set the detailed settings of the ending day for time range type. year – After 2013. month - 1 ~ 12 day – 1 ~ 31 hour – 0 ~ 23 e.g., sys daylightsave -d 2014 9 10 12
-y <month> <th weekday> <day in week> <hour>	Set the detailed settings of the starting day for yearly type. month - 1 ~ 12 th weekday – 1 ~ 5, 9: last week day in week - 0:Sun, 1:Mon, 2:Tue, 3:Wed, 4:Thu, 5: Fri, 6:Sat hour – 0 ~ 23 e.g, sys daylightsave -y 9 1 0 14
-z <month> <th weekday> <day in week> <hour>	Set the detailed settings of the ending day for yearly type. month - 1 ~ 12 th weekday – 1 ~ 5, 9: last week

	day in week - 0:Sun, 1:Mon, 2:Tue, 3:Wed, 4:Thu, 5: Fri, 6:Sat hour – 0 ~ 23 e.g, sys daylightsave -z 3 1 6 14

Example

```
> sys daylightsave –y 9 1 0 14
% Start: Yearly on Sep 1th Sun 14:00
```

Telnet Command: sys dnsCacheTbl

This command is used to configure TTL settings which will be displayed in DNS Cache table.

Syntax

sys dnsCacheTbl *[<command><parameter>| ..]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
[<command> <parameter>| ..]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. *[..]* means that you can type in several commands in one line.
-l	It means to show DNS IPv4 entry in DNS cache table.
-s	It means to show DNS IPv6 entry in DNS cache table.
-v	It means to show TTL limit value in DNS cache table.
-t <ttl>	It means to set TTL limit value. <ttl>: 0(no limit) or an number greater than 5.
-c	It means to clear the DNS cache table.

Example

```
> sys dnsCacheTbl –t 50
> % Set TTL limit: 50 seconds.
% When TTL larger than 50s , delete the DNS entry in the router's DNS cache
tabl
e.
> sys dnsCacheTbl –v
% TTL limit: 50 seconds
% When TTL larger than 50s , delete the DNS entry in the router's DNS cache
tabl
```

Telnet Command: sys syslog

This command is used to conifgure day light saving.

Syntax

sys syslog *-a <enable> [-<command> <parameter> | ...]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
[<command><parameter>| ...]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. *[..]* means that you can type in several commands in one line.
-a <1/0>	Enable (1) or disable (0) Syslog Access Setup.

-s <1/0>	Enable (1) or disable (0) Syslog Save to Syslog Server.
-i <IP address>	Define the IP address of the Syslog server.
-d <port number>	Define the port number (1 ~ 65535) as the destination port.
-u <1/0>	Enable (1) or disable (0) Syslog Save to USB Disk.
-m <1/0>	Enable (1) or disable (0) Mail Syslog.
-f <1/0>	Enable (1) or disable (0) Filewall Log.
-v <1/0>	Enable (1) or disable (0) VPN Log.
-e <1/0>	Enable (1) or disable (0) User Access Log.
-c <1/0>	Enable (1) or disable (0) Call Log.
-w <1/0>	Enable (1) or disable (0) WAN Log.
-l <1/0>	Enable (1) or disable (0) WLAN Log.
-r <1/0>	Enable (1) or disable (0) Router/DSL Information.
-p	Update the server IP address.
-W <1/0>	Set the mode for writing Syslog. 0: overwrite oldest logs; 1: stop logging.
-U <1/0>	Set the unit for the Syslog saved to a USB disk. 0:GB; 1:MB
-S <capacity>	Set the folder capacity for the syslog saved in the USB disk. 1 ~16(GB); 1 ~1024(MB)

Example

```
> sys syslog -a 1 -s 1 -i 192.168.1.25 -d 514
>
```

Telnet Command: sys mailalert

This command is used to configure settings for syslog mail alert.

Syntax

sys mailalert *[-<command> <parameter>]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
[<command><parameter>]	The available commands with parameters are listed below.
-e <0/1>	Enable/disable Mail Alert. 0 – Disable. 1 – Enable.
-w <0/1/2/...>	Set Interface (Physical) Any/WAN1/WAN2/WAN... and etc.
-x <WAN IP Alias index>	Set WAN IP Alias. Index 1 is reserved and must set an interface first.
-i <SMTP Server IP>	Set IP Address for SMTP server.
-o <SMTP Server Port>	Set port number for SMTP server..
-a <Mail Address>	Set E-maiil address for alert mail reciver.
-r <Mail Address>	Set E-mail Address for mail return.
-s <0/1/2/3>	Set Connection Security 0 - Plaintext 1 - SSL 2 - StartTLS

	3 - Force StartTLS
-h <0/1>	Enable/disable SMTP Authentication. 0 - Disable. 1 - Enable.
-u <Username>	Set username for SMTP Authentication.
-p <Password>	Set password for SMTP Authentication.
-l <type><0/1>	Enable / disable mail alert for different types. Number 0 ~ 6 represent different types. "0 <0/1>" : Enable/Disable Mail Alert of the DoS Attack. "1 <0/1>" : Enable/Disable Mail Alert of the APPE. "2 <0/1>" : nable/Disable Mail Alert of the VPN Log. "3 <0/1>" : Enable/Disable Mail Alert of the APPE Signature. "6 <0/1>" : Enable/Disable Mail Alert of the Reboot Debug Log. In which, 0 - Disable. 1 - Enable.
-f	Reset Mail Alert setting to factory default.
-v	Show current Mail Alert setting.
-R <0/1>	Set Mail Alert Reboot debug log mode. 0: Limited Mode 1: Unlimited Mode.

Example

```
> sys mailalert -e 1
Set Enable Mail Alert.
> sys mailalert -v
------ Current setting for Mail Alert ------
Mail Alert: Enable
SMTP Server IP Address: 0.0.0.0
SMTP Server Port: 25
Alert Mail Reciver E-maiil Address:
Mail Return E-mail Address:
Use SSL: Disable
SMTP Authentication: Disable
Username for SMTP Authentication:
Password for SMTP Authentication:
Mail Alert for DoS Attack: Enable.
Mail Alert for APPE: Enable.
Mail Alert for VPN Log: Enable.
Mail Alert for APPE Signature: Disable.
Mail Alert for Reboot Debug Log: Disable, Mode: Limited.
-----------------------------------------
```

Telnet Command: sys time

This command is used to configure system time and date.

Syntax

sys time server *<domain>*

sys time inquire

sys time show

sys time wan *<option>*

sys time zone *<index>*

sys time pseudo

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
server <domain>	Enter the domain name of the time server. <domain> - The maximum length is 39 characters.
inquire	Get the time based on the timer server settting.
show	Displays current server setting.
wan <option>	Set the WAN interface. 0 - Auto 1 - WAN1 2 - WAN2 3 - WAN3 4 - WAN4 5 - WAN5 6 - WAN6
zone <index>	Different number means different time zone. 1 - GMT-12:00 Eniwetok, Kwajalein 2 - GMT-11:00 Midway Island, Samoa 3 - GMT-10:00 Hawaii 4 - GMT-09:00 Alaska 5 - GMT-08:00 Pacific Time (US & Canada) 6 - GMT-08:00 Tijuana 7 - GMT-07:00 Mountain Time (US & Canada) 8 - GMT-07:00 Arizona 9 - GMT-06:00 Central Time (US & Canada) 10 - GMT-06:00 Saskatchewan 11 - GMT-06:00 Mexico City, Tegucigalpa 12 - GMT-05:00 Eastern Time (US & Canada) 13 - GMT-05:00 Indiana (East) 14 - GMT-05:00 Bogota, Lima, Quito 15 - GMT-04:00 Atlantic Time (Canada) 16 - GMT-04:00 Caracas, La Paz 17 - GMT-04:00 Santiago 18 - GMT-03:30 Newfoundland 19 - GMT-03:00 Brasilia 20 - GMT-03:00 Buenos Aires, Georgetown 21 - GMT-02:00 Mid-Atlantic 22 - GMT-01:00 Azores, Cape Verde Is. 23 - GMT Greenwich Mean Time : Dublin 24 - GMT Edinburgh, Lisbon, London 25 - GMT Casablanca, Monrovia 26 - GMT+01:00 Belgrade, Bratislava 27 - GMT+01:00 Budapest, Ljubljana, Prague 28 - GMT+01:00 Sarajevo, Skopje, Sofija 29 - GMT+01:00 Warsaw, Zagreb 30 - GMT+01:00 Brussels, Copenhagen 31 - GMT+01:00 Madrid, Paris, Vilnius 32 - GMT+01:00 Amsterdam, Berlin, Bern 33 - GMT+01:00 Rome, Stockholm, Vienna 34 - GMT+02:00 Bucharest 35 - GMT+02:00 Cairo 36 - GMT+02:00 Helsinki, Riga, Tallinn 37 - GMT+02:00 Athens, Istanbul, Minsk 38 - GMT+02:00 Jerusalem 39 - GMT+02:00 Harare, Pretoria 40 - GMT+03:00 Volgograd 41 - GMT+03:00 Baghdad, Kuwait, Riyadh

	42 - GMT+03:00 Nairobi 43 - GMT+03:00 Moscow, St. Petersburg 44 - GMT+03:30 Tehran 45 - GMT+04:00 Abu Dhabi, Muscat 46 - GMT+04:00 Baku, Tbilisi 47 - GMT+04:30 Kabul 48 - GMT+05:00 Ekaterinburg 49 - GMT+05:00 Islamabad, Karachi, Tashkent 50 - GMT+05:30 Bombay, Calcutta 51 - GMT+05:30 Madras, New Delhi 52 - GMT+06:00 Astana, Almaty, Dhaka 53 - GMT+06:00 Colombo 54 - GMT+07:00 Bangkok, Hanoi, Jakarta 55 - GMT+08:00 Beijing, Chongqing 56 - GMT+08:00 Hong Kong, Urumqi 57 - GMT+08:00 Singapore 58 - GMT+08:00 Taipei 59 - GMT+08:00 Perth 60 - GMT+09:00 Seoul 61 - GMT+09:00 Osaka, Sapporo, Tokyo 62 - GMT+09:00 Yakutsk 63 - GMT+09:30 Darwin 64 - GMT+09:30 Adelaide 65 - GMT+10:00 Canberra, Melbourne, Sydney 66 - GMT+10:00 Brisbane 67 - GMT+10:00 Hobart 68 - GMT+10:00 Vladivostok 69 - GMT+10:00 Guam, Port Moresby 70 - GMT+11:00 Magadan, Solomon Is. 71 - GMT+11:00 New Caledonia 72 - GMT+12:00 Fiji, Kamchatka, Marshall Is. 73 - GMT+12:00 Auckland, Wellington
pseudo -E <1/0>	Enable (1) or disable (0) the pseudo system time.
pseudo -T <year> <month> <day> <hour> <minute>	Set the pseudo time value. <year> - Enter four digits. <month> - Enter 1 t0 12. <day> - Enter the day in a month. <hour> - Enter the number of the hour (1 to 23). <minute> - Enter the number of the minute (1 to 59).
pseudo -S	Displays pseudo system time.

Example

```
> sys time pseudo –E 1
> sys time zone 8
  Set Time Zone OK

> sys time show
  *************** System Time ***************
  Current System Time: [2000 Jan 01 Sat 02:40:41]
  Time Server: [pool.ntp.org]
  Time Zone Index: [8]. GMT-07:00
  Send NTP Request Through: Auto
  ******************************************
>
```

Telnet Command: sys eap_tls

This command is used to disable or enable EAP-TLS.

You might have to enable EAP-TLS compatibility to avoid compatibility issues with some operating systems. But, please note that enabling EAP-TLS compatibility will lower down the connection security level.

Syntax

sys eap_tls set <*0/ 1*>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
0	Disable EAP-TLS compatibility!
1	Enable EAP-TLS compatibility!

Example

```
> sys eap_tls set 1
Enable EAP_TLS compatibility!
```

Telnet Command: sys dashboard

This command is used to display / hide items (such as System Information, Interface…) on dashboard.

Syntax

sys dashboard *[-<command> <value> | ...]*

sys dashboard show

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
[<command> <value>| ..]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. *[..]* means that you can type in several parameters in one line. <command> “0 ~ 9” and “a” represent different sections to be displayed on the dashboard. 0 : Front Panel 1 : System Information 2 : IPv4 LAN Information 3 : IPv4 Internet Access 4 : IPv6 Internet Access 5 : Interface 6 : Security 7 : System Resource 8 : LTE Status 9 : Quick Access a : VoIP <value> 1 : Enable 0 : Disable
show	Display current status (enabled /disabled) for each item.

Example

```
> sys dashboard -0 1
```

```
  Front Panel enabled
> sys dashboard show
  Front Panel enabled
  System Information enabled
  IPv4 LAN Information enabled
  IPv4 Internet Access enabled
  IPv6 Internet Access enabled
  Interface enabled
  Security enabled
  System Resource enabled
  LTE Status enabled
  Quick Access enabled
  VoIP enabled
```

Telnet Command: sys app_statistic

This command is used to enable/disable the statistics for APP services. To check the traffic for each APP service, access to the VigorACS server for detailed information.

Syntax

sys app_statistic *-v*

sys app_statistic *-e <0/1>*

sys app_statistic *-l*

sys app_statistic *-p <app idx>*

sys app_statistic *-q <app idx>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-v	Display current status of the function of APP service statistic.
-e <0/1>	Enable or disable the function of APP service statistic.
-l	Display all the applications arranged with index numbers.
-p <app idx>	Enable the statistic function for the specified APP. <app idx> : The applications supported by this CPE might increase in the future. At present, the available range is 0 to 156.
-q <app idx>	Disable the statistic function for the specified APP. <app idx> : The applications supported by this CPE might increase in the future. At present, the available range is 0 to 156.

Example

```
> sys app_statistic -e 1
 App service statistic mechanism : enable
```

Telnet Command: sys webhook

This command is used to send a report (webhook message) including WAN up, down, CPU usage, memory usage and etc. to a monitoring server periodically.

Syntax

sys webhook *send*

sys webhook *status*

sys webhook *enable <0/1>*

sys webhook *url <server_url>*

sys webhook *period <value>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
send	Trigger the webhook report immediately.
status	Display the webhook current setting.
enable <0/1>	Enable (1) or disable (1) the webhook function.
url <server_url>	Specify the webhook server URL. <server_url> - Enter the URL.
period <value>	Set the webhook report period. <value> - Range from 1 to 1440 (minutes).

Example

```
> sys webhook enable 1
Set webhook ok
> sys webhook period 100
Set webhook ok

> sys webhook status
webhook is on
Monitoring Server URL:
Report Period: 100
```

Telnet Command: testmail

This command is used to display current settings for sending test mail.

Example

```
> testmail
Send out test mail
 Mail Alert:[Enable]
 Interface :Any
 WAN_Alias index:[0]
 SMTP_Server:[255.255.255.255]
 SMTP_Port:[25]
 Mail to:[]
 Return-Path:[]
 Connection Security:[Plaintext]
```

Telnet Command: upnp off

This command can close UPnP function.

Example

```
>upnp off
UPNP say bye-bye
```

Telnet Command: upnp on

This command can enable UPnP function.

Example

```
>upnp on
UPNP start.
```

Telnet Command: upnp nat

This command can display IGD NAT status.

Example

```
> upnp nat ?
******************  IGD NAT Status  ****************

((0))
InternalClient >>192.168.1.10<<, RemoteHost >>0.0.0.0<<
InternalPort >>21<<, ExternalPort >>21<<
PortMapProtocol >>TCP<<
The tmpvirtual server index >>0<<
PortMapLeaseDuration >>0<<, PortMapEnabled >>0<<
Ftp Example [MICROSOFT]
((1))
InternalClient >>0.0.0.0<<, RemoteHost >>0.0.0.0<<
InternalPort >>0<<, ExternalPort >>0<<
PortMapProtocol >><NULL><<
The tmpvirtual server index >>0<<
PortMapLeaseDuration >>0<<, PortMapEnabled >>0<<
PortMapProtocol >><NULL><<
The tmpvirtual server index >>0<<
PortMapLeaseDuration >>0<<, PortMapEnabled >>0<<
0<<

--- MORE ---   ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page] ---
```

Telnet Command: upnp service

This command can display the information of the UPnP service. UPnP service must be enabled first.

Example

```
> upnp on
UPNP start.

> upnp service
>>>>> SERVICE TABLE1 <<<<<
  serviceType urn:schemas-microsoft-com:service:OSInfo:1
  serviceId   urn:microsoft-com:serviceId:OSInfo1
  SCPDURL     /upnp/OSInfo.xml
  controlURL  /OSInfo1
  eventURL    /OSInfoEvent1
  UDN        uuid:774e9bbe-7386-4128-b627-001daa843464

>>>>> SERVICE TABLE2 <<<<<
  serviceType urn:schemas-upnp-org:service:WANCommonInterfaceConfig:1
  serviceId   urn:upnp-org:serviceId:WANCommonIFC1
  SCPDURL     /upnp/WComIFCX.xml
```

```
  controlURL  /upnp?control=WANCommonIFC1
  eventURL    /upnp?event=WANCommonIFC1
  UDN        uuid:2608d902-03e2-46a5-9968-4a54ca499148
.
.
.
```

Telnet Command: upnp subscribe

This command can show all UPnP services subscribed.

Example

```
> upnp on
UPNP start.
> upnp subscribe
> upnp subscribe
>>>> (1) serviceType urn:schemas-microsoft-com:service:OSInfo:1

  ----- Subscribtion1 -------

    sid = 7a2bbdd0-0047-4fc8-b870-4597b34da7fb

    eventKey =1, ToSendEventKey = 1

    expireTime =6926

    active =1

    DeliveryURLs
=<http://192.168.1.113:2869/upnp/eventing/twtnpnsiun>

>>>> (2) serviceType
urn:schemas-upnp-org:service:WANCommonInterfaceConfig:1

  ----- Subscribtion1 -------

    sid = d9cd47a5-d9c9-4d3d-8043-d03a82f27983

    eventKey =1, ToSendEventKey = 1
.
.
.
```

Telnet Command: upnp tmpvs

This command can display current status of temp Virtual Server of your router.

Example

```
> upnp tmpvs
******************  Temp virtual server status  ****************

((0))
real_addr  >>192.168.1.10<<, pseudo_addr >>172.16.3.229<<
```

```
real_port >>0<<, pseudo_port >>0<<
hit_portmap_index >>0<<
The protocol >>TCP<<
time >>0<<

((1))
real_addr  >>0.0.0.0<<, pseudo_addr >>0.0.0.0<<
real_port >>0<<, pseudo_port >>0<<
hit_portmap_index >>0<<
The protocol >>0<<
time >>0<<
--- MORE ---   ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page] ---
```

Telnet Command: upnp wan

This command is used to specify WAN interface to apply UPnP.

Syntax

upnp wan *<n>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
n	It means to specify WAN interface (0 to 6) to apply UPnP. n=0, it means to auto-select WAN interface. n=1, WAN1 n=2, WAN2. .. n=6, WAN6

Example

```
> upnp wan 1
use wan1 now.
```

Telnet Command: usb list

This command is use to display the information about the brand name and model name of the USB modems which are supported by Vigor router.

Example

```
> usb list ?
Brand      Module                  Standard
-------------------------          --------
4G system   XSPlug P3              3.5G                  Y
Aiko       Aiko 76E                3.5G                  Y
Alcatel     Alcatel X500           3.5G                  Y
Alfa       ALFA Flyppp             3.5G                  Y
Amoi       Amoi H01                3.5G                  Y
BandRich    Bandluxe C321          3.5G                  Y
BandRich    Bandluxe C330          3.5G                  Y
BandRich    Bandluxe C331          3.5G                  Y
BandRich    Bandluxe C502          3.5G                  Y
```

```
BigPond     BigPond Next G Wir      3.5G                    Y
BigPond     Broadband USB Mobi      3.5G                    Y
Huawei      Huawei E150             3.5G                    Y
Huawei      Huawei E153             3.5G                    Y
Huawei      Huawei E172             3.5G                    Y
Huawei      Huawei E176c            3.5G                    M
Huawei      Huawei E270             3.5G                    Y
Huawei      Huawei E3131            3.5G                    Y
Huawei      Huawei E3272            3.5G                    Y
Huawei      Huawei E3276s           LTE                     Y
Huawei      Huawei E367             3.5G                    Y
Huawei      Huawei E398             LTE                     Y

Huawei      Huawei EC228            3.5G                    Y
--- MORE ---   ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page] ---
```

Telnet Command: usb user

This command is used to set profiles for FTP/SMB users.

Syntax Description

usb user add *<Index> <Username> <Password> <Permission> <Home path>*
usb user rm *<Index>*
usb user enable *<Index>*
usb user disable *<Index>*
usb user list

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
add <Index> <Username> <Password> <Permission> <Home path>	Add a new user profile. <Index>: It means the index number of the user profile. There are 16 profiles allowed to be configured. So the range of such option is 1 ~ 16. <Username>: Enter a text (maximum 131 characters) as the username for the user profile. <Password>: Enter a text (maximum 131 characters) as the password for the user profile. <Permission>: Specify the action (RWDLCR) permitted. If one of the actions is not allowed, simple type "-" instead. R - Read File. W - Write File. D - Delete File. L - List directory. C - Create directory. R - Remove selected directory. <Home path>: Set the path (maximum 159 characters) for the USB user profile.
rm <Index>	Delete an existed user profile. <Index>: It means the index number of the user profile.
enable <Index>	Enable a user profile. <Index>: It means the index number of the user profile.
disable <Index>	Disable a user profile. <Index>: It means the index number of the user profile.
list	Display all of the user profile.

Example

```
> usb user add 1 root 1234 R-DLCR /usr
> No usb storage is available!!
```

Telnet Command: usb temp

This command is to configure USB temperature.

Syntax Description

usb temp set *<-c| -f| -a| -b| -m| -u| -l| -r>*

usb temp show

usb temp all_data

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
set -c	Set the temperature unit (Celsius).
set -f	Set the temperature unit (Fahrenheit).
set -a	Set the temperature sensor by using a probe or the built-in sensor automatically. The probe will be detected and used first, and fall back to the built-in sensor if the probe is not detected.
set -b	Set to use the built-in sensor.
set -m	Enable or disable the Alarm Setting. 1: Enable 0: Disable
set -u <value>	Set the upper temperature limit. <value>: Enter a value, e.g., 30.35.
set -l <value>	Set the lower temperature limit. <value>: Enter a value, e.g., 10.35.
set -r	Shows the setting of temperature unit and sensor type.
show	Displays current temperature.
all_data	Displays all temperature data.

Example

```
> usb temp set -r
Show setting:temp set -r

Alarm Settings: 1 (0:Disable, 1: Enable.)
upper temperature limit: 30.0 C
lower temperature limit: 18.0 C
unit: 0 (0:Celsius, 1: Fahrenheit.)
sensor: 1 (0:Auto select, 1: built-in.)
> usb temp set -c
Set Celsius.
```

Telnet Command: usb hum

This command is to configure USB humidity.

Syntax Description

usb hum set *<m| -u| -l| -r>*

usb hum show

usb hum all_data

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
set -m	Enable or disable the Alarm Setting. 1: Enable 0: Disable
set -u <value>	Set the upper humidity limit. <value>: Enter a value, e.g., 80.85.
set -l <value>	Set the lower humidity limit. <value>: Enter a value, e.g., 30.12.
set -r	Shows the setting of the humidity.
show	Displays current humidity.
all_data	Displays all humidity data.

Example

```
> usb hum set –m 1
Enable Alarm Settings.
>
```

Telnet Command: vigbrg set

This command is to configure specified WAN as bridge mode.

Syntax Description

vigbrg set *-v <IP version> -w <WAN_idx> -l <LAN_idx> -e <0/1> -f <0/1>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-v <IP version>	Indicate the IP version for the IP address. 4 – IPv4. 6 – IPv6.
w <WAN_idx>	WAN_idx – Indicate the WAN interface. 1 – WAN1 2 – WAN2 3 – WAN3 4 – WAN4 5 - WAN5
-l <LAN_idx>	LAN_idx – Indicate the LAN interface. 1 – LAN1 2 – LAN2 3 – LAN3 4 – LAN4 5 - LAN5 6 - LAN6 .... 15 - LAN15
-e <0/1>	Enable (1) or disable (0) the Vigor Bridge for WAN or/and LAN.
-f <0/1>	Enable (1) or disable (0) the firewall functions.

Example

```
> vigbrg set -v 4 -w 5 -l 1 -e 1
[WAN5] IPv4 bridge is enable. Set subnet[LAN1]
```

Telnet Command: vigbrg closeall

This command can disable vigor bridge function.

Example

```
> vigbrg closeall
Close all bridge and bridge firewall
```

Telnet Command: vigbrg status

This command can show whether the Vigor Bridge Function is enabled or disabled.

Example

```
> vigbrg status
Show gConfig setting of bridge mode

%Wan1 management is disable!
```

Telnet Command: vigbrg cfgip

This command allows users to transfer a bridge modem into ADSL router by accessing into and adjusting specified IP address. Users can access into Web UI of the router to manage the router through the IP address configured here.

Syntax

vigbrg cfgip *<IP Address>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
IP Address	It means to type an IP address for users to manage the router.

Example

```
> vigbrg cfgip 192.168.1.15
> vigbrg cfgip ?
% Vigor Bridge Config IP,
% Now: 192.168.1.15
```

Telnet Command: vigbrg wanstatus

This command can display the existed WAN connection status for the modem (change from ADSL router into bridge modem), including index number, MAC address, Stamp Time, PVC, VLAN port for Vigor Bridge Function..

Example

```
> vigbrg wanstatus

Vigor Bridge: Running

WAN mac table:

Index  MAC Address             Stamp Time    PVC           VLan     Port
```

Telnet Command: vigbrg wlanstatus

This command can display the existed WLAN connection status for the modem (change from router into bridge modem), including index number, MAC address, Stamp Time, PVC, VLAN port for Vigor Bridge Function.

Example

```
> vigbrg wlanstatus

Vigor Bridge: Running

WAN mac table:

Index  MAC Address             Stamp Time    PVC      VLan     Port
```

Telnet Command: fullbrg

The command is used to enable Full Bridge Mode so that the router will work as a bridge modem which is able to forward incoming packets with VLAN tags.

Syntax

fullbrg status

fullbrg set -i *<WAN index>* **-n** *<Subnet index>* **-b** *<Bridge mode>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-i <WAN index>	WAN index: Ranges from 1 to 16. 1: WAN1, 2: WAN2, ...etc., In which, WAN3 and WAN 4 are USB WAN.
-n <Subnet index>	Subnet index: Ranges from 1 to 8. 1: Subnet 1, 2: Subnet 2, ...etc.
-b <Bridge mode>	It means to enable / disable Bridge mode. 0: OFF 1: ON

Example

```
> fullbrg status ?
Show gConfig setting of full bridge
WAN 1 full bridge to LAN 1, mode=OFF.
WAN 2 full bridge to LAN 1, mode=OFF.
WAN 3 full bridge to LAN 1, mode=OFF.
WAN 4 full bridge to LAN 1, mode=OFF.
```

```
WAN 7 full bridge to LAN 1, mode=OFF.
WAN 8 full bridge to LAN 1, mode=OFF.
WAN 9 full bridge to LAN 1, mode=OFF.
WAN10 full bridge to LAN 1, mode=OFF.
WAN11 full bridge to LAN 1, mode=OFF.
WAN12 full bridge to LAN 1, mode=OFF.
WAN13 full bridge to LAN 1, mode=OFF.
WAN14 full bridge to LAN 1, mode=OFF.
WAN15 full bridge to LAN 1, mode=OFF.
WAN16 full bridge to LAN 1, mode=OFF.
> fullbrg set -i 2 -n 5 -b 1
Configure OK! Please reboot device to make it effective.
> fullbrg status
Show gConfig setting of full bridge
WAN 1 full bridge to LAN 1, mode=OFF.
WAN 2 full bridge to LAN 5, mode=ON.
WAN 3 full bridge to LAN 1, mode=OFF.
WAN 4 full bridge to LAN 1, mode=OFF.
WAN 7 full bridge to LAN 1, mode=OFF.
WAN 8 full bridge to LAN 1, mode=OFF.
WAN 9 full bridge to LAN 1, mode=OFF.
WAN10 full bridge to LAN 1, mode=OFF.
WAN11 full bridge to LAN 1, mode=OFF.
WAN12 full bridge to LAN 1, mode=OFF.
WAN13 full bridge to LAN 1, mode=OFF.
WAN14 full bridge to LAN 1, mode=OFF.
WAN15 full bridge to LAN 1, mode=OFF.
WAN16 full bridge to LAN 1, mode=OFF.
>
```

Telnet Command: voip debug

This command can display debug message on the screen.

Syntax

voip debug *<flush>*
voip debug *<showmsg>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
flush	It means to clear current log.
showmsg	It means to show current log.

Example

```
> voip debug showmsg
-->Send Message to 192.168.1.2:5060 <02:35:16>
INVITE sip:192.168.1.2 SIP/2.0
Via: SIP/2.0/UDP 192.168.1.1:5060;branch=z9hG4bK-YMa-3630;rport
From:  <sip:change_me@192.168.1.1>;tag=WLJ-11782
To: <sip:192.168.1.2>
Call-ID: PbU-25312@192.168.1.1
CSeq: 1 INVITE
```

```
Contact: <sip:change_me@192.168.1.1>
Max-Forwards: 70
supported: 100rel, replaces
User-Agent: DrayTek UA-1.2.3 DrayTek Vigor2910
Allow: INVITE, ACK, CANCEL, OPTIONS, BYE, INFO, REFER, NOTIFY, PRACK
Content-Type: application/sdp
Content-Length:   264

v=0
o=change_me 5972727 56415 IN IP4 192.168.1.1
```

Telnet Command: voip dialplan

This command allows users to set phone book settings.

Syntax

voip dialplan block *n [-<command><parameter>]*
voip dialplan phonebook *n [-<command><parameter>]*
voip dialplan region *[-<command><parameter>]*
voip dialplan local *<1/0>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
voip dialplan block	
n	It means the index number of the VoIP settings. n=1 ~ 20
-<command><parameter>	The available commands with parameters are listed below.
-m 0/1	It means to enable or disable the block mode. 0 – Disable 1 - Enable
-p <path>	Determines the block path. 1:in_url, 2:in_number 3:out_url, 4:out_number 5:(in & out)_url, 6:(in & out)_number))
-n <number>	Determines the block number (maximum 29 characters).
-d <domain>	Block the specified domain.
-i <inf>	Block the specified interface(s) or All interfaces.
-s <Schedule>	Specify schedule profiles by indicating the index number of the schedule profile. Four schedule profiles can be used at one time.
-w	Delete the selected entry. N=null (clear all)
-v	List current settings.
voip dialplan phonebook	
n	It means the index number of the VoIP settings. n=1 ~ 60
-<command><parameter>	The available commands with parameters are listed below.
-d <number>	Specify the speed dial number.
-c <url>	Contact SIP URL l(max. 59 characters)

-n <name>	Contact name (max. 23 characters)
-a <enable>	Enable/disable the specify entry.
-m <mode>	Specify backup number mode. 0 – none 2 - PSTN
-b <number>	Spedify the backup number.
-o <acc num>	Specify the dial out account. 0 – default 1 - acc1, 2 - acc2... ~ 12:=acc12
-z <enable>	Enable/disable ZRTP/SRTP VoIP security. 1 – enable 0 - disable
-l	Delete the specify entry.
-V	List current VoIP settings.
voip dialplan region	
-e	Dnable or disable the regional function. 1 – enable 0 - disable
-m <number>	Return the last miss call.
-I <number>	Return the last incoming call.
-o <number>	Return the last outgoing call.
-F <number>	Hotkey to enable call forwarding (all) function.
-f <number>	Hotkey to enable call forwarding (busy) function.
-C <number>	Hotkey to enable call forwarding (no answer) function.
-c <number>	Hotkey to disable call forwarding function.
-W <number>	Hotkey to enable call waiting function.
-w <number>	Hotkey to disable call waiting function.
-H <number>	Hotkey to enable hide caller ID function.
-h <number>	Hotkey to disable hide caller ID function.
-D <number>	Hotkey to enable DND function.
-d <number>	Hotkey to disable DND function.
-A <number>	Hotkey to enable block anonymous calls function.
-a <number>	Hotkey to disable block anonymous calls function.
-U <number>	Hotkey to enable block unknow domain calls function.
-u <number>	Hotkey to disable block unknow domain calls function.
-P <number>	Hotkey to disable block IP calls function.
-p <number>	Hotkey to disable block IP calls function.
-I <number>	Hotkey to block last incoming call.
-v	List current status for Regional settings.
voip dialplan local	
enable/ disable	Enable or disable the local calls. 1 – enable 0 - disable

Example

```
> voip dialplan phonebook 1 –d 1125
> voip dialplan region –l 8
```

```
> voip dialplan region -v
 Your Setting for Regional
 Regional Function is: Enable
 Return the Last Miss Call: 20
 Return the Last Incoming Call: *12
 Return the Last Outgoing Call: 1
 Hotkey to enable call forwarding (all) function: 0
 Hotkey to enable call forwarding (busy) function: *90
 Hotkey to enable call forwarding (no answer) function: *92
 Hotkey to disable call forwarding function: 12
 Hotkey to Enable Call Waiting Function: *56
 Hotkey to Disable Call Waiting Function: *57
 Hotkey to Enable Hide Caller ID Function: *67
 Hotkey to Disable Hide Caller ID Function: *68
 Hotkey to Enable DND Function: *78
 Hotkey to Disable DND Function: *79
 Hotkey to Enable Block Anonymous Calls Function: *77
 Hotkey to Disable Block Anonymous Calls Function: *87
 Hotkey to Enable Block Unknow Domain Calls Function: *40
 Hotkey to Disable Block Unknow Domain Calls Function: *04
 Hotkey to Enable Block IP Calls Function: *50
 Hotkey to Disable Block IP Calls Function: *05
 Hotkey to Disable Block The Last Incoming Call Function: 8
```

Telnet Command: voip dsp

Syntax

voip dsp countrytone *[channel] [value]*
voip dsp dialtonepwr *[channel] [AbsoluteValue]*
voip dsp EchoCanceller *[type] [w_size] [nlp]*
voip dsp cidtype *[channel] [value]*
voip dsp micgain *[channel] [value/(1~10)]*
voip dsp spkgain *[channel] [value/(1~10)]*
voip dsp jb *[port] [mode] [value]*
voip dsp timer *[Timer]*
voip dsp dtmfDetset *[nLevel] [nTwist]*
voip dsp dtmftonepwr *[Level]*
voip dsp cwtonepwr *[ch] [value]*
voip dsp pstnringfxs *[1|2] [on|off]*
voip dsp relaydbounce *[on|off]*
voip dsp setRingPat *[ring_pattern_index] [patten_num]*
voip dsp *setFaxECmode*
voip dsp *setDtmfCidlevel -l* *[value]*
voip dsp *setDtmfCidlevel -h* *[value]*
voip dsp *setDtmfCidlevel -r 0*
voip dsp *setfxoCY*
voip dsp *cidplusdigit* *[1/0] [channel] [value]*
voip dsp *setfxoringl*
voip dsp *setfxoCid*
voip dsp *cidplusdigit*
voip dsp *setRingThres*

voip dsp *setCidDetGain*

voip dsp *UnlimitedRing*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
voip dsp countrytone	
[channel] [value]	This command allows users to set the region for the tone settings. Different regions usually need different tone settings. Channel – 1 or 2. Value – displayed as follows: [2] UK, [3] USA, [4] Denmark, [5] Italy, [6] Germany, [7] Netherlands, [8] Portugal, [9] Sweden, [10] Australia, [11] Slovenia, [12] Czech, [13] Slovakia, [14] Hungary, [15] Switzerland , [16] France , [17] Malta
voip dsp dialtonepwr	
channel	This setting is used to adjust the loudness of the dial tone. The smaller the number is, the louder the dial tone is. It is recommended for you to use the default setting. Channel - Available channel number: 1 – 2
AbsoluteValue	AbsoluteValue - In -1 dB increments, with 1 corresponding to 6 dBm. Range - 1 to 30
voip dsp EchoCanceler	
type	This command is used to set the type of echo reduction. 0 - Disable the LEC processing. 1 - Cancel using the fixed window. 2 - Cancel using the fixed and moving window. 3 - Cancel using fixed window + Echo Suppressor.
w_size	The Line Echo Canceller (LEC) window size is 4, 6, 8 or 16 (ms).
nlp	Nlp - Non-linear processing (NLP) for more smooth transitions. 1 - disable 0 - enable
voip dsp cidtype	
channel	Set the caller ID type for FXS 1 (Channel 1) or FXS 2 (Channel 2). 1 – FXS 1 2 – FXS 2
value	Each number (1 to 6) represents different type. 1 – FSK_ETSI 2 - FSK_ETSI(UK) 3 - FSK_BELLCORE(US/AU) 4 - DTMF 5 - DTMF(Dk) 6 - DTMF(SE,NL,FIN) For example : Vigor> voip dsp cidtype 2 6 channel=2, current cidType: 6 That means the caller ID type for FXS2 (Channel2) is DTMF (SE, NL, FIN).
voip dsp micgain	
channel	Adjust the volume of microphone by entering number from 1- 10 for FXS 1 or FXS 2. 1 – FXS 1

	2 – FXS 2
value/ (1~10)	The larger the number is, the louder the volume will be.
voip dsp spkgain	
channel	Adjust the volume of speaker by entering number from 1- 10 for FXS 1 or FXS 2. 1 – FXS 1 2 – FXS 2
value/ (1~10)	The larger the number is, the louder the volume will be.
voip dsp jb	
port	Set the size of jitter buffer. Available settings are 0 (FXS1) and 1 (FXS2).
mode	Available settings are **Fixed** and **Adaptive** (default setting).
value	Available settings are 1 ~ 180 (unit: msec). e.g., Vigor> voip dsp jb 1 FIXED 100
voip dsp timer	
[Timer]	Set the waiting time for dialing out. It means to set the timer settings. The unit is mini-second. The range is from 1 to 255. Value “1” is corresponding to 500ms. That is to say, Value “6” is corresponding 3000ms (i.e., 3 seconds) Timer: 1 ~ 20. Vigor> voip dsp timer 20 Set the timer:20
Voip dsp debugMsg	
?	Avaible settings include: clrev - clear phone hook status. getev - get phone hook status. clrfskcid - clear fsk data for caller-ID from PSTN line. getfskcid - get fsk data for caller-ID from PSTN line. clrdtmfcid - clear dtmf data for caller-ID from PSTN line. getdtmfcid - get dtmf data for caller-ID from PSTN line. voicebuf - get message for available voice buffer pool. clrint - clear status for interrupt. getint - get status for interrupt. Vigor> voip dsp debugMsg getint the interrupt status for ad0 = 21 the interrupt status for ad1 = 0 the interrupt status for vc = 0
voip dsp dtmfDetset	
nLevel	Set minimal signal level in dB, for DTMF detection. Range – (-96 ~ -1)
nTwist	Maximum allowed signal twist in dB, for DTMF detection. Range – (0 ~ 12)
voip dsp dtmftonep	
Level	Set power level for DTMF frequency. Level – 0 ~ 100. Power level for dtmf frequency in 0.3 dB steps. 0 map to 0dB 1 map to -0.3dB .... 100 map to -30dB
voip dsp cwtonepwr	
ch	Set the call waiting tone power level. 1 – FXS 1

	2 – FXS 2.
value	1 ~ 30, in -1 dB increments, with 1 corresponding to 8 dBm.
voip dsp pstnringfxs	
1|2	Enable or disable PSTN ring on FXS 1/FXS 2. 1 meansFXS1; 2 means FXS2.
on|off	On means enable; off means disable.
voip dsp relaydbounce	
on|off	on: Enable relay filter noise. But it maybe ignore the caller-id!!! off: Disable relay filter noise. But the noise will cause the relay to switch to PSTN!!!
voip dsp setRingPat	
ring_pattern_index	This command can change the ring pattern at Index(2)~Index(6). ring_pattern_index – Index (1) was locked for your country.
patten_num	It's the ring pattern number (1~12) for a country. ---------- *patten_num=1 Australia Ring Pattern:* *cadenceOneOn=400, cadenceOneOff=200* *cadenceTwoOn=400, cadenceTwoOff=2000* *patten_num=2 Denmark Ring Pattern:* *cadenceOneOn=1000, cadenceOneOff=4000* .....
voip dsp setFaxECmode -s	
ch	Set the FAX error correction mode. ch : range (0 ~ 1)
mode	mode : EC(error correction) ch(x) mode(0) : REDUNDANCY EC(error correction) ch(x) mode(1) : FEC
voip dsp setDtmfCidlevel –l / ***voip dsp setDtmfCidlevel –h*** *[value]* ***voip dsp setDtmfCidlevel –r 0***	
value	"setDtmfCidLevel" is used to configure the signal strength for transferring to FXS DTMF caller ID. value - 0 ~ 64 voip dsp setDtmfCidLevel -l [value] voip dsp setDtmfCidLevel -h [value] voip dsp setDtmfCidLevel -r 0/1 r - reset low/high DTNF level to default setting. 0 means Disable; 1 means Enable. Note: This function is supported only by special mode.
voip dsp setfxoCY	
value	It is used to apply FXO country settings. 0: "use system country" 1: "Taiwan" 2: "Germany" 3: "Sweden" 4: "France" 5: "Switzerland" 6: "Holland" 7: "Finland" 8: "Denmark" 9: "UK" 10: "Australia" 12: "Italy" 14: "Red_China"

	15: "Singapore" 17: "Spain" 18: "Portugal" 20: "Poland" 21: "Czech" 22: "Hungary" 23: "Slovenia" 25: "Slovakia" 37: "Brasil" 61: "US"
voip dsp setfxoringl	
value	It is used to configure detection ring voltage threshold to apply to FXO. Available setting include: 0 : use driver default value 1 : Minimum voltage threshold: 25V 2 : Minimum voltage threshold: 35V 3 : Minimum voltage threshold: 45V Note: This function is supported only by special mode.
voip dsp setfxoCid	
value	Set FXO detect caller ID type. It is available only for the model with FXO port.
voip dsp cidplusdigit	
[1/0] [channel] [value]	Set the substitution (0~9) for '+' digit in caller ID. 1 – enable the substitution. 0 – disable the substitution. channel – 0 (FXS 1) -1 (FXS 2) value – 0 – 9
voip dsp setRingThres	
port	Set the threshold for ring signal. Port setting is "0" only.
value	Available settings 0-250. Unit is ms. The time is an approximate value.
voip dsp setCidDetGain	
tx| rx gain	Set the gain value of caller ID detected. Tx gain – Available settings -24 ~ 12. Default is 0. Rx gain – Available settings -24 ~ 12. Default is -6.

Example

```
> voip dsp countrytone ?
VoIP has been disable. Please enable VoIP first.
> voip sip misc -D 0
System reboot now!
> voip dsp countrytone ?
> Vigor> voip dsp countrytone?
usage:
 voip dsp countrytone [channel][value]
 [channel]: 1-2
 [value]: ( [2] UK, [3] USA, [4] Denmark, [5] Italy, [6] Germany, [7] Netherland
s, [8] Portugal, [9] Sweden, [10] Australia, [11] Slovenia, [12] Czech, [13]
Slovakia, [14] Hungary, [15] Switzerland , [16] France , [17] Malta)
============  Channel=1  ====================
```

```
 current country tone: user defined

----------- ( Dial tone ) --------------------
 Feq1=425, Feq2=0, OneOn=0, Off=0, TwoOn=0, TwoOff=0
----------- ( Ringing tone ) -----------------
 Feq1=425, Feq2=0, OneOn=1500, OneOff=3000, TwoOn=0, TwoOff=0
----------- ( Busy tone ) --------------------
 Feq1=425, Feq2=0, OneOn=200, OneOff=200, TwoOn=0, TwoOff=0

============  Channel=2  ====================
 current country tone: user defined
> voip dsp dialtonepwr 1 20
Current power level of dialtone:20 (-13 db), channel=1
> voip dsp setCidDetGain tx 1
 Current CID Detect Tx Gain [1], Rx Gain [-6]
> voip dsp setCidDetGain rx 3
 Current CID Detect Tx Gain [1], Rx Gain [3]
```

Telnet Command: voip rtp

Syntax

voip rtp codec *[sip acc index][type| size| vad| one][value]*
voip rtp dtmf *[index] [mode| payloadtype][value]*
voip rtp port *[start| end] [value]*
voip rtp symmetric *[value]*
voip rtp tos ?

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
voip rtp codec	
[sip acc index][type| size| vad| one][value]	Set the voice coding. sip acc index –SIP account index number. Available number, 1 ~ 12. type – Available settings include 0. G.711MU 1. G.711A 2. G.729A/B 3. G.723 4. G.726_32 size - Five options, 0 means 10ms 1 means 20ms 2 means 30ms 3 means 40ms 5 means 60ms Vad - 0 means to Disable the function of Voice Active Detector (vad); 1 means to Enable the function of Voice Active Detector (vad). One – 0 means to Disable the function of single codec; 1 means to Enable the function of single codec.
voip rtp dtmf	
[index] [mode | payloadtype][value]	Set the DTMF mode and Payload type for DTMF. Index – SIP account index number. Available number, 1 ~ 12. Mode – Four options to be selected.

	0. Inband 1. Outband 2. SIP INFO (cisco) 3. SIP INFO (nortel) Payloadtype – Available settings 96~127. Value – Type 0~3 or 96~127 based on the mode specified. For example, > voip rtp dtmf 1 mode 1
voip rtp port	
start|end	Specifies the start/end port for RTP stream.
value	The default value is 10050/15000.
voip rtp symmetric	
value	Make the data transmission going through on both ends of local router and remote router not misleading due to IP lost. 1 – Enable 0 - Disable
voip rtp tos	
value	Set the type of service (TOS) setting for RTP packets. For example, > voip rtp tos 0x899 Set TOS: 0x899

Example

```
> voip rtp codec 1 type 3
> voip rtp dtmf 2 mode 3
> voip rtp port start 10070 end 14400
Set start port: 10070
> voip rtp port end 14400
Set end port: 14400
> voip rtp symmetric 1
Set symmetric rtp to Enable
```

Telnet Command: voip sip

This command allows users to set SIP account.

Syntax

voip sip acc n *[-<command> <parameter> | ...]*
voip sip alias *[-<command> <parameter> | ...]*
voip sip calllog
voip sip ep n *[-<command> <parameter> | ...]*
voip sip misc*[-<command> <parameter> | ...]*
voip sip nat *[-<command> <parameter> | ...]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
voip sip acc - Allows users to set SIP account.	
n	n = 1 to 12 It means the index number of the VoIP settings.
-P[profile]	It means the name of the account profile (maximum 11 characters).

-r [reg mode]	Set registration mode for SIP account. 0 – none 1 – auto 2 - wan1 only 3 - wan2 only 4 - lan/vpn 5 – PVC 6 - wan3 only 7 - wan4 only 8 - wan1 first 9 - wan2 first 10 - wan3 first 11 - wan4 first
-o [port]	Set the port number for sending/receiving SIP message for building a session. The default value is 5060.
-d [domain]	Set the domain name or IP address of the SIP Registrar server. The maximum is 63 characters.
-y [proxy]	Set domain name or IP address of SIP proxy server. The maximum is 63 characters.
-b [enable]	Enable / disable outbound proxy by SIP account. 0 – disable 1 - enable
-s [enable]	Enable / disable to locate SIP server (rfc 3263). 0 – disable 1 - enable
-N [name]	Set SIP account display name. Name - max. 23 characters.
-n [number]	Set SIP account number. Number - max. 63 characters.
-a [id]	Set SIP authentication ID. Id - max. 63 characters.
-A [enable]	Enable /disable to use SIP authentication ID. 0 – disable 1 - enable
-p [passwd]	Set SIP account password (max. 63 characters).
-e [sec]	Set expiry time (default 3600) for SIP account.
-w [enable]	Enable to make phone call without registering.
-m [mode]	Set NAT traversal mode. 0 – disable 1 – stun 2 – manual 3 - nortel
-F [mode]	Set call forwarding mode. 0 – disable 1 – always 2 – busy 3 - no answer 4 - busy or no answer
-u [url]	Set SIP URL for call forwarding (max. 63 characters).
-t [sec]	Set call forwarding timer. For example, voip sip acc 1 –t 30

-g [port]	Set the ring port for incoming call. For example, Port - r1 means FXS1; r2 means FXS2.
-z [pattern]	Set account ring pattern (1 ~ 6).
-i [enable]	Remove all bindings while they are un-registered. 0 means Disable; and 1 means Enable.
-B <enable>	Enable / disable the function of Broadsoft Call Control. 0 – disable 1 - enable
-S[idx]	Enable and use alias IP to register. idx - 1 to 31. If 0 is used, such function will be disabled.
-k [num1 num2...]	Set backup wan list (first wan, second wan...). range: 1 to 4.
-v	View current status for account settings.
voip alias	
n	n = 1 to 30
-e <enable>	Enable or disable this alias profile. 0:Disable. 1:Enable.
-a <username>	Set the alias name (max 23 characters).
-n <number>	Set the alias number (max 63 characters).
-t <account idx>	Set the alias of SIP account. (range: 1~12)
-v <idx>	show alias list information.
Voip sip calllog	Display current status for SIP call log.
voip sip ep	
n	The index number of the VoIP settings. n – 1, 2.
-o [acc]	Available dial out account (1 ~ 12).
-L [url]	Set SIP URL (max. 63 characters) for hot line.
-l [enable]	Enable / disable the function of hot line. 0 – disable 1 - enable
-W [enable]	Enable / disable the function of warm line. 0 – disable 1 - enable
-w [enable]	Enable / disable the function of call waiting enable. 0 – disable 1 - enable
-E [enable]	Enable / disable the function of call waiting enable but only remind one time. 0 – disable 1 - enable
-x <enable>	Enable / disable the function of call transfer. 0 – disable 1 - enable
-d [enable]	Enable / disable the function of DND (Do Not Disturb) 0 – disable 1 - enable
-s [id]	Indicate DND schedule.

	Id - s1, s2, s3, s4 (max. 4 schedule)
-h [enable]	Enable / disable the function of calling line identification restriction (CLIR). 0 – disable 1 - enable
-u [mode]	Set CLIR mode. 0 - means “draft-ietf-sip-privacy” 1 – means “rfc 3323/3325)”
-z [enable]	Enable / disable playing dial tone when registered on sip server. 0 – disable 1 - enable
-n [enable]	Enable / disable session timer. 0 – disable 1 - enable
-m [sec]	Set the value for session timer (unit: sec).
-R [min,max]	Set the flash hook time range 100~2000 (unit: ms).
-8 [enable]	Enable or disable T.38 fax relay feature. 0 – disable 1 - enable
-v	View current settings.
voip sip misc - Allows users to set miscellaneous settings for the device.	
-c [enable]	Enable compact header to shorten the packet (0: disable, 1: enable).
-s [enable]	Change “#” into digit number. 0 - disable 1 - enable
-e [enable]	Enable Europe style flash hook operation mode. 0 - disable 1 - enable
-h [enable]	Enable/disable call hold mode based on protocol RFC2543 (0: disable, 1:enable).
-i [enable]	Enable CODEC change without Re-INVITE. 0 - disable 1 - enable
-p [enable]	Enable PRACK message. 0 – Not support PRACK. 1 – Support PRACK.
-P [enable]	Enable IP Call. 0 – Disable IP call. 1 – Enable IP call.
-H [enable]	SIP INFO packet will be sent out when encounting hook flash event. 0 - disable 1 - enable
-t [val]	Set the mode of User-Agent (e.g., phone, software, and device) for SIP packet. 0 - Hide SIP header "User-Agent". 1 - Show SIP header "User-Agent". 2 - Use default "User-Agent" value. 3 - Use user-defined "User-Agent" value.
-u UAValue	For every SIP user agent identifies itself with a string, this command allows you to set the value (e.g, IP address, phone number, e-mail address) of User-Agent. The length of the string

	must be less than 64 characters.
-D [disable]	Disable VoIP Service. 1 - disable VoIP service. 0 - enable VoIP service. System will automatic reboot to activate voip service
-v	View current status for miscellaneous settings.
voip sip nat - Allows users to set NAT Traversal Setting.	
-s [server]	Set the IP address for STUN server.
-t [sec]	Set ping interval for SIP account. Sec - 6 ~ 600
-i [ip]	Indicate external IP address.
-v	View current settings for SIP NAT.

Example

```
> voip sip misc -t 1
includes User-Agent header

> voip sip misc -u 91704688carrie
user-defined User-Agent:91704688carrie
> voip sip acc 1 -P carrie_1 -r 1 -d 172.16.3.133
> voip sip acc 1 -t 30
> voip sip misc -h 1
> voip sip acc 1 -v
index        :  1
profile      :  carrie_1
reg mode     :  1 | reg. [No]
alias_ip_idx      :  0
backup list       :
domain       :  172.16.3.133
proxy        :   | outbound [No] | DNS-SRV [No]
noreg call   :  No
disp. Name   :
acc number   :  ---
auth. ID     :   | [disable]
expiry       :  3600
NAT mode     :  0
ring ports   :  0
ring pat.    :  1
call fwd mode     :  0
call fwd url      :
call fwd timer    :  30
Broadsoft    :  disable
Italian ITSP modification: disable
```

Telnet Command: voip secure

This command allows users to enable or disable secure phone feature, and SAS voice prompt.

Syntax

voip secure general *[-<command> <parameter> | ...]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-e <0/ 1>	Enable / disable secure phone feature. 0 - disable 1 - enable
-p <0/ 1>	Enable /disable SAS voice prompt. 0 - disable 1 - enable
-v	view only secure phone general settings

Example

```
> voip secure general –v
secure phone feature is disabled
SAS voice prompt is enabled
> voip secure general –p  0
SAS voice prompt is disabled
```

Telnet Command: vlan group

This command allows you to set VLAN group. You can set four VLAN groups. Please run *vlan restart* command after you change any settings.

Syntax

vlan group *id <set/ set_ex> <p1/ p2/ p3/ p4/ p5/ s1/ s2/ s3/ s4/ 5gs1/ 5gs2/ 5gs3/ 5gs4>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
id	It means the group 0 to 7 for VLAN.
set	It indicates each port can join more than one VLAN group.
set_ex	It indicates each port can join one VLAN group at one time.
p1/ p2/ p3/ p4/ p5	It indicates LAN port 1 to LAN port 5. To group LAN1, LAN2, LAN3, LAN4 and/or LAN5 under one VLAN group, please type the port number(s) you want.
s1/ s2/ s3/ s4	It is only available for WALN models.
5gs1/ 5gs2/ 5gs3/ 5gs4	It is only available for WALN n plus models.

Example

```
> vlan group 3 set p1 s3 s4
 VLAN   p1   p2   p3   p4   s1   s2   s3   s4  5gs1  5gs2  5gs3  5gs4
 ------------------------------------------------------------------
   3    V                         V    V
>
```

Telnet Command: vlan off

This command allows you to disable VLAN function.

Syntax

vlan off

Example

```
> vlan off
```

```
 VLAN  is Disable!
  Force subnet LAN2/3/4/5/6/7/8/9/10/11/12/13/14/15/16 to be disabled!!
```

Telnet Command: vlan on

This command allows you to enable VLAN function.

Syntax

vlan on

Example

```
> vlan on
 VLAN is Enable!
```

Telnet Command: vlan pri

This command is used to define the priority for each VLAN profile setting.

Syntax

vlan pri *n pri_no*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
n	It means VLAN ID number. n=VLAN ID number (from 0 to 7).
pri_no	It means the priority of VLAN profile. pri_no=0 ~7 (from none to highest priority).

Example

```
> vlan pri 1 2
 VLAN1: Priority=2
```

Telnet Command: vlan restart

This command can make VLAN settings restarted with newest configuration.

Syntax

vlan restart

Example

```
> vlan restart ?
 VLAN restarts!!!
```

Telnet Command: vlan status

This command display current status for VLAN.

Syntax

vlan status

Example

```
> vlan status
VLAN  is Disable :
```

```
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
VLAN Enable VID  Pri   p1 p2 p3 p4 p5 s1 s2 s3 s4 5gs1 5gs2 5gs3 5gs4  subnet
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
 0     OFF    0   0                                                  2:LAN2
 1     OFF    0   0                                                  1:LAN1
 2     OFF    0   0                                                  1:LAN1
 3     OFF    0   0    V                 V  V                       1:LAN1
 4     OFF    0   0                                                  1:LAN1
 5     OFF    0   0                                                  1:LAN1
 6     OFF    0   0                                                  1:LAN1
 7     OFF    0   0                                                  1:LAN1
 8     OFF    0   0                                                  1:LAN1
 9     OFF    0   0                                                  1:LAN1
10     OFF    0   0                                                  1:LAN1
11     OFF    0   0                                                  1:LAN1
12     OFF    0   0                                                  1:LAN1
13     OFF    0   0                                                  1:LAN1
14     OFF    0   0                                                  1:LAN1
15     OFF    0   0                                                  1:LAN1
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
 Note: they are only untag for s1/s2/s3/s4/5gs1/5gs2/5gs3/5gs4, but they can joi
n tag vlan with lan ports.
 Permit untagged device in P1 to access router: ON....
```

Telnet Command: vlan subnet

This command is used to configure the LAN interface used by the VLAN group.

Syntax

vlan subnet group_id *<1/2/3/4/5/6/7/8>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<1/2/3/4/5/6/7/8>	It means interfaces, LAN1 ~ LAN8.

Example

```
> vlan subnet group_id 2
% Vlan Group-0 using LAN2      !

 This setting will take effect after rebooting.
 Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
```

Telnet Command: vlan submode

This command changes the VLAN encapsulation mechanisms in the LAN driver.

Syntax

vlan submode *<on/off/status>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
on	It means to enable the promiscuous mode.

off	It means to enable the normal mode.
status	It means to display if submode is normal mode or promiscuous mode.

Example

```
> vlan submode status
% vlan subnet mode : normal mode
> vlan submode on
% vlan subnet mode modified to promiscuous mode.
> vlan submode status
% vlan subnet mode : promiscuous mode
```

Telnet Command: vlan tagged

This command is used to enable or disable the incoming of untagged packets.

Syntax

vlan tagged *<n> <on/off>*

vlan tagged *<unlimited> <on/off>*

vlan tagged *<p1_untag> <on/off>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<n>	It means VLAN number. The ranage is from 0 to 15.
<on/off>	It means to enable/disable the tagged VLAN.
<unlimited> <on/off>	unlimited on: It allows the incoming of untagged packets even all VLAN are tagged. unlimited off: It does not allows the incoming of untagged packets.
<p1_untag> <on/off>	P1_untag on: It allows the incoming of untagged packets form LAN port 1. P1_untag off: It does not allow the incoming of untagged packets from LAN port 1.

Example

```
> vlan tagged unlimited on
 Unlimited mode is ON
>
```

Telnet Command: vlan vid

This command is used to configure VID number for each VLAN channel.

Syntax

vlan vid *<n> <vid_no>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<n>	It means VLAN channel. The ranage is from 0 to 7.
<vid_no>	It means the value of VLAN ID. Type the value as the VLAN ID number. The range is form 0 to 4095.

Example

```
> vlan vid 1 4095
 VLAN1, vid=4095
```

Telnet Command: vlan sysvid

This command is used to modify and show the scope (reserved 78) of the VLAN IDs used internally by the system.

Syntax

vlan sysvid <*show / n*>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
show	It means to show the scope of VLAN ID used internally.
n	It means the value to be set as VLAN ID. The range is from 0 to 3980.

Example

```
> vlan sysvid 100
 You have set system VLAN ID to range: 100 ~ 215,
 We recommend that you reboot the system now.

> vlan sysvid 200
 You have set system VLAN ID to range: 200 ~ 315,
 We recommend that you reboot the system now.
> vlan sysvid show
 The system VLAN ID is in range: 200 ~ 263
```

Telnet Command: vpn l2lset

This command allows users to set advanced parameters for LAN to LAN function.

Syntax

vpn l2lset <*list index*> **peerid** <*peerid*>
vpn l2lset <*list index*> **localid** <*localid*>
vpn l2lset <*list index*> **main** <*auto/ proposal index*>
vpn l2lset <*list index*> **aggressive** <*desg1/ desg2/ aesg1/ aesg2/ aesg5/ aesg14*>
vpn l2lset <*list index*> **pfs** <*on/ off*>
vpn l2lset <*list index*> **phase1** <*lifetime*>
vpn l2lset <*list index*> **phase2** <*lifetime*>
vpn l2lset <*list index*> **x509localid** <*0/ 1*>
vpn l2lset <*list index*> **compress** <*0/ 1/ 2/ 3*>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<list index>	It means the index number of L2L (LAN to LAN) profile.
peerid <peerid>	It means the peer identity for aggressive mode.
localid <localid>	It means the local identity for aggressive mode.

main <auto/ proposal index>	It means to choose proposal for main mode. <auto>: Choose default proposals. <proposal index>: choose specified proposal.
aggressive <desg1/ desg2/ aesg1/ aesg2/ aesg5/ aesg14>	It means the chosen DH group for aggressive mode.
pfs <on/ off>	It means “perfect forward secrete”. <on/off>: Turn on or off the PFS function.
phase1 <lifetime> / *phase2 <lifetime>*	It means phase 1 or 2 of IKE. <lifetime>: Set the lifetime value (in second) for phase 1 and phase 2.
x509localid <0/ 1>	It means to enable (1) or disable (0) the X509 local ID.
compress <0/ 1/ 2/ 3>	Select a method to compress the packets to reduce the bandwidth usage while transferring the compressed packets. <0/1/2/3> - Available values are: 0 : Disable the function of compression. 1 : No . Use the Adaptive method for packet compression. 2 : LZ4. Use the algorithm of LZ4 for packet compression. 3 : LZO. For future use.

Example

```
> VPN l2lset 1 peerid 10226
```

Telnet Command: vpn l2lDrop

This command allows users to terminate current LAN to LAN VPN connection.

Syntax

vpn l2lDrop *l2lname <name>*
vpn l2lDrop *l2lidx <idx>*
vpn l2lDrop *h2lname <name>*
vpn l2lDrop *h2idx <idx>*
vpn l2lDrop *<ifno>*
vpn l2lDrop

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
l2lname <name>	It means to drop VPN connection by specifying the name of the LAN to LAN profile.
l2lidx <idx>	It means to drop VPN connection by specifying the index number of LAN to LAN profile.
h2lname <name>	It means to drop VPN connection by specifying the name of the remote dial-in user profile.
h2idx <idx>	It means to drop VPN connection by specifying the index number of the remote dial-in user profile.
<ifno>	It means to drop VPN connection by using VPN ifno.
l2lDrop	It means to drop all VPN connections.

Example

```
> vpn l2lDrop
```

```
Drop all VPN
```

Telnet Command: vpn l2lDialout

This command allows users to terminate current LAN to LAN VPN connection (dial-out).

Syntax

vpn l2lDialout *<idx>*
vpn l2lDialout *list*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
l2lDialout <idx>	It means to build VPN connection by specifying the index number of dial-out LAN to LAN profile. <idx>: Enter an index number (1 to 64).
list	It means to display LAN to LAN profiles (enabled).

Example

```
> vpn l2lDialout list
 List LAN to LAN profiles of the status as Enable
Index  Profile    Status
```

Telnet Command: vpn dinset

This command allows users to configure setting for remote dial-in VPN profile.

Syntax

vpn dinset *<list index>*
vpn dinset *<list index> <on/off>*
vpn dinset *<list index>* **username** *<USERNAME>*
vpn dinset *<list index>* **password** *<PASSWORD>*
vpn dinset *<list index>* **motp** *<on/off>*
vpn dinset *<list index>* **pin_secret** *<pin> <secret>*
vpn dinset *<list index>* **timeout** *<0~9999>*
vpn dinset *<list index>* **dintype** *<Type> <on/off>*
vpn dinset *<list index>* **subnet** *<0~8>*
vpn dinset *<list index>* **assignip** *<on/off>*
vpn dinset *<list index>* **srnode** *<on/off>*
vpn dinset *<list index>* **remoteip** *<Remote_Client_IP_Address>*
vpn dinset *<list index>* **peer** *<Peer_ID>*
vpn dinset *<list index>* **naming** *<pass/block>*
vpn dinset *<list index>* **multicastvpn** *<pass/block>*
vpn dinset *<list index>* **prekey** *<on/off>*
vpn dinset *<list index>* **assignkey** *<Pre_Shared_Key>*
vpn dinset *<list index>* **digsig** *<on/off>*
vpn dinset *<list index>* **ipsec** *<Method> <on/off>*
vpn dinset *<list index>* **localid** *<Local_ID>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<list index>	It means the index number of the profile.
<list index> <on/off>	It means to enable or disable the profile. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <on/off> - on: Enable; off: Disable.
<list index> motp <on/off>	It means to enable or disable the authentication with mOTP function. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <on/off> - on: Enable; off: Disable.
<list index> pin_secret <pin> <secret>	It means to set PIN code with secret. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <pin> - Type the code for authentication (e.g, 1234). <secret> - Use the 32 digit-secret number generated by mOTP in the mobile phone (e.g., e759bb6f0e94c7ab4fe6)
<list index> timeout <0~9999>	It means to set idle timeout. The default is 300 (seconds). <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <0~9999> - Enter a value.
<list index> dintype <Type> <on/off>	It means to enable/disable the allowed dial-in type. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <Type> - 0 to 3. In which, 0 means PPTP; 1 means IPsec Tunnel; 2 means L2TP with IPsec Policy; 3 means SSL Tunnel. <on/off> - on: Enable; off: Disable.
vpn dinset <list index> subnet <0~8>	It means to set the LAN subnet for the selected VPN profile. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <0~8> - Enter a number to specify the LAN subnet. In which, 0 means LAN1 1 means LAN2 2 means LAN3 3 means LAN4 4 means LAN5 5 means LAN6 6 means LAN7 7 means LAN8 8 means DMZ
vpn dinset <list index> assignip <on/off>	It means to enable or disable the function of assigning the static IP address. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <on/off> - on: Enable; off: Disable.
vpn dinset <list index> srnode <on/off>	It means to enable or disable the function of specifying the remote node. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <on/off> - on: Enable; off: Disable.
vpn dinset <list index> remoteip <Remote_Client_IP_Address>	It means to enable or disable the function of assigning remote client IP. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <Remote_Client_IP_Address> - Set the IP address of the remote client.
vpn dinset <list index> peer <Peer_ID>	It means to assign the peer ID. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <Peer_ID> - Enter the string of the peer ID.

vpn dinset <list index> naming <pass/block>	It means to set the Netbiod Naming Packet for the VPN profile. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <pass/block> - Let the packet pass or block the packet.
vpn dinset <list index> multicastvpn <pass/block>	It means to set the multicast via VPN for IGMP, IP-CAM, DHCP relay, and etc. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <pass/block> - Let the packet pass or block the packet.
vpn dinset <list index> prekey <on/off>	It means to enable/disable the Pre-Shared Key setting for IKE Authentication Method. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <on/off> - on: Enable; off: Disable.
vpn dinset <list index> assignkey <Pre_Shared_Key>	It means to set the Pre-Shared Key for IKE Authentication Method. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <Pre_Shared_Key> - Enter a string as PSK.
vpn dinset <list index> digsig <on/off>	It means to enable/disable the digital signature (X.509) for IKE Authentication Method. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <on/off> - on: Enable; off: Disable.
vpn dinset <list index> ipsec <Method> <on/off>	It means to enable / disable and set the protocol for IPsec security method. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <Method> - Enter a number (0 to 3) to specify the protocol. 0 means Medium(AH) High(ESP), 1 means DES 2 means 3DES 3 means AES <on/off> - on: Enable; off: Disable.
vpn dinset <list index> localid <Local_ID>	It means to set local ID (optional) for IPsec Security Method. <list index> - Enter the index number of the VPN profile. <local_ID> - Enter the string of local ID.

Example

```
> vpn dinset 1
Dial-in profile index 1
Profile Name: ???
Status: Deactive
Mobile OTP: Disabled
Password:
Idle Timeout: 300 sec
> vpn dinset 1 on
% set profile active
> vpn dinset 1 motp on
% Enable Mobile OTP mode!>
> vpn dinset 1 pin_secret 1234 e759bb6f0e94c7ab4fe6
> vpn dinset 1
Dial-in profile index 1
Profile Name: ???
Status: Active
Mobile OTP: Enabled
PIN: 1234
Secret: e759bb6f0e94c7ab4fe6
Idle Timeout: 300 sec
```

Telnet Command: vpn subnet

This command allows users to specify a subnet selection for the specified remote dial-in VPN profile.

Syntax

vpn subnet *<index><1/ 2/ 3/ 4/ 5/ 6/ 7/ 8>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<index>	It means the index number of the VPN profile.
<1/ 2/ 3/ 4/ 5/ 6/ 7/ 8>	1 – it means LAN1 2 – it means LAN2. 3 – it means LAN3 4 – it means LAN4. 5 – it means LAN5 6 – it means LAN6. 7 – it means LAN7. 8 – it means LAN8.

Example

```
> vpn subnet 1 2
>
```

Telnet Command: vpn setup

This command allows users to setup VPN for different types.

Syntax

Command of PPTP Dial-Out

vpn setup *<index> <name>* **pptp_out** *<ip> <usr> <pwd> <nip> <nmask>*

Command of IPSec Dial-Out

vpn setup *<index> <name>* **ipsec_out** *<ip> <key> <nip> <nmask>*

Command of L2Tp Dial-Out

vpn setup *<index> <name>* **l2tp_out** *<ip> <usr> <pwd> <nip> <nmask>*

Command of Dial-In

vpn setup *<index> <name>* **dialin** *<ip> <usr> <pwd> <key> <nip> <nmask>*

Command of 6in4

vpn setup *<index> <name>* **6in4** *<enable> <lan> <rem_lan_ip> <lan_pfx> <pfx_len><rem_pfx> <pre_len> <ttl>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
For PPTP Dial-Out	
<index>	It means the index number of the profile.
<name>	It means the name of the profile.
<ip>	It means the IP address to dial to.
<usr> <pwd>	It means the user and the password required for the PPTP connection.

<nip> <nmask>	It means the remote network IP and the mask. e.g., vpn setup 1 name1 pptp_out 1.2.3.4 vigor 1234 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
For IPsec Dial-Out	
<index>	It means the index number of the profile.
<name>	It means the name of the profile.
<ip>	It means the IP address to dial to.
<key>	It means the value of IPsec Pre-Shared Key.
<nip> <nmask>	It means the remote network IP and the mask. e.g., vpn setup 1 name1 ipsec_out 1.2.3.4 1234 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
For L2TP Dial-Out	
<index>	It means the index number of the profile.
<name>	It means the name of the profile.
<ip>	It means the IP address to dial to.
<usr> <pwd>	It means the user and the password required for the L2TP connection.
<nip> <nmask>	It means the remote network IP and the mask. e.g.,, vpn setup 1 name1 l2tp_out 1.2.3.4 vigor 1234 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
For Dial-In	
<index>	It means the index number of the profile.
<name>	It means the name of the profile.
<ip>	It means the IP address allowed to dial in.
<usr> <pwd>	It means the user and the password required for the PPTP/L2TP connection.
<key>	It means the value of IPsec Pre-Shared Key.
<nip> <nmask>	It means the remote network IP and the mask. e.g., vpn setup 1 name1 dialin 1.2.3.4 vigor 1234 abc 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
For 6in4	
<index>	It means the index number of the profile.
<name>	It means the name of the profile.
<enable>	It means to enable (1) or disable (0) the profile.
<lan>	Choose the LAN interface (0 to 16) or DMZ (17).
<rem_lan_ip>	It means to specify the remote LAN IP address.
<lan_pfx>	It means to set the LAN IPv6 prefix.
<pfx_len>	It means to set the IPv6 prefix length (32 to 128).
<rem_pfx>	It means to set remote IPv6 prefix.
<pre_len>	It means to set remote IPv6 prefix length (32 to 128).
<ttl>	It means to set the tunnel TTL (1 to 255). Ex. vpn setup 1 name1 6in4 1 1 192.168.10.1 193:: 64 192:: 64 255

Example

```
> vpn setup 1 name1 dialin 1.2.3.4 vigor 1234 abc 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
% Profile Change Log ...

% Profile Index : 1
% Profile Name : name1
% Username : vigor
% Password : 1234
% Pre-share Key : abc
% Call Direction : Dial-In
% Type of Server :  ISDN PPTP IPSec L2TP
% Dial from : 1.2.3.4
% Remote NEtwork IP : 192.168.1.0
% Remote NEtwork Mask : 255.255.255.0
>
```

Telnet Command: vpn option

This command allows users to configure settings for LAN to LAN profile.

Syntax

vpn option *<index> <cmd1>=<param1> [<cmd2>=<para2> | ...]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<index>	It means the index number of the profile. Available index numbers: 1 ~ 32
For Common Settings	
<index>	It means the index number of the profile.
pname	It means the name of the profile.
ena	It means to enable or disable the profile. on - Enable off - Disable
thr	It means the way that VPN connection passes through. Available settings are wlf, wlo, w2f, w2o and .... w1f - WAN1 First. w1o - WAN1 Only. w2f - WAN2 First. w2o - WAN2 Only. w1oB - WAN1 Only (Only establish VPN if WAN2 down) w2oB - WAN2 Only (Only establish VPN if WAN1 down)
thr_ai	It means connection through wan IP alias. 0 - do not use alias. 1/2/.../31 - Use the allias IP (index number 1 to 31).
nnpkt	It means the NetBios Naming Packet. on - Enable the function to pass the packet. off - Disable the function to block the packet.
dir	It means the call direction. Available settings are b, o and i. b - Both o - Dial-Out i - Dial-In.

idle	It means Always on and Idle Time out. Available values include: -1 – it means always on for dial-out. 0 – it means always on for dial-in. Other numbers (e.g., idle=200, idle=300, idle=500) mean the router will be idle after the interval (seconds) configured here.
palive	It means to enable PING to keep alive. -1 – disable the function. 1,2,3,4 – Enable the function and PING IP 1.2.3.4 to keep alive.
monitor	It means to enable Quality Monitoring. On - Turn on Quality Monitoring. Off - Turn off Quality Monitoring.
For Dial-Out Settings	
ctype	It means “Type of Server I am calling”. ctype=t means PPTP. ctype=s means IPSec. ctype= l means L2TP(IPSec Policy None). ctype= l1 means L2TP(IPSec Policy Nice to Have). ctype= l2 means L2TP(IPSec Policy Must). ctype= c means SSL Tunnel ctype=o [0/1/2/3/4/5] [0/1/2/3] means Openvpn TCP Tunnel[AES128/AES256/NONE/AES128_GCM/AES192_GCM/AES256_GCM] [SHA1/SHA256/NONE/SHA512] ctype= u[0/1/2/3/4/5][0/1/2/3] means Openvpn UDP Tunnel[AES128/AES256/NONE/AES128_GCM/AES192_GCM/AES256_GCM][SHA1/SHA256/NONE/SHA512]
dialto	It means Server IP/Host Name for VPN. (such as draytek.com or 123.45.67.89).
ltype	It means Link Type. “ltype=0” means “Disable”. “ltype=1” means “64kbps”. “ltype=2” means “128kbps”. “ltype=3” means “BOD”.
oname	It means Dial-Out Username. “oname=admin” means to set Username = admin.
opwd	It means Dial-Out Password “opwd=1234” means to set Password = 1234.
pauth	It means PPP Authentication. “pauth=pc” means to set PPP Authentication = PAP&CHAP. “pauth=p” means to set PPP Authentication = PAP Only
ovj	It means VJ Compression. “ovj=on/off” means to enable/disable VJ Compression.
okey	It means IKE Pre-Shared Key. “okey=abcd” means to set IKE Pre-Shared Key = abcd.
ometh	It means IPSec Security Method. “ometh=ah[a/s/S]” means AH auto/sha1/Sha2. “ometh=espd/espda[a/s/S/” means ESP DES without/with Authentication auto/sha1/Sha2 “ometh=esp3/esp3a[a/s/S]/” means ESP 3DES without/with Authentication auto/sha1/Sha2 “ometh= espa[1/9/2]/espaa[a/s/S][1/9/2] ” means ESP AES[128/192/256] without/with Authentication auto/sha1/Sha2 (AES128/192/256).

tls_auth	It means to Turn off/on tls-auth option.
tls_auth_key	It means to set OpenVPN tls-auth option key. tls-auth_key=<1/2/3> Enter the number to select the PSK.
tls_key_show	It means to show the selected PSK.
sch	It means Index(1-15) in Schedule Setup. sch=1,3,5,7 Set schedule 1->3->5->7
ikemode	It means IKE phase 1 mode. ikemode=m, Main mode. ikemode=a, Aggressive mode.
ikeid	It means IKE Local ID. “ikeid=vigor” means Set Local ID = vigor.
oport	It means OpenVPN Dial-Out Port. oport=1194. Set OpenVPN Dial-Out Port = 1194
For Dial-In Settings	
itype	It means Allowed Dial-In Type. Available settings include: “itype=t” means PPTP. “itype=s” means IPSec. “itype=L”means L2TP (None). “itype=l1” means L2TP(Nice to Have). “itype=l2” means L2TP(Must). “itype=c” means SSL Tunnel “itype=i” means Openvpn UDP/TCP “itype=i[0/1/2][0/1/2]" means Tunnel[AES128/AES256/NONE][SHA1/SHA256/NONE]/ “itype=o[0/1/2][0/1/2]” means Openvpn TCP Tunnel[AES128/AES256/NONE][SHA1/SHA256/NONE]/ “itype=u[0/1/2][0/1/2]” means Openvpn UDP Tunnel[AES128/AES256/NONE][SHA1/SHA256/NONE]
peer	It means specify Peer VPN Server IP for Remote VPN Gateway. Type “203.12.23.48” means to allow VPN dial-in with IP address of 203.12.23.48. Type “off” means any remote IP is allowed to dial in.
peerid	It means the peer ID for Remote VPN Gateway. Type “draytek” means the word is used as local ID.
iname	It means Dial-in Username. “iname=admin” means to set username as “admin”.
ipwd	It means Dial-in Password. “ipwd=1234” means to set password as “1234”.
ivj	It means VJ Compression. “ivj=on/off” means to enable /disable VJ Compression.
ikey	It means IKE Pre-Shared Key. “ikey=abcd” means to set IKE Pre-Shared Key = abcd.
imeth	It means IPSec Security Method “imeth=h” means “Allow AH”. “imeth=d” means “Allow DES”. “imeth=3” means “Allow 3DES”. “imeth=a” means “Allow AES.
For TCP/IP Settings	
mywip	It means My WAN IP. “mywip=1.2.3.4” means to set My WAN IP as “1.2.3.4”.

rgip	It means Remote Gateway IP. “rgip=1.2.3.4” means to set Remote Gateway IP as “1.2.3.4”.
rnip	It means Remote Network IP. “rnip=1.2.3.0” means to set Remote Network IP as “1.2.3.0”.
rnmask	It means Remote Network Mask. “rnmask=255.255.255.0” means to set Remote Network Mask as “255.255.255.0”.
lnip	It means Local Network IP. "lnip=1.2.3.0" means to set Local Network IP as "1.2.3.0".
lnmask	It means Local Network Mask. "lnmask=255.255.255.0" means to set Local Network Mask as "255.255.255.0".
rip	It means RIP Direction. “rip=d” means to set RIP Direction as “Disable”. “rip=t” means to set RIP Direction as “TX”. “rip=r” means to set RIP Direction as “RX”. “rip=b” means to set RIP Direction as “Both”.
mode	It means the option of “From first subnet to remote network, you have to do”. “mode=r” means to set Route mode. “mode=n” means to set NAT mode.
droute	It means to Change default route to this VPN tunnel (Only single WAN supports this). droute=on/off means to enable/disable the function.

Example

```
> vpn option 1 idle=250
% Change Log..

% Idle Timeout = 250
```

Telnet Command: vpn mroute

This command allows users to list, add or delete static routes for a certain LAN to LAN VPN profile.

Syntax

vpn mroute *<index>* **list**

vpn mroute *<index>* **add** *<network ip>/<mask>*

vpn mroute *<index>* **del** *<network ip>/<mask>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
list	It means to display all of the route settings.
add	It means to add a new route.
del	It means to delete specified route.
<index>	It means the index number of the profile. Available index numbers: 1 ~ 32
<network ip>/<mask>	Enter the IP address with the network mask address.

Example

```
> vpn mroute 1 add 192.168.5.0/24
% 192.168.5.0/24
% Add new route 192.168.5.0/24 to profile 1
```

Telnet Command: vpn list

This command allows users to view LAN to LAN VPN profiles.

Syntax

vpn list *<index>* **all**
vpn list *<index>* **com**
vpn list *<index>* **out**
vpn list *<index>* **in**
vpn list *<index>* **net**

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
all	It means to list configuration of the specified profile.
com	It means to list common settings of the specified profile.
out	It means to list dial-out settings of the specified profile.
in	It means to list dial-in settings of the specified profile.
net	It means to list Network Settings of the specified profile.
<index>	It means the index number of the profile. Available index numbers: 1 ~ 32

Example

```
> vpn list 32 all
% Common Settings

% Profile Name             : ???
% Profile Status           : Disable
% Netbios Naming Packet    : Pass
% Call Direction           : Both
% Idle Timeout             : 300
% PING to keep alive       : off

% Dial-out Settings

% Type of Server           : PPTP
% Link Type:               : 64k bps
% Username                 : ???
% Password                 :
% PPP Authentication       : PAP/CHAP
% VJ Compression           : on
% Pre-Shared Key           :
% IPSec Security Method    : AH
% Schedule                 : 0,0,0,0
% Remote Callback          : off
% Provide ISDN Number      : off
% IKE phase 1 mode         : Main mode
```

```
% IKE Local ID             :


% Dial-In Settings

--- MORE ---   ['q': Quit, 'Enter': New Lines, 'Space Bar': Next Page] ---
> vpn list 1 com
% Common Settings

% Profile Name        : ???
% Profile Status       : Disable
% Netbios Naming Packet    : Pass
% Call Direction      : Both
% Idle Timeout        : 300
% PING to keep alive  : off
>
```

Telnet Command: vpn remote

This command allows users to enable or disable *PPTP/ IPSec/ L2TP* VPN service.

Syntax

vpn remote *<PPTP/ IPsec/ L2TP/ SSLVPN> <on/ off>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
PPTP/ IPSec/ L2TP/ SSLVPN	There are four types to be selected.
on/ off	on - enable VPN remote setting. off - disable VPN remote setting.

Example

```
> vpn remote PPTP on
Set PPTP VPN Service : On

Please restart the router!!
```

Telnet Command: vpn trunk

This command allows users to configure VPN Backup, VPN load balance, GRE over IPsec, and Binding tunnel policy.

vpn trunk show_usable

vpn trunk backup *<add/ del> <name> <Member#1> <Member#2>*

vpn trunk backup more_syslog *<ON/ OFF>*

vpn trunk backup ERD *<name> <Normal/ Recover/ Resume><second>*

vpn trunk lb *<add/ del> <name> <Member#1> <Member#2>*

vpn trunk lb more_syslog *<ON/ OFF>*

vpn trunk lb algorithm *<name> <RR>*

vpn trunk lb algorithm *<name><W-RR><Auto> <AccordingRatio> <Member1:Member2>*

vpn trunk lb algorithm *<name><Fastest>*

vpn trunk bind usage *<BindIndex>*

vpn trunk bind show *<LoadBalanceName>*

vpn trunk bind reset_default

vpn trunk bind more_syslog *<ON/ OFF>*

vpn trunk bind set *<BindIndex> <ACT> <TrunkName> <Member> <SrcIp:A~B> <DstIp:A~B> <DstPort:A~B> <Proto> <Frag>*

vpn trunk bind insert *<After_BindIndex> <ACT> <TrunkName> <Member> <SrcIp:A~B> <DstIp:A~B> <DstPort:A~B> <Proto> <Frag>*

vpn trunk SetGre show *<Dialout_Index>*

vpn trunk SetGre
<Active/ In-active><Dialout_Index><GRE_MyIP><GRE_PeerIP><Logical_Traffic>

vpn trunk An_Gre GreIPsecAnalyze *<ON/ OFF>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
show_usable	Display a list of LAN to LAN dial out profiles.
backup <add/ del> <name> <Member#1> <Member#2>	Set multiple VPN tunnels (LAN to LAN profiles) as backup tunnel. add/del - Add or delete a profile for used in VPN Trunk. name – Specify the name of the VPN trunk. Member#1 – Indicate the first LAN to LAN profile. Member#2 – Indicate the second LAN to LAN profile.
backup more_syslog <ON/ OFF> *lb more_syslog <ON/ OFF>* *bind more_syslog <ON/ OFF>*	These commands are used for RD debug.
backup ERD <name> <Normal/ Recover/ Resume> <second>	ERD means Environment Recovers Detection. name – Specify the name of the VPN trunk. Normal – Indicate the Normal mode. All dial-out VPN TRUNK backup profiles will be activated alternatively. Recover – Indicate the duration of VPN backup operation. Resume – When VPN connection breaks down or disconnects, Member 1 will be the top priority for the system to do VPN connection. Second – “0” means to dial each six seconds automatically. “60 ~ 2147483647” means to early handle for less than 30 seconds within designated time.
lb <add/ del> <name> <Member#1> <Member#2>	It means to create VPN trunk with load balance. add/del - Add or delete a profile for used in VPN Trunk. name – Specify the name of the VPN trunk.

	Member#1 – Indicate the first LAN to LAN profile. Member#2 – Indicate the second LAN to LAN profile.
lb algorithm <name> <RR/ W-RR/ Fastest>	Set multiple VPN tunnels for using as traffic load balance tunnel. Such command is to configure the algorithm (with round robin mode) of Load Balance. name – Specify the name of the VPN trunk. RR – It means round robin mode. All of the dial-out profiles will be taken turns equally.
lb algorithm <name><W-RR><Auto> <AccordingRatio> <Member1:Member2>	Such command is to configure the algorithm (with round robin mode) of Load Balance. name – Specify the name of the VPN trunk. W-RR – It means weighted round robin mod based on speed ratio. ● *Auto - the speed must be based on Lay2.* ● *AccordingRatio –the speed must be based on given ratio.* Member#1 – Inidcate the first LAN to LAN profile. Member#2 – Indicate the second LAN to LAN proifle.
lb algorithm <name><Fastest>	Such command is to configure the algorithm (with fastest mode) of Load Balance. Most of traffics will be led to the channel with the fastest connection. name – Specify the name of the VPN trunk.
bind usage <BindIndex>	Display detailed information for VPN Load Balance Tunnel Bind. BindIndex – Indicate the index number of the tunnle bind.
bind show <LoadBalanceName>	Display the bind information for VPN Load Balance profile. LoadBalanceName – type the name of VPN Load Balance profile
bind reset_default	Reset the bind tunnel for VPN load balance to factory reset settings.
bind set <BindIndex> <ACT> <TrunkName> <Member> <SrcIp:A~B> <DstIp:A~B> <DstPort:A~B> <Proto> <Frag>	Set the binding tunnel policy. BindIndex – Indicate the index number (1 ~ 64) for the tunnel to be bound. `vpn trunk bind set 1 y vpnlb 1 192.168.10.1~192.168.10.2 192.168.99.1~192.168.99.254 1~65535 0 OFF` ACT – Specify the action. “y” means active; “n” means inactive or delete. TrunkName - TrunkName - Specify the name of the VPN trunk created by using “vpn trunk lb” command. Member – Specify the index number of the LAN to LAN (dial-out) profile to be bound. SrcIp:A~B – Specify the source IP range (e.g., 192.168.10.0~192.168.10.255. DstIp:A~B - Specify the destination IP range (e.g., 192.168.1.0~192.168.1.255. DstPort:A~B – Specify the destination port range (1~65535). Proto – Specify the protocol. 0 – any 1 – ICMP 2 – IGMP 6 – TCP 17 – UDP 255 – TCP/UDP Frag – “ON” means to bind the fragmented packet; “OFF” means not to care. It is the default setting.
bind insert <After_BindIndex> <ACT> <TrunkName> <Member>	It is used to insert additional load balance policy into an existing policy. After_BindIndex –Specify an index number that new additional

<SrcIp:A~B> <DstIp:A~B> <DstPort:A~B> <Proto> <Frag>	policy should be inserted before. See the following example: *vpn trunk bind insert 1 y vpnlb 2 192.168.10.3~192.168.10.200 192.168.99.200~192.168.99.200 80~80 TCP OFF* ACT – Specify the action. “y” means active; “n” means inactive or delete. TrunkName - Specify the name of the VPN trunk. Member – Specify the index number of the LAN to LAN (dial-out) profile to be bound. SrcIp:A~B – Specify the source IP range (e.g., 192.168.10.0~192.168.10.255. DstIp:A~B - Specify the destination IP range (e.g., 192.168.1.0~192.168.1.255. DstPort:A~B – Specify the destination port range (1~65535). Proto – Specify the protocol. 0 – any 1 – ICMP 2 – IGMP 6 – TCP 17 – UDP 255 – TCP/UDP Frag – “ON” means to bind the fragmented packet; “OFF” means not to care. It is the default setting.
SetGre show <Dialout_Index>	Display the GRE over IPSec settings in specified LAN to LAN profile. Dialout_Index – Index number of the LAN to LAN (dial-out) profile.
SetGre <Active/In-active><Dialout_Index><GRE_MyIP><GRE_PeerIP><Logical_Traffic>	Active/In-active - Specify the action. “y” means active; “n” means inactive. Dialout_Index – Index number of the LAN to LAN (dial-out) profile. GRE_MyIP –Enter the virtual IP for router itself for verified by peer. GRE_PeerIP –Enter the virtual IP of peer host for verified by router. Logical_Traffic - Specify the action for RFC2890. “y” means active; “n” means inactive.
An_Gre GreIPsecAnalyze *<ON/OFF>*	These commands are used for RD debug.

Example

```
> vpn setup 1 name1 pptp_out 1.2.3.4 vigor 1234 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
% Profile Change Log ...

% Profile Index : 1
% Profile Name : name1j
% Username : vigor
% Password : 1234
% Call Direction : Dial-Out
% Type of Server : PPTP
% Dial to : 1.2.3.4
% Remote NEtwork IP : 192.168.1.0
% Remote NEtwork Mask : 255.255.255.0
> vpn setup 2 market pptp_out 5.6.7.8 vigor 5678 192.168.1.31 255.255.255.0
% Profile Change Log ...

% Profile Index : 2
% Profile Name : market
% Username : vigor
% Password : 5678
```

```
% Call Direction : Dial-Out
% Type of Server : PPTP
% Dial to : 5.6.7.8
% Remote NEtwork IP : 192.168.1.31
% Remote NEtwork Mask : 255.255.255.0
> vpn trunk lb add comp 1 2
%% Combination VPN Load Balance profile list :
  <Index>   <    Name    >     <    Member1(Active)Type    >    <
Member2(Act
ive)Type    >
    1        comp                   1(YES)PPTP                    2(YES)PPTP

%% Note: <Active: NO> The LAN-to-LAN Profile is disable or under Dial-In(Call
Direction) at present.
==========================================================================


%  Setting OK.
> vpn trunk bind set 1 y comp 2 192.168.10.1~192.168.10.2
192.168.99.1~192.168.99.254 1~65535 0 OFF
% VPN Load Balance Tunnel Bind Table Index[1] detail:
============================================================
 Action              = ACTIVE
 Trunk Profile(000) Name= comp
 Binding Dial Out Index = 2
 Binding Src IP        = 192.168.10.1 ~ 192.168.10.2
 Binding Dest IP       = 192.168.99.1 ~ 192.168.99.254
 Binding Dest Port     = 1 ~ 65535
 Binding Fragmented    = NO
 Binding Protocol      = ANY Protocol
>
```

Telnet Command: vpn NetBios

This command allows users to enable or disable NetBios for Remote Access User Accounts or LAN-to-LAN Profile.

Syntax

vpn NetBios set *<H2l/ L2l> <index> <Block/ Pass>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<H2l/ L2l>	H2l means Remote Access User Accounts. L2l means LAN-to-LAN Profile. Specify which one will be applied by NetBios.
<index>	The index number (1 to 48) of the profile.
<Block/ Pass>	**Pass** – Have an inquiry for data transmission between the hosts located on both sides of VPN Tunnel while connecting. **Block** – When there is conflict occurred between the hosts on both sides of VPN Tunnel in connecting, set it block data transmission of Netbios Naming Packet inside the tunnel.

Example

```
> vpn NetBios set H2l 1 Pass
% Remote Dial In Profile Index [1] :
% NetBios Block/Pass: [PASS]
```

Telnet Command: vpn mss

This command allows users to configure the maximum segment size (MSS) for different TCP types.

Syntax

vpn mss show

vpn mss default

vpn mss set *<connection type> <TCP maximum segment size range>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
show	It means to display current setting status.
default	TCP maximum segment size for all the VPN connection will be set as 1360 bytes.
set	Use it to specify the connection type and value of MSS.
<connection type>	1~4 represent various type. 1 – PPTP 2 – L2TP 3 – IPSec 4 – L2TP over IPSec 5 - vpn 2ndsubnet on 6 - SSL Tunnel
<TCP maximum segment size range>	Each type has different segment size range.

	PPTP - 1 ~ 1412 L2TP - 1 ~ 1408 IPSec - 1 ~ 1381 L2TP over IPSec - 1 ~ 1361 GRE over IPsec - 1 ~ 1365 SSL Tunnel - 1 ~ 1360

Example

```
>vpn mss set 1 1400
% VPN TCP maximum segment size (MSS) :
  PPTP  = 1400
  L2TP  = 1360
  IPSec = 1360
  L2TP over IPSec  = 1360
  GRE over IPsec   = 1360
  SSL Tunnel  = 1260
>vpn mss show
 VPN TCP maximum segment size (MSS) :
 PPTP  = 1400
 L2TP  = 1360
 IPSec = 1360
 L2TP over IPSec  = 1360
 GRE over IPsec   = 1360
 SSL Tunnel  = 1260
```

Telnet Command: vpn ike

This command is used to display IKE memory status and leakage list.

Syntax

vpn ike -q

vpn ike -s

Example

```
> vpn ike -q
IKE Memory Status and Leakage List

# of free L-Buffer=95, minimum=94, leak=1
# of free M-Buffer=529, minimum=529 leak=3
# of free S-Buffer=1199, minimum=1198, leak=1
# of free Msgid-Buffer=1024, minimum=1024
```

Telnet Command: vpn Multicast

This command allows users to pass or block the multi-cast packet via VPN.

Syntax

vpn Multicast set *<H2L/ L2L> <index> <Block/ Pass>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description

<H2L/ L2L>	H2l means Host to LAN (Remote Access User Accounts). L2l means LAN-to-LAN Profile.
<index>	The index number (1 to 64) of the profile.
<Block/ Pass>	Set Block/Pass the Multicast Packets. The default is Block.

Example

```
> vpn Multicast set L2l 1 Pass
% Lan to Lan Profile Index [1] :
% Status Block/Pass: [PASS]
```

Telnet Command: vpn pass2nd

This command allows users to determine if the packets coming from the second subnet passing through current used VPN tunnel.

Syntax

vpn pass2nd <*on/ off*>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
on/ off	on - the packets can pass through NAT. off - the packets cannot pass through NAT.

Example

```
> vpn pass2nd on
% 2nd subnet is allowed to pass VPN tunnel!
```

Telnet Command: vpn pass2nat

This command allows users to determine if the packets passing through by NAT or not when the VPN tunnel disconnects.

Syntax

vpn pass2nat <*on/ off*>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
on/ off	on - the packets can pass through NAT. off - the packets cannot pass through NAT.

Example

```
> vpn pass2nat on
% Packets would go through by NAT when VPN disconnect!!
```

Telnet Command: vpn sameSubnet

This command allows users to build VPN between clients via virtual subnet.

Syntax

vpn sameSubnet *-i <value>*
vpn sameSubnet *–E <0/1>*
vpn sameSubnet *–e <value>*
vpn sameSubnet *-I <Virtual Subnet>*
vpn sameSubnet *-o <add/del>*
vpn sameSubnet *-v*
vpn sameSubnet *-m*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-i <value>	Specify the index number of VPN profile.
–E <0/1>	Enable or disable the IPsec with the same subnet. 1 – enable. 0 – disable.
–e <value>	Translate specified LAN to virtual subnet. 1 – LAN1 2 – LAN2 3 – LAN3 ...
-I <Virtual Subnet>	Set the virtual subnet (e.g., 172.16.3.250).
-v	Display current status of virtual subnet.
-m <1/2>	Set the Translated Type. *<1/2>* - 1 for Whole Subnet, 2 for Specific IP.

Example

```
> vpn sameSubnet  –i 1 –e 1 –E 1 –e 1 –I 10.10.10.0 –o add
Enable IPsec with Same Subnet !!

 Add entry Succcess!!
> vpn sameSubnet –v
IPsec with the same subnet:
VPN profile 1 enable,
  Whole Subnet:
    translated LAN1 to Virtual subnet: 10.10.10.0
    translated LAN1 to Virtual subnet: 10.10.10.0
    translated LAN1 to Virtual subnet: 10.10.10.0
>
```

Telnet Command: vpn ovpn

This command allows users to build VPN between clients via OpenVPN.

Syntax

vpn ovpn *mode* <0/1>
vpn ovpn *show*
vpn ovpn *udp_mode* <0/1>
vpn ovpn *tcp_mode* <0/1>
vpn ovpn *udp_port* <1-65535>
vpn ovpn *tcp_port* <1-65535>

vpn ovpn *cert* <0/1>
vpn ovpn *replay* <0/1>
vpn ovpn *certmode* <0/1/2>
vpn ovpn *hmacmode* <0/1/2>
vpn ovpn *ca <0/1/2/3>*
vpn ovpn *tlsauth_del <1/2/3>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
mode <0/1>	Enable or disable the OpenVPN function. 1 – enable. 0 – disable.
show	Displays current OpenVPN settings.
udp_mode <0/1>	Enable or disable the UDP mode. 1 – enable. 0 – disable.
tcp_mode <0/1>	Enable or disable the TCP mode. 1 – enable. 0 – disable.
udp_port <1-65535>	Enter a port number (1-65535) for UDP mode.
tcp_port <1-65535>	Enter a port number (1-65535) for TCP mode.
replay <0/1>	Enable or disable the replay option. 1 – enable. 0 – disable.
certmode <0/1/2>	Set the Cipher Algorithm Mode. 0:AES128, 1:AES256, 2:None
hmacmode <0/1/2>	Set the Cipher HMAC Mode. 0:SHA1, 1:SHA256, 2:None
ca <0/1/2/3>	Set the Trust CA certificate.
tlsauth_del <1/2/3>	Delete the first, second or the third TLS-auth key.

Example

```
> vpn ovpn mode 1
Enable openvpn
> vpn ovpn show

 Openvpn: Enable
 support UDP: Enable
 UDP port: 1194
 support TCP: Enable
 TCP port: 1194
 Use certificate authentication: Enable
 replay option: Enable
 Cipher Algorithm: AES256
 HMAC Algorithm: SHA256
 Certificate uid: 65535
 Trust CA uid: 0
```

Telnet Command: wan ppp_mru

This command allows users to adjust the size of PPP LCP MRU. It is used for specific network.

Syntax

wan ppp_mru *<WAN interface number> <MRU size>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<WAN interface number>	Type a number to represent the physical interface. For Vigor130, the number is 1 (which means WAN1).
<MRU size >	It means the number of PPP LCP MRU. The available range is from 1400 to 1600.

Example

```
>wan ppp_mru 1 ?
% Now: 1492

> wan ppp_mru 1 1490
>
> wan ppp_mru 1 ?
% Now: 1490

> wan ppp_mru 1 1492
> wan ppp_mru 1 ?
% Now: 1492
```

Telnet Command: wan mtu / wan mtu2

This command allows users to adjust the size of MTU for WAN1/WAN2.

Syntax

wan mtu *<value>*

wan mtu2 *<value>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
value	It means the number of MTU for PPP. The available range is from 1000 to 1500. For Static IP/DHCP, the maximum number will be 1500. For PPPoE, the maximum number will be 1492. For PPTP/L2TP, the maximum number will be 1460.

Example

```
> wan mtu 1100

> wan mtu ?

Static IP/DHCP (Max MSS: 1500)

PPPoE(Max MSS: 1492)

PPTP/L2TP(Max MSS: 1460)
```

```
% wan ppp_mss <MSS size: 1000 ~ 1500>
% Now: 1100
```

Telnet Command: wan dns

This command allows users to configure primary and / or secondary DNS server.

Syntax

wan dns *<wan_no> <dns_select> <ipv4_addr>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<wan_no>	Select WAN interface. 1 ~4 - WAN1 ~ WAN4.
<dns_select>	Specify primary and / or secondary DNS server. pri – It means primary DNS server. sec – It means secondary DNS server.
<ipv4_addr>	Enter the IP address of DNS server.

Example

```
> wan dns 1 pri 168.95.1.1
% Set WAN1 primary DNS done.
% Now: 168.95.1.1
```

Telnet Command: wan DF_check

This command allows you to enable or disable the function of DF (Don't fragment)

Syntax

wan DF_check *<on/off>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
on/off	It means to enable or disable DF.

Example

```
> wan DF_check on
%DF bit check enable!
> wan DF_check off
%DF bit check disable (reset DF bit)!
```

Telnet Command: wan disable

This command allows you to disable WAN connection.

Example

```
> wan disable WAN
%WAN disabled.
```

Telnet Command: wan enable

This command allows you to disable wan connection.

Example

```
> wan enable WAN
%WAN1 enabled.
```

Telnet Command: wan wan2lan

When WAN2 is disabled or WAN2 is set as wireless physical mode, the ethernet port is configured as LAN port.

Syntax

wan wan2lan *<wan> <on / off / status>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<wan>	Select a WAN interface (1 to 4). Currently, only WAN2 is available.
<on / off / status>	0n - Enable WAN to LAN port mode. Off - Disable WAN to LAN port mode. Status - Display current mode.

Example

```
> wan wan2lan 2 status
% Current WAN2 is WAN mode
% Usage: show the WAN to LAN setting, currently only support WAN2
% When WAN2 is disabled or WAN2 is set wireless physical mode, eth port
is configured as LAN
% Current WAN2 eth port is WAN mode
> wan wan2lan 2 on
% WAN2 convert to LAN6, WAN2 interface will disable
% Usage: show the WAN to LAN setting, currently only support WAN2
% When WAN2 is disabled or WAN2 is set wireless physical mode, eth port
is configured as LAN
% Current WAN2 eth port is LAN mode
```

Telnet Command: wan forward

This command allows you to enable or disable the function of WAN forwarding. The packets are allowed to be transmitted between different WANs.

Syntax

wan forward *<on/off>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
on/off	It means to enable or disable WAN forward.

Example

```
> wan forward ?
%WAN forwarding is Disable!

> wan forward on
%WAN forwarding is enable!
```

Telnet Command: wan status

This command allows you to display the status of WAN connection, including connection mode, TX/RX packets, DNS settings and IP address.

Example

```
> wan status
WAN1: Offline, stall=N
 Mode: ---, Up Time=00:00:00
 IP=---, GW IP=---
 TX Packets=0, TX Rate(Bps)=0, RX Packets=0, RX Rate(Bps)=0
 Primary DNS=0.0.0.0, Secondary DNS=0.0.0.0

PVC_WAN3: Offline, stall=N
 Mode: ---, Up Time=00:00:00
 IP=---, GW IP=---
 TX Packets=0, TX Rate(Bps)=0, RX Packets=0, RX Rate(Bps)=0

PVC_WAN4: Offline, stall=N
 Mode: ---, Up Time=00:00:00
 IP=---, GW IP=---
 TX Packets=0, TX Rate(Bps)=0, RX Packets=0, RX Rate(Bps)=0

PVC_WAN5: Offline, stall=N
 Mode: ---, Up Time=00:00:00
 IP=---, GW IP=---
 TX Packets=0, TX Rate(Bps)=0, RX Packets=0, RX Rate(Bps)=0
```

Telnet Command: wan modem / wan modem2

This command, wan modem, allows you to configure 3G/4G USB Modem (PPP mode) of WAN3.

The command, wan modem2, allows you to configure 3G/4G USB Modem (PPP mode) of WAN4.

Syntax

wan modem *<init/init2/dial/pin><string>*

wan modem paponly *<on/off>*

wan modem backup_wait *<value>*

wan modem pipe *<Int><Din><Dout> (for USB WAN3 only)*

wan modem wakeup *<on/off/value> (for USB WAN3 only)*

wan modem vid *<id>*

wan modem pid *<id>*

wan modem status

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
init	Set initial modem AT command (default value is "AT&FE0V1X1&D2&C1S0=0").
Init2	Set the second initial modem AT command.
dial <string>	Set dial modem AT command (default value is "ATDT*99#").
pin <0>	Set PIN code for SIM card. "0":disable
paponly <on/off>	It means PAP Only. Set the PPP authentication of the USB WAN. on: None. off: PAP or CHAP.
backup_wait <value>	Set waiting time after boot if USB WAN is in backup mode. This waiting time is reserved for the dial of main WANs so that the backup USB WAN will not go up first. Available setting is from 1 to 255. Unit is second.
pipe	It is for RD debug only. Please don't use it without our advice.
wakeup <on/off/value>	It is for RD debug only. Please don't use it without our advice.
vid	Set VID of VID/PID match to bind the USB modem to specify WAN interface. By default, this match is not set (0x0/0x0) and the router specifies WAN interface by USB port.
pid	Set PID of VID/PID match to bind the USB modem to specify WAN interface. By default, this match is not set (0x0/0x0) and the router specifies WAN interface by USB port.
status	Display current status of USB modem.

Example

```
> wan modem pin 0000
> wan modem status
 Modem Link Speed=0
 Current Signal Strength=0
 Last Fail Message:
 Current Connect Stage:
```

Telnet Command: wan lte

This command allows you to configure LTE WAN (for L model only).

Syntax

wan lte auth *<0/1>*
wan lte band
wan lte del <*index #/all>*
wan lte pass *<string>*
wan lte pre_band
wan lte quota *[-<command><parameter>|...]*
wan lte read <*index #/all>*
wan lte reboot *[-<command><parameter>|...]*
wan lte reply *[-<command><parameter>|...]*
wan lte send *<number><message>*

wan lte sms *[-<command><parameter>|..]*
wan lte scan *[-<command><parameter>|..]*
wan lte set *[-<command><parameter>|..]*
wan lte stus
wan lte tag *<index #/all>*
wan lte user *<string>*
wan lte wms *<send<cdma/gwpp>/recv<cdma/gwgw>/setting>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
auth <0/1>	Set PPP authentication of LTE WAN. 0: None. 1: PAP or CHAP.
band	Display working band information for LTE network connection.
del <index #/all>	Delete an SMS from the LTE SIM card by specifying the index number. Use “all” to delete all.
pass <string>	Set the password of LTE WAN.
quota [-<command><parameter>|...]	Set settings of SMS Quota Limit function. Available commands with parameter are listed below: [...] means that you can Enter several commands in one line. -a <0/1>: Set whether to send an e-mail alert when SMS quota exceeded. (0: no 1: yes) -c <cycle>: Set the order of today in refresh cycle. -d <day>: Set the refresh day. -e <0/1>: Enable or disable SMS Quota Limit function. (0: disable 1: enable) -h <hour>: Set the refresh hour. -m <0/1/2>: Set SMS quota refresh mode. (0: None 1: monthly 2: periodically) -n <number>: Set SMS quota. The avaible number is between 1 and 1000000. -s <0/1>: Set whether to stop sending SMS after SMS quota exceeded. (0: no 1: yes)
read <index #/all>	Display information of an SMS in the LTE SIM card by specifying the index number. Use "all" to display all.
reboot	Set settings of Reboot on SMS Message function. <command> <parameter>	... The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can Enter several commands in one line. -a <0/1>: Enable or disable Access Control List. (0: disable 1: enable) -e <0/1>: Enable or disable Reboot on SMS Message function. (0: disable 1: enable) -p <password>: Set the Password / PIN. This setting is necessary if this function is enabled. -x <number>: Set the first phone number in Access Control List. -y <number>: Set the second phone number in Access Control List. -z <number>: Set the third phone number in Access Control List.
reply	Set settings of Reply with Router Status Message function. <command> <parameter>	...

	The available commands with parameters are listed below. [...] means that you can Enter several commands in one line. -a <0/1>: Enable or disable Access Control List. (0: disable 1: enable) -c <0/1>: Set whether to reply with MAC address. (0: no 1: yes) -e <0/1>: Enable or disable Reboot on SMS Message function. (0: disable 1: enable) -f <0/1>: Set whether to reply with WAN1 IP address. (0: no 1: yes) -g <0/1>: Set whether to reply with WAN2 IP address. (0: no 1: yes) -h <0/1>: Set whether to reply with LTE WAN IP address. (0: no 1: yes) -i <0/1>: Set whether to reply with WAN4 IP address. (0: no 1: yes) -j <0/1>: Set whether to reply with WAN1 data usage. (0: no 1: yes) -k <0/1>: Set whether to reply with WAN2 data usage. (0: no 1: yes) -l <0/1>: Set whether to reply with LTE WAN data usage. (0: no 1: yes) -m <0/1>: Set whether to reply with WAN4 data usage. (0: no 1: yes) -n <0/1>: Set whether to reply with Router name. (0: no 1: yes) -p <password>: Set the Password / PIN. This setting is necessary if this function is enabled. -u <0/1>: Set whether to reply with Router system uptime. (0: no 1: yes) -v <0/1>: Set whether to reply with Router firmware version. (0: no 1: yes) -x <number>: Set the first phone number in Access Control List. -y <number>: Set the second phone number in Access Control List. -z <number>: Set the third phone number in Access Control List.
send <number><message>	Send an SMS message to the specified phone number through the LTE SIM card.
sms	It means to set advanced settings for SMS. -a <0/1> : Alerts admin with e-mail when SMS inbox is full. -d <0/1> : Delete oldest read SMS when SMS inbox is full. -f <0/1> : Forward new SMS by e-mail to admin. -s <0/1> : Store SMS outbox cache with USB disk. (0: disable 1: enable)
scan <all/ 4g/ 3g/ 2g/ show>	It means to scan visible networks. [all/4g/3g/2g]: Scan all, 4g, 3g or 2g network. Show: Display the scanning result.
set	It means to set APN name, keep alive time and so on. apn <apn_name> : Set a string as APN. pin <pin_code>: Set a pin code. power_recycle <backoff_time(0~20)>: Set the power recycle time (seconds) for redialing after power off. dial_on: Turn of the dialing function. It is used for RD debug. dial_off: Turn off the dialing function. It is used for RD debug. keep_alive_on <IP>: Turn of the function of Keep Alive On. Specify the IP address (x.x.x.x). keep_alive_off: Turn off the function of Keep Alive On. dhcp<on/off>: Turn on or off the DHCP server, depending on your ISP configuration. fixed <IP>: Specify an IP address if DHCP is set as "off". Also, it depends on your ISP configuration. manual_dns <on/off>: On, set the DNS server manually; Off, use the default DNS server setting. The default is "off".

	primary_dns <IP>: Set the primary DNS IP (x.x.x.x) address obtained from your ISP if manual_dns is set as "on". secondary_dns <ip): Set the secondary DNS IP (x.x.x.x) address obtained from your ISP if manual_dns is set as "on". specific_mccmnc <on/off>: Turn on or off the specific MCC and MNC. mcc <mcc_value> : Set the value (0~999) for MCC (Mobile Country Code) mnc <mnc_value>: Set the value(0~999) for MNC (Mobile Network Code). timeout <value>: Set the time out interval (50 to 255 seconds). fail_threshold: Set the times (2 ~ 20 times) of trying connection via LTE.
stus	Display status of LTE connection.
tag	Set an SMS in the LTE SIM card as read state by specifying the index number. Use "all" to set all SMS as read state.
user	Set the UserName of LTE WAN.
wms	This command is for RD debug only. We use it to test new USB modems. Please don't use it without our advice.

Example

```
> wan lte band

Access technology : LTE
Access band information : E-UTRA Op Band 3
Interfere with 2.4G WLAN : NO
Active channel: 1725
>wan lte stus
Status: Operational. (Online)
Access Tech: LTE
Band: E-UTRA Op Band 3
ISP: Chunghwa
MCC: 466, MNC: 92, LAC: 65534, Cell ID: 81023501
Max Channel TX Rate: 50000000 bps
Max Channel RX Rate: 100000000 bps
IMEI: 356318040749422
IMSI: 466924200859808
RSSI: -61 dBm
Unread SMS: 4
SMSC address: +886932400821
SMS service status : Ready
Number of SMS sent : 0
```

Telnet Command: wan sim2

This command allows you to configure settings for SIM2. It is available for LTE model.

Syntax

wan sim2 *auth <0/1>*

wan sim2 *user <username>*

wan sim2 *pass <password>*

wan sim2 *set apn <apn_name>*

wan sim2 *set pin <pin_code>*

wan sim2 *set mode <0~3>*

wan sim2 *set keep_alive_on <IP>*

wan sim2 *set keep_alive_off*

wan sim2 *set timeout <50~255 sec>*

wan sim2 *set fail_threshold <2~20 times>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
auth <0/1>	Set the LTE authentication for connection. 0 - PAP or CHAP. 1 - PAP only.
user <username>	Set the username for SIM2. <username> - Enter a string.
pass <password>	Set the password for SIM2. <password> - Enter a string.
set apn <apn_name>	Set the APN name for the SIM2. <apn_name> - Enter a string as APN name.
set pin <pin_code>	Set the PIN code for the SIM2.
set mode <0~3>	Set the network mode for the SIM2. 0- 4G/3G/2G; 1- 4G Only; 2- 3G Only; 3- 2G Only
set keep_alive_on <IP>	IP - Specify an IP address.
set keep_alive_off	Disable the function of Keep Alive On.
set timeout <50~255 sec>	Enter a value (50 to 255, unit is second) as the timeout.
set fail_threshold <2~20 times>	Set the maximum times (2 to 20) of failed dial-ups. After that, the system will stop dial-up and use another SIM card for dial-up instead.

Example

```
> wan sim2 set timeout 100
Set dial up timeout: 100
>
```

Telnet Command: wan detect

This command allows you to configure WAN connection detection. When Ping Detection is enabled (for Static IP or DHCP or PPPoE mode), Router pings specified IP addresses to detect the WAN connection.

Syntax

wan detect *<wan1/../wan9><on/off/strict/always_on>*

wan detect *<wan1/../wan9><on/off>***-t<***time>*

wan detect *<wan1/../wan9> <on/off>* **-i***<interval>*

wan detect *<wan1/../wan9>* **target <***ip addr>*

wan detect *<wan1/../wan9>* **target2 <***ip addr>*

wan detect *<wan1/../wan9>* **target_gw <***1/0>*

wan detect *<wan1/../wan9>* **ttl <***value***>**
wan detect *<wan1/../wan9>* **interval <***interval***>**
wan detect *<wan1/../wan9>* **retry <***retry***>**
wan detect status

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<on/off/strict/always_on>	On: Enable ping detection. The IP address of the target shall be set. Off: Enable ARP detection (default). Time and interval should be set. strict: Enable the strict ARP detection. Time and interval should be set. always_on: Disable link detect, always connected(only support static IP)
-t <time>	Set the time for ARP detect or strict ARP detection.
-i <interval>	Set the interval for ARP detect or strict ARP detection.
target <ip addr>	Set the ping target. <ip addr>: It means the IP address used for detection. Type an IP address (e.g., 192.168.1.10) in this field.
target2<ip addr>	Set the secondary ping target. <ip addr>: It means the IP address used for detection. Type an IP address (e.g., 192.168.1.10) in this field.
target_gw <1/0>	Set whether to use gateway as ping target. 1: yes 0: no Note that USB WAN (PPP mode) cannot support PING gateway
ttl <1-255>	It means to set the ping TTL value (work as trace route) If you do not set any value for ttl here or just type 0 here, the system will use default setting (255) as the ttl value.
interval <interval>	Set the interval between each ping operation. Available setting is between 1 and 3600. The unit is second. *<interval>:* Type a value.
retry <retry>	Set how many ping operations are retried before the Router judges that the WAN connection is disconnected. Available setting is between 1 and 255. The unit is times. <retry>: Type a number.
status	It means to show the current status.

Example

```
> wan detect status
 WAN1: arp detect, send time=30, Interval = 5
 WAN2: arp detect, send time=30, Interval = 5
 WAN3: arp detect, send time=30, Interval = 5
 WAN4: arp detect, send time=30, Interval = 5
 WAN5: arp detect, send time=30, Interval = 5
 WAN6: arp detect, send time=30, Interval = 5
 WAN7: ping detect, Target=0.0.0.0, TTL=255, Target2=0.0.0.0, TargetGW=off,
Interval=1, Retry=10
 WAN8: ping detect, Target=0.0.0.0, TTL=255, Target2=0.0.0.0, TargetGW=off,
Interval=1, Retry=10
 WAN9: ping detect, Target=0.0.0.0, TTL=255, Target2=0.0.0.0, TargetGW=off,
Interval=1, Retry=10>
```

Telnet Command: wan lb

This command allows you to Enable/Disable the load balance mode for each WAN.

Syntax

wan lb <*wan1/ wan2/ ..***> *on***
wan lb <*wan1/ wan2/ ..***> *off***
wan lb <*IP/ session***>**
wan lb status

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
wan1 to wanx	Specify which WAN will be applied with load balance.
on	Make WAN interface as the member of load balance.
off	Cancel WAN interface as the member of load balance.
ip/ session	Set the load balance in IP-based or session-based mode.
status	Show the current status.

Example

```
> wan lb status
 WAN1: on
 WAN2: on
 WAN3: on
 WAN4: on
 WAN5: on
 WAN6: on
 WAN7: on
 WAN8: on
 WAN9: on
 Load balance mode is IP based
```

Telnet Command: wan lbel

This command allows you to set load balance exception list.

Syntax

wan lbel *<idx> <enable> <protocol> <ip type> <obj_grp idx> <port> <port_end> <comment>*
wan lbel status *<idx>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
Idx	Enter the index number (1 to 32) for the exception list.
enable	Enter 1 (enable) or 0 (disable) the selected profile.
protocol	<protocol>: Enter TCP, UDP, TCP+UDP.
ip type	Set the IP type (0, 1 or 2) for the selected profile. 0: Any 1: IP object 2: IP group
obj_grp idx	Enter the index number (1 to 32 for IP group; 1 to 192 for IP object).

	If it is set with "0", then the IP type will be set as "Any".
port	Enter a number (0 to 65535) as starting port. It it is set with "0", then the port range (1 to 65535) will not be applied with load balance.
port_end	Enter a number (0 to 65535) as ending port (must be greater than starting port).
comment	Enter a string (less than 11 characters) as a comment.
status	Show the current status.

Example

```
> wan lbel 1 1 tcp 0 1 0 300 testforload
> wan lbel status 1
 list[1] status:enable, protocol:tcp, IP type:any, IP idx:0, port:0~300, comment
:testforload
 list[2] status:enable, protocol:udp, IP type:any, IP idx:0, port:19302~19302, c
omment:Google STUN
 list[3] status:enable, protocol:tcp+udp, IP type:any, IP idx:0, port:5060~5060,
 comment:SIP
 list[4] status:disable, protocol:tcp, IP type:any, IP idx:0, port:80~80, commen
t:HTTP
 list[5] status:disable, protocol:tcp, IP type:any, IP idx:0, port:443~443, comm
ent:SSL
...
```

Telnet Command: wan mvlan

This command allows you to configure multi-VLAN for WAN and LAN. It supports pure bridge mode (modem mode) between Ethernet WAN and LAN port 2~4.

Syntax

wan mvlan *<pvc_no/ status/ save/ enable/ disable> <on/ off/ clear/ tag tag_no> <service type/ vlan priority> <px ... >*

wan mvlan *keeptag <pvc_no> <on/ off>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
pvc_no	It means index number of PVC. There are 8 PVC, 0(Channel-1) to 7(Channel-8) allowed to be configured. However, bridge mode can be set on PVC number 2 to 7.
status	It means to display the whole Bridge status.
save	It means to save the configuration into flash of Vigor router.
enable/ disable	It means to enable/disable the Multi-VLAN function.
on/ off	It means to turn on/off bridge mode for the specific channel.
clear	It means to turn off/clear the port.
tag tag_no	It means to tag a number for the VLAN. -1: No need to add tag number. 1-4095: Available setting numbers used as tagged number.
service type	It means to specify the service type for VLAN. 0: Normal. 1: IGMP.

vlan priority	It means to specify the priority for the VALN setting. Range is from 0 to 7.
px	It means LAN port. Available setting number is from 2 to 4. Port number 1 is locked for NAT usage.
keeptag	It means Multi-VLAN packets will keep their VLAN headers to LAN.

Example

PVC 7 will map to LAN port 2/3/4 in bridge mode; service type is Normal. No tag added.

```
> wan mvlan 7 on p2 p3 p4
PVC  Bridge  p1 p2 p3 p4 p5   Service Type    Tag     Priority    Keep Tag
 ---------------------------------------------------------------------
   7  ON      0  0  1  1  0  0      Normal      0(OFF)      0       OFF
>
```

Telnet Command: wan multifno

This command allows you to specify a channel (in Multi-PVC/VLAN) to make bridge connection to a specified WAN interface.

Syntax

wan multifno *<channel #><WAN interface #>*

wan multifno *status*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
channel #	There are several channels including VLAN and PVC. Available settings are: 7 to 16 Available settings are: 7=Channel 7 ... 16=Channel 16
WAN interface #	Type a number to indicate the WAN interface. *1=WAN1* *2=WAN2*
status	It means to display current bridge status.

Example

```
> wan multifno 5 1
> wan multifno 7 1
% Configured channel 7 uplink to WAN1
> wan multifno status
% Channel 7 uplink ifno: 3
% Channel 8 uplink ifno: 3
% Channel 9 uplink ifno: 3
% Channel 10 uplink ifno: 3
% Channel 11 uplink ifno: 3
% Channel 12 uplink ifno: 3
% Channel 13 uplink ifno: 3
% Channel 14 uplink ifno: 3
```

```
% Channel 15 uplink ifno: 3
>
```

Telnet Command: wan vlan

This command allows you to configure the VLAN tag of WAN1 or WAN2.

Syntax

wan vlan wan <*#*> **tag** <*value*>
wan vlan wan *<#> <enable/ disable>*
wan vlan stat

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
wan <#>	Specify which WAN interface will be tagged.
tag <value>	Type a number for tagging on WAN interface.
enable/ disable	Enable: Specified WAN interface will be tagged. Disable: Disable the function of tagging on WAN interface.
stat	Display current VLAN status.

Example

```
> wan vlan stat
% Interface    Pri     Tag    Enabled
% ======================================
% WAN1         0       0
% WAN2         0       0
% WAN3         0       0
% WAN4         0       0
>
```

Telnet Command: wan phyvlan

This command is used to set VLAN tag insertion for outer tag (service) for WAN interface.

WAN interfaces must be configured first before setting VLAN encapsulation.

Syntax

wan phyvlan wan *<#>* **tag** <*value*>
wan phyvlan wan *<#>* **pri** <*value*>
wan phyvlan wan *<#> <enable/ disable>*
wan phyvlan stat

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<#>	It means WAN interface. 1 ~4 - WAN1 ~ WAN4
tag <value>	It means to tag a value (1 to 4095) onto the selected WAN interface.
pri <value>	It means to set value (0 to 7) for priority for such VLAN tag.
<enable/ disable>	It means to enable / disable the VLAN tag.
stat	Display the setting status.

Example

```
> wan phyvlan wan 1 tag 22
% Set physical port tag to 22 for WAN1
% Set physical port tag to 22 for WAN1
% You need to reboot router making config effective
> wan phyvlan wan 1 enable
% Set physical port tag to 22 for WAN1
% Set physical port tag to 22 for WAN1
% You need to reboot router making config effective
> wan phyvlan stat ?

% Interface    Pri     Tag    Enabled
% ======================================
% WAN1          0       0
% WAN2          0       0
% WAN3          0       0
% WAN4          0       0
>
```

Telnet Command: wan budget

This command allows you determine the data *traffic volume* for each WAN interface respectively to prevent from overcharges for data transmission by the ISP.

Syntax

wan budget wan <*#*> **rdate** *<day><hour>*
wan budget wan <*#*> *<enable/ disable>*
wan budget wan <*#*> **thres** *<budget limit (MB)>*
wan budget wan <*#*> **gthres** *<budget limit (GB)>*
wan budget wan <*#*> **mode** *<monthly| periodic| none>*
wan budget wan <*#*> **psday** *<th day in periodic>*
wan budget wan <*#*> **custom_mode** *<0/ 1>*
wan budget wan <*#*> **custom_mode_reset_hour** *<hour>*
wan budget wan <*#*> **action** *<action bitmap>*
wan budget status

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
wan <#> rdate <day><hour>	wan <#>: Specify the WAN interface. *rdate <day><hour>:* Specify the WAN budget refresh time. day – Available settings are from 1 to 30. hour – Available settings are from 1 to 23. E.g., `wan budget wan 1 rdate 5 10` If monthy mode is selected: WAN budget will be refreshed on 5th day at 10:00 in each month. If periodic mode is selected: WAN budget will be refreshed every 5 days and 10 hours.
<enable| disable>	enable - Enable the function of wan budget. disable - Disable the function of wan budget.
thres <budget limit (MB)>	Specify the maximum value for WAN budget limit. (Unit: MB) budget limit – Type a number.
gthres <budget limit (GB)>	Specify the maximum value of wan budget limit. (Unit: GB)

	budget limit – Type a number.
mode <monthly| periodic| none>	Specify the calculation mode (monthly, periodically, or none) for WAN budget.
psday <th day in periodic>	It is used only when mode is set with “periodic”. Specify the order of “today” in the cycle. E.g., `wan budget wan 5 psday` → It means “today” is the 5th day in the billing cycle.
custom_mode <0/ 1>	Set the custom mode (cycle in hours or in days). 0: cycle_in_hours 1: cycle_in_days
custom_mode_reset_hour <hour>	Set the reset hour value. hour: Enter 1 to 23.
action <action bitmap>	Determine the action to be performed when it reaches the WAN budget limit. *action bitmap* –Type a total number of actions to be executed. Different numbers represent different actions. 1: shotdown wan 2: send mail alert 4: send sms alert For example, if you type “5” (5=1+4), the system will send SMS alert when WAN shotdown is detected.
status	Display current configuration status of WAN budget.

Example

```
> wan budget wan 1 action 5
% WAN 1 budget action set to 5
> wan budget wan 1 gthres 10
% WAN 1 budget limit set to 10 GB
```

Telnet Command: wan detect_mtu

This command allows you to run a WAN MTU Discovery. The user can specify an IPv4 target to ping and find the suitable MTU size of the WAN interface.

Syntax

wan detect_mtu *-i <Host/ IP address> -s <mtu_size> -d <decrease size> -w <WAN number> -c <1~10>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-i <Host/ IP address>	Specify the IPv4 target to detect. If can be an IPv4 address or domain name. Host/IP address: Enter the IP address/domain name of the target.
-s <mtu_size>	Set the MTU size base for Discovery. base_size: Available setting is 1000 ~ 1500.
-d <decrease size>	Set the MTU size to decrease between detections. decrease size: Available setting is 1 ~ 100.
-w <wan number>	Specify the WAN interface. Value: Enter the number of WAN interface. 1: WAN1; 2:WAN2….and etc.
-c <value>	Set the maximum times of ping failure during a Discovery. count: Available settings are 1 ~ 10. Default value is 3.

Example

```
> wan detect_mtu –w 2 –i 8.8.8.8 –s 1500 –d 30 –c 10
 detecting  mtu size:1500!!!

 mtu size:1470!!!
```

Telnet Command: wan detect_mtu6

This command allows you to run a WAN MTU Discovery. The user can specify an IPv6 target to ping and find the suitable MTU size of the WAN interface.

Syntax

wan detect_mtu6 *-i <Host/ IP address> -s <mtu_size> -w <WAN number>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-I <host/ IPv6 address>	Specify the IPv6 target to detect. It must be an IPv6 IP address or host name. IPv6 address: Type the IPv6 address of the target.
-s <base_size>	Specify the size of MTU. base_size: Available setting is 1280 ~ 1500.
-w <number>	Specify the WAN interface number: Enter the number of WAN interface. 1: WAN1; 2:WAN2….and etc.

Example

```
> wan detect_mtu6 –w 2 –i 2404:6800:4008:c06::5e –s 1500
>
```

Telnet Command: wan failover

This command is used to configure failover WAN.

Syntax

wan failover off *<index>*

wan failover on *<1><2><3><4><5><6>*

wan failover show *<index>*

wan failover newlb *<index><arg>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
failover off <index>	Set specified WAN interface to always on. index – Ranges from 1 to 6.
failover on <1><2><3><4><5><6>	There are six fields which represent different options. Field 1 – Specify WAN interface as failover WAN by typing 1 to 4. Field 2 – Enable / disable the action for the failover WAN. Such action is “Active When selected WAN [disconnect/reached traffic threshold]”. 0 – Disable

	1 - Enable Field 3 - Enable / disable the action for the failover WAN. Such action is "Active When [any/all] of selected WAN disconnect or reached traffic threshold". 0 – Disable 1 - Enable Field 4 – Specify main WAN by typing 1 to 4. The main WAN will be set to always on. Field 5 – Specify traffic threshold [Download threshold(Kbps)]. Field 6 - Specify traffic threshold [Upload threshold (Kbps)]. For example, WAN 2 will be set as failover, and will be active when any of selected WANs has reached traffic threshold. WAN 4 is the selected WAN. Download threshold : 50 Kbpsl; Upload threshold : 20 Kbps. You can type as follows: *wan failover on 2 1 0 4 50 20*
show <index>	Display parameters settings for WAN interface. index – Ranges from 1 to 6.
newlb <index><arg>	Set the latency, jitter, packet loss threshold of the WAN interface. index - 1 to 6 arg - lists as follows: -a [all] : 0=any meet, 1=all meet. -u [check] : 0=n/a, 1=check upload. -d [check] : 0=n/a, 1=check download. -l [check] : 0=n/a, 1=check latency. -j [check] : 0=n/a, 1=check jitter. -p[check] : 0=n/a, 1=check packet loss. -m[value] : upload threshold value. -n [value] : download threshold value. -x [value] : latency threshold value. -y [value] : jitter threshold value. -z [value] : packet loss threshold value.

Example

```
> wan failover on 2 1 0 4 50 20
> wan failover show 2
   wan2 Active Mode : Failover
      Active when : Any of the selected WANs reached the Traffic
Threshold
      Traffic Download Threshold : 50 Kbps
      Traffic Upload Threshold   : 20 Kbps
>
```

Telnet Command: hsportal setup

This command is used to configure a profile (Hotspot Web Portal) with specified URL for accessing into or display a message when a wireless/LAN user connects to Internet through this router.

Syntax

hsportal setup -p *<profile> [-l <lan>] [-s <ssid>] ...*

hsportal setup -p *<profile> -c*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-p <profile>	Indicate available profile to be configured. <profile>: Enter the index number (1 to 4) of the profile.
-l	Apply to LAN interfaces (1 to 8). For example: hsportal setup -p 1 -l 1, 2 (apply LAN1 and LAN2)
-s	Apply to WLAN interfaces (1 to 4). For example: hsportal setup -p 1 -s 1, 2 (apply SSID1 and SSID2)
-a	Apply to WLAN5G interfaces (1 to 4). For example: hsportal setup -p 1 -a 1, 2 (apply SSID1 and SSID2)
-m	Select login mode. 0: skip 1: click 2: social 3: pin 4: social or pin For example: hsportal setup -p 1 -m 0
-f <0/1>	It menas to enable or disable the function of Configure facebook login. 0: disable. 1: enable.
-g <0/1>	It menas to enable or disable the function of Configure google login. 0: disable. 1: enable.
-h <0/1>	It menas to enable or disable the function of HTTPS redirection. 0: disable. 1: enable.
-v <0/1>	It menas to enable or disable the function of portal detection. 0: disable. 1: enable.
-i <string>	It means to set APP ID. <string>: Enter a string as APP ID. For example, to configure facebook APP id, you can type: > hsportal set -p 1 -f 1 -i this_is_app_id Profile 1 set facebook login enabled ... [OK] Profile 1 set API ID ... [OK]
-k <string>	It means to set APP key. <string>: Enter a string as APP key. For example, to configure google APP key, you can type: > hsportal set -p 1 -g 1 -k keyforapp Profile 1 set google login enabled ... [OK] Profile 1 set API KEY ... [OK]
-r <0/1/2>	It means to set landing page mode. 0: fixed URL. 1: user request. 2: bulletin. For example, > hsportal set -p 1 -r 0 Profile 1 set landing page mode 0 ... [OK]
-e	Enable the specified profile.

-d	Disable the specified profile.
-c <1/2/3/4>	Reset the specified profile. <1/2/3/4>: Enter the index number of profile. For example, > hsportal set -p 1 -c Reset profile 1 ... [OK]
-o	Clear profiles for all clients.
-t <value>	Set the expire time for the specified profile. <value>: Enter a number of time period (unit: minutes). For example, k> hsportal setup -p 1 -t 300 Profile 1 set expire time 300 mins ... [OK]

Example

```
> hsportal setup –p 1 –c
Reset profile 1 ... [OK]
> hsportal setup –p 1 –r 0
Profile 1 set landing page mode 0 ... [OK]
> hsportal setup –p 2 –g 1 –k app_key_google
Profile 2 set google login enabled ... [OK]
Profile 2 set API KEY  ... [OK]
>
```

Telnet Command: hsportal info

This command allows the user to configure settings for hotspot database.

Syntax

hsportal info *<-e / -c / -n / -a / -m / -s>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-e <0/ 1>	It means to enable or disable the database to record information. 0: disable. 1: enable.
-c	It means to clear User information database.
-n <0/ 1>	It means to enable or disable the notification for user information. 0: disable. 1: enable.
-a <0/ 1>	It means to enable or disable the function of auto backup and start a new record for user information. 0: disable. 1: enable.
-m <value>	It means to set email notification object. <value>: Enter the index number (1 to 10) of email notification objects.
-s <value>	It means to set SMS provider object. <value>: Enter the index number (1 to 10) of the SMS server object for sending mail out when the database storage exceeded.

Example

```
> hsportal info –e 1
Enabled database to record information ... [OK]
> hsportal info –n 1
Enabled notification for user information ... [OK]
> hsportal info –a 1
Enabled auto backup and start a new record for user information ... [OK]
> hsportal info –m 1
Email notification object set ok.
>
```

Telnet Command: hsportal level

This command allows the user to configure bandwidth and sessions quota which is only applicable to the web portal clients.

Syntax

hsportal level *-p <index> [-e <enable>] [-t <mins>] ...*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-p <index>	It means to specify (add) a quota policy profile. <index>: Enter the index number (1 to 20) of the quota policy profile.
-e <0/ 1>	It means to enable or disable the quota policy profile. 0: disable. 1: enable.
-t <value>	It means to set expired time for quota policy. <value>: Enter a number (unit:minutes).
-i <0/ 1> -o <value>	It means to enable or disable the function of idle timeout 0: disable. 1: enable. If enabled, -o <value>: Set the idle timeout (unit:minutes) if idle timeout is enabled. For example: hsportal level -p 1 -e 1 -i 1 -o 300
-d <value>	It means to set the maximum number of devices that can be connected to the network using the same account. <value>: Enter a number (0 to 100). "0" means unlimited. For example: hsportal level -p 1 -e 1 -d 0
-b <0/ 1>	It means to enable or disable the function of bandwidth limit. 0: disable. 1: enable.
-ru <0/ 1>	It means to specify the bandwidth limit download unit. 0: kbps 1: mbps
-tu <0/ 1>	It means to specify the bandwidth limit upload unit. 0: kbps. 1: mbps.
-s <0/ 1>	It means to enable or disable the session limit. 0:disable.

	1:enable.
-n <value>	It means to set a maximum session limit. <value>: Enter a value (0 to 6000). For example: hsportal level -p 1 -s 1 -n
-U <kbps/ mbps>	It means to specify the bandwidth upload limit. kbps mbps
-D <kbps/ mbps>	It means to specify the bandwidth download limit. kbps mbps
-c <index>	It means to delete a quota policy profile. <index>: Enter the index number (1 to 20) of the quota policy profile.
-r <0/ 1>	It means to enable or disable the function of reconnection time restriction. 0:disable. 1:enable.
-f <value>	It means to set a period of time to block the same user reconnecting to the network. <value>: Enter a number (1 to 1439 minutes). For example: hsportal level -p 1 -e 1 -r 1 -f 300
-g <value>	It means to set a reconnection time to block the same user from reconnecting before the set time. <value>: Enter the hour (01 to 23) and the minutes (0~59) (unit: minutes). For example: hsportal level -p 1 -e 1 -r 1 -f 23:15 (The same user can reconnect after 23:15 every day)

Example

```
> hsportal level -p 1 -e 1 -r 1 -f 30000
>
```

Telnet Command: hsportal pin_gen

This command is for future use.

Telnet Command: hsportal json_pin_gen

This command allows the user to configure JSON settings for getting the PIN code.

Syntax

json_pin_gen *<enable/ disable/ status>*

json_pin_gen authCode *<authCode>*

json_pin_gen ipFilter *<enable/ disable/ status>*

json_pin_gen ipv4Filter *<FilterIdx> <obj> <ObjIndex>*

json_pin_gen ipv6Filter *<FilterIdx> <obj> <ObjIndex>*

json_pin_gen ipv4Filter *<FilterIdx> clear*

json_pin_gen ipv6Filter *<FilterIdx> clear*

json_pin_gen AccFromInternet *<enable/ disable/ status>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
json_pin_gen <enable/ disable/ status>	It means to enable/disable the function of JSON get pin code.
json_pin_gen authCode <authCode>	It means to set authentication code for JSON pin code mechanism. <authCode> - Enter a string as identity authentication.
json_pin_gen ipFilter <enable/ disable/ status>	It means to enable/disable the authentication based on the IPv4 or IPv6 object.
json_pin_gen ipv4Filter <FilterIdx> <obj> <ObjIndex>	It means to set IPv4 object for authentication. <Filteridx> - Specify the index number of the IPv4 object profile. <obj> - Ranges from 1 to 10. Ten objects can be set. <ObjIndex> - Enter the index number of the IPv4 object profile.
json_pin_gen ipv6Filter <FilterIdx> <obj> <ObjIndex>	It means to set IPv6 object for authentication. <Filteridx> - Specify the index number of the IPv6 object profile. <obj> - Ranges from 1 to 10. Ten objects can be set. <ObjIndex> - Enter the index number of the IPv6 object profile.
json_pin_gen ipv4Filter <FilterIdx> clear	It means to clear IPv4 object filter. <Filteridx> - Specify the index number of the IPv4 object profile.
json_pin_gen ipv6Filter <FilterIdx> clear	It means to clear IPv6 object filter. <Filteridx> - Specify the index number of the IPv6 object profile.
json_pin_gen AccFromInternet <enable/ disable/ status>	It means to set Generate pin code From Internet mechanism.

Example

```
> hsportal json_pin_gen enable
 json get pincode mechanism : enable
> hsportal json_pin_gen authCode passcode1
 Set the authCode
```

Telnet Command: wl acl

This command allows the user to configure wireless access control settings.

Syntax

wl acl enable *<ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4>*

wl acl disable *<ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4>*

wl acl add *<MAC><ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4><comment><isolate>*

wl acl del <*MAC>*

wl acl mode *<ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4><white/ black>*

wl acl show

wl acl showmode

wl acl clear

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
enable <ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4>	It means to enable the settings for SSID1, SSID2, SSID3 and SSID4.
disable <ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4>	It means to disable the settings for SSID1, SSID2, SSID3 and SSID4.
add <MAC><ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4><comment><isolate>	It means to associate a MAC address to certain SSID interfaces' access control settings. The isolate setting will limit the wireless client's network capabilities to accessing the wireless LAN only. [MAC] format: xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx or xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx or xx.xx.xx.xx.xx.xx
del<MAC>	It means to delete a MAC address entry defined in the access control list.
mode <ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4><white/black>	It means to set white/black list for each SSID.
show	It means to show access control status.
showmode	It means to show the mode for each SSID.
clear	It means to clean all access control setting.

Example

```
> wl acl showmode
 ssid1: none
 ssid2: none
 ssid3: none
 ssid4: none
> wl acl add 14:49:BC:0D:8F:00 ssid1 ssid2 test isolate
 Set Done !!
> wl acl show
----------Mac Address Filter Status---------
 SSID1: Disable
 SSID2: Disable
 SSID3: Disable
 SSID4: Disable

 ----------MAC Address List----------
 Index   Attribute      MAC Address        Associated SSIDs        Comment
   1       s          14:49:bc:0d:8f:00   SSID1 SSID2            test

 s: Isolate the station from LAN
>
```

Telnet Command: wl config

This command allows users to configure general settings and security settings for wireless connection.

Syntax

wl config mode *<value>*

wl config mode show
wl config channel *<number>*
wl config channel show
wl config preamble *<enable>*
wl config txburst *<enable>*
wl config ssid *<ssid_num enable ssid_name <hidden_ssid>>*
wl config security *<SSID_NUMBER><mode>*
wl config ratectl *<ssid_num enable upload download >*
wl config isolate *<ssid_num lan member>*
wl config dtim *<value>/ show*
wl config beaconperiod *<value> / show*
wl config radio *<1/ 0>/ show*
wl config frag *<value>/ show*
wl config rts *<value> / show*
wl config rate_alg *<value> / show*
wl config country *<value> / show*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
mode <value>	It means to select connection mode for wireless connection. Available settings are: "11bgn", "11gn", "11n", "11bg", "11g", or "11b".
mode show	It means to display what the current wireless mode is.
channel <number>	It means the channel of frequency of the wireless LAN. The available settings are 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11,12 and 13. number=0, means Auto number=1, means Channel 1 …. number=13, means Channel 13.
preamble <enable>	It means to define the length of the sync field in an 802.11 packet. Most modern wireless network uses short preamble with 56 bit sync field instead of long preamble with 128 bit sync field. However, some original 11b wireless network devices only support long preamble. 0: disable to use long preamble. 1: enable to use long preamble.
txburst <enable>	It means to enhance the performance in data transmission about 40%* more (by enabling **Tx Burst**). It is active only when both sides of Access Point and Station (in wireless client) invoke this function at the same time. 0: disable the function. 1: enable the funciton.
ssid <ssid_num enable ssid_name <hidden_ssid>>	It means to set the name of the SSID, hide the SSID if required. *ssid_num:* Type 1, 2, 3 or 4 to specify SSID1, SSID2, SSID3 or SSID4. *ssid_name*: Give a name for the specified SSID. *hidden_ssid*: Type 0 to hide the SSID or 1 to display the SSID
security <SSID_NUMBER><mode><key ><index>	It means to configure security settings for the wirelesss connection. *SSID_NUMBER*: Type 1, 2, 3 or 4 to specify SSID1, SSID2, SSID3 or SSID4. *mode*: Available settings are: disable: No security.

	wpa1x: WPA/802.1x Only wpa21x: WPA2/802.1x Only wpamix1x: Mixed (WPA+WPA2/802.1x only) wep1x: WEP/802.1x Only wpapsk: WPA/PSK wpa2psk: WPA2/PSK wpamixpsk: Mixed (WPA+WPA2)/PSK wep: WEP *key, index*: Moreover, you have to add keys for *wpapsk, wpa2psk, wpamixpsk* and *wep*, and specify index number of schedule profiles to be followed by the wireless connection. WEP keys must be in 5/13 ASCII text string or 10/26 Hexadecimal digit format; WPA keys must be in 8~63 ASCII text string or 64 Hexadecimal digit format.
ratectl <ssid_num enable upload download>	It means to set the rate control for the specified SSID. *ssid_num:* Choose 1, 2, 3 or 4 to specify SSID1, SSID2, SSID3 or SSID4. *enable*: It means to enable the function of the rate control for the specified SSID. 0: disable and 1:enable. *upload*: It means to configure the rate control for data upload. The unit is kbps. *download*: It means to configure the rate control for data download. The unit is kbps.
isolate <ssid_num lan member>	It means to isolate the wireless connection for LAN and/or Member. *lan* – It can make the wireless clients (stations) with remote-dial and LAN to LAN users not accessing for each other. *member* – It can make the wireless clients (stations) with the same SSID not accessing for each other.
dtim <value> / show	Set the DTIM value. value: 1 to 255 show: Display the DTIM setting.
beaconperiod <value> / show	Set the beaconperiod value. value: 20 to 1023 (milli-second) show: Display the beaconperiod etting.
radio <1/ 0>/ show	Enble or disable the wireless radio. 1/0: Type 1 to enable; 0 to disable. show: Display the radio setting.
frag <value>/ show	Set the fragment value. value: 256 to 2346 show: Display the fragment setting.
rts <value> / show	Set the RTS value. value: 1 to 2347 show: Display the RTS setting.
rate_alg <value>/ show	Set the algorithm for ALG rate. value: 0 for old algorithm; 1 for new algorithm. show: Display the ALG rate setting.
country <value>/ show	Set the country code for a country. value: two capital letters, e.g., TW, UK show: Display the country cod setting.

Example

```
> wl config mode 11bgn
```

```
 Current mode is 11bgn
% <Note> Please restart wireless after you set the channel
> wl config channel 13
 Current channel is 13
% <Note> Please restart wireless after you set the channel.
> wl config preamble 1
 Long preamble is enabled
% <Note> Please restart wireless after you set the parameters.
> wl config ssid 1 enable dray
 SSID  Enable  Hide_SSID  Name
 1     1       0         dray
% <Note> Please restart wireless after you set the parameters.
> wl config security 1 wpa1x
%% Configured Wlan Security Setting:
% SSID1
%%  Mode: wpa1x
%% Wireless card must be reset for configurations to take effect
%% (Telnet Command: wl restart)
> wl config country TW
 Set wireless country code TW
% <Note> Please restart wireless after you set the parameters.
```

Telnet Command: wl set

This command allows users to configure basic wireless settings.

Syntax

wl set *<SSID><CHAN[En]>*

wl set txburst *<enable>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
SSID	It means to Enter the SSID for the router. The maximum character that you can use is 32.
CHAN[En]	It means to specify required channel for the router. *CHAN:* The range for the number is between 1 ~ 13. *En*: type *on* to enable the function; type *off* to disable the function.
txburst <enable>	It means to enhance the performance in data transmission about 40%* more (by enabling **Tx Burst**). It is active only when both sides of Access Point and Station (in wireless client) invoke this function at the same time. 0: disable the function. 1: enable the function.

Example

```
> wl set MKT 2 on
% New Wlan Setting is:
% SSID=MKT
% Chan=2
% Wl is Enable
```

Telnet Command: wl act

This command allows users to activate wireless settings.

Syntax

wl act *<En>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
En	It means to enable or disable the function of VPN isolation. 0: diable 1: enable

Example

```
> wl act on
% Set Wlan to Enable.
```

Telnet Command: wl scan

This command allows users to perform AP scanning.

Syntax

wl scan *<start>*
wl scan *set* *<wlist/blist> <MAC>*
wl scan *set* *< stime> <time>*
wl scan *del* *<wlist/blist><MAC>*
wl scan *filter* *<ssid/channel/mac>*
wl scan *show* *<0/1/2/3/4/5>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
start	It means to start AP scanning.
set <wlist/blist> <MAC>	Set white list/block list/scan time. *wlist* –It means to set white list for passing. MAC address must be added in the end. e.g., *wl scan set wlist 001122aabbcc* *blist* –It means to set black list for blocking. MAC address must be added in the end.
set <stime> <time>	Set the scan time. stime –It means to set scanning time. time - Time value (2~5 second) must be added in the end. e.g., *wl scan set time 5*
del <wlist/blist><MAC>	Remove white list/block list. e.g., *wl scan del wlist 001122aabbcc*
filter <ssid/channel/mac>	Set which filter you want. *ssid* –scanning the AP based on SSID setting. *channel* - scanning the AP based on channel setting. *mac* - scanning the AP based on MAC address setting..
show <0/1/2/3/4/5>	It is used to show AP list. 0 - display white list

	1 - display block list, 2 - display gray/unknown list, 3 - display all list 4. white list(in config) 5. block list(in config) Note : 0~3 is the list router scan, 4~5 is the list stored in config.

Example

```
> wl scan set wlist 001122aabbcc
> wl scan start
> wl scan show 3
>
```

Telnet Command: wl stamgt

This command is used to configure connection time and reconnection time for each SSID that wireless client used for accessing into Internet.

Syntax

wl stamgt *<enable/ disable> <ssid_num>*

wl stamgt *show <ssid_num>*

wl stamgt *set <ssid_num> <c> <r>*

wl stamgt *reset <ssid_num>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
enable/ disable	It means to enable/disable the station management control.
ssid_num	It means channel selection. Available channel for 2.4G: 0/1/2/3 Available channel for 5G: 4/5/6/7.
show	It means to display status or configuration of the selected channel.
c	It means connection time. The unit is minute.
r	It means reconnection time. The unit is minute.

Example

```
> wl stamgt enable 1
% Station Management Status: enabled
> wl stamgt set 1 60 60
> wl stamgt show 1
NO. SSID           BSSID              Connect time  Reconnect time
1.  Draytek      00:11:22:aa:bb:cc  0d:0:58:26      0d:0:0
```

Telnet Command: wl iso_vpn

This command allows users to activate the function of VPN isolation.

Syntax

wl iso_vpn *<ssid> <En>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
ssid	It means the number of SSID. 1: SSID1 2: SSID2 3: SSID3 4: SSID4
En	It means to enable or disable the function of VPN isolation. 0: disable 1: enable

Example

```
> wl iso_vpn 1 on
% ssid: 1 isolate vpn on :1
```

Telnet Command: wl wmm

This command allows users to set WMM for wireless connection. It defines the priority levels for four access categories derived from 802.1d (prioritization tabs).

Syntax

wl wmm ap *QueIdx Aifsn Cwmin Cwmax Txop ACM*

wl wmm bss *QueIdx Aifsn Cwmin Cwmax Txop ACM*

wl wmm ack *Que0_Ack Que1_Ack Que2_Ack Que3_Ack*

wl wmm enable *SSID0 SSID1 SSID2 SSID3*

wl wmm apsd *value*

wl wmm show

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
ap	It means to set WMM for access point.
bss	It means to set WMM for wireless clients.
ack	It means to map to the Ack policy settings of AP WMM.
enable	It means to enable the WMM for each SSID. 0: disable 1: enable
apsd <value>	It means to enable / disable the ASPD(automatic power-save delivery) function. 0: disable 1: enable
show	It displays current status of WMM.
QueIdx	It means the number of the queue which the WMM settings will be applied to. There are four queues, best effort, background, voice, and video.
Aifsn	It controls how long the client waits for each data transmission.
Cwmin/ Cwmax	**CWMin** means contention Window-Min and **CWMax** means contention Window-Max. Specify the value ranging from 1 to 15.
Txop	It means transmission opportunity. Specify the value ranging from 0 to 65535.
ACM	It can restrict stations from using specific category class if it is

	enabled. 0: disable 1: enable

Example

```
> wl wmm ap 0 3 4 6 0 0
 QueIdx=0: APAifsn=3,APCwmin=4,APCwmax=6, APTxop=0,APACM=0
> wl wmm enable 1 0 1 0
 WMM_SSID0 =1, WMM_SSID1 =0,WMM_SSID2 =1,WMM_SSID3 =0
> wl wmm show
 Enable WMM: SSID0 =1, SSID1 =0,SSID2 =1,SSID3 =0
 APSD=0
 QueIdx=0: APAifsn=3,APCwmin=4,APCwmax=6, APTxop=0,APACM=0
 QueIdx=1: APAifsn=7,APCwmin=4,APCwmax=10, APTxop=0,APACM=0
 QueIdx=2: APAifsn=1,APCwmin=3,APCwmax=4, APTxop=94,APACM=0
 QueIdx=3: APAifsn=1,APCwmin=2,APCwmax=3, APTxop=47,APACM=0
 QueIdx=0: BSSAifsn=3,BSSCwmin=4,BSSCwmax=10, BSSTxop=0,BSSACM=0
 QueIdx=1: BSSAifsn=7,BSSCwmin=4,BSSCwmax=10, BSSTxop=0,BSSACM=0
 QueIdx=2: BSSAifsn=2,BSSCwmin=3,BSSCwmax=4, BSSTxop=94,BSSACM=0
 QueIdx=3: BSSAifsn=2,BSSCwmin=2,BSSCwmax=3, BSSTxop=47,BSSACM=0
 AckPolicy[0]=0: AckPolicy[1]=0,AckPolicy[2]=0,AckPolicy[3]=0
```

Telnet Command: wl ht

This command allows you to configure wireless settings.

Syntax

wl ht bw *value*
wl ht gi *value*
wl ht badecline *value*
wl ht autoba *value*
wl ht rdg *value*
wl ht msdu *value*
wl ht txpower *value*
wl ht antenna *value*
wl ht greenfield *value*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
bw value	The value you can type is 0 (for BW_20) and 1 (for BW_40).
gi value	The value you can type is 0 (for GI_800) and 1 (for GI_4001)
badecline value	The value you can type is 0 (for disabling) and 1 (for enabling).
autoba value	The value you can type is 0 (for disabling) and 1 (for enabling).
rdg value	The value you can type is 0 (for disabling) and 1 (for enabling).
msdu value	The value you can type is 0 (for disabling) and 1 (for enabling).
txpower value	The value you can type ranges from 1 – 6 (level).
antenna value	The value you can type ranges from 0-3. 0: 2T3R 1: 2T2R

	2: 1T2R 3: 1T1R
greenfield value	The value you can type is 0 (for mixed mode) and 1 (for green field).

Example

```
> wl ht bw value 1
 BW=0
 <Note> Please restart wireless after you set new parameters.
> wl restart
 Wireless restart.................
```

Telnet Command: wl restart

This command allows you to restart wireless setting.

Example

```
> wl restart
 Wireless restart.................
```

Telnet Command: wl wds

This command allows you to configure WDS settings.

Syntax

wl wds mode *[value]*
wl wds security *[value]*
wl wds ap *[value]*
wl wds hello *[value]*
wl wds status
wl wds show
wl wds mac *[value]*
wl wds flush

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
mode [value]	It means to specify connection mode for WDS. [value]: Available settings are : d: Disable b: Bridge r: Repeapter
security [value]	It means to configure security mode with encrypted keys for WDS. *mode*: Available settings are: disable: No security. wep: WEP wpapsk [key]: WPA/PSK wpa2psk [key]: WPA2/PSK *key*: Moreover, you have to add keys for *wpapsk, wpa2psk,* and *wep*, and specify index number of schedule profiles to be followed by the wireless connection. WEP keys must be in 5/13 ASCII text string or 10/26 Hexadecimal digit format; WPA keys must be in 8~63 ASCII text string or 64 Hexadecimal digit format. e.g.,

	wl dual wds security disable *wl dual wds security wep 12345* *wl dual wds security wpa2psk 12345678*
ap [value]	It means to enable or disable the AP function. Value: 1 – enable the function. 0 – disable the function.
hello [value]	It means to send hello message to remote end (peer). Value: 1 – enable the function. 0 – disable the function.
status	It means to display WDS link status for 2.4GHz connection.
show	It means to display current WDS settings.
mac add [index addr]	add *[index addr]* –Add the peer MAC entry in Repeater/Bridge WDS MAC table.
mac clear/disable/enable [index/all]	clear/disable/enable *[index/all]*- Clear, disable, enable the specifed or all MAC entries in Repeater/Bridge WDS MAC table. e.g, *wl dual wds mac enable 1*
flush	It means to reset all WDS setting.

Example

```
> wl wds status
Please enable WDS hello function first.

> wl wds hello 1
% <Note> Please restart router after you set the parameters.

> wl wds status
```

Telnet Command: wl apcli

This command allows users to configure AP client mode for wireless connection (2.4GHz).

Syntax

wl apcli show
wl apcli enable *<1/0>*
wl apcli security *<mode>*
wl apcli ssid *<ssid_name>*
wl apcli bssid *<mac address>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
show	Display current status of wireless AP client.
enable <1/0>	It means to enable wireless 2.4GHz AP client mode. 1 – enable 0 – disable
security <mode>	There are several modes to be selected: Disable – disable the security settings. wpapsk [key] – WPA Pre-shared Key will be used. Keys must start with 0x to be identified as a Hexadecimal number key. WPA keys must be in 8~63 ASCII string or 64 Hexadecimal digit format. wpa2psk [key] – WPA2 Pre-shared Key will be used. Keys must start

	with 0x to be identified as a Hexadecimal number key. WPA keys must be in 8~63 ASCII string or 64 Hexadecimal digit format. wpamixpsk [key] – WPA Mixed Pre-shared Key will be used. Keys must start with 0x to be identified as a Hexadecimal number key. WPA keys must be in 8~63 ASCII string or 64 Hexadecimal digit format. wep [key] [index] – WEP key will be used. You need to Enter the key string and specify the index number of the profile to be applied. WEP keys must be in 5/13 ASCII string or 10/26 Hexadecimal digit format.
ssid <ssid_name>	Specify the SSID for wireless 2.4GHz AP client.
bssid <mac address>	Enter the MAC address for wireless 2.4GHz AP client.

Example

```
> wl apcli enable 1
Wireless AP-Clinet is enabled
> wl apcli show
% Wireless AP-Clinet is enabled
% Current SSID is test
%%  Security Mode: disable
% Wireless client is disconnected
%% data rate=---, mode=---, signal=0%
```

Telnet Command: wl btnctl

This command allows you to enable or disable wireless button control.

Syntax

wl btnctl *<value>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
value	0: disable 1: enable

Example

```
> wl btnctl 1
Enable wireless botton control
Current wireless botton control is on
>
```

Telnet Command: wl iwpriv

This command is reserved for RD debug. Do not use them.

Telnet Command: wl ce_cert

For sharing the wireless network, the WiFi clients can be authenticated by Vigor router with specific certificate.

Syntax

wl ce_cert *<on/off>[<command><parameter>|..]*

wl ce_cert performance

wl ce_cert *R61 <value>*

wl ce_cert *R61 show*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<on/off>	Enable or disable the certificate. on - Enable. off - Disable.
[<command><parameter>/..]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. *[..]* means that you can Enter several commands in one line. There are ten parameters; TxBurst HT_RDG HT_AutoBA HT_BADecline EDCCA_AP_STA_TH EDCCA_AP_AP_TH EDCCA_FALSE_CCA_TH EDCCA_ED_TH <value> - EDCCA_BLOCK_CHECK_TH EDCCA_AP_RSSI_TH
TxBurst <0/1>	Enable or disable the TxBurst feature. 1 - Enable; 0 - Disable
HT_RDG <0/1>	Enable or disable the HT_RDG feature. 1 - Enable; 0 - Disable
HT_AutoBA <0/1>	Enable or disable the HT_AutoBA feature. 1 - Enable; 0 - Disable
HT_BADecline <0/1>	Enable or disable the HT_BADecline feature. 1 - Enable; 0 - Disable
EDCCA_AP_STA_TH <value	Set a number for EDCCA_AP_STA_TH. <value> - Ranges from 1 to 255.
EDCCA_AP_AP_TH <value>	Set a number for EDCCA_AP_AP_TH. <value> - Ranges from 1 to 255.
EDCCA_FALSE_CCA_TH <value>	Set a number for EDCCA_FALSE_CCA_TH. <value> - Any number greater than 0 (integer).
EDCCA_ED_TH <value>	Set a number for EDCCA_ED_TH. <value> - Ranges from 1 to 255.
EDCCA_BLOCK_CHECK_TH <value>	Set a number for EDCCA_BLOCK_CHECK_TH. <value> - Any number greater than 0 (integer).
EDCCA_AP_RSSI_TH <value>	Set a number for EDCCA_AP_RSSI_TH. <value> - Ranges from 0 to 25.
performance	Show the parameters with the values for getting the best performance.
R61 <value>	Set a number for BBP_R61. <value> - Ranges from 1 to 10.
R61 show	Display R61 setting status.

Example

```
> wl ce_cert on 0 1 1 0 255 255 3000 90 8 -80
<Note> Please restart wireless after you set new parameters.
```

```
ED_CERT is enabled
TxBurst           :0 (default :0)
HT_RDG            :1 (default :0)
HT_AUTO_BA    :1 (default :1)
HT_BA_DECLINE     :0 (default :0)
EDCCA_AP_STA_TH       :255
EDCCA_AP_AP_TH        :255
EDCCA_FALSE_CCA_TH    :3000
EDCCA_ED_TH           :90
EDCCA_BLOCK_CHECK_TH  :8
EDCCA_AP_RSSI_TH      :-80
> wl ce_cert performance
Parameters for best performance :
ED_CERT is enabled
TxBurst      :0
HT_RDG       :1
HT_AUTO_BA   :1
HT_BA_DECLINE :0
EDCCA_AP_STA_TH    :20
EDCCA_AP_AP_TH     :20
EDCCA_FALSE_CCA_TH  :180
EDCCA_ED_TH        :90
EDCCA_BLOCK_CHECK_TH:2
EDCCA_AP_RSSI_TH   :-80
<Note> Please restart wireless.
>
```

Telnet Command: wl stalist

This command is used to display the wireless station which accessing Internet via Vigor router.

Syntax

wl stalist

Example

```
> wl stalist
wl stalist show    : show station list
wl stalist num     : show number of stations
wl stalist neighbor : show neighbor station list
```

Telnet Command: wl set8021x

This command allows you to configure the external or internal server used by Vigor router for wireless authentication.

Syntax

wl set8021x –t <*0/1*>

wl set8021x –v

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-t	Specify the type (external or internal) of wireless authentication server. 0 – Indicate the external RADIUS server. 1- Indicate the local 802.1x server.
-v	View the settings of 802.1x.

Example

```
> wl set8021x –t 1
% <Note> Please restart wireless after you set the parameters.
> wl set8021x –v
 802.1X type is : Local 802.1X
>
```

Telnet Command: wl bndstrg

This command allows users to configure settings for Band Steering (2.4GHz).

Syntax

wl bndstrg show

wl bndstrg enable *<1/0>*

wl bndstrg chk_time *<value>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
show	Display current status for Band Steering function.
enable<1/0>	It means to enable wireless 2.4GHz AP client mode. 1 – enable 0 – disable
chk_time <value>	If the wireless station does not have the capability of 5GHz network connection, the system shall wait and check for several seconds (15 seconds, in default) to make the 2.4GHz network connection. Specify the time limit for Vigor router to detect the wireless client. *[value] – 1 to 60 seconds.*

Example

```
> wl bndstrg show
band steering: disable
chk_time: 15 sec
> wl bndstrg chk_time 50 30
argv[0]:chk_time, argv[1]:50, argv[2]:30

%% Wireless card must be reset for configurations to take effect
%% (Telnet Command: wl restart)
```

Telnet Command: wl artfns

This command allows users to configure airtime fairness function for wireless (2.4GHz) connection.

Syntax

wl artfns enable *<value>*

wl artfns trg_num *<value>*

wl artfns show

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
enable <value>	It means to enable wireless airtime fairness function. 1 – enable 0 – disable
trg_num <value>	Set a threshold when the active station number achieves this number, the airtime fairness function will be applied. Available values will be 2 to 64.
show	Display current status (enable or disable) and triggering client number for airtime fairness function.

Example

```
> wl artfns enable 1
> wl artfns trg_num 3
> wl artfns show
airtime fairness: enable
trg_num: 3
>
```

Telnet Command: wl drayrs

This command allows the user to configure settings for Roaming for wireless clients.

Syntax

wl drayrs *set <mode><rs_low><rs_low_security><delta>*

wl drayrs *restart*

wl drayrs *show*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
set <mode> <rs_low> <rs_low_security><delta>	Select a mode for roaming. 0 - disable 1 - Strictly Minimum RSSI 2 - Minimum RSSI rs_low – Set a value of Strictly Minimum RSSI (62~86). rs_low_security – Set a value of Minimum RSSI (62~86). delta – Set a value of Adjacent AP RSSI (1~20).
restart	Restart to activate roaming function.
show	Dispaly current configuration of roaming function.

Example

```
> wl drayrs show
% Mode : Disable
%  rs_low         : -73
%  rs_low_secure  : -66
%  delta          : 5
>
```

Telnet Command: wl_dual acl

This command allows the user to configure wireless (5GHz) access control settings.

Syntax

wl_dual acl enable *<ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4>*

wl_dual acl disable *<ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4>*

wl_dual acl add *<MAC><ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4> <comment> isolate*

wl_dual acl del *<MAC>*

wl_dual acl mode *<ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4> <white/black>*

wl_dual acl show

wl_dual acl showmode

wl_dual acl clear

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
enable <ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4>	It means to enable the settings for SSID1, SSID2, SSID3 and SSID4.
disable <ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4>	It means to disable the settings for SSID1, SSID2, SSID3 and SSID4.
add <MAC><ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4><comment>	It means to associate a MAC address to certain SSID interfaces' access control settings. The isolate setting will limit the wireless client's network capabilities to accessing the wireless LAN only. [MAC] format: xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx or xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx or xx.xx.xx.xx.xx.xx
Isolate	It means to isolate the wireless connection of the wireless client (identified with the MAC address) from LAN.
del <MAC>	It means to delete a MAC address entry defined in the access control list. [MAC] format: xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx or xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx or xx.xx.xx.xx.xx.xx
mode <ssid1 ssid2 ssid3 ssid4> <white/black>	It means to set white/black list for each SSID.
show	It means to display current status of access control.
showmode	It means to show the mode for each SSID.
clear	It means to clear all of the access control settings.

Example

```
> wl_dual acl showmode
 SSID1: None
 SSID2: None
 SSID3: None
 SSID4: None
> wl_dual acl add 14-49-BC-0D-8F-00 ssid1 ssid2 tet111 isolate
Set Done !!
> wl_dual acl show
 ---------- Mac Address Filter Status ---------
 SSID1: Disable SSID2: Disable SSID3: Disable SSID4: Disable
 ---------- MAC Address List ----------
 Index   Attribute      MAC Address        Associated SSIDs        Comment
    1       s          14:49:bc:0d:8f:00   SSID1 SSID2            tet111
```

```
 s: Isolate the station from LAN
```

Telnet Command: wl_dual apscan

This command is used to scan Access Point installed near the location of Vigor router.

Syntax

wl_dual apscan *start*
wl_dual apscan *show*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
start	It means to execute the AP scanning.
show	It means to display the content of the AP list.

Example

```
> wl_dual apscan start
> wl_dual apscan show
 AP scan is ongoing.
> wl_dual apscan ?
% wl_dual apscan [start/show]
% start: do AP scan
% show: show AP list

> wl_dual apscan show
5G Access Point List :
BSSID            Channel   SSID
```

Telnet Command: wl_dual config

This command allows users to configure general settings and security settings for wireless connection (5GHz).

wl_dual config enable *<value>*
wl dual config enable show
wl_dual config mode *<value>*
wl_dual config mode show
wl_dual config channel *<number>*
wl_dual config channel show
wl_dual config preamble *<enable>*
wl_dual config preamble show
wl_dual config bw *<value>*
wl_dual config ssid *<ssid_num enable ssid_name>*
wl_dual config ssid hide *<ssid_num enable>*
wl_dual config ssid show
wl_dual config ratectl *<ssid_num enable upload download>*
wl_dual config ratectl show
wl_dual config isolate lan *<ssid_num enable>*
wl_dual config isolate member *<ssid_num enable>*
wl_dual config isolate vpn *<ssid_num enable>*
wl_dual config isolate show
wl_dual config frag *<value>*
wl_dual config frag show
wl_dual config rts *<value>*
wl_dual config rts show
wl_dual config rate_alg *<value>*
wl_dual config country *<value>*
wl_dual config txpower *<value>*
wl_dual config nss *<value>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
enable <value>	It means to enable/disable the 5GHz wireless function. 1: enable 0: disable
show	It means to display if 5G wireless function is enabled or not.
mode <value>	It means to select connection mode for wireless connection. Available settings are: "11a", "11n_5g", "11n" and "11an".
mode show	It means to display what the current wireless mode is.
channel <number>	It means the channel of frequency of the wireless LAN. The available settings are: 36, 40, 44, 48, 52, 56, 60, 64, 100, 104, 108, 112, 116, 120, 124, 128, 132, 136 and 140. number=0, means Auto number=36, means Channel 36 …. Number=52, means Channel 52.
channel show	It means to display what the current channel is.
preamble <enable>	It means to define the length of the sync field in an 802.11 packet. Most modern wireless network uses short preamble with 56 bit sync

	field instead of long preamble with 128 bit sync field. However, some original 11b wireless network devices only support long preamble. 0: disable to use long preamble. 1: enable to use long preamble.
preamble show	It means to display if preamble is enabled or not.
bw <value>	It means to select the channel bandwidth for WLAN for data transmission and reception between the router and wireless stations. value - 0, 1, 2 0 means BW_20, 1 means BW_20_40; 2 means BW20_40_80.
ssid <ssid_num enable ssid_name>	It means to set the name of the SSID, hide the SSID if required. *ssid_num:* Type 1, 2, 3 or 4 to specify SSID1, SSID2, SSID3 or SSID4. *ssid_name*: Give a name for the specified SSID.
ssid hide <ssid_num enable>	It means to hide the name of the SSID if required. *ssid_num:* Type 1, 2, 3 or 4 to specify SSID1, SSID2, SSID3 or SSID4. enable: Type 0 to hide the SSID or 1 to display the SSID.
ssid show	It means to display a table of SSID configuration.
ratectl <ssid_num enable upload download>	It means to set the rate control for the specified SSID. *ssid_num:* Choose 1, 2, 3 or 4 to specify SSID1, SSID2, SSID3 or SSID4. *enable*: It means to enable the function of the rate control for the specified SSID. 0: disable and 1:enable. *upload*: It means to configure the rate control for data upload. The unit is kbps. *download*: It means to configure the rate control for data download. The unit is kbps. (example: `wl dual config ratectl 1 1 25 25`)
ratectl show	It means to display the data transmission rate (upload and download) for SSID1, SSID2, SSID3 and SSID4.
isolate lan <ssid_num enable>	It means to isolate the wireless connection from LAN. It can make the wireless clients (stations) with remote-dial and LAN to LAN users not accessing for each other. *ssid_num:* Choose 1, 2, 3 or 4 to specify SSID1, SSID2, SSID3 or SSID4. *enable*: It means to enable such function. 0: disable and 1:enable
isolate member <ssid_num enable>	It means to isolate the wireless connection from Member. It can make the wireless clients (stations) with the same SSID not accessing for each other. *ssid_num:* Choose 1, 2, 3 or 4 to specify SSID1, SSID2, SSID3 or SSID4. *enable*: It means to enable such function. 0: disable and 1:enable.
isolate vpn <ssid_num enable>	It means to isolate the wireless connection from VPN. *ssid_num:* Choose 1, 2, 3 or 4 to specify SSID1, SSID2, SSID3 or SSID4. *enable*: It means to enable such function. 0: disable and 1:enable.
isolate show	It means to display the status of wireless isolation.
frag <value>	It means to set the fragment threshold. value: Enter a number (256 to 2346).
frag show	It means to display current value of fragment threshold.
rts <value>	It means to set the RTS threshold. value: Enter a number (1 to 2347).
rts show	It means to display current value of RTS threshold.
rate_alg <value>	It means to select the wireless transmission rate. Usually,

	performance of “new” algorithm is better than “old”. 0 - old algorithm, 1 - new algorithm
country <value>	It means to set the country code. Each country will be represented with two digits. value: Enter two capital letters (e.g., TW, UK, CN..)
txpower <value>	It means to set TX power. Value: Enter a number (1 to 6).
nss <value>	It means to set NSS. Value: Enter a number (0 to 4).

Example

```
> wl_dual config mode 11a
 Current mode is 11a
% <Note> Please restart 5G wireless after you set the channel
> wl_dual config channel 60
 Current channel is 60
% <Note> Please restart 5G wireless after you set the channel.
> wl_dual config preamble 1
Long preamble is enabled
% <Note> Please restart 5G wireless after you set the parameters.
> wl_dual config ssid 1 enable dray
SSID  Enable  Hide_SSID  Name
 1    1      0         dray
% <Note> Please restart 5G wireless after you set the parameters.
> wl_dual config ssid show
 SSID  Enable  Hide_SSID  Name
 1    1      0         dray
 2    0      0         DrayTek_5G_Guest
 3    0      0
 4    0      0
```

Telnet Command: wl_dual restart

This command allows you to restart wireless setting (5GHz).

Example

```
> wl_dual restart

 5G wireless restart.................
```

Telnet Command: wl_dual security

This command allows users to configure security settings for the wireless connection (5GHz).

Syntax

wl_dual security <*SSID_NUMBER*><*mode*><*key*><*index*>

wl_dual security show

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
security <SSID_NUMBER> <mode> <key> <index>	*SSID_NUMBER*: Type 1, 2, 3 or 4 to specify SSID1, SSID2, SSID3 or SSID4. *mode*: Available settings are:

	disable: No security. wpa1x: WPA/802.1x Only wpa21x: WPA2/802.1x Only wpamix1x: Mixed (WPA+WPA2/802.1x only) wep1x: WEP/802.1x Only wpapsk: WPA/PSK wpa2psk: WPA2/PSK wpamixpsk: Mixed (WPA+WPA2)/PSK wpa3sae: WPA3/SAE wpa3mixsae: Mixed (WPA2+WPA3)/SAE wep: WEP *key, index*: Moreover, you have to add keys for *wpapsk, wpa2psk, wpamixpsk* and *wep*, and specify index number of schedule profiles to be followed by the wireless connection. WEP keys must be in 5/13 ASCII text string or 10/26 Hexadecimal digit format; WPA keys must be in 8~63 ASCII text string or 64 Hexadecimal digit format.
show	It means to display current mode selection for each SSID.

Example

```
> wl_dual security 1 wpa2psk 123456789e
% <Note> Please restart 5G wireless after you set the parameters.

> wl_dual security show
%% 5G Wireless LAN Security Settings:
% SSID1
%%  Mode: WPA2/PSK
% SSID2
%%  Mode: Disable
% SSID3
%%  Mode: Disable
% SSID4
%%  Mode: Disable
```

Telnet Command: wl_dual stalist

This command is used to display the wireless station which accessing Internet via Vigor router.

Syntax

wl_dual stalist show

wl_dual stalist num

wl_dual stalist neighbor

wl_dual stalist validtime *<time>*

wl_dual stalist maxmum *<num>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
validtime <time>	Set the valid time of the neighbor station list. <time> - 0 to 300000.
Maxnum <num>	Set the maximum number of neighbor station list.

	<value> - 10 to 512

Example

```
> wl_dual stalist neighbor
5G Wireless Neighbor Station List :
MAC Address     |Vendor Name    |RSSI(%)|RSSI(dbm)|SSID|time(ms)
F2:C6:DB:2B:25:E0|             |24     |-84      |none|20
D6:FC:CB:DC:C1:E8|             |24     |-84      |none|0
80:00:0B:04:CE:5A|Intel         |11     |-88      |none|7230880
00:1D:AA:80:FE:D6|DrayTek       |15     |-87      |none|7210610
A6:99:E2:27:7F:A0|             |50     |-76      |none|20
0A:32:AB:06:88:2C|             |40     |-79      |none|0
F8:63:3F:56:06:C6|             |15     |-87      |none|881950
1E:B9:C9:03:04:52|             |87     |-62      |none|20
8E:DF:E3:0A:F4:02|             |3      |-92      |none|20
E2:41:8F:4B:1A:11|             |50     |-76      |none|20
BA:96:81:7D:11:BD|             |24     |-84      |none|10
7C:2A:31:10:1B:11|             |2      |-93      |none|0
```

Telnet Command: wl_dual wds

This command allows users to configure WDS for wireless connection (5GHz).

Syntax

wl_dual wds mode *<value>*
wl_dual wds security *<value>*
wl_dual wds ap *<value>*
wl_dual wds hello *<value>*
wl_dual wds status
wl_dual wds show
wl_dual wds mac add *<index addr>*
wl_dual wds mac clear/**disable**/**enable** *<index/ all>*
wl_dual wds flush

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
mode <value>	It means to specify connection mode for WDS. [value]: Available settings are : d: Disable b: Bridge r: Repeapter

security <value>	It means to configure security mode with encrypted keys for WDS.
	mode: Available settings are:
	disable: No security.
	wep: WEP
	wpapsk [key]: WPA/PSK
	wpa2psk [key]: WPA2/PSK
	key: Moreover, you have to add keys for *wpapsk, wpa2psk,* and *wep*, and specify index number of schedule profiles to be followed by the wireless connection.
	WEP keys must be in 5/13 ASCII text string or 10/26 Hexadecimal digit format; WPA keys must be in 8~63 ASCII text string or 64 Hexadecimal digit format.
	e.g.,
	`wl_dual wds security disable`
	`wl_dual wds security wep 12345`
	`wl_dual wds security wpa2psk 12345678`

ap <value>	It means to enable or disable the AP function. Value: 1 – enable the function. 0 – disable the function.
hello <value>	It means to send hello message to remote end (peer). Value: 1 – enable the function. 0 – disable the function.
status	It means to display WDS link status for 5GHz connection.
show	It means to display current WDS settings.
mac add <index addr>	**add** *[index addr]* –Add the peer MAC entry in Repeater/Bridge WDS MAC table.
mac clear/ disable/ enable <index/ all>	**clear**/**disable**/**enable** *[index/ all]*- Clear, disable, enable the specifed or all MAC entries in Repeater/Bridge WDS MAC table. e.g, `wl_dual wds mac enable 1`
flush	It means to reset all WDS setting.

Example

```
> wl_dual wds status
Please enable WDS hello function first.

> wl_dual wds hello 1
% <Note> Please restart router after you set the parameters.
> wl dual wds mode b
> wl dual wds security wep
> wl_dual wds show
5G Wireless WDS Setting

Mode : Bridge
Security : WEP
AP Function : Enable
Send Hello Function : Enable

Bridge :
Index  Enable  MAC Address
  1      0     00:00:00:00:00:00
  2      0     00:00:00:00:00:00
  3      0     00:00:00:00:00:00
  4      0     00:00:00:00:00:00

Repeater :
Index  Enable  MAC Address
  5      0     00:00:00:00:00:00
  6      0     00:00:00:00:00:00
  7      0     00:00:00:00:00:00
  8      0     00:00:00:00:00:00
> wl_dual wds wep 12345
% <Note> Please restart router after you set the parameters.
```

Telnet Command: wl_dual wps

This command allows users to configure WPS for wireless connection (5GHz).

Syntax

wl_dual wps enable *<value>*
wl dual wps pbc
wl_dual wps pin *<code>*
wl_dual wps show

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
enable <value>	It means to enable WPS. 1 – enable 0 – disable
pbc	It means to start WPS by pressing the WLAN ON/OFF WPS button on Vigor router.
pin <code>	It means to start WPS by using client PIN code. [code]: Client PIN code (digit number).
show	It means to display current WPS settings.

Example

```
> wl_dual wps enable 1
 WPS is enabled.
> wl_dual wps pin 88563337
 WPS has triggered by PIN code.
 The AP will wait for WPS request from your client for 2 minutes...
```

Telnet Command: wl_dual set8021x

This command allows you to configure the external or internal server used by Vigor router for wireless authentication (5GHz).

Syntax

wl_dual set8021x –t <*0/ 1*>

wl_dual set8021x –v

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-t	Specify the type (external or internal) of wireless authentication server. 0 – Indicate the external RADIUS server. 1- Indicate the local 802.1x server.
-v	View the settings of 802.1x.

Example

```
> wl_dual set8021x –t 1
% <Note> Please restart 5G wireless after you set the parameters.
> wl_dual set8021x –v
 802.1X type is : Local 802.1X
>
```

Telnet Command: wl_dual apcli

This command allows users to configure AP client mode for wireless connection (5GHz).

Syntax

wl_dual apcli show

wl_dual apcli enable <*value*>

wl_dual apcli security <*mode*>

wl_dual apcli ssid <*ssid_name*>

wl_dual apcli bssid <*MAC address*>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
show	Display current status of wireless AP client.
enable <value>	It means to enable wireless 5GHz AP client mode. 1 – enable 0 – disable
aecurity <mode>	There are several modes to be selected: Disable – disable the security settings.

	wpapsk [key] – WPA Pre-shared Key will be used. Keys must start with 0x to be identified as a Hexadecimal number key. WPA keys must be in 8~63 ASCII string or 64 Hexadecimal digit format. wpa2psk [key] – WPA2 Pre-shared Key will be used. Keys must start with 0x to be identified as a Hexadecimal number key. WPA keys must be in 8~63 ASCII string or 64 Hexadecimal digit format. wpamixpsk [key] – WPA Mixed Pre-shared Key will be used. Keys must start with 0x to be identified as a Hexadecimal number key. WPA keys must be in 8~63 ASCII string or 64 Hexadecimal digit format. wep [key] [index] – WEP key will be used. You need to Enter the key string and specify the index number of the profile to be applied. WEP keys must be in 5/13 ASCII string or 10/26 Hexadecimal digit format.
ssid <ssid_name>	Specify the SSID for wireless 5GHz AP client.
bssid <MAC address>	Enter the MAC address for wireless 5GHz AP client.

Example

```
> wl_dual apcli enable 1
Wireless 5G AP-Clinet is enabled
Vigor> wl_dual apcli show
% Wireless 5G AP-Clinet is enabled
% Current SSID is
%%  Security Mode: disable
% Wireless 5G client is disconnected
%% data rate=---, mode=---, signal=0%
> wl_dual apcli ssid carrie
% <Note> Please restart wireless 5g after you set the parameters.
 Current SSID is carrie
```

Telnet Command: wl_dual artfns

This command allows users to configure airtime fairness function for wireless (5GHz) connection.

Syntax

wl_dual artfns enable *<value>*

wl_dual artfns trg_num *<value>*

wl_dual artfns show

wl_dual artfns status

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
enable <value>	It means to enable wireless airtime fairness function. 1 – enable 0 – disable
trg_num <value>	Set a threshold when the active station number achieves this number, the airtime fairness function will be applied. Available values will be 2 to 64.
show	Display current status (enable or disable) and triggering client number for airtime fairness function.
status	Display whether the function of airtime fairness is enabled or disabled.

Example

```
> wl_dual artfns show
airtime fairness for 5G: disable
trg_num: 2
> wl_dual artfns status
airtime fairness for 5G is disabled !!!

> wl_dual artfns enable 0
> wl_dual artfns trg_num 2
> wl_dual artfns show
airtime fairness for 5G: disable
trg_num: 2
> wl_dual artfns status
airtime fairness for 5G is disabled !!!
```

Telnet Command: wl_dual drayrs

This command allows the user to configure settings for Roaming for wireless clients.

Syntax

wl_dual drayrs *set <mode> <rs_low> <rs_low_security> <delta>*
wl_dual drayrs *restart*
wl_dual drayrs *show*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
set <mode> <rs_low> <rs_low_security> <delta>	Select a mode for roaming. 0 - disable 1 - Strictly Minimum RSSI 2 - Minimum RSSI rs_low – Set a value of Strictly Minimum RSSI (62~86). rs_low_security – Set a value of Minimum RSSI (62~86). delta – Set a value of Adjacent AP RSSI (1~20).
restart	Restart to activate roaming function.
show	Dispaly current configuration of roaming function.

Example

```
> wl_dual drayrs show
% Mode : Disable
%  rs_low         : -73
%  rs_low_secure  : -66
%  delta          : 5
> wl_dual drayrs set 1 68 66 2
> wl_dual drayrs show
% Mode : Strictly Minimun RSSI
%  rs_low        : -68
%  rs_low_secure   : -66
%  delta         : 2
```

Telnet Command: radius

This command allows you to configure detailed settings for RADIUS server

Syntax

radius enable *<0/1>*
radius authport *<port number>*
radius set_auth_method *<method idx>*
radius client *add <idx> -i <address> -m <mask> -p <prefix> -l <length> -s <secret>*
radius client *del <idx>*
radius show
radius enable_dot1x *<0/1>*
radius set_dot1x_method -e *<method_idx>*
radius set_dot1x_method -d <*method_idx>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
enable <0/1>	Enable (1) or disable (0) the RADIUS server.
authport <port number>	Configure the port number for authentication. Port number: Available range is from 0 to 65535. Default value is "1812".
set_auth_method <method idx>	Specify which method will be used for authentication. Method idx: "0" is "Only PAP"; "1" is "PAP/CHAP/MS-CHAP/MS-CHAPv2".
client add <idx> -i <address> -m <mask> -p <prefix> -l <length> -s <secret>	Specify a client to be authenticated by RADIUS server by typing required information as follows: -i <address>: client IPv4 address(domain) -m <mask>: client IPv4 mask -p <prefix>: client IPv6 prefix -l <length>: client IPv6 prefix length -s <secret>: shared secret ex: radius client add 1 -i 192.168.1.1 -m 255.255.255.0 -s 123
client del <idx>	*del* - Delete related settings for selected client. *Idx* - Specify the index number of client profiles.
show	Display the status of RADIUS server.
enable_dot1x <0/1>	Enable (1) or disable (0) the 802.1X Authentication function of RADIUS Server. Default is disabled.
set_dot1x_method -e <method_idx>	Set a method for 802.1X authentication of RADIUS server. "-e" means to set method for dot1x_phase1 or dot1x_phase2. Method idx: 1 to 4. 1: EAP_PEAP/MSCHAPv2 2: EAP_TTLS/PAP 3: EAP_TTLS/MSCHAP 4: EAP_TTLS/MSCHAPv2
set_dot1x_method -d <method_idx>	Delete the method for 802.1X authentication of RADIUS server. "-d" means to delete method for dot1x_phase1 or dot1x_phase2. Method idx: 1 to 4. 1: EAP_PEAP/MSCHAPv2 2: EAP_TTLS/PAP 3: EAP_TTLS/MSCHAP 4: EAP_TTLS/MSCHAPv2

Example

```
> radius client add 1 -i 192.168.1.1 -m 255.255.255.0 -s 123
 Set radius server client OK
>
```

Telnet Command: radius external

This command allows you to configure detailed settings for external RADIUS server.

Syntax

radius external *<options>...*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<options>...	The available commands with parameters are listed below. *[..]* means that you can type in several parameters in one line.
-V	Displays current settings of external RADIUS server.
-v <index>	It means to display current setting of RADIUS server. <index>: Enter the index number (1).
-l <index>	It means to display the log of the external RADIUS server. <index>: Enter the index number (1).
-c "<index><comment>"	It means to set a comment for the external RADIUS server. <index>: Enter the index number (1). <comment>: Enter a brief description (less than 23 characters).
-f <index>	Set the selected profile as the default external RADIUS profile. <index>: Enter the index number of the profile.
-t <param>	Set the timeout value. <param>: Enter a value.
-e "<index><param>"	Enable or disaBle the external RADIUS profile. <index>: Enter the index number of the profile. <param>: 0 or 1. 0 is disable; 1 is enable. ex: -e "2 1" to enable the profile 2
-i "<index><index2> <hostname/ip>"	Set the hostname or IP address for the selected RADIUS server profile. <index>: Enter the index number of the profile. <index2>: 0 or 1. 0 means the primary server; 1 means the secondary server. ex: -i "1 0 192.168.1.1" or -i "2 1 www.google.com"
-p "<index><index2> <port_number>"	Set the destination port for the selected RADIUS server. <index>: Enter the index number of the profile. <index2>: 0 or 1. 0 means the primary server; 1 means the secondary server. <port_number>: 1 ~ 65535. ex : -p "1 1 1812"
-s "<index><index2><secret>"	Set the shared secret for the selected RADIUS server. <index>: Enter the index number of the profile. <index2>: 0 or 1. 0 means the primary server; 1 means the secondary server. <secret>: 1 ~ 65535. ex : -s "3 0 123"
-r "<index><index2><retry>"	Set the retry number for the selected RADIUS server. <index>: Enter the index number of the profile. <index2>: 0 or 1. 0 means the primary server; 1 means the

	secondary server. <retry>: 1 to 3. ex : -s "3 0 2"
-a "<index><param>"	Enable or disable the accounting port for the selected RADIUS server. <index>: Enter the index number of the profile. <param>: 0 or 1. 0 is disable; 1 is enable.
-b "<index><index2> <port_number>"	Set the accounting port for the selected RADIUS server. <index>: Enter the index number of the profile. <index2>: 0 or 1. 0 means the primary server; 1 means the secondary server. <port_number>: 1 ~ 65535. ex : -b "1 0 1813"
-d "<index><index2> <port_number>"	Disconnect the message port for the selected RADIUS server. <index>: Enter the index number of the profile. <index2>: 0 or 1. 0 means the primary server; 1 means the secondary server. <port_number>: 1 ~ 65535. ex : -d "1 1 3799"
-u "<index> <index2> <update interval>"	Set the accounting interim interval for the selected RADIUS server. <index>: Enter the index number of the profile. <index2>: 0 or 1. 0 means the primary server; 1 means the secondary server. <port_number>: 10 ~ 1440 (minutes) ex : -u "1 0 10"

Example

```
> radius external -i "1 0 192.168.1.1"
 This setting will take effect after rebooting.
 Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
> radius external -V
Profile default enable comment
% 1      v
RADIUS timeout: 2 seconds
```

Telnet Command: local_8021x

The command is used to configure general settings for Local 802.1X server built in Vigor router.

Syntax

local_8021x enable *<0/1>*

local_8021x set_localdot1x_method -e <*method number*>

local_8021x set_localdot1x_method -d <*method number*>

local_8021x show

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
enable	Enable or disable the configuration. 0: disable. 1: enable.
set_localdot1x_method -e	Add the method.

<method number>	-e [method number]: Set the method. The method index number are: 1 - EAP_PEAP/MSCHAPv2 2 - EAP_TTLS/PAP 3 - EAP_TTLS/MSCHAP 4 - EAP_TTLS/MSCHAPv2 e.g, local_8021x set_localdot1x_method-e 1
set_localdot1x_method -d <method number>	Delete the method. -d [method number]: Delete the method. The method index number are: 1 - EAP_PEAP/MSCHAPv2 2 - EAP_TTLS/PAP 3 - EAP_TTLS/MSCHAP 4 - EAP_TTLS/MSCHAPv2 e.g, local_8021x set_localdot1x_method-d 3
show	Display current settings of local 802.1x server.

Example

```
> local_8021x set_localdot1x_method -e 3
 This setting will take effect after rebooting.
 Please use "sys reboot" command to reboot the router.
>
```

Telnet Command: wol

This command allows Administrator to set the white list of WAN IP addresses/Subnets, that the magic packet from these IP addresses/Subnets will be eligible to pass through NAT and wake up the LAN client. You also need to set NAT rule for LAN client.

Syntax

wol up *<MAC Address> / <IP Address>*

wol fromWan *<on/off/any>*

wol fromWan_Setting *<idx><ip address><mask>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
<MAC Address>	It means the MAC address of the host.
<IP address>	It means the LAN IP address of the host. If you want to wake up LAN host by using IP address, be sure that that IP address has been bound with the MAC address (IP BindMAC).
<on/off/any>	It means to enable or disable the function of WOL from WAN. on: enable off: disable any: It means any source IP address can pass through NAT and wake up the LAN client. This command will allow the user to choose whether WoL packets can be passed from the Internet to the LAN network from a specific WAN interface.
<idx><ip address><mask>	It means the index number (from 1 to 4). These commands will allow the user to configure the LAN clients that the user may wake up from the Internet through the use of the WoL packet. *ip address* - It means the WAN IP address.

	mask - It means the mask of the IP address.

Example

```
> wol fromWan on
> wol fromWan_Setting 1 192.168.1.45 255.255.255.0
>
```

Telnet Command: user

The command is used to create new user account profiles.

Syntax

user set *<-a| -b| -c| -d| -e| -l| -o| -q| -r| -s| -u>*

user edit *<PROFILE_IDX>*
<-a| -d| -e| -f| -i| -o| -m| -n| -p| -q| -r| -s| -t| -u| -v| -w| -x| -A| -H| -T| -P| -l| -L| -D>

user account *<USER_NAME><-t| -d| -q| -r| -w>*

user setdefault

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
set	It means to configure general setup for the user management.
edit	It means to modify the selected user profile.
account	It means to set time and data quota for specified user account.
setdefault	It means to reset to factory default settings.
User Set	
-a <Profile idx> <User name><IP_Address>	It means to pass an IP Address. Profile idx- type the index number of the selected profile. User name- type the user name that you want it to pass. IP_Address- type the IP address that you want it to pass.
-b <user name> *-b ip <ip address>*	Block specifies user or IP address. *user name* –type the user name that you want to block. *ip address* —type the IP address that you want to block.
-c <user name> *-c all*	Clear the user record. *user name* –type the user name that you want to get clear corresponding record. *all* –all of the records will be removed.
-d	Enable the User management in Rule-Based mode.
-e	Enable the User management in User-Based mode.
-l all *-l user* *-l ip*	Show online user. *all* –all of the users will be displayed on the screen. *user name* –type the user name that you want to view on the screen. *ip* –type the IP address that you want to view on the screen.
-o	It means to show user account information. e.g.,*-o*
-q	It means to trigger the alert tool to do authentication.
-r <user name / all>	Remove the user record.

	user name –type the name of the user profile. *all* –all of the user profile settings will be removed.
-s <0/ 1>	It means to set login service. 0:HTTPS 1:HTTP e.g.,*-s 1*
-u user <user name> *-u ip <ip address>*	Unblock specifies user or IP address. *user name* –type the user name that you want to unblock. *ip address* —type the IP address that you want to unblock.
User edit	
PROFILE_IDX	Type the index number of the profile that you want to edit.
-a <0/ 1>	Enable(1) or disable(0) the internal RADIUS.
-d	Disable User profile function.
-e	Enable User profile function.
-f <0/ 1>	Enable(1) or disable(0) the local 802.1x user.
-i <0-255>	It means to set idle time (from 0 to 255, 0 means unlimited). e.g., *-i 60*
-o <0-65535>	It means to set auto-logout (from 0 to 65535, 0 means unlimited).
-m <0-2000>	It means to set the maximum (from 0 to 2000) login user number. e.g., *-m 200*
-n <param>	It means to set a user name for a profile. Param: Enter a string, e.g.,*-n fortest.*
-p <param>	It means to configure user password. Param: Enter a string, e.g., *-p 60fortest.*
-q <param>	It means to set time quota (0-65535) of the user profile. Param: Enter a value, e.g., *-q 200.*
-r <param>	It means to set data quota. Param: Enter a value, e.g., *-r 1000.*
-s <sch_idx1,sch_idx2,sch_idx3 , and sch_idx4>	It means to set schedule index. Available settings are" sch_idx1,sch_idx2,sch_idx3, and sch_idx4.
-t <0/ 1>	It means to enable /disable time quota limitation for user profile 0:Disable 1:Enable
-u <0/ 1>	It means to enable /disable data quota limitation for user profile 0:Disable 1:Enable
-v	It means to view user profile(s).
-w <MB/ GB>	It means to specify the data quota unit (MB/GB). e.g., -w MB
-x <0-3>	It means to set external server authentication 0: None 1: LDAP 2: Radius 3: TACAS e.g., *-x 2*
-l <0-3>	It means to set log type.

	0:None 1:Login 2:Event 3:All
-P <0/ 1>	It means to enable /disable pop browser tracking window for user profile 0:Disable 1:Enable
-T <0/ 1>	It means to enable /disable authentication by telnet. 0:Disable 1:Enable
-H <0/ 1>	It means to enable /disable authentication by web page. 0:Disable 1:Enable
-A <0/ 1>	It means to enable /disable authentication by alert tool. 0:Disable 1:Enable
-L <index>	It means to set active directory / LDAP profiles. Index: Specify the index number (profile_idx1 to profile_idx8) of the profile.
-D	It means to list all active directory / LDAP profiles.
-O <0/ 1>	It means to reset the quota automatically. 0:Disable 1:Enable
-Q <param>	It means to set the default time quota. param: Enter a number (1 to 65535).
-R <param>	It means to set the default data quota. param: Enter a number (1 to 65535).
-M <param>	It means to set the default quota type. 0: when login permission schedule expired. 1: at the start time of schedule.
I <param>	It means to specify the default quota schedule index to perform the job at the start time.
-S	It means to display the reset default quota type and the schedule index.
User account	
USER_NAME	It means to type a name of the user account.
-d<0/ 1>	It means to enable /disable data quota limitation for user account. 0:Disable 1:Enable
-q	It means to set account time quota. e.g., *-q 200*
-r	It means to set account data quota. e.g., *-r 1000*
-t <0/ 1>	It means to enable /disable time quota limitation for user account. 0:Disable 1:Enable
-w	It means to set data quota unit (MB/GB).

Example

```
> user account admin -d 1

 Enable the [admin] data quota limited
```

Telnet Command: appqos

The command is used to configure QoS for APP.

Syntax

appqos view
appqos enable <*0/ 1*>
appqos traceable <*-v | -e AP_INDEX CLASS | -d AP_INDEX*>
appqos untraceable <*-v | -e AP_INDEX CLASS | -d AP_INDEX*>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
view	It means to display current status of APP QoS.
enable <0/ 1>	It means to enable or disable the function of APP QoS.
traceable/ untraceable	The APPs are divided into traceable and untraceable based on their properties.
-v	It means to view the content of all traceable APs. Use “appqos traceable –v” to display all of the traceable APS with speficed index number. Use “appqos untraceable –v” to display all of the untraceable APS with speficed index number.
-e	It menas to enable QoS for application(s) and assign QoS class.
AP_INDEX	Each index number represents one application. Index number: 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 58, 60, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 68 are used for 13 traceabel APPs. Index number: 0~49, 55~59, 61, 67, 69, and 70~123 are used for 125 untraceable AP.
CLASS	Specifies the QoS class of the application, from 1 to 4 1:Class 1, 2:Class 2, 3:Class 3, 4:Other Class
-d	It means to disable QoS for application(s).

Example

```
> appqos enable 1

APP QoS set to Enable.
> appqos traceable -e 68 2

TELNET: ENABLED, QoS Class 2.
```

Telnet Command: nand bad / nand usage

“NAND usage” is used to display NAND Flash usage; “nand bad” is used to display NAND Flash bad blocks.

Syntax

nand bad
nand usage

Example

```
>nand usage
Show NAND Flash Usage:
Partition    Total          Used          Available      Use%
cfg          4194304        7920          4186384         0%
bin_web      33554432       11869493      21684939        35%
cfg-bak      4194304        7920          4186384         0%
bin_web-bak 33554432       11869493      21684939        35%
> nand bad
Show NAND Flash Bad Blocks:
Block   Address        Partition
1020    0x07f80000     unused
1021    0x07fa0000     unused
1022    0x07fc0000     unused
1023    0x07fe0000     unused
```

Telnet Command: apm enable/disable/show/clear/discover/query

The apm command(s) is use to display, remove, discover or query the information of VigorAP registered to Vigor2927.

Syntax

apm enable
apm disable
apm show
apm clear
apm discover
apm query

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
enable	It means to enable APM function.
disable	It means to disable APM function.
show	It displays current information of APM profile.
clear	It is used to remove all of the APM profile.
discover	It is used to search VigorAP on LAN.
query	It is used to query any VigorAP which has been registered to APM (Central AP Management) in Vigor2927. Information related to the registered AP will be send back to Vigor2927 for updating the web page of Central AP Management.

Example

```
> apm clear ?
Clear all clients ... done
```

Telnet Command: apm profile

This command allows to configure wireless profiles to be used in Central AP Management.

Syntax

apm profile clone *<from index><to index><new name>*

apm profile del *<index>*

apm profile reset

apm profile summary

apm profile show *<profile index>*

apm profile apply *<profile index> <client index1 index2 .. index5>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
clone	It is used to copy the same parameters settings from one profile to another APM profile.
del	It is used to delete a specified APM profile. The default (index #1) should not be deleted.
reset	It is used to reset to factory settings for WLAN profile.
summary	It is used to list all of the APM profiles with required information.
show	It is used to display specified APM profile.
apply	It is used to apply the selected APM profile onto specified VigorAP.
<from index>	Type an index number in this field. It is the original APM profile to be cloned to other APM profile.
<to index>	Type an index number in this file. It is the target profile which will clone the parameters settings from an existed APM profile.
<new name>	Type a name for a new APM profile.
<profile index>	Enter the index number of existed profile.
<client index1 index2 .. index5>	It is useful for applying the selected APM profile to the specified VigorAP.

Example

```
> apm profile clone 1 2 forcarrie
(Done)

> apm profile summary
# Name            SSID            Security     ACL     RateCtrl(U/D)
- ---------------- ---------------- ------------ ------- ------
0 Default        DrayTek-LAN-A    WPA+WPA2/PSK x          - /     -
                 DrayTek-LAN-B    WPA+WPA2/PSK x          - /     -

1 -               -               -            -                 -
2 forcarrie        DrayTek          Disable      x          - /     -

3 -               -               -            -                 -
4 -               -               -            -                 -
```

Telnet Command: apm cache

This command is used to display or remove the information of registered VigorAP, including MAC address, name, and authentication. Up to 30 entries of registered information can be stored and displayed.

Syntax

apm cache *<show>*

apm cache clear

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
show	It means to display the information related to VigorAP registered Vigor2927.
clear	It means to remove the information related to VigorAP registered Vigor2927.

Example

```
> apm cache show
MAC         Name                Auth
------------ -------------------- --------------------

>
```

Telnet Command: apm lbcfg

This command allows to set parameters related to AP management control.

Syntax

apm lbcfg set *<value>*

apm lbcfg show

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
set	It means to set the load balance configuration file for APM.
Show	It shows the configuration value.
<value>	You need to type 10 numbers in this field. Each number represents different setting value. [1] – The first number means the load balance function. Type 1 – enable load balance, 0 – disable load balance. [2] – The second number means the station limit function. Type 1 –enable station limit, 0 – disable station limit. [3] – The third number means the traffic limit function. Type 1 – enable traffic limit, 0 – disable traffic limit. [4] – The forth number means the limit num of station. Available range is 3~64. [5] – The fifth number means the upload limit function. Type 1 – enable upload limit, 0 – disable upload limit. [6] – The sixth number means the download limit function. Type 1 – enable download limit, 0 – disable download limit. [7] – The seventh number means disassociation by idle time. Type 1 – enable disassociation, 0 – disable disassociation. [8] – The eighth number means to enable or disable disassociation

	by signal strength. Type 1 - enable disassociation, 0 - disable disassociation. [9] - The ninth number means to determine the unit of traffic limit (for upload) 1 - Mbps 0 - kbps [10] - The tenth number means to determine the unit of traffic limit (for download) 1 - Mbps 0 - kbps [11] - The eleventh number means to set the RSSI threshold. Available range is -200 ~ -50 dbm.

Example

```
> apm lbcfg show
apm LoadBalance Config :
1. Enable LoadBalance : 0
2. Enable station limit : 0
3. Enable traffic limit : 0
4. limit Number : 64
5. Upload limit : 0
6. Download limit : 0
7. Enable disassociation by idle time : 0
8. Enable disassociation by Signal strength : 0
9. Traffic limit unit (upload)   : 0
10.Traffic limit unit (download) : 0
11.RSSI threshold : 0
flag : 0
> apm lbcfg set 1 1 0 15 0 0 0 0 1 1 -100
> apm lbcfg show
apm LoadBalance Config :
1. Enable LoadBalance : 1
2. Enable station limit : 1
3. Enable traffic limit : 0
4. limit Number : 15
5. Upload limit : 0
6. Download limit : 0
7. Enable disassociation by idle time : 0
8. Enable disassociation by Signal strength : 0
9. Traffic limit unit (upload)   : 1
10.Traffic limit unit (download) : 1
11.RSSI threshold : -100
flag : 49
>
```

Telnet Command: apm apsyslog

This command is used to display the AP syslog data coming form VigorAP.

Syntax

apm apsyslog *<AP_Index>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
AP_Index	Specify the index number (1 to 20) which represents VigorAP.

Example

```
> apm apsyslog 1
8d 02:46:09  syslog: [APM] Send Rogue AP Detection data.
8d 02:53:04  syslog: [APM] Run AP Detection / Discovery.
8d 02:56:09  syslog: [APM] Send Rogue AP Detection data.
8d 03:00:42  kernel: 60:fa:cd:55:f5:ea had disassociated.
8d 03:03:12  syslog: [APM] Run AP Detection / Discovery.
8d 03:06:09  syslog: [APM] Send Rogue AP Detection data.
8d 03:13:21  syslog: [APM] Run AP Detection / Discovery.
8d 03:16:10  syslog: [APM] Send Rogue AP Detection data.
8d 03:16:41  kernel: 60:fa:cd:55:f5:ea had associated successfully
8d 03:16:55  kernel: 60:fa:cd:55:f5:ea had disassociated.
```

Telnet Command: apm syslog

This command is used to display related syslog data from central AP management.

Syntax

apm syslog

Example

```
> apm syslog
"2015-11-04 12:24:21", "[APM] [VigorAP900_01daa902080] Get Rogue AP Detection
Data from AP"
2015-11-04 12:24:56", "[APM] [VigorAP900_01daa902080] Get Rogue AP Detection
Data from AP Success"
2015-11-04 12:34:21", "[APM] [VigorAP900_01daa902080] Get Rogue AP Detection
Data from AP"
2015-11-04 12:34:57", "[APM] [VigorAP900_01daa902080] Get Rogue AP Detection
Data from AP Success"
```

Telnet Command: apm stanum

This command is used to display the total number of the wireless clients, no matter what mode of wireless connection (2.4G WLAN or 5G WLAN) used by wireless clients to access into Internet through VigorAP.

Syntax

apm stanum *<AP_Index>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
AP_Index	Specify the index number which represents VigorAP.

Example

```
> apm stanum

% Show the APM AP Station Number data.
% apm stanum AP_Index.
%     ex : apm stanum 1
%          Idx Nearby(2.4/5G) Conn(2.4/5G)
%           1   2   5          0   0
```

```
%            2    2    5          1    0
%            3    2    5          1    0
```

Telnet Command: ha set

This command can be used to configure HA settings for Vigor routers.

Syntax

ha set *[-<command> <parameter>| ...]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
[<command> <parameter>| ..]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. *[..]* means that you can Enter several parameters in one line.
-e <1/0>	1: Enable the function of High Availability (HA). 0: Disable the function of High Availability (HA).
-l <1/0>	1: Enable the function of recording the operation record of HA in Syslog. 0: Disable the function of recording the operation record of HA in Syslog.
-M <1/0>	Specify the Redundancy Method for HA. 1: Active-Standby 0: Hot-Standby
-v <1-255>	Specify the group ID (VHID) 1- 255: Setting range.
-R	Set HA settings to Factory Default.
-p <1-30>	Specify the Priority ID. 1-30: Setting range.
-k <key>	Specify the Authentication Key. Key: Max. 31 Characters.
-u <1/0>	Enable or disable the function of Update DDNS. 1: Enable. When a router changes HA status to primary, it will update DDNS automatically. 0: Disable.
-m <interface>	Specify the management interface. Interface: LAN1 ~ LAN6, DMZ.
-s	It means to get the newest status of other router (except the local router).
-y	It means sync local config to other router. Primary can executes this command. Secondary can not execute this commad.
-c <1/0>	Enable or disable the function of Config Sync. 1: Enable. 0: Disable.
-i -<E|S> <value>	Specify the config inherit setting. -E <1/0> - Enable/Disable Config Inherit -S <min> - Config Inherit Resync Time(1-60 min) ex: ha set -i -S 15
-I -<M/H/D> <interval>	Set the Config Sync Interval for HA. Minimum interval is 15 minutes. -M: Minute. Setting range is 0/15/30/45. (e.g., ha set -I -M 30) -H: Hour. Setting range is from 0 to 23. (e.g., ha set -I -H 12) -D: Day. Setting range is from 0 to 30. (e.g., ha set -I -D 15)

-h -<4/6><Subnet> <Virtual IP>	Enable and set virtual IP to the subnet. 4: IPv4; 6: IPv6. Subnet: LAN1 to LAN6, DMZ. Virtual IP*:* The type format shall be “xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx”. (e.g, 192.168.1.0) For example, to enable a virtual IP to the sunet, simply type: *ha set –h LAN1 192.168.1.5*
-d -<4/6><Subnet>	Disable a virtual IP to the subnet. 4: IPv4; 6: IPv6. Subnet: LAN1 to LAN8, DMZ. For example, to disable a virtual IP to the subnet, just type: *ha set –h LAN1*
-o <1/0>	Run DARP protocol on IPv4 or IPv6. 0: IPv4 1: IPv6

Example

```
>  ha set –h –4 LAN1 192.168.1.1

% Enable IPv4 Virtual IP on LAN1

% Virtual IP can not be same as router IP (192.168.1.1)!!!

>
```

Telnet Command: ha show

This command can be used to show the *settings information* about config sync and general setup.

Syntax

ha show –c

ha show –g

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-c	Show the settings of config sync.
-g	Show the settings of general setup.

Example

```
> ha show –g
%   High Availability    : Disable
%   Redundancy Method    : Active-Standby
%   Group ID           : 1
%   Priority ID         : 10
%   Update DDNS         : Disable
%   Protocol           : IPv4
%   Management Interface : LAN1
%   Authentication Key   : draytek
%   Syslog             : OFF
%
%   [ Index | Enable | Virtual IP ]
%     LAN1    –       192.168.1.2
%     LAN2    –       192.168.2.2
%     LAN3    –       192.168.3.2
%     LAN4    –       192.168.4.2
%     LAN5    –       192.168.5.2
```

```
%     LAN6    -       192.168.6.2
%     LAN7    -       192.168.7.2
%     LAN8    -       192.168.8.2
%     DMZ     -       192.168.254.2
%
%   [ Index | Enable | Virtual IPv6 ]
%     LAN1     On     FE80::200:5EFF:FE00:101
%     LAN2     On     FE80::200:5EFF:FE00:101
%     LAN3     On     FE80::200:5EFF:FE00:101
%     LAN4     On     FE80::200:5EFF:FE00:101
%     LAN5     On     FE80::200:5EFF:FE00:101
%     LAN6     On     FE80::200:5EFF:FE00:101
%     LAN7     On     FE80::200:5EFF:FE00:101
%     LAN8     On     FE80::200:5EFF:FE00:101
%     DMZ      On     FE80::200:5EFF:FE00:101
>
```

Telnet Command: ha status

This command is used to display *HA status information*.

Syntax

ha status –a <*Detail Level*>
ha status –m <*Detail Level*>

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-a	Show the status for all of the routers in HA group.
-m	Show the status of local router only.
<Detail Level>	0: Important status. 1: Important status, plus some information. 2: Show settings

Example

```
> ha status -m 2
%    [Local Router] DrayTek
%    IP               : 192.168.1.230 (FE80::C3F7:BAD:C1EF:CC4E)
%    Status           : !
%    High Availability   : ! Disable
%    Redundancy Method   : Active-Standby
%    Group ID         : 1
%    Priority ID       : 10
%    Update DDNS       : Disable
%    Protocol         : IPv4
%    Management Interface: LAN1
%    Authentication Key  : draytek
%    Virtual IP: (Max. 9 Virtual IPs)
%      ! OFF
%    Virtual IPv6: (Max. 9 Virtual IPv6s)
%      ON       LAN1  FE80::200:5EFF:FE00:101
%      ON       LAN2  FE80::200:5EFF:FE00:101
%      ON       LAN3  FE80::200:5EFF:FE00:101
%      ON       LAN4  FE80::200:5EFF:FE00:101
%      ON       LAN5  FE80::200:5EFF:FE00:101
%      ON       LAN6  FE80::200:5EFF:FE00:101
%      ON       LAN7  FE80::200:5EFF:FE00:101
%      ON       LAN8  FE80::200:5EFF:FE00:101
```

```
%      ON       DMZ   FE80::200:5EFF:FE00:101
%    Config Sync            : Disable
%    Config Sync Interval     : 0 Day 0 Hour 15 Minute
%    Cached Time        : 0 (s)
%
>
```

Telnet Command: swm show

This command is used to display general setting of of VigorSwitch which connecting to Vigor router in LAN.

Syntax

swm show *<LAN_port>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
LAN_port	Specify the LAN port number (1 to 6).

Example

```
DrayTek> swm show

** If you want to display SWM debug log : "swm show debug log"
** Enable/Disable SWM console debug log : "swm show console log en/dis"
** Enable/Disable SWM syslog debug log  : "swm show syslog log en/dis"

** If you connected a VigorSwitch but does not display here.
** Please check the LLDP is enabled and VLAN ID is matched on VigorSwitch.

*************************************************************************
*****************************************
LAN Port  Level    UP - Link Model   UP - MAC    UP - Port Model Name    MA
C         IP Address     Down - Port
--------- --------- ----------------  ------------ --------- -----------
---------- --------------- ------------------
2        1        Router                      6        G2100           1
449BC43E579 192.168.1.13
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
-----------------------------------------

*** Warning Message: The External Switch Change Detected
*************************************************************************

Internal VLAN is [Disable]
LAN (2) parse config fail
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

```
No VigorSwitch VLAN settings.
*************************************************************************

*************************************************************************
*****************************************
LAN Port  Level    UP - Link Model   UP - MAC    UP - Port Model Name   MA
C         IP Address     Down - Port
--------- --------- ----------------  ------------ --------- -----------
---------- --------------- ------------------
4        1        Router                      2        G2121           1
449BC4133F4 192.168.1.11
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
-----------------------------------------

*** Warning Message: The External Switch Change Detected
*************************************************************************

Internal VLAN is [Disable]
LAN (4) parse config fail
-------------------------------------------------------------------------

No VigorSwitch VLAN settings.
*************************************************************************

(Total 0 Switch)
```

Telnet Command: swm get

This command is used to **get** configuration information of VigorSwitch which connecting to Vigor router in LAN. Before using such command, make sure VigorSwitch has been managed under Vigor router (refer to Telnet Command: swm profile for adding a VigorSwitch device onto Vigor router).

Syntax

swm get *<MAC>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
MAC	Enter the MAC address (e.g., 001DAA0CCD08) of the VigorSwitch.

Example

```
> swm get 001DAA0CCD08
Start get cfg from 001daa0ccd08 external switch

Please wait a few seconds...

Result: [OK].

>
```

Telnet Command: swm post

This command is used to transfer switch configuration to VigorSwitch which connecting to Vigor router in LAN.

Syntax

swm post *<MAC>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
MAC	Enter the MAC address (e.g., 001DAA0CCD08) of the VigorSwitch.

Example

```
> swm post 001DAA0CCD08
Start post cfg to 001daa0ccd08 external switch with currect settings.
Please wait a few seconds...
Result: [OK].
 >
```

Telnet Command: swm enable / disable

This command is used to enable / disable the external device.

Example

```
> swm enable
```

Telnet Command: swm group

This command is used to add, edit or display the switch management group.

Syntax

swm group *set <IDX> <NAME> <1> <PASSWD>*

swm group *set <IDX> <NAME> <0>*

swm group *show*

swm group *add <IDX> <MAC>*

swm group *delete <IDX> <MAC>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
set <IDX> <NAME> <1> <PASSWD>	It means to set group name and group password. <IDX>: Enter the index number (1 to 10) of the group. <NAME>: Enter the name of the group. <1>: It means the password flag. <PASSWD>: Enter a string as the password.
show	It means to display switch group status.
add <IDX> <MAC>	It means to add a switch into the group as a member switch. <IDX>: Enter the index number (1 to 10) of the group. <MAC>: Enter the MAC address of VigorSwitch.
delete <IDX> <MAC>	It means to delete a switch from the group. <IDX>: Enter the index number (1 to 10) of the group. <MAC>: Enter the MAC address of VigorSwitch.

Example

```
> swm group set 10 pease 1 jpsword
```

```
> swm group show
Index    Group Name  asswd Flag    Member Switch
------ ------------ -----------  ------------------------------------
---------------------
1       Default            0
2                         0
3                         0
4                         0
5                         0
6                         0
7                         0
8                         0
9                         0
10      pease              1

Name            IP Address      MAC
---------------- ---------------- ------------
---             192.168.1.13    1449bc43e579
---             192.168.1.11    1449bc4133f4 >
```

Telnet Command: swm profile

This command is used to add, edit or display the switch management profile.

Syntax

swm profile *add/delete <MAC>*

swm profile *show*

swm profile *enable_all/disable_all <MAC>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
add/delete <MAC>	It means to add or delete a member switch from the profile. <MAC>: Enter the MAC address of the switch.
show	It means to display switch profile.
enable_all/disable_all <MAC>	It means to enable or disable all LAN ports of the specified switch managed by Vigor router. <MAC>: Enter the MAC address of the member switch.

Example

```
> swm profile show
Name            IP Address      MAC          Model  Group
---------------- ---------------- ------------  ------

IP Address      MAC          Model
---------------- ------------  ------
192.168.1.13    1449bc43e579 G2100
192.168.1.11    1449bc4133f4 G2121

>
```

Telnet Command: swm detail

This command is used to configure general settings (e.g., switch name, password) and port settings for VigorSwitch.

Syntax

swm detail *comment <MAC> <COMMENT>*

swm detail *name <MAC> <NAME>*

swm detail *passwd <MAC> <PASSWD>*
swm detail *config <MAC> <config>*
swm detail *show*
swm detail *port show <MAC>*
swm detail *port <MAC> <PORT> <FLAG> <SCHED1> <SCHED2> <DESCRIPTION>*
swm detail *rate <MAC> <PORT> <i/e> <e/d>*
swm detail *rate <MAC> <PORT> <i/e> <ratelimit>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
comment <MAC> <COMMENT>	It means to set a comment for VigorSwitch. <MAC>: Enter the MAC address of the VigorSwitch to be modified. <COMMENT>: Add an additional explanation for the switch.
name <MAC> <NAME>	It means to set a name for VigorSwitch. <MAC>: Enter the MAC address of the VigorSwitch to be modified. <NAME>: Enter the name of VigorSwitch.
passwd <MAC> <PASSWD>	It means to set a login password for VigorSwitch. <MAC>: Enter the MAC address of the VigorSwitch to be modified. <NAME>: Enter the login password of VigorSwitch.
config <MAC> <config>	It means to apply the configuration of VigorSwitch B to other Vigorswitch A. <MAC>: Enter the MAC address of the VigorSwitch A to be modified. <config>: Enter the index number of the profile set in VigorSwitch B.
show	It means to display comment, MAC and connection status of the switch.
port show <MAC>	It means to display a list of LAN ports of the VigorSwitch. <MAC>: Enter the MAC address of the VigorSwitch to be modified.
port <MAC> <PORT> <FLAG> <SCHED1> <SCHED2> <DESCRIPTION>	It means to set a description and schedule profile for each port of VigorSwitch. <MAC>: Enter the MAC address of the VigorSwitch to be modified. <PORT>: Enter the index number (e.g., 1 to 28) of the VigorSwitch LAN port. The number of LAN ports will vary according to the Switch to be modified. <SCHED1> <SCHED2>: Determine and type two index numbers of the schedule profiles you want. <DESCRIPTION>: Enter a desription for each port of VigorSwitch.
rate <MAC> <PORT> <i/e> <e/d>	It means to enable / disable the rate limit for each port of VigorSwitch. <MAC>: Enter the MAC address of the VigorSwitch to be modified. <PORT>: Enter the index number (e.g., 1 to 28) of the VigorSwitch LAN port. The number of LAN ports will vary according to the Switch to be modified. <i/e>: "i" means Ingress Rate; "e" means Egress Rate. <e/d>" "e" means enable; "d" means disable the setting.
rate <MAC> <PORT> <i/e> <ratelimit>	It means to modify the rate limit for each port of VigorSwitch. <MAC>: Enter the MAC address of the VigorSwitch to be modified. <PORT>: Enter the index number (e.g., 1 to 28) of the VigorSwitch LAN port. The number of LAN ports will vary according to the Switch to be modified. <i/e>: "i" means Ingress Rate; "e" means Egress Rate. <ratelimit>: Enter a value.

Example

```
> swm detail rate 1449bc43e579 6 i 3000
> swm detail rate 1449bc43e579 6 e 5000
> swm detail show
Idx  Name            MAC         Comment          Config         Status
---- --------------- ------------  ---------------- ------------ --------
1    G2100          1449bc43e579               0  None         Connect
>
```

Telnet Command: swm maintain

This command is used to reboot or reset the switch to factory default setting.

Syntax

swm maintain *reboot <MAC>*

swm maintain *reset <MAC>*

swm maintain *show*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
reboot <MAC>	It means to reboot VigorSwitch with current settings. <MAC>: Enter the MAC address of the VigorSwitch to be modified.
reset <MAC>	It means to reset VigorSwitch with factory default settings. <MAC>: Enter the MAC address of the VigorSwitch to be modified.
show	It means to display comment, MAC and connection status of the switch.

Example

```
> swm maintain show
Name            IP Address      MAC          Model
--------------- --------------- ------------  ------
G2100           192.168.1.13     1449bc43e579 G2100
>
```

Telnet Command: swm search

This command is used to search Vigor Switch by MAC / IP address / specific description and display information.

Syntax

swm search *mac <MAC>*

swm search *ip <IP>*

swm search *description <Input>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
mac <MAC>	<MAC>: Enter the MAC address of the VigorSwitch to be searched.
ip <IP>	<IP>: Enter the IP address of the VigorSwitch to be searched.
description <input>	<input>: Enter the model name of the VigorSwitch to be searched.

Example

```
> swm search mac 1449bc43e579
Type     IP Address      MAC             Description / Name         Lan Port
 UpLink Port     Level   Port
------- --------------- ----------------- ---------------------------
```

```
--------
 ---------------- ----- --------
Switch  192.168.1.13    14:49:BC:43:E5:79 G2100                      P2
   Vigor Router    0    2

>
```

Telnet Command: swm db

This command is used to enable/disable database to record switch management information.

Syntax

swm db *ctl en/dis*

swm db *ctl show*

swm db *alert notify <N/S>*

swm db *alert action <S/B>*

swm db *alert sms<IDX>*

swm db *alert mail <IDX>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
ctl en/dis	It means to enable or disable the function of displaying database control status. en: Enable the function. dis: Disable the function.
ctl show	It means to show the the database control status.
alert notify <N/S>	It means to set alert notification (N or S) condition when storage exceeded. N:Don't send notification. S: Send notification.
alert action <S/B>	It means to set the alert action (S or B) condition when storage exceeded. S: Stop recording urser information. B: Backup and clean up all user info, and start a new record.
alert sms <IDX>	It means to set SMS object which will get the information from Vigor router if something wrong with VigorSwitch. <IDX>: Enter the index number of the mail object.
alert mail <IDX>	It means to set mail object which will get the information from Vigor router if something wrong with VigorSwitch. <IDX>: Enter the index number of the mail object.

Example

```
> swm db ctl en
Enable database to recoard SWM information.
```

Telnet Command: swm alert

This command is used to define the name of alert, level of alert (in color), and determine to record the data in the database, or send a notification message to the user based on the level.

Syntax

swm alert *enable/disable*

swm alert *show*

swm alert *en/dis <Idx>*

swm alert *set <Idx> log <e/d>*

swm alert *set <Idx> name <name>*

swm alert *set <Idx> color <O/R/N>*

swm alert *set <Idx> notif <e/d>*

swm alert *set <Idx> obj <object idx> <object value>*

swm alert *display*

swm alert *en/dis <sw/port> <mac>*

swm alert *sw show <mac>*

swm alert *set sw <mac> <incident idx> <level idx>*

swm alert *port show <mac>*

swm alert *set port <mac> <port num><incident idx> <level idx>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
enable/disable	It means to enable/disable Alert mechanism. enable: Enable the mechanism. disable: Disable the mechanism.
show	It means to display a list of all alert setup.
en/dis <Idx>	It means to enable / disable the Alert Action settings. en: Enable the settings. dis: Disabel the settings. <Idx>: Enter the index number (1 to 8) of the alert action item.
set <Idx> log <e/d>	It means to enable / disable the function of creating log of alert. e: Enable the settings. d: Disabel the settings. <Idx>: Enter the index number (1 to 8) of the alert action item. Note that No Log for index 1; and log for index 2 is enabled in default.
set <Idx> name <name>	It means to set level name of each alert. <Idx>: Enter the index number (1 to 8) of the alert action item. <name>: Enter a short description of the alert.
set <Idx> color <O/R/N>	It means to define the color for each level of alert. The color of index 1 is No color and unable to be changed. <Idx>: Enter the index number (2 to 8) of the alert action item. <O/R/N>: "O" means orange; "R" means red; "N" means no color.
set <Idx> notif <e/d>	It means to enable or disable the function of sending notifiction to specified phone number via SMS. <Idx>: Enter the index number (3 to 8) of the alert action item. e: Enable the settings. d: Disabel the settings.
set <idx> obj <object idx> <object value>	It means to specify SMS/Email service object(s) for the alert item. Each alert can be set with up to four objects.

	<Idx>: Enter the index number (3 to 8) of the alert action item. <object idx>: Enter the queue number (1 to 4) for specifying an object profile. <object value>: Enter the index number (1 to 10) of the SMS/Email service object profile.
display	It means to display all switches with port alert state.
en/dis <sw/port> <mac>	It means to enable or disable the Switch Alert /Port Alert action. en: Enable the function. dis: Disable the function. <sw/port>: "sw" means Switch Alert; "port" means Port Alert. <mac>: Enter the MAC address of the VigorSwitch.
sw show <mac>	It means to display incident and alert type of the VigorSwitch. <mac>: Enter the MAC address of the VigorSwitch.
set sw <mac> <incident idx> <level idx>	It means to set incident and alert type of the VigorSwitch. <mac>: Enter the MAC address of the VigorSwitch. <incident idx>: Range 1 - 4. <level idx>: 1 - 8.
port show <mac>	Display Port Incident Alert. <mac>: Enter the MAC address of the VigorSwitch.
set port <mac> <port num> <incident idx> <level idx>	Set Port Incident Alert. <mac>: Enter the MAC address (e.g., 001DAA0EB0DB) of the VigorSwitch. <port num>: Range 1 - 28. <incident idx>: Range 1 - 4. <level idx>: 1 - 8.

Example

```
> swm alert enable
> swm alert set 2 color N
> swm alert show
Idx En/Dis   Level            Color     Create    Log       Send Notification(1-4)
--- -----   ---------------- -------- -------- -----------  -------------
1    En    No Alert          No Color  Disable   Disable   0  , 0  , 0  , 0
2    En    Minor Alert       No Color  Enable    Disable   0  , 0  , 0  , 0
3    En    Moderate Alert    Orange    Enable    Disable   0  , 0  , 0  , 0

4    En    Major Alert       Red       Enable    Disable   0  , 0  , 0  , 0
5    Dis                     No Color  Disable   Disable   0  , 0  , 0  , 0
6    Dis                     No Color  Disable   Disable   0  , 0  , 0  , 0
7    Dis                     No Color  Disable   Disable   0  , 0  , 0  , 0
8    Dis                     No Color  Disable   Disable   0  , 0  , 0  , 0
>
```

Telnet Command: swm log

This command is used to display switch managent log.

Syntax

swm log *show filter*
swm log *show day*
swm log *show week*
swm log *set level <idx> on/off*
swm log *set type <idx> on/off*
swm log *set switch <mac> on/off*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
show filter	It means to display the log filter setup.
show day	It means to display the quantity of day log.
show week	It means to display the quantity of week log.
set level <idx> on/off	It means to turn on or turn off the alert level. <idx>: 1 to 8. on/off: Set the status (on or off) of the alert.
set type <idx> on/off	It means to turn on or turn off the port alert/switch alert. <idx>: 1 to 2. "1" means Port Alert; "2" means Switch Alert. on/off: Set the status (on or off) of the alert.
set switch <mac> on/off	It means to set Switch Filter: <mac>: Enter the MAC address of the VigorSwitch. on/off: Set the status (on or off) of the alert.

Example

```
> swm log show filter
Index Status Level          En/Dis
----- ------ --------------- --------
1     off    No Alert       En
2     off    Minor Alert         En
3     off    Moderate Alert      En
4     off    Major Alert    En
5     off                   Dis
6     off                   Dis
7     off                   Dis
8     off                   Dis

Index Status Type
----- ------ -------------
1     on     Port Alert
2     off    Switch Alert

Index Status Switch Name    Model  Mac Address
----- ------ --------------- ------ --------------
1      off    G2100           G2100  1449bc43e579
> swm log set level 8 on
```

Telnet Command: swm snmp

This command is used to display switch information via SNMP query.

Syntax

swm snmp *sys <MAC>*
swm snmp *iftbl <MAC> <port_num>*
swm snmp *poe <MAC>*
swm snmp *trpcom show <MAC>*
swm snmp *trpcom set <MAC> <name>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
sys <MAC>	It means to show the system information. <MAC>: Enter the MAC address of the VigorSwitch.
iftbl <MAC> <port_num>	It means to show port interface information. <MAC>: Enter the MAC address of the VigorSwitch. <port_num>: Enter the index number (e.g., 1 to 28) of the VigorSwitch LAN port. The number of LAN ports will vary according to the Switch to be modified.
poe <MAC>	It means to show snmp POE interface information. <MAC>: Enter the MAC address of the VigorSwitch.
trpcom show <MAC>	It means to show Trap Community. <MAC>: Enter the MAC address of the VigorSwitch.
trpcom set <MAC> <name>	It means to set Trap Community. <MAC>: Enter the MAC address of the VigorSwitch. <name>: Enter a string as tramp community.

Example

```
> swm snmp sys 1449BC43E579
sysDescr:
sysObjectID:1.3.6.1.4.1.7367
sysUpTime:988 hr 19 m 39 s
sysContact:Default
sysName:G2100
sysLocation:Default
sysServices:79
ifNumber:0
>
```

Telnet Command: swm tr069

This command allows the user to configure TR-069 settings for Vigor router to communicate with VigorACS server.

Syntax

swm tr069 show
swm tr069 user *<xxx>*
swm tr069 password *<xxx>*
swm tr069 *<https/http>*
swm tr069 port *<xxx>*

swm tr069 poll *<xxx>*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
show	Displays the switch management TR069 server settings.
user <xxx>	Set a username for switch management TR069 server. <xxx> - Enter a string (max. 31 characters)
password <xxx>	Set a password for switch management for TR069 server. <xxx> - Enter a password (max. 31 characters).
<https/http>	Set the protocol for switch management for TR069 server. <https/http> - Choose https or http.
port <xxx>	Set the port number for switch management for TR069 server. <xxx>- Range from 1 to 65535.
poll <xxx>	Set the poll interval for switch management for TR069 server. <xxx>- Range from 1 to 999999.

Example

```
> swm tr069 show

SWM TR069 via HTTP
SWM TR069 server port: 8003
SWM TR069 username: acs
SWM TR069 HTTP password: password
SWM TR069 poll_interval: 600

> swm tr069 poll 710
Set SWM TR069 poll interval to 710
```

Telnet Command: fw_backupmode

This command is used to backup the firmware to the router. The firmware will be retrieved for rebooting Vigor router after it crashes over three times.

Syntax

fw_backupmode *[<command><parameter>| ...]*

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
[<command><parameter>| ...]	The available commands with parameters are listed below. *[..]* means that you can Enter several commands in one line.
-t n	Set the backup time. n : 1 ~ 168 hours
-m n	Set the firmware backup mode. 1: Backup after timeout. 0: Backup after upgrade.
-b	Backup the firmware manually and immediately.
-r n	Set the firmware recovery mode. 1: the firemware will be recovered when the system crash. 0: No recovery.

Example

```
> backupmode -b
 Do Firmware backup now!!!.
```

Telnet Command: service

This command is used to display information about Myvigor service. In addition, it allows to transfer MyVigor service from the original account to other account.

Syntax

service -s

service -r

service -l *<account><password>*

service -i *<new_owner><new_owner_email>*

service -t *<yes>/<no>*

service -c

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
-s	Display the service status.
-r	Refresh the service status
-l <account><password>	Login to MyVigor server. Enter the account and password registered to MyVigor server account - Enter the name of the account. Password - Enter the password of the account.
-i <new_owner> <new_owner_email>	Enter the name and the e-mail address of the new owner for service transfer. New_owner - Enter the account name of the new owner. New_owner_email - Enter the e-mail address of the new owner.
-t <yes>/<no>	Transfer this Vigor device to a new owner.
-c	Clear current owner's account information.

Example

```
> service
> service -l carrieni ttt0016ttt5
Login Account:carrieni, Pw:ttt0016ttt5
Login Success! Please check Service Status again!
> service -s
Show service status.
Now state is [SS_STATE_REG_ACC_VALID]
Service Status:
Model Name   : Vigor2927 Series
Serial Number: 2019053108580701
MAC Address  : 00:1D:AA:73:4A:78
Owner Account: carrieni
E-mail       : ca******i@draytek.com

Device service support status:
Service WCF, ID = [1]
    Service Provider [Cyren]
    Licese Start_date [2019-09-26]
    Licese Exp_date [2019-10-26]

Service APPE, ID=[4]
    Service Provider [Not Activated]
    Licese Start_date []
    Licese Exp_date []
```

```
Service DDNS, ID=[6]
    Service Provider [Not Activated]
    Licese Start_date []
    Licese Exp_date []
```

Telnet Command: dmn

This command is used to set configuration related to mesh network, status display or trigger the mesh actions.

Syntax

dmn enable *<1/0>*
dmn reset_group
dmn loglevel *<1/0>*
dmn search *<start/show>*
dmn status
dmn mynode
dmn discover *<start/show>*
dmn acs
dmn table *<0/1/2/3>*
dmn disconnect
dmn auto_reselect
dmn reselect

Syntax Description

Parameter	Description
enable <1/0>	Enable or disable the mesh function. 1 - Enable. 0 - Disable.
reset_group	Reset the group list and group key.
loglevel <1/0>	Set the mesh log level. 1 - detailed information. 0 - basic information.
search start *search show*	Search for **available** mesh nodes in the environment to join the Mesh Network. start - Begin to search. show - Display the searching result.
status	Display the group status.
mynode	Display the local status of this device. For example, DrayTek> dmn mynode % [dmn_cmd] my node: Preferred Wireless Uplink : Auto Operation Mode : MeshNode(Wired) Root MAC : 00:00:00:00:00:00 Hop : 0 Uplink : none Downlink (0) : Model : Vigor2866 Device Name : DrayTek MAC : 00:1D:AA:70:33:E0 State : Mesh Node (Wired Uplink) - Isolate

	Status : New
discover start *discover show*	Search for mesh devices (including mesh root and mesh node) around this router. start - Begin to search. show - Dispaly the searching result.
acs	Obtain information by sending requests to Mesh auto-configuration server. Available sub-commands include: (g)et - get mynode and station list (s)et - set all parameter prin(t) - print all list (c)lear - clear all method (p)ause - pause acs (r)esume - resume acs st(a)tus - acs group status sta(l)ist - print all node station list (u)p_sta_status - print update station list status r(e)set - reset dmn acs
table <0/1/2>	Display a device table of the mesh network. 0 - Originator table 1 - Local client table 2 - Remote client table
disconnect <mac>	Disconnect an online wireless mesh node. In general, the mesh node will reconnect to Mesh Network later. <mac> - Enter the MAC address of the mesh node in a Mesh Group. (Ex. dmn disconnect 00:1d:aa:22:33:44)
auto_reselect	Enable (1) or disable (0) the auto reselection function. If enabled, the Mesh Root starts a Mesh Reselect automatically after the Mesh Network changed.
reselect	Start a Mesh Reselect immediately. An online Wireless Mesh Node may reconnect to a better Wireless uplink.

Example

```
> dmn refresh 2
% Delete [2] node and let it recover automatically
> dmn set rssi 50
> dmn
```